RICOH UNIVERSITY
Learning ◆ Knowledge ◆ Performance



D027/D029
SERVICE MANUAL

LANIER RICOH SAVIN

RICOH
Learning ◆ Knowledge ◆ Performance
UNIVERSITY

SERVICE MANUAL

D027/D029

LANIER
RICOH
SAVIN

RICOH UNIVERSITY
Learning ◆ Knowledge ◆ Performance

D027/D029
SERVICE MANUAL

003984MIU

WARNING

The Service Manual contains information regarding service techniques, procedures, processes and spare parts of office equipment distributed by Ricoh Americas Corporation. Users of this manual should be either service trained or certified by successfully completing a Ricoh Technical Training Program.

Untrained and uncertified users utilizing information contained in this service manual to repair or modify Ricoh equipment risk personal injury, damage to property or loss of warranty protection.

Ricoh Americas Corporation

LEGEND

PRODUCT CODE	COMPANY			
	GESTETNER	LANIER	RICOH	SAVIN
D027	MP C4000	LD540C	Aficio MP C4000	C4040
D029	MP C5000	LD550C	Aficio MP C5000	C5050

DOCUMENTATION HISTORY

REV. NO.	DATE	COMMENTS
*	10/2008	Original Printing

http://www.manuals4you.com

D027/D029

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PRODUCT INFORMATION

1. PRODUCT INFORMATION 1-1

1.1 SPECIFICATIONS 1-1

1.2 OVERVIEW 1-2

1.2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT 1-2

1.2.2 PAPER PATH 1-3

1.2.3 DRIVE LAYOUT 1-4

1.2.4 MACHINE CODES AND PERIPHERALS CONFIGURATION 1-6

1.3 GUIDANCE FOR THOSE WHO ARE FAMILIAR WITH PREDECESSOR PRODUCTS 1-10

INSTALLATION

2. INSTALLATION 2-1

2.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS 2-1

2.1.1 ENVIRONMENT 2-1

2.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL 2-1

2.1.3 MACHINE SPACE REQUIREMENTS 2-2

2.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS 2-2

2.2 OPTIONAL UNIT COMBINATIONS 2-3

2.2.1 MACHINE OPTIONS 2-3

2.2.2 CONTROLLER OPTIONS 2-4

2.2.3 FAX OPTIONS 2-5

2.2.4 OTHER OPTIONS 2-5

2.3 COPIER INSTALLATION 2-6

2.3.1 POWER SOCKETS FOR PERIPHERALS 2-6

2.3.2 INSTALLATION FLOW CHART 2-7

2.3.3 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-8

Tapes and Retainers 2-8

Developer and Toner Bottles 2-9

Paper Trays 2-10
Emblem and Decals 2-11
Manual Pocket Attachment 2-11
Initialize the Developer 2-12
Settings Relevant to the Service Contract 2-12
Settings for @Remote Service 2-13
2.3.4 MOVING THE MACHINE 2-17
2.3.5 TRANSPORTING THE MACHINE 2-18
2.4 PAPER FEED UNIT INSTALLATION (D351) 2-19
2.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 2-19
2.4.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-19
2.5 2000-SHEET LCT 2-22
2.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 2-22
2.5.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-22
2.6 1200-SHEET LCT (D353) 2-25
2.6.1 COMPONENT CHECK 2-25
2.6.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-26
2.6.3 SIDE FENCE POSITION CHANGE 2-28
2.7 AUTO REVERSE DOCUMENT FEEDER (B802) 2-29
2.7.1 COMPONENT CHECK 2-29
2.7.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-30
2.8 DOCUMENT FEEDER HANDLE TYPE 5 2-33
2.8.1 COMPONENT CHECK 2-33
2.8.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-34
Preparing before Installing the DF Handle 2-34
Installing the DF Handle 2-36
2.9 1-BIN TRAY UNIT (D414) 2-39
2.9.1 COMPONENT CHECK 2-39
2.9.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-39
2.10 SHIFT TRAY UNIT (D388) 2-42
2.10.1 COMPONENT CHECK 2-42
2.10.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-43
2.11 BRIDGE UNIT (D386) 2-45
2.11.1 COMPONENT CHECK 2-45
2.11.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-46
2.12 1000-SHEET FINISHER (B408) 2-49

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.12.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 2-49
2.12.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-50
2.13 2000 (BOOKLET)/ 3000-SHEET FINISHER (B804/B805) 2-52
2.13.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 2-52
2.13.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-54
Support Tray Installation 2-57
2.14 PUNCH UNIT 2-58
2.14.1 COMPONENT CHECK 2-58
2.14.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-59
2.15 MECHANICAL COUNTER (NA ONLY) 2-63
2.15.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-63
2.16 KEY COUNTER BRACKET 2-65
2.16.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-65
2.17 KEY COUNTER INTERFACE UNIT 2-67
2.17.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-67
2.18 COPY DATA SECURITY UNIT TYPE F (B829) 2-69
2.18.1 INSTALLATION 2-69
User Tool Setting 2-70
2.19 USB2.0/SD SLOT TYPE A 2-71
2.19.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 2-71
2.19.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-71
2.19.3 TESTING THE SD CARD/USB SLOT 2-74
2.20 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER (SCANNER) 2-75
2.20.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-75
2.21 TRAY HEATER 2-77
2.21.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-77
2.22 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER TYPE A 2-78
2.22.1 COMPONENT CHECK 2-78
2.22.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2-79
Installing the Tray Heater in D351 2-79
Installing the Tray Heater in D352 2-81
Installing the Tray Heater in D387 2-84
2.23 CONTROLLER OPTIONS 2-87
2.23.1 OVERVIEW 2-87
I/F Card Slots 2-87
SD Card Slots 2-87

2.23.2 SD CARD APPLI MOVE....2-87
Overview....2-87
Move Exec....2-89
Undo Exec....2-89
2.23.3 POSTSCRIPT 3....2-90
2.23.4 FILE FORMAT CONVERTER....2-91
2.23.5 IEEE1284....2-92
Installation Procedure....2-92
2.23.6 IEEE 802.11 A/G, G (WIRELESS LAN)....2-93
Installation Procedure....2-93
UP Mode Settings for Wireless LAN....2-94
SP & UP Mode Settings for IEEE 802.11 a/g, g Wireless LAN....2-96
2.23.7 BLUETOOTH....2-97
2.23.8 DATAOVERWRITESECURITY UNIT TYPE H (D377)....2-97
Before You Begin the Procedure....2-97
Seal Check and Removal....2-98
Installation Procedure....2-99
2.23.9 HDD ENCRYPTION UNIT....2-101
Before You Begin the Procedure....2-101
Seal Check and Removal....2-101
Installation Procedure....2-102
Recovery from a Device Problem....2-103
Restoring the Encryption key....2-103
Clearing the NVRAM....2-104
2.23.10 PICTBRIDGE....2-105
2.23.11 VM CARD TYPE I....2-106
Installation Procedure....2-106
2.23.12 BROWSER UNIT TYPE B....2-107
Installation Procedure....2-107
Update Procedure....2-108
2.23.13 GIGABIT ETHERNET....2-110
2.23.14 CHECK ALL CONNECTIONS....2-111
2.24 SCANNER ACCESSIBILITY OPTION TYPE 5000....2-112
2.24.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS....2-112
2.24.2 ACCESSORY CHECK....2-113
2.24.3 REMOVAL PROCEDURE....2-115

http://www.manuals4you.com

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

3. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE 3-1

3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES 3-1

3.2 PM PARTS SETTINGS 3-2

3.2.1 BEFORE REMOVING THE OLD PM PARTS 3-2

3.2.2 AFTER INSTALLING THE NEW PM PARTS 3-3

3.2.3 PREPARATION BEFORE OPERATION CHECK 3-4

3.2.4 OPERATION CHECK 3-4

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

4. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 4-1

4.1 BEFOREHAND 4-1

4.2 SPECIAL TOOLS 4-2

4.3 IMAGE ADJUSTMENT 4-3

4.3.1 SCANNING 4-3

Scanner sub-scan magnification 4-3

Scanner leading edge and side-to-side registration 4-3

4.3.2 ARDF 4-5

ARDF side-to-side, leading edge registration and trailing edge 4-5

ARDF sub-scan magnification 4-6

4.3.3 REGISTRATION 4-7

Image Area 4-7

Leading Edge 4-7

Side to Side 4-7

Adjustment Standard 4-7

Paper Registration Standard 4-7

Adjustment Procedure 4-7

4.3.4 ERASE MARGIN ADJUSTMENT 4-9

4.3.5 COLOR REGISTRATION 4-10

Line Position Adjustment 4-10

4.3.6 PRINTER GAMMA CORRECTION 4-11

Copy Mode 4-11

Printer Mode 4-16

4.4 EXTERIOR COVERS 4-18

4.4.1 FRONT DOOR....4-18
4.4.2 LEFT COVER....4-19
4.4.3 REAR COVER....4-19
4.4.4 RIGHT REAR COVER....4-20
4.4.5 OPERATION PANEL....4-20
4.4.6 PAPER EXIT COVER....4-21
4.4.7 INNER TRAY....4-22
4.4.8 DUST FILTER....4-22
4.4.9 OZONE FILTER....4-23
Ozone filters for the scanner unit....4-23
Ozone filter for the IH inverter....4-23
4.5 SCANNER UNIT....4-25
4.5.1 EXPOSURE GLASS....4-25
4.5.2 ORIGINAL LENGTH/WIDTH SENSORS....4-26
4.5.3 EXPOSURE LAMP....4-26
4.5.4 SCANNER MOTOR....4-29
4.5.5 SENSOR BOARD UNIT (SBU)....4-31
When reassembling....4-31
4.5.6 EXPOSURE LAMP STABILIZER....4-32
4.5.7 SIO (SCANNER IN/OUT) BOARD....4-32
4.5.8 SCANNER HP SENSOR....4-33
4.5.9 PLATEN COVER SENSOR....4-34
4.5.10 FRONT SCANNER WIRE....4-35
Reassembling the Front Scanner Wire....4-35
4.5.11 REAR SCANNER WIRE....4-38
Reassembling the Rear Scanner Wire....4-39
4.5.12 TOUCH PANEL POSITION ADJUSTMENT....4-40
4.6 LASER OPTICS....4-41
4.6.1 CAUTION DECAL LOCATION....4-41
4.6.2 LASER OPTICS HOUSING UNIT....4-41
Preparing the new laser optics housing unit....4-42
Before removing the old laser optics housing unit....4-42
Recovery procedure for no replacement preparation of laser optics housing unit....4-42
Removing the old laser optics housing unit....4-43
Installing a new Laser Optics Housing Unit....4-44

http://www.manuals4you.com

After installing the new laser optics housing unit 4-45
4.6.3 POLYGON MIRROR MOTOR AND DRIVE BOARD 4-47
4.7 IMAGE CREATION 4-49
4.7.1 PCU 4-49
4.7.2 DRUM UNIT AND DEVELOPMENT UNIT 4-50
Developer 4-52
4.7.3 TONER COLLECTION BOTTLE 4-54
4.7.4 SECOND DUCT FAN 4-54
When reinstalling the second duct fan 4-55
4.7.5 THIRD DUCT FAN 4-56
When reinstalling the third duct fan 4-56
4.7.6 TONER PUMP UNIT 4-57
When you install the new toner pump unit 4-59
4.7.7 TONER END SENSOR 4-62
4.8 IMAGE TRANSFER 4-63
4.8.1 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT UNIT 4-63
4.8.2 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT CLEANING UNIT 4-64
4.8.3 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT 4-65
When reinstalling the image transfer belt 4-68
4.9 PAPER TRANSFER 4-70
4.9.1 PAPER TRANSFER ROLLER UNIT 4-70
4.9.2 PAPER TRANSFER UNIT 4-71
4.9.3 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD - DISCHARGE PLATE 4-73
4.9.4 ID SENSOR BOARD 4-74
Cleaning for ID sensors 4-74
After installing a new ID sensor unit/board 4-75
4.9.5 TEMPERATURE AND HUMIDITY SENSOR 4-76
4.10 DRIVE UNIT 4-77
4.10.1 GEAR UNIT 4-78
When installing the drive unit 4-82
Adjustment after replacing the gear unit 4-82
4.10.2 REGISTRATION MOTOR 4-83
4.10.3 PAPER FEED MOTOR 4-84
4.10.4 DRUM/DEVELOPMENT MOTORS FOR M, C, AND Y 4-85
4.10.5 DRUM/DEVELOPMENT MOTOR-K 4-86
4.10.6 ITB DRIVE MOTOR 4-87

4.10.7 FUSING/PAPER EXIT MOTOR 4-87
4.10.8 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT CONTACT MOTOR 4-88
4.10.9 DUPLEX INVERTER MOTOR 4-88
4.10.10 PRESSURE ROLLER CONTACT MOTOR 4-90
4.10.11 DUPLEX/BY-PASS MOTOR 4-91
4.10.12 PAPER TRANSFER CONTACT MOTOR 4-92
4.10.13 TONER TRANSPORT MOTOR 4-94
4.10.14 TONER COLLECTION UNIT 4-95
4.10.15 PAPER FEED CLUTCHES 4-96
4.10.16 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCH-Y 4-98
4.10.17 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCHES FOR M AND C 4-99
4.10.18 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCH-K 4-100
4.11 FUSING 4-101
4.11.1 PM PARTS 4-101
4.11.2 FUSING UNIT 4-102
4.11.3 HEATING ROLLER AND HEATING ROLLER BEARING 4-103
When re-installing the heating roller 4-107
4.11.4 FUSING CLEANING FELT 4-109
When attaching a new fusing cleaning felt 4-109
4.11.5 FUSING LAMP 4-110
4.11.6 FUSING DRIVE GEAR 4-112
4.11.7 PRESSURE ROLLER AND PRESSURE ROLLER BEARING 4-113
When re-installing the pressure roller 4-115
4.11.8 HEATING ROLLER THERMISTOR 4-116
4.11.9 PRESSURE ROLLER THERMOSTAT 4-117
4.11.10 PRESSURE ROLLER THERMISTOR 4-118
4.11.11 ONE-WAY CLUTCH GEAR AND IDLE GEAR 4-119
When re-installing the idle gear 4-119
4.11.12 FUSING FAN 4-120
When installing the fusing fan 4-120
4.11.13 PAPER EXIT FAN 4-121
When installing the paper exit fan 4-121
4.11.14 IH (INDUCTION HEATING) INVERTER FAN 4-122
When installing the IH inverter fan 4-122
4.11.15 THERMOPILE 4-123
When cleaning the lens of the thermopile 4-124

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.11.16 PRESSURE ROLLER HP SENSOR....4-126
4.11.17 IH COIL FAN....4-126
4.11.18 IH COIL UNIT....4-127
4.12 PAPER FEED....4-130
4.12.1 PAPER FEED UNIT....4-130
4.12.2 PICK-UP, FEED AND SEPARATION ROLLERS....4-131
Tray 1 and Tray 2....4-131
4.12.3 TRAY LIFT MOTOR....4-132
4.12.4 VERTICAL TRANSPORT, PAPER OVERFLOW, PAPER END AND PAPER FEED SENSOR....4-133
4.12.5 REGISTRATION SENSOR....4-134
4.12.6 BY-PASS PAPER SIZE SENSOR AND BY-PASS PAPER LENGTH SENSOR....4-135
When reinstalling the by-pass paper size sensor....4-136
4.12.7 BY-PASS BOTTOM TRAY....4-137
4.12.8 BY-PASS PAPER END SENSOR....4-140
4.12.9 BY-PASS PICK-UP, FEED AND SEPARATION ROLLER, TORQUE LIMITER....4-140
4.12.10 BY-PASS FEED CLUTCH....4-142
4.12.11 PAPER EXIT UNIT....4-142
4.12.12 FUSING EXIT, PAPER OVERFLOW, JUNCTION PAPER JAM AND PAPER EXIT SENSOR....4-144
4.13 DUPLEX UNIT....4-146
4.13.1 DUPLEX UNIT....4-146
4.13.2 DUPLEX DOOR SENSOR....4-148
4.13.3 DUPLEX ENTRANCE SENSOR....4-148
4.13.4 DUPLEX EXIT SENSOR....4-149
4.14 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS....4-150
4.14.1 BOARDS....4-150
4.14.2 CONTROLLER UNIT....4-153
4.14.3 CONTROLLER BOX RIGHT COVER....4-154
4.14.4 CONTROLLER BOX....4-154
When opening the controller box....4-154
When removing the controller box....4-155
4.14.5 IOB (IN/OUT BOARD)....4-157
4.14.6 BICU....4-158

When installing the new BICU 4-158
4.14.7 PSU 4-159
PSU bracket 4-159
PSU board 4-159
4.14.8 ITB POWER SUPPLY BOARD 4-160
4.14.9 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD 4-160
4.14.10 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD BRACKET 4-161
4.14.11 IH INVERTER 4-162
4.14.12 CONTROLLER BOARD 4-162
When installing the new controller board 4-163
4.14.13 HDD FAN 4-164
4.14.14 HDD 4-165
When installing a new HDD unit 4-165
Disposal of HDD Units 4-165
Reinstallation 4-166
4.14.15 NVRAM REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE 4-167
NVRAM on the BICU 4-167
NVRAM on the Controller 4-167
4.15 USING DIP SWITCHES 4-169
4.15.1 CONTROLLER BOARD 4-169
4.15.2 BICU BOARD 4-169

SYSTEM MAINTENANCE REFERENCE

5. SYSTEM MAINTENANCE REFERENCE 5-1
5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE 5-1
5.1.1 SP TABLES 5-1
5.1.2 ENABLING AND DISABLING SERVICE PROGRAM MODE 5-1
Entering SP Mode 5-1
Exiting SP Mode 5-1
5.1.3 TYPES OF SP MODES 5-2
SP Mode Button Summary 5-2
Switching Between SP Mode and Copy Mode for Test Printing 5-3
Selecting the Program Number 5-3
Exiting Service Mode 5-4
Service Mode Lock/Unlock 5-4

http://www.manuals4you.com

5.1.4 REMARKS 5-6
Display on the Control Panel Screen 5-6
Others 5-6
5.2 FIRMWARE UPDATE 5-8
5.2.1 TYPE OF FIRMWARE 5-8
5.2.2 BEFORE YOU BEGIN 5-10
5.2.3 UPDATING FIRMWARE 5-11
Preparation 5-11
Updating Procedure 5-11
Error Messages 5-12
Firmware Update Error 5-12
Recovery after Power Loss 5-13
5.2.4 UPDATING THE LCDC FOR THE OPERATION PANEL 5-13
5.2.5 HANDLING FIRMWARE UPDATE ERRORS 5-14
Error Message Table 5-14
5.3 INSTALLING ANOTHER LANGUAGE 5-16
5.4 REBOOT/SYSTEM SETTING RESET 5-19
5.4.1 SOFTWARE RESET 5-19
5.4.2 SYSTEM SETTINGS AND COPY SETTING RESET 5-19
System Setting Reset 5-19
Copier Setting Reset 5-19
5.5 CONTROLLER SELF-DIAGNOSTICS 5-21
5.5.1 OVERVIEW 5-21
5.6 SD CARD APPLI MOVE 5-22
5.6.1 OVERVIEW 5-22
5.6.2 MOVE EXEC 5-24
5.6.3 UNDO EXEC 5-25
5.7 DOWNLOADING STAMP DATA 5-26
5.8 NVRAM DATA UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD 5-27
5.8.1 UPLOADING CONTENT OF NVRAM TO AN SD CARD 5-27
5.8.2 DOWNLOADING AN SD CARD TO NVRAM 5-28
5.9 ADDRESS BOOK UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD 5-29
5.9.1 INFORMATION LIST 5-29
5.9.2 DOWNLOAD 5-29
5.9.3 UPLOAD 5-30
5.10 USING THE DEBUG LOG 5-31

5.10.1 OVERVIEW 5-31
5.10.2 SWITCHING ON AND SETTING UP SAVE DEBUG LOG .. 5-31
5.10.3 RETRIEVING THE DEBUG LOG FROM THE HDD 5-36
5.10.4 RECORDING ERRORS MANUALLY 5-36
5.10.5 NEW DEBUG LOG CODES 5-37
SP5857-015 Copy SD Card-to-SD Card: Any Desired Key 5-37
SP5857-016 Create a File on HDD to Store a Log 5-37
SP5857-017 Create a File on SD Card to Store a Log 5-37
5.11 CARD SAVE FUNCTION 5-38
5.11.1 OVERVIEW 5-38
Card Save: 5-38
5.11.2 PROCEDURE 5-39
5.11.3 ERROR MESSAGES 5-42

TROUBLESHOOTING

6. TROUBLESHOOTING 6-1
6.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS 6-1
6.2 PROCESS CONTROL ERROR CONDITIONS 6-2
6.3 TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE 6-3
6.3.1 IMAGE PROBLEMS 6-3
Stain on the outputs 6-3
6.3.2 STACK PROBLEM IN THE 1-BIN TRAY 6-3
6.4 JAM DETECTION 6-4
6.5 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS 6-5
6.6 SCANNER TEST MODE 6-6
6.6.1 SBU TEST MODE 6-6
6.6.2 IPU TEST MODE 6-6
SP4-904-1 Register Access 6-6
SP4-904-2 Image Path 6-6

D027/D029 SERVICE MANUAL APPENDICES

SEE D027/D029 SERVICE MANUAL APPENDICES SECTION FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

http://www.manuals4you.com

1000 SHEET FINISHER (B408)

SEE SECTION B408 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

BOOKLET FINISHER & FINISHER (B804/B805/D373/D374)

SEE SECTION B804/B805/D373/D374 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

PAPER FEED UNIT PB3040 (D351)

SEE SECTION D351 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

LCIT PB3050 (D352)

SEE SECTION D352 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

BRIDGE UNIT BU3030D (D386)

SEE SECTION D386 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTERNAL SHIFT TRAY SH3040 (D388)

SEE SECTION D388 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

FAX OPTION TYPE C5000 (D393)

SEE SECTION D393 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

1 BIN TRAY BN3070 (D414)

SEE SECTION D414 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

http://www.manuals4you.com

PRODUCT INFORMATION
APPENDIX: SPECIFICATIONS
Fax Option Type C5000 (D393)

INSTALLATION
APPENDIX: MAINTENANCE TABLES
Paper Feed Unit PB3040 (D351)

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE
APPENDIX: SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS
LCT PB3050 (D352)

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT
APPENDIX: PROCESS CONTROL ERROR CONDITIONS
1000-Sheet Finisher (B408)
Booklet Finisher/Finisher (B804/B805/D373/D374)

SYSTEM MAINTENANCE REFERENCE
APPENDIX: TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

TROUBLESHOOTING
APPENDIX: JAM DETECTION

APPENDIX: ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS
1 Bin Tray BN3070 (D414)

APPENDIX: SP MODE TABLES
Bridge Unit BU3030 (D386)
Internal Shift Tray SH3040 (D388)

TAB POSITION 1

TAB POSITION 2

TAB POSITION 3

TAB POSITION 4

TAB POSITION 5

TAB POSITION 6

TAB POSITION 7

TAB POSITION 8

http://www.manuals4you.com

Read This First

Important Safety Notices

Prevention of Physical Injury

1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the copier and peripherals, make sure that the copier power cord is unplugged.
2. The wall outlet should be near the copier and easily accessible.
3. If any adjustment or operation check has to be made with exterior covers off or open while the main switch is turned on, keep hands away from electrified or mechanically driven components.
4. The copier drives some of its components when it completes the warm-up period. Be careful to keep hands away from the mechanical and electrical components as the copier starts operation.
5. The inside and the metal parts of the fusing unit become extremely hot while the copier is operating. Be careful to avoid touching those components with your bare hands.

Health Safety Conditions

1. Toner and developer are non-toxic, but if you get either of them in your eyes by accident, it may cause temporary eye discomfort. Immediately wash eyes with plenty of water. If unsuccessful, get medical attention.
2. The copier, uses a high voltage power source, and generate ozone gas. High ozone density is harmful to human health. Therefore, the machine must be installed in a well-ventilated room.

Observance of Electrical Safety Standards

The copier and its peripherals must be serviced by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.

⚠WARNING

- ⃠ Keep the machine away from flammable liquids, gases, and aerosols. A fire or an explosion might occur.

⚠CAUTION

- The Controller Board, Optional Fax, and memory Expansion Units on this machine contains a lithium battery. The danger of explosion exists if a battery of this type is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or an equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Discard batteries in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

Safety and Ecological Notes for Disposal

1. Do not incinerate toner bottles or used toner. Toner dust may ignite suddenly when exposed to an open flame.
2. Dispose of used toner, the maintenance unit which includes developer or the organic photoconductor in accordance with local regulations. (These are non-toxic supplies.)
3. Dispose of replaced parts in accordance with local regulations.
4. When keeping used lithium batteries in order to dispose of them later, do not put more than 100 batteries per sealed box. Storing larger numbers or not sealing them apart may lead to chemical reactions and heat build-up.

Laser Safety

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) prohibits the repair of laser-based optical units in the field. The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement of the optical subsystem is required.

⚠WARNING

- **Use of controls, or adjustment, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.**

http://www.manuals4you.com

⚠WARNING

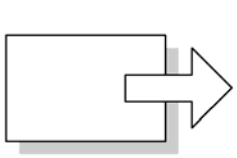
- **WARNING**: Turn off the main switch before attempting any of the procedures in the Laser Optics Housing Unit section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.
- **CAUTION MARKING:**



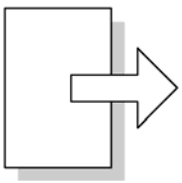
Symbols, Abbreviations and Trademarks

This manual uses several symbols and abbreviations. The meaning of those symbols and abbreviations are as follows:

☛	See or Refer to
	Clip ring
	Screw
	Connector
	Clamp
	E-ring
SEF	Short Edge Feed
LEF	Long Edge Feed



Short Edge Feed (SEF)



Long Edge Feed (LEF)

Trademarks

Microsoft®, Windows®, and MS-DOS® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and /or other countries.

PostScript® is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems, Incorporated.

PCL® is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Ethernet® is a registered trademark of Xerox Corporation.

PowerPC® is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and may be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights involved with those marks.

http://www.manuals4you.com

PRODUCT INFORMATION

PRODUCT INFORMATION REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

1. PRODUCT INFORMATION

1.1 SPECIFICATIONS

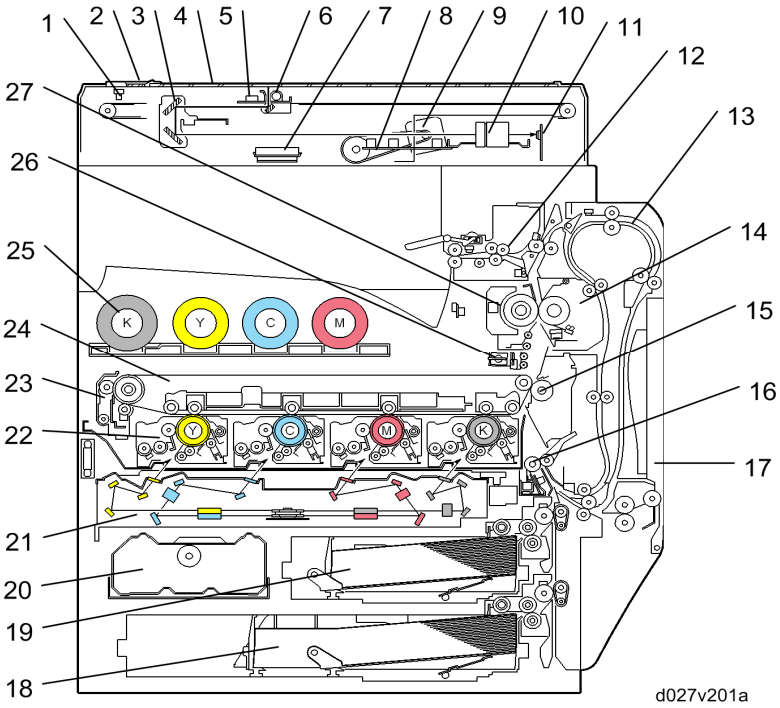
See "Appendices" for the following information:

- Mainframe Specifications
- Printer Specifications
- Scanner Specifications
- Supported Paper Sizes
- Software Accessories
- Optional Equipment

http://www.manuals4you.com

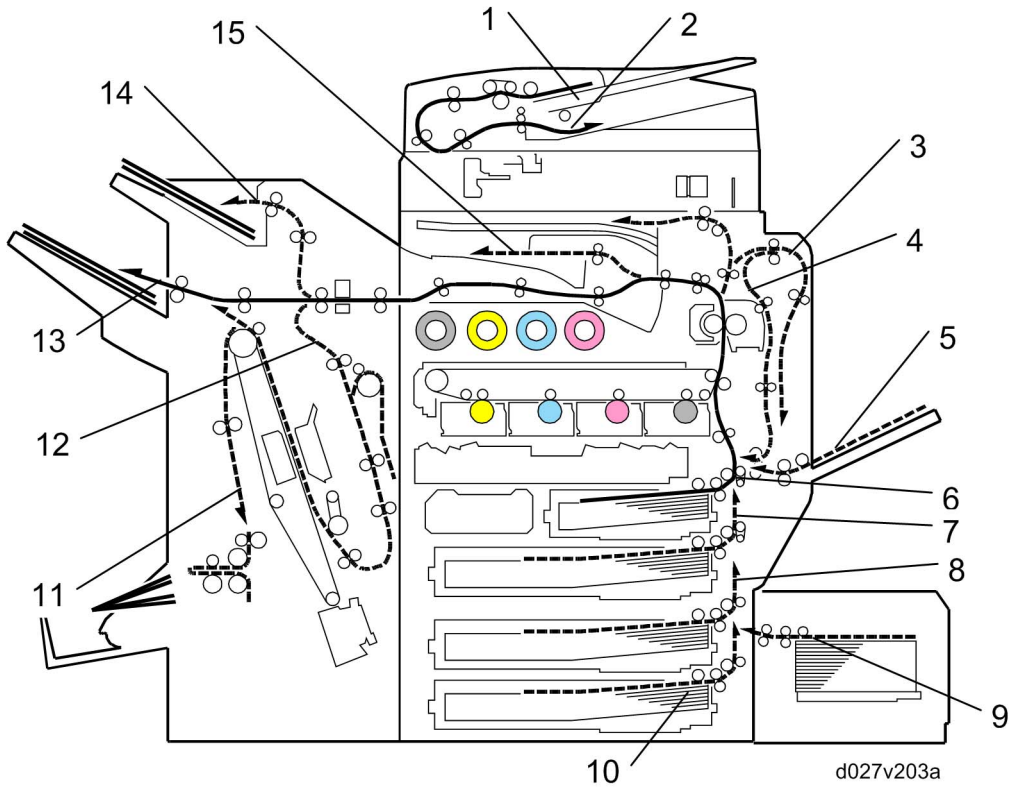
1.2 OVERVIEW

1.2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Scanner HP sensor 2. ADF exposure glass 3. 2nd scanner (2nd carriage) 4. Exposure glass 5. 1st scanner (1st carriage) 6. Scanner lamp 7. Original width sensor 8. Original length sensor 9. Scanner motor 10. Lens block 11. Sensor board unit (SBU) 12. Decurler rollers 13. Duplex unit 14. Fusing unit	15. Paper transfer roller 16. Registration roller 17. By-pass feed table 18. Tray 2 19. Tray 1 20. Toner collection bottle 21. Laser optics housing unit 22. PCU (4 colors) 23. Image transfer belt cleaning unit 24. Image transfer belt unit 25. Toner bottle (4 colors) 26. ID sensor 27. IH coil unit

1.2.2 PAPER PATH

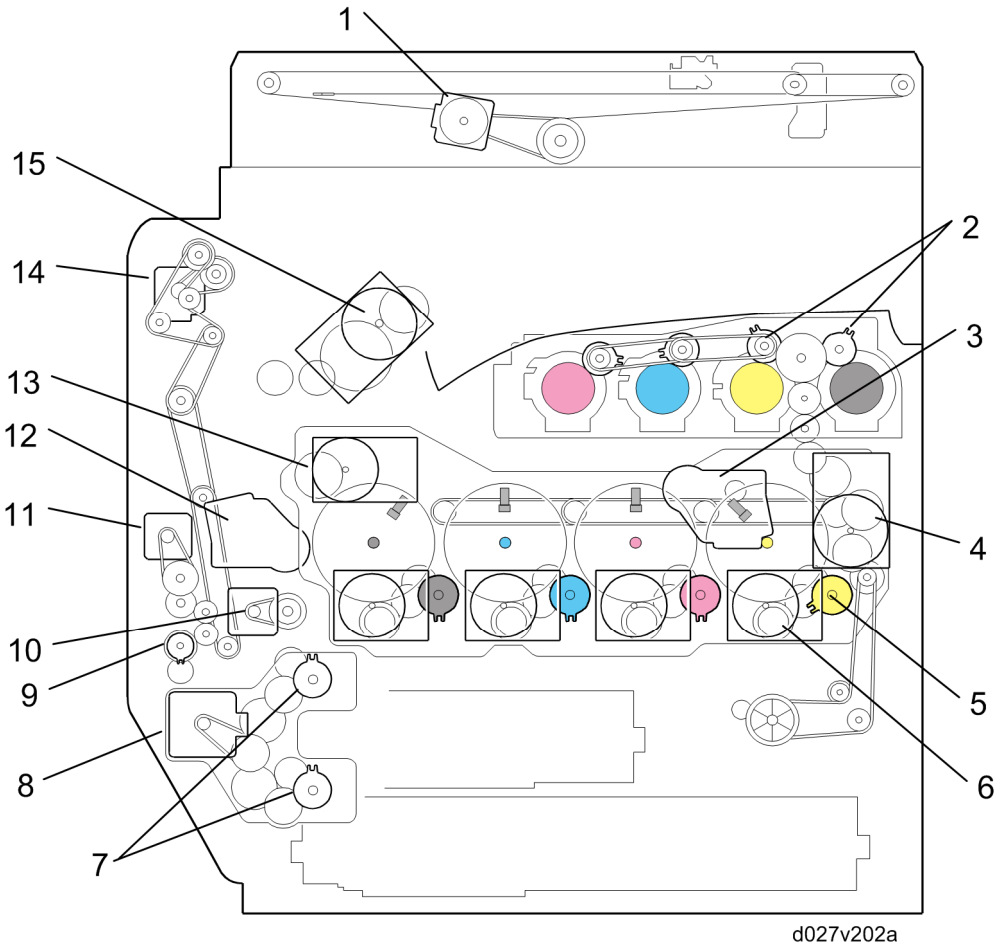


1. Original tray 2. Original exit tray 3. Duplex inverter 4. Duplex feed 5. By-pass tray feed 6. Tray 1 feed 7. Tray 2 feed 8. Tray 3: Optional paper feed unit/LCT	9. Tray 5: Optional LCT 1200 10. Tray 4: Optional paper feed unit 11. Finisher booklet stapler (Optional) 12. Finisher stapler (Optional) 13. Finisher upper tray (Optional) 14. Finisher proof tray (Optional) 15. Inner Tray

The 2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher and 1000-sheet finisher require the bridge unit and one from the two-tray paper feed unit or the LCT.

http://www.manuals4you.com

1.2.3 DRIVE LAYOUT

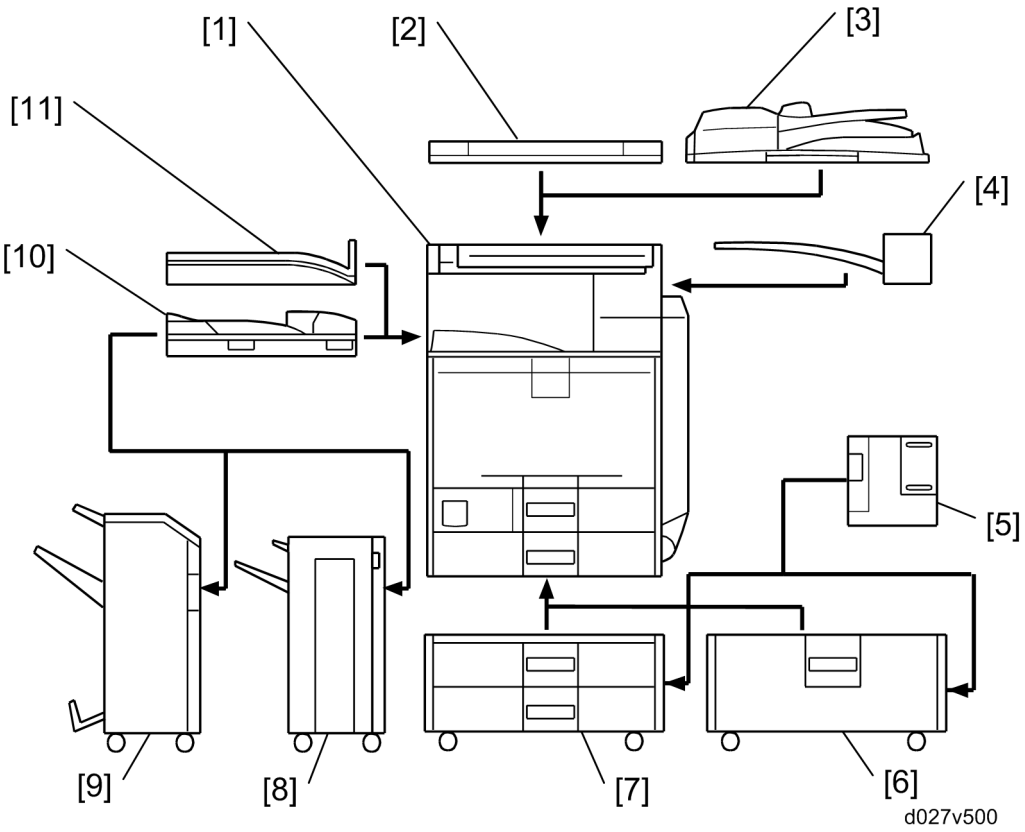


1. Scanner motor:	Drives the scanner unit.
2. Toner supply clutch-K and -CMY:	Turns on/off the drive power to the toner supply unit (K and -CMY).
3.ITB (Image Transfer Belt) contact motor:	Moves the ITB into contact and away from the color PCUs.
4. Toner transport motor:	Drives the toner attraction pumps and the toner collection coils from the PCUs, from the transfer belt unit, and inside the toner collection bottle. Also rotates the toner bottles.
5. Development clutch (K, Y, M, C):	Turns on/off the drive power to the development unit (K, Y, M, C).

6. Drum/Development drive motor (K, Y, M, C)	Drives the color drum unit and development unit (K, Y, M, C).
7. Paper feed clutch	Switches the drive power between tray 1 and tray 2.
8. Paper feed motor:	Drives the paper feed mechanisms (tray 1 & tray 2).
9. By-pass feed clutch:	Turns on/off the drive power to the by-pass pick-up, feed and separation rollers.
10. Registration motor:	Drives the registration roller.
11. By-pass/duplex feed motor:	Drives the by-pass pick-up, feed and separation roller, and duplex transport rollers.
12. Paper transfer contact motor:	Moves the paper transfer roller in contact with the image transfer belt.
13. ITB drive motor:	Drives the image transfer belt unit.
14. Duplex inverter motor	Drives the duplex inverter rollers and duplex transport rollers.
15. Fusing/paper exit motor:	Drives the fusing unit and paper exit section.

http://www.manuals4you.com

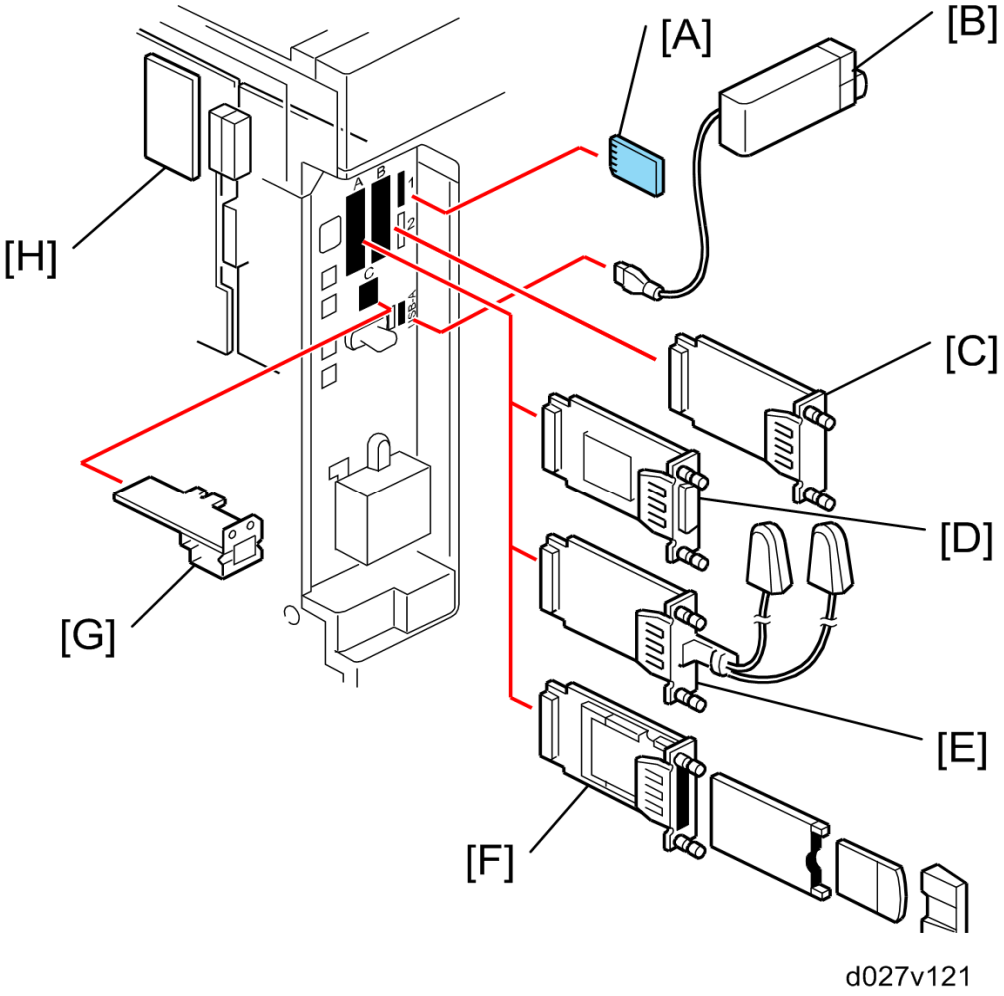
1.2.4 MACHINE CODES AND PERIPHERALS CONFIGURATION



Item	Machine Code	Call out	Remarks
Mainframe	D027/D029	[1]	-
Platen cover	G329	[2]	One from the two
ARDF	B802	[3]	
2000(booklet)/3000-sheet finisher	B804/B805	[9]	One from [8] and [9]; Requires [10] and one from [6] and [7]
Punch unit: 3/2 holes	B702-17	-	Requires [9]
Punch unit: 4/2 holes	B702-27	-	Requires [9]
Punch unit: 4 holes	B702-28	-	Requires [9]

Item	Machine Code	Call out	Remarks
1000-sheet finisher	B408	[8]	One from [8] and [9]; Requires [10] and one from [6] and [7]
2000-sheet LCT	D352	[6]	One from the two
Two-tray paper feed unit	D351	[7]	
1200-sheet LCT	D353	[5]	Requires [6] or [7]
1-bin tray	D414	[4]	-
Bridge unit	D386	[10]	One from the two
Shift tray	D388	[11]	
Scanner Accessibility Option	D423	-	-

http://www.manuals4you.com



d027v121

Item	Machine code	Call out	Remark
USB2.0/SD Slot	D422-01	[B]	In USB A (front)
Gigabit Ethernet	D377-21	[G]	-
IEEE 1284	B679-17	[D]	You can only install one of these at a time.
Wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11a/g)	D377-01 (NA) D377-02 (EU/AA)	[E]	
Wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11g)	D377-19		
Bluetooth	B826-17	[F]	

File Format Converter	D377-04	[C]	-
Copy Data Security Unit	B829-07	[H]	-
PostScript 3	D413-13 (NA) D413-14 (EU) D413-12 (AA)	[A]	You can only install one of these in SD slot 1 at a time
DataOverwriteSecurity Unit (DOS)	D377-06		
PictBridge	D413-04		
VM Card	D430-01 (NA) D430-02 (EU) D430-03 (AA)	-	In SD card slot 2
Browser Unit	D403-05 (NA) D403-06 (EU) D403-07 (AA)	-	In SD card slot 2 Remove it from slot 2 after installing.
HDD Encryption Unit	D377-16	-	

http://www.manuals4you.com

1.3 GUIDANCE FOR THOSE WHO ARE FAMILIAR WITH PREDECESSOR PRODUCTS

Machine D027/D029 is a successor model to Machine B222/B224. If you have experience with the predecessor products, the following information will be of help when you read this manual.

Different Points from Predecessor Products

	D027/D029	B222/B224
Basic PM Interval	120K prints	80K prints
PM Operation for PCU	New steps were added to the replacement procedure for the drum unit ▪ Turn the development roller counterclockwise. ▪ Do SP 1902-001.	-
PM Operation for Fusing Unit	Some PM items (such as fusing cleaning felt) are different from the PM items for the previous models.	-
Fusing System	Roller-heating IH system	Belt-heating IH system
SD Card Slots	2 slots	3 slots
Location of Firmware for Printer, Scanner, Netfile, NIB, WebDocBox, WebSys, and DESS	Flash ROM on the controller board	Printer/scanner SD card

INSTALLATION

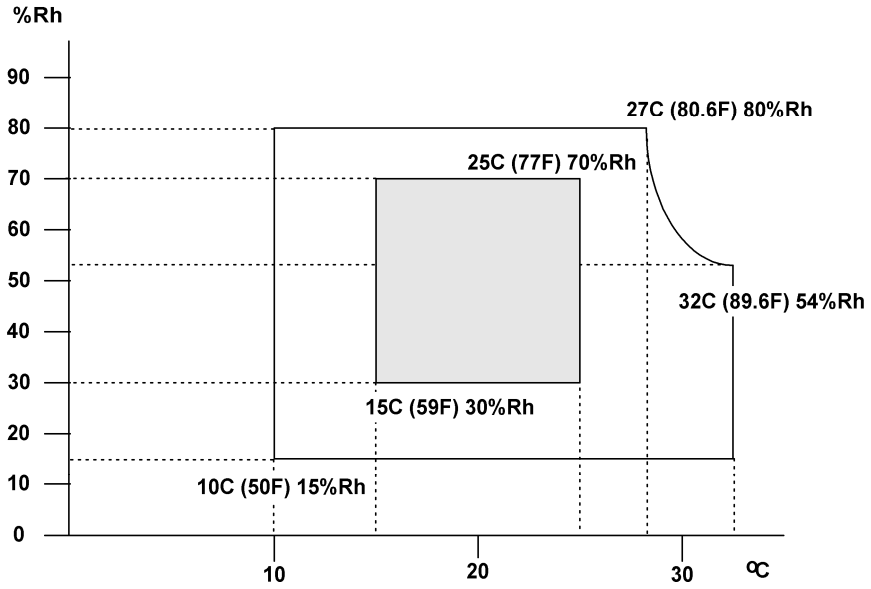
INSTALLATION REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
70	06/29/2009	Corrected Copy Data Security Unit Type F (B829)
112 ~ 142	12/10/2008	Added Scanner Accessibility Option Type 5000

http://www.manuals4you.com

2. INSTALLATION

2.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

2.1.1 ENVIRONMENT



1. Temperature Range: 10°C to 32°C (50°F to 89.6°F)
2. Humidity Range: 15% to 80% RH
3. Ambient Illumination: Less than 1500 lux (do not expose to direct sunlight)
4. Ventilation: 3 times/hr/person or more
5. Do not let the machine get exposed to the following:
   1) Cool air from an air conditioner
   2) Heat from a heater
6. Do not install the machine in areas that are exposed to corrosive gas.
7. Install the machine at locations lower than 2,500 m (8,200 ft.) above sea level.
8. Install the machine on a strong, level base. (Inclination on any side must be no more than 5 mm.)
9. Do not install the machine in areas that get strong vibrations.

2.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL

Front to back: Within 5 mm (0.2")

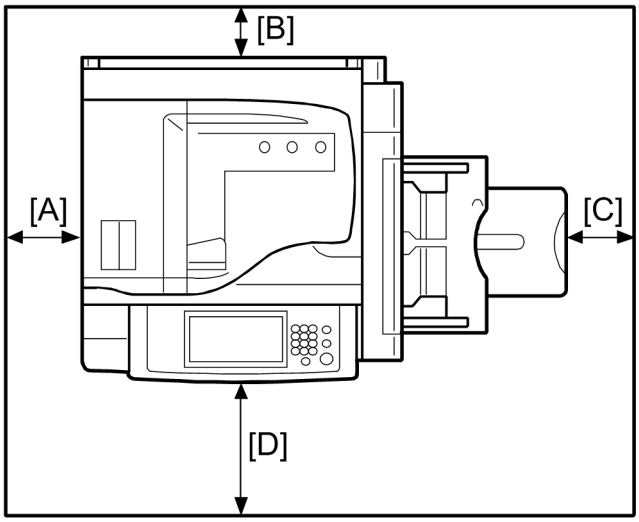
Right to left: Within 5 mm (0.2")

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.1.3 MACHINE SPACE REQUIREMENTS

CAUTION

- This machine, which uses high voltage power sources, can generate ozone gas. High ozone density is harmful to human health. Therefore, the machine must be installed in a well-ventilated room.



b222i109a

A: Over 100 mm (3.9")

B: Over 100 mm (3.9")

C: Over 550 mm (21.7")

D: Over 750 mm (29.5")

Put the machine near the power source with the clearance shown above.

2.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS

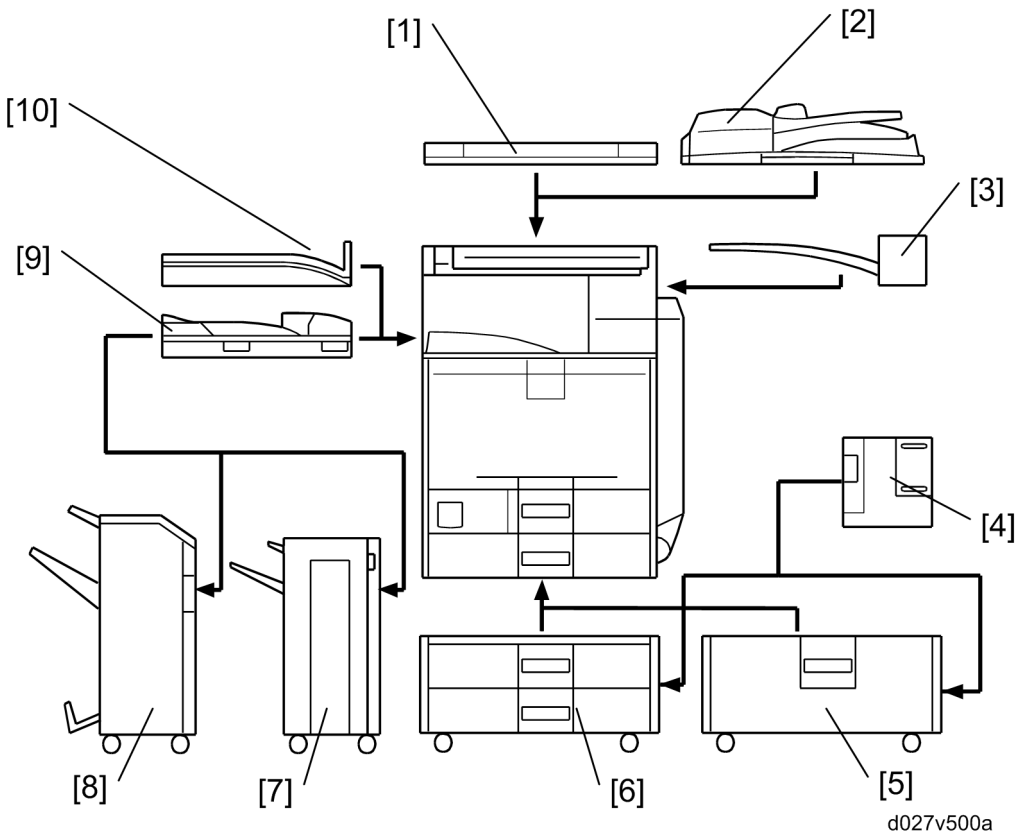
CAUTION

- Insert the plug firmly in the outlet.
- Do not use an outlet extension plug or cord.
- Ground the machine.

1. Input voltage level:
   120 V, 60 Hz: More than 12 A
   220 V to 240 V, 50 Hz/60 Hz: More than 8 A
2. Permissible voltage fluctuation: ±10 %
3. Do not put things on the power cord.

2.2 OPTIONAL UNIT COMBINATIONS

2.2.1 MACHINE OPTIONS



No.	Options	Remarks
1	Platen Cover	One from No.1 or No.2
2	ARDF	
3	1-Bin Tray Unit	-
4	1200-Sheet LCT	Requires No.5 or No.6
5	2000-Sheet LCT	One from No.5, No.6
6	Two-Tray Paper Feed Unit	
7	1000-Sheet Finisher	One from No.7, No.8;

http://www.manuals4you.com

Optional Unit Combinations

8	2000(Booklet) / 3000-Sheet Finisher	Requires No.9 and one from No.5 and No.6
9	Bridge Unit	One from No.9 or No.10
10	Shift Tray	

2.2.2 CONTROLLER OPTIONS

No.	Options	Remarks
1	Bluetooth	One from the four (I/F Slot A)
2	IEEE 802.11a/g	
3	IEEE 1284	
4	File Format Converter	I/F Slot B
5	Gigabit Ethernet	I/F Slot C
6	PostScript 3	One from the three (SD card slot 1)
7	PictBridge Option	
8	DataOverwriteSecurity Unit	
9	Browser Unit	SD card slot 2 (during installation only)
10	VM Card	SD card slot 2
11	HDD Encryption Unit	SD card slot 2 (during installation only)

2.2.3 FAX OPTIONS

No.	Options	Remarks
1	Fax Option Type C5000	-
2	*Hand Set Type 1018	Requires No.1. (NA Only)
3	G3 Interface Unit Type C5000	-

*: Child options (Child options require a parent option.)

2.2.4 OTHER OPTIONS

No.	Options	Remarks
1	Copy Data Security Unit	-
2	Optional Counter Interface Unit	-
3	USB2.0/SD Slot	-

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.3 COPIER INSTALLATION

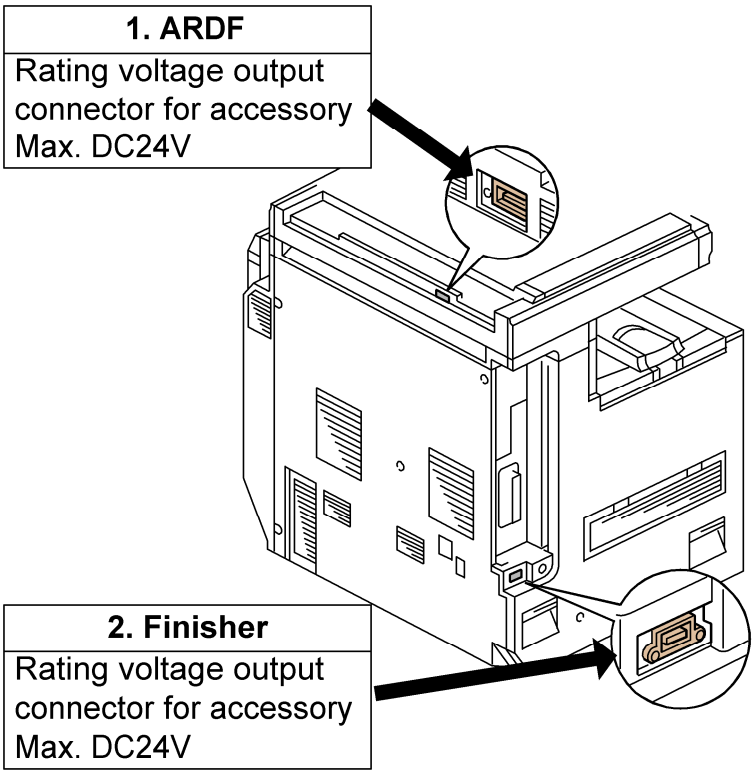
⚠CAUTION

- Make sure that the image transfer belt is in its correct position (away from the PCUs) before you move the machine. Otherwise, the image transfer belt and the black PCU can be damaged.

2.3.1 POWER SOCKETS FOR PERIPHERALS

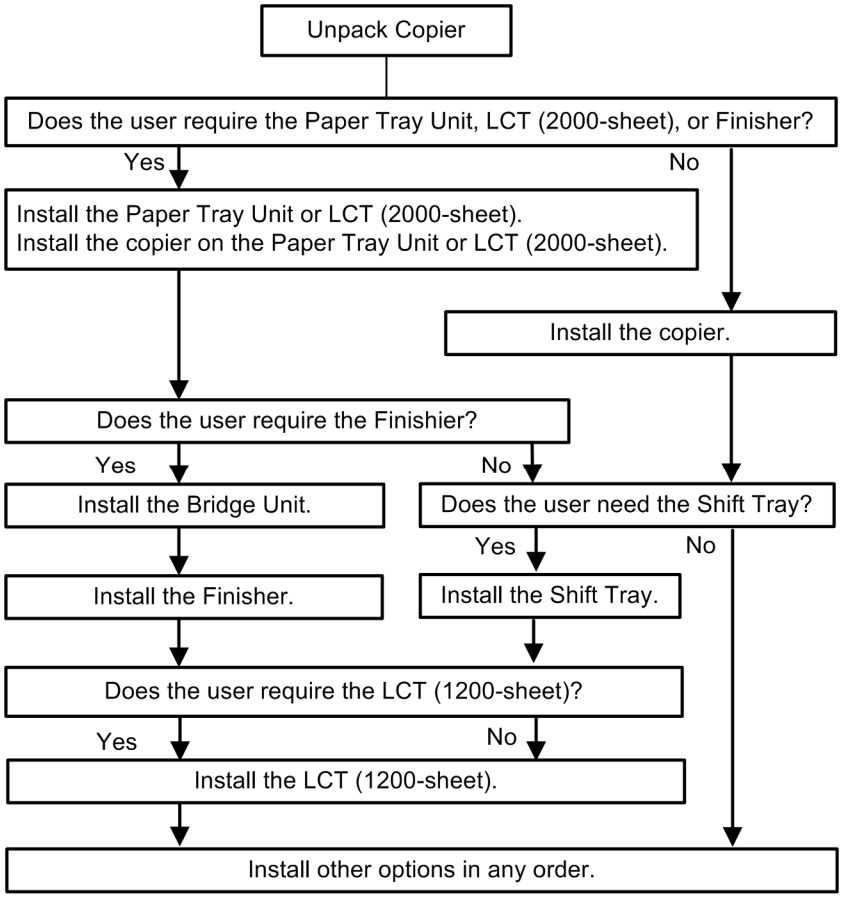
⚠CAUTION

- Rating voltage for peripherals.
- Make sure to plug the cables into the correct sockets.



2.3.2 INSTALLATION FLOW CHART

This flow chart shows the best procedure for installation.



You need the optional paper tray unit or the LCT if you want to install the finisher (B408, B804 or B805).

The punch unit is for 2000-sheet booklet finisher (B804) and 3000-sheet finisher (B805).

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.3.3 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

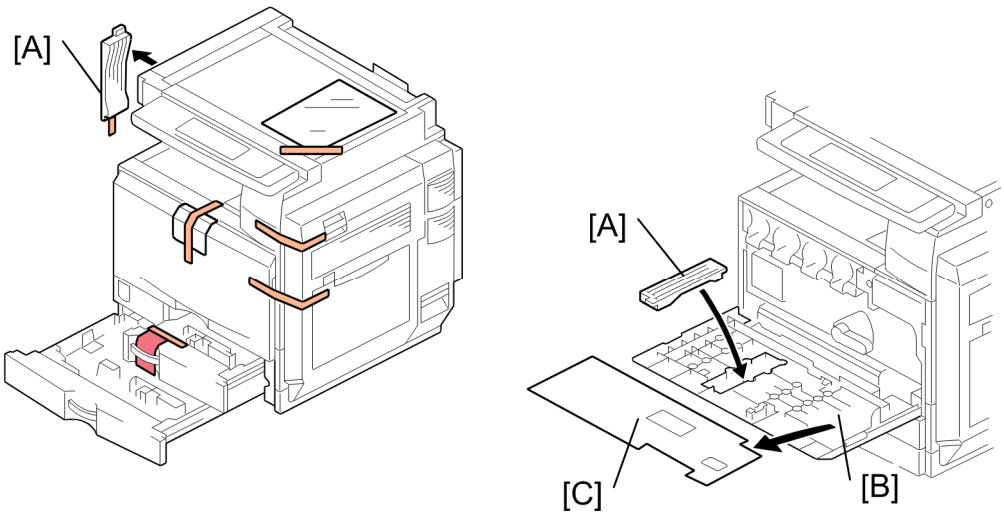
- Remove the tape from the development units before you turn the main switch on. The development units can be severely damaged if you do not remove the tape.

Put the machine on the paper tray unit or the LCT first if you install an optional paper tray unit or the optional LCT at the same time. Then install the machine and other options.

Note

- Keep the shipping retainers after you install the machine. You may need them in the future if you transport the machine to another location.

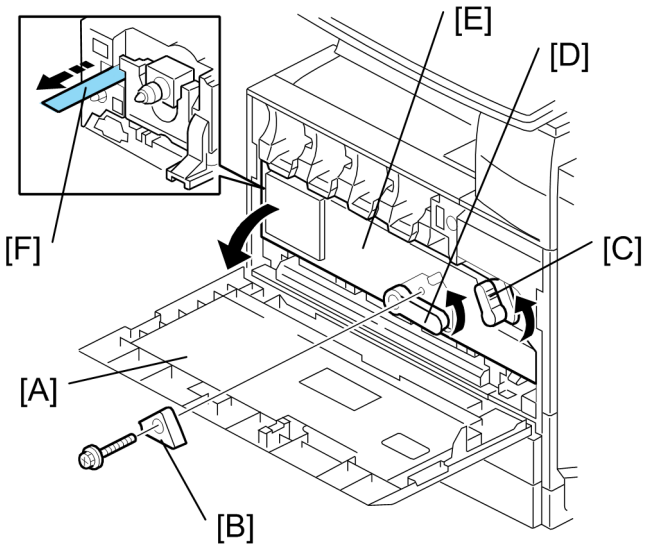
Tapes and Retainers



d023i101_i102

1. Remove all the tapes and retainers on the machine.
2. Remove all the tapes and retainers in trays 1 and 2, and then take out the power cord from tray 1 (if applicable).
3. Remove the scanner unit stay [A].
4. Open the front door [B], and then remove the jam location sheet [C].
5. Keep the scanner unit stay [A] inside the front door [B].
6. Reattach the jam location sheet.
7. Close the front door.

Developer and Toner Bottles



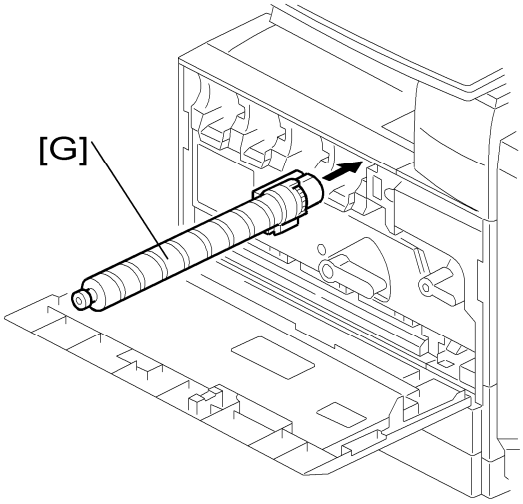
d027i106

1. Open the front door [A].
   - GSA model (-57) and EU models (-27) do not require steps from 2 to 7. Skip to step 8 if you install these models.
2. Remove the stopper [B] (x 1).

   Note
   - This stopper locks the drum positioning plate lever.
3. Release the image transfer unit lock lever [C], and turn the drum positioning plate lever [D] counterclockwise.
4. Open the drum positioning plate [E].
5. Remove all tapes [F] from the four development units.

   Note
   - When you remove the tape from the development unit, hold the development unit with your hand, and then pull the tape.
6. Close the drum positioning plate. Then lock the image transfer unit lock and turn the drum positioning plate lever clockwise.
7. Lock the drum positioning plate lever with the stopper [B] (x 1).
8. Shake each toner bottle five or six times.

http://www.manuals4you.com



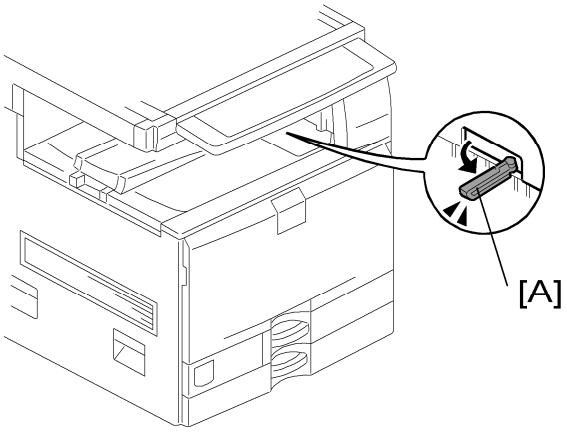
9. Install each toner bottle [G] in the machine.
10. Close the front door.

Paper Trays

1. Pull each paper tray out. Then adjust the side guides and end guide to match the paper size.

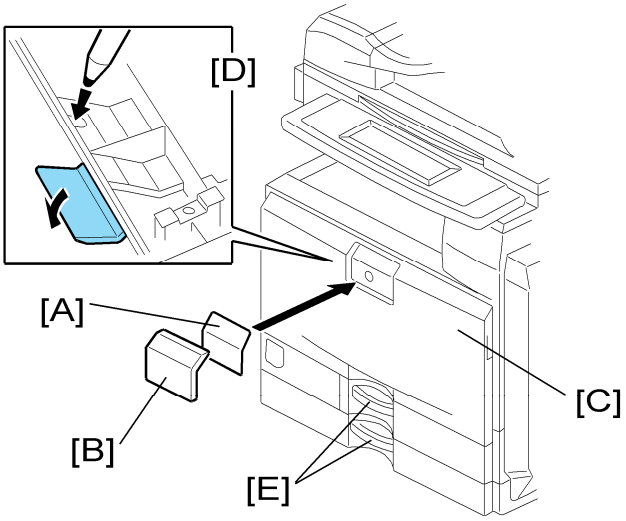
Note

- To move the side guides, first pull out the tray fully. Then push down the green lock at the rear inside the tray.



2. Pull out the feeler [A] for the output tray full detection mechanism.

Emblem and Decals



1. Attach the correct emblem [A] and the cover [B] to the front door [C] of the machine, if the emblem is not attached.

Note

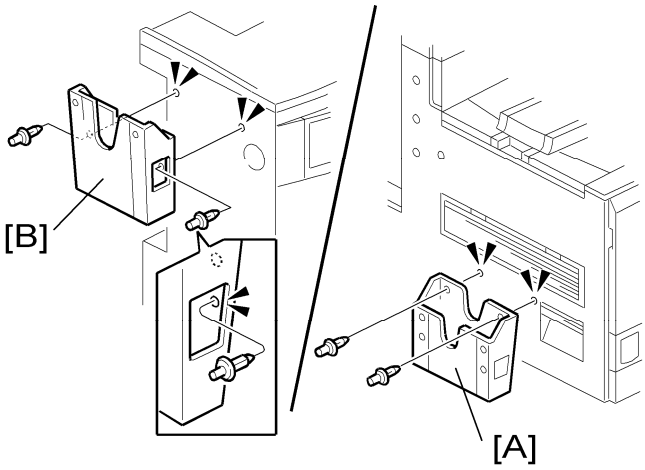
- If you want to change the emblem that has been already attached, remove the panel with an object (not a sharp object) as shown [D], and then install the correct emblem.

2. Attach the correct paper tray number and size decals to the paper trays [E].

Note

- Paper tray number and size decals are also used for the optional paper tray or the optional LCT. Keep these decals for use with these optional units.

Manual Pocket Attachment



1. Attach the manual pocket [A] to the left side of the copier (snap rivet x 2).

http://www.manuals4you.com

2. If a finisher has been installed, attach the manual pocket [B] to the rear side of the finisher (snap rivet x 2).

Initialize the Developer

1. Plug in the machine.
2. Make sure that the platen or ARDF is closed and the main power is turned off.
3. Turn the main power switch on. The machine automatically starts the initialization procedure. The Start button LED (⏻) turns green when this procedure has finished.
4. Make copies of image samples (text, photo, and text/photo modes).
5. Do the Automatic Color Calibration process (ACC) as follows:
   1). Print the ACC test pattern (User tools > Maintenance > ACC > Start).
   2). Put the printout on the exposure glass.
   3). Put 10 sheets of white paper on top of the test chart.
   4). Close the ARDF or the platen cover.
   5). Press “Start Scanning” on the LCD panel. The machine starts the ACC.
6. Check that the sample image has been copied normally.

Settings Relevant to the Service Contract

Change the necessary settings for the following SP modes if the customer has made a service contract.

Note

- You must select one of the counter methods (developments/prints) in accordance with the contract (☛ SP5-045-001).

Item	SP No.	Function	Default
Counting method	SP5-045-001	Specifies if the counting method used in meter charge mode is based on developments or prints. NOTE: You can set this one time only. You cannot change the setting after you have set it for the first time.	"0": Developments
A3/11" x 17" double counting	SP5-104-001	Specifies whether the counter is doubled for A3/11" x 17" paper. When you have to change this setting, contact your supervisor.	"No": Single counting
Service Tel. No. Setting	SP5-812-001 through 004	5812-002 programs the service station fax number. The number is printed on the counter list when the meter charge mode is selected. This lets the user fax the counter data to the service station.	

Settings for @Remote Service

Note

- Prepare and check the following check points before you visit the customer site. For details, ask the @Remote key person.

Check points before making @Remote settings

1. The setting of SP5816-201 in the mainframe must be "0".
2. Device ID2 (SP5811-003) must be correctly programmed.
   - 6 spaces must be put between the 3-digit prefix and the following 8-digit number (e.g. xxx_____xxxxxxxx).
   - ID2 (SP5811-003) and the serial number (SP5811-001) must be the same (e.g. ID2: A01_____23456789 = serial No. A0123456789)

http://www.manuals4you.com

3. The following settings must be correctly programmed.
   - Proxy server IP address (SP5816-063)
   - Proxy server Port number (SP5816-064)
   - Proxy User ID (SP5816-065)
   - Proxy Password (SP5816-066)
4. Get a Request Number

Execute the @Remote Settings

1. Enter the SP mode.
2. Input the Request number which you have obtained from @Remote Center GUI, and then enter [OK] with **SP5816-202**.
3. Confirm the Request number, and then click [EXECUTE] with **SP5816-203**.
4. Check the confirmation result with **SP5816-204**.

Value	Meaning	Solution/ Workaround
0	Succeeded	-
1	Request Number Error	Check the request number again.
3	Communication Error (Proxy Enabled)	Check the network condition.
4	Communication Error (Proxy Disabled)	Check the network condition.
5	Proxy Error (Illegal User Name Or Password)	Check Proxy user name and password.
6	Communication Error	Check the network condition.
8	Other Error	See "SP5816-208 Error Codes" below this.
9	Request Number Confirmation Executing	Processing… Please wait.

5. Make sure that the screen displays the Location Information with **SP5816-205** only when it has been input at the Center GUI.
6. Click [EXECUTE] to execute the registration with **SP5816-206**.

7. Check the registration result with **SP5816-207**.

Value	Meaning	Solution/ Workaround
0	Succeeded	-
1	Request Number Error	Check the request number again.
2	Already Registered	Check the registration status.
3	Communication Error (Proxy Enabled)	Check the network condition.
4	Communication Error (Proxy Disabled)	Check the network condition.
5	Proxy Error (Illegal User Name Or Password)	Check Proxy user name and password.
8	Other Error	See "SP5816-208 Error Codes" below this.
9	Request Number Confirmation Executing	Processing… Please wait.

8. Exit the SP mode.

http://www.manuals4you.com

SP5816-208 Error Codes

Cause	Code	Meaning	Solution/ Workaround
Operation Error, Incorrect Setting	-12002	Inquiry, Registration Attempted Without Acquiring Request No.	Obtain a Request Number before attempting the Inquiry or Registration.
	-12003	Attempted Registration Without Execution Of A Confirmation And No Previous Registration.	Perform Confirmation before attempting the Registration.
	-12004	Attempted Setting With Illegal Entries For Certification And Id2.	Check ID2 of the mainframe.
	-12005	@Remote Communication Is Prohibited. The Device Has An Embedded RC Gate-Related Problem.	Make sure that "Remote Service" in User Tools is set to "Do not prohibit".
	-12006	A Confirmation Request Was Made After The Confirmation Had Been Already Completed.	Execute registration.
	-12007	The Request Number Used At Registration Was Different From The One Used At Confirmation.	Check Request No.
	-12008	Update Certification Failed Because Mainframe Was In Use.	Check the mainframe condition. If the mainframe is in use, try again later.
Error Caused by Response from GW URL	-2385	Other Error	
	-2387	Not Supported At The Service Center	
	-2389	Database Out Of Service	

Cause	Code	Meaning	Solution/ Workaround
	-2390	Program Out Of Service	
	-2391	Two Registrations For The Same Mainframe	Check the registration condition of the mainframe
	-2392	Parameter Error	
	-2393	External RCG Not Managed	
	-2394	Mainframe Not Managed	
	-2395	Box ID For External RCG Is Illegal.	
	-2396	Mainframe ID For External RCG Is Illegal.	
	-2397	Incorrect ID2 Format	Check the ID2 of the mainframe.
	-2398	Incorrect Request Number Format	Check the Request No.

2.3.4 MOVING THE MACHINE

This section shows you how to manually move the machine from one floor to another floor. See the section “Transporting the Machine” if you have to pack the machine and move it a longer distance.

1. Remove all trays from the optional paper feed unit or LCT.

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.3.5 TRANSPORTING THE MACHINE

Main Frame

1. Do SP 4806-001 to move the scanner carriage from the home position. This prevents dust from falling into the machine during transportation.
2. Remove the toner cartridges. This prevents toner flow into the toner supply tube, which is caused by vibration during transport. This can also cause the tube to be clogged with toner.
3. Make sure there is no paper left in the paper trays. Then fix down the bottom plates with a sheet of paper and tape.
4. Empty the toner collection bottle. Then attach securing tape to stop the toner bottle from coming out.
5. Do one of the following:
   - Attach shipping tape to the covers and doors.
   - Shrink-wrap the machine tightly.

Note

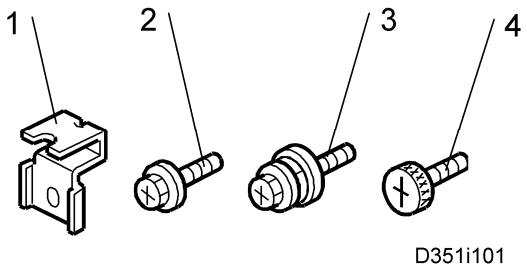
- After you move the machine, make sure you do the "Auto Color Registration" as follows. This optimizes color registration.
- 1. Do the "Forced Line Position Adj. Mode c" (SP2-111-3).
- 2. Then do the "Forced Line Position Adj. Mode a" (SP2-111-1).
  To check if SP 2-111-1 was successful, watch the screen during the process. A message is displayed at the end. Also, you can check the result with SP 2-194-10 to -12.
- Make sure that the side fences in the trays are correctly positioned to prevent color registration errors.

2.4 PAPER FEED UNIT INSTALLATION (D351)

2.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Securing Bracket	2
2	Screw (M4x10)	2
3	Spring Washer Screw	1
4	Knob Screw	3



D351i101

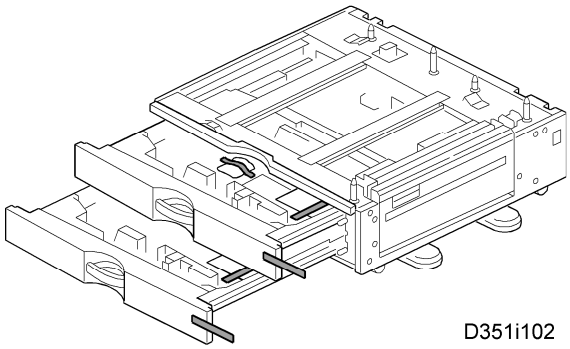
2.4.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

⚠CAUTION

- Turn off the main switch of the copier and unplug the power cord before you start the installation procedure.
- You need two or more persons to lift the copier. The copier is highly unstable when lifted by one person, and may cause injury or property damage.
- Do not lift the copier with the paper feed unit installed. The handle and grips may be damaged.

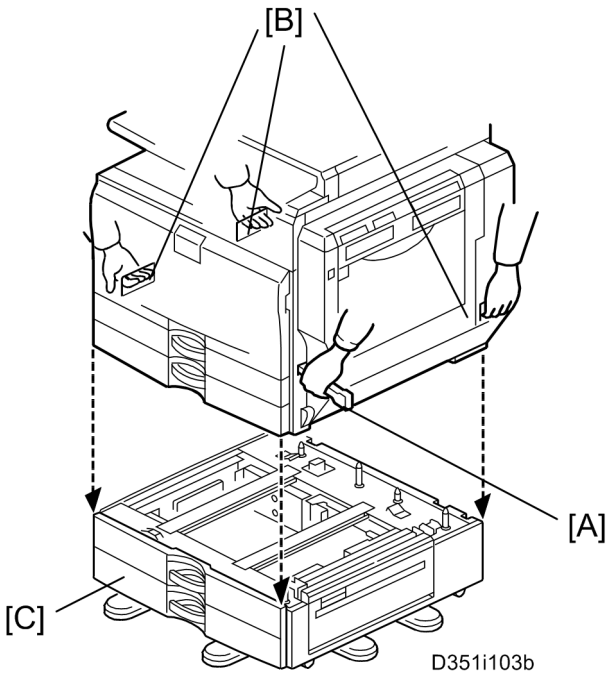
http://www.manuals4you.com

Paper Feed Unit Installation (D351)



D351i102

1. Remove all tape on the paper feed unit.
2. Remove the paper trays and remove all tape and padding.

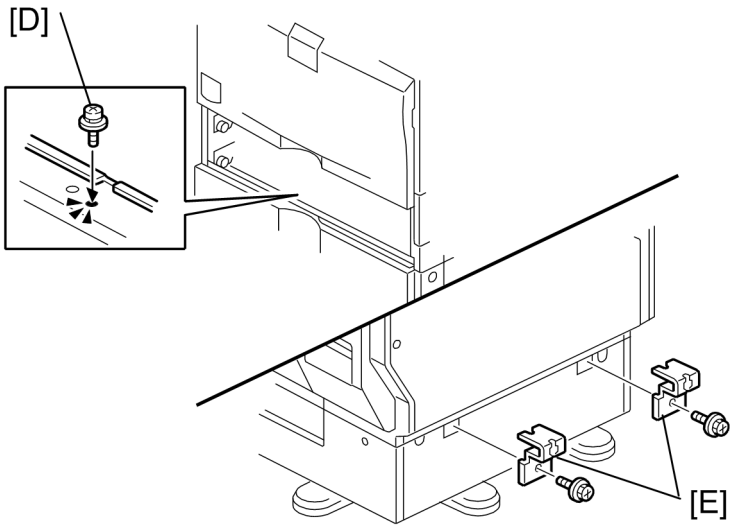


D351i103b

3. Grasp the handle [A] and grips [B] of the machine.
4. Lift the copier and install it on the paper feed unit [C].

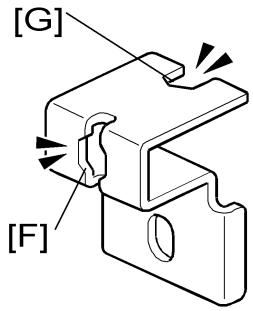
Note

- Hold the handle and grips of the machine when you lift and move the machine.



D351i104b

5. Remove trays 1 and 2 of the machine.
6. Fasten the spring washer screw [D].
7. Reinstall all trays.
8. Attach the securing brackets [E] (x 1 each; M4x10).



Note

- One of the securing brackets is used as a securing tool (the cutout [F] is used in step 6). But the cutout [G] is for attaching the tray heater. Therefore, attach the securing brackets [E] after installing the tray heater if you install the tray heater.

9. Load paper into the paper feed unit.
10. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.
11. Check the paper feed unit operation and copy quality.

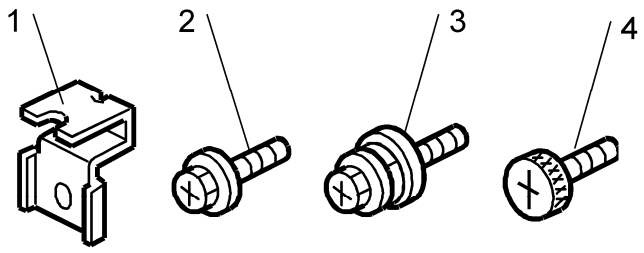
http://www.manuals4you.com

2.5 2000-SHEET LCT

2.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Securing Bracket	2
2	Screw (M4x10)	2
3	Spring Washer Screw	1
4	Knob Screw	3

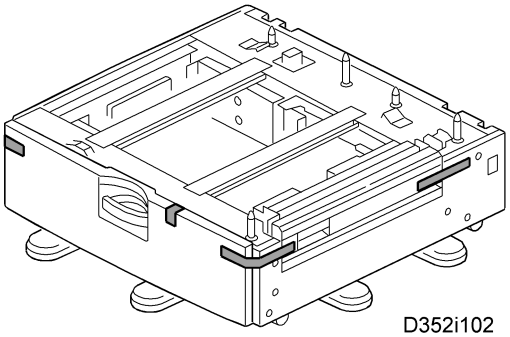


D352i101

2.5.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

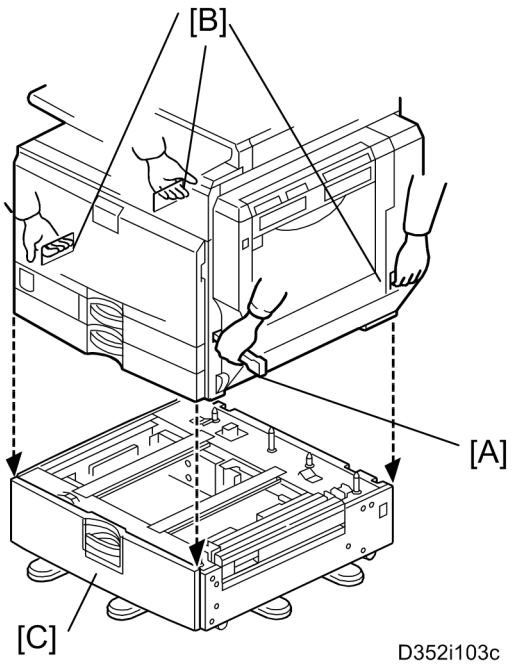
⚠CAUTION

- Turn off the main switch of the copier and unplug the power cord before you start the installation procedure.
- You need two or more persons to lift the copier. The copier is highly unstable when lifted by one person, and may cause injury or property damage.
- Do not lift the copier with the paper feed unit installed. The handle and grips may be damaged.



D352i102

1. Remove all tapes and retainers in the LCT.



D352i103c

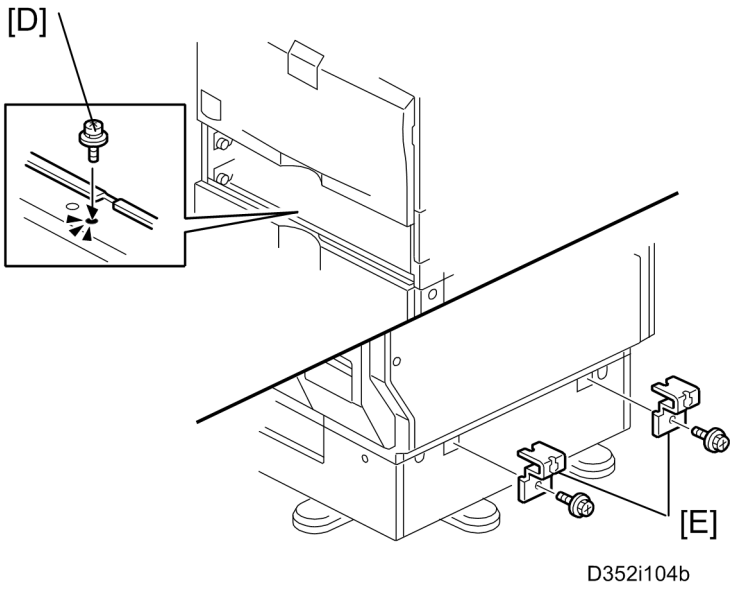
2. Grasp the handle [A] and grips [B] of the machine.
3. Lift the copier and install it on the LCT [C].

Note

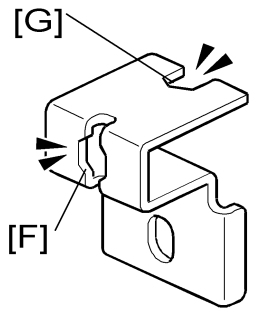
- Hold the handle [A] and grips [B] of the machine when you lift and move the machine.

http://www.manuals4you.com

2000-Sheet LCT



4. Remove trays 1 and 2 of the machine.
5. Fasten the spring washer screw [D].
6. Reinstall all trays.
7. Attach the securing brackets [E] (x 1 each; M4x10).



Note

- One of the securing brackets is used as a securing tool (the cutout [F] is used in step 5). But the cutout [G] is for attaching the tray heater. Therefore, attach the securing brackets [E] after installing the tray heater if you install the tray heater.

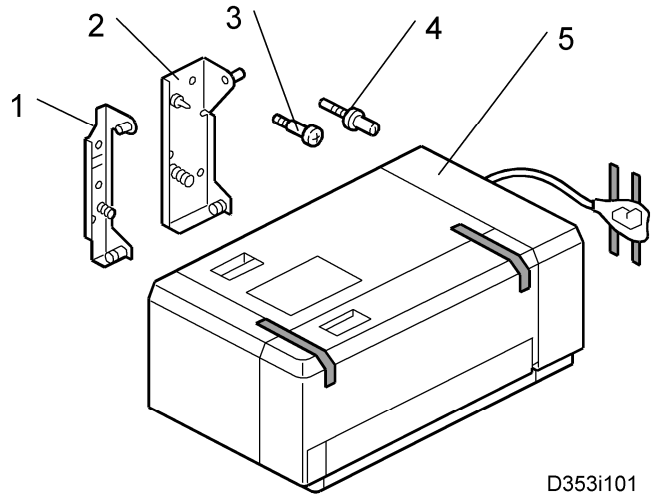
8. Load paper into the LCT.
9. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.
10. Check the LCT operation and copy quality.

2.6 1200-SHEET LCT (D353)

2.6.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Front Bracket	1
2	Rear Bracket	1
3	Stud Screw	4
4	Joint Pin	2
5	LCT	1



http://www.manuals4you.com

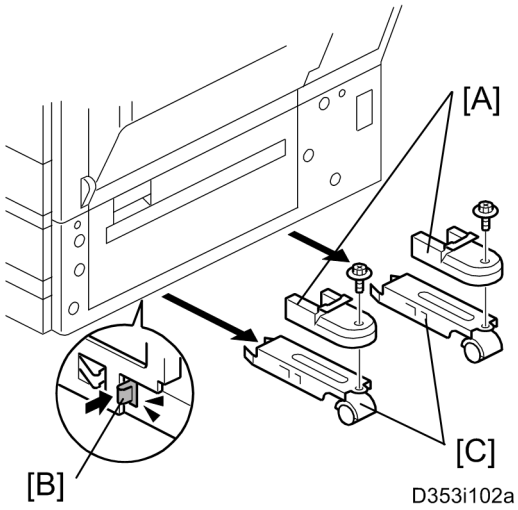
2.6.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

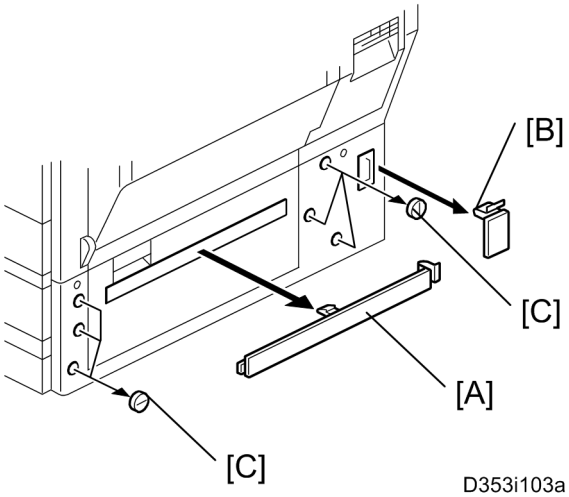
Note

- The Paper Tray Unit (D351) or LCT 2000-Sheet (D352) must be installed before installing this 1200-sheet LCT.



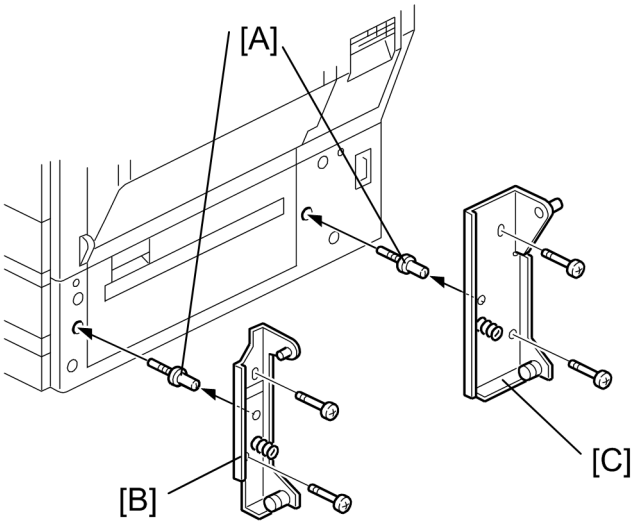
D353i102a

1. Unpack the LCT and remove the tapes.
2. Remove the stand covers [A].
3. Release the locks [B] of the front and rear caster stands.
4. Remove the caster stands [C].



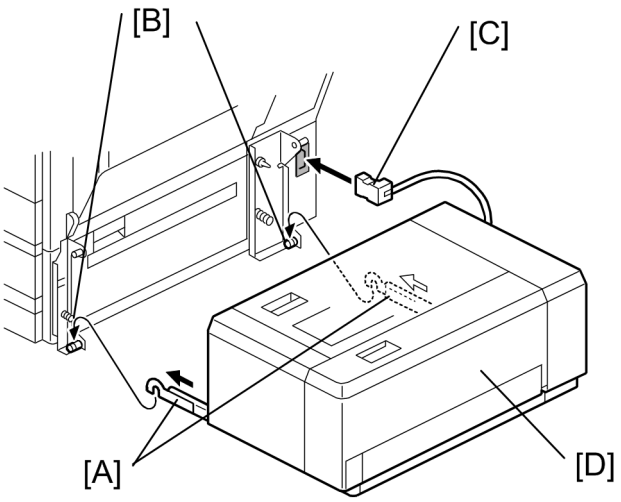
D353i103a

5. Remove the paper path cover [A], connector cover [B] and six hole covers [C].



D353i104a

6. Insert the joint pins [A].
7. Attach the front [B] and rear brackets [C].



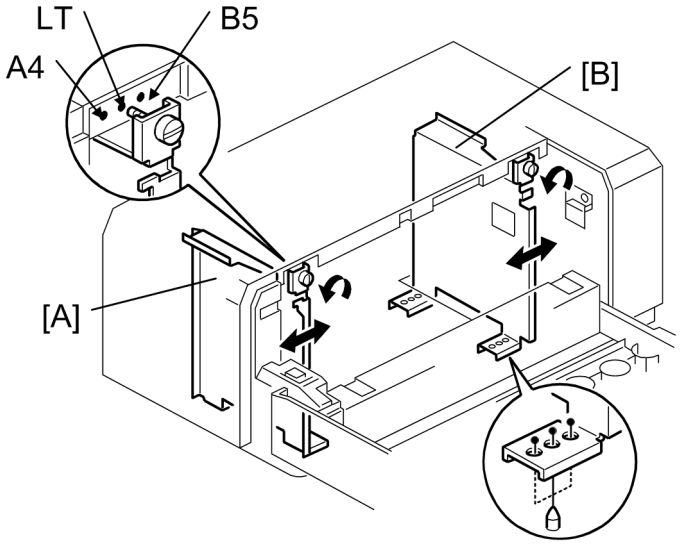
D353i105a

8. Pull out the front and rear rails [A], and then hang them on each bracket [B].
9. Connect the LCT cable [C] to the main machine.
10. Slide the LCT [D] into the main machine.
11. Make sure that the front and rear sides of the LCT are closely attached to the main machine.

http://www.manuals4you.com

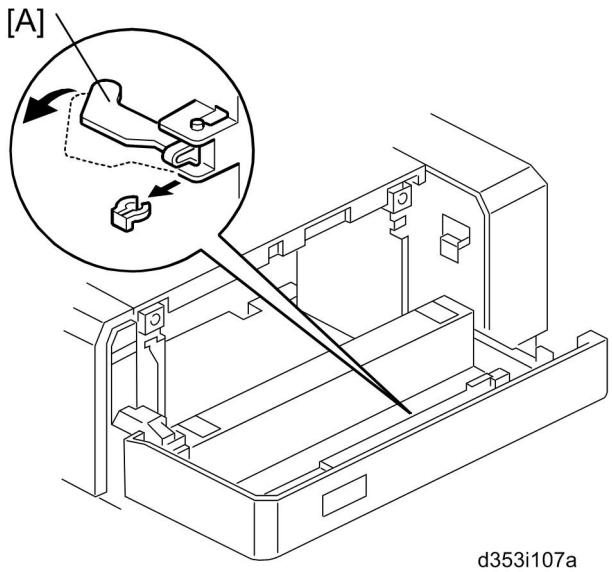
2.6.3 SIDE FENCE POSITION CHANGE

1. Open the right door of the LCT.
2. Push the down switch to lower the tray bottom plate until it reaches its lowest position.



d353i106

3. Remove the front and rear side fences [A, B] (x 1 each).
4. Install the side fences in the correct position (A4 LEF/ LT LEF/ B5 LEF).



d353i107a

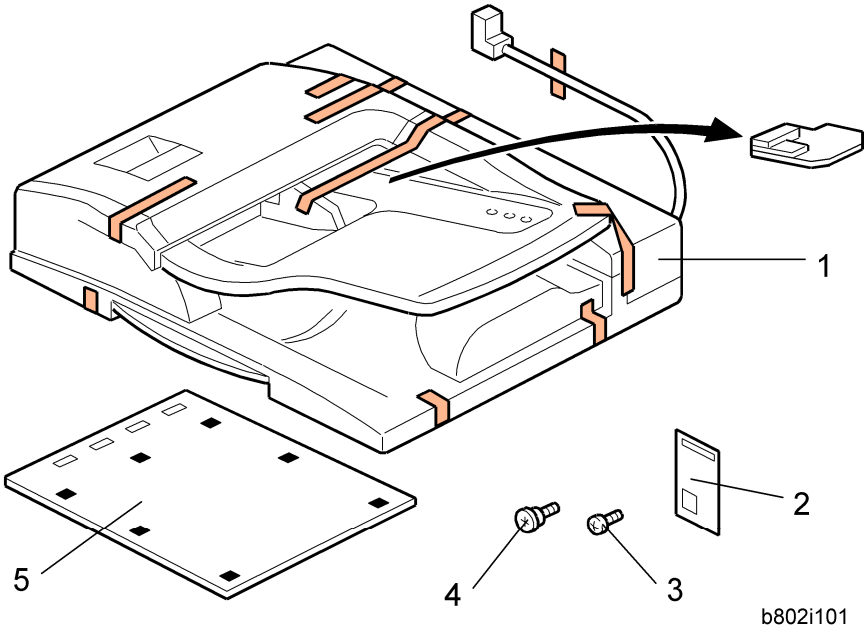
5. Pull the end fence [A] for B5 size paper as shown (x 1) if the side fences are adjusted for B5 size paper.
6. Close the right door.
7. Turn on the main power switch, and then go into the SP mode.
8. Input the correct paper size for the1200-sheet LCT with SP5181-018.

2.7 AUTO REVERSE DOCUMENT FEEDER (B802)

2.7.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	ARDF	1
2	Decal	1
3	Knob Screw	2
4	Stud Screw	2
5	Platen Plate	1



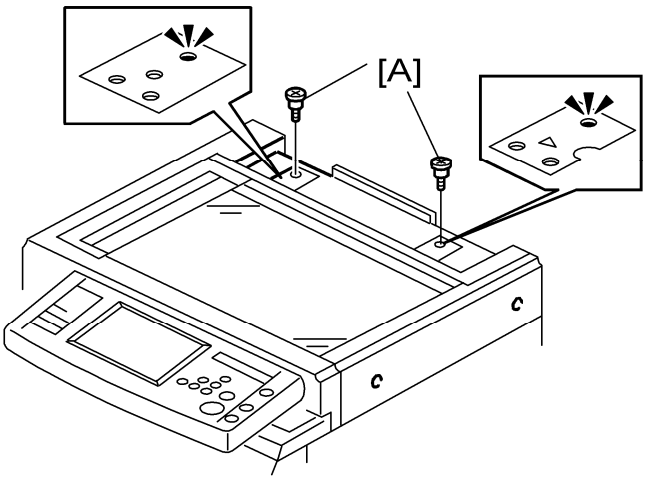
http://www.manuals4you.com

2.7.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

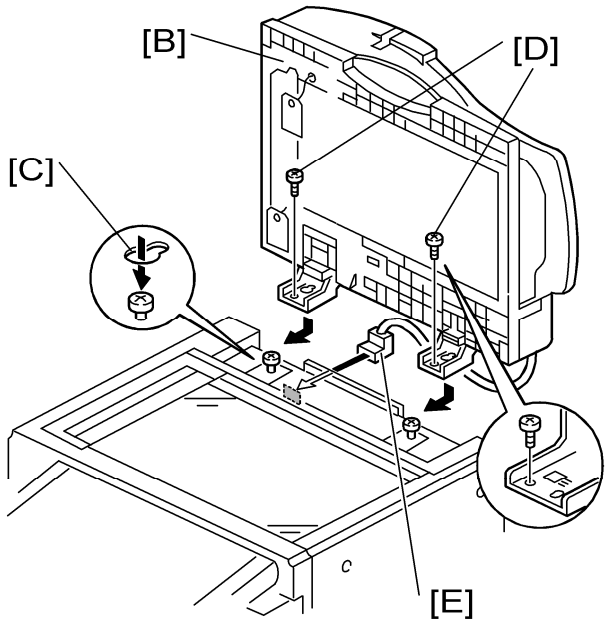
CAUTION

- **Unplug the copier power cord before starting the following procedure.**

1. Remove all tapes and shipping retainers.
2. Remove the two screws already installed at the top rear of the machine.

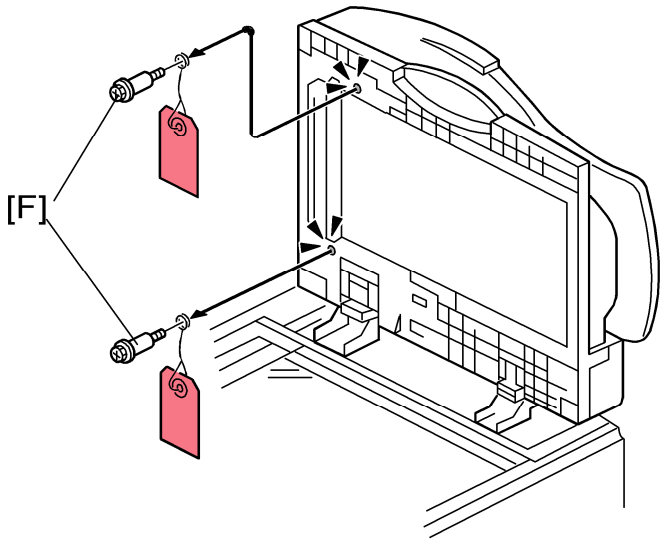


3. Insert the two stud screws [A] on the top of the machine.

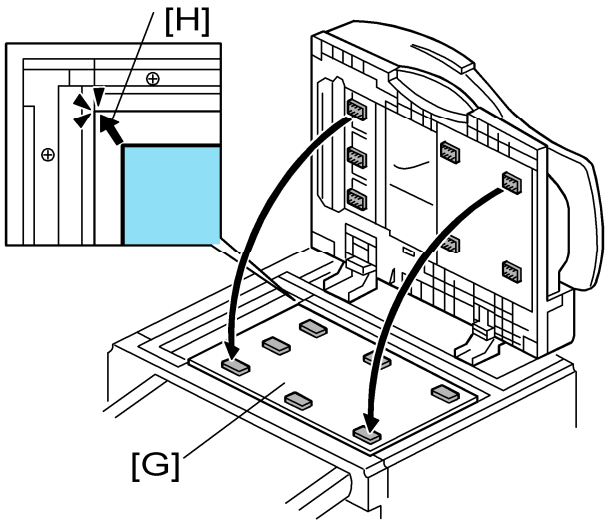


4. Mount the ARDF [B] by aligning the screw keyholes [C] in the ARDF support plate over the stud screws.
5. Slide the ARDF toward the front of the machine.
6. Secure the ARDF with the two knob screws [D].

7. Connect the ARDF interface cable [E] to the machine.



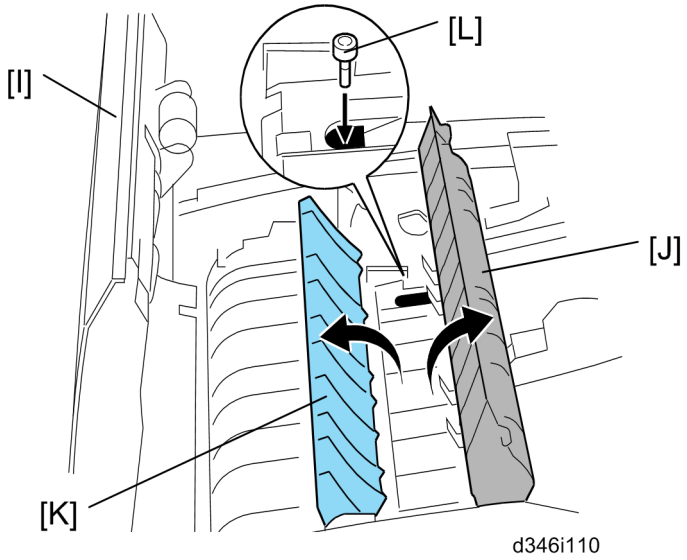
1. Remove two screws [F] from the bottom of the ARDF.



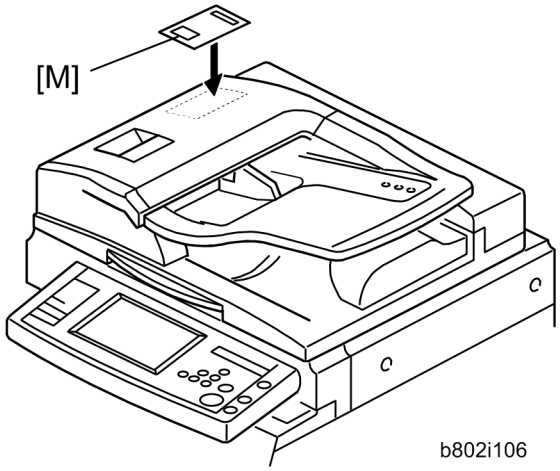
2. Peel off the platen plate [G] and place it on the exposure glass.
3. Align the rear left corner of the platen plate with the corner [H] on the exposure glass.
4. Close the ARDF.
5. Open the ARDF and check that the platen plate is correctly attached.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Auto Reverse Document Feeder (B802)



6. Open the ARDF cover [I].
7. Open the feed-in guide plate [J] and feed-out guide plate [K].
8. Install the stamp [L] into the ARDF.
9. Close two guide plates [J] [K].
10. Close the ARDF cover [I].



11. Attach the decal [M] to the top cover as shown. Choose the language you want.
12. Plug in and turn on the main power switch of the machine, and then check the ARDF operation.
13. Make a full size copy. Check that the registrations (side-to-side and leading edge) and image skew are correct. If they are not, adjust the registrations and image skew (refer to "Copy Adjustments" in the "Replacements and Adjustments" section).

2.8 DOCUMENT FEEDER HANDLE TYPE 5

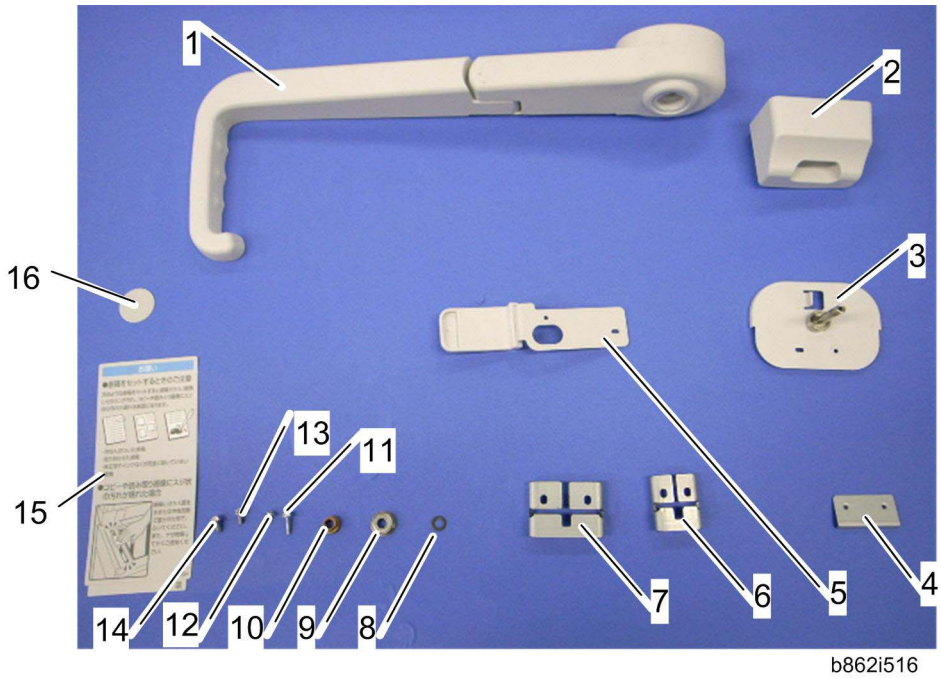
2.8.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Handle Unit	1
2	Holder	1
3	Stud Bracket	1
4	Securing Bracket	1
5	Handle Bracket	1
6	Hinge Stopper - Right	1
7	Hinge Stopper - Left	1
8	Spacer	1
9	Bushing: M6	1
10	Bushing: 6MM	1
11	Tapping Screw: M3 x 12	2
12	Tapping Screw (Self Binding): M3 x 12	2
13	Screw: M3 x 8	3
14	Tapping Screw: M4 x 8	4
15	Operation Decal	1
16	Stud Decal	1

http://www.manuals4you.com

Document Feeder Handle Type 5



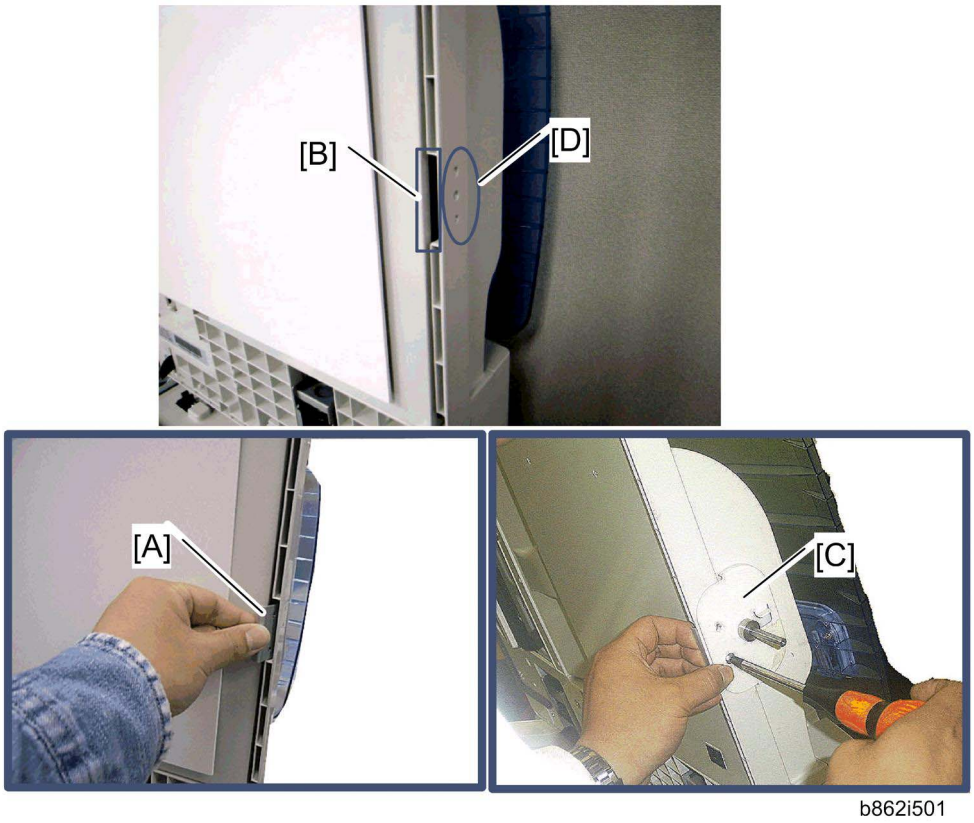
2.8.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

⚠CAUTION

- Turn off the main switch of the copier and unplug the power cord before you start the installation procedure.

Preparing before Installing the DF Handle

1. Open the ADF unit.

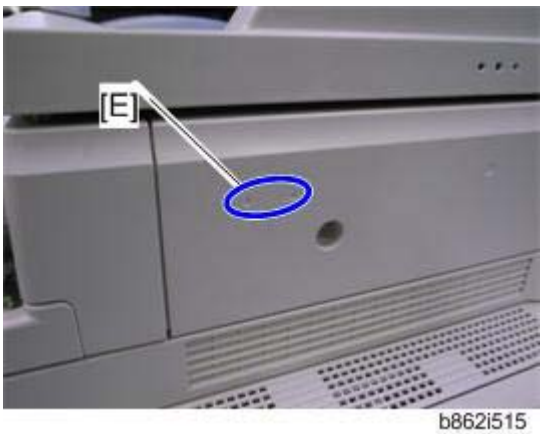


b862i501

2. Hold the securing bracket [A] at the location [B], inside the ADF cover.
3. Secure the stud bracket [C] to the outside of the ADF cover at location [D] with two screws (x 2: M3x8).

Note

- The two screws must go through the ADF cover and the securing bracket [A].



b862i515

4. Make two screw holes [E] in the scanner right cover with an M3x12 tapping screw from the accessories.

http://www.manuals4you.com

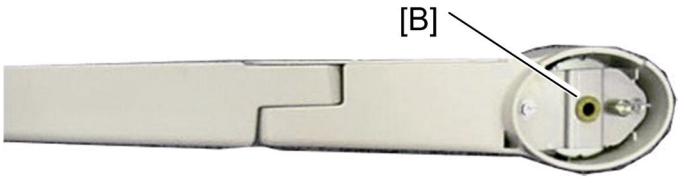
Document Feeder Handle Type 5

Installing the DF Handle



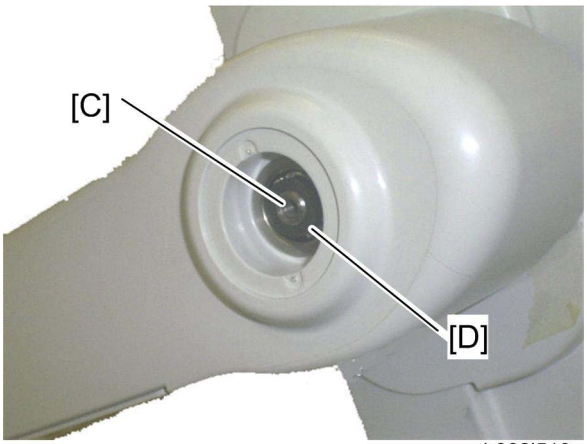
b862i509

1. Attach the holder [A] to the scanner right cover (Tapping Screw - M3x12: x 2).
   - At first, secure the screw at the rear side (away from the operation panel) temporarily and then at the front side temporarily. After that, secure them fully.



b862i513

2. Install the bushing: 6MM [B] in the inside of the handle unit.
3. Attach the handle unit to the stud bracket on the left side of the ADF.



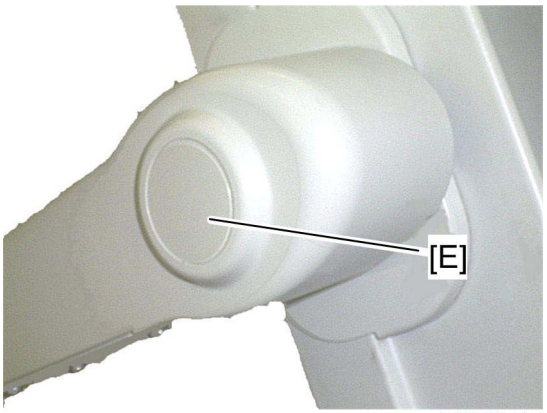
b862i510

4. In the outside of the handle unit, install the bushing - M6 [C] first, and then the spacer [D].



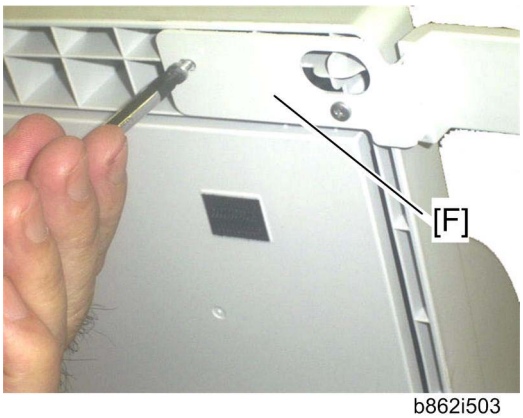
b862i514

5. Secure the handle unit with a screw (x 1: M3x8).



b862i511

6. Clean the handle unit with alcohol. Then attach the stud decal [E] at the location that was cleaned.



b862i503

7. Attach the handle bracket [F] at the front right side on the bottom of the ADF unit (Tapping Screw [Self Binding] x 2: M3x12).
8. Close the ADF unit.

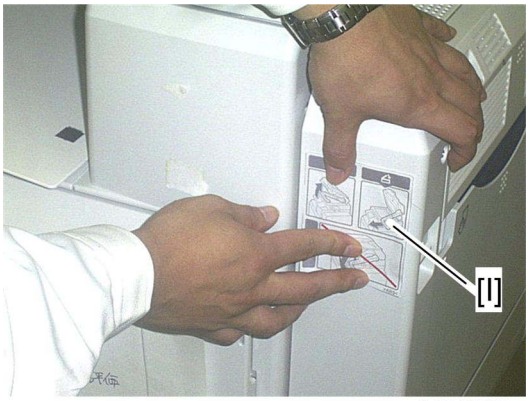
http://www.manuals4you.com

Document Feeder Handle Type 5



b862i504

9. Attach the hinge stoppers (left [G] and right [H]) to the left and right hinges (Tapping screw x 2: M4x8 each).



b862i505

10. Clean the front side of the duplex unit with alcohol. Then attach the operation decal [I] at the location that was cleaned.



b862i506

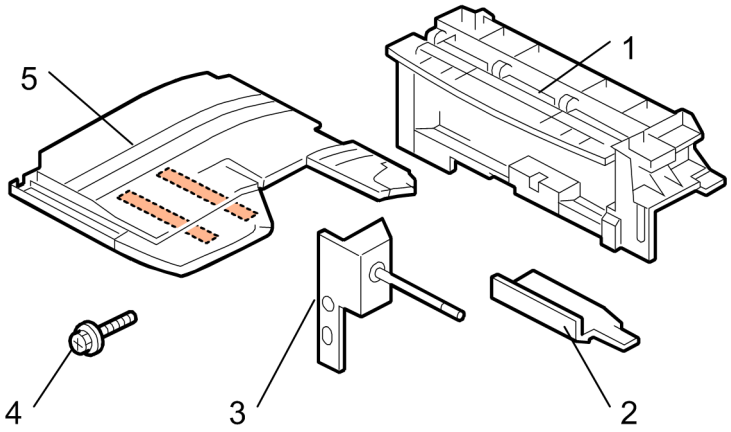
11. Check the operation of the handle unit [J].

2.9 1-BIN TRAY UNIT (D414)

2.9.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	1-Bin Tray Unit	1
2	End-fence	1
3	Tray Support Bar	1
4	Screws (M3 x 16)	2
5	Tray	1



d414i101

2.9.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

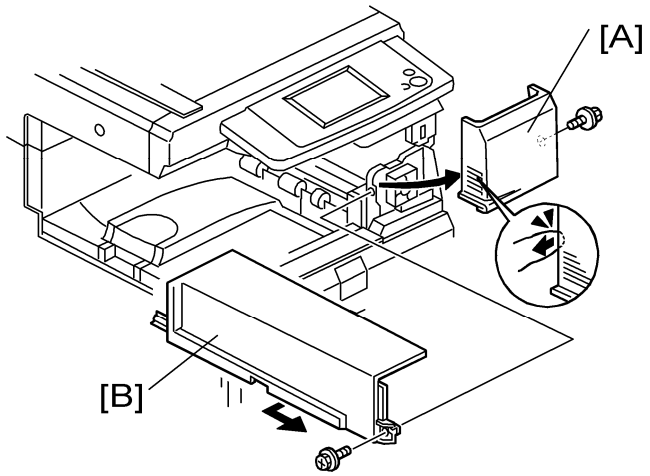
- **Unplug the copier power cord before starting the following procedure.**

If the bridge unit (D386) has already been installed in the machine, remove it before installing 1-bin tray unit (D414). This will make it easier for you to do the following procedure.

1. Remove all tapes.
2. Open the right door of the machine.

http://www.manuals4you.com

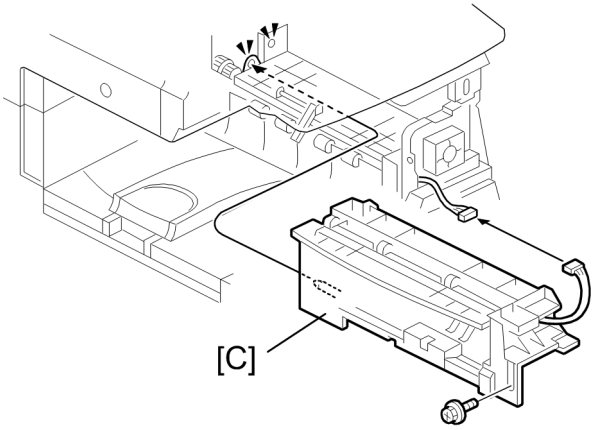
1-Bin Tray Unit (D414)



3. Remove the front right cover [A] (x 1).
4. Remove the inner cover [B] (x 1).

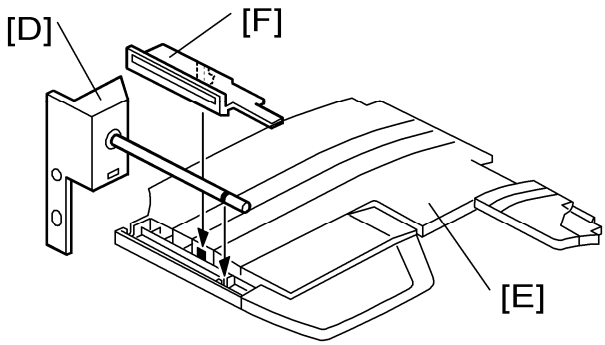
Note

- Keep this screw for step 5.

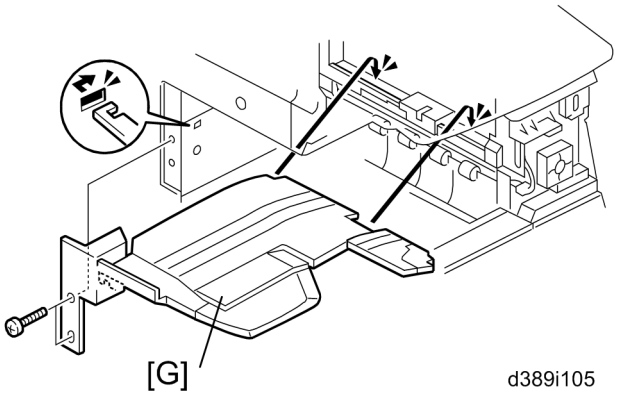


d414i103

5. Install the 1-bin tray unit [C] (x 1, x 1, x 1 [This screw was removed in step 4]).



6. Attach the tray support bar [D] to the tray [E] as shown, and then attach the end-fence [F].



7. Install the tray [G] (with the tray support bar) in the machine (M3 x 16: x 2).
8. Reinstall the front right cover in the machine, and then close the right door of the machine.
9. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.
10. Check the 1-bin tray unit operation.

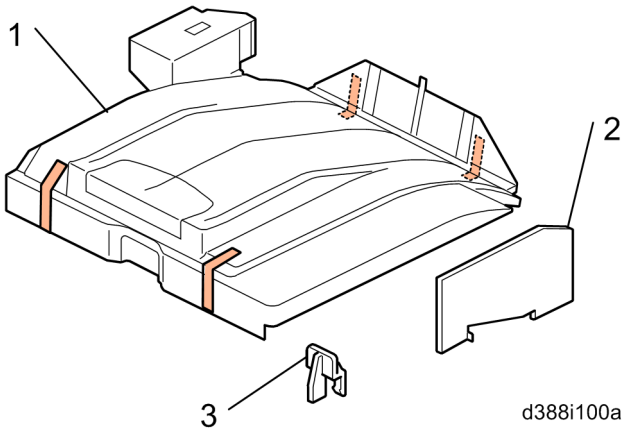
http://www.manuals4you.com

2.10 SHIFT TRAY UNIT (D388)

2.10.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

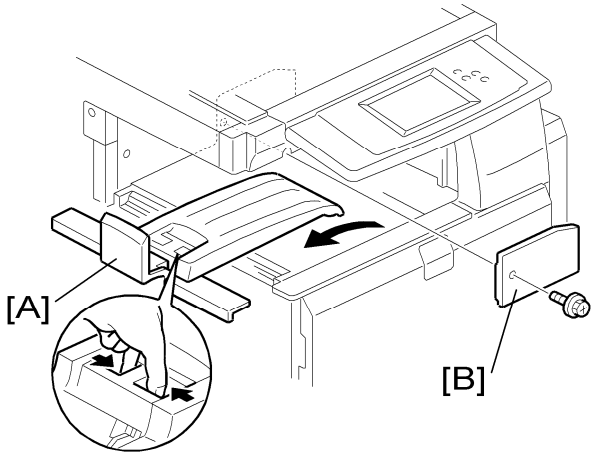
No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Shift Tray Unit	1
2	Paper Guide - Small	2
3	Connector Cover	1



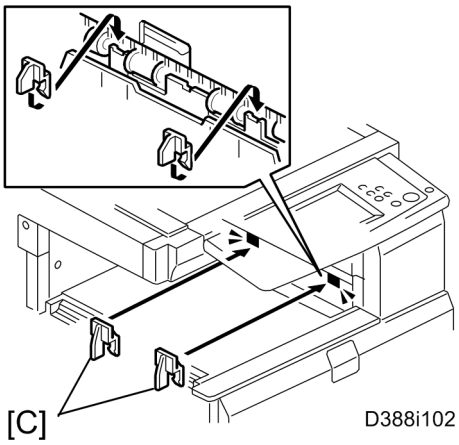
2.10.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

- Unplug the copier power cord before starting the following procedure.



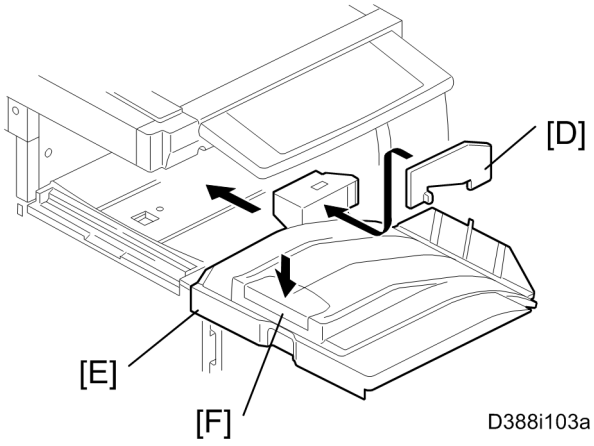
1. Remove all tapes.
2. Remove the standard tray [A].
3. Remove the inner cover [B] (x 1).



4. Install the small paper guides [C].

http://www.manuals4you.com

Shift Tray Unit (D388)



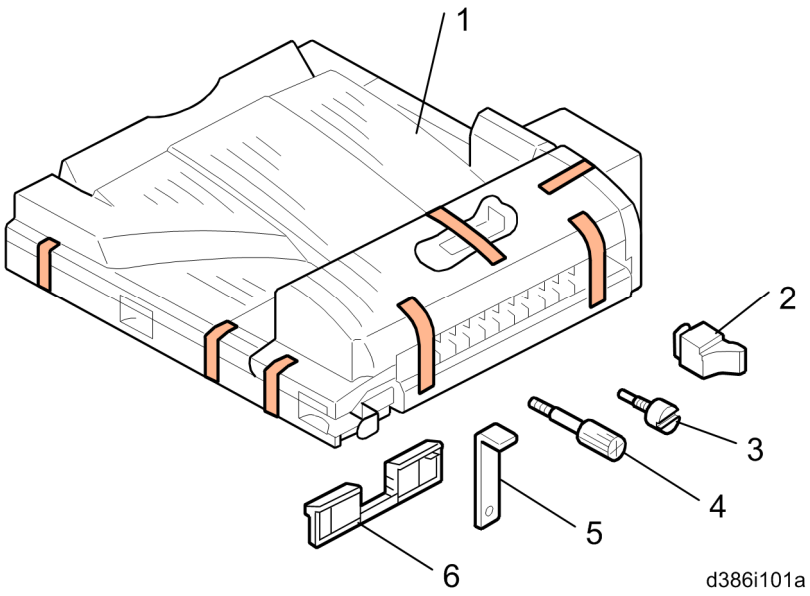
5. Attach the connector cover [D] to the shift tray unit [E].
6. Install the shift tray unit [E] to the machine.
7. Push down the left edge [F] of the shift tray.
8. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.
9. Check the shift tray unit operation.

2.11 BRIDGE UNIT (D386)

2.11.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Bridge Unit	1
2	Frame Cover	1
3	Knob Screw	1
4	Long Knob Screw	1
5	Holder Bracket	1
6	Guide	2



http://www.manuals4you.com

2.11.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

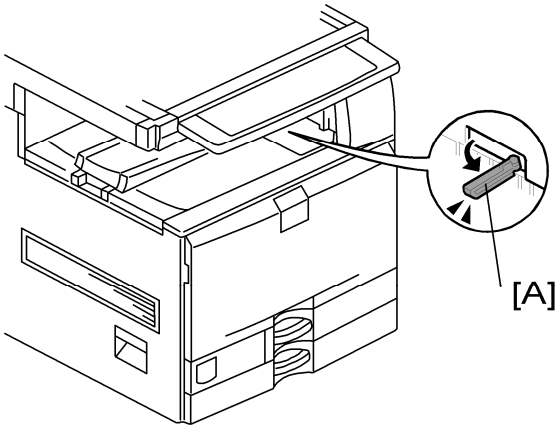
CAUTION

- Unplug the copier power cord before starting the following procedure.

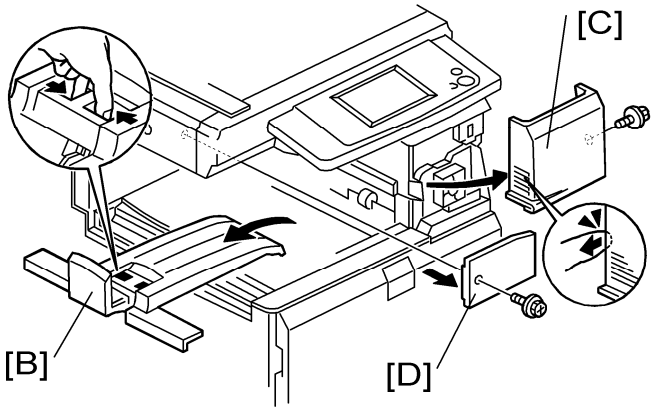
Note

- If you will install the 1-bin tray (D414) in the machine, install the 1-bin tray before you install the bridge unit (D386). This will make it easier for you to do the following procedure.
- If you will install a finisher (B408, B804 or B805) in the machine, install the finisher after you install the bridge unit (D386).

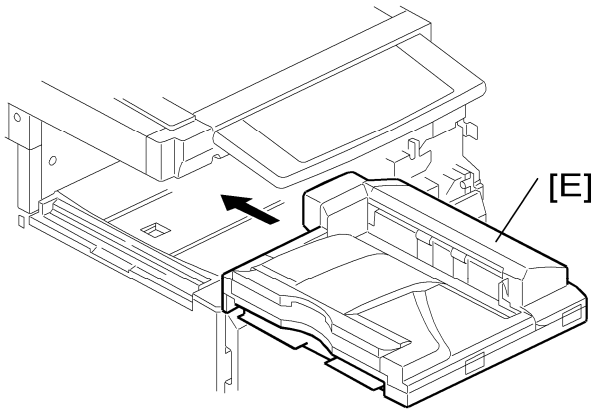
1. Remove all tapes.



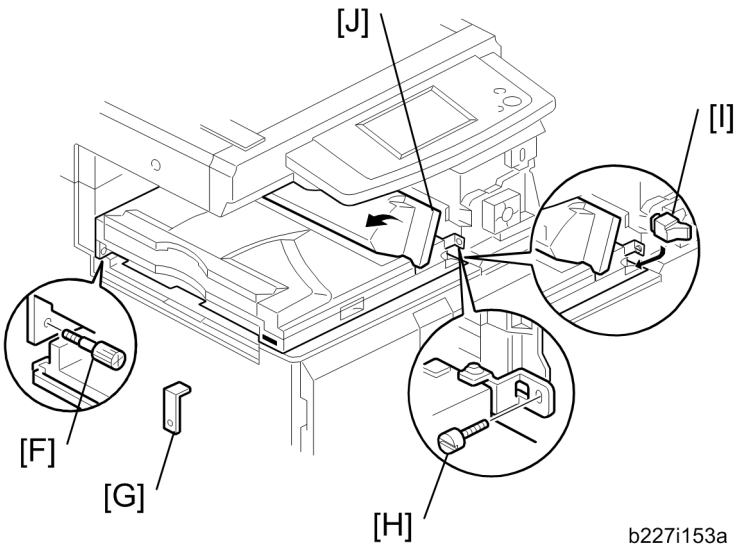
2. If the sensor feeler [A] is out, fold it into the machine.
3. Open the right door of the machine.



4. Remove the inner tray [B].
5. Remove the front right cover [C] (x 1).
6. Remove the connector cover [D] (x 1).



7. Install the bridge unit [E] in the machine.



8. Secure the bridge unit with the knob screw [F] and screw [H].
9. Attach the frame cover [I].
10. Reinstall the front right cover in the machine. Then close the right door of the machine.

Note

- Open the bridge unit cover [J] when installing the front right cover. Otherwise, the bridge unit cover is an obstacle for attaching the front right cover.

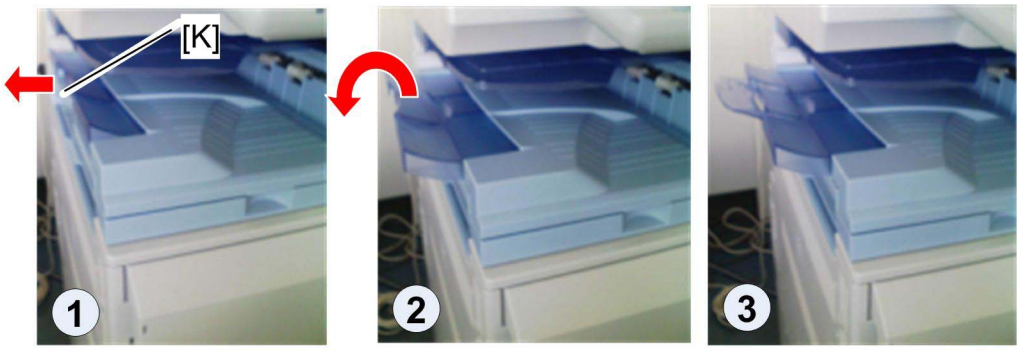
11. Install the optional finisher (refer to the finisher installation procedure).

Note

- If you will not install the finisher at this time, install the holder bracket [G]. Otherwise, the customer will damage the bridge unit if they pull up the bridge unit tray. When you install the finisher, you will need this bracket during the installation procedure.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bridge Unit (D386)



d386i509b

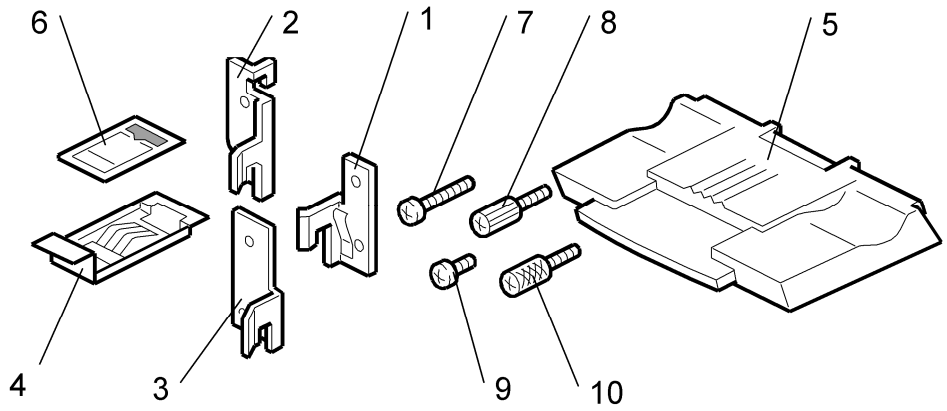
12. Pull the extension tray [K] only if the 1000-sheet finisher (B408) is to be installed in the main machine.
13. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.
14. Check the bridge unit operation.

2.12 1000-SHEET FINISHER (B408)

2.12.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Front Joint Bracket	1
2	Rear Joint Bracket (Not used)	1
3	Rear Joint Bracket	1
4	Grounding Plate	1
5	Copy Tray	1
6	Staple Position Decal	1
7	Screw - M4 x 14	4
8	Knob Screw - M4 x 10	1
9	Screw - M3 x 8	1
10	Knob Screw - M3 x 8	1



http://www.manuals4you.com

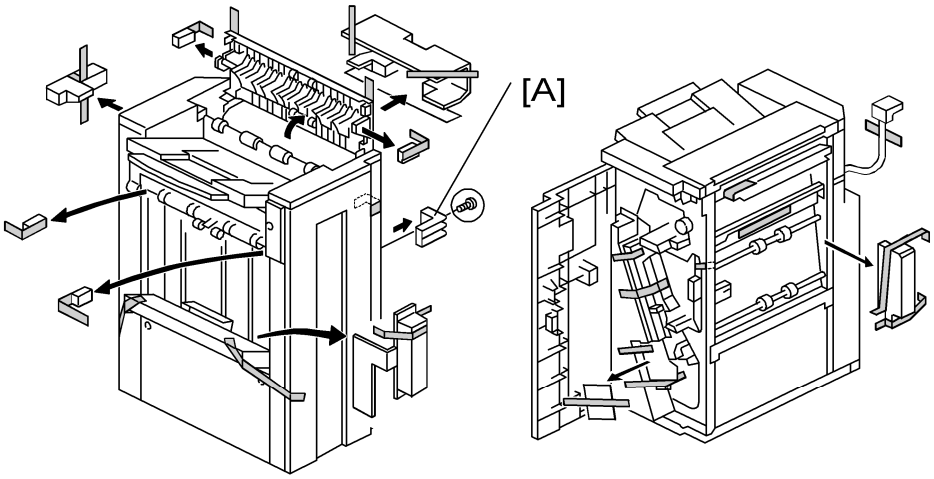
2.12.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

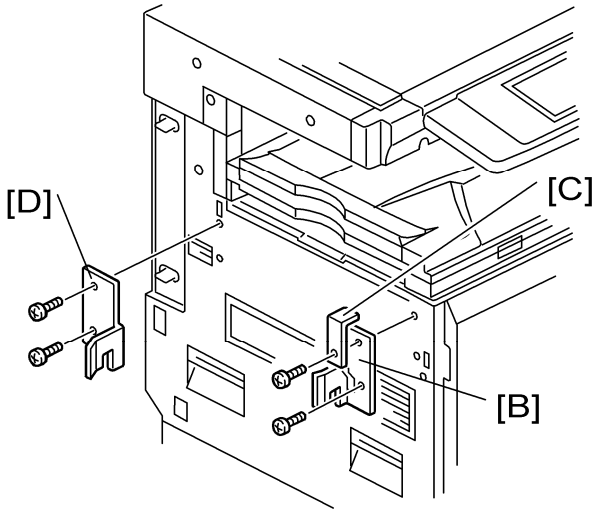
- Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

If this finisher will be installed on the D027 or D029 copier, the following options must be installed before installing this finisher.

- Bridge Unit (D386)
- Paper Feed Unit (D351) or LCT (D352)



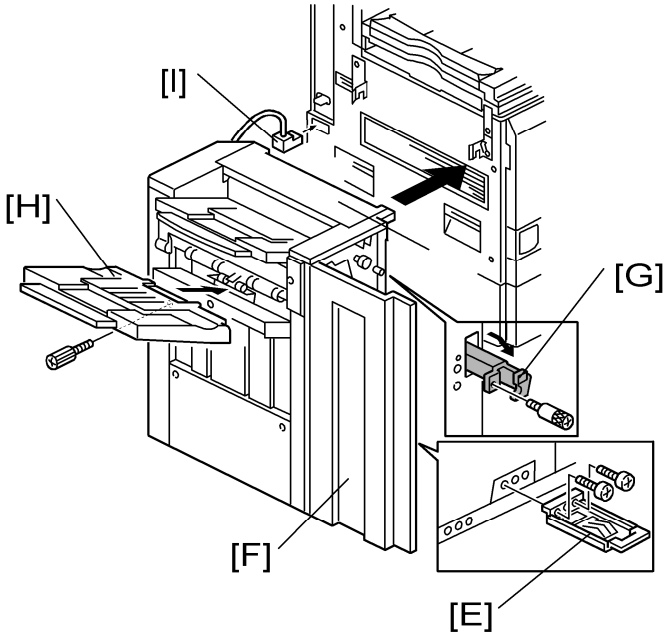
1. Unpack the finisher, and then remove the stopper [A] and tapes (x 1).



2. Install the front joint bracket [B], holder bracket [C] (x 2 - M4 x 14), and rear joint bracket [D] (x 2 - M4 x 14).

Note

- The holder bracket [C] must be placed outside the front joint bracket [B]. The holder bracket is provided with the bridge unit (D386).

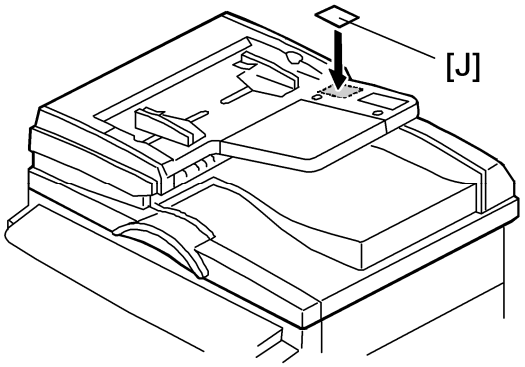


1. Install the grounding plate [E] on the finisher (x 2 - M3 x 8).

Note

- Use the screw removed in step 1 and the screw from the accessory box.

2. Open the front door [F] of the finisher, and then pull the locking lever [G] (1 knob screw - M3 x 8).
3. Align the finisher on the joint brackets, and lock it in place by pushing the locking lever.
4. Secure the locking lever (1 knob screw - M3 x 8).
5. Close the front door.
6. Install the copy tray [H] (1 knob screw - M4 x 10).
7. Connect the finisher cable [I] to the main machine below the right rear handle.



8. Attach the staple position decal [J] to the ARDF as shown.
9. Turn on the main power switch and check the finisher operation.

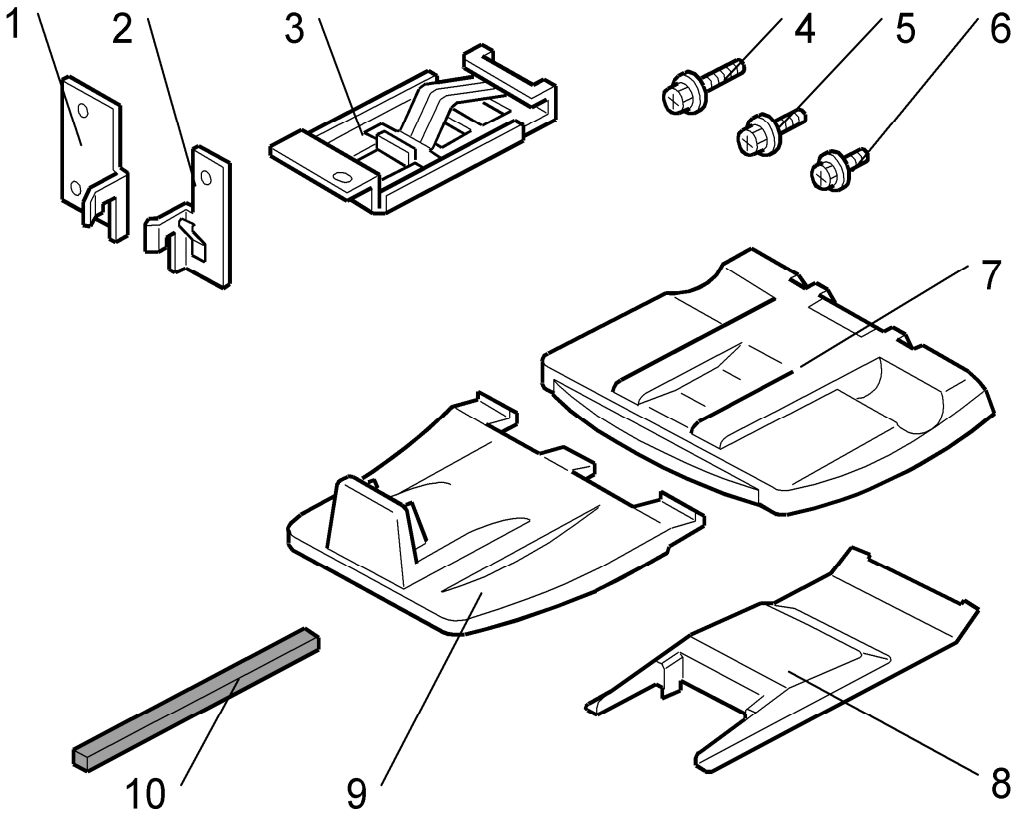
http://www.manuals4you.com

2.13 2000 (BOOKLET)/ 3000-SHEET FINISHER (B804/B805)

2.13.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Rear Joint Bracket	1
2	Front Joint Bracket	1
3	Ground Plate	1
4	Tapping Screws - M4 X14	4
5	Tapping Screws - M3 X 8	1
6	Tapping Screws - M3 X 6	6
7	Upper Output Tray	1
8	Support Tray	1
9	Lower Output Tray (B804 Only)	1
10	Cushion (With Double-Sided Tape)	1



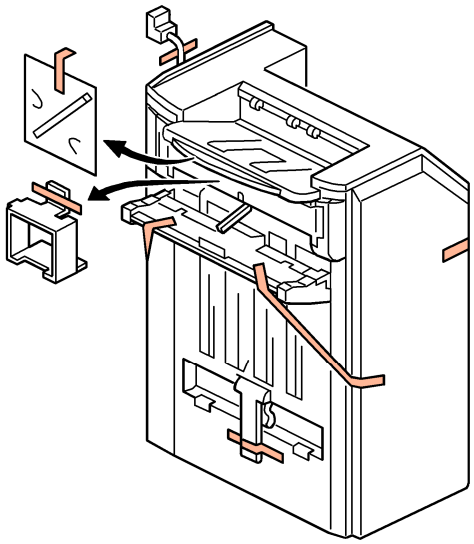
http://www.manuals4you.com

2.13.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

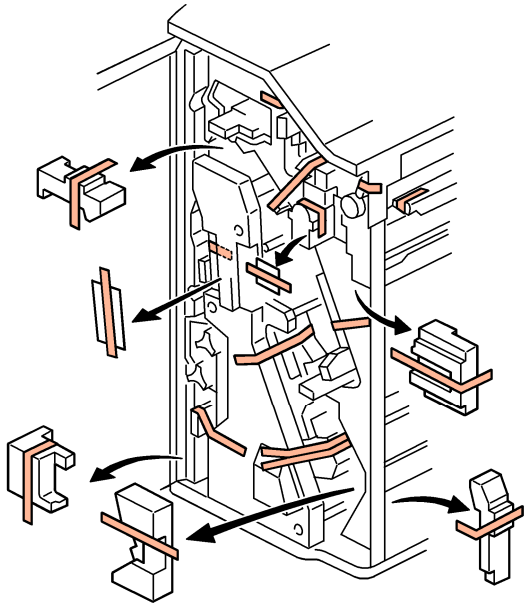
⚠CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

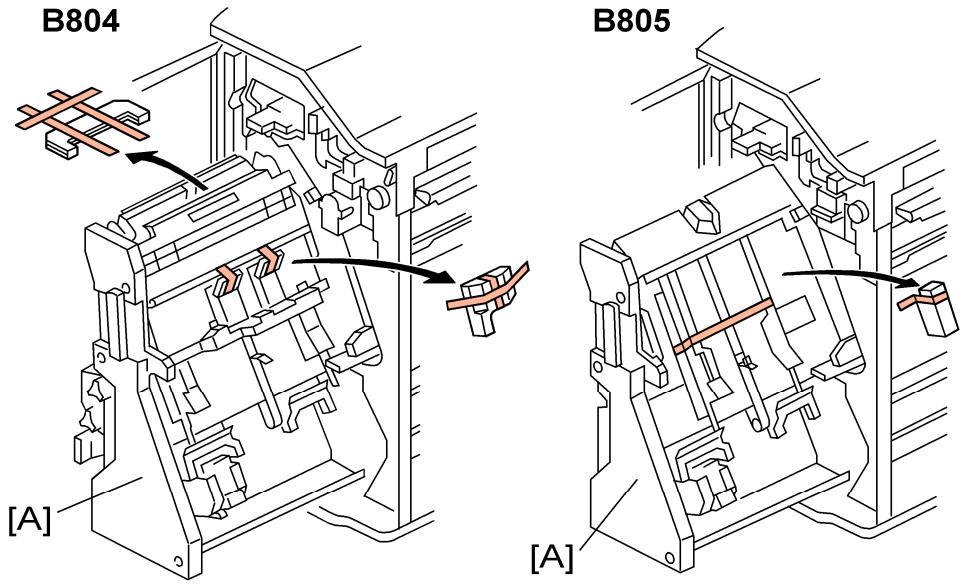
The bridge unit (D386) and optional paper feed unit (D351) must be installed before installing this finisher (B804/B805).



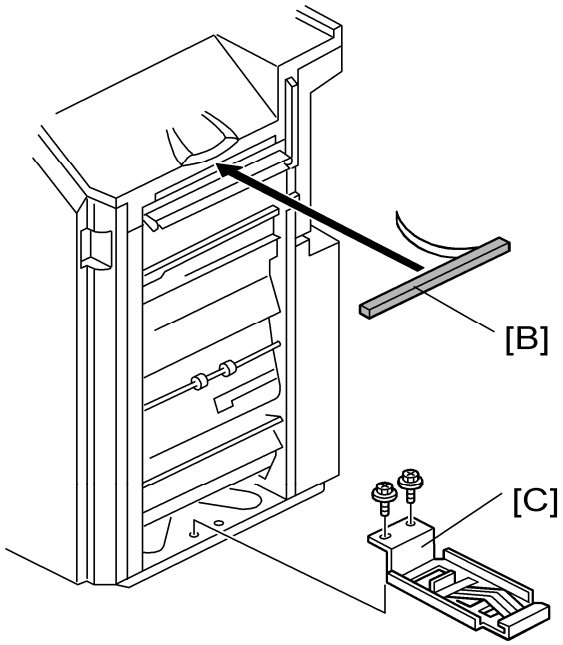
1. Unpack the finisher and remove all tapes and packing materials from the finisher.



2. Open the front door, and then remove all tapes and packing materials from the inside of the finisher.



3. Pull out the jogger unit [A], then remove all tapes and retainers.



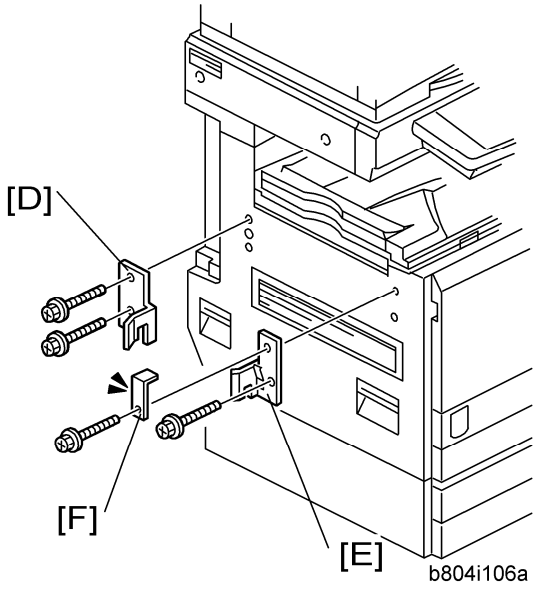
1. Attach the cushions [B] to the finisher.

Note

- Make sure that the cushion is placed within 0 to 1 mm from the edge of the cover.

2. Install the ground plate [C] on the finisher (x 2; M3x6).

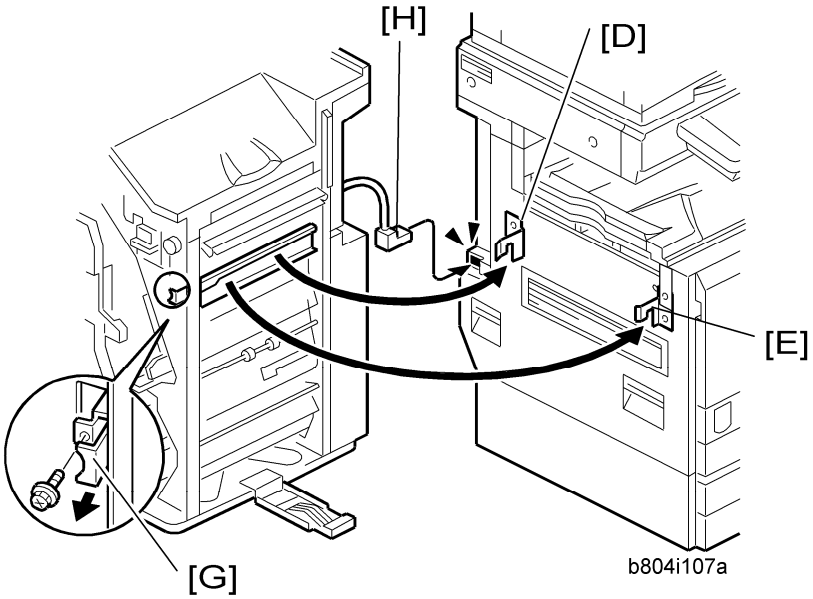
http://www.manuals4you.com



3. Attach the rear joint bracket [D] (☞ x 2; M4x4).
4. Attach the front joint bracket [E] and the holder bracket [F] (☞ x 2; M4x14).

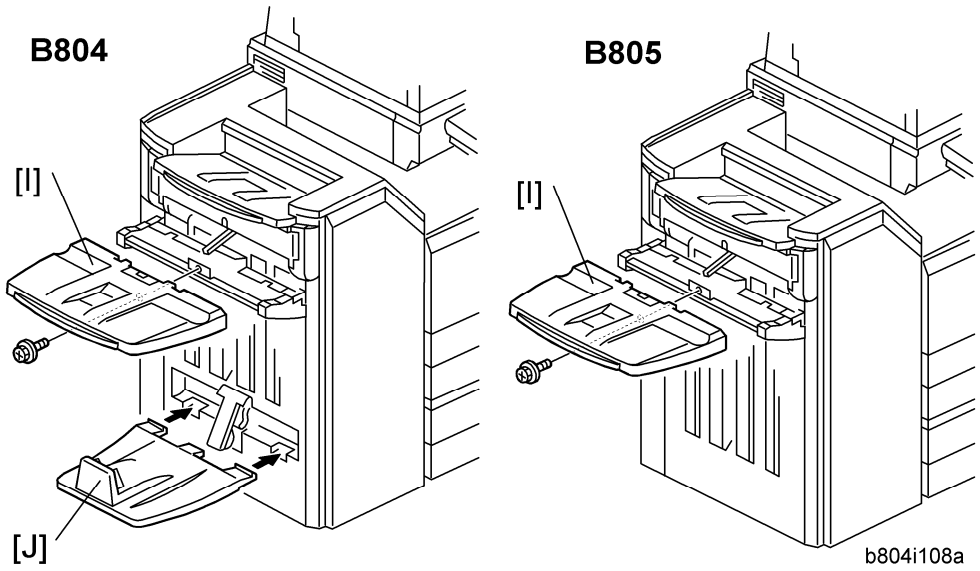
Note

- The holder bracket [F] must be placed outside the front joint bracket [E]. The holder bracket is provided with the bridge unit (D386).



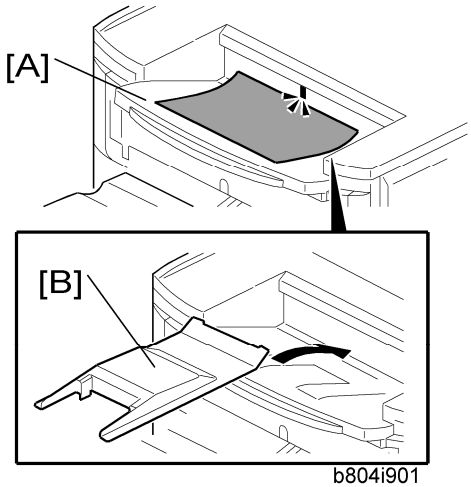
5. Pull the lock lever [G] (long knob screw x 1).
6. Slowly push the finisher to the left side of the machine, keeping its front door open until the brackets [D] [E] go into their slots.
7. Push the lock lever [G], then secure it (Long knob screw x 1).
8. Close the front door of the finisher.

9. Connect the finisher connector [H] to the machine.



10. Install the upper output tray [I] (x 1; M3x8).
11. Only for B804, install the lower output tray [J].
12. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.
13. Check the finisher operation.

Support Tray Installation



If a stacking problem occurs several times on the upper output tray [A], put the support tray [B] on the tray as shown.

Note

- Keep this tray in the manual pocket if this tray does not need to be installed.

http://www.manuals4you.com

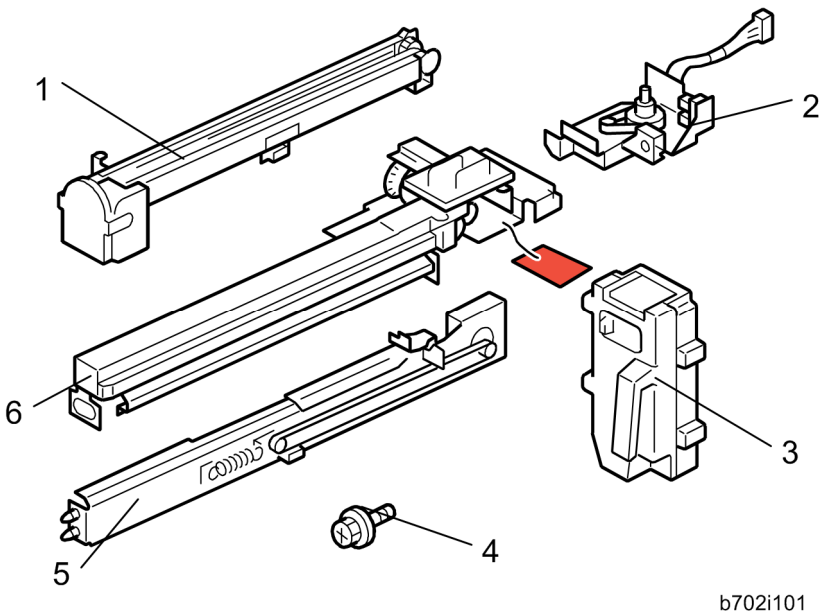
2.14 PUNCH UNIT

The Punch Unit B702 is installed in the 2000-Sheet Booklet (B804) Finisher/ 3000-Sheet Finisher (B805).

2.14.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

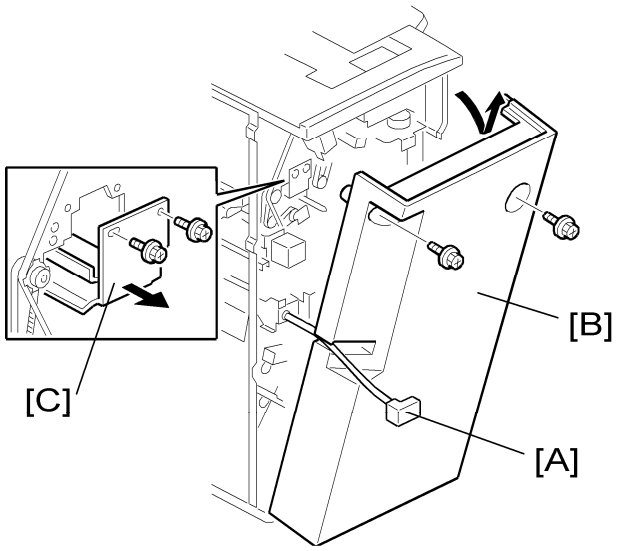
No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Punchout Waste Unit	1
2	Slide Drive Unit	1
3	Punch Waste Hopper	1
4	Screws: M3 x 6	5
5	Side-to-Side Detection Unit	1
6	Punching Unit	1



2.14.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure. If the 2000-sheet booklet/ 3000-sheet finisher has been installed, disconnect it and pull it away from the machine.

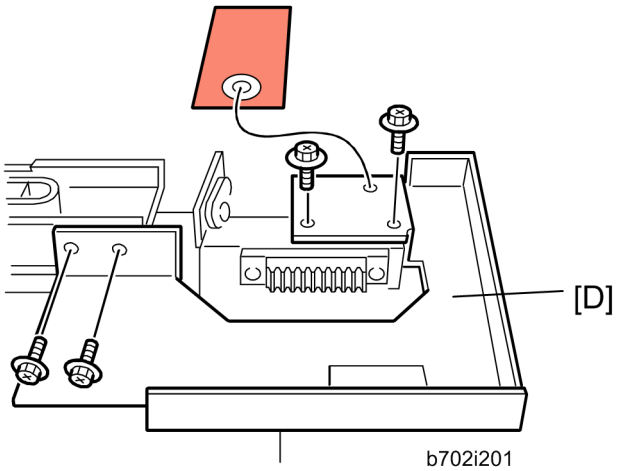


1. If the finisher is connected to the copier, disconnect the power connector [A] and move the finisher away from the copier.
2. Remove the rear cover [B] (☞ x 2) and open the front door.

Note

- At the bottom of the rear cover, make sure to disconnect the tabs that attach the cover to the frame.

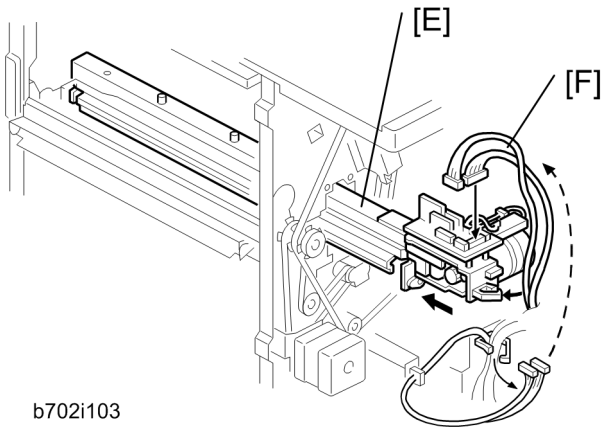
3. Remove the guide plate [C] (☞ x 2).



4. Remove the shipping retainer [D] (☞ x 4).

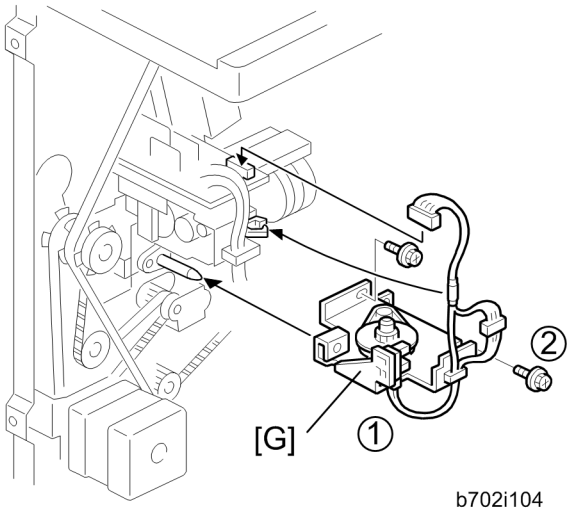
http://www.manuals4you.com

Punch Unit



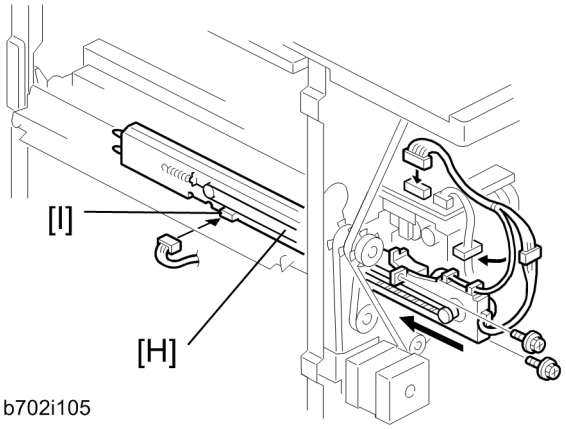
b702i103

5. Move the punch unit [E] along its rails into the finisher. Make sure that the pin engages correctly at the front and rear.
6. Connect the cables [F] of the finisher to the connectors (CN601 and CN602) on the punch unit board (x 2, x 1).
   - The cables [F] are coiled and attached to the PCB.



b702i104

7. Attach the slide drive unit [G] to the finisher and connect it to the punch unit (x 2, x 1). Push in the slide drive unit at ① when you attach the screw ②.
8. Make sure that the punch unit moves freely and is not blocked by the screws.

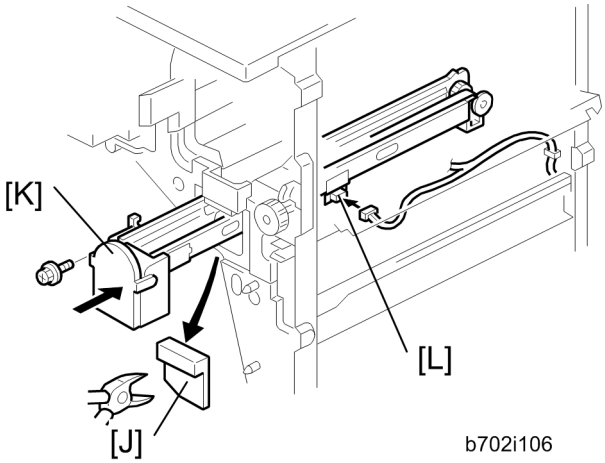


b702i105

9. Put the side-to-side detection unit [H] in the machine. Make sure that the two pins are engaged correctly at the front.
10. Make sure that the side-to-side detection unit moves smoothly on its rails. If it does not, make sure that the rails are aligned with their grooves.
11. Attach the side-to-side detection unit and connect it at the rear (x 2, x 1, x 1).
12. Pull the short connector out of the connector [I] then connect the cable of the finisher (x 1).

Note

- This is the 3-pin connector.



b702i106

13. At the front, use a pair of wire cutters to remove the part [J] of the cover.
14. Install the punch-waste transport unit [K] in the finisher.
15. Make sure that the punch-waste transport unit moves smoothly on its rails. If it does not, make sure that the rails are aligned with the grooves.
16. Remove the short connector from the connector [L].

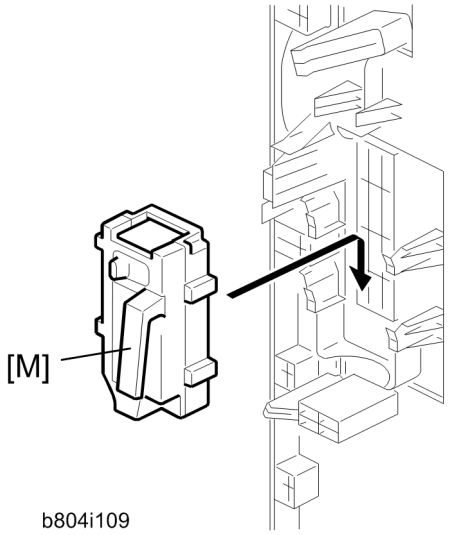
Note

- This is the 4-pin connector.

17. Connect the cable and attach the punch-waste transport unit (x 1, x 1, x 1).

http://www.manuals4you.com

Punch Unit

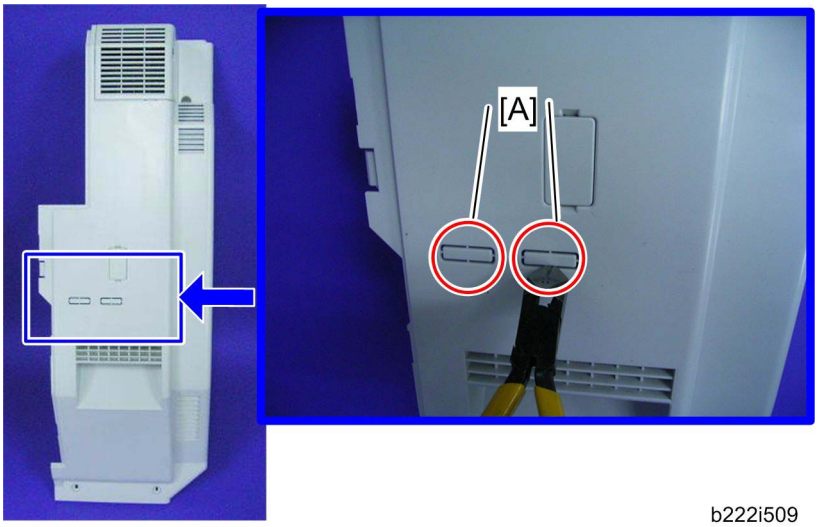


18. Set the hopper [M] in its holder.
19. Reassemble the finisher, and then install it on the main machine.
20. Connect the power cord to the outlet, and then turn the main power switch on.
21. Check the punch unit operation.

2.15 MECHANICAL COUNTER (NA ONLY)

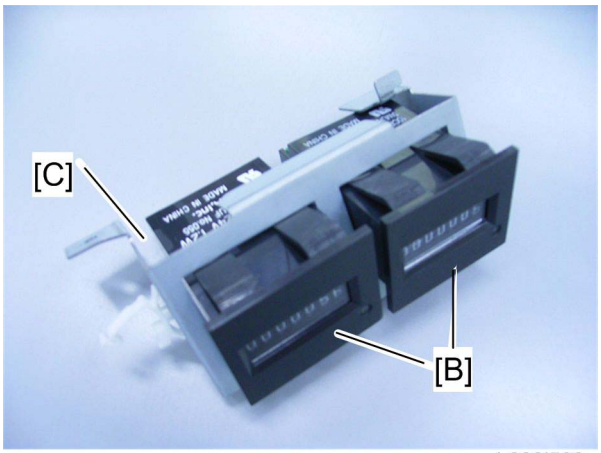
2.15.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

1. Rear cover (see p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (see p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")



b222i509

3. Remove the cutouts [A] on the right rear cover with nippers.

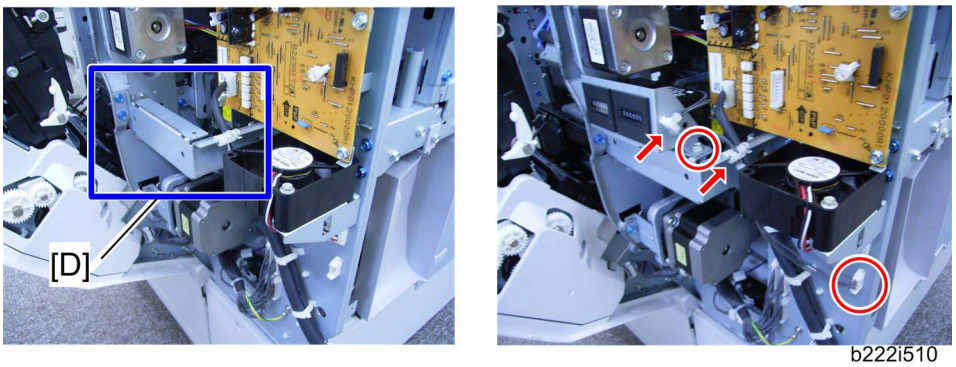


b222i508

4. Attach the mechanical counters [B] to the bracket [C] and connect the harness to each mechanical counter.

http://www.manuals4you.com

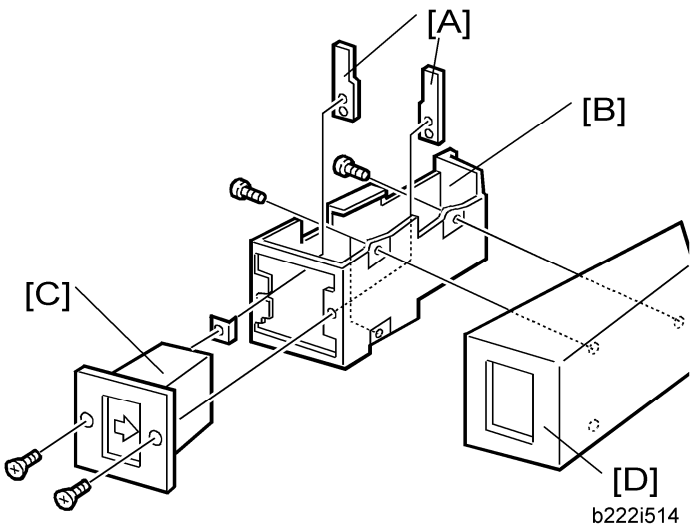
Mechanical Counter (NA Only)



5. Attach the mechanical counter bracket to the frame [D] (x 1, x 2, x 1).
6. Reassemble the machine.
7. Plug in the machine and turn on the main power switch.
8. Enter the SP mode.
9. Set SP5987-001 to "1: ON".
10. Exit the SP mode, and then turn the machine off and on.

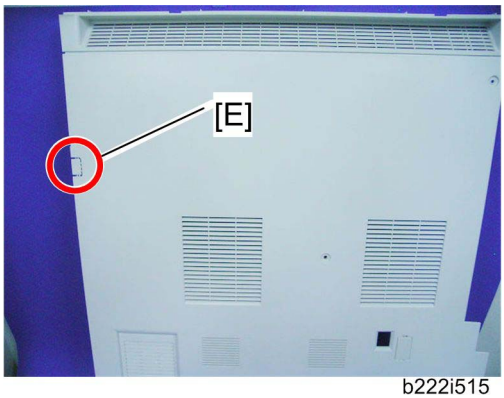
2.16 KEY COUNTER BRACKET

2.16.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



b222i514

1. Hold the key counter plate nuts [A] on the inside of the key counter bracket [B] and insert the key counter holder [C].
2. Secure the key counter holder to the bracket (x 2).
3. Install the key counter cover [D] (x 2).
4. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")



b222i515

5. Cut off part [E] of the rear cover.

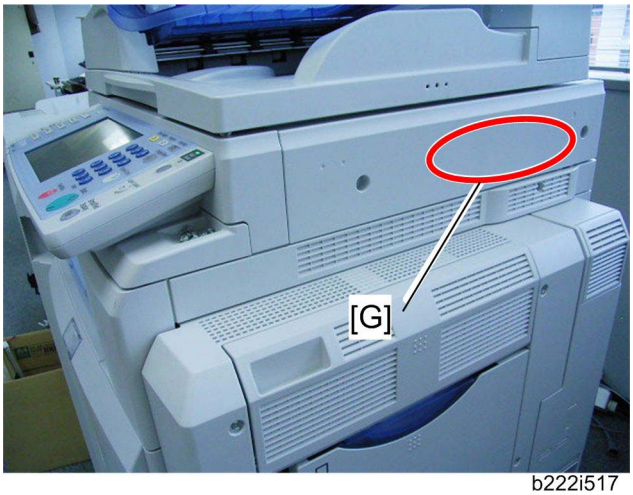
http://www.manuals4you.com

Key Counter Bracket



b222i516

6. Connect the harness to the connector [F] inside the machine.



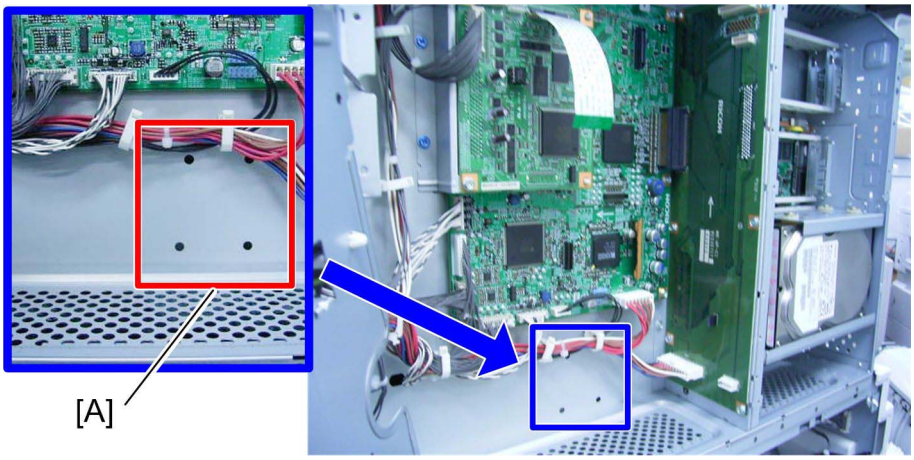
b222i517

7. Peel off double sided tape on the key counter bracket and attach the key counter to the scanner right cover [G].
8. Reassemble the machine.

2.17 KEY COUNTER INTERFACE UNIT

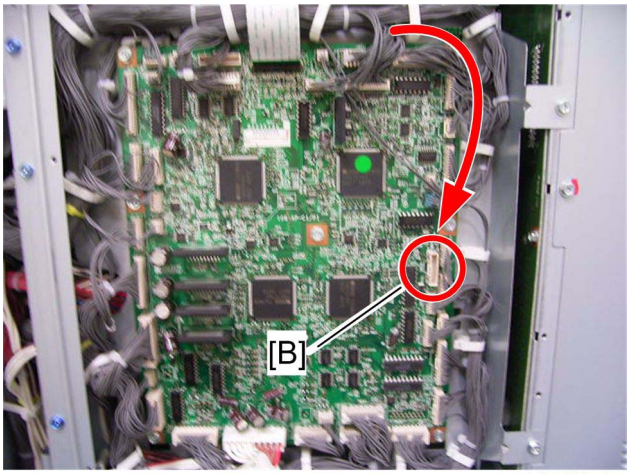
2.17.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. IOB bracket (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box")



b222i511

3. Install the four stud stays in the location [A] in the controller box.
4. Install the key counter interface board on the four stud stays in the controller box.
5. Connect the harness to CN3 on the key counter interface board.

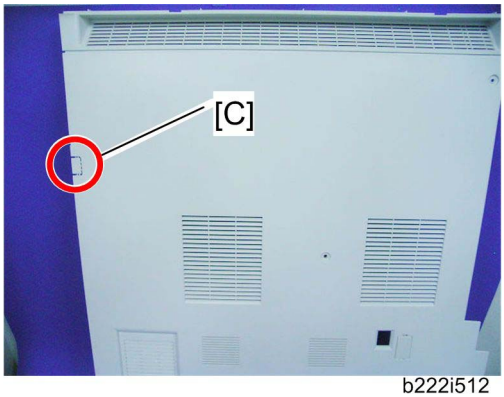


b222i676

6. Close the IOB bracket and connect the other terminal to CN215 [B] on the IOB.

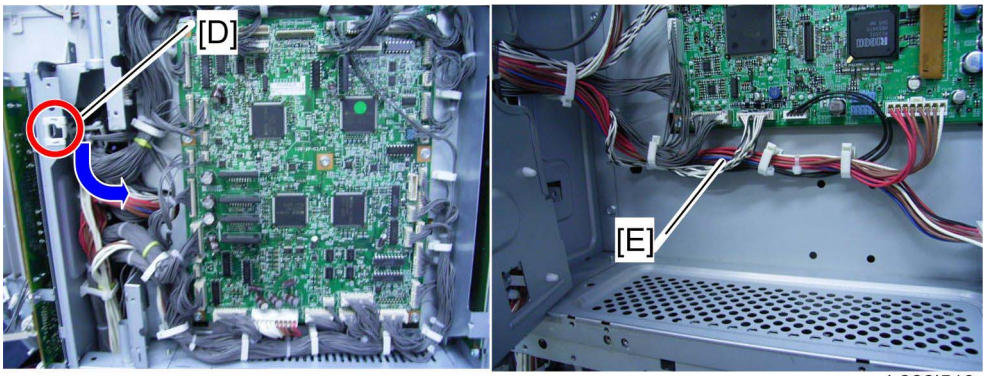
http://www.manuals4you.com

Key Counter Interface Unit



b222i512

7. Cut off part [C] of the rear cover.



b222i513

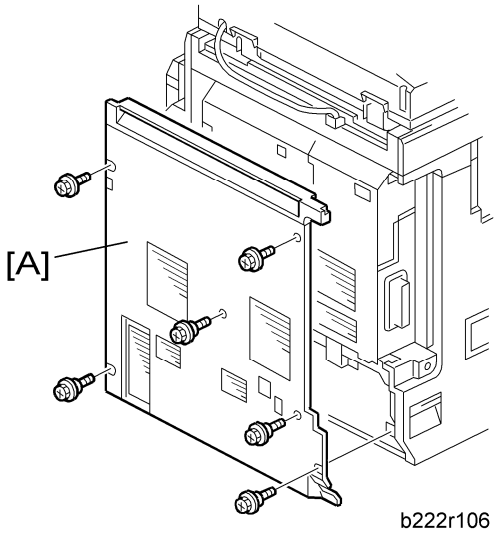
8. Clamp the harness from the counter device with the clamp [D] and put it as shown by the blue arrow (🖃 x 1).
9. Route the harness from the counter device in the same way as the other harnesses [E] (🖃 x 3).
10. Connect the harness from the counter device to CN4 on the key counter interface board.
11. Reattach the IOB bracket (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box").
12. Reassemble the machine.

2.18 COPY DATA SECURITY UNIT TYPE F (B829)

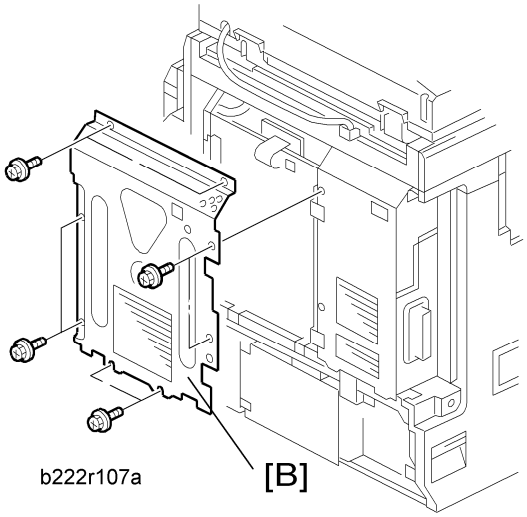
2.18.1 INSTALLATION

CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

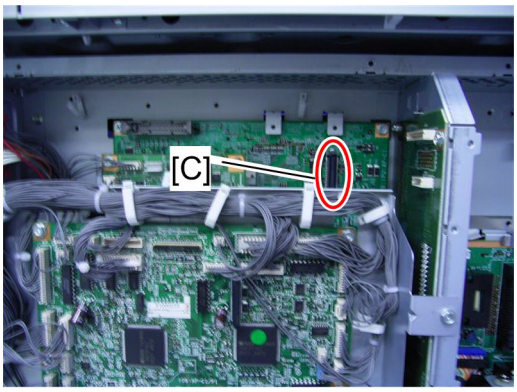


1. Remove the rear cover [A] of the machine (x 5).



2. Remove the controller box right cover [B] (x 8).

http://www.manuals4you.com



b222i507

⇒ 3. Attach the ICIB-3 (copy data security board) to CN 106 [C] on the BICU (☞ x 2).

4. Reassemble the machine.

User Tool Setting

1. Plug in and turn on the main power switch.
2. Go into the User Tools mode, and select System Settings > Administrator Tools > Copy Data Security Option > “On”.
3. Exit User Tools.
4. Check the operation.

Note

- The machine will issue an SC165 error if the machine is powered on with the ICIB-3 removed and the “Data Security for Copying “feature set to “ON”.
- When you remove this option from the machine, first set the setting to “OFF” with the user tool before removing this board. If you forget to do this, “Data Security for Copying“ feature cannot appear in the user tool setting. Then SC165 will appear every time the machine is switched on, and the machine cannot be used.

Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see ‘Check All Connections’ at the end of this section).

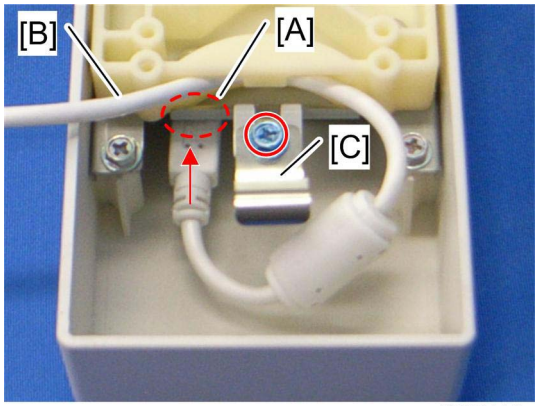
2.19 USB2.0/SD SLOT TYPE A

2.19.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	USB2.0/SD Slot	1
2	Ground Plate	1
3	USB Cable	1
4	Screw: M3 x 6 blue	1
5	Screw: M3 x 8	4
6	Screw: M3 x 6 (Not used)	1
7	Bracket (Not used)	1

2.19.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

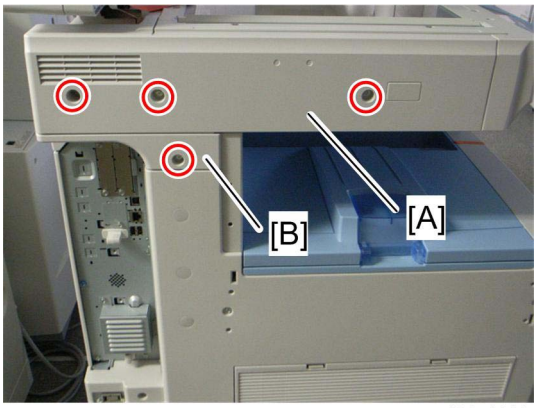


d027i111

1. Connect the USB cable [B] to the USB slot [A] in the USB2.0/SD Slot as shown above.
2. Attach the ground plate [C] to the bracket of the USB2.0/SD Slot (🔩 x 1: M3x6 blue).

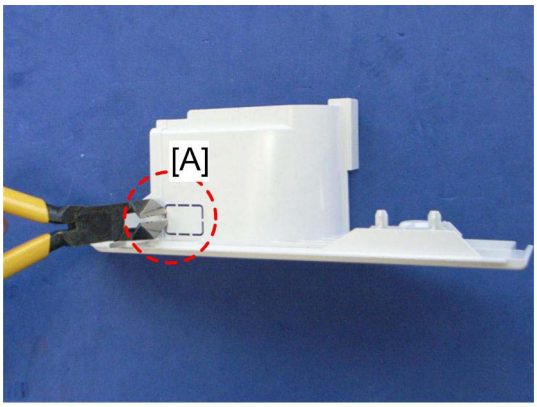
http://www.manuals4you.com

USB2.0/SD Slot Type A



d027i110

3. Remove the scanner left cover [A] (x 3).
4. Remove left frame cover [B] (x 1).



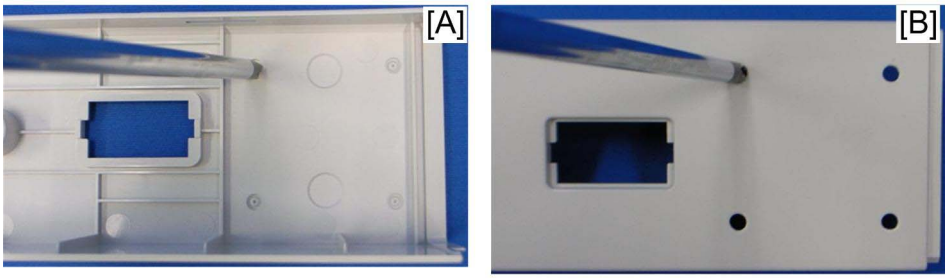
d027i112

5. Remove part [A] of the left frame cover with pliers or a similar tool.
6. Reinstall the left frame cover (x 1).



d027i113

7. Remove the part [A] on the scanner left cover.

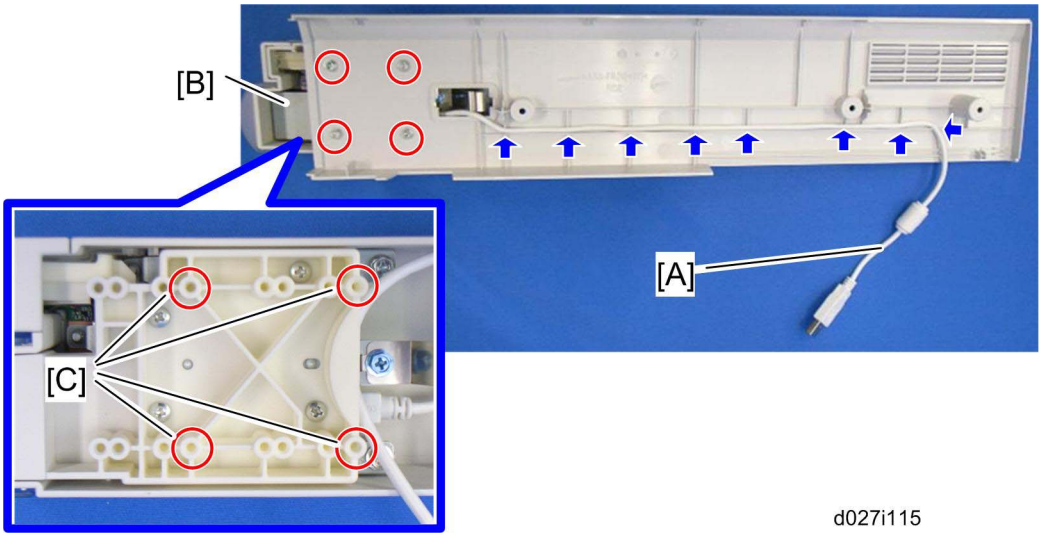


d027i113a

8. Make four holes in the scanner left cover with a screwdriver as shown [A].

Note

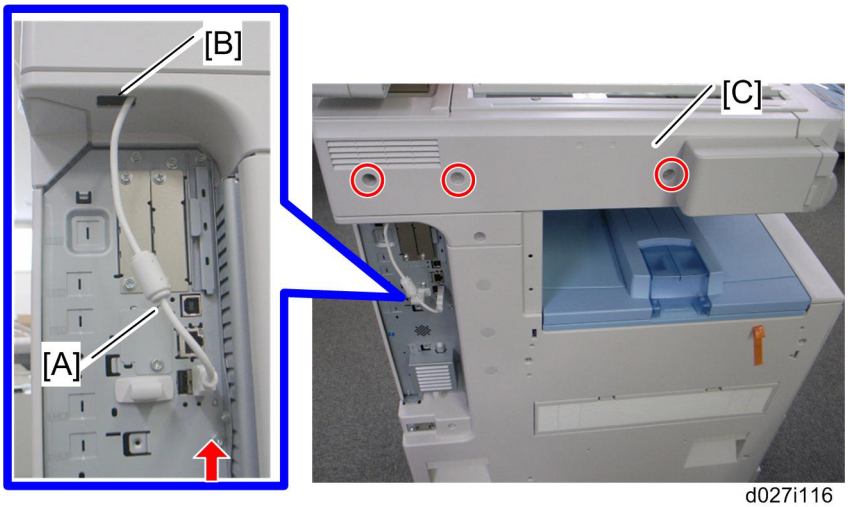
- Smooth the four holes in the scanner left cover as shown [B].



9. Route the USB cable [A] through the gaps in the left scanner cover.
10. Secure the USB2.0/SD Slot [B] with the left scanner cover as shown above (x 4: M3x8).

Note

- Use the screw holes [C] as shown above.



11. Put the USB cable [A] through the cutout [B] in the left frame cover.
12. Attach the scanner left cover [C] to the mainframe, and then connect the USB cable [A] to USB-A (front side) as shown above (x 3).

Note

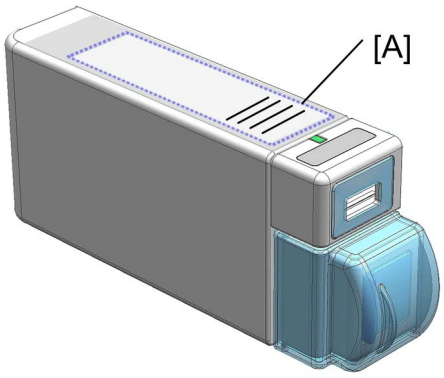
- Make sure that the USB cable is inserted in USB-A (front side).

13. Plug in and turn on the mainframe.

http://www.manuals4you.com

USB2.0/SD Slot Type A

14. Enter the SP mode, and then change the setting of SP1013-001 from “0” to “1”.
15. Exit the SP mode, and then check the operation of the USB2.0/SD Slot.



d027i118

16. Attach the decal [A] to the USB2.0/SD Slot as shown above.

2.19.3 TESTING THE SD CARD/USB SLOT

1. Insert an SD card or USB memory device in the slot.
   You can connect only one removable memory device at a time.
2. Close the media slot cover.
   If you leave the cover open, static electricity conducted through an inserted SD card could cause the machine to malfunction.
3. Make sure that no previous settings remain.
   If a previous setting remains, press the [Clear Modes] key.
4. Place an original on the exposure glass.
5. Press [Store File].
6. Press [Store to Memory Device].
7. Press [OK].
8. Press the [Start] key.
   When writing is complete, a confirmation message appears.
9. Press [Exit].
10. Remove the memory device from the media slot.

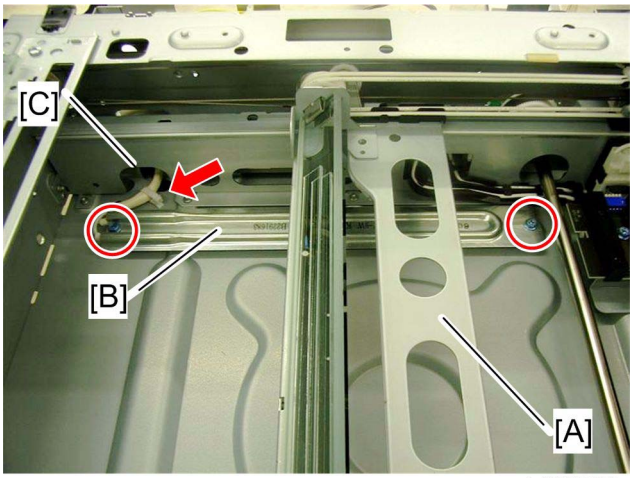
Note

- Do not remove the memory device while writing is in process.

2.20 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER (SCANNER)

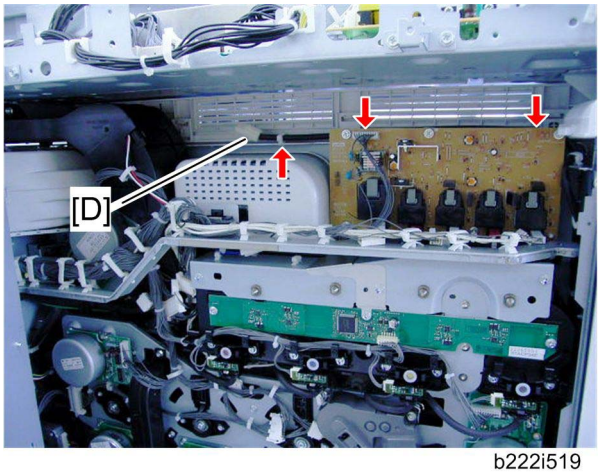
2.20.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

1. Remove the ARDF or platen cover (☛ p.2-29 "Auto Reverse Document Feeder (B802)")
2. Remove the rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover").
3. Remove the ARDF exposure glass and exposure glass with left scale (☛ p.4-25 "Exposure Glass").
4. Remove the scanner rear frame (☛ p.4-29 "Scanner Motor")



b222i518

5. Move the scanner carriage [A] to the right side by rotating the scanner motor.
6. Install the heater [B] in the scanner unit (x 2, x 1)
7. Put the cable through the cutout [C].

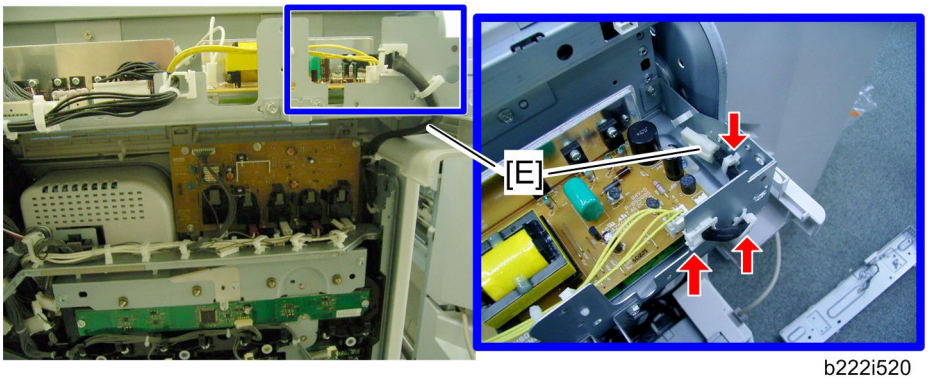


b222i519

8. Release the heater relay cable [D] (x 3).

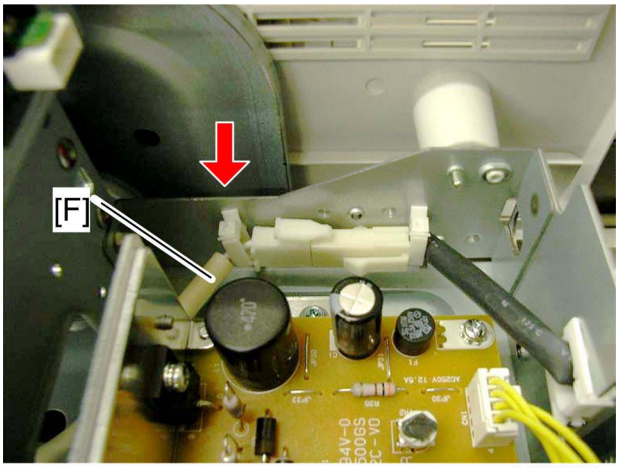
http://www.manuals4you.com

Anti-Condensation Heater (Scanner)



b222i520

9. Route the heater relay cable [E] as shown (🖷 x 3).

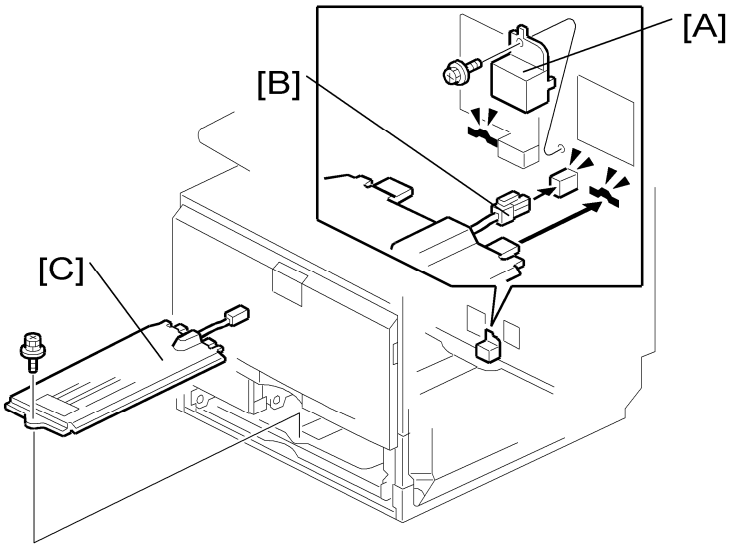


b222i521

10. Connect the heater cable [F] to the heater relay cable (🖷 x 1).
11. Reassemble the machine.

2.21 TRAY HEATER

2.21.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



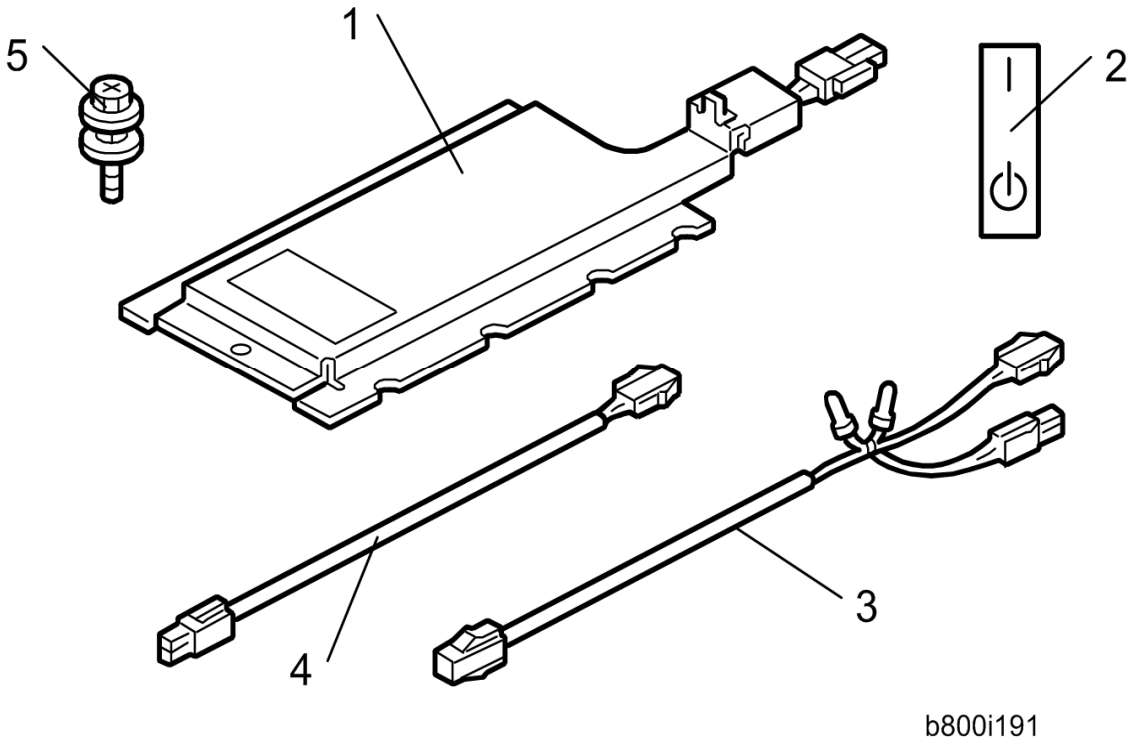
1. Remove trays 1 and 2 from the machine.
2. Remove the connector cover [A] (x 1).
3. Connect the connector [B] of the heater to the connector of the main machine.
4. Install the heater [C] inside the machine (x 1)
5. Reassemble the machine.

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.22 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER TYPE A

2.22.1 COMPONENT CHECK

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Tray Heater	1
2	On-Standby Decal	1 (-90) or 2 (-91)
3	Harness 2 (For D387)	1
4	Harness 1 (For D351/D352)	1
5	Screw M4 X 10	2
-	Installation Procedure	1



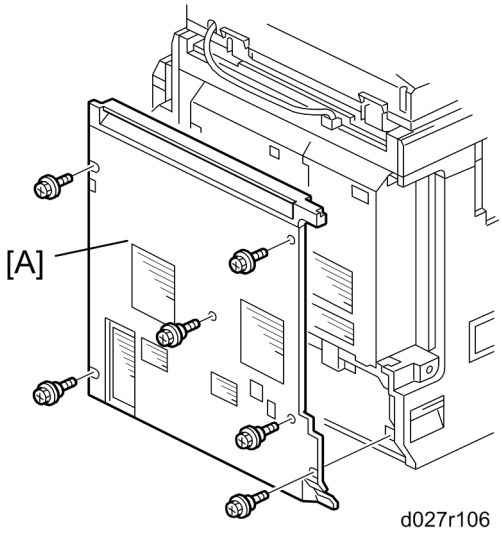
b800i191

2.22.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

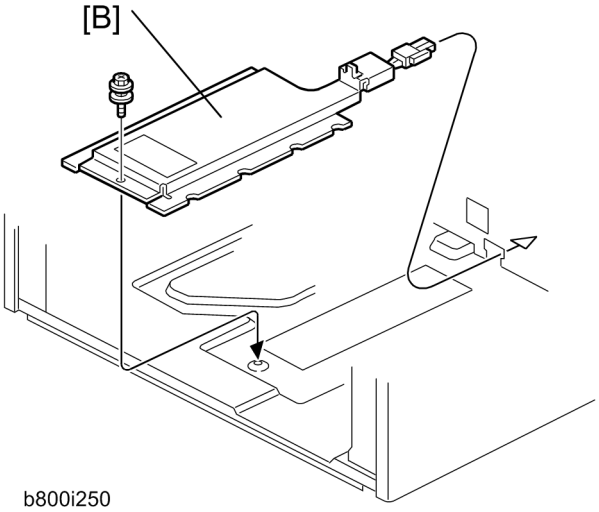
CAUTION

- Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.
- Do the following procedure not to damage any harnesses.
- Check that any harnesses are not damaged nor pinched after installation.

Installing the Tray Heater in D351



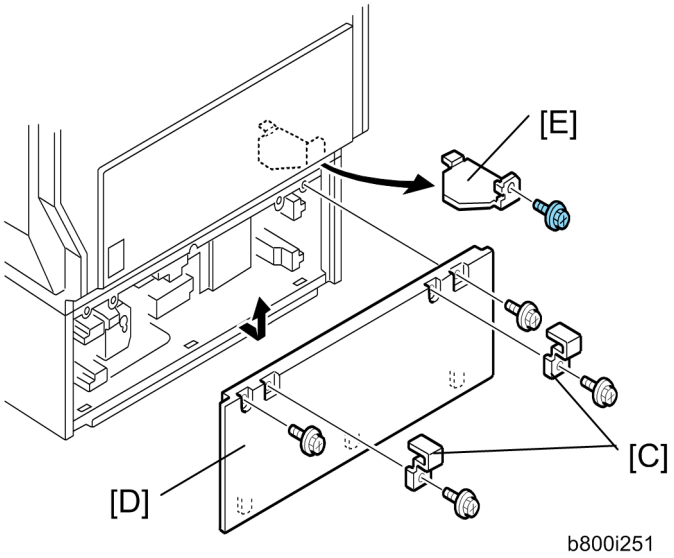
1. Rear cover [A] (x 6)
2. Pull out the two trays in the optional paper feed unit.



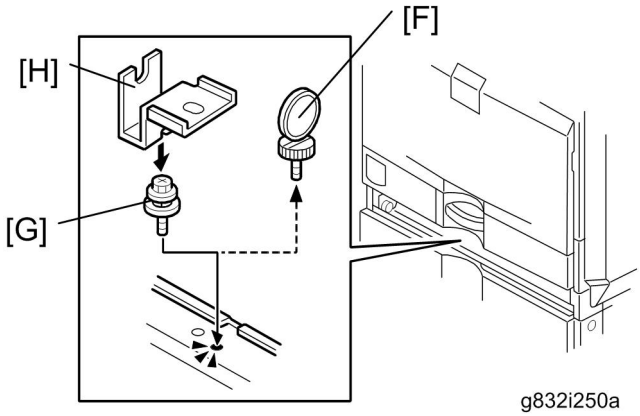
3. Install the tray heater [B] in the optional paper feed unit (x 1).

http://www.manuals4you.com

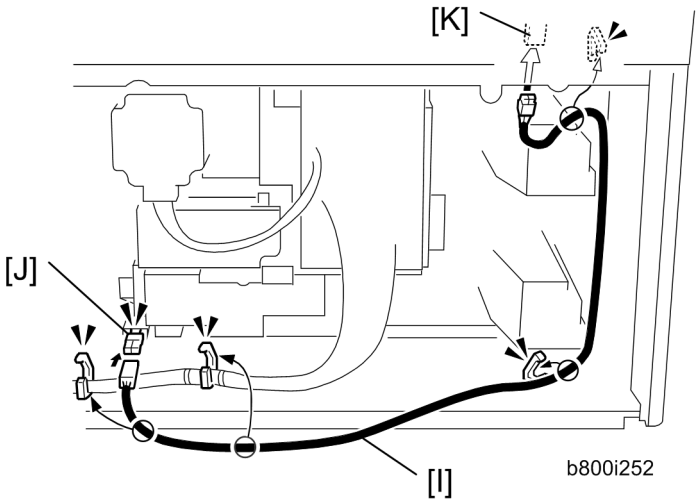
Anti-Condensation Heater Type A



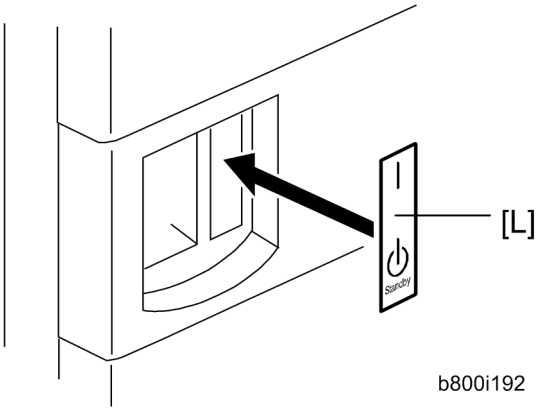
4. Remove the two securing brackets [C] (☞ x 1 each), and then the rear cover [D] of the optional paper feed unit (☞ x 2).
5. Remove the harness cover bracket [E] (☞ x 1).



6. Pull out tray 2 from the mainframe.
7. Replace the shoulder screw [F] with the washer screw [G], using securing bracket [H] (☞ x 1).



8. Connect the harness [I] to the connector [J] of the tray heater.
9. Route the harness [I] as shown and clamp it with four clamps.
10. Connect the harness [I] to the connector [K] of the mainframe.
11. Reassemble the mainframe and optional paper feed unit.



12. Attach the on/standby decal [L] to the right-hand side of the main power switch.

Installing the Tray Heater in D352

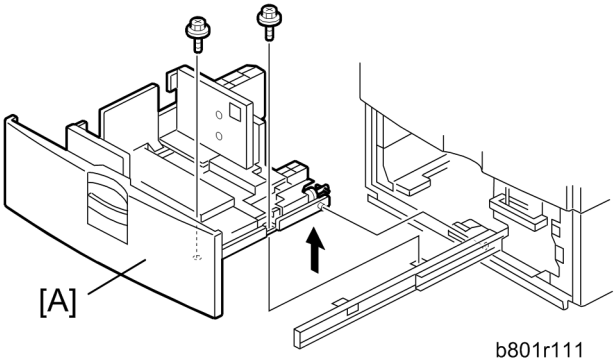
1. Remove the rear cover of the mainframe (☛ step 1 in "For Installing the Tray Heater in D321").
2. Pull out the LCT drawer.

Note

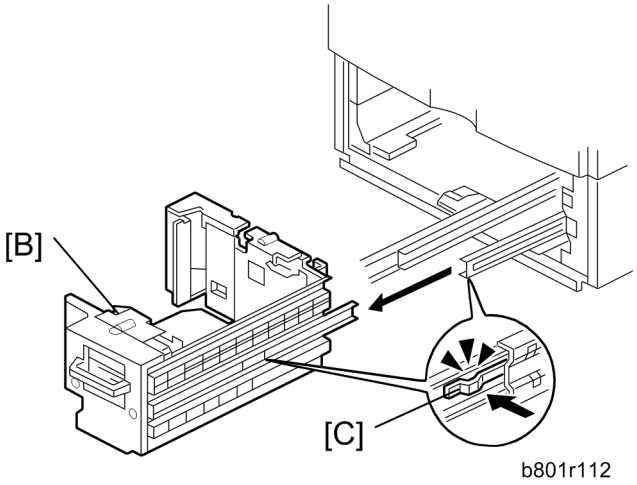
- If the right tray comes out with the left tray, push the right tray into the LCT.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Anti-Condensation Heater Type A



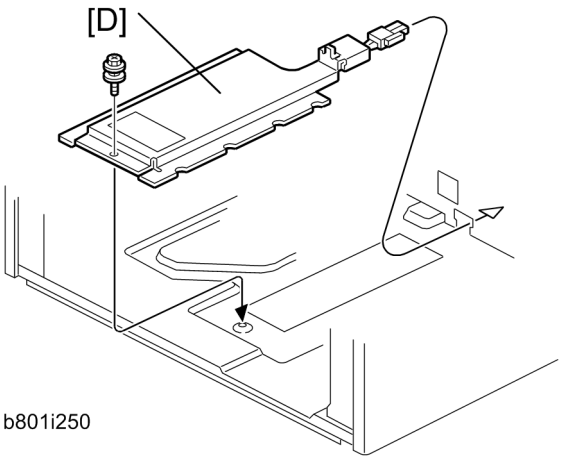
3. Left tray [A] (🔩 x 2)



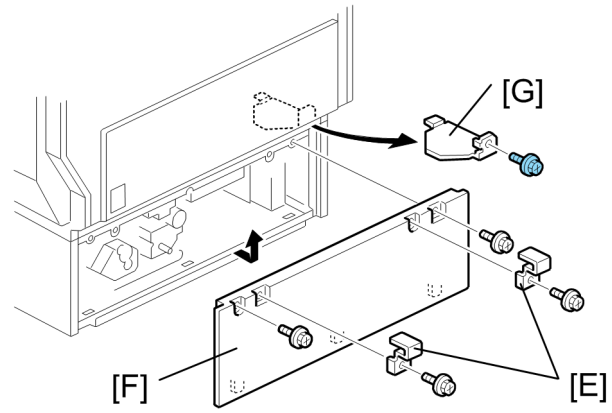
4. Remove the right tray [B] while pressing down the stopper [C].

Note

- When reinstalling the right tray, set the right tray on the guide rail and carefully push the tray in, making sure to keep the tray level.

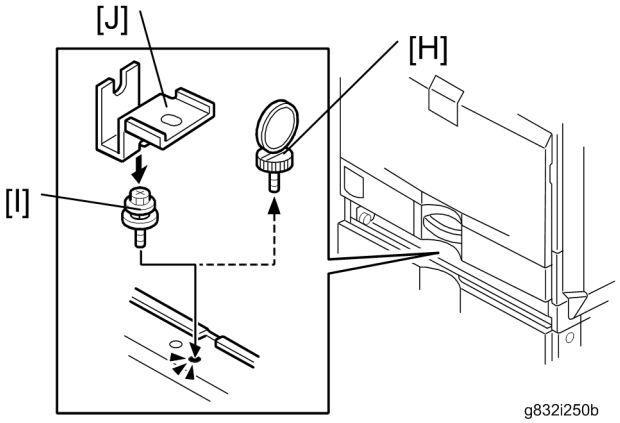


5. Install the tray heater [D] in the optional LCT (🔩 x 1).



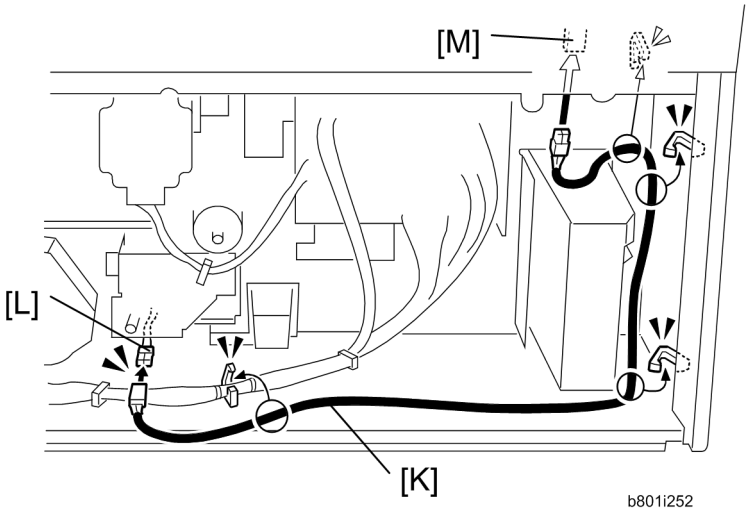
b801i251

6. Remove the two securing brackets [E] (☞ x 1 each), and then the rear cover [F] of the optional LCT (☞ x 2).
7. Remove the harness cover bracket [G] (☞ x 1).



g832i250b

8. Pull out tray 2 from the mainframe.
9. Replace the shoulder screw [H] with the washer screw [I], using the securing bracket [J] (☞ x 1).

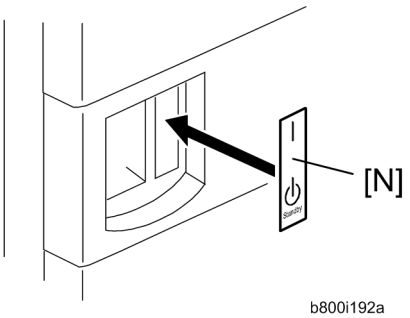


b801i252

http://www.manuals4you.com

Anti-Condensation Heater Type A

10. Connect the harness [K] to the connector [L] of the tray heater.
11. Route the harness [K] as shown and clamp it with four clamps (x 4).
12. Connect the harness [K] to the connector [M] of the mainframe.
13. Reassemble the mainframe and optional LCT.

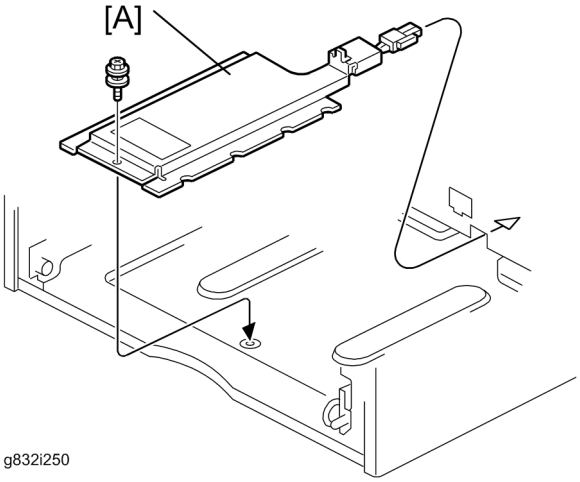


b800i192a

14. Reassemble the mainframe and optional paper feed unit.
15. Attach the on/standby decal [N] to the right-hand side of the main power switch.

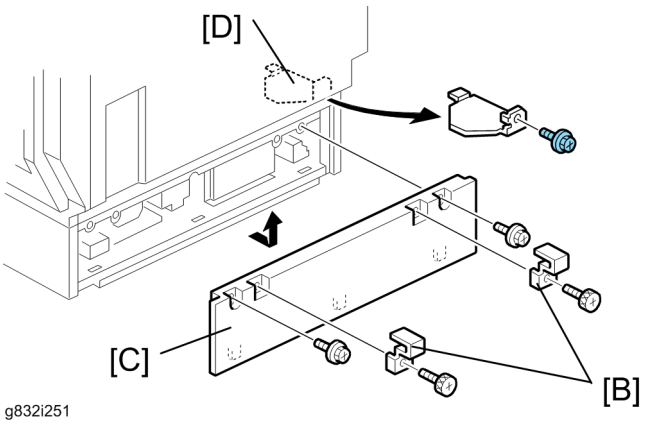
Installing the Tray Heater in D387

1. Remove the rear cover of the mainframe (☛ step 1 in "For Installing the Tray Heater in D321").
2. Pull out the tray in the optional paper tray.

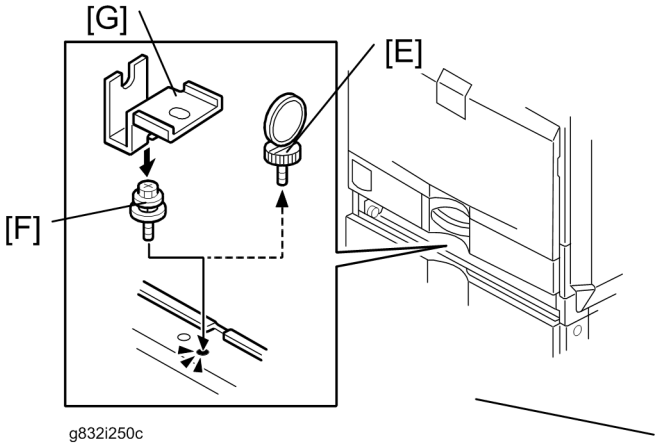


g832i250

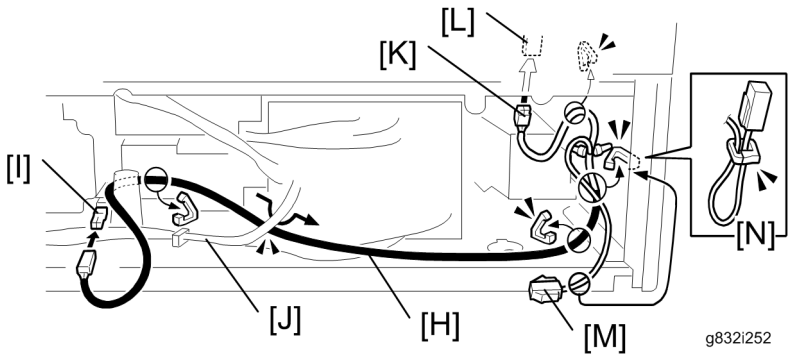
3. Install the tray heater [A] in the optional paper tray (x 1).



4. Remove the two securing brackets [B] (☞ x 1 each), then the rear cover [C] of the optional paper tray (☞ x 2).
5. Remove the harness cover bracket [D] (☞ x 1).



6. Pull out tray 2 from the mainframe.
7. Replace the shoulder screw [E] with the washer screw [F], using securing bracket [G] (☞ x 1).



1. Connect the harness [H] to the connector [I] of the tray heater.
2. Route the harness [H] as shown and clamp it with four clamps (☞ x 4).

http://www.manuals4you.com

Anti-Condensation Heater Type A

Note

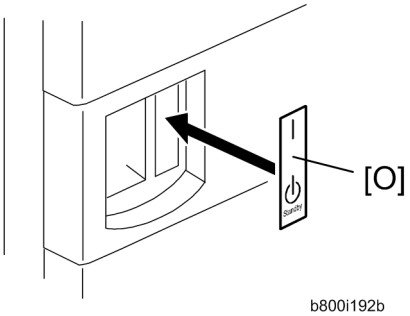
- Make sure that the harness [H] is placed below the harness [J].

3. Connect one harness [K] of the two-way harness to the connector [L] of the mainframe.

Note

- The harness [K] of the two-way harness, which has two binds, is for the connector of the mainframe. The harness [M], which has one bind, is for another optional paper feed unit.

4. Clamp the other harness [M] of the two-way harness as shown [N] if you do not install another optional paper feed unit.
5. Reassemble the mainframe and optional paper tray.

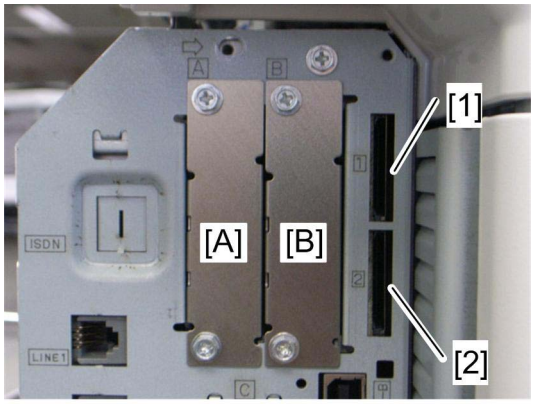


6. Attach the on/standby decal [O] to the right-hand side of the main power switch.

2.23 CONTROLLER OPTIONS

2.23.1 OVERVIEW

This machine has I/F card slots for optional I/F connections and SD card slots applications. After you install an option, check that the machine can recognize it (see “Check All Connections” at the end of this section).



d027i400

I/F Card Slots

- Slot A is used for one of the optional I/F connections (only one can be installed): IEEE1284, IEEE802.11a/g, g (Wireless LAN), Bluetooth, or Remote Communication Gate.
- Slot B is used for the File Format Converter or Remote Communication Gate.

SD Card Slots

- Slot 1 is used for one of the optional applications: PostScript 3, DataOverwriteSecurity Unit, PictBridge
- Slot 2 is used for installing the Browser Unit, HDD Encryption unit, VM card or for service only (for example, updating the firmware).

2.23.2 SD CARD APPLI MOVE

Overview

The service program “SD Card Appli Move” (SP5-873) lets you copy application programs from one SD card to another SD card.

Slot 1 is used to store application programs. But there are 3 possible applications (PostScript 3, DOS unit, PictBridge). You cannot run application programs from Slot 2. However you can move application programs from Slot 2 to Slot 1 with the following

http://www.manuals4you.com

procedure.

For this model, the printer/scanner card in slot 1 has enough space for the PictBridge and the DOS applications. Use the card that is already in slot 1 (printer/scanner card). Do not remove the printer/scanner card from slot 1.

Make sure that the target SD card has enough space.

1. Enter SP5873 “SD Card Appli Move”.
2. Then move the application from the SD Card in Slot 2 to the SD Card in Slot 1.

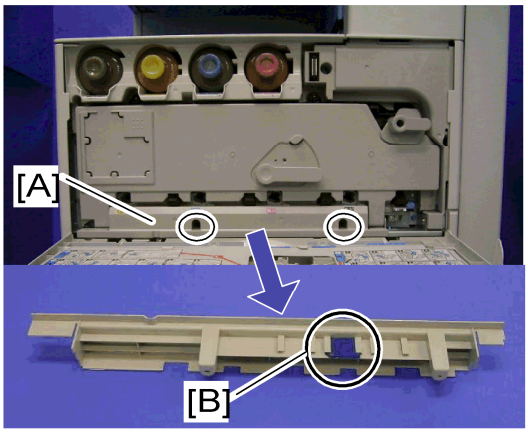
Note

- Do steps 1-2 again if you want to move another application program.

3. Exit the SP mode.

Be very careful when you do the SD Card Appli Move procedure:

- The data necessary for authentication is transferred with the application program from an SD card to another SD card. Authentication fails if you try to use the SD card after you copy the application program from one card to another card.
- Do not use the SD card if it has been used before for other purposes. Normal operation is not guaranteed when such an SD card is used.



- Remove the cover [A] (☞ x 2), and then keep the SD card in the place [B] after you copy the application program from one card to another card. This is done for the following reasons:
  - The SD card can be the only proof that the user is licensed to use the application program.
  - You may need to check the SD card and its data to solve a problem in the future.
- You cannot copy PostScript application and VM card to another SD card. You have to copy the other application (PictBridge, DOS Unit) to the SD card that stores the PostScript application or VM card.

Move Exec

The menu “Move Exec” (SP5-873-001) lets you copy application programs from the original SD card to another SD card.

Important

- Do not turn ON the write protect switch of the system SD card or application SD card on the machine. If the write protect switch is ON, a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade or application merge.

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. Make sure that an SD card is in SD Card Slot 1. The application program is copied to this SD card.
3. Insert the SD card with the application program in SD Card Slot 2.The application program is copied from this SD card.
4. Turn the main switch on.
5. Start the SP mode.
6. Select SP5-873-001 “Move Exec.”
7. Follow the messages shown on the operation panel.
8. Turn the main switch off.
9. Remove the SD card from SD Card Slot 2.
10. Turn the main switch on.
11. Check that the application programs run normally.

Undo Exec

“Undo Exec” (SP5-873-002) lets you copy back application programs from an SD card to the original SD card. You can use this program when, for example, you have mistakenly copied some programs by using Move Exec (SP5-873-001).

Important

- Do not turn ON the write protect switch of the system SD card or application SD card on the machine. If the write protect switch is ON, a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade or application merge.

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. Insert the original SD card in SD Card Slot 2. The application program is copied back into this card.
3. Insert the SD card with the application program in SD Card Slot 1.The application program is copied back from this SD card.
4. Turn the main switch on.
5. Start the SP mode.
6. Select SP5-873-002 “Undo Exec.”

http://www.manuals4you.com

7. Follow the messages shown on the operation panel.
8. Turn the main switch off.
9. Remove the SD card from SD Card Slot 2.

Note

- This step assumes that the application programs in the SD card are used by the machine.

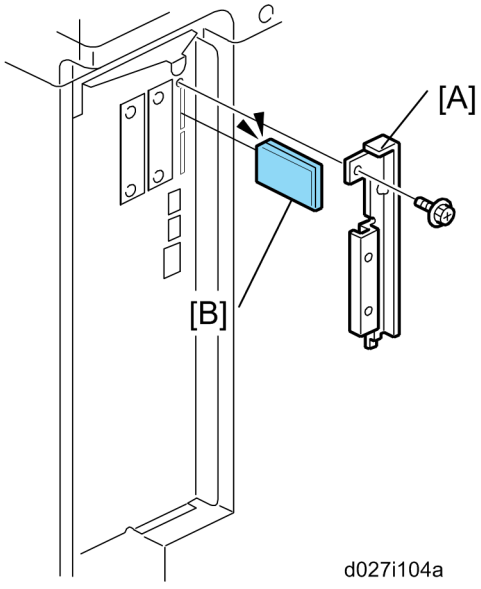
10. Turn the main switch on.
11. Check that the application programs run normally.
12. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).

2.23.3 POSTSCRIPT 3

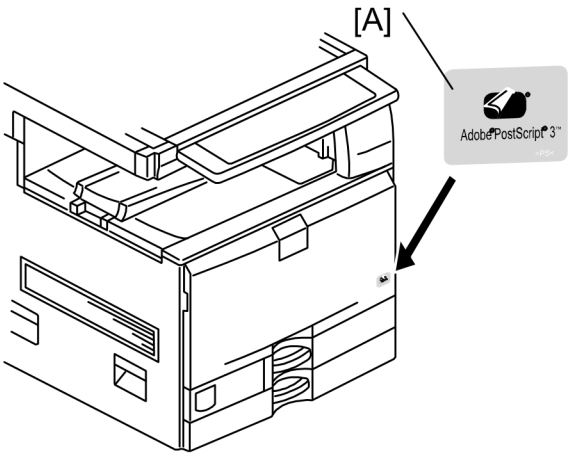
The PostScript3 application and fonts cannot be moved to another SD card. However, other applications can be moved onto the PostScript3 SD card.

CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.



1. Remove the SD-card slot cover [A] from the SD card slots (x 1).
2. Turn the SD-card label face [B] to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 1 until you hear a click.
3. Attach the slot cover [A] (x 1).



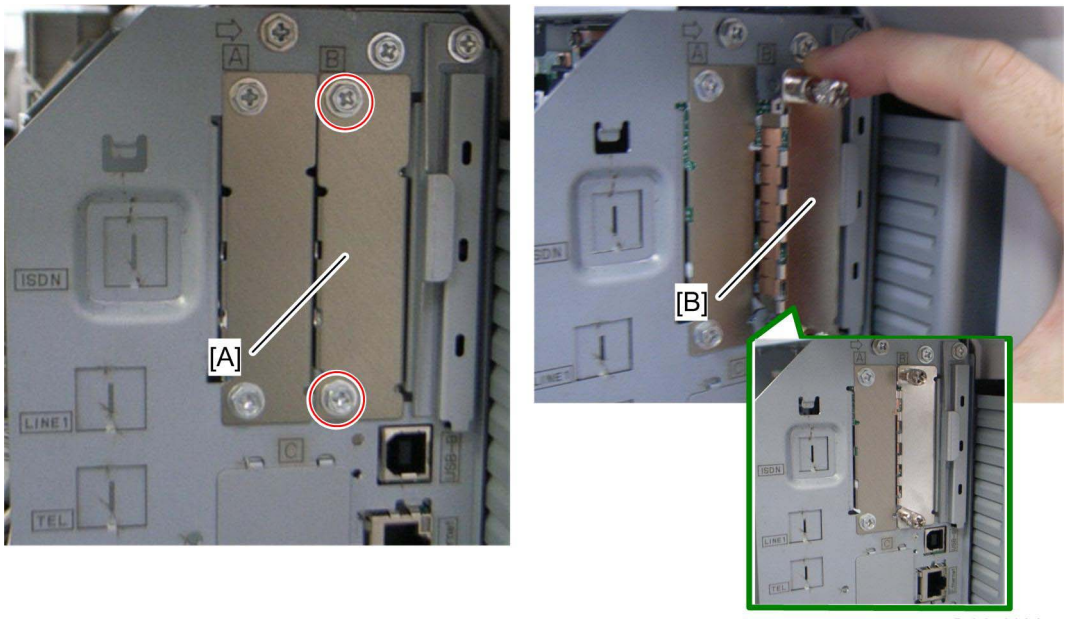
d027i504

4. Attach the “Adobe PostScript 3” decal [A] to the front door.
5. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see ‘Check All Connections’ at the end of this section).

2.23.4 FILE FORMAT CONVERTER

CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.



D027i402

1. Remove the slot cover [A] (x 2).
2. Install the file format converter [B] into slot B and then fasten it with screws.
3. Plug in the machine and turn on the main power switch.
4. Check or set the following SP codes with the values shown below.

http://www.manuals4you.com

SP No.	Title	Setting
SP5-836-001	Capture Function (0:Off 1:On)	"1"
SP5-836-002	Panel Setting	"0"

5. Check the operation.
6. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).

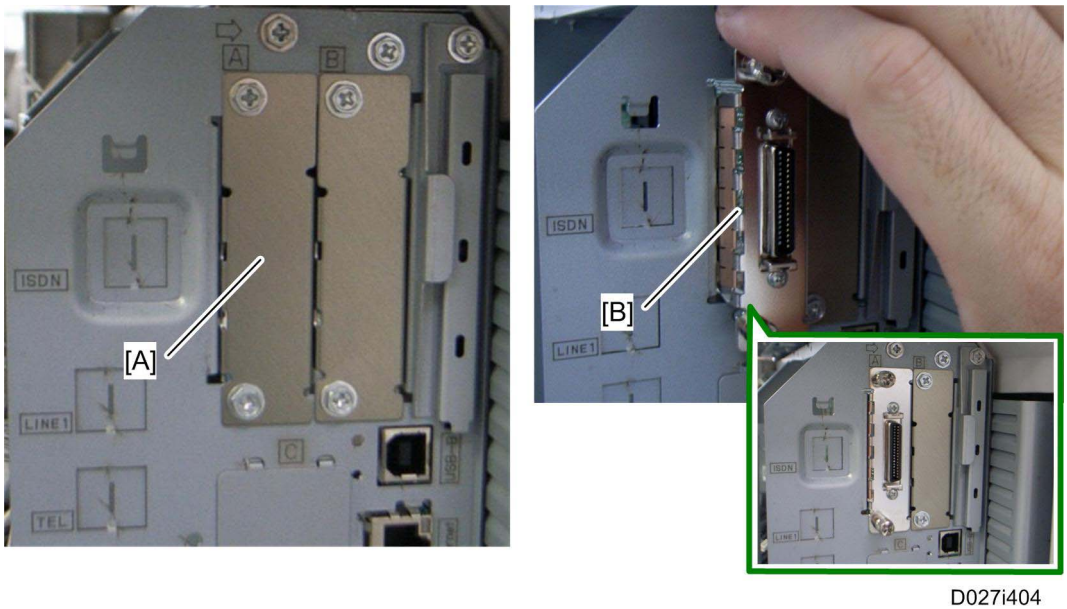
2.23.5 IEEE1284

Installation Procedure

⚠CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

You can only install one of the following network interfaces at a time: (IEEE 802.11 a/g, g (Wireless LAN), IEEE1284, Bluetooth).



D027i404

1. Remove the slot cover [A] (🔩 x 2).
2. Install the interface board [B] (Knob-screw x 2) into the slot A.
3. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).

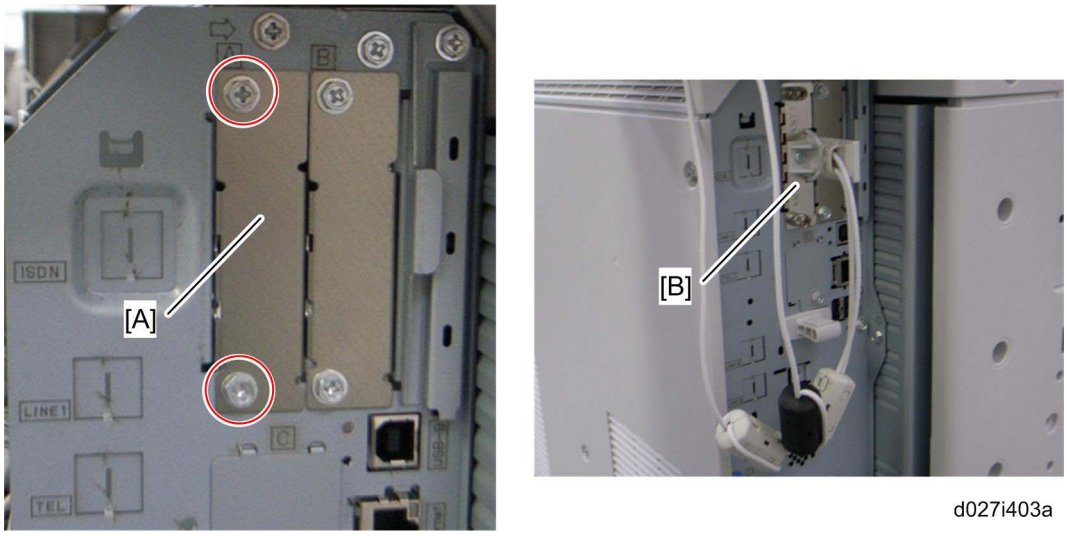
2.23.6 IEEE 802.11 A/G, G (WIRELESS LAN)

Installation Procedure

⚠CAUTION

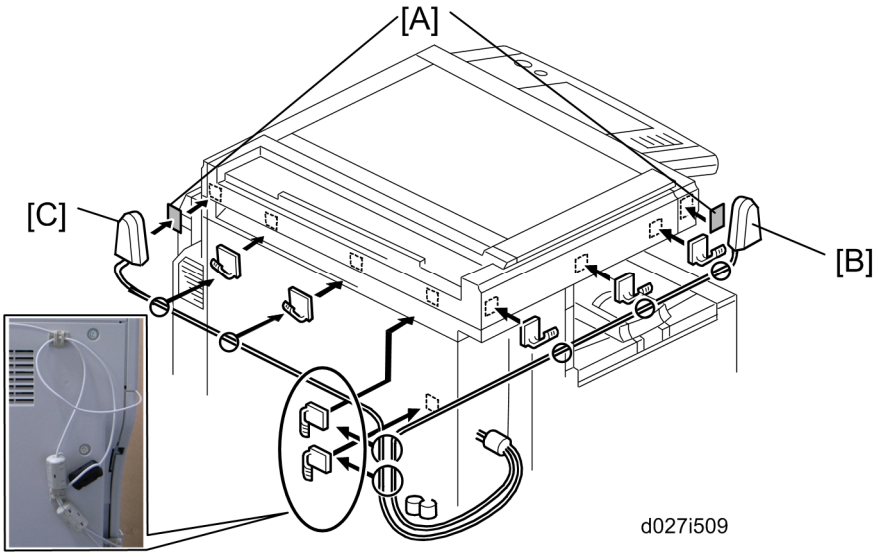
- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

You can only install one of the following network interfaces at one time: (IEEE 802.11 a/g, g (Wireless LAN), IEEE1284, Bluetooth).



d027i403a

1. Remove the slot cover [A] from the board slot (🔩 x 2).
2. Install the wireless LAN board [B] (Knob-screw x 2) into the board slot.
3. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).



d027i509

4. Peel off the double-sided tapes on the Velcro fasteners [A], and then attach them [A] at the front left and rear left of the machine.

http://www.manuals4you.com

5. Attach "ANT1" (having a black ferrite core) [B] to the front left of the machine.
6. Attach "ANT2" (having a white ferrite core) [C] to the rear right of the machine.

Note

- "ANT1" is a transmission/reception antenna and "ANT2" is a reception antenna. Do not attach them at the wrong places.

7. Attach the clamps as shown above.
8. Wire the cables and clamp them (x 7).

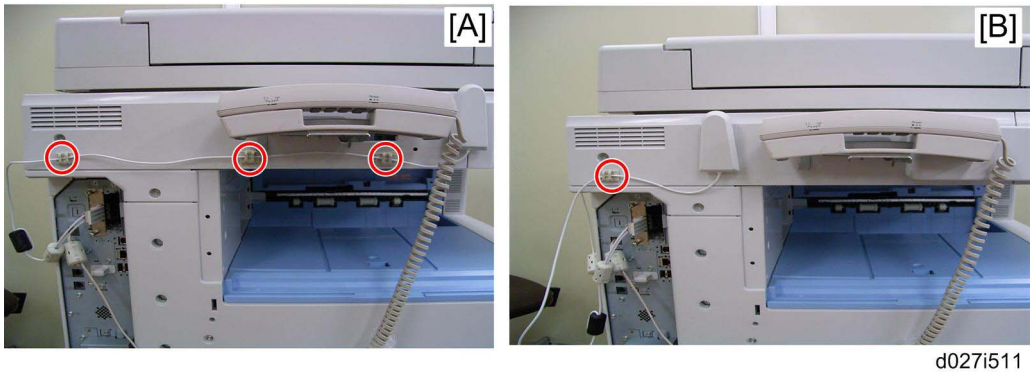
Note

- Make sure that the cables are not slack. Keep them wired tightly along the covers.

You may have to move the machine if the reception is not clear.

- Make sure that the machine is not located near an appliance or any type of equipment that generates strong magnetic fields.
- Put the machine as close as possible to the access point.

Installing Various Hardware Combinations



d027i511

- Refer to the above picture [A] when installing the handset.
- Refer to the above picture [B] when installing the handset and the USB2.0/SD.

UP Mode Settings for Wireless LAN

Enter the UP mode. Then do the procedure below to perform the initial interface settings for IEEE 802.11 a/g, g. These settings take effect every time the machine is powered on.

Note

- You cannot use the wireless LAN if you use Ethernet.

1. Press the “User Tools/Counter” key.
2. On the touch panel, press “System Settings”.

Note

- The Network I/F (default: Ethernet) must be set for either Ethernet or wireless LAN.

3. Select “Interface Settings”.

4. Press “Wireless LAN”. Only the wireless LAN options show.
5. Communication Mode. Select either “802.11 Ad hoc”, “Ad hoc” or “Infrastructure”.
6. SSID Setting. Enter the SSID setting. (The setting is case sensitive.)
7. Channel. You need this setting when Ad Hoc Mode is selected.

   Range: 1 to 14 (default: 11)

   Note

   - The allowed range for the channel settings may vary for different countries.
8. WEP (Encryption) Setting. The WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) setting is designed to protect wireless data transmission. The same WEP key is required on the receiving side in order to unlock encoded data. There are 64 bit and 128 bit WEP keys.

   WEP:

   Selects “Active” or “Inactive” (“Inactive” is default.).

   Range of Allowed Settings:

   64 bit: 10 characters

   128 bit: 26 characters
9. Transmission Speed. Press the Next button to show more settings. Then select the transmission speed for the mode: Auto, 11 Mbps, 5.5 Mbps, 2 Mbps, 1 Mbps (default: Auto). This setting should match the distance between the closest machine or access point. This depends on which mode is selected.

   Note

   - For the Ad Hoc Mode, this is the distance between the machine and the closest PC in the network. For the Infrastructure Mode, this is the distance between the machine and the closest access point.

   11 Mbps: 140 m (153 yd.)

   5.5 Mbps: 200 m (219 yd.)

   2 Mbps: 270 m (295 yd.)

   1 Mbps: 400 m (437 yd.)
10. Press “Return to Default” to initialize the wireless LAN settings.

    Press “Yes” to initialize the following settings:

    - Transmission mode
    - Channel
    - Transmission Speed
    - WEP
    - SSID
    - WEP Key

http://www.manuals4you.com

SP Mode and UP Mode Settings for IEEE 802.11 a/g, g Wireless LAN

The following SP commands and UP modes can be set for IEEE 802.11 a/g, g.

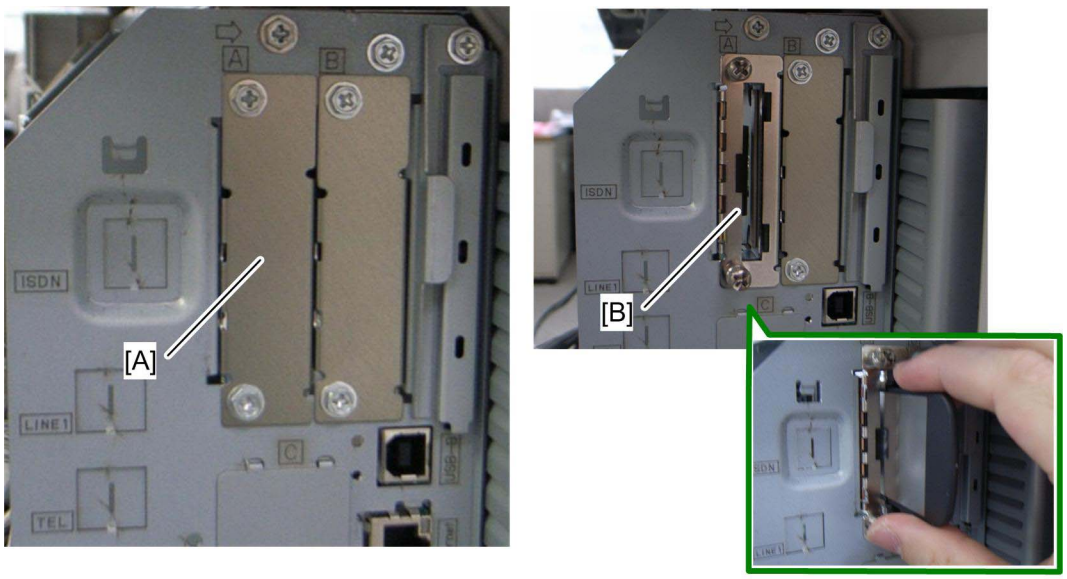
SP No.	Name	Function
5840-006	Channel MAX	Sets the maximum range of the channel settings for your country.
5840-007	Channel MIN	Sets the minimum range of the channels settings allowed for your country.
5840-011	WEP Key Select	Used to select the WEP key (Default: 00).
UP mode	Name	Function
	SSID	Used to confirm the current SSID setting.
WEP Key	Used to confirm the current WEP key setting.	
WEP Mode	Used to show the maximum length of the string that can be used for the WEP Key entry.	

2.23.7 BLUETOOTH

⚠CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

You can only install one of the following network interfaces at a time: (IEEE 802.11 a/g, g (Wireless LAN), IEEE1284, Bluetooth).



D027i405

1. Remove the slot cover [A] (☞ x 2).
2. Install the Bluetooth board [B] (Knob-screw x 2) into the slot A.
3. Insert the Bluetooth card into the Bluetooth card adaptor.
4. Install the Bluetooth card adaptor on the Bluetooth board.
5. Attach the antenna cap to the Bluetooth board.
6. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).

2.23.8 DATAOVERWRITESECURITY UNIT TYPE H (D377)

Before You Begin the Procedure

1. Confirm that the DataOverwriteSecurity unit SD card is the correct type for the machine. The correct type for this machine is "**Type H**".

   Important

   - If you install any version other than "**Type H**", you will have to replace the NVRAM and do this installation procedure again.
2. Make sure that the following settings are not at their factory default values:
   - Supervisor login password

http://www.manuals4you.com

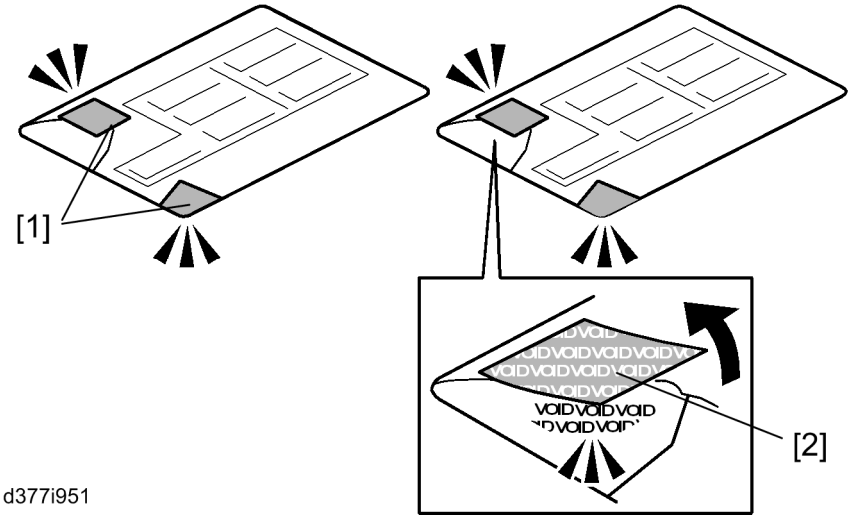
Controller Options

- Administrator login name
- Administrator login password

If any of these settings is at a factory default value, tell the customer these settings must be changed before you do the installation procedure.

3. Make sure that “Admin. Authentication” is ON.
   [System Settings] – [Administrator Tools] – [Administrator Authentication Management] - [Admin. Authentication]
   If this setting is OFF, tell the customer this setting must be ON before you do the installation procedure.
4. Make sure that “Administrator Tools” is enabled (selected).
   [System Settings] – [Administrator Tools] – [Administrator Authentication Management] - [Available Settings]
   If this setting is disabled (not selected), tell the customer this setting must be enabled (selected) before you do the installation procedure.

Seal Check and Removal



d377i951

⚠CAUTION

- You must check the box seals to make sure that they were not removed after the items were sealed in the box at the factory before you do the installation.

1. Check the box seals [1] on each corner of the box.
   - Make sure that a tape is attached to each corner.
   - The surfaces of the tapes must be blank. If you see “VOID” on the tapes, do not install the components in the box.
2. If the surfaces of the tapes do not show “VOID”, remove them from the corners of the box.
3. You can see the “VOID” marks [2] when you remove each seal. In this condition, they

cannot be attached to the box again.

Installation Procedure

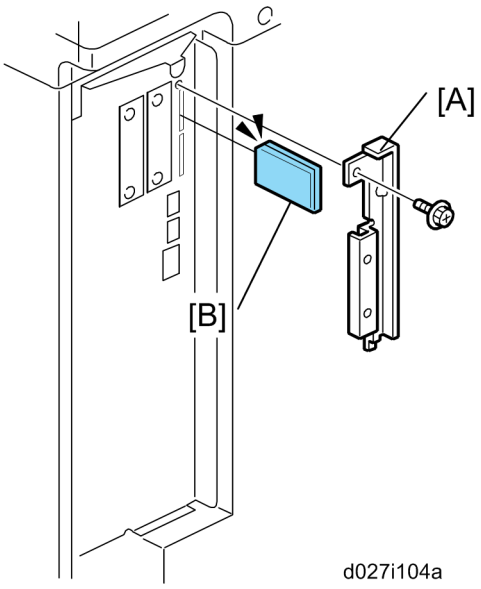
⚠CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

Note

- You must install the DataOverwriteSecurity unit in SD Card slot 1. However, the Postscript option and others are also installed in SD Card slot 1. You must do the "SD Card Appli Move" procedure first if you want to install the DataOverwriteSecurity unit.

1. Turn off the main power switch if the machine is turned on.
2. Disconnect the network cable if it is connected.



3. Remove the slot cover [A] for SD cards (🔩 x 1).
4. Turn the SD-card label face [B] to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 1 until you hear a click.
5. Connect the network cable if it needs to be connected.
6. Turn on the main power switch.
7. Go into the SP mode and push “EXECUTE” with SP5-878-001.
8. Exit the SP mode and turn off the operation switch. Then turn off the main power switch.
9. Turn on the machine power.
10. Do SP5990-005 (SP print mode Diagnostic Report).
11. Make sure the ROM number and firmware version in area [a] of the diagnostic report are the same as those in area [b].

http://www.manuals4you.com

Controller Options

- [a]: “ROM Number/Firmware Version” – “HDD Format Option”
- [b]: “Loading Program” – “GW5a_zoffym”

Diagnostic Report:	“ROM No. / Firmware Version” [a]	“Loading Program” [b]
DataOverwriteSecurity Unit	HDD Format Option: D3775912 / 1.00m	GW5a_zoffym: D3775912 / 1.00m

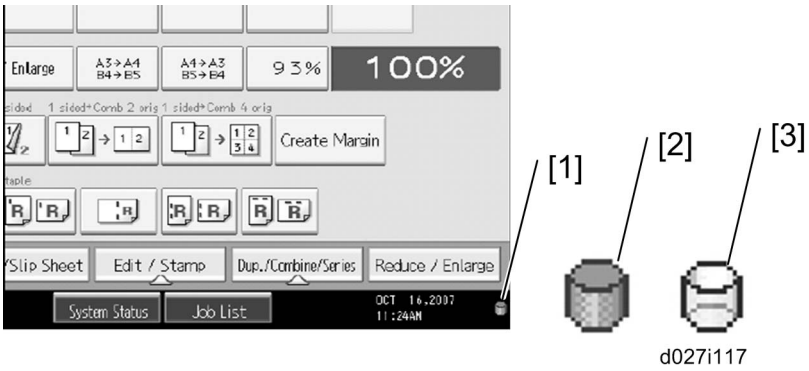
Important

- The ROM number and firmware version number change when the firmware is upgraded. However, the important thing is to make sure the numbers in [a] are the same as the numbers in [b].
- If the ROM numbers are not the same, or the version numbers are not the same, this means the unit was not installed correctly.

If this happens:

Make sure of the unit type (must be Type H).

12. Go into the User Tools mode, and select System Settings> Administrator Tools> Auto Erase Memory Setting> On.
13. Exit the User Tools mode.



d027i117

14. Check the display and make sure that the overwrite erase icon [1] shows.
15. Check the overwrite erase icon.
    - The icon [2]: This icon is lit when there is temporary data to be overwritten, and blinks during overwriting.
    - The icon [3]: This icon is lit when there is no temporary data to be overwritten.

2.23.9 HDD ENCRYPTION UNIT

Before You Begin the Procedure

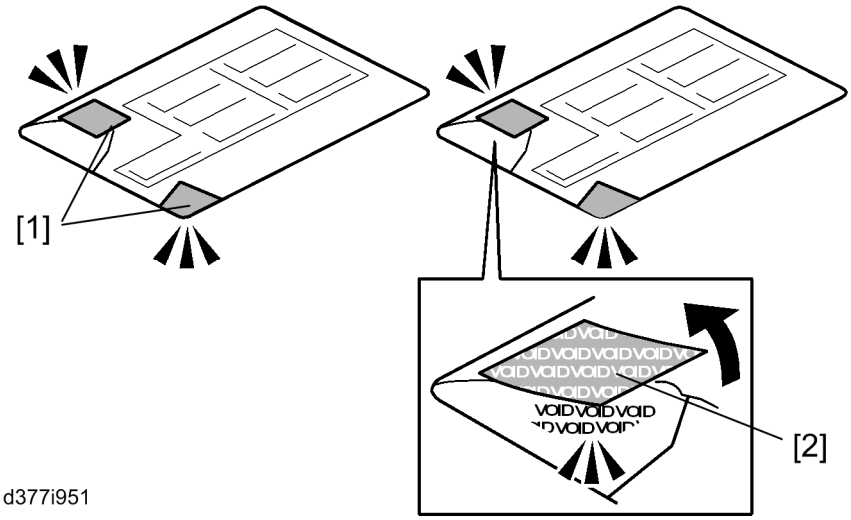
1. Make sure that the following settings are not at the factory default settings:
   - Supervisor login password
   - Administrator login name
   - Administrator login password

   Important
   - These settings must be set up by the customer before the HDD Encryption unit can be installed.
2. Confirm that "Admin. Authentication" is on:
   [User Tools] > "System Settings"> "Administrator Tools"> "Administrator Authentication Management"> "Admin. Authentication"> "On"
   If this setting is "Off", tell the customer that this setting must be "On" before you can do the installation procedure.
3. Confirm that "Administrator Tools" is selected and enabled:
   [User Tools]> "System Settings"> "Administrator Tools"> "Administrator Authentication Management"> "Available Settings"

   Note
   - "Available Settings" is not displayed until Step 2 is done.

   If this setting is not selected, tell the customer that this setting must be selected before you can do the installation procedure.

Seal Check and Removal



d377i951

CAUTION

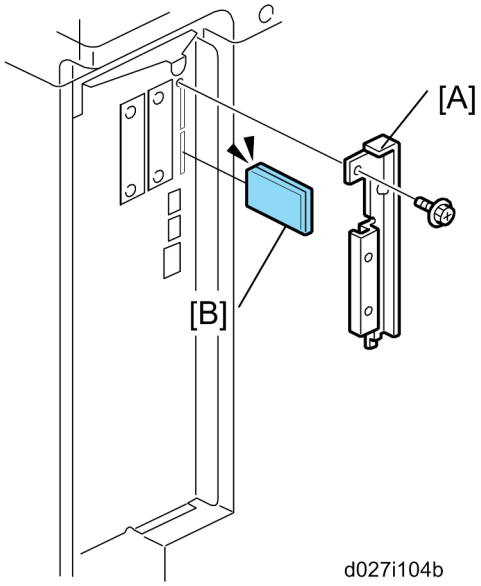
- You must check the box seals to make sure that they were not removed after the

http://www.manuals4you.com

items were sealed in the box at the factory before you do the installation.

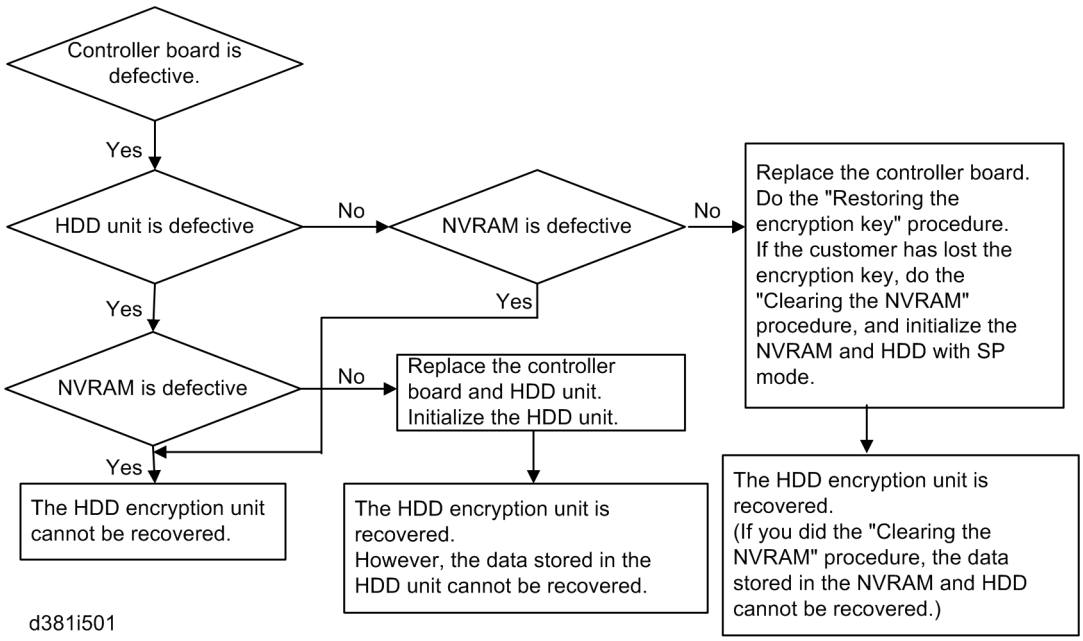
1. Check the box seals [1] on each corner of the box.
   - Make sure that a tape is attached to each corner.
   - The surfaces of the tapes must be blank. If you see “VOID” on the tapes, do not install the components in the box.
2. If the surfaces of the tapes do not show “VOID”, remove them from the corners of the box.
3. You can see the “VOID” marks [2] when you remove each seal. In this condition, they cannot be attached to the box again.

Installation Procedure



1. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (☞ x 1).
2. Turn the SD-card label [B] to face the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 2 until you hear a click.
3. Turn on the main power switch, and then enter the SP mode.
4. Select SP5878-002, and then press "Execute" on the LCD.
5. Exit the SP mode after "Completed" is displayed on the LCD.
6. Turn off the main power switch.
7. Remove the SD card from slot 2.
8. Attach the SD card slot cover [A] (☞ x 1).

Recovery from a Device Problem



Restoring the Encryption key

When replacing the controller board for a model in which the HDD encryption unit has been installed, updating the encryption key is required.

1. Prepare an SD card which is initialized.
2. Make the "restore_key" folder in the SD card.
3. Make an "nvram_key.txt" file in the "restore_key" folder in the SD card.
4. Ask an administrator to input the encryption key (this has been printed out earlier by the user) into the "nvram_key.txt" file.
5. Remove only the HDD unit (☛ p.4-164 "

http://www.manuals4you.com

HDD").

6. Turn on the main power switch.
7. Confirm that the prompt on the LCD tells you to install the SD card (storing the encryption key) in the machine.
8. Turn off the main power switch.
9. Insert the SD card that contains the encryption key into slot 2.
10. Turn on the main power switch, and the machine automatically restores the encryption key in the flash memory on the controller board.
11. Turn off the main power switch after the machine has returned to normal status.
12. Remove the SD card from slot 2.
13. Reinstall the HDD unit.

Clearing the NVRAM

When replacing the controller board for a model in which the HDD encryption unit has been installed and a customer has lost the encryption key, clearing the NVRAM is required to recover the HDD encryption unit.

1. Prepare an SD card which is initialized.
2. Make the "restore_key" folder in the SD card.
3. Make an "nvram_key.txt" file in the "restore_key" folder in the SD card.
4. Input "nvclear" into the "nvram_key.txt" file.
5. Turn on the main power switch.
6. Confirm that the prompt on the LCD tells you to install the SD card (storing the encryption key) in the machine.
7. Turn off the main power switch.
8. Insert the SD card that contains “nvclear” into slot 2.
9. Turn on the main power switch, and the machine automatically restores the encryption key in the flash memory on the controller board.
10. Turn off the main power switch after the machine has returned to normal status.
11. Remove the SD card from slot 2.
12. Turn on the main power switch.
13. Initialize the NVRAM (SP5801-001) and HDD unit (SP5832-001) with SP mode.
14. The user must enable the HDD encryption unit with a user tool.

2.23.10 PICTBRIDGE

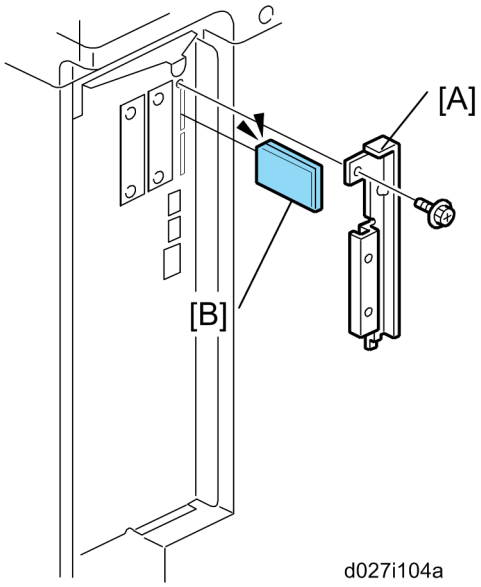
CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

Note

- You must install the PictBridge option in SD Card slot 1. However, the Postscript option and the DataOverwriteSecurity unit option are also installed in SD Card slot 1. You must do the SD Card Appli move procedure first if you have the postscript or DataOverwriteSecurity unit option installed and you want to install the PictBridge unit.

You must install the USB Host Interface when using the PictBridge unit.



1. Remove the SD-card slot cover [A] for SD cards (☞ x 1).
2. Turn the SD-card label face [B] to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 1 until you hear a click.
3. Attach the SD-card slot cover [A] (☞ x 1).
4. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).

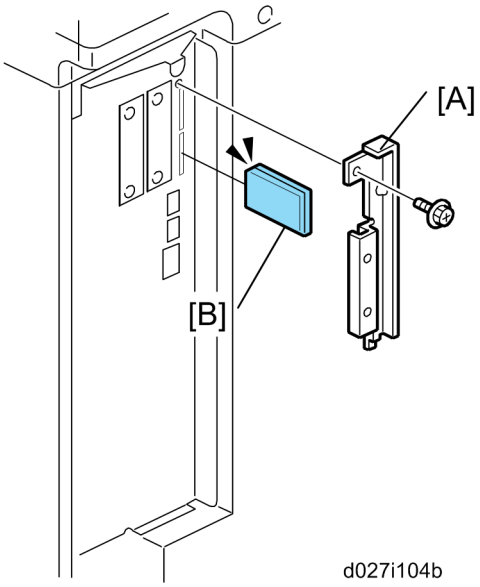
http://www.manuals4you.com

2.23.11 VM CARD TYPE I

The VM card application cannot be moved to another SD card. However, other applications can be moved onto the VM card.

Installation Procedure

1. Switch the machine off.



2. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (x1).
3. Turn the SD-card label face [B] to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 2 until you hear a click.
4. Reattach the SD card slot cover.
5. Switch the machine on.
6. On the operation panel, remove the bottom blank keytop and replace it with the keytop provided.
7. Attach the decal to the copier.

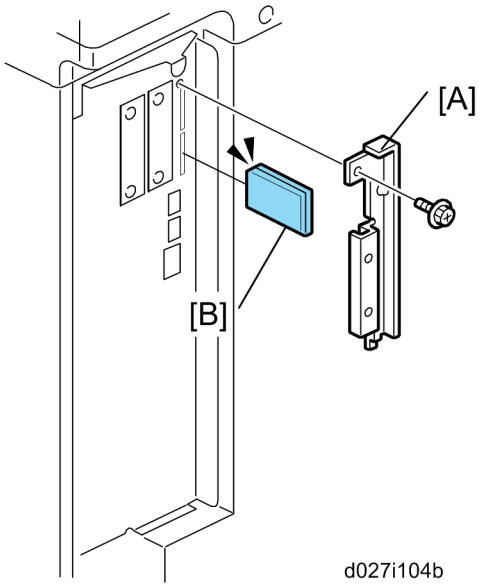
2.23.12 BROWSER UNIT TYPE B

Installation Procedure

⚠CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

SD card slot 2 is basically used only for service maintenance. Do not leave an SD card in slot 2 after installing an application.



1. Remove the slot cover [A] for SD cards (☞ x 1).
2. Turn the SD-card label face [B] to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 2 until you hear a click.
3. Plug in and turn on the main power switch.
4. Push the "User Tools" key.
   - If an administrator setting is registered for the machine, step 5 and 6 are required. Otherwise, skip to step 7.
5. Push the "Login/ Logout" key.
6. Login with the administrator user name and password.
7. Touch "Extended Feature Settings" twice on the LCD.
8. Touch "Install" on the LCD.
9. Touch "SD Card".
10. Touch the "Browser" line.
11. Under "Install to" touch "Machine HDD" and touch "Next".
12. When you see "Ready to Install", check the information on the screen to confirm your previous selection.

http://www.manuals4you.com

13. Touch "OK". You will see "Installing the extended feature... Please wait.," and then "Completed".
14. Touch "Exit" to go back to the setting screen.
15. Touch "Change Allocation."
16. Touch the "Browser" line.
17. Press one of the hard keys, which you want to use for the Browser Unit. In default, this function is assigned to the "Other Functions" key (bottom key of function keys).
18. Touch "OK".
19. Touch "Exit" twice to go back to the copy screen.
20. Turn off the main power switch.
21. Install the key for "Browser Unit" to the place, where you want.
22. Remove the SD card from slot 2.
23. Attach the slot cover [A] (x 1).
24. Keep the SD card in place (☛ p.5-22 "SD Card Appli Move") after you install the application program from the card to HDD. The SD card can be the only proof that the user is licensed to use the application program. You may need to check the SD card and its data to solve a problem in the future.

Update Procedure

1. Remove the slot cover [A] for SD cards (x 1).
2. Turn the SD-card label face to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 2 until you hear a click.
3. Plug in and turn on the main power switch.
4. Push the "User Tools" key.
   - If an administrator setting is registered for the machine, step 5 and 6 are required. Otherwise, skip to step 7.
5. Push the "Login/ Logout" key.
6. Login with the administrator user name and password.
7. Touch "Extended Feature Settings" twice on the LCD.
8. Touch "Uninstall" on the LCD.
9. Touch the "Browser" line
10. Confirmation message appears on the LCD.
11. Touch "Yes" to proceed.
12. Reconfirmation message appears on the LCD.
13. Touch "Yes" to uninstall the browser unit.
14. You will see "Uninstalling the extended feature... Please wait.", and then "Completed".
15. Touch "Exit" to go back to the setting screen.

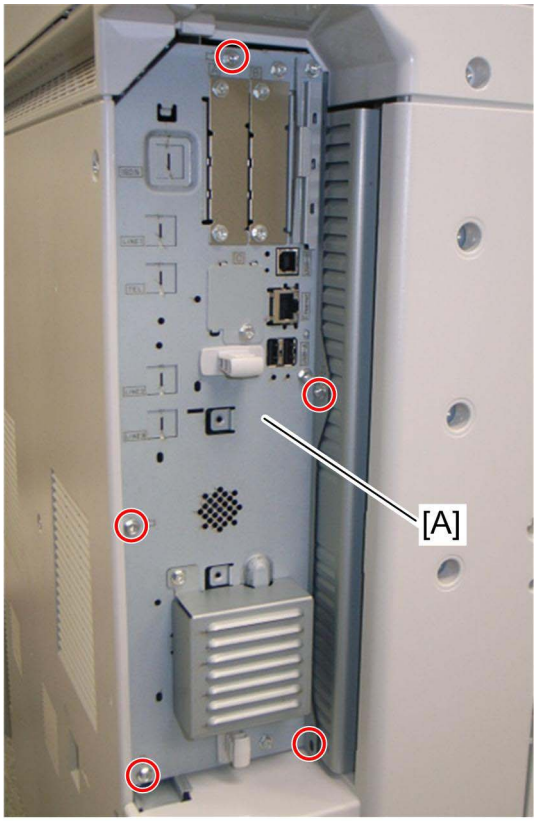
16. Exit "User/Tools" setting, and then turn off the main power switch.
17. Remove the SD card from SD card slot 2.
18. Overwrite the updated program in the "sdk" folder of the browser unit application with PC.
19. Do the "Installation Procedure" to install the browser unit.

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.23.13 GIGABIT ETHERNET

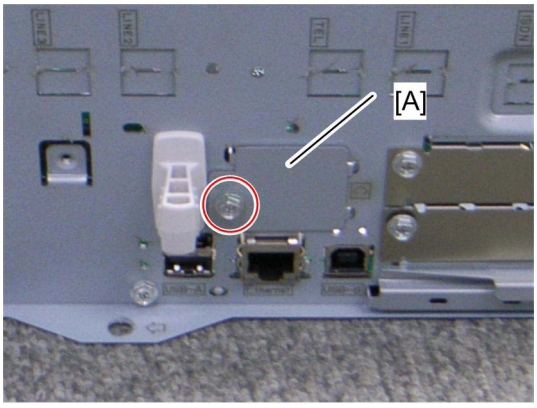
CAUTION

- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.



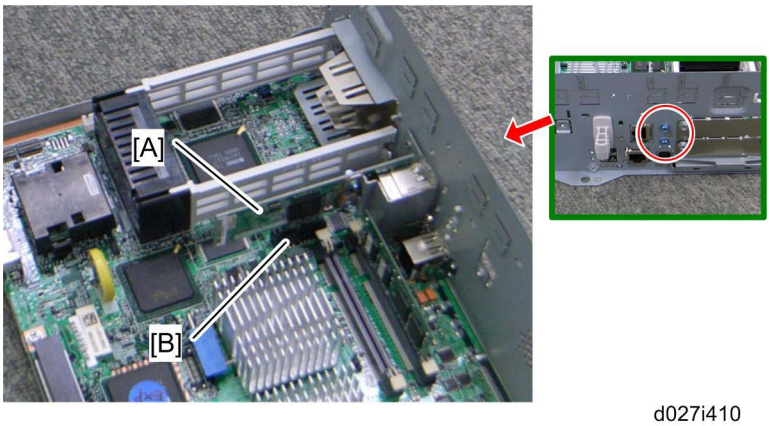
d027i075

1. Pull out the controller board [A] (x 5).



d027i409

2. Remove the slot cover [A] (x 1).



d027i410

3. Attach the Gigabit Ethernet controller [A] into the slot [B] (🔩 x 2).
4. Reassemble the machine.
5. Check the operation of the Gigabit Ethernet

2.23.14 CHECK ALL CONNECTIONS

1. Plug in the power cord. Then turn on the main switch.
2. Enter the printer user mode. Then print the configuration page.
   User Tools > Printer Settings > List Test Print > Config. Page

All installed options are shown in the “System Reference” column.

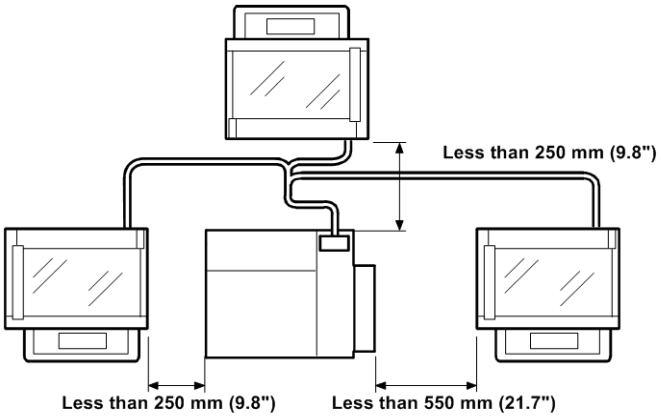
http://www.manuals4you.com

⇒2.24 SCANNER ACCESSIBILITY OPTION TYPE 5000

2.24.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

General Requirements

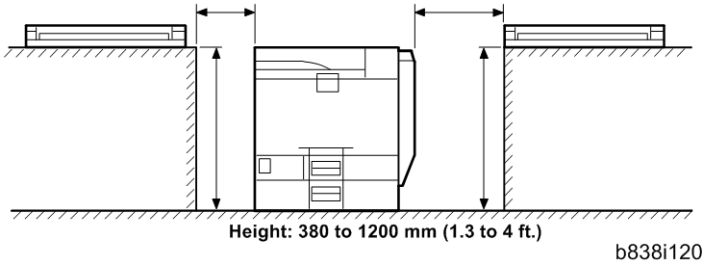
- Install the scanner on a solid base.
- Do not install the scanner in areas where the unit can fall down when the ADF cover is opened.
- Make sure you install the unit in area that allows easy access for operation.
- Ask the customer about their requirements before you install the unit.



b838i199

Specific Requirements

- The scanner cable should not touch the floor.
- The cables should not hang free where they can become entangled with other equipment or furniture such as a wheelchair.
- The unit should be positioned within 380 to1220 mm (1.3 to 4 ft.) above the floor.
- The scanner should be positioned as follows:
  - Within 250 mm (9.8") from the left and rear side of the main unit
  - Within 550 mm (21.7") from the right side of the main unit



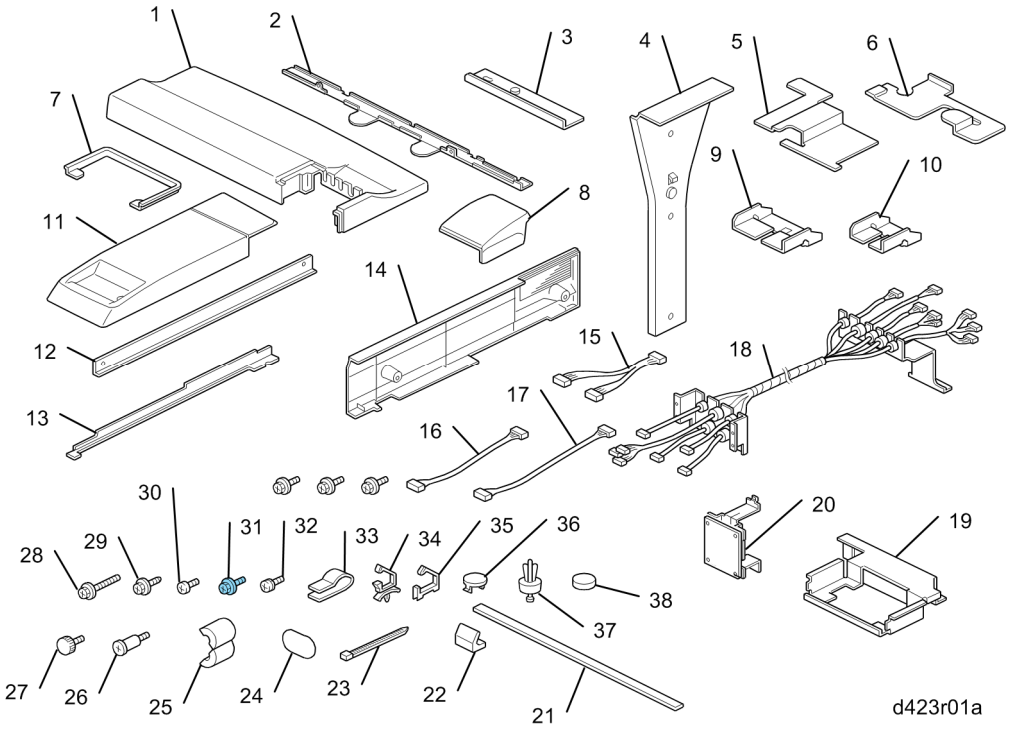
b838i120

2.24.2 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the accessories and their quantities against the following list.

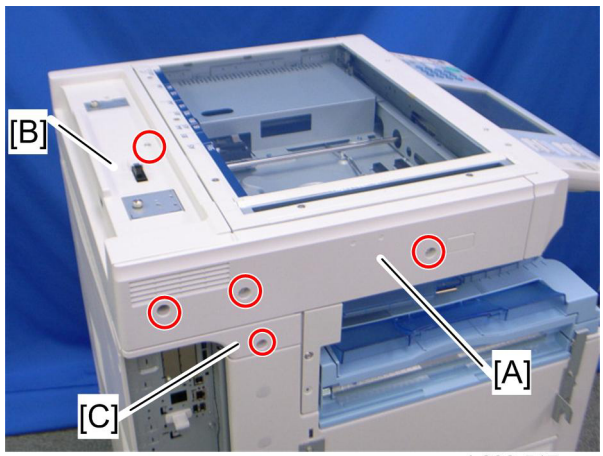
No.	Description	O'ty
1	Top Rear Cover	1
2	Cable Bracket Cover	1
3	Top Right Cover	2
4	Left Scanner Stay	1
5	Right Bottom Plate	1
6	Left Bottom Plate	1
7	Cable Bracket Cover	1
8	Cable Cover	1
9	Left Stopper	1
10	Right Stopper	1
11	Top Right Cover	1
12	Right Bracket	1
13	Left Bracket	1
14	Scanner Right Cover	1
15	BICU I/F Harness	1
16	Operation Panel I/F Harness	1
17	MB I/F Harness	1
18	Cable Bracket Unit	1
19	Operation Panel I/F Board	1
20	MB I/F Board	1
21	Gasket – Scanner Frame	1
22	Gasket – Scanner Lens	1
23	Cable Band	1
24	Seal – Bottom	1
25	Ferrite Core	6
26	Shoulder Screw (only for installing key counter)	4
27	Adjuster	2
28	Screw 2 – Tapping: M3 x 8	1
29	Screw – Tapping: M3 x 6	4
30	Screw – Tapping: M4 x 8	1
31	Screw – Tapping: M4 x 16	1
32	Screw – Tapping: M3 x 8	1
33	Screw – Round: M3 x 6	1
34	Screw – Tapping: M3 x 8 (blue)	1
35	Screw – Round: M4 x 8	1
36	Screw-Round: M4 x 8	3
37	Rubber Leg	3
38	Spacer	2

http://www.manuals4you.com


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
d423r01a

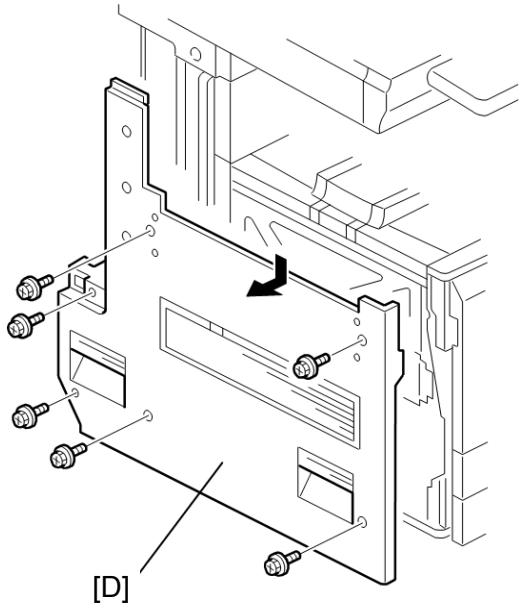
2.24.3 REMOVAL PROCEDURE

Covers



b838r517a

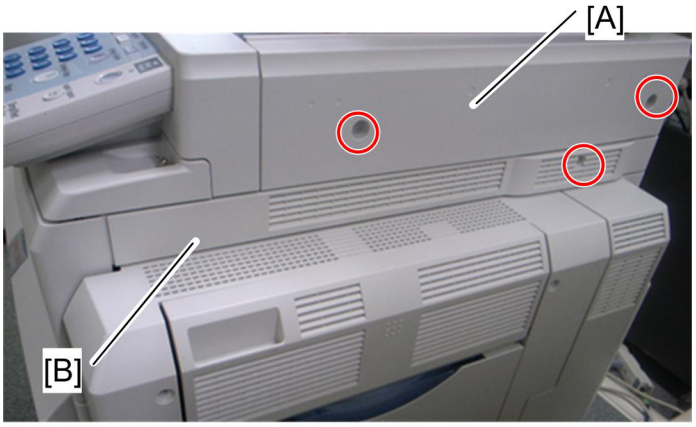
1. Scanner left cover [A] (x 3)
2. Slide the scanner rear cover [B] to the left side, and then remove it (x 1, hook x 2).
3. Left rear cover [C] (x 1)



b838r201

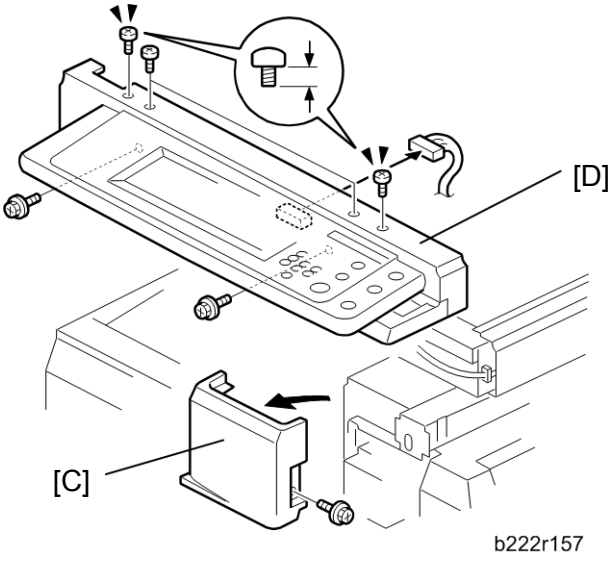
4. Left cover [D] (x 6)

http://www.manuals4you.com



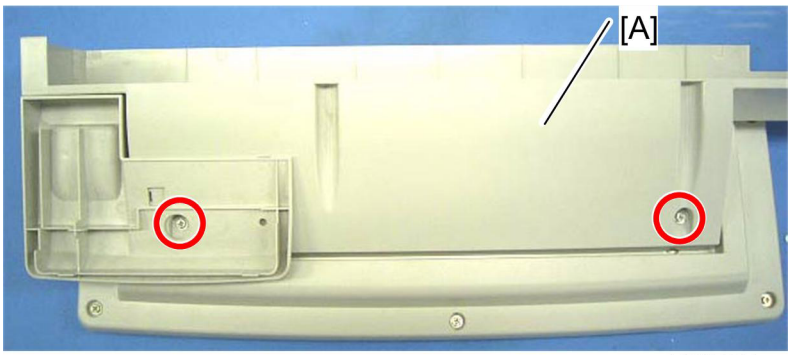
d009r990

5. Scanner right cover [A] (x 2)
6. Right top cover [B] (x 1)



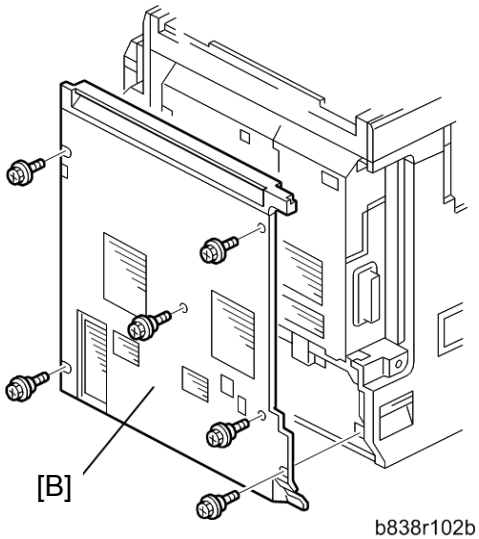
b222r157

7. Front right cover [C] (x 1)
8. Operation panel with the scanner front cover [D] (x 6, M3 x 3: bind screw x 2, M3 x 5: bind screw x 2 on the top of the scanner front cover, M3 x 8: tapping screw x 2 on the bottom of the scanner front cover)



b838r514

9. Scanner front cover [A] (x 2)

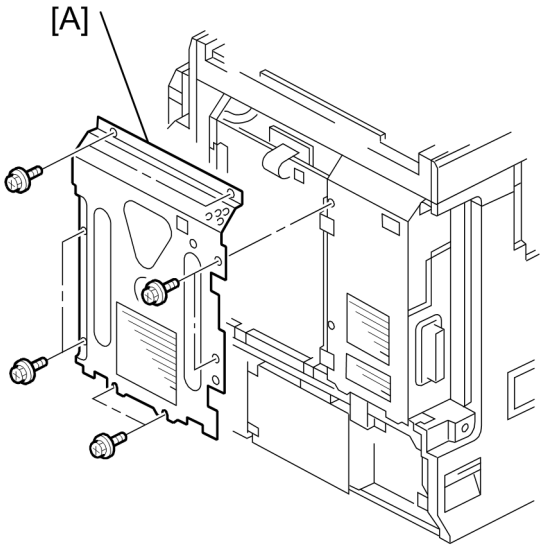


b838r102b

10. Rear cover [B] (x 6)

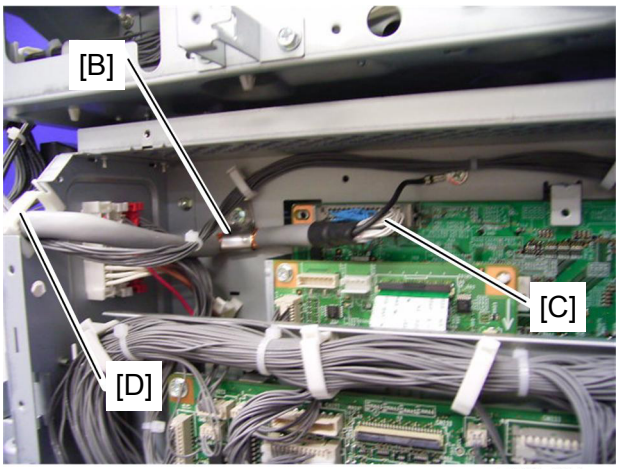
http://www.manuals4you.com

Scanner Unit



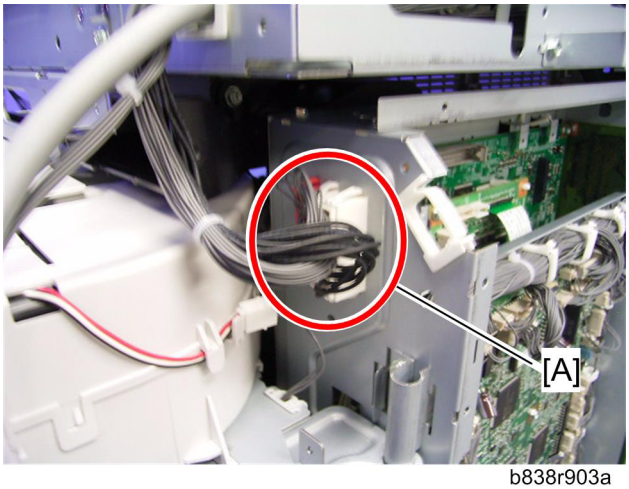
b838r107

11. Controller box right cover [A] (🔩 x 8)



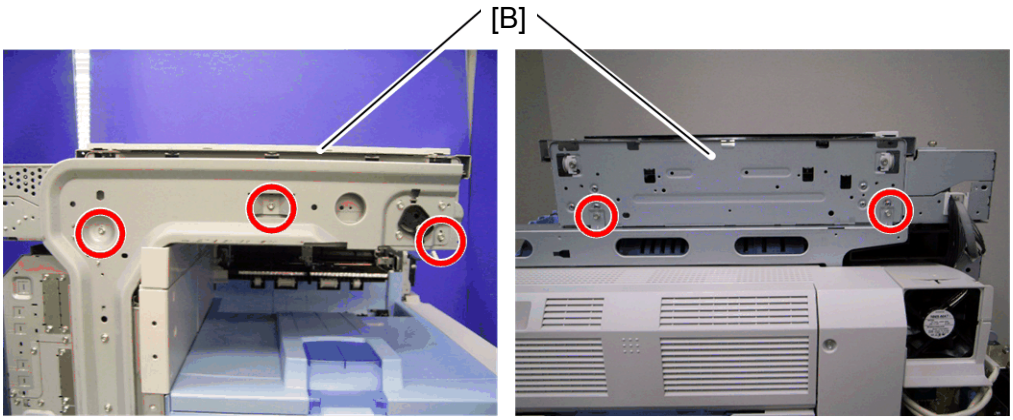
b838r901a

12. Remove the clamp plate [B] (🔩 x 1).
13. Disconnect the scanner I/F cable [C] from the connector (CN103) on the BICU (🔩 x 1, ground cable x 1).
14. Release the clamp [D].



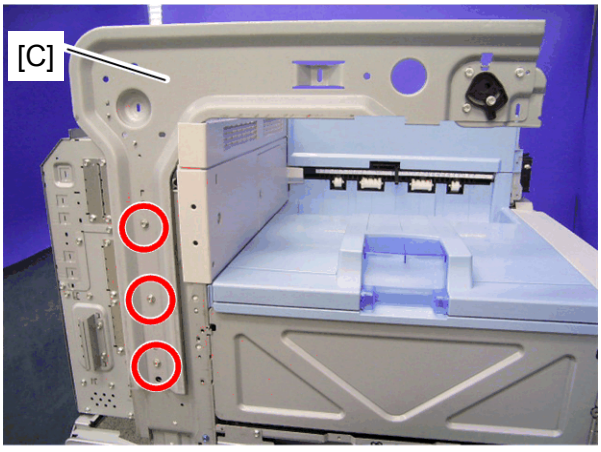
b838r903a

15. Disconnect the three connectors [A] on the controller box.



b838r902

16. Scanner unit [B] (x 5: right side x 2, left side x 3)



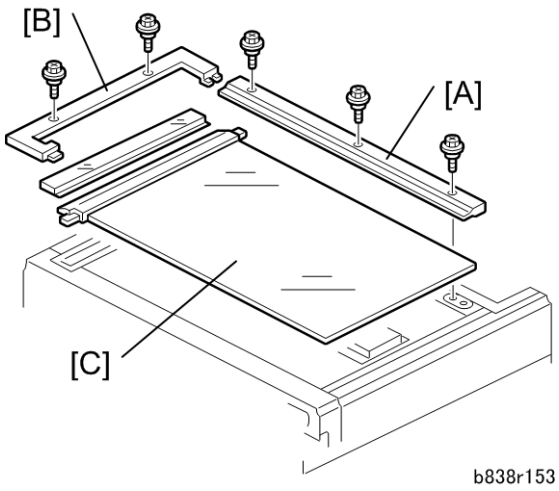
b838r904

17. Scanner left stay [C] (x 3)

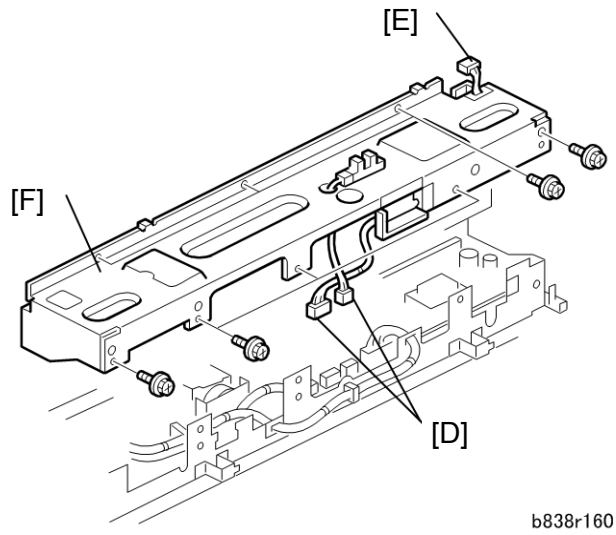
http://www.manuals4you.com

2.24.4 CONNECTING PROCEDURE

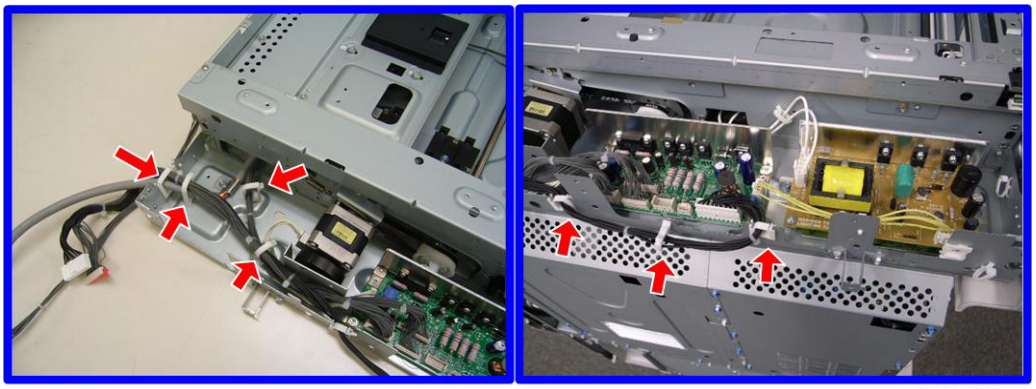
Scanner Unit



18. Rear scale [A] (🔩 x 3; stepped screw)
19. Glass cover [B] (🔩 x 2; stepped screw)
20. Exposure glass with the left scale [C]

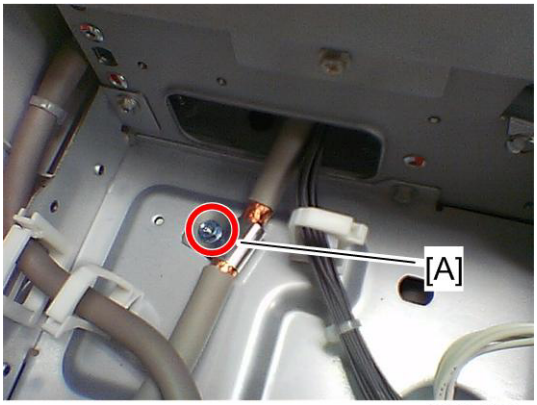


21. Disconnect the connectors [D] (CN312, CN318) from the SIO.
22. Disconnect the scanner HP sensor connector [E].
23. Scanner rear frame [F] (🔩 x 8)



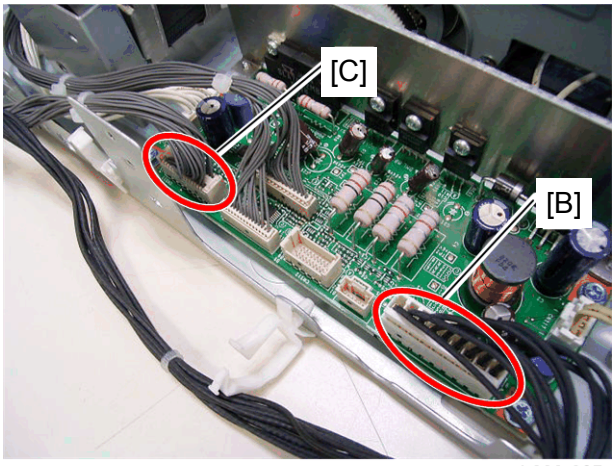
b838r905

24. Release the clamps (x 7).



b838r906

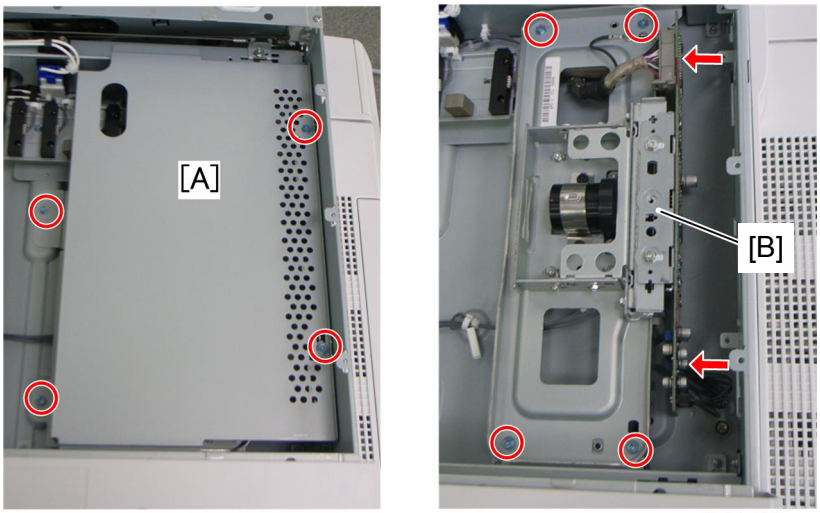
25. Remove the clamp [A] for the scanner I/F cable (x 1). This clamp will be used hereafter.



b838r907

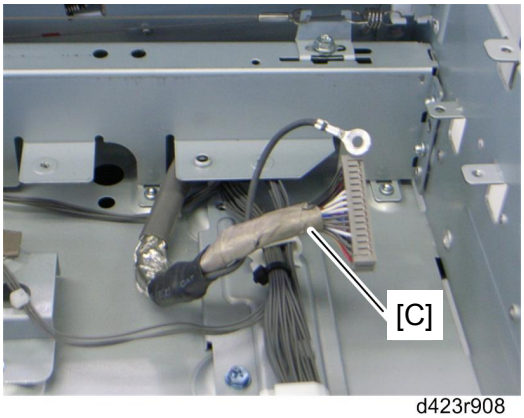
26. Disconnect the BICU interface harness [B] (CN310 on the SIO), and then remove it.
27. Disconnect the power supply harness [C] (CN311 on the SIO), and then remove it

http://www.manuals4you.com



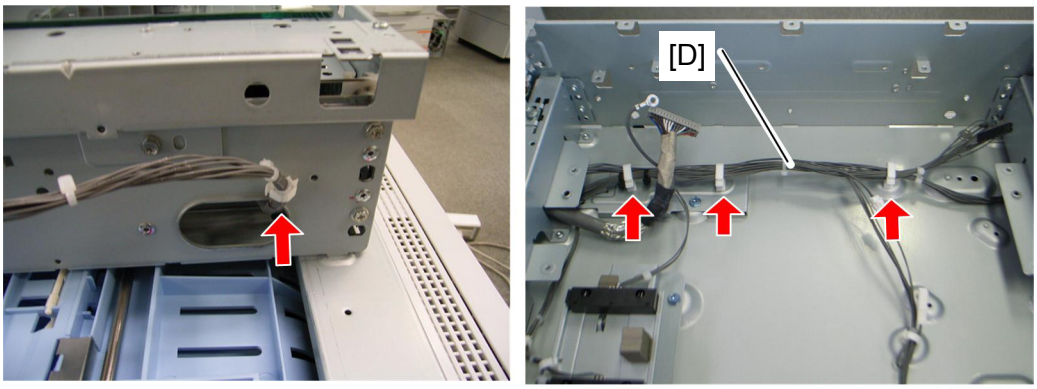
d027r109a

28. SBU cover bracket [A] (x 4)
29. Sensor board unit [B] (x 4, x 2, ground cable x 1)



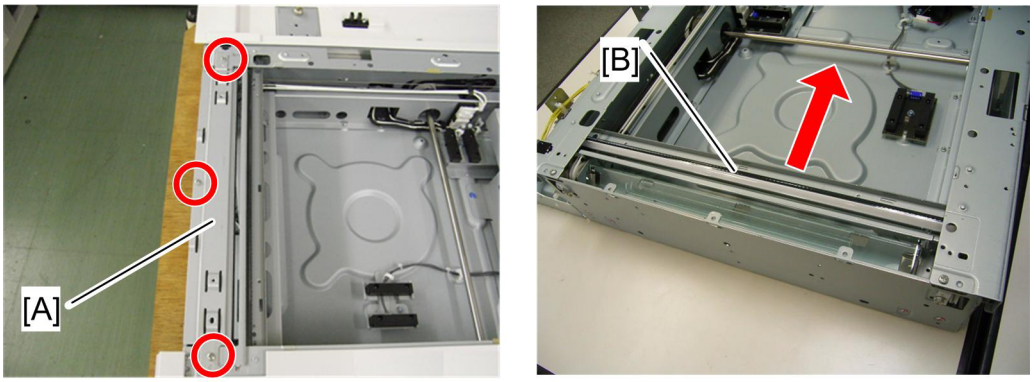
d423r908

30. Scanner I/F cable [C] (x 1, ground cable x 1)



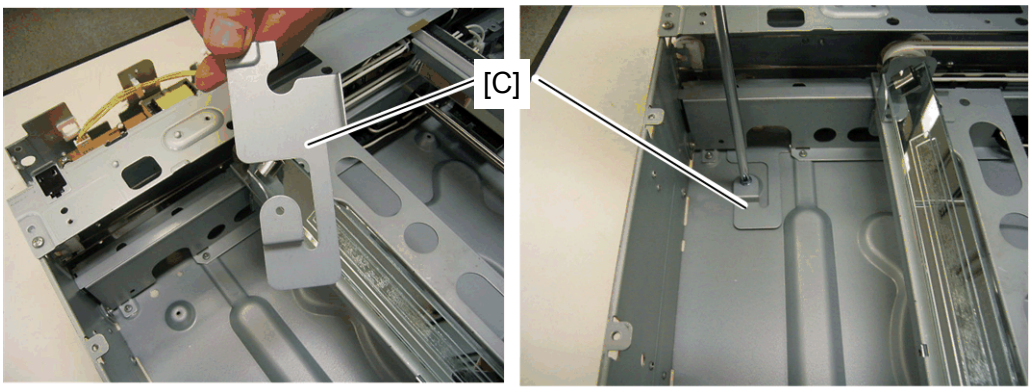
d423r909

31. Operation panel I/F harness [D] (x 4)



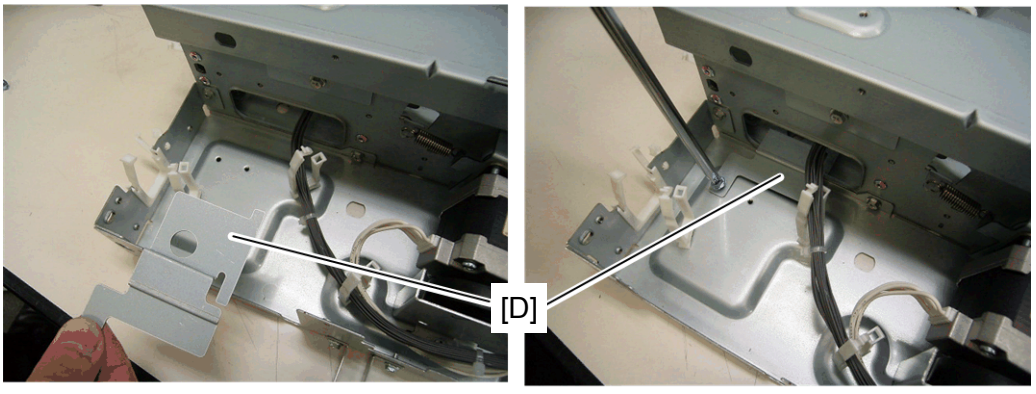
d009r910

32. Scanner left stay [A] (x 3)
33. Move the scanner carriage [B] to the center position.



b838r911

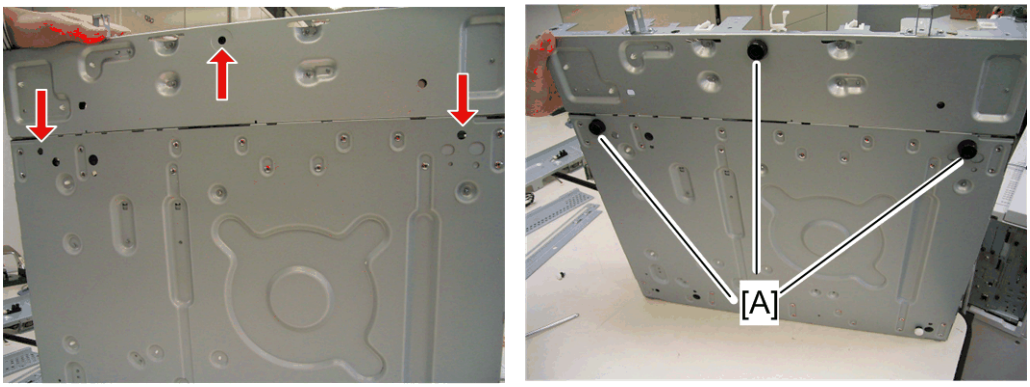
34. Install the left bottom plate [C] in the place as shown (x 1; M3 x 6 blue screws).



b838r912

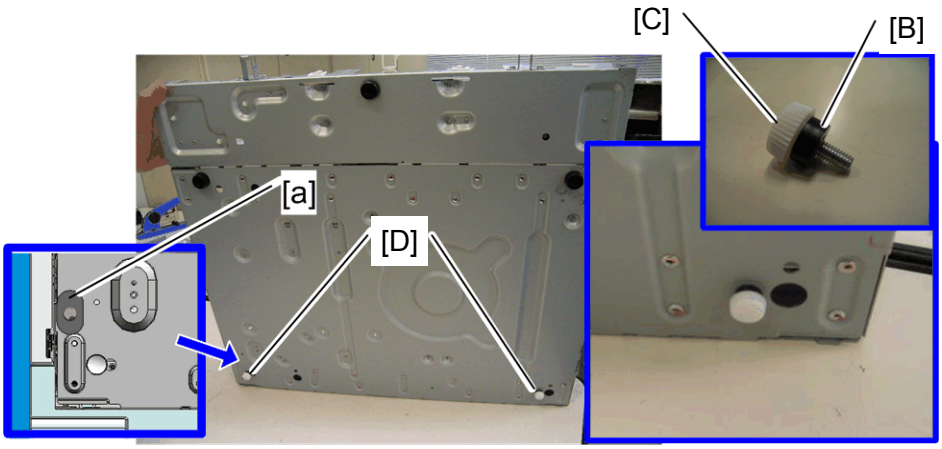
35. Install the right bottom plate [D] in the place as shown (x 1, M3 x 6 blue screws).

http://www.manuals4you.com



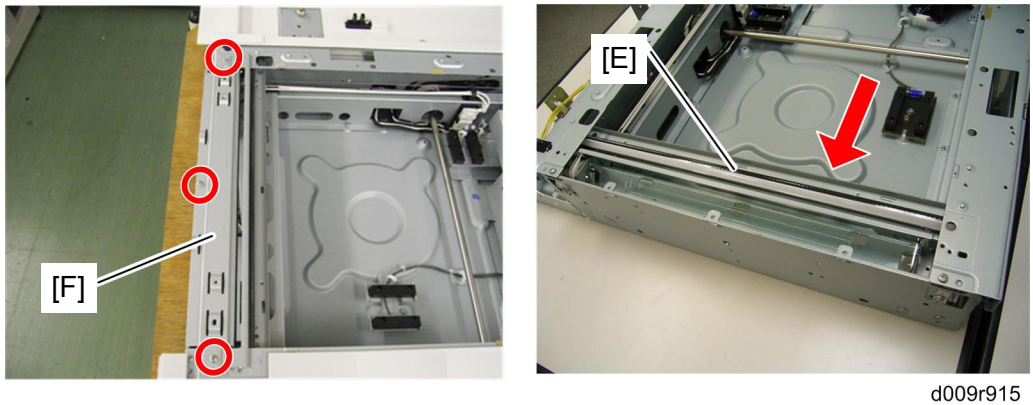
b838r913

36. Install the three rubber legs [A] in the bottom of the scanner unit.



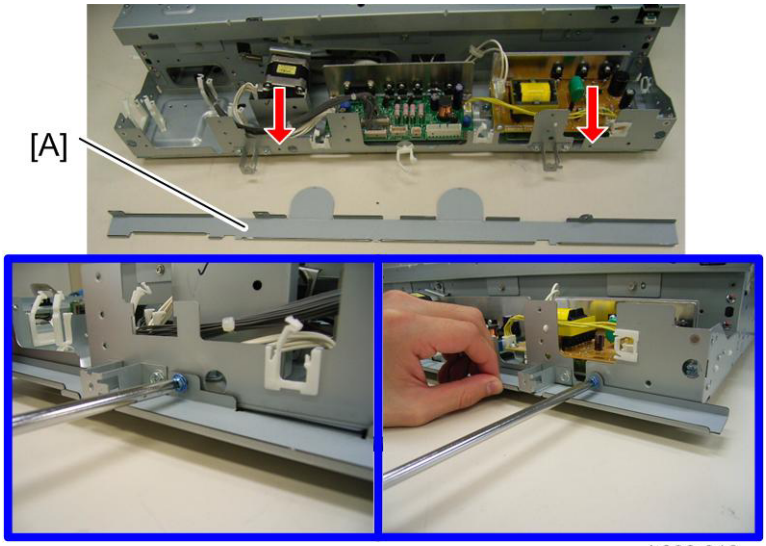
b838r914

37. Install the two spacers [B], adjusters [C] and seal [a] in the bottom [D] of the scanner unit.



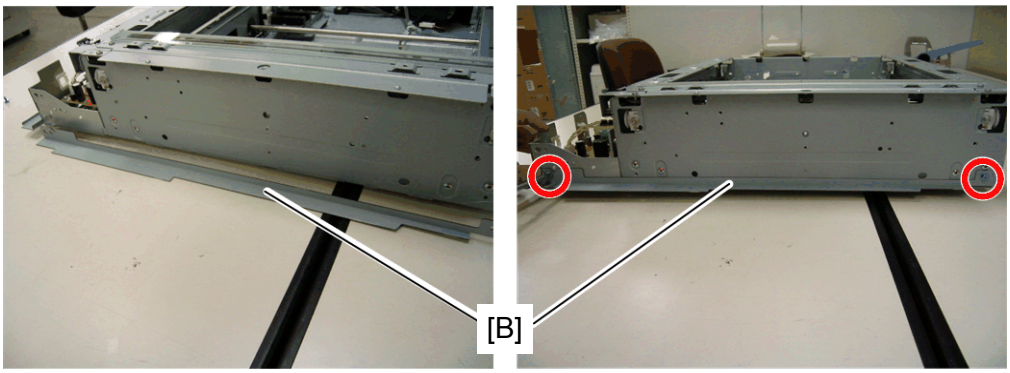
d009r915

38. Move the scanner carriage [E] to its home position.
39. Reinstall the scanner left stay [F] (x 3).



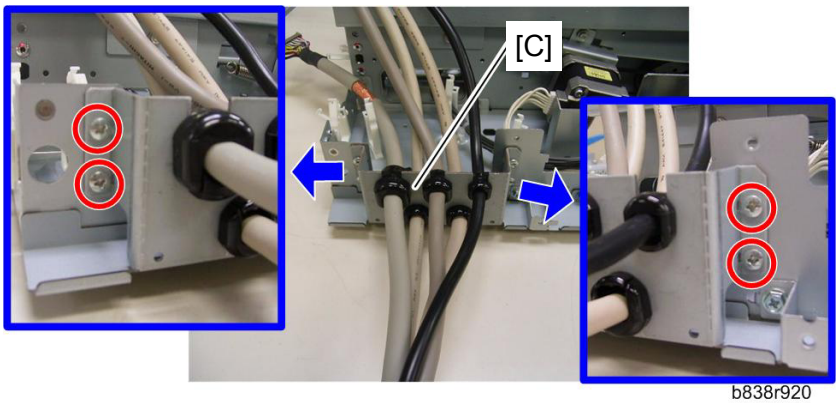
b838r916

40. Install the rear bracket [A] to the outside of the scanner rear frame (x 2; M3 x 6 blue screws).



b838r917

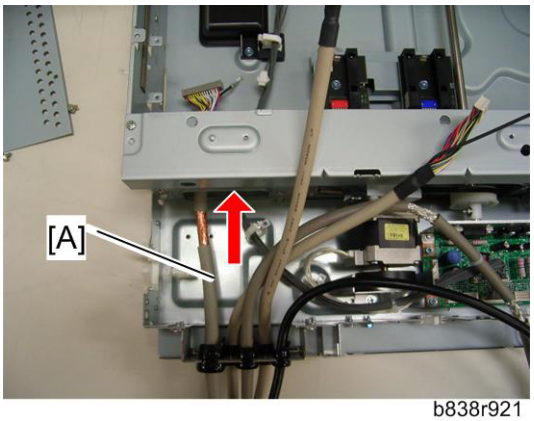
41. Install the left bracket [B] to the outside of the scanner left frame (x 2; M3 x 6 blue screws).



b838r920

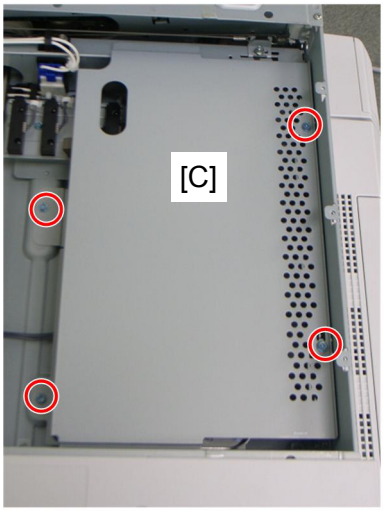
42. Attach the cable bracket [C] to the rear right of the scanner unit (x 4; screw-round M3 x 6).

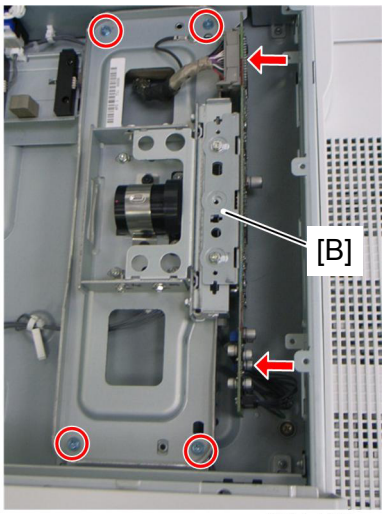
http://www.manuals4you.com



b838r921

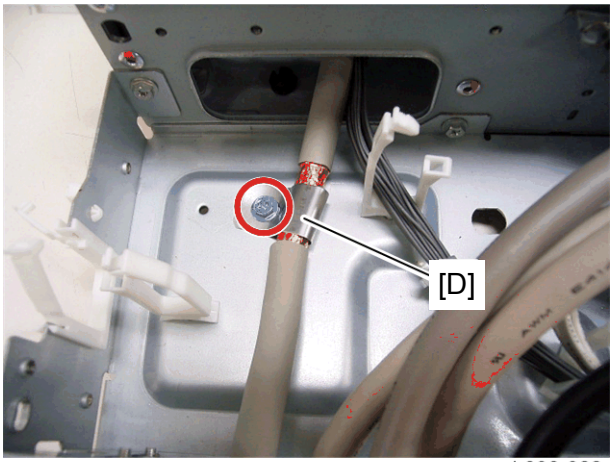
43. Put the scanner I/F cable [A] through the cutout of the scanner rear frame.





d027r109b

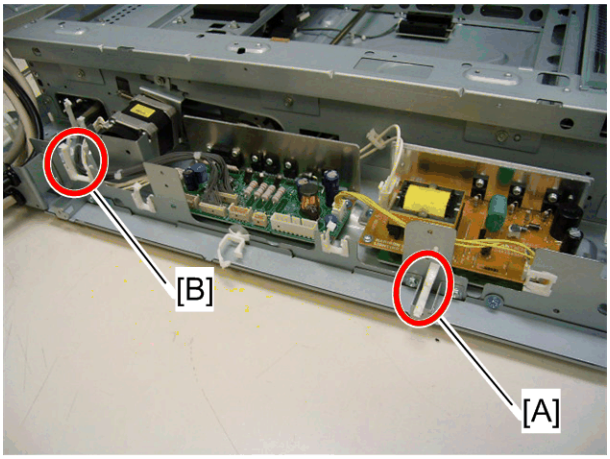
44. Attach the sensor board unit [B] (x 4, x 2, ground cable x 1)
45. Attach the SBU cover bracket [C] (x 4)



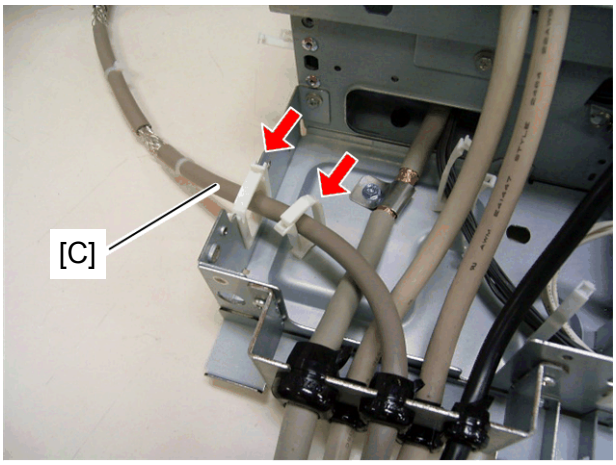
b838r922

46. Remove the rap on the scanner I/F cable [D].

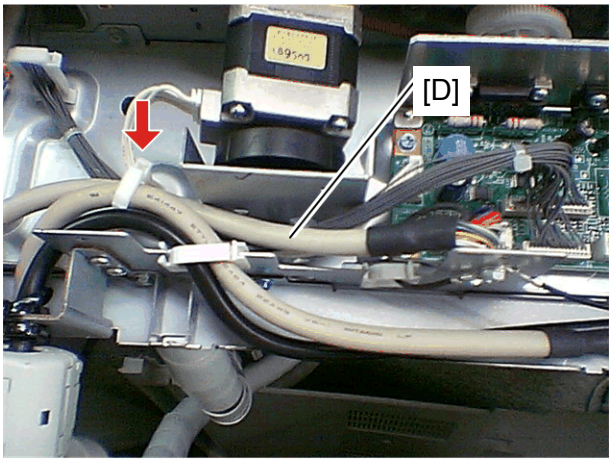
47. Attach the clamp [A] (this clamp is removed in step 8 in the "Connecting Procedure for Scanner Unit") to the scanner I/F cable and then secure it (☞ x 1; M3 x 6 blue screws).



48. Install the clamp [A] and saddle clamp [B] as shown (☞ x 2).

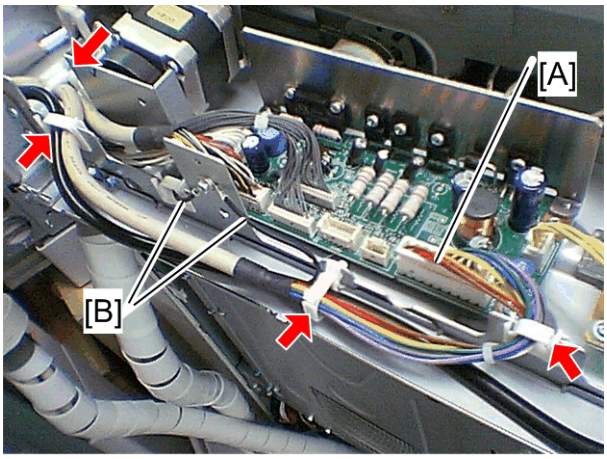


49. Route the operation panel I/F cable [C] and clamp it (☞ x 2).



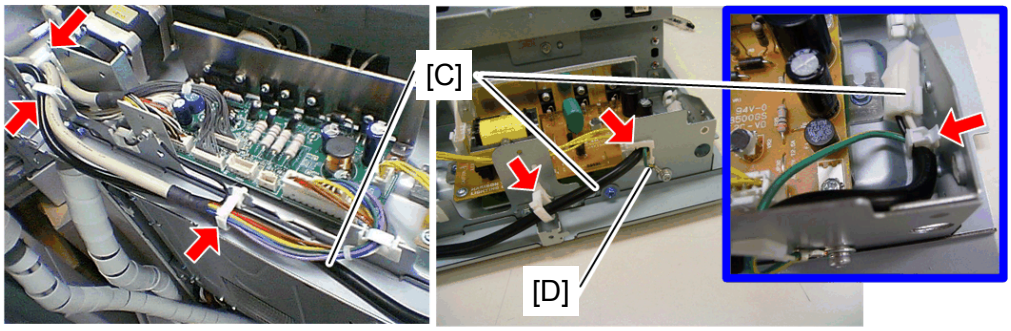
50. Route and connect the BICU interface cable [D] to CN311 on the SIO (☞ x 1).

http://www.manuals4you.com



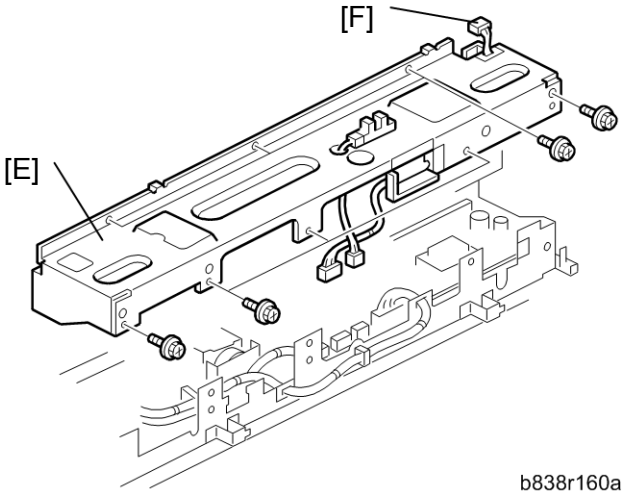
b838r926

51. Route and connect the power supply cable [A] to CN310 on the SIO (x 4).
52. Secure two ground cables [B] (BICU interface cable and power supply cable) (x 1; M3 x 6 blue screws).



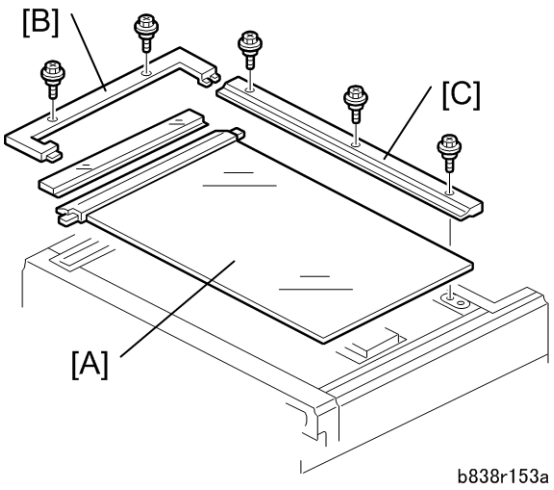
b838r927

53. Route the heater relay cable [C] as shown and secure ground cable [D] (x 6, x 1, screw-round M4 x 8).



b838r160a

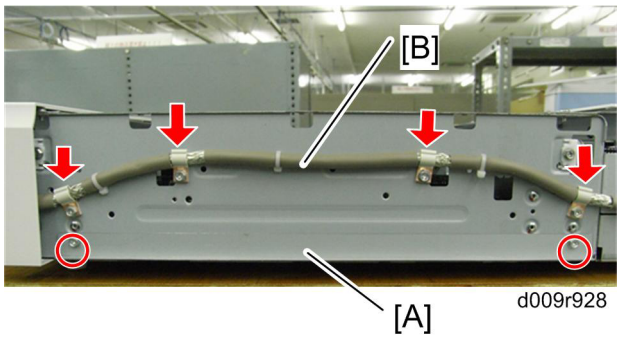
54. Reinstall the scanner rear frame [E] (x 8, x 2).
55. Connect the harness [F] to the scanner HP sensor.



56. Reinstall the exposure glass with left scale [A].
57. Reinstall the glass cover [B] (stepped screw x 2).
58. Reinstall the rear scale [C] (stepped screw x 3).

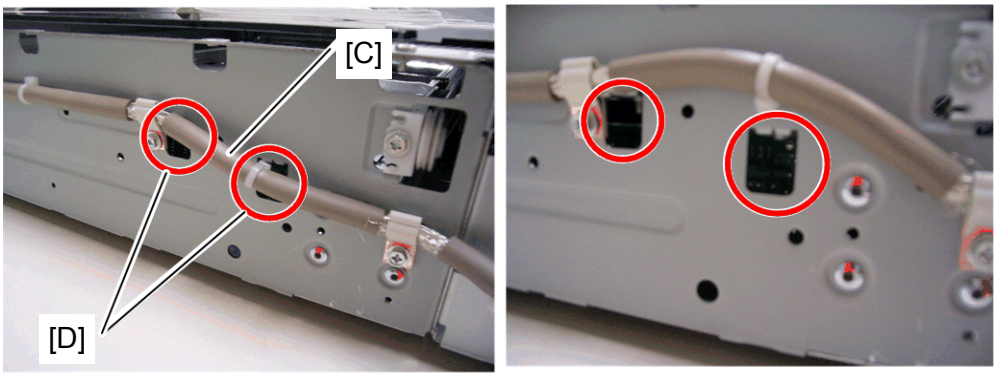
http://www.manuals4you.com

Operation Panel



d009r928

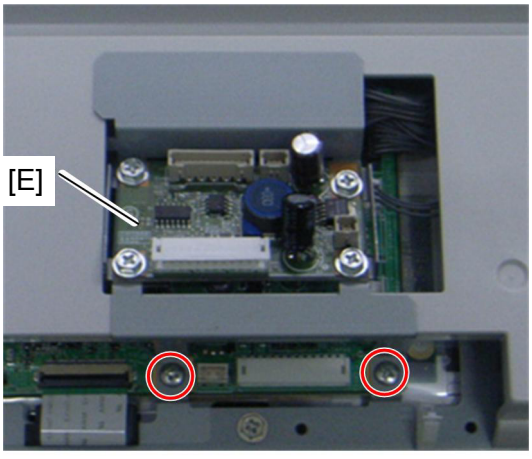
59. Install the right bracket [A] to the outside of the scanner left frame (☞ x 2: M3 x 6 blue screws).
60. Route and attach the operation panel I/F cable [B] to the outside of the scanner right frame with four plate clamps (☞ x 4).



b838r934

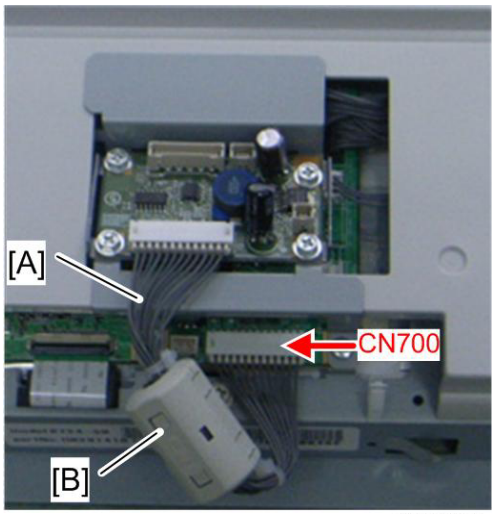
Note

Make sure that the operation panel I/F cable [C] does not cover the three cutouts [D].



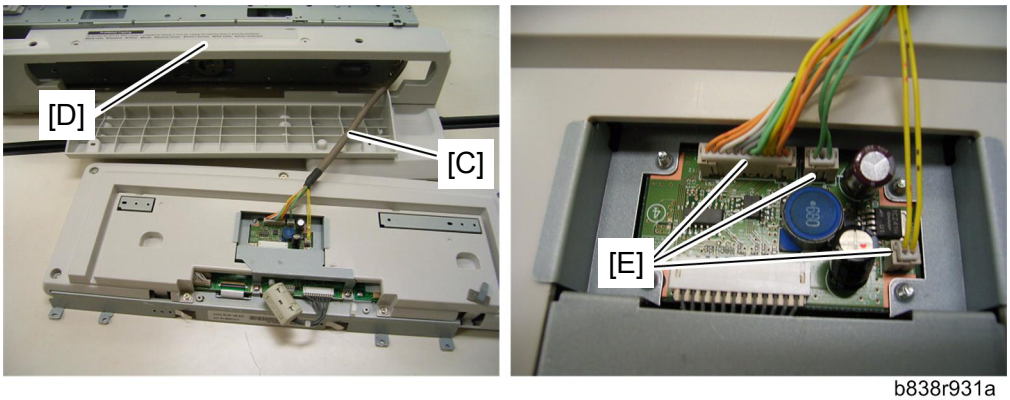
d009r992

61. Attach the operation panel interface board [E] at the bottom of the operation panel (☞ x 2).



d009r991

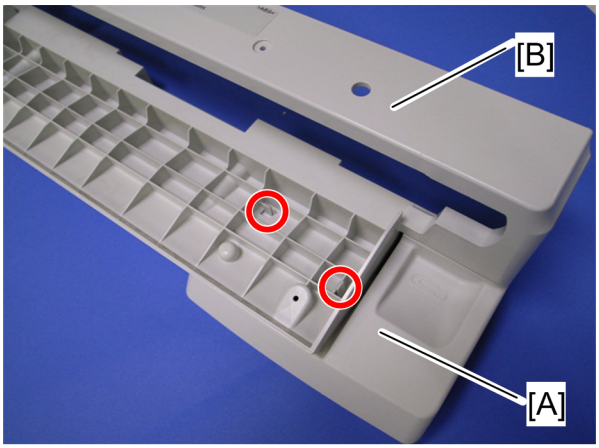
62. Connect the harness [A], and then attach the core [B] (RFC-8) as shown above.



b838r931a

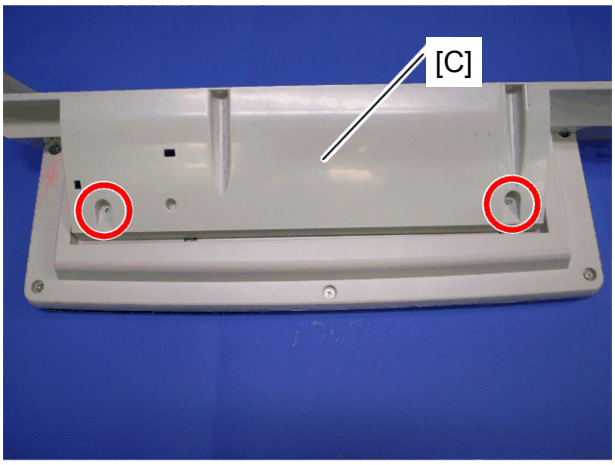
63. Put the operation panel I/F cable [C] through the scanner front cover [D].
64. Connect the three connectors [E] of the operation panel I/F cable to operation panel interface board.

http://www.manuals4you.com



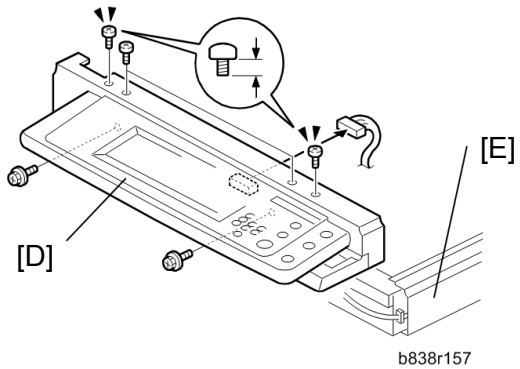
b838r956

65. Remove the clip tray [A] from the scanner front cover [B].



b838r933

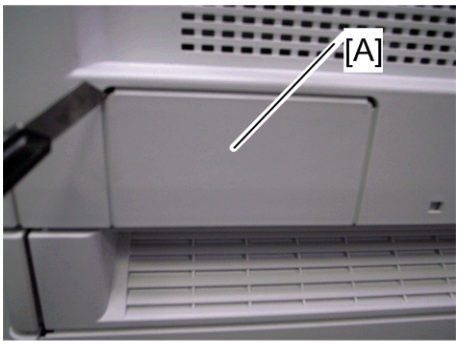
66. Attach the scanner front cover [C] to the operation panel (x 2).



b838r157

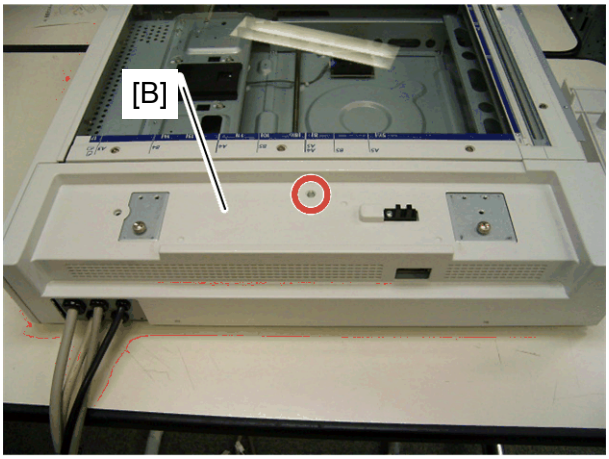
67. Reinstall the operation panel with the scanner front cover [D] in the scanner front frame (x 6; M3 x 3: bind screw x 2, M3 x 5: bind screw x 2 on the top of the scanner front cover, M3 x 8 tapping screw x 2 on the bottom of the scanner front cover).
68. Reinstall the scanner right cover [E] (x 2).

Harness Bracket Attachment



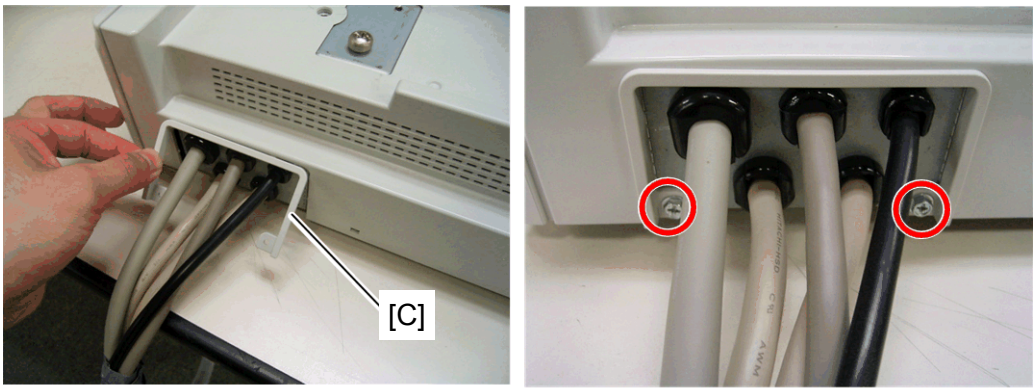
b838r935

69. Cut off the rear right [A] of the scanner top rear cover with a cutter.



b838r936

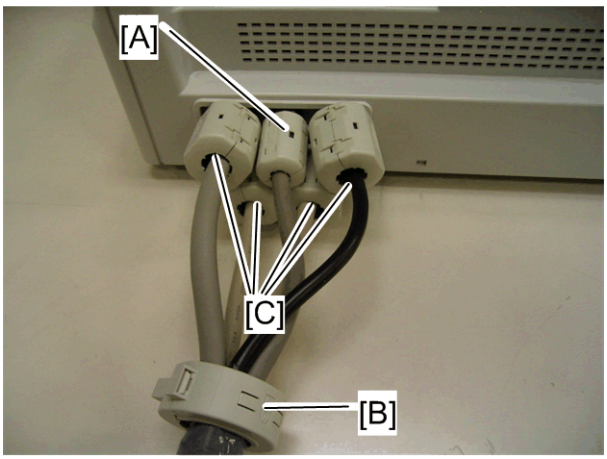
70. Reinstall the scanner top rear cover [B] (x 1; M3 x 8: tapping screw).



b838r937

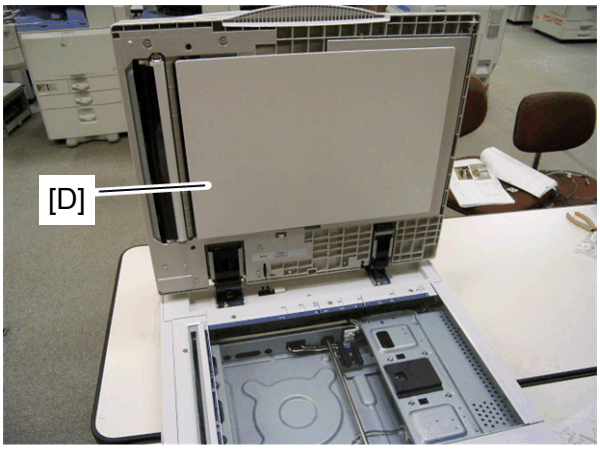
71. Install and attach the cable bracket cover [C] (x 2; M3 x 8 tapping screw).
72. Install the new scanner right cover (No. 14) in the accessories (x 2; M3 x 8 tapping screw).

http://www.manuals4you.com



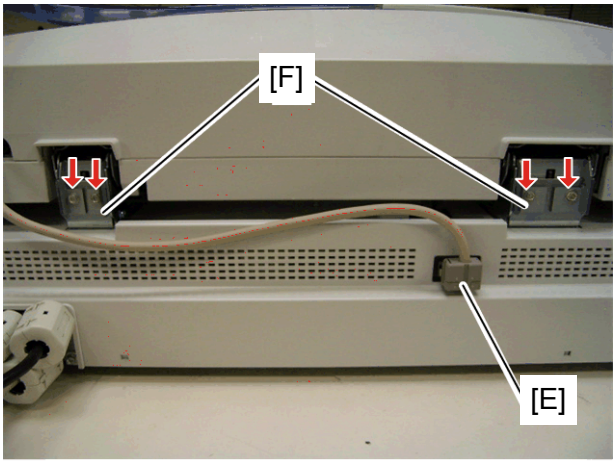
b838r938

73. Install the core [A] (RFC-9) to the operation panel I¥F cable, ring core [B] (TFCM-41-27-16) to the bound cables and the cores [C] (RFC-13) to the other cables.



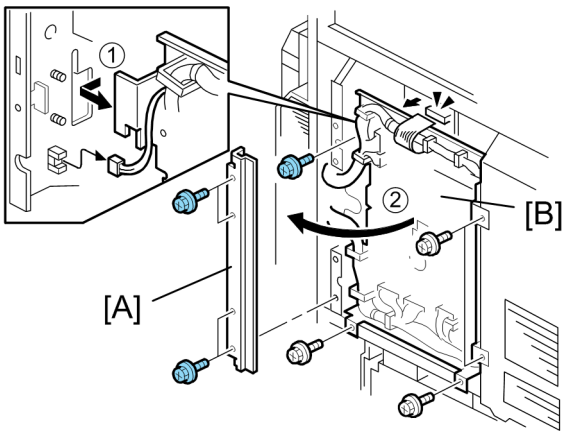
b838r939

74. Install the ARDF [D] or platen cover on the scanner unit (stud screw x 2).



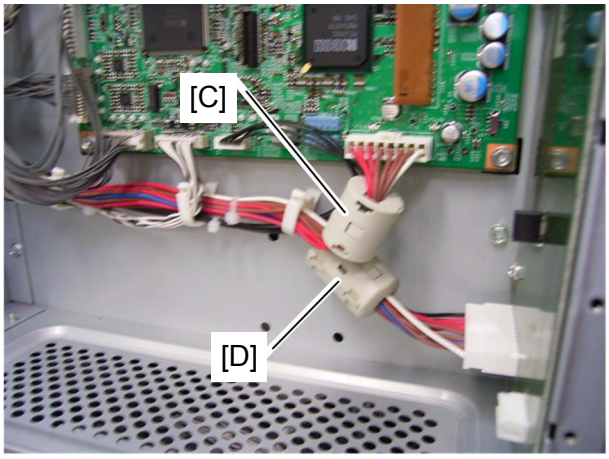
75. Connect the ARDF I/F cable [E] to the connector of the scanner unit.
76. Install the right and left stoppers [F] to the ARDF hinges (x 2 each; M3 x 16 tapping screws).

Mainframe



b222r109

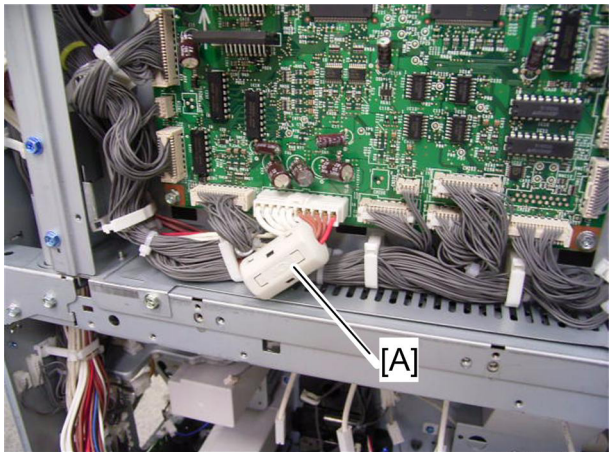
1. Controller box stay [A] (x 4).
2. Open the IOB bracket [B] (x 5, flat cable x 1, x 1).



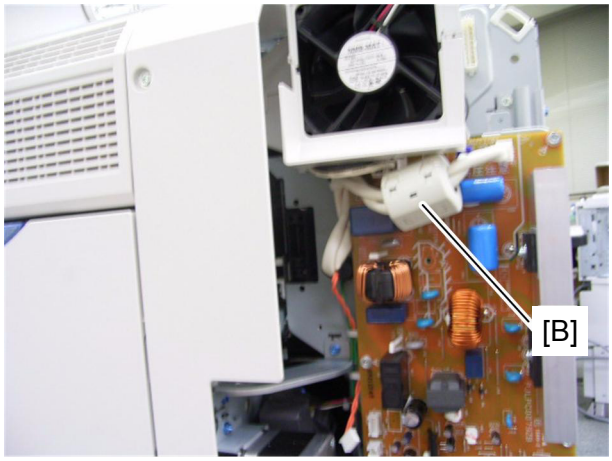
b838r941a

3. Install the core [C] (TFC16816) in the harness of CN110 (on the BICU) and the core [D] (RFC-8) in the harness of CN540 (on the MB).
4. Close the IOB bracket.
5. Reinstall the controller box stay.

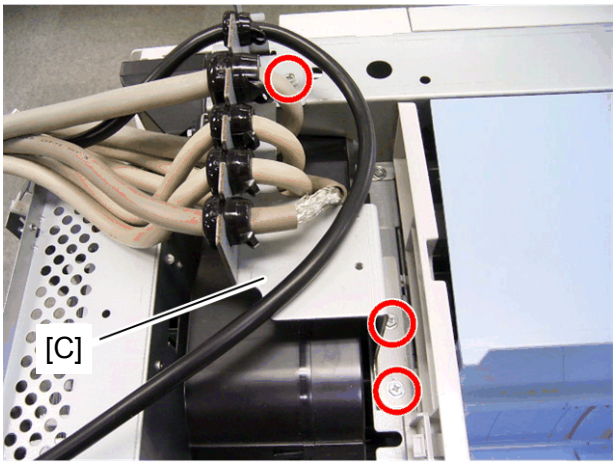
http://www.manuals4you.com



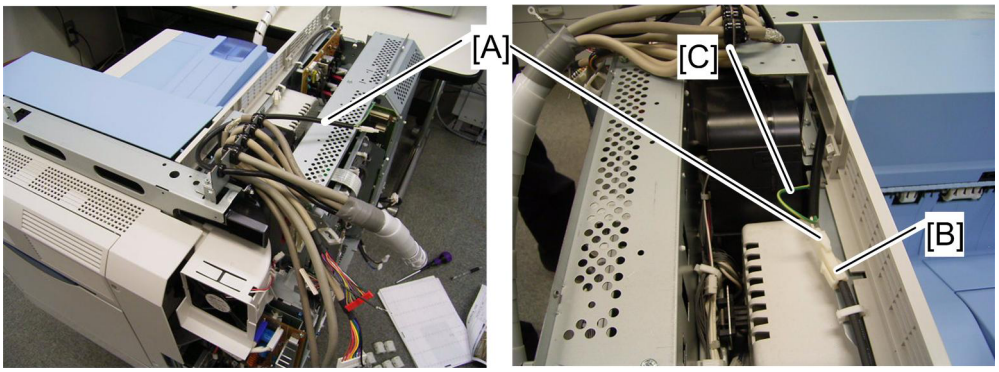
6. Install the core [A] (RFC-5) in the brown and red harnesses of CN201 (on the IOB).



7. Install the core [B] (RFC-13) in the power supply cables on the IH inverter.

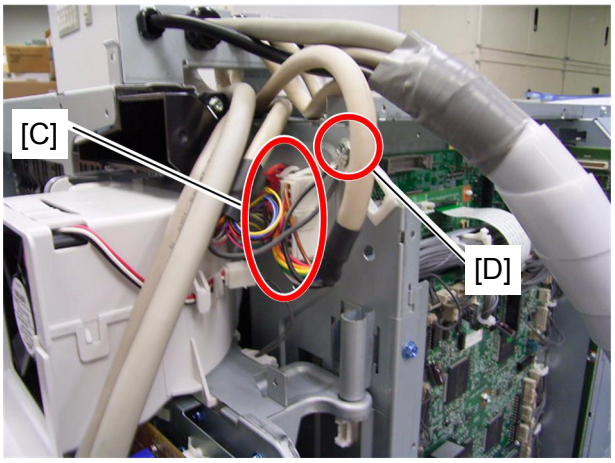


8. Install the cable bracket [C] in the rear frame of the mainframe (x 3, M3 x 6 tapping screws).



9. Route and connect the heater relay cable [A] to the heater cable [B] (☞ x 1).

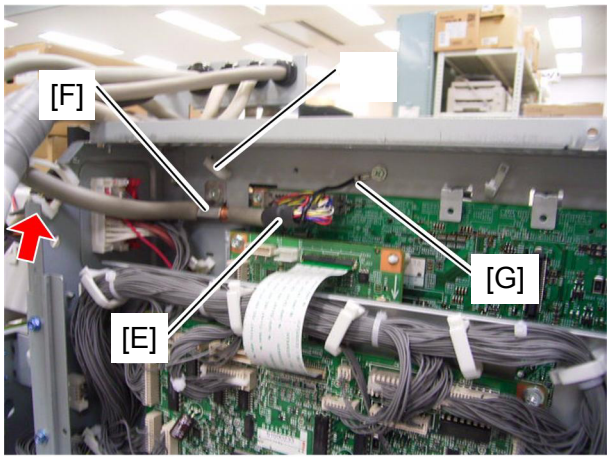
10. Secure the ground cable of the heater relay cable [C] (☞ x 1: round screw M4 x 8).



11. Connect three connectors [C] and secure the two ground cables [D] (☞ x 2; M3 x 6 tapping -screw).

12. Route the scanner I/F cable [E] and connect it to CN107 (on the BICU) (☞ x 1).

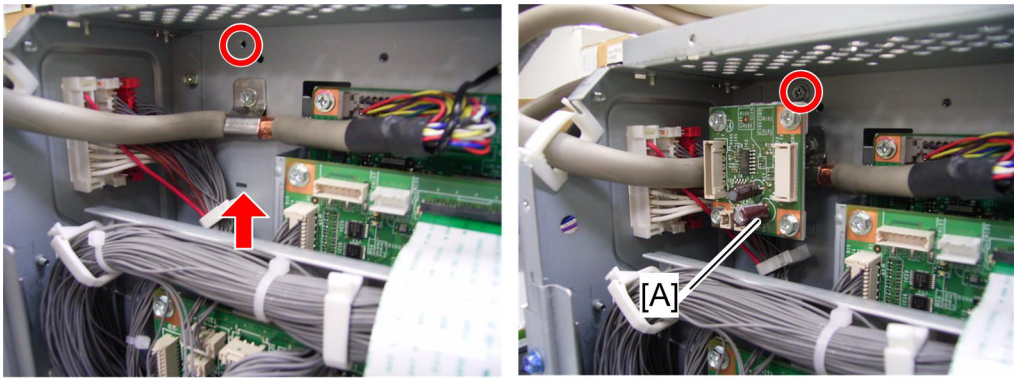
13. Secure the scanner I/F cable with the clamp [F] (☞ x 1; M3 x 6 tapping screw) and the ground cable [G] (☞ x 1; M3 x 6 tapping screw).



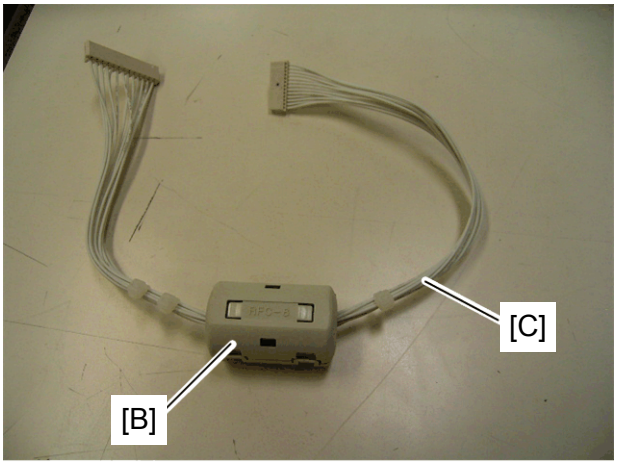
Note

Push the scanner cable firmly into the connector to prevent interference of the cable and the controller box.

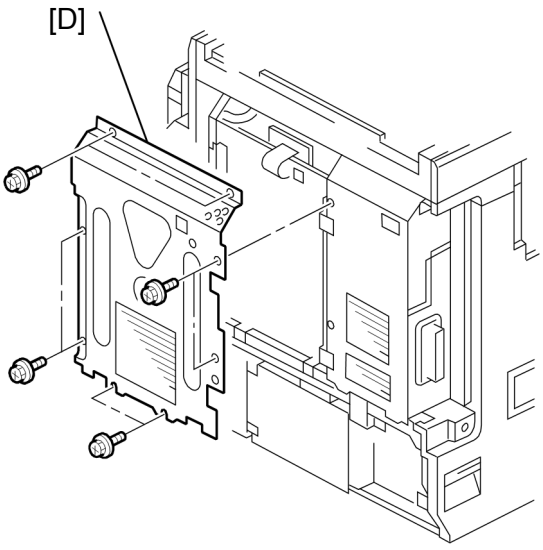
http://www.manuals4you.com



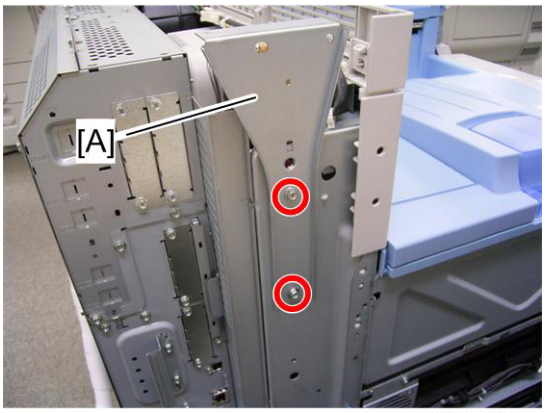
14. Install the MB interface board [A] (🔩 x 1; M3 x 6 tapping screw).



15. Install the core [B] (RFC-8) in between binds on the long relay harness [C].



16. Reinstall the controller box right cover [D] (🔩 x 8).

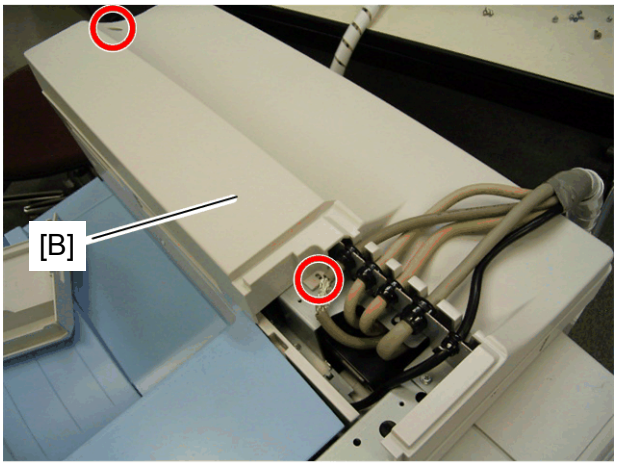


b838r951

17. Install the left scanner stay [A] (☞ x 2; M4 x 6 tapping screw) in the left side of the main machine.
18. Reinstall the left cover (☞ x 6).
19. Reinstall the left rear cover (☞ x 1).
20. Reinstall the right top cover (☞ x 1).
21. Reinstall the rear cover (☞ x 6).

Note

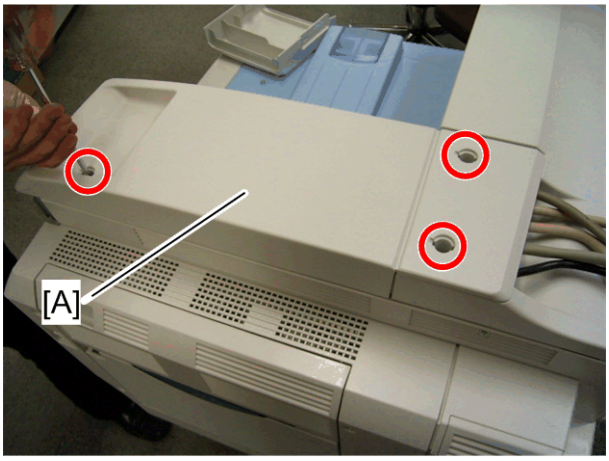
If you install the key counter, first refer to the "**Installation for Key Counter**".



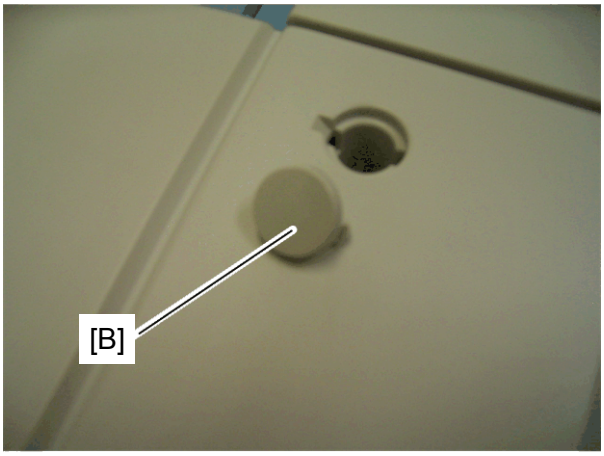
b838r952

22. Install the top rear cover [B] (☞ x 2; M3 x 8 tapping screw).

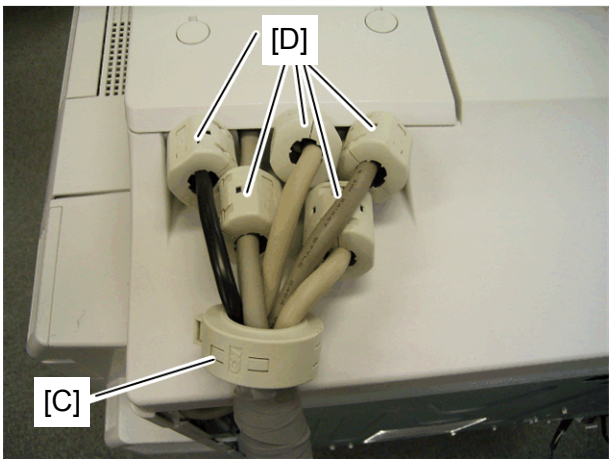
http://www.manuals4you.com



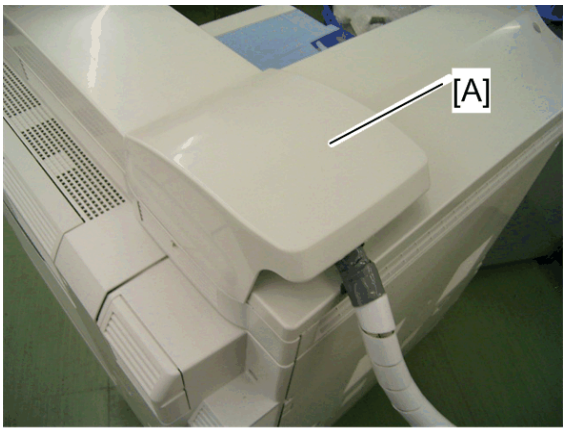
23. Install the top right cover [A] (x 3; M3 x 8 tapping screw).



24. Attach the three caps [B] to the screw holes on the top right cover.



25. Install the ring core [C] (TFCM-41-27-16) to the bound cables and the cores [D] (RFC-13) to the other cables.



b838r957

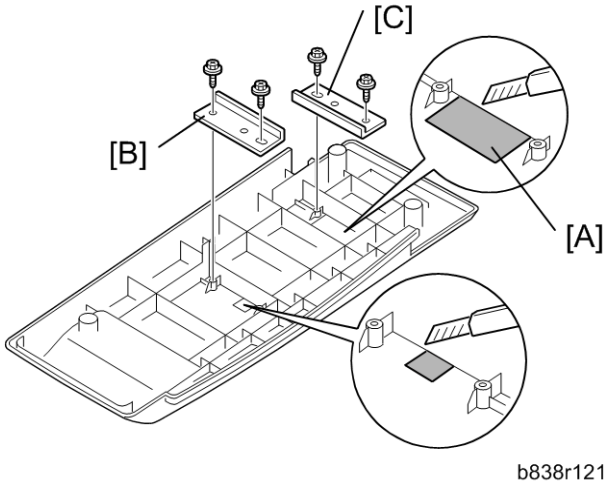
26. Install the cable cover [A] in the top rear cover.

27. Follow the "Installation Requirements" to place the scanner accessibility unit for safety.

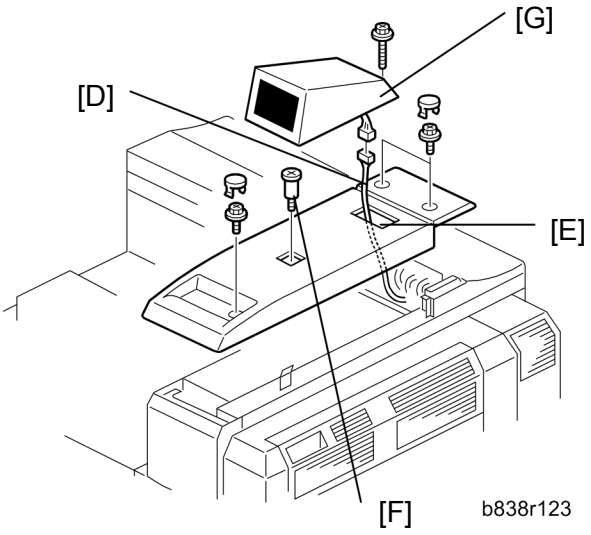
28. After installation, adjust the scanner image.(☛ "Copy Adjustment" > "Scanning" in the chapter "Replacement and Adjustment" of the **D027/D029 SERVICE MANUAL**)

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.24.5 INSTALLATION FOR KEY COUNTER



1. Cut off and remove the parts [A] with a cutter.
2. Attach the key counter front bracket [B] and rear bracket [C] to the reverse side of the top right cover.
3. Put the key counter harness into the machine.
4. Connect the key counter harness to the connector of the right side of the controller box.
5. Install the top rear cover (* "Connecting Procedure for Mainframe")
6. Put the key counter harness [D] through the cut out [E].
7. Install the top right cover in the machine and attach the caps to the screw holes (steps 29 and 30 in "Mainframe").
8. Install the stud screw [F].
9. Install the key counter [G] (x 1, x 1).



For details about installing the key counter, refer to the "**D027/D029 Service Manual**".

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

3. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES

See "Appendices" for the following information:

- Preventive Maintenance Items
- Other Yield Parts

http://www.manuals4you.com

3.2 PM PARTS SETTINGS

3.2.1 BEFORE REMOVING THE OLD PM PARTS

1. Enter the SP mode.
2. Output the SMC logging data with SP5-990-004.
3. Set the following SPs to "1" before you turn the power off. Then, the machine will reset the PM counters automatically. In the case of developer, the developer initialization will also be done automatically.
4. Exit the SP mode.

Item	SP
Developer	Black: 3902-005 Yellow: 3902-006 Cyan: 3902-007 Magenta: 3902-008
Drum Unit	Black: 3902-009 Yellow: 3902-010 Cyan: 3902-011 Magenta: 3902-012
Fusing Unit Parts (not necessary for complete fusing units; see below)	3902-014
Image Transfer Belt Cleaning Unit	3902-015
Paper Transfer Unit	3902-016
Toner Collection Bottle (if not full or near-full)	3902-017

For the following units, there is a new unit detection mechanism. It is not necessary to reset PM counters.

- PCU
- Development unit
- Complete fusing unit
- Toner Collection Bottle (if full or near-full)

3.2.2 AFTER INSTALLING THE NEW PM PARTS

1. Turn on the main power switch.
2. Output the SMC logging data with SP5-990-004 and check the counter values.
3. Make sure that the PM counters for the replaced units are “0” with SP7-803. If the PM counter for a unit was not reset, then reset that counter with SP 7-804.
4. Make sure that the exchange counter counts up with SP7-853.
5. Make sure that the counters for the previous units (SP7-906) on the new SMC logging data list (from step 2 above) are equal to the counters (SP7-803) for these units on the previous SMC logging data list (the list that was output in the “Before removing the old parts” section).
6. Make sure that the unit replacement date is updated with SP7-950.

http://www.manuals4you.com

3.2.3 PREPARATION BEFORE OPERATION CHECK

1. Clean the exposure glasses (for DF and book scanning).
2. Enter the user tools mode.
3. Do the “Automatic Color Calibration “(ACC) for the copier mode & printer mode as follows:
   - Print the ACC test pattern (User Tools > Maintenance > ACC > Start).
   - Put the printout on the exposure glass.
   - Put 10 sheets of white paper on the test chart. This ensures the precise ACC adjustment.
   - Close the ARDF or the platen cover.
   - Press “Start Scanning” on the LCD. Then, the machine starts the ACC.
4. Exit the User Tools mode, and then enter the SP mode.
5. Do the “Forced line position adjustment” as follows.
   - First do SP2-111-3 (Mode c).
   - Then do SP2-111-1 (Mode a).
   - To check if SP 2-111-1 was successful, watch the screen during the process. A message is displayed at the end. Also, you can check the result with SP 2-194-10 to -12.
6. Exit the SP mode.

3.2.4 OPERATION CHECK

Check if the sample image has been copied normally.

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

4. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

4.1 BEFOREHAND

⚠CAUTION

- Before installing options, please do the following:
- If there is a fax unit in the machine, print out all messages stored in the memory, the lists of user-programmed items, and the system parameter list.
- If there are printer jobs in the machine, print out all jobs in the printer buffer.
- Turn off the main switch and disconnect the power cord, the telephone line, and the network cable.

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.2 SPECIAL TOOLS

Part Number	Description	Q'ty
B645 5010	SD Card	1
B645 6705	PCMCIA Card Adapter	1
B645 6820	USB Reader/Writer	1
VSSM9000	Digital Multimeter – FLUKE87	1
G021 9350	Loop-back Connector – Parallel ***NOTE**	1
C401 9503	20X Magnification Scope	1
A257 9300	Grease Barrierta – S552R	1
5203 9502	Silicone Grease G-501	1
A092 9503	C4 Color Test Chart (3 pcs/set)	1
A184 9501	Optics Adjustment Tool (2 pcs / set)	2
B679 5100	Plug - IEEE1284 Type A	1
B132 9700	Lubricant Powder	1

Note

- The "Loop-back Connector–Parallel" requires the "Plug-IEEE1284 Type A", and the optional IEEE1284 interface option must also be installed.

4.3 IMAGE ADJUSTMENT

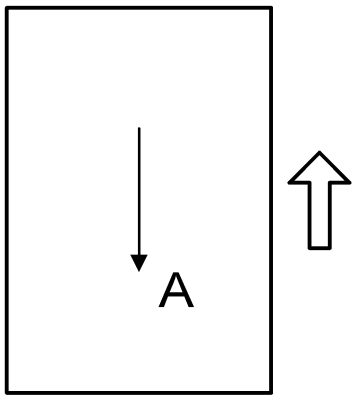
4.3.1 SCANNING

Check the printing registration/side-to-side adjustment and the blank margin adjustment before you do the following scanner adjustments.

Note

- Use S-2-1 test chart to do the following adjustments.

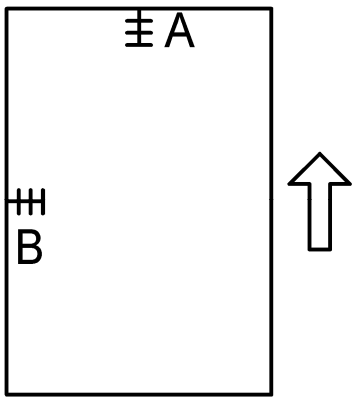
Scanner sub-scan magnification



A: Sub-scan magnification

1. Put the test chart on the exposure glass. Then make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the magnification ratio. Adjust with SP4-008 if necessary.
   Standard: ±1.0%.

Scanner leading edge and side-to-side registration



A: Leading Edge Registration

http://www.manuals4you.com

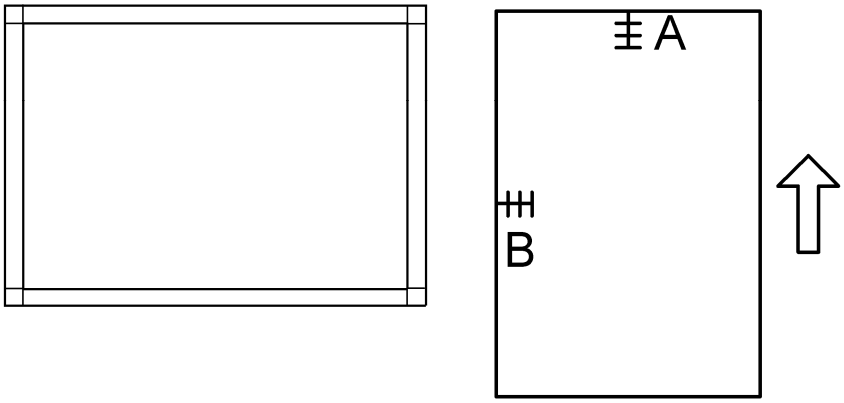
Image Adjustment

1. Put the test chart on the exposure glass. Then make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the leading edge and side-to-side registration. Adjust the following SP modes if necessary.
   Standard: 0 ± 2mm for the leading edge registration, 0 ± 2.5mm for the side-to-side registration.

	SP mode
Leading Edge Registration	SP4-010-001
Side-to-Side Registration	SP4-011-001

4.3.2 ARDF

ARDF side-to-side, leading edge registration and trailing edge



A: Leading edge registration

Use A3/DLT paper to make a temporary test chart as shown above.

1. Put the temporary test chart on the ARDF. Then make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the registration. Check the leading edge and side-to-side registration. Adjust the following SP modes if necessary.
   Standard: 4.2 ± 2 mm for the leading edge registration, 2 ± 1 mm for the side-to-side registration. Use the following SP modes to adjust if necessary.

http://www.manuals4you.com

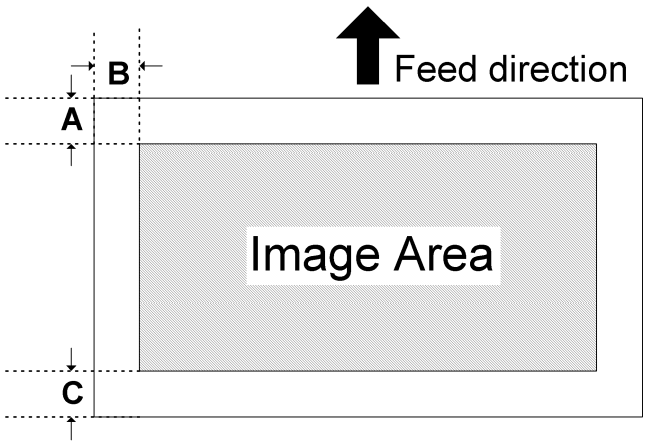
SP Code	What It Does	Adjustment Range
SP6-006-001	Side-to-Side Registration	± 3.0 mm
SP6-006-003	Leading Edge Registration	± 5.0 mm
SP6-006-005	Buckle: Duplex Front	± 3.0 mm
SP6-006-006	Buckle: Duplex Rear	± 2.5 mm
SP6-006-007	Rear Edge Erase (Trailing Edge)	± 10.0 mm

ARDF sub-scan magnification

1. Put the temporary test chart on the ARDF. Then make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the magnification ratio. Adjust with SP6-017-001 if necessary.
   - Standard: ±1.0%
   - Reduction mode: ±1.0%
   - Enlargement mode: ±1.0%

4.3.3 REGISTRATION

Image Area



A = C = 5.2 mm (0.2"), B = 2.0 mm

Make sure that the registration is adjusted within the adjustment standard range as shown below.

Leading Edge

Adjusts the leading edge registration for each paper type and process line speed.

Side to Side

Adjusts the side-to-side registration for each paper feed station. Use SP mode (SP1-002) to adjust the side-to-side registration for the optional paper feed unit, LCT, and duplex unit.

Adjustment Standard

- Leading edge (sub-scan direction): 5.2 ± 2 mm
- Side to side (main-scan direction): 2 ± 1 mm

Paper Registration Standard

The registration in both main- and sub-scan directions can change within the following tolerance.

- Sub-scan direction: 0 ± 9 mm
- Main-scan direction: 0 ± 4 mm

Adjustment Procedure

1. Enter SP2-109-003.
2. Print out the test pattern (14: 1-dot trimming pattern) with SP2-109-003.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Note

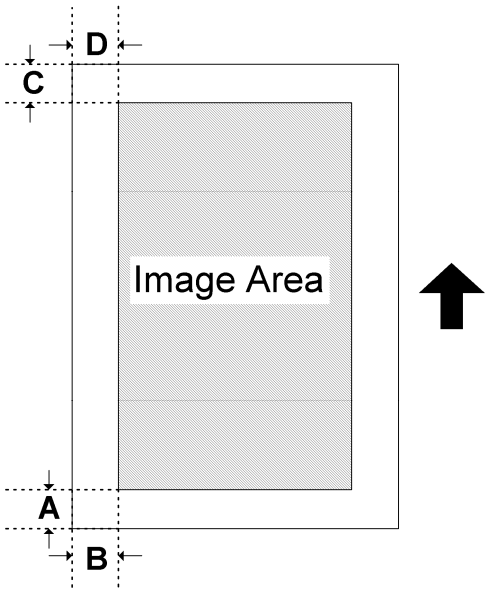
- Registration can change slightly as shown on the previous page. Print some pages of the 1-dot trimming pattern for step 3 and 4. Then average the leading edge and side-to-side registration values, and adjust each SP mode.

3. Do the leading edge registration adjustment.
   1) Check the leading edge registration and adjust it with SP1-001.
   2) Select the adjustment conditions (paper type and process line speed).
   3) Input the value. Then press the # key.
   4) Generate a trim pattern to check the leading edge adjustment.
4. Do the side-to-side registration adjustment.
   1) Check the side-to-side registration and adjust it with SP1-002.
   2) Select the adjustment conditions (paper feed station).
   3) Input the value. Then press the # key.
   4) Generate a trim pattern to check the leading edge adjustment.

4.3.4 ERASE MARGIN ADJUSTMENT

Note

- Adjust the erase margin C and D only if the registration (main scan and sub scan) cannot be adjusted within the standard values. Do the registration adjustment after adjusting the erase margin C and D, and then adjust the erase margin A and B.



1. Enter SP2-109-003.
2. Print out the test pattern (14: 1-dot trimming pattern) with SP2-109-003.
3. Check the erase margin A and B. Adjust them with SP2-103-001 to -010 if necessary.
   - Leading edge: 1.5 to 5.0 mm,
   - Side-to-side: 0.5 to 4.0 mm,
   - Trailing edge: 0.5 to 0.6 mm

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.3.5 COLOR REGISTRATION

Line Position Adjustment

The automatic line position adjustment usually is done for a specified condition to get the best color prints.

Do the following if color registration shifts:

- Do “Auto Color Registration” as follows to do the forced line position adjustment.
  1. First do SP2-111-3.
  2. Then do SP2-111-1.
     To check if SP 2-111-1 was successful, watch the screen during the process. A message is displayed at the end. Also, you can check the result with SP 2-194-10 to -12.
- You should also do the line position adjustment at these times:
  - After you transport or move the machine (you should do the forced line position adjustment if you install the machine at the user location.) if the machine is pre-installed at the workshop and moved to the user location,
  - When you open the drum positioning plate
  - When you remove or replace the motors, clutches, and/or gears related to the drum/development/transfer sections
  - When you remove or replace the image transfer belt, image transfer belt unit or laser optical housing unit

4.3.6 PRINTER GAMMA CORRECTION

Note

- The ACC is usually sufficient to adjust the color balance to get the best print output. You only need the printer gamma correction to fine-tune to meet user requirements.

Use SP modes if you want to modify the printer gamma curve created with ACC. You can adjust the gamma data for the following:

- Highlight
- Middle
- Shadow areas
- IDmax.

The adjustable range is from 0 to 30 (31 steps).

Copy Mode

- KCMY Color Balance Adjustment -

The adjustment uses only “Offset” values.

Note

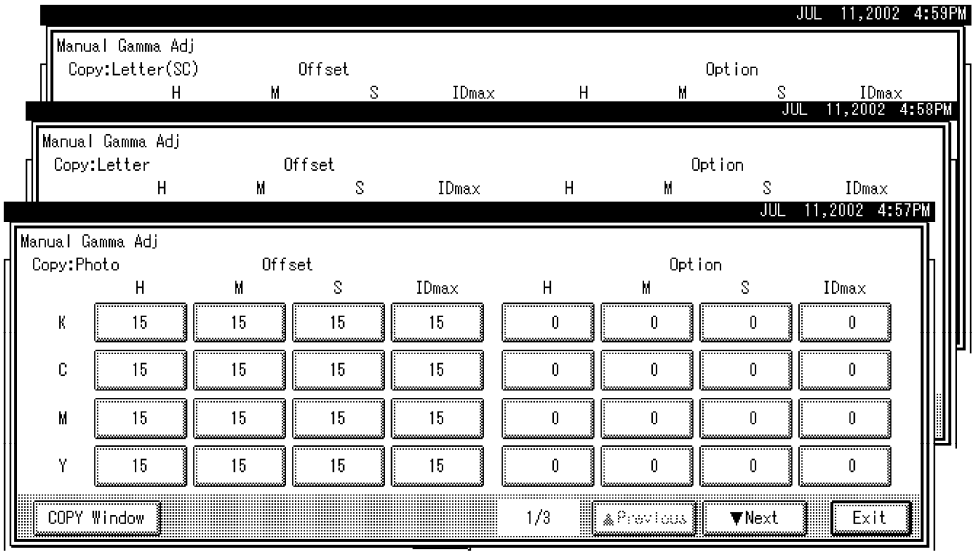
- Never change “Option” values (default value is 0).

Highlight (Low ID)	Levels 2 through 5 in the C4 chart 10-level scale
Middle (Middle ID)	Levels 3 through 7 in the C4 chart 10-level scale
Shadow (High ID)	Levels 6 through 9 in the C4 chart 10-level scale
ID max	Level 10 in the C4 chart 10-level scale (affects the entire image density.)
Offset	The higher the number in the range associated with the low ID, middle ID, high ID, and ID max, the greater the density.

There are four adjustable modes (can be adjusted with SP4-918-009):

- Copy Photo mode
- Copy Letter mode
- Copy Letter (Single Color) mode
- Copy Photo (Single Color) mode

http://www.manuals4you.com



- Adjustment Procedure -

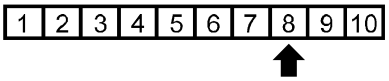
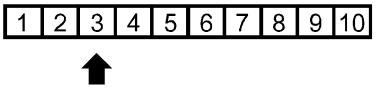
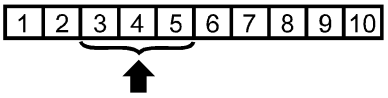
1. Copy the C-4 chart in the mode that you want to adjust.
2. Enter the SP mode.
3. Select “Copy SP.”
4. Select SP4-918-009.
5. Adjust the offset values until the copy quality conforms to the standard (* the table below).

Note

- 1. Never change “Option” value (default value is "0").
- 2. Adjust the density in this order: “ID Max,” “Middle,” “Shadow,” “Highlight.”

- Photo Mode, Full Color -

	Item to Adjust	Level on the C-4 chart	Adjustment Standard
1	ID max: (K, C, M, and Y)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 ⬆	Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 10 matches that of level 10 on the C-4 chart.
2	Middle (Middle ID) (K, C, M, and Y)	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 ⬆	Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 6 matches that of level 6 on the C-4 chart.

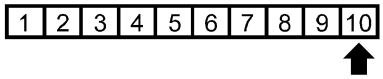
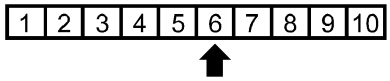
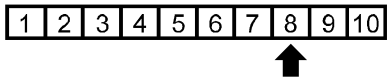
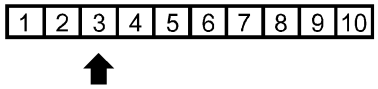
3	Shadow (High ID) (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 8 matches that of level 8 on the C-4 chart.
4	Highlight (Low ID) (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that dirty background does not show on the copy and the density of level 3 is slightly lighter than that of level 3 on the C-4 chart.
5	K Highlight (Low ID) (C,M, and Y) <on the full color copy>		Adjust the offset value so that the color balance of black scale levels 3 through 5 in the copy is seen as gray (no C, M, or Y should be visible). If the black scale contains C, M, or Y, do steps 1 to 4 again.

-

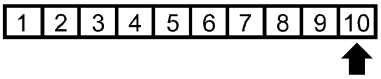
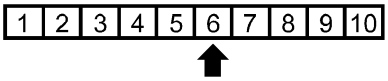
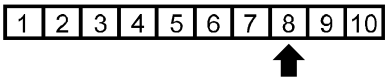
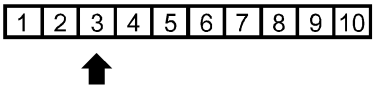
http://www.manuals4you.com

Image Adjustment

Photo Mode, Single Color -

	Item to Adjust	Level on the C-4 chart	Adjustment Standard
1	ID max: (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 10 matches that of level 10 on the C-4 chart.
2	Middle (Middle ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 6 matches that of level 6 on the C-4 chart.
3	Shadow (High ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 8 matches that of level 8 on the C-4 chart.
4	Highlight (Low ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that dirty background does not show on the copy and the density of level 3 is slightly lighter than that of level 3 on the C-4 chart.

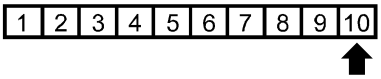
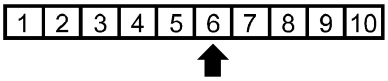
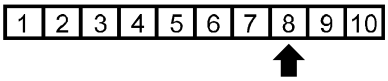
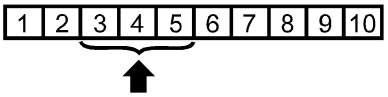
- Text (Letter) Mode, Full Color -

	Item to Adjust	Level on the C-4 chart (K)	Adjustment Standard
1	ID max: (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 10 matches that of level 10 on the C-4 chart.
2	Middle (Middle ID) (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 6 matches that of level 6 on the C-4 chart.
3	Shadow (High ID) (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 8 matches that of level 8 on the C-4 chart.
4	Highlight (Low ID) (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that dirty background does not show on the copy and the density of level 3 is slightly lighter than that of level 3 on the C-4 chart.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Image Adjustment

- Text (Letter) Mode, Single Color -

	Item to Adjust	Level on the C-4 chart (K)	Adjustment Standard
1	ID max: (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 10 matches that of level 10 on the C-4 chart.
2	Middle (Middle ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 6 matches that of level 6 on the C-4 chart.
3	Shadow (High ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 8 matches that of level 8 on the C-4 chart.
4	Highlight (Low ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that dirty background does not show on the copy and the density of level 3 is slightly lighter than that of level 3 on the C-4 chart.

Note

- Text parts of the test pattern cannot be printed clearly after you adjust “shadow” as shown above. At this time, check if the 5 line/mm pattern at each corner is printed clearly. If it is not, adjust the offset value of “shadow” again until it is.

Printer Mode

There are six adjustable modes (select these modes with printer SP1-102-001):

- 1200 x 1200 photo mode
- 1200 x 1200 text mode
- 2400 x 600 photo mode
- 2400 x 600 text mode
- 1800 x 600 photo mode

- 1800 x 600 text mode
- 600 x 600 photo mode
- 600 x 600 text mode

	K	C	M	Y
Highlight	SP1-104-1	SP1-104-21	SP1-104-41	SP1-104-61
Shadow	SP1-104-2	SP1-104-22	SP1-104-42	SP1-104-62
Middle	SP1-104-3	SP1-104-23	SP1-104-43	SP1-104-63
IDmax	SP1-104-4	SP1-104-24	SP1-104-44	SP1-104-64

- Adjustment Procedure -

1. Do ACC for the printer mode.
2. Turn the main power off and on.
3. Enter SP mode.
4. Select “Printer SP”.
5. Select SP1-102-001. Then select the necessary print mode to adjust.
6. Choose SP1-103-1 to print out a tone control test sheet if you want to examine the image quality for these settings.
7. Adjust the color density with SP1-104. Compare the tone control test sheet with the C4 test chart.

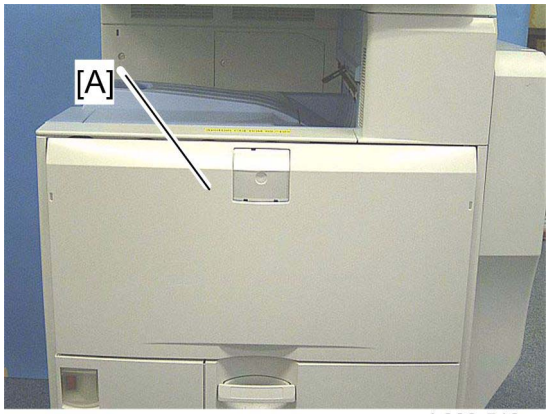
   Note

   - Adjust the density in this order: “ID Max”, “Shadow”, “Middle”, “Highlight”.
8. Use SP1-105-001 to keep the adjusted settings.

http://www.manuals4you.com

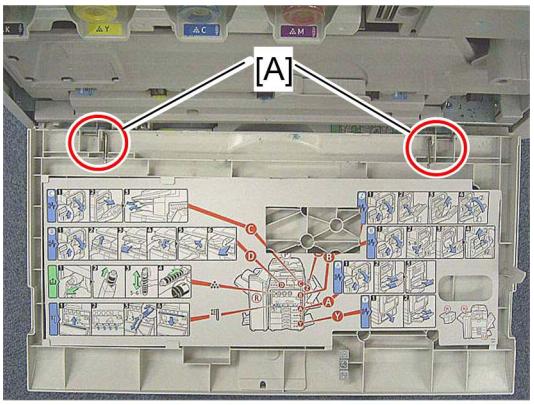
4.4 EXTERIOR COVERS

4.4.1 FRONT DOOR



b222r512

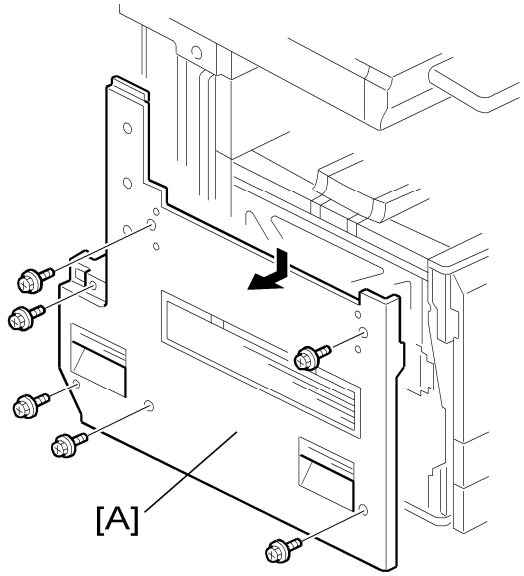
1. Open the front door [A].



d027r513

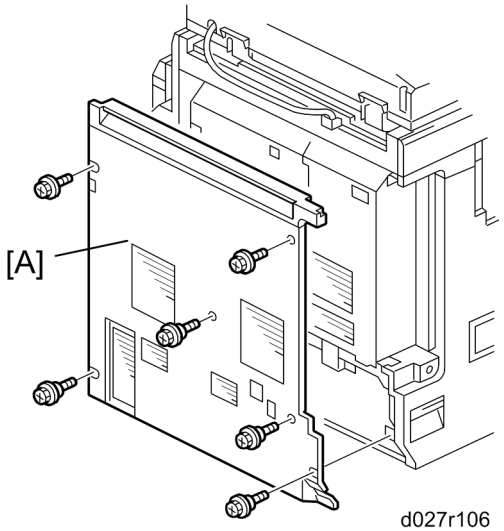
2. Remove the two pins [A], and then remove the front cover.

4.4.2 LEFT COVER



1. Left cover [A] (☞ x 6)

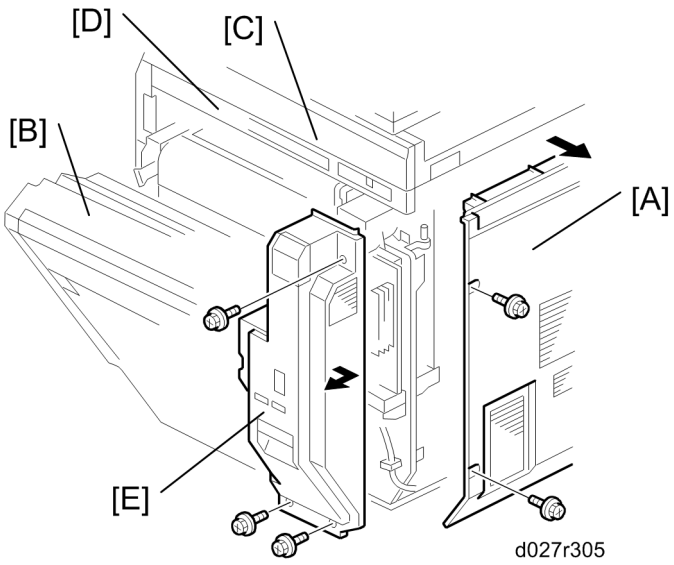
4.4.3 REAR COVER



1. Rear cover [A] (☞ x 6)

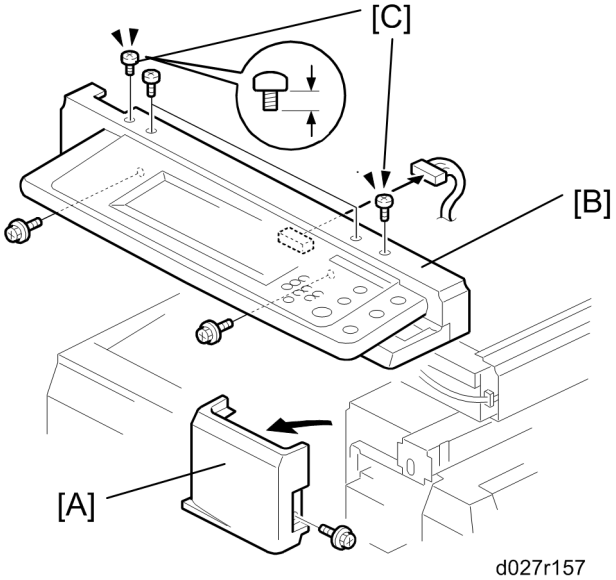
http://www.manuals4you.com

4.4.4 RIGHT REAR COVER



1. Rear cover [A] (x 6)
2. Open the right door [B].
3. Scanner right cover [C] (x 2)
4. Right top cover [D] (x 1)
5. Right rear cover [E] (x 3)

4.4.5 OPERATION PANEL



1. Open the right door.
2. Front right cover [A] (x 1)
3. Operation panel with the scanner front cover [B] (x 5, x 1, x 1)

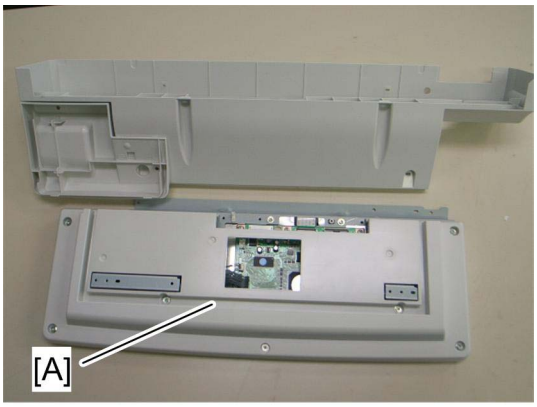
Note

- The two screws [C] are shorter than the other screws installed in the inner two screw holes. Make sure that the two screws [C] are installed in the outer screw holes in the scanner front cover.



d027r514

4. Scanner front cover [A] (☞ x 2)

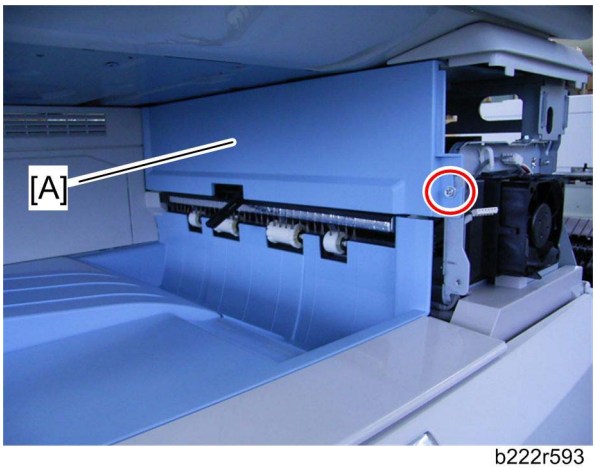


d027r515

5. Operation panel [A]

4.4.6 PAPER EXIT COVER

1. Front right cover (☛ p.4-20 "Operation Panel")



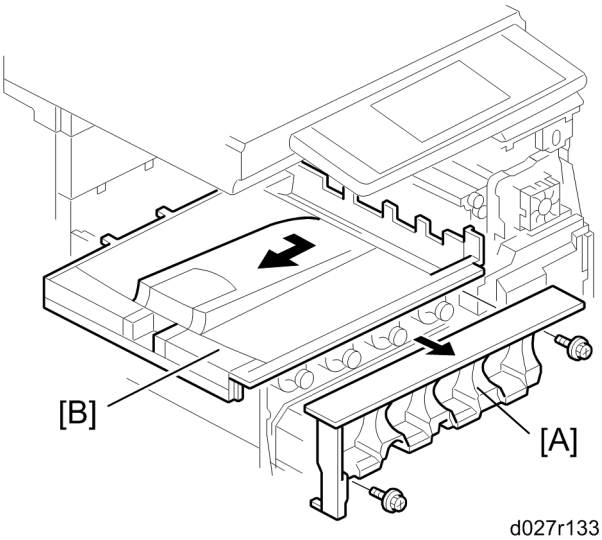
b222r593

2. Paper exit cover [A] (☞ x 1)

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.4.7 INNER TRAY

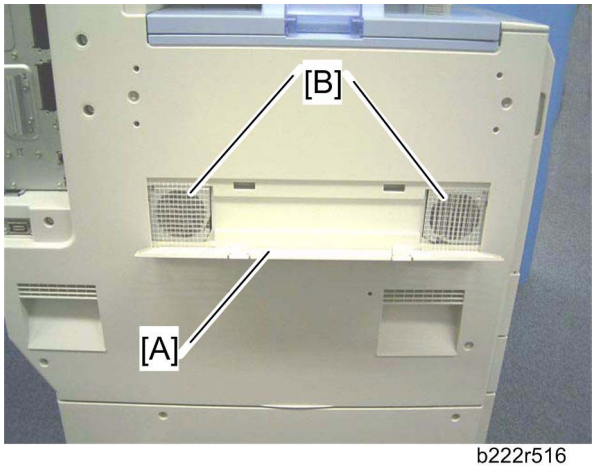
1. Remove the image transfer belt unit.
2. Paper exit cover (☛ p.4-21 "Paper Exit Cover")
3. Left cover (☛ p.4-19 "Left Cover")



d027r133

4. Toner cartridge cover [A] (🔩 x 2)
5. Inner tray [B]

4.4.8 DUST FILTER

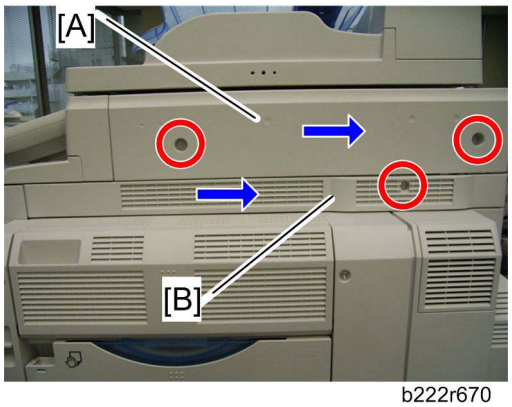


b222r516

1. Dust filter cover [A]
2. Two dust filters [B]

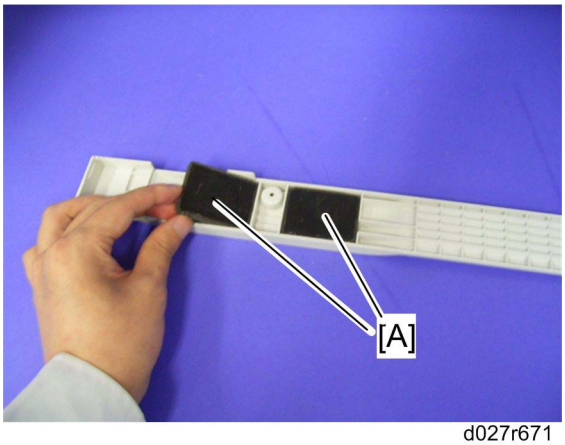
4.4.9 OZONE FILTER

Ozone filters for the scanner unit



b222r670

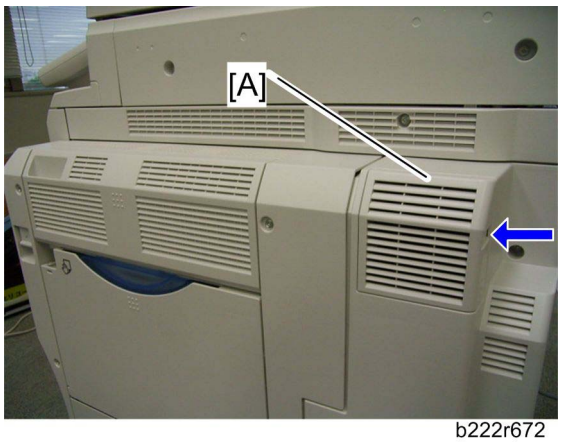
1. Scanner right cover [A] (🔩 x 2)
2. Right top cover [B] (🔩 x 1)



d027r671

3. Ozone filters [A] in the right top cover.

Ozone filter for the IH inverter

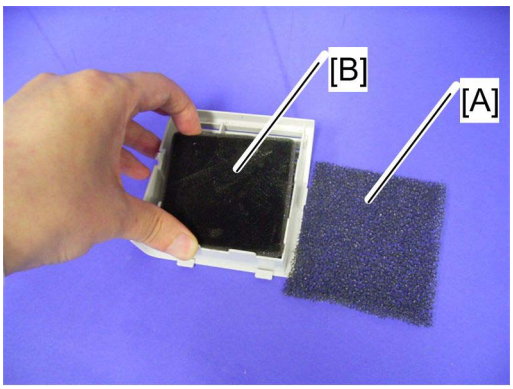


b222r672

http://www.manuals4you.com

Exterior Covers

1. IH inverter fan cover [A] (hook)

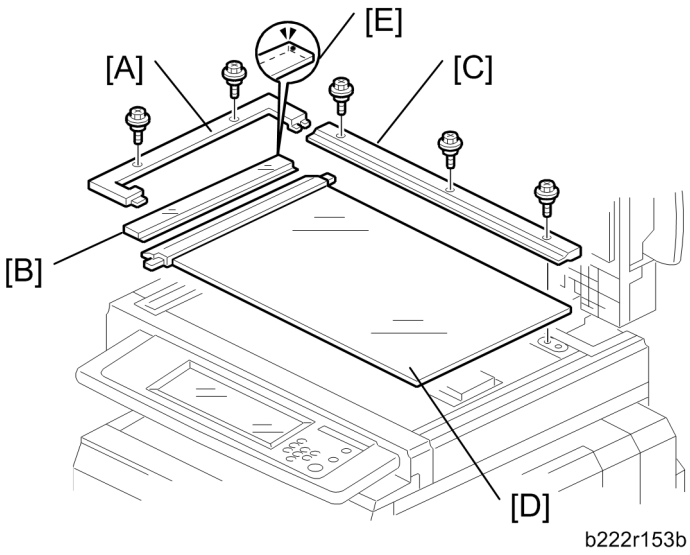


d027r673

2. Filter [A]
3. Ozone filter [B]

4.5 SCANNER UNIT

4.5.1 EXPOSURE GLASS



1. Glass cover [A] (☞ x 2)
2. ARDF exposure glass [B]
3. Rear scale [C] (☞ x 3)
4. Exposure glass with left scale [D]

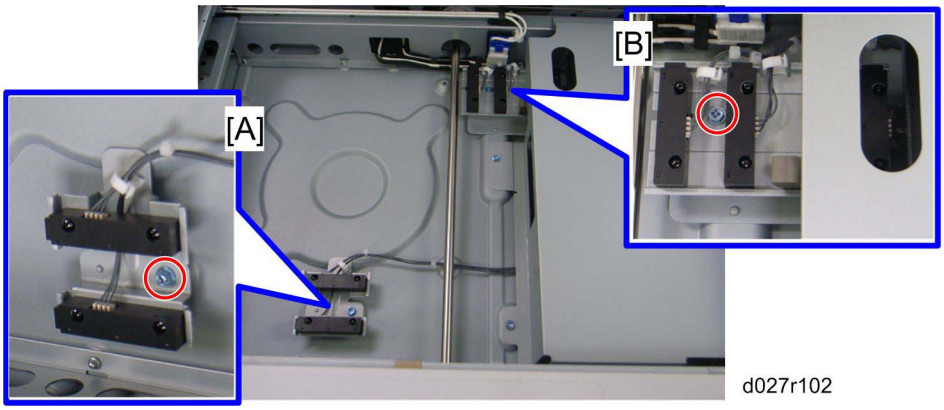
Note

- Position the white marker [E] at the rear-left corner and the black or blue marker at the front-left corner when you reattach the ARDF exposure glass.

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.5.2 ORIGINAL LENGTH/WIDTH SENSORS

1. Exposure glass with left scale (☛ p.4-25 "Exposure Glass")

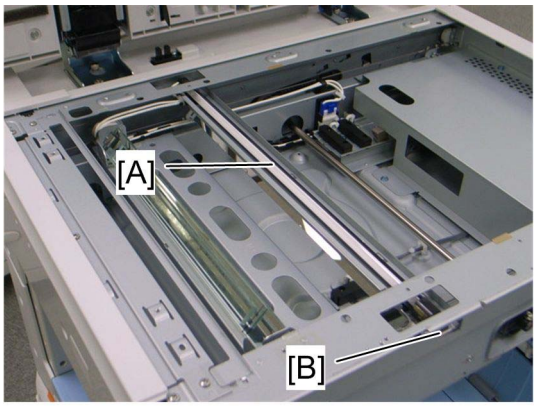


d027r102

2. Original width sensors [A] (x 1, x 2, x 1)
3. Original length sensors [B] (x 1, x 3, x 2)

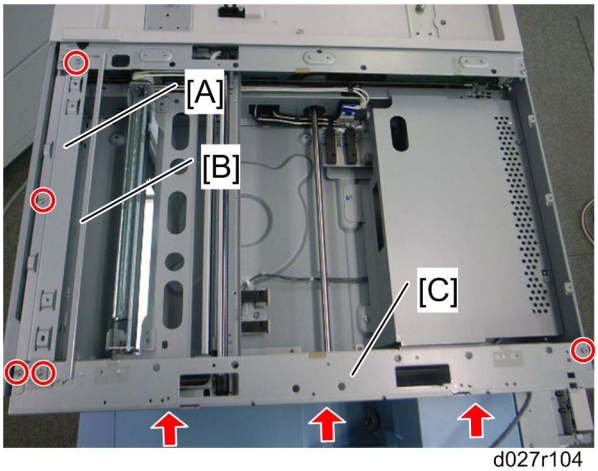
4.5.3 EXPOSURE LAMP

1. Operation panel with scanner front cover (☛ p.4-20 "Operation Panel")
2. Exposure glass (☛ p.4-25 "Exposure Glass")



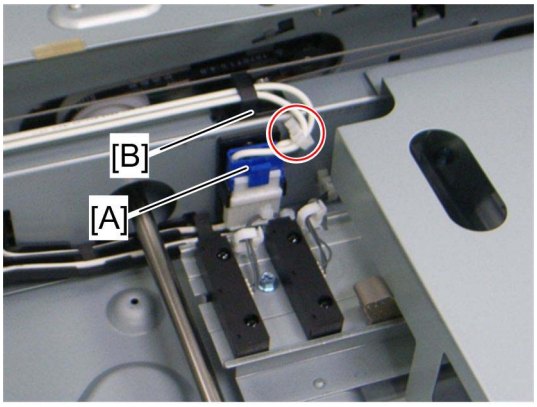
d027r103

3. Move the 1st scanner carriage [A] to the cutout [B] in the front frame.



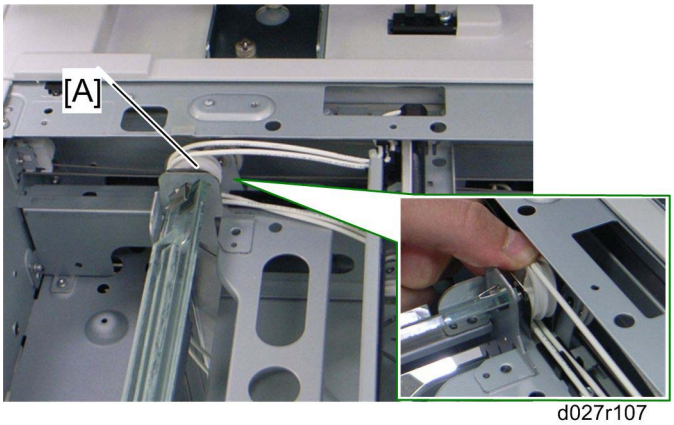
d027r104

4. Scanner left stays [A] and [B] (x 3)
5. Scanner front frame [C] (x 5)



d027r105

6. Disconnect the connector [A] (x 1, x 1).
7. Remove the clamp bracket [B] (x 1).

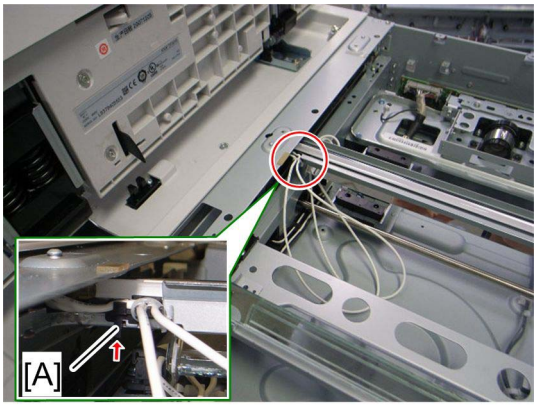


d027r107

8. Remove the pulley [A].

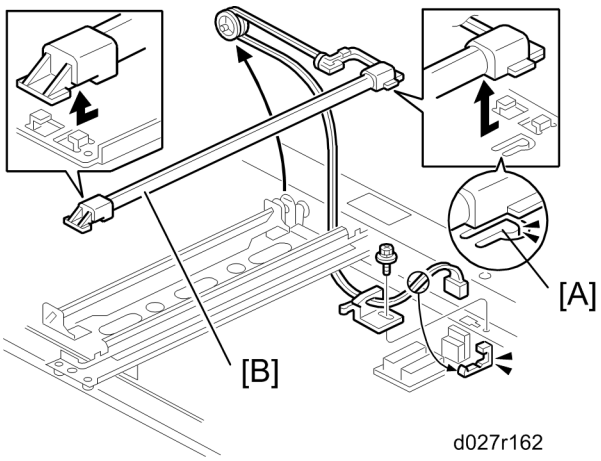
http://www.manuals4you.com

Scanner Unit



d027r108

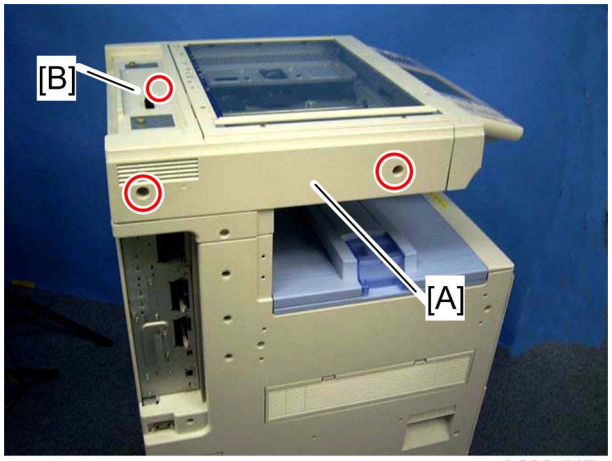
9. Remove the plastic bracket [A] (hook).



d027r162

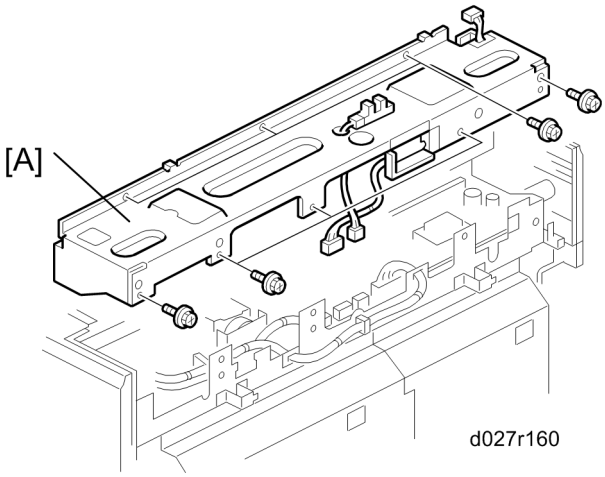
10. Hold down the snap [A], and then slide the exposure lamp [B] to the front side.
11. Exposure lamp [B]

4.5.4 SCANNER MOTOR



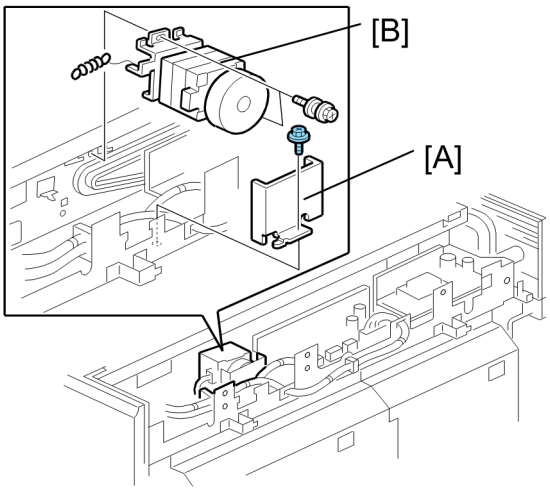
b222r517

1. Scanner left cover [A] (x 2)
2. Scanner rear cover [B] (x 1)



d027r160

3. Scanner rear frame [A] (x 8, x 3, x 1)



d027r161b

http://www.manuals4you.com

Scanner Unit

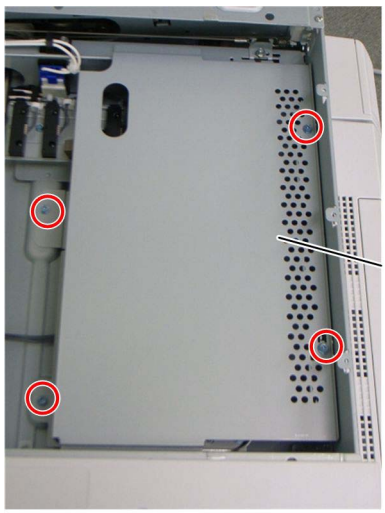
4. Scanner motor bracket [A] (x 1)
5. Scanner motor [B] (x 2, x 1, spring x 1, belt x 1)

Note

- After replacing the scanner motor, do the image adjustments in the following section of the manual (☛ "Scanning" in the p.4-3 "Image Adjustment" section).

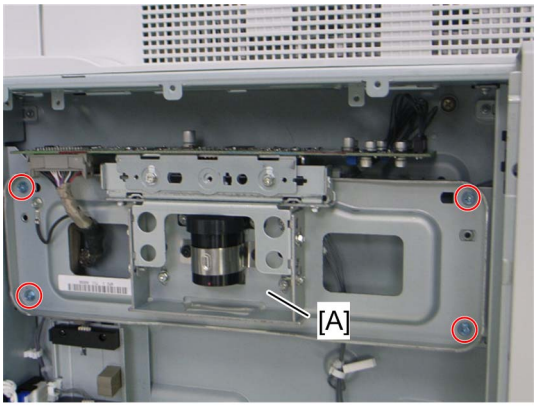
4.5.5 SENSOR BOARD UNIT (SBU)

1. Exposure glass (☛ p.4-25 "Exposure Glass")
2. Scanner right cover (🔩 x 2)



d027r109

3. SBU cover bracket [A] (🔩 x 4)



d027r110

4. Sensor board unit [A] (🔩 x 4, 🔌 x 2, ground cable x 1)

When reassembling

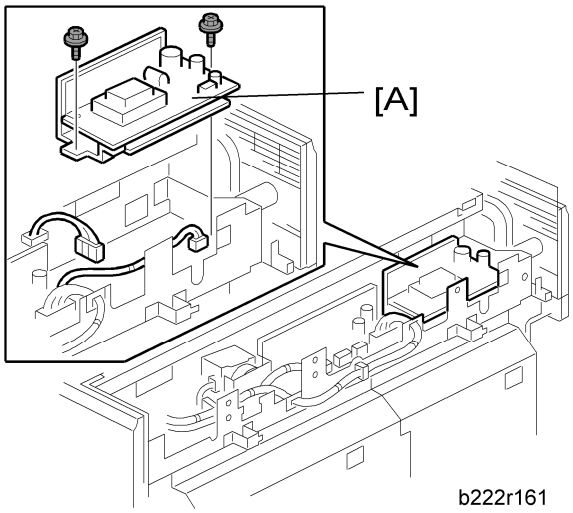
Adjust the following SP modes after you replace the sensor board unit:

- SP4–008 (Sub Scan Mag): See "Image Adjustment: Scanning".
- SP4–010 (Sub Mag Reg.): See "Image Adjustment: Scanning".
- SP4–011 (Main Scan Reg): See "Image Adjustment: Scanning".
- SP4–688 (DF: Density Adjustment): Use this to adjust the density level if the ID of outputs made in the DF and Platen mode is different.

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.5.6 EXPOSURE LAMP STABILIZER

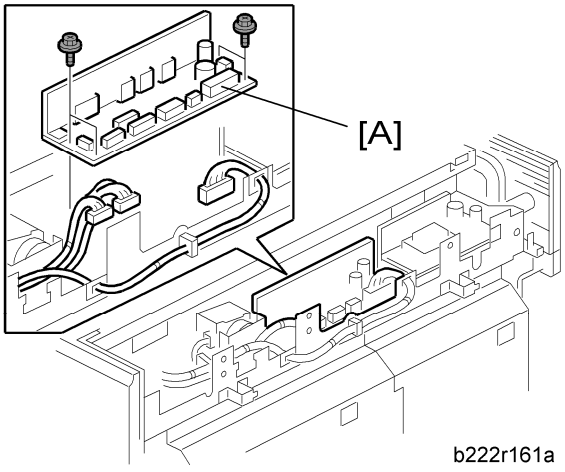
1. Scanner rear cover (☛ p.4-29 "Scanner Motor")
2. Scanner rear frame (☛ p.4-29 "Scanner Motor")



3. Exposure lamp stabilizer [A] (x 2, x 2)

4.5.7 SIO (SCANNER IN/OUT) BOARD

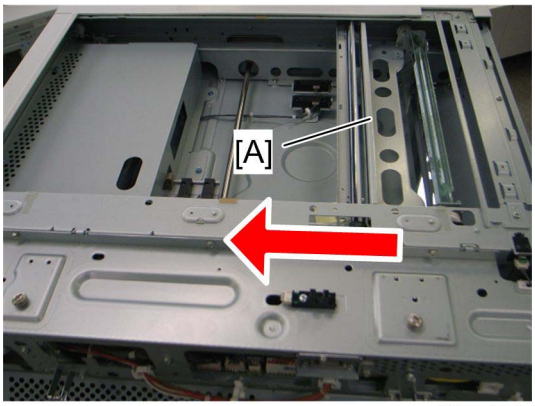
1. Scanner rear cover (☛ p.4-29 "Scanner Motor")
2. Scanner rear frame (☛ p.4-29 "Scanner Motor")



3. SIO board with bracket [A] (x 4, All s)

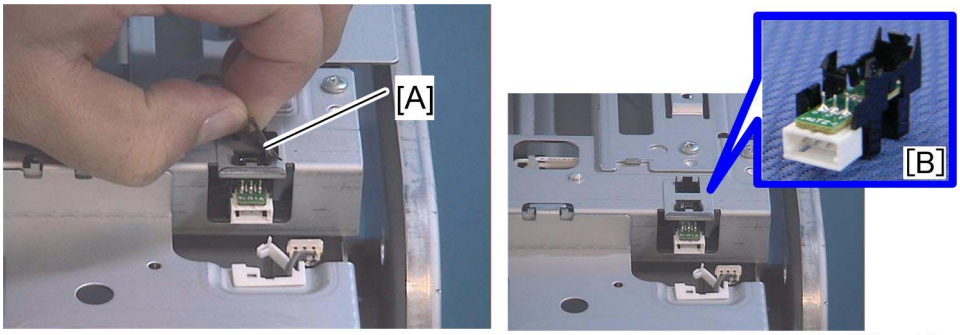
4.5.8 SCANNER HP SENSOR

1. Scanner left cover and Scanner rear cover (☛ p.4-29 "Scanner Motor")
2. Exposure glass (☛ p.4-25 "Exposure Glass")



d027r111

3. Move the 1st scanner carriage [A] to the right side.



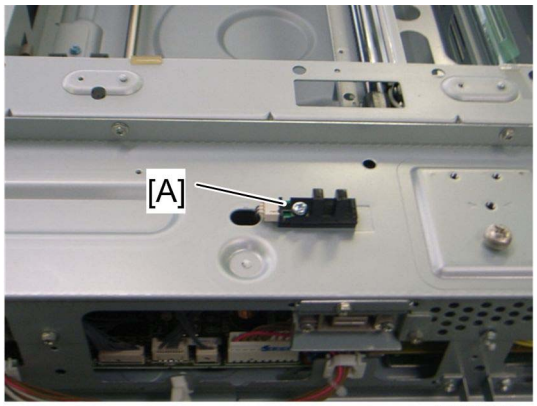
d027r524

4. Remove the mylar [A]
5. Remove the scanner HP sensor [B] (🔩 x 1, three snaps)

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.5.9 PLATEN COVER SENSOR

1. Scanner left cover and Scanner rear cover (☛ p.4-29 "Scanner Motor")

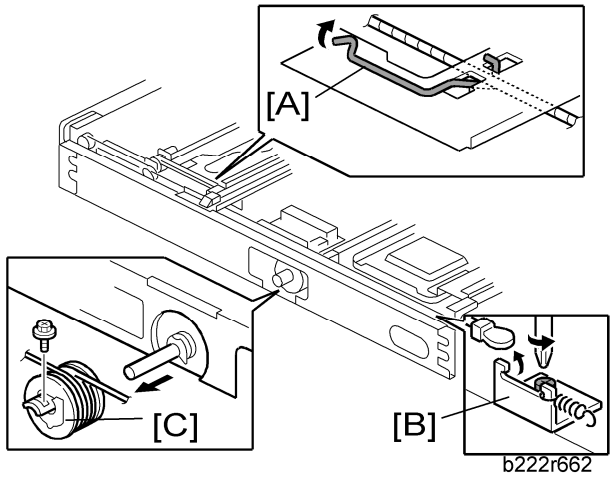


d027r112

2. Platen cover sensor [A] (x 1, x 1)

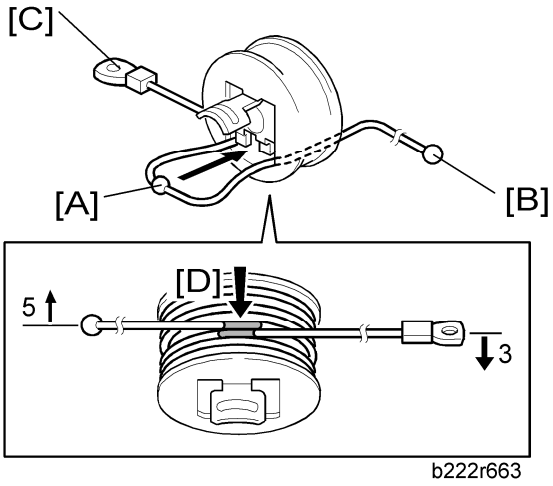
4.5.10 FRONT SCANNER WIRE

1. Operation panel with the scanner front cover (☛ p.4-20 "Operation Panel")
2. Front frame (☛ p.4-26 "Exposure Lamp")
3. To make reassembly easy, slide the 1st scanner carriage to the right.



4. Front scanner wire clamp [A]
5. Front scanner wire bracket [B] (🔩 x 1)
6. Front scanner wire and scanner drive pulley [C] (🔩 x 1)

Reassembling the Front Scanner Wire

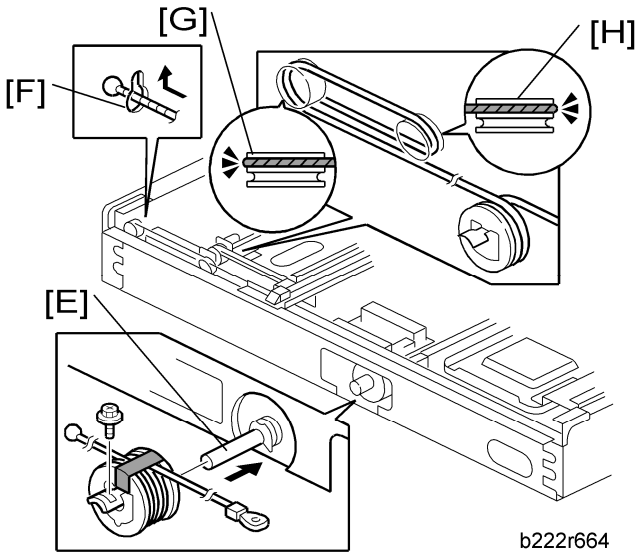


1. Position the center ball [A] in the middle of the forked holder.
2. Pass the right end (with the ball) [B] through the square hole. Pass the left end (with the ring) [C] through the notch.
3. Wind the right end counterclockwise (shown from the machine's front) five times. Wind the left end clockwise twice.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Note

- The two red marks [D] come together when you have done this. Stick the wire to the pulley with tape. This lets you easily handle the assembly at the time of installation.

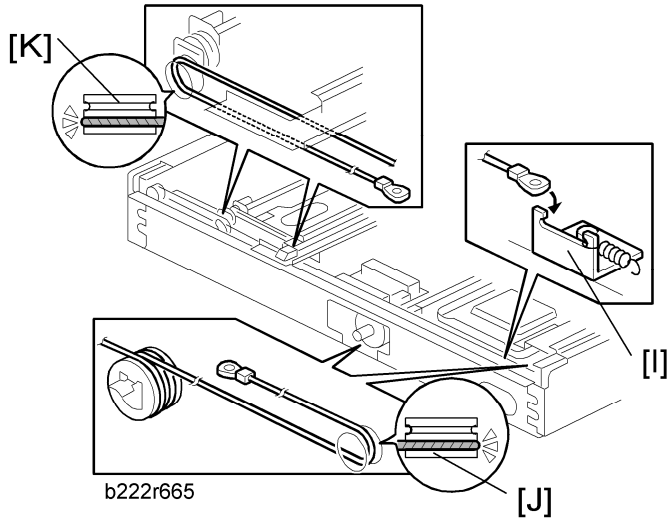


4. Install the drive pulley on the shaft [E].

Note

- Do not attach the pulley to the shaft with the screw at this time.

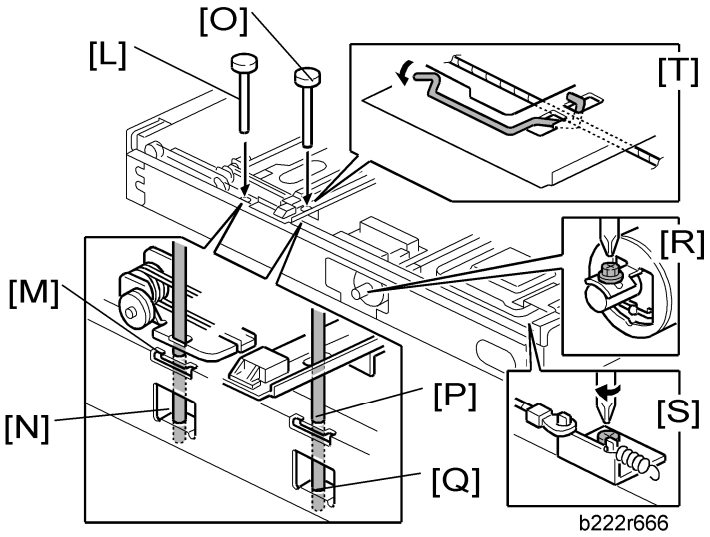
5. Insert the left end into the slit [F]. The end should go via the rear track of the left pulley [G] and the rear track of the movable pulley [H].



6. Hook the right end onto the front scanner wire bracket [I]. The end should go via the front track of the right pulley [J] and the front track of the movable pulley [K].

Note

- Do not attach the scanner wire bracket with the screw at this time.



7. Remove the tape from the drive pulley.
8. Insert a scanner-positioning pin [L] through the 2nd carriage hole [M] and the left holes [N] in the front rail. Insert another scanner positioning pin [O] through the 1st carriage hole [P] and the right holes in the front rail [Q].
9. Insert two more scanner positioning pins through the holes in the rear rail.
10. Screw the drive pulley to the shaft [R].
11. Screw the scanner wire bracket to the front rail [S].
12. Install the scanner wire clamp [T].
13. Pull out the positioning pins.

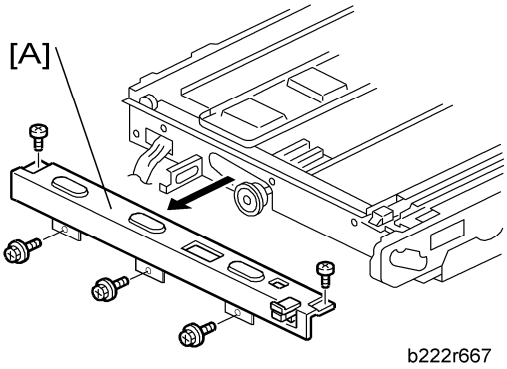
Note

- Make sure the 1st and 2nd carriages move smoothly after you remove the positioning pins. Do steps 8 through 13 again if they do not.
- After replacing the scanner wire, do the image adjustments in the following section of the manual (☛ "Scanning" in the p.4-3 "Image Adjustment" section).

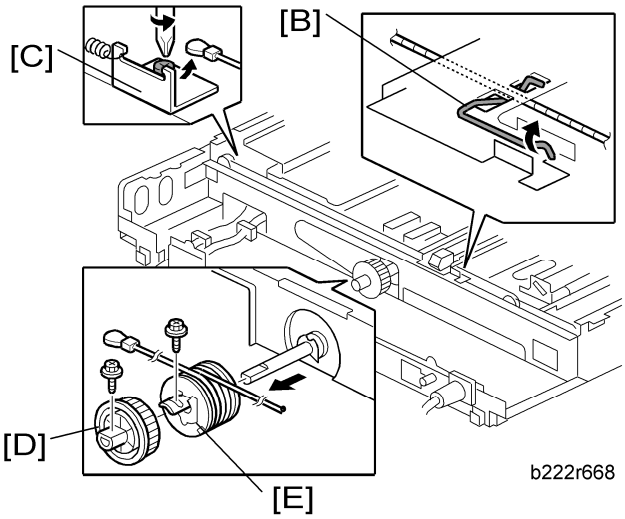
http://www.manuals4you.com

4.5.11 REAR SCANNER WIRE

1. Exposure glass (☛ p.4-25 "Exposure Glass")
2. Scanner rear frame (☛ p.4-29 "Scanner Motor Scanner Motor")
3. Scanner motor (☛ p.4-29 "Scanner Motor")
4. IOB with bracket (☛ p.4-156)

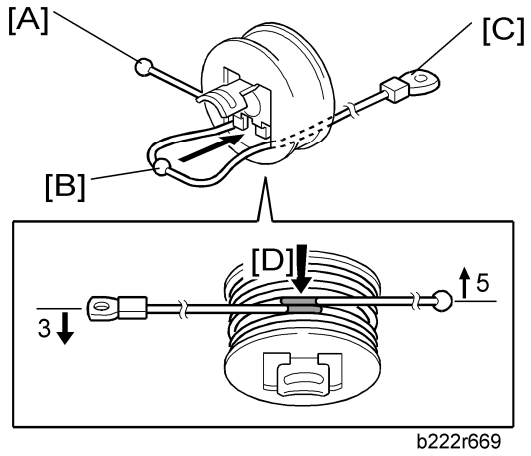


5. Rear rail frame [A] (☞ x 5)



6. To make reassembly easy, slide the first scanner to the center.
7. Rear scanner wire clamp [B]
8. Rear scanner wire bracket [C] (☞ x 1)
9. Scanner motor gear [D] (☞ x 1)
10. Rear scanner wire and scanner drive pulley [E] (☞ x 1)

Reassembling the Rear Scanner Wire



1. Position the center ball [B] in the middle of the forked holder.
2. Pass the end with the ball [A] through the right square hole from the front.
3. Position the center ball [B] in the middle of the notch, as shown by the arrow.
4. Pass the ball end [A] through the drive pulley notch.
5. Wind the end with the ring [C] clockwise (shown from the machine's front) three times; wind the ball end [A] clockwise (shown from the machine's front) five times.

   Note

   - The two red marks [D] should meet when you have done this.
6. Stick the wire to the pulley with tape, so you can easily handle the pulley and wire during installation.
7. Install the drive pulley on the shaft.

   Note

   - Do not screw the pulley onto the shaft yet.
8. Install the wire.

   Note

   - The winding of the wire on the three pulleys at the rear of the scanner should be the same as the winding on the three pulleys at the front. This must show as a mirror image. Example: At the front of the machine, the side of the drive pulley with the three windings must face the front of the machine. At the rear of the machine, it must face the rear.
9. Perform steps 8 through 13 in "Reassembling the Front Scanner Wire".

   Note

   - After replacing the scanner wire, do the image adjustments in the following section of the manual (☛ "Scanning" in the p.4-3 "Image Adjustment" section).

http://www.manuals4you.com

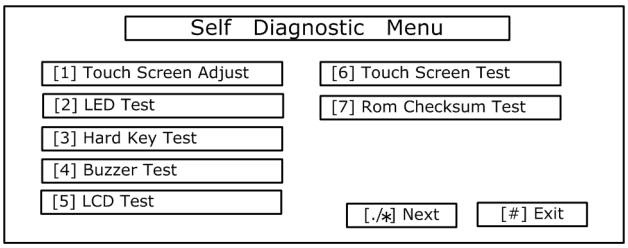
4.5.12 TOUCH PANEL POSITION ADJUSTMENT

Note

- It is necessary to calibrate touch panel at the following times:
- When you replace the operation panel.
- When you replace the controller board.
- When the touch panel detection function does not operate correctly.

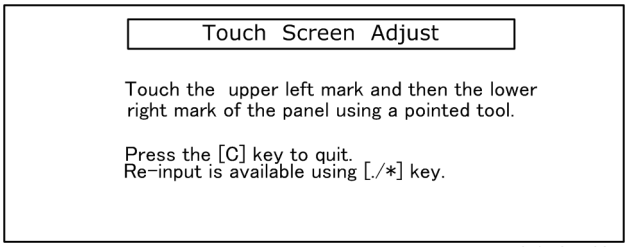
Do not use items [2] to [9] on the Self-Diagnostic Menu. These items are for design use only.

1. Press ☆, press ①⑨⑨③, press C/⊘ 5 times to open the Self-Diagnostics menu.



b178r548

2. On the touch screen press “Touch Screen Adjust” (or press ①).
3. Use a pointed (not sharp) tool to press the upper left mark ↖.



b178r549

4. Press the lower right mark when “↘” shows.
5. Press [#] OK on the screen (or press #) when you are finished.
6. Touch [#] Exit on the screen to close the Self-Diagnostic menu. Save the calibration settings.

4.6 LASER OPTICS

⚠WARNING

- Turn off the main switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the procedures in this section. Laser beams can cause serious eye injury.

4.6.1 CAUTION DECAL LOCATION

Caution decals are placed as shown below.



d027r113

⚠WARNING

- Be sure to turn off the main switch and disconnect the power plug from the power outlet before beginning any disassembly or adjustment of the laser unit. This copier uses a class IIIb laser beam with a wavelength of 655 nm and an output of 7 mW. The laser can cause serious eye injury.

4.6.2 LASER OPTICS HOUSING UNIT

⚠CAUTION

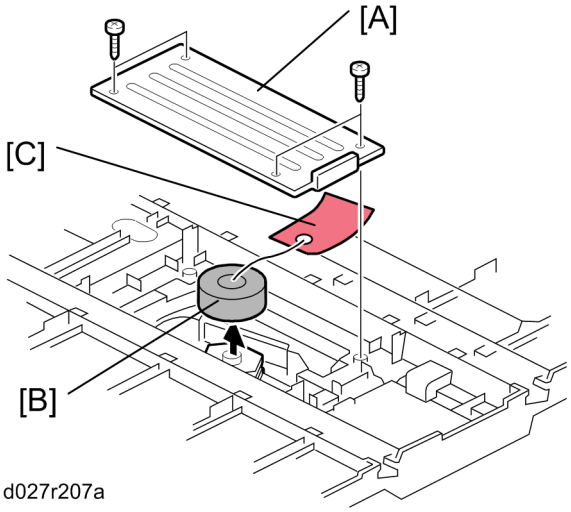
- Before installing a new laser optics housing unit, remove the sponge padding and the tag from the new unit.

Note

- A new laser optics housing unit has a bracket to protect the LD units. When you install the new unit, do not remove the bracket until near the end of the installation procedure (the correct time is stated in the manual).
- This bracket protects a capacitor on the unit. If the bracket is removed too early, you could break the capacitor on the corner of the main frame when you install the new unit.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Preparing the new laser optics housing unit



d027r207a

1. Polygon motor cover [A] of the laser optics housing unit (🔩 x 4)
2. Sponge padding [B]
3. Tag [C]
4. Reinstall the polygon motor cover [A].

Before removing the old laser optics housing unit

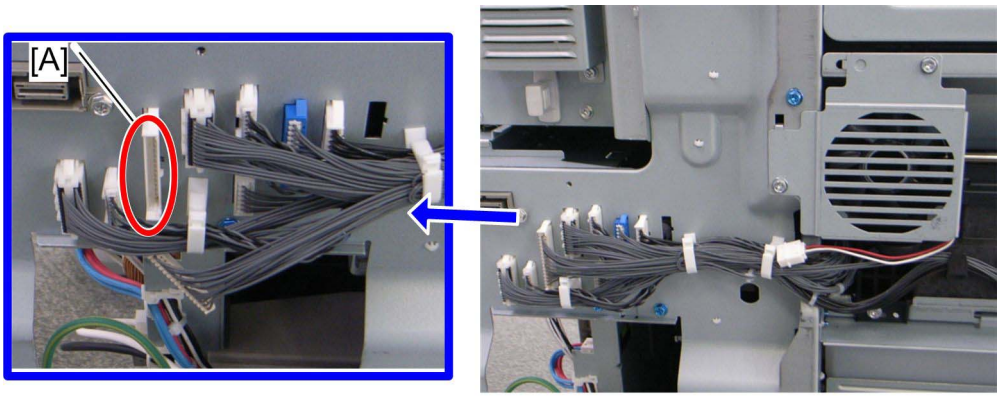
Do the following settings before removing the laser optics housing unit. These are adjustments for skew adjustment motors in the laser optics housing unit.

1. Plug in and turn on the main power switch of the copier.
2. Enter the SP mode.
3. Execute SP9511-001 to clear the L2 lens positioning motor setting for Magenta.
4. Execute SP9511-002 to clear the L2 lens positioning motor setting for Cyan.
5. Execute SP9511-003 to clear the L2 lens positioning motor setting for Yellow.
6. Exit the SP mode.
7. Turn off the main power switch and disconnect the power cord of the copier.

Recovery procedure for no replacement preparation of laser optics housing unit

If you did not do the procedure in ‘Before removing the old laser optics housing’ before removing the old laser optics housing unit, you must do the following.

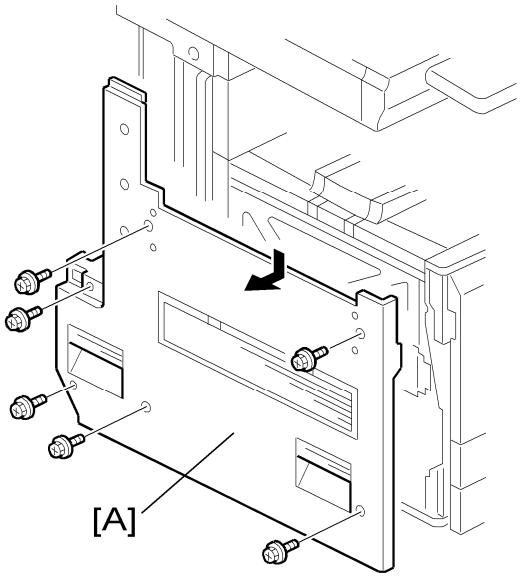
1. Turn off the main power switch and disconnect the power cord of the copier.
2. Remove the left cover and harness cover bracket (see the following "Removing the old laser optics housing unit")



d027r610

3. Disconnect the harness [A] of the skew correction motor.
4. Do steps 1 to 7 of "Before removing the old laser optics housing unit".
5. Connect the harness [A] and reinstall the harness bracket and left cover.
6. Plug in and turn on the main power switch.

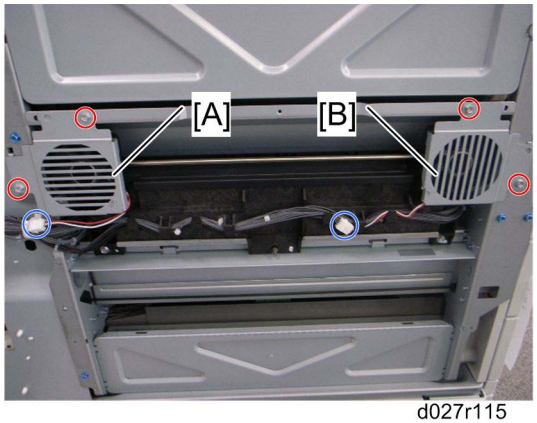
Removing the old laser optics housing unit



1. Left cover [A] (x 6)

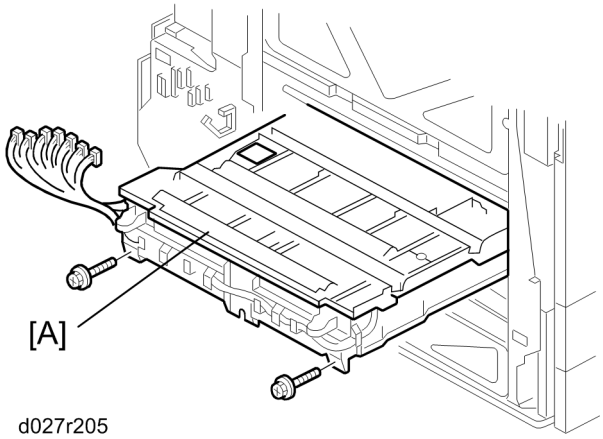
http://www.manuals4you.com

Laser Optics



d027r115

2. Rear fan bracket [A] for the laser housing optics unit (x 2, x 1)
3. Front fan bracket [B] for the laser housing optics unit (x 2, x 1)



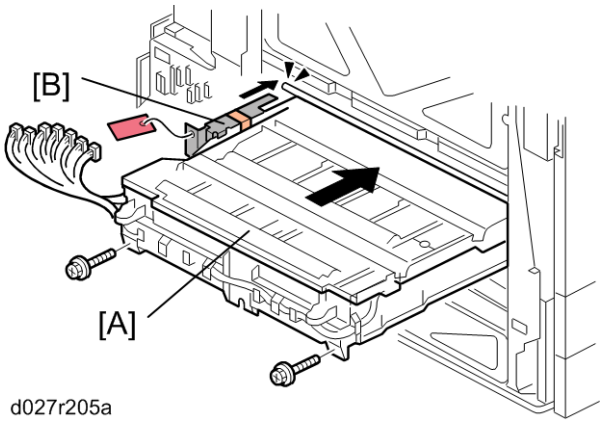
d027r205

4. Remove the old laser optics housing unit [A] (x 2, All 's, x 3)

Installing a new Laser Optics Housing Unit

Note

- A new laser optics housing unit has a bracket to protect the LD units. When you install the new unit, do not remove the bracket until near the end of the installation procedure (the correct time is stated in the manual).
- This bracket protects a capacitor on the unit. If the bracket is removed too early, you could break the capacitor on the corner of the main frame when you install the new unit.

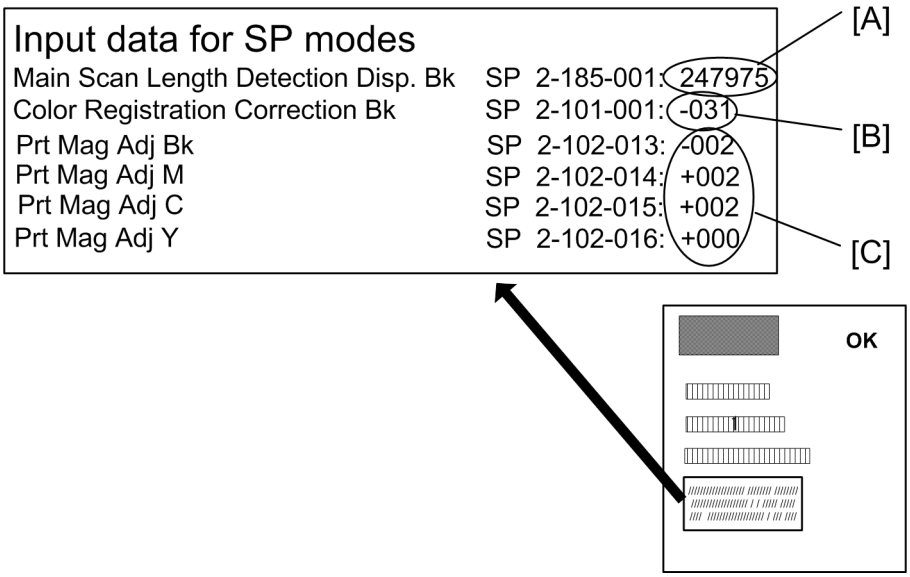


1. Push the new laser optics housing unit [A] slowly into the copier until the bracket [B] bumps against the frame of the copier.
2. Remove the bracket [B], and then push the new laser optics housing unit fully into the copier (x 2, All 's, x 3).
3. Reassemble the machine.

After installing the new laser optics housing unit

Do the following adjustment after installing the new laser optics housing unit.

1. Plug in and turn on the main power switch.



2. Adjust the main scan magnification for K, M, C, Y.
   - Input the standard values [C] provided with a new laser optics housing unit for the main scan magnification adjustment with SP2-102-013, 014, 015, 016.

   Note

   - The values [C] are different for each laser optics housing unit.
3. Adjust the main scan magnification only for black (K).

http://www.manuals4you.com

Laser Optics

- Input the standard value [A] provided with a new laser optics housing unit for the main scan magnification adjustment with SP2-185-001.

  Note

  - The value [A] is different for each laser optics housing unit.
- Print the test pattern (14: 1-dot trimming pattern in the SP2-109-003).
- Check that the left and right trim margin is within 4 ± 1 mm. If not, change the standard value for the main scan magnification adjustment.

4. Adjust the main scan registration only for black (K).
   - Input the registration value [B] provided with a new laser optics housing unit for the main scan registration adjustment with SP2101-001.

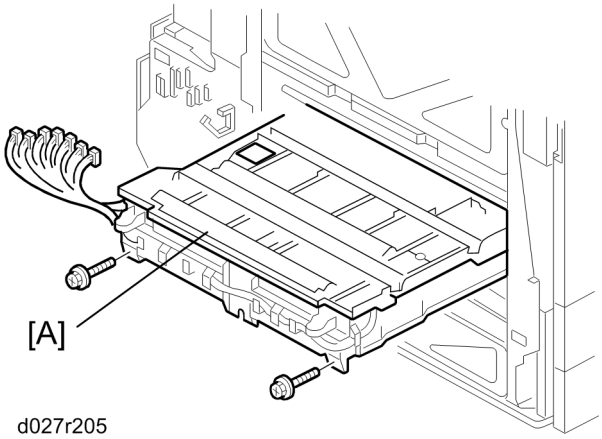
     Note

     - The value [B] is different for each laser optics housing unit.
   - Print the test pattern (14: 1-dot trimming pattern in the SP2-109-003).
   - Check that the left trim margin is within 2 ± 1 mm. If not, change the registration value for the main scan registration adjustment.
5. Select "0" with SP2-109-003 after printing the "1-dot trimming pattern.
6. Do the line position adjustment.
   - First do SP2-111-3.
   - Then do SP2-111-1.

     To check if SP 2-111-1 was successful, watch the screen during the process. A message is displayed at the end. Also, you can check the result with SP 2-194-10 to -12.
7. Exit the SP mode.

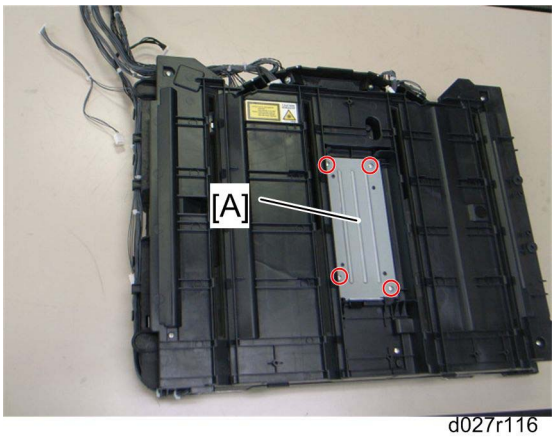
After you replace the housing unit, do the adjustments in the following section of the manual: Image Adjustment – Registration.

4.6.3 POLYGON MIRROR MOTOR AND DRIVE BOARD



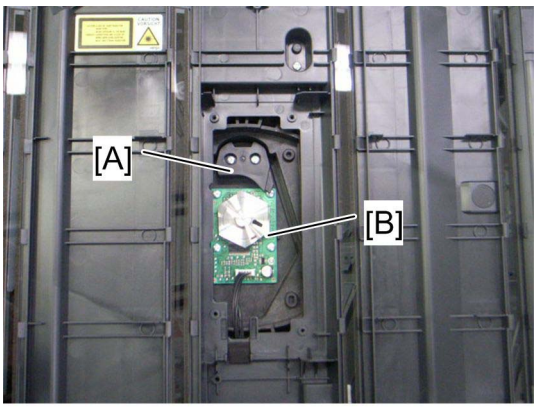
d027r205

1. Laser optics housing unit [A] (☛ p.4-41 "Laser Optics Housing Unit")



d027r116

2. Polygon mirror motor cover [A] of the laser optics housing unit (☞ x 4)



d027r117

3. Polygon mirror motor holder [A] (☞ x 2)
4. Polygon mirror motor [B] (☞ x 4, ☞ x 1)

After installing the polygon mirror motor:

- 1) Do the "Forced Line Position Adj. Mode c" (SP2-111-3).
- 2) Then do the "Forced Line Position Adj. Mode a" (SP2-111-1).

http://www.manuals4you.com

To check if SP 2-111-1 was successful, watch the screen during the process. A message is displayed at the end. Also, you can check the result with SP 2-194-10 to -12.

After you replace the motor, do the adjustments in the following section of the manual: Image Adjustment – Registration.

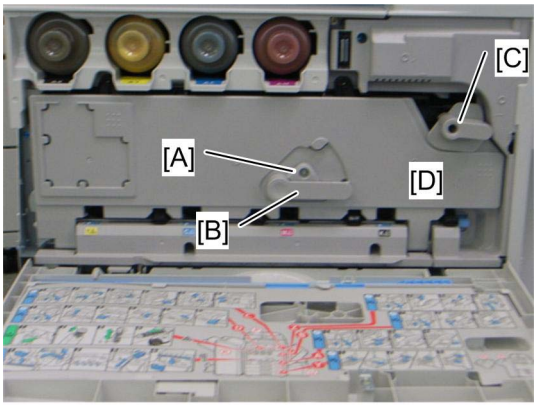
4.7 IMAGE CREATION

4.7.1 PCU

Note

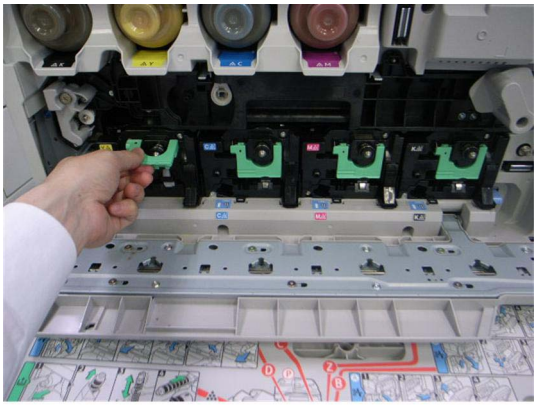
- Do not touch the OPC drum. Do not let metal objects touch the development sleeve.

1. Open the front door.



d027r118

2. Lever lock [A] (🔩 x 1)
3. Turn the drum positioning plate lever [B] and the image transfer unit lock lever [C] counter-clockwise.
4. Open the drum positioning plate [D].



d027r119

5. Pull out the PCU (hold the grip while you pull it out).

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.7.2 DRUM UNIT AND DEVELOPMENT UNIT

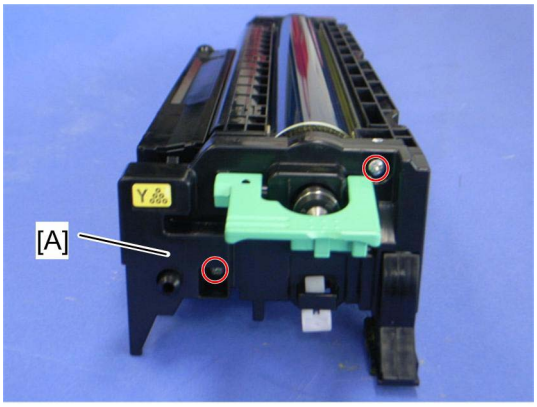
The new drum unit has a front cover and a front joint. When you attach the new drum unit to the development unit, remove a front cover and a front joint at first.

And use them for reassembling the new drum unit and development unit.

1. If you install a new drum unit, set SP 3902-xxx to "1".
   - Black: 3902-009
   - Yellow: 3902-010
   - Cyan: 3902-011
   - Magenta: 3902-012

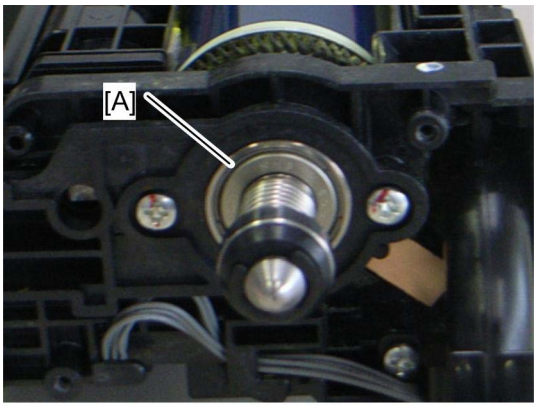
   Note

   - If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the drum unit automatically, after you turn the power on again.
2. Turn the machine power off.
3. PCU (☛ p.4-49 "PCU")



d027r120

4. Front cover [A] (🔩 x 2)

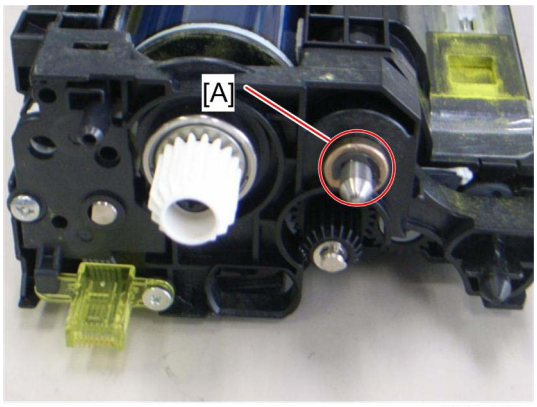


d027r121

Note

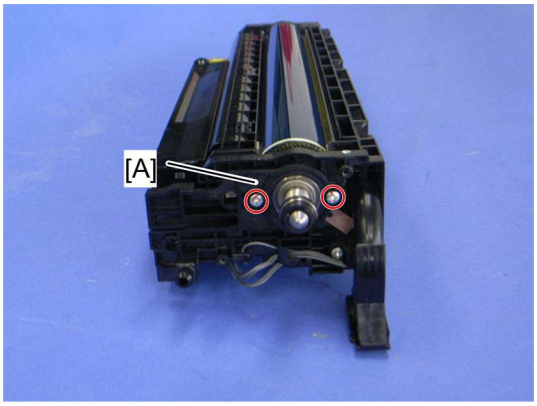
- Do not touch the bearing [A] after removing the front cover. The bearing is

properly applied with lubricant.



d027r122

5. Remove the bushing [A] of the development roller at the rear of the PCU (ℂ x 1).

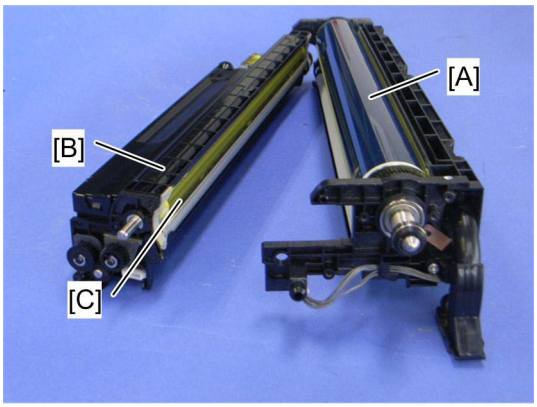


d027r123

6. Remove the front joint [A] (🔩 x 2, ✋ x 1).

Note

- The front joint [A] is firmly set. Remove it with a flat screwdriver.



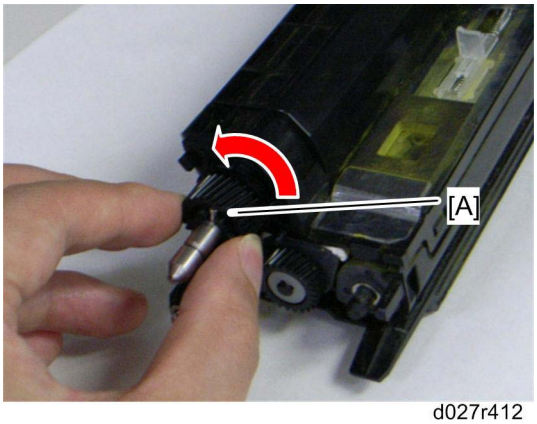
d027r124

7. Drum unit [A] and Development Unit [B]

Note

- When the development unit is removed from the drum unit, clean the entrance mylar [C] with a vacuum.

http://www.manuals4you.com



d027r412

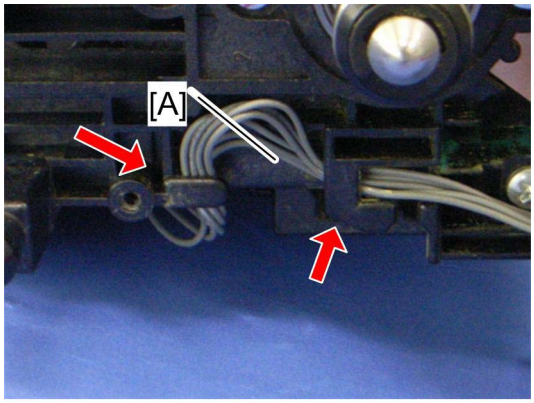
8. Rotate the development roller [A] five or six times in the counterclockwise direction.

Note

- This step removes developer that has stuck to the development roller, which would cause color unevenness.

9. If you change the development unit, do the ACC procedure.
10. Execute the drum phase adjustment with SP1902-001 twice.

When reassembling the PCU:

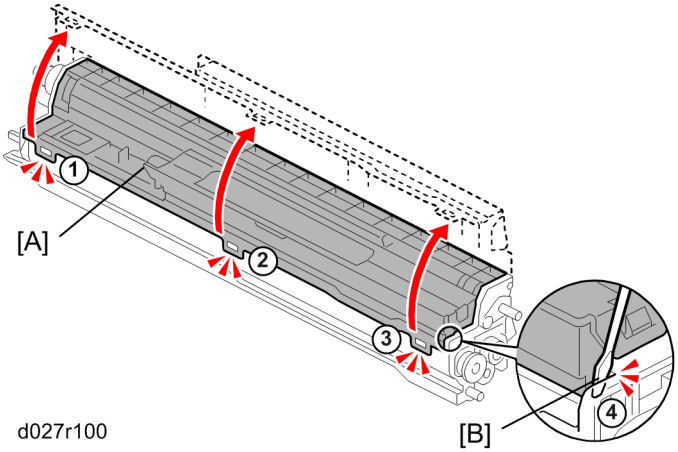


d027r681

- Make sure that the harness [A] is hooked as shown.

Developer

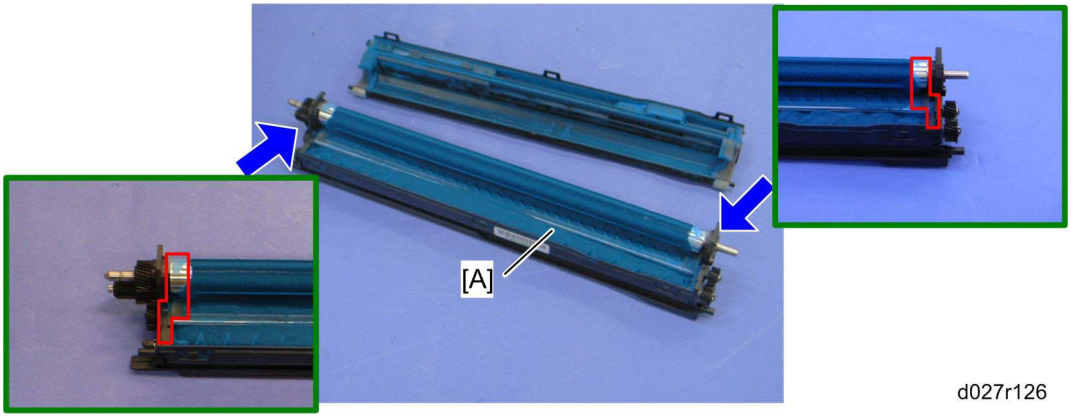
1. Set SP 3902-xxx to "1".
   Black: 3902-005
   Yellow: 3902-006
   Cyan: 3902-007
   Magenta: 3902-008
2. Turn the machine power off.
3. Development unit (☛ p.4-50 "Drum unit and Development Unit")



4. Hopper cover [A] (4 hooks)
   - Release the three hooks first in the correct order (from ① to ③).
   - Put the head of a screwdriver in the groove gap [B] as shown, and then release the hook ④.

⚠CAUTION

- Follow the correct order ① to ④. Otherwise, the hopper cover may be damaged. The hook ④ breaks easily.



5. Shake a bag of developer and pour it into the development hopper [A].
6. Reattach the hopper cover (hook x 3).

⚠CAUTION

- Keep the developer off at both ends of the development unit enclosed in red lines in the diagram.

7. Turn the machine power on. The machine initializes the developer and resets the PM counter for the developer. (For details of the developer initialization result, see "Developer Initialization Result" in the "Appendix: Process Control Error Conditions" chapter.
8. Do the ACC procedure.

http://www.manuals4you.com

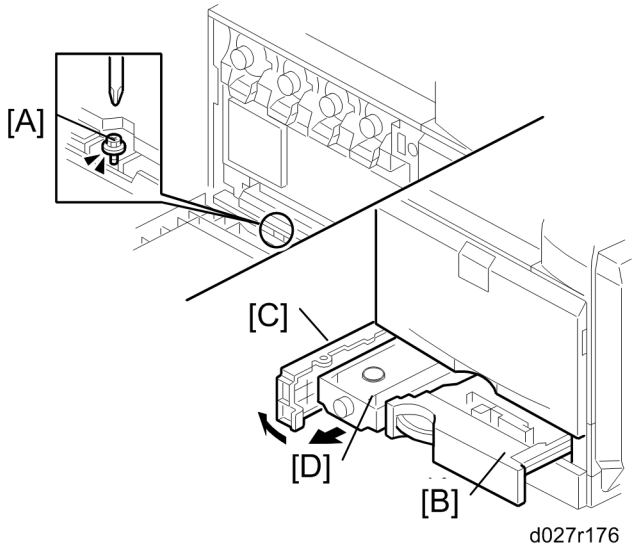
4.7.3 TONER COLLECTION BOTTLE

If you will install a new bottle, and the old bottle is not in a full or near-full condition, then set SP 3902-017 to 1.

Note

- If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the bottle automatically, after you turn the power on again.
- If the bottle is in a full or near-full condition, it is not necessary to do this.

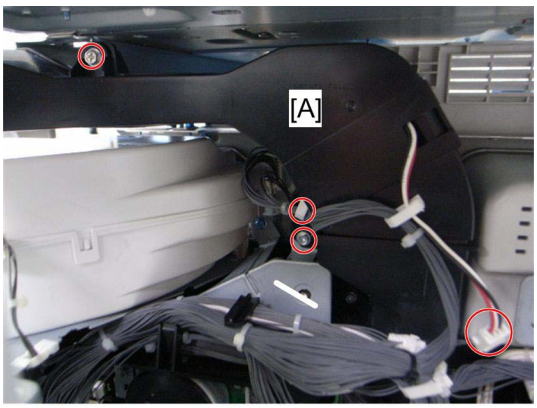
1. Turn off the main power switch.



2. Open the front door and remove the screw [A].
3. Close the front door.
4. Pull out tray 1 [B].
5. Open the toner collection bottle door [C].
6. Pull out the toner collection bottle [D].

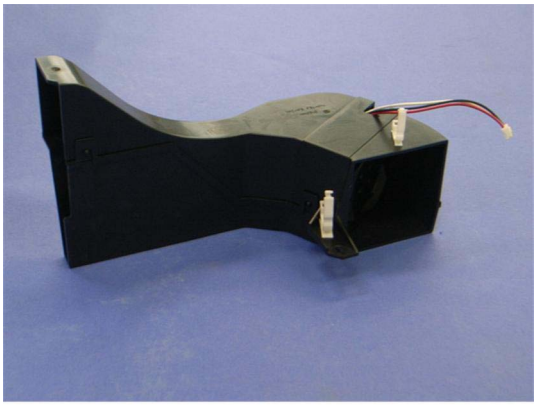
4.7.4 SECOND DUCT FAN

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box")



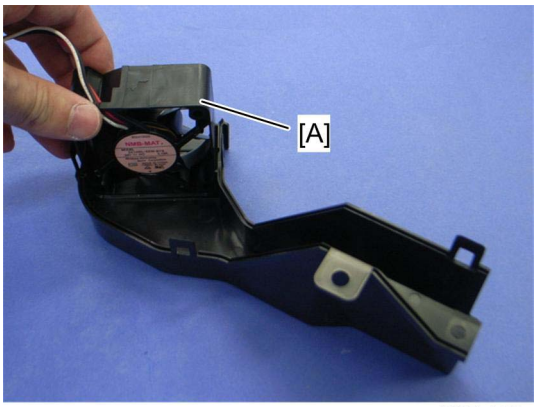
d027r127

4. Second duct [A] (x 2, x 1, x 2)



d027r128

5. Split the second duct (4 hooks).



d027r129

6. Second duct fan [A]

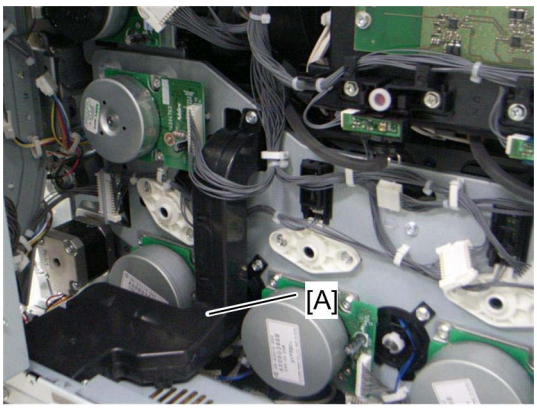
When reinstalling the second duct fan

Make sure that the second duct fan is installed with its decal facing to the front of the machine.

http://www.manuals4you.com

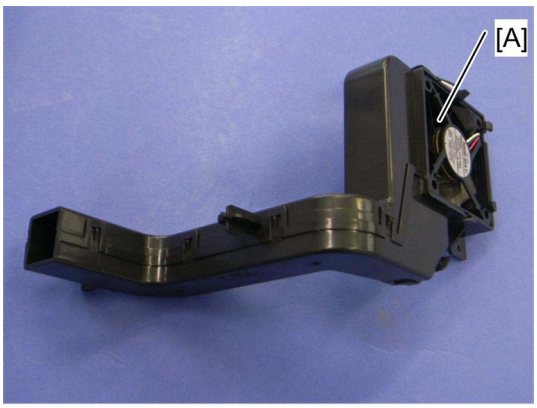
4.7.5 THIRD DUCT FAN

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box")



d027r130

4. Third duct [A] (x 2, x 1)



d027r131

5. Third duct fan [A] (3 hooks)

When reinstalling the third duct fan

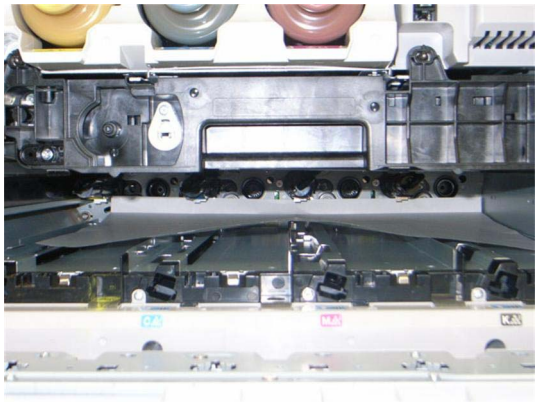
Make sure that the third duct fan is installed with its decal facing to the upper side of the machine.

4.7.6 TONER PUMP UNIT

There are four pump units inside the machine. This procedure describes the replacement procedure only for one unit. If you need to replace another unit, do the same as this procedure.

Note

- Put some sheets of paper on the floor before doing this procedure. Toner may fall on the floor.

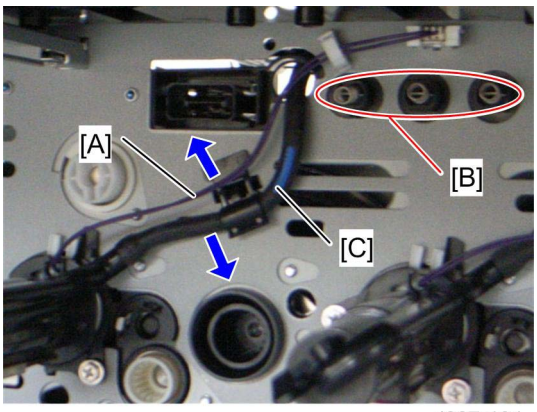


d027r132

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Image transfer belt unit (☛ p.4-63 "Image Transfer Belt Unit")
3. All PCUs (☛ p.4-49 "PCU")
4. Put a sheet of paper (A3/DLT) inside the machine as shown and on the floor.

Note

- The sheet of paper on the floor is used in a later step.



d027r134

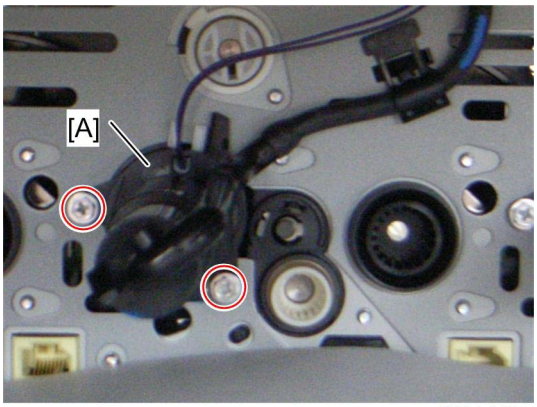
5. Release the harness [A] from the clamp (x 1 for YCM, x 2 for K) and hook, and then disconnect the harness.

Note

- Avoid touching these spring terminals [B].

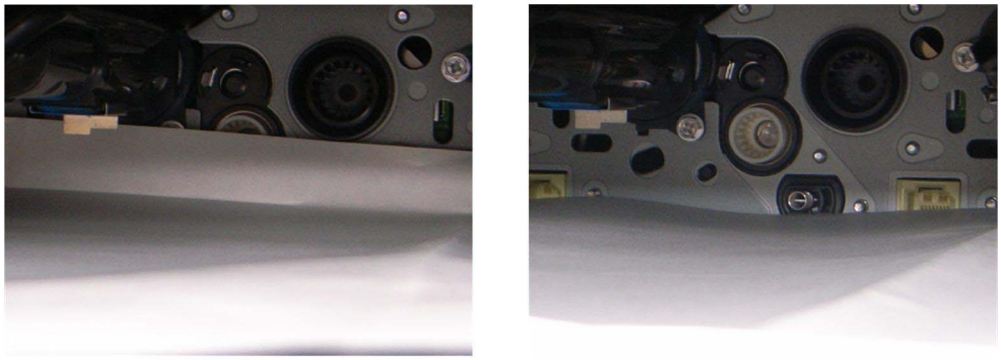
http://www.manuals4you.com

6. Release the toner supply tube [C].



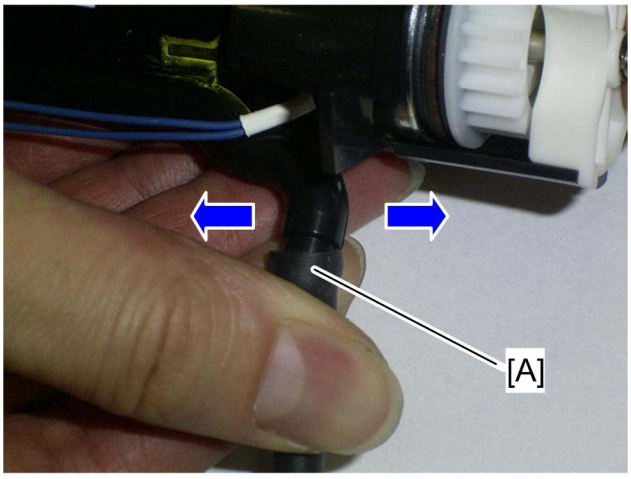
d027r135

7. Remove the toner pump unit [A] (x 2)



d027r136

- Make sure that a sheet of paper is attached to the frame of the rear side. The picture on the left shows a sheet of paper that is correctly set, but the picture on the right shows a sheet of paper that is not correctly set. This sheet of paper prevents toner and screws from falling into the laser optics housing unit through cutouts.

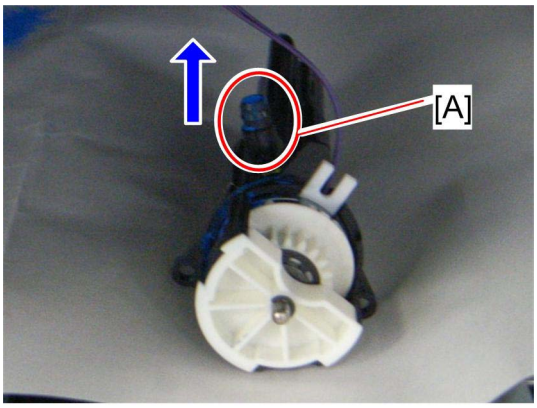


d027r705

8. Slowly remove the toner supply tube [A] from the toner pump unit by pulling the tube right and left.
9. Turn up the openings of the toner pump unit and toner supply tube just after removing the tube.

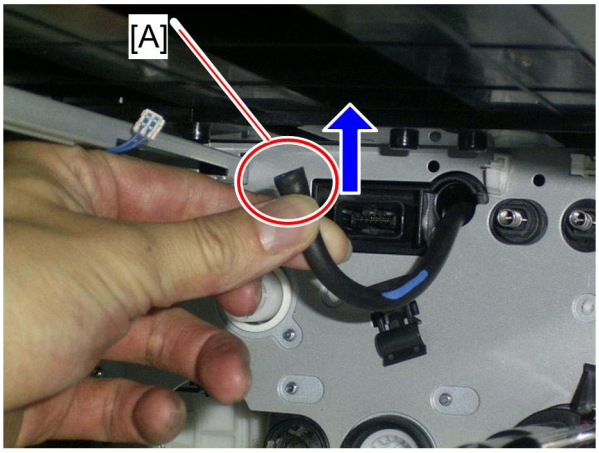
Note

- If not, the toner may scatter away and fall down.



d027r137

10. Put the toner pump unit on the sheet of paper, which has been put in step 4, with its opening [A] up.



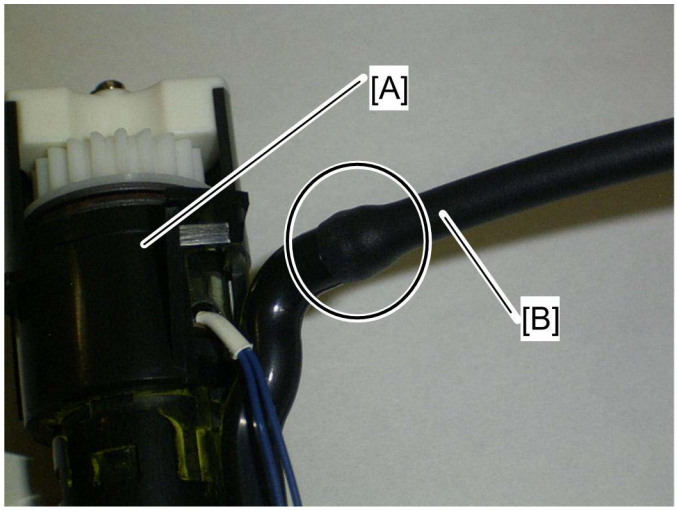
d027r707

11. Keep the opening [A] of the toner supply tube up, and then clip the opening of the toner supply.

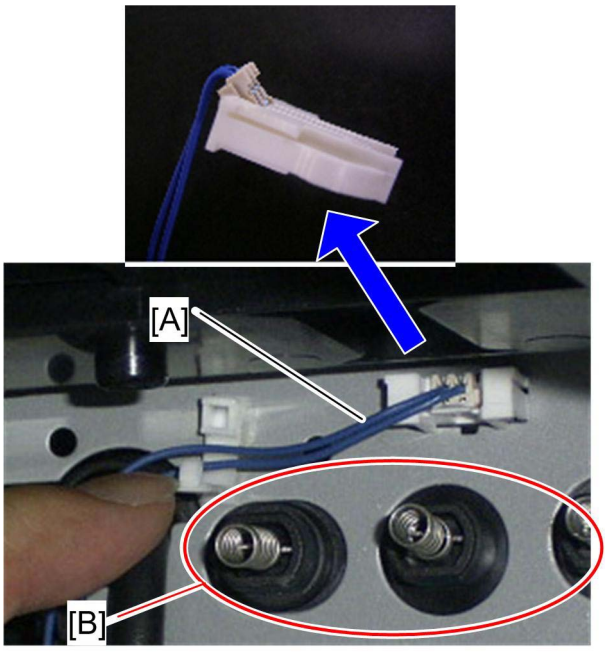
When you install the new toner pump unit

Before installing the new toner pump unit, mask the opening of the old toner pump unit with tape. Dispose of it following local rules.

http://www.manuals4you.com



1. Put a sheet of paper (A3/DLT) inside the machine.
2. Turn up the opening of the toner supply tube, and then remove the object that was used to clip the opening of the toner supply tube.
3. Insert the opening of the toner pump unit [A] into the opening of the toner supply tube [B] as far as possible.



d027r709

4. Connect the harness [A] to the connector of the machine.

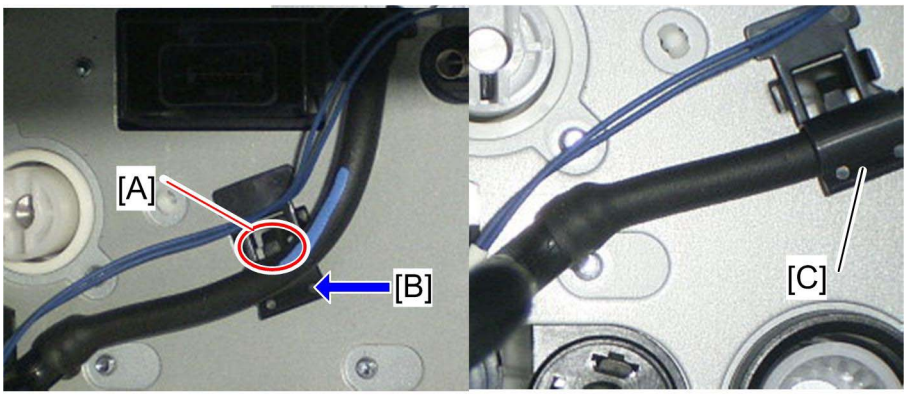
Note

- On the above picture, the magnified picture of the connector shows the easiest way to connect it.

5. Clamp the harness [A] (x 1 for YCM, x 2 for K).

Note

- Avoid touching these spring terminals [B].

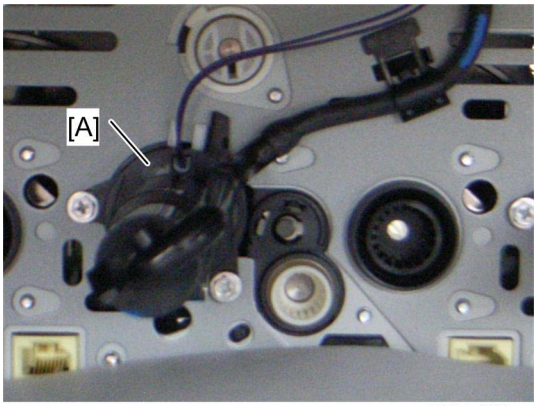


d027r710

6. Pass the harness of the toner pump unit behind the hook [A], while pressing at [B].
7. Secure the toner supply tube with the holder [C], lifting up the edge of the holder "very gently".

Note

- Be careful when you lift the edge of the holder, because the holder is easily broken.

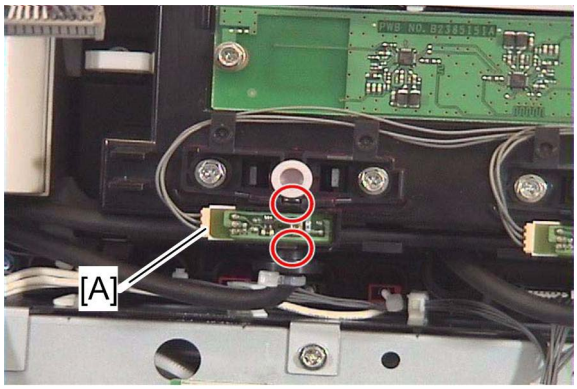


d027r135a

8. Insert the toner pump unit [A] into the rear frame of the machine (x 2).

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.7.7 TONER END SENSOR



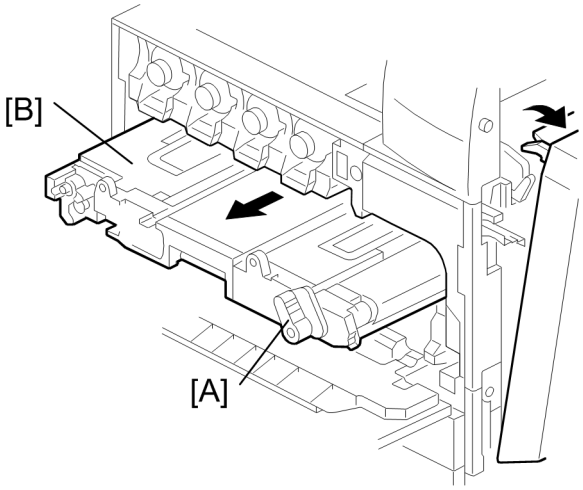
d027r042

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box")
3. Toner end sensor [A] (✍ x 1, 2 hooks each)

4.8 IMAGE TRANSFER

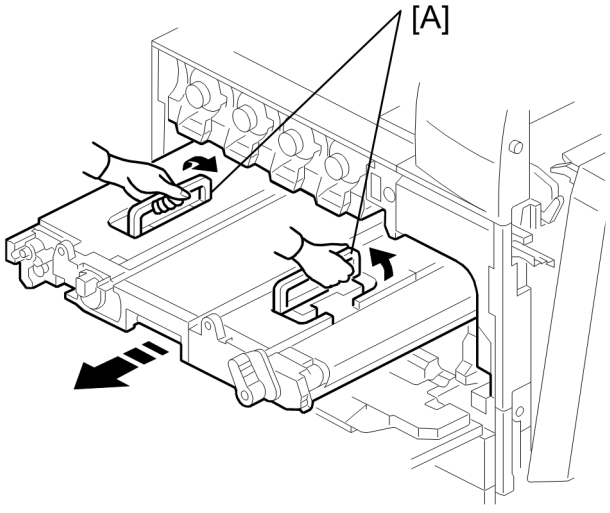
4.8.1 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT UNIT

1. Open the right door.
2. Open the front door.
3. Open the drum positioning plate. (☛ p.4-49 "PCU")



d027r171

4. Turn the image transfer belt unit lock lever [A] counterclockwise.
5. Pull out the image transfer belt unit [B] halfway.



d027r172

6. Grasp the handles [A], and then pull out the image transfer belt unit fully.

http://www.manuals4you.com

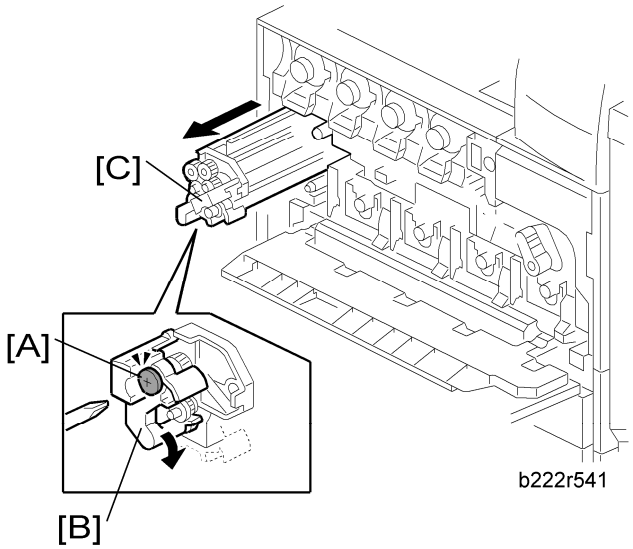
4.8.2 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT CLEANING UNIT

1. If you will install a new belt cleaning unit, then set SP 3902-015 to 1.

Note

- If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the belt cleaning unit automatically, after you turn the power on again.
- Do not use SP3902-015 or 013 if you replace the complete ITB unit.

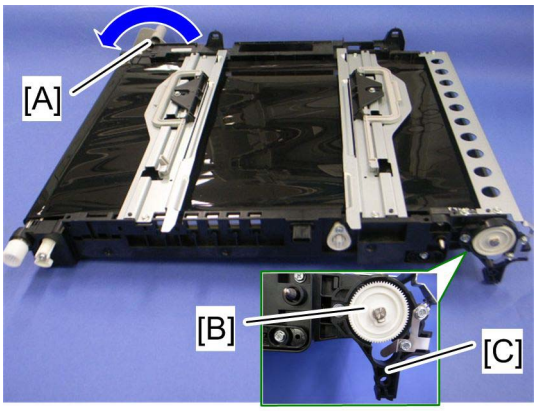
2. Turn off the main power switch.
3. Open the right door.
4. Open the front door.
5. Open the drum positioning plate. (☛ p.4-49 "PCU")



6. Loosen the screw [A].
7. Turn the lock lever [B] clockwise
8. Pull out the image transfer belt cleaning unit [C].

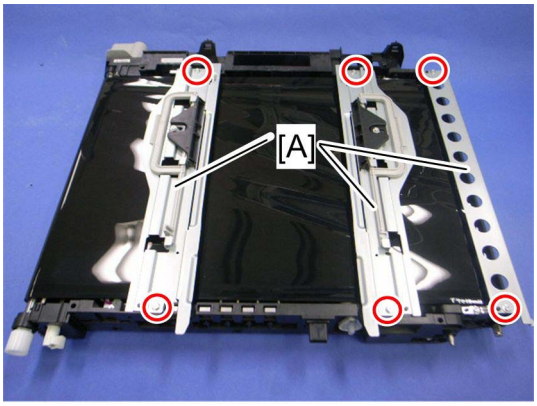
4.8.3 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT

1. Image transfer belt cleaning unit (☛ p.4-64 "Image Transfer Cleaning unit")
2. Image transfer belt unit (☛ p.4-63 "Image Transfer Belt Unit")



d027r138

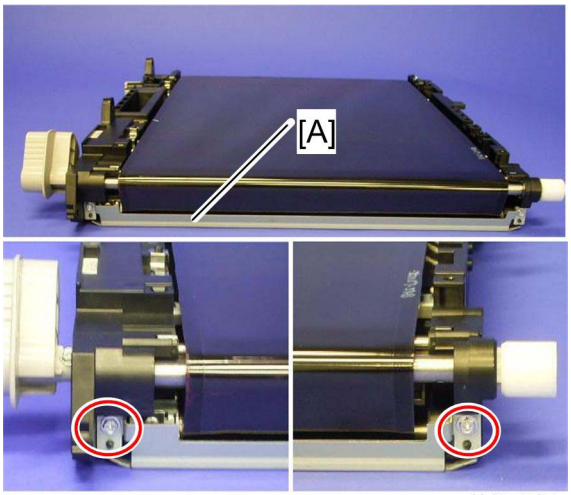
3. Turn the image transfer unit contact lover [A] counterclockwise (as seen from the rear).
4. Gear [B] (hook x 1)
5. Turn the gear cover [C] clockwise (as seen from the rear) (🔩 x 1).



d027r139

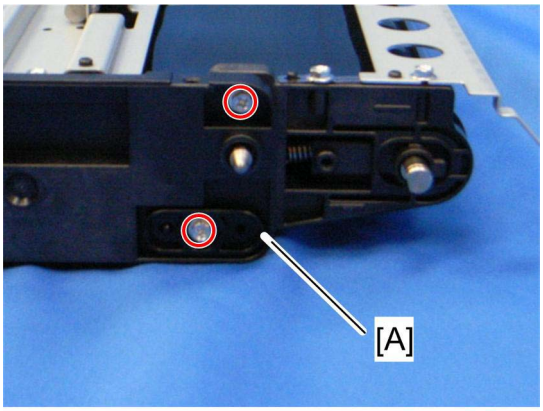
6. Three stays [A] (🔩 x 6)

http://www.manuals4you.com



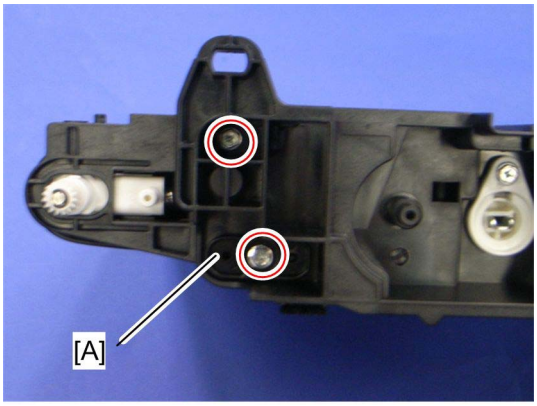
d027r545

7. Guide plate [A] (as seen from the right side of the machine) (🔩 x 2)



d027r545a

8. Remove the two screws and then the rear holder bracket [A] (as seen from the rear).



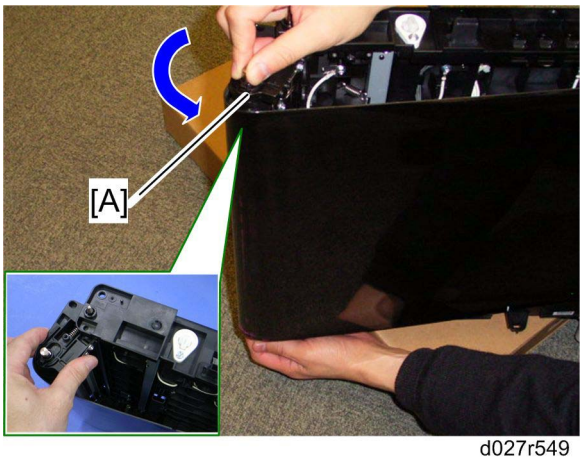
d027r140

9. Remove the two screws and then the front holder bracket [A] (as seen from the front).



b222r548

10. Put the front side of the image transfer belt unit on a corner of the table or a box as shown.



d027r549

11. Pull the tension roller [A] as shown.



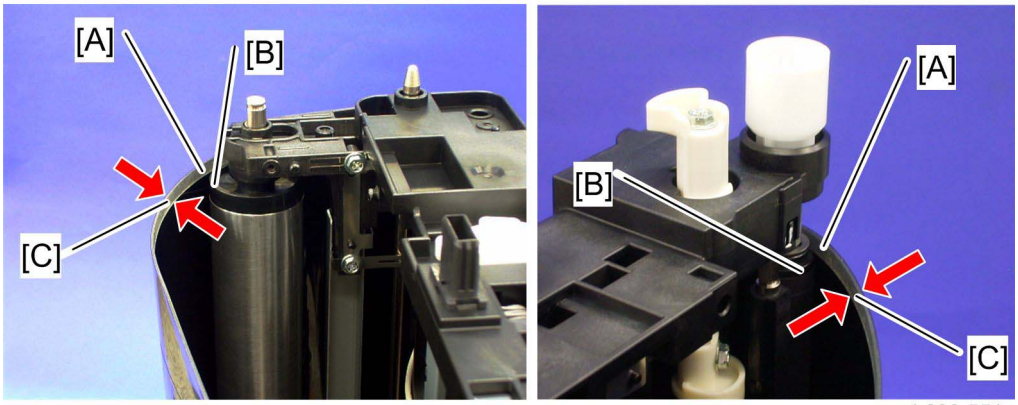
d027r550

12. Image transfer belt [A]

http://www.manuals4you.com

When reinstalling the image transfer belt

- Clean all rollers with dry cloth before installing the image transfer belt.

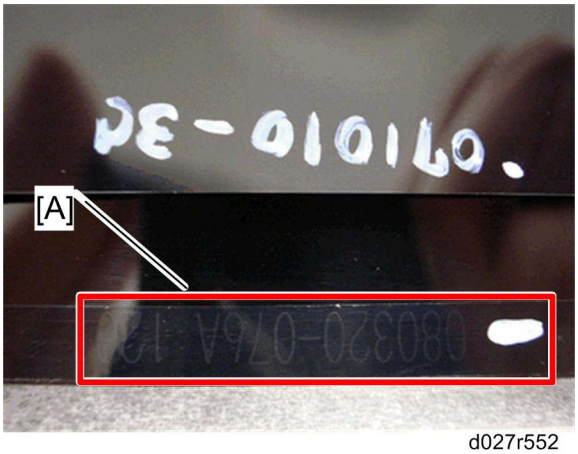


b222r551

- There is a rim [A] at each edge of the transfer belt. The ends of all the rollers ([B] for example) in the transfer belt unit must be between the two rims.

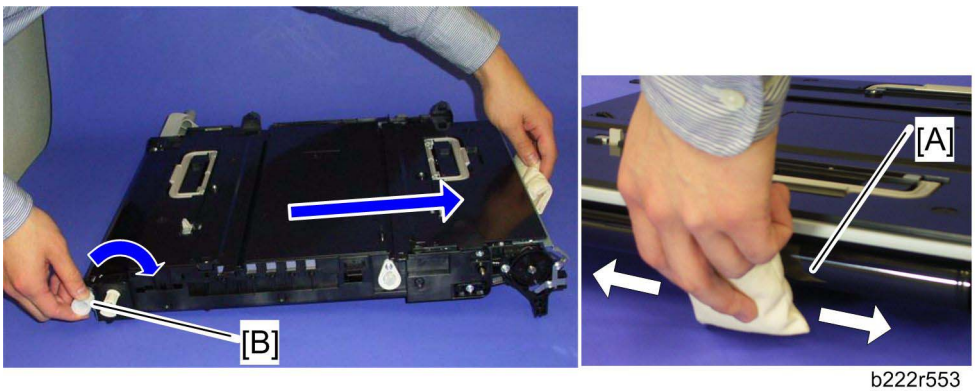
Note

  - There are two rims (width [C]: about 5 mm) on the underside of the front and rear edges of the image transfer belt.



d027r552

- This belt must be installed the correct way around. When you reinstall the image transfer belt unit, install it with the number [A] on the belt at the rear side of the unit.



b222r553

- Put "Lubricant Powder" (B132 9700) on the surface of the image transfer belt [A], while you turn the drive gear [B] at a constant speed, as shown. (The straight arrow in the picture shows belt movement direction.) Lubricant powder prevents the image transfer cleaning blade from turning up.

Note

  - Do not put the lubricant powder at the right side of the image transfer belt unit (the above picture is taken from the rear). Otherwise, lubricant powder may damage the encoder sensor.

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.9 PAPER TRANSFER

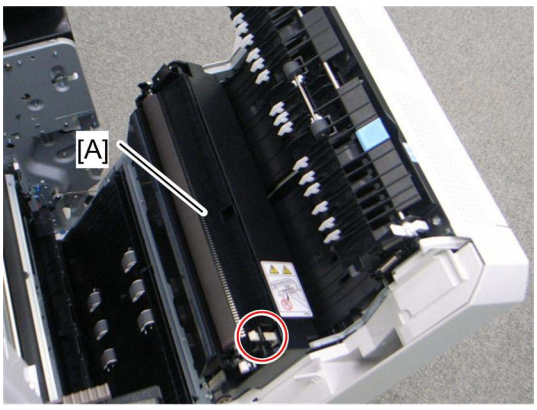
4.9.1 PAPER TRANSFER ROLLER UNIT

If you will install a new paper transfer unit, then set SP 3902-016 to 1.

Note

- If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the paper transfer unit automatically, after you turn the power on again.

1. Open the right door.



d027r141

2. Release the white hook.
3. Paper transfer roller unit [A]

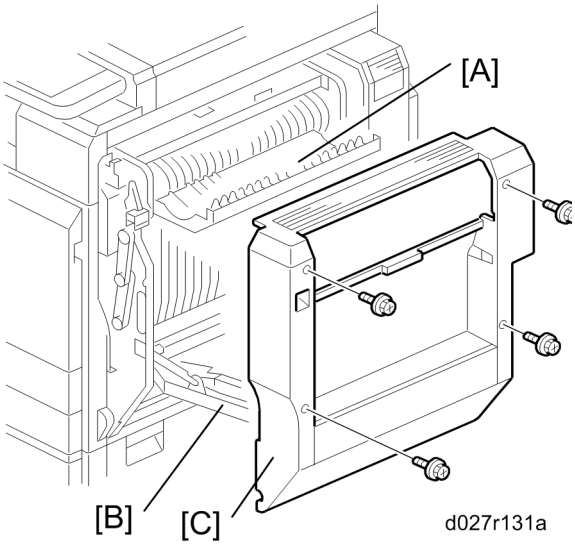
4.9.2 PAPER TRANSFER UNIT

If you will install a new paper transfer unit, then set SP3-902-016 to 1.

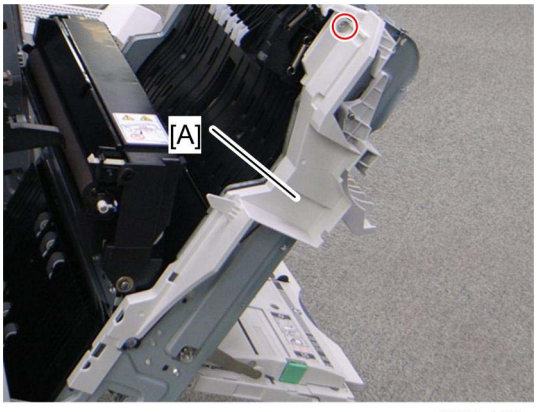
Note

- If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the paper transfer unit automatically, after you turn the power on again.

1. Turn off the main power switch.



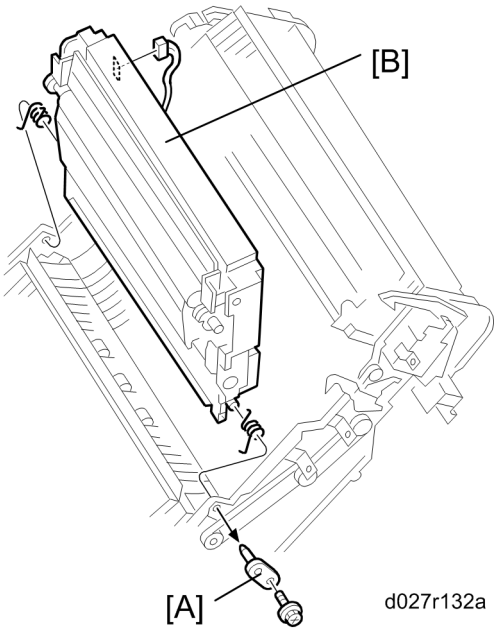
1. Open the duplex door [A].
2. Open the by-pass tray [B]
3. Right door cover [C] (x 4)
4. Open the right door.



5. Right door inner cover [A] (x 1)

http://www.manuals4you.com

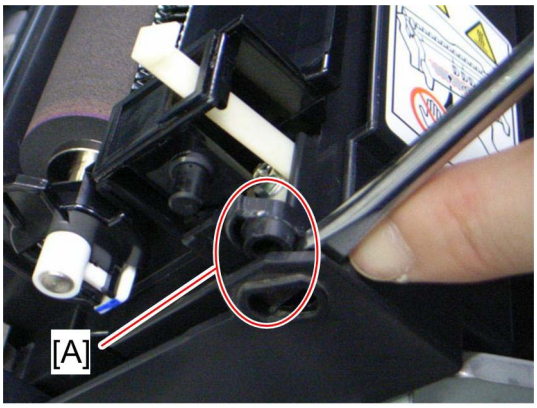
Paper Transfer



1. Pivot bracket [A] (☞ x 1)
2. Paper transfer unit [B] (☞ x 1, 2 springs)

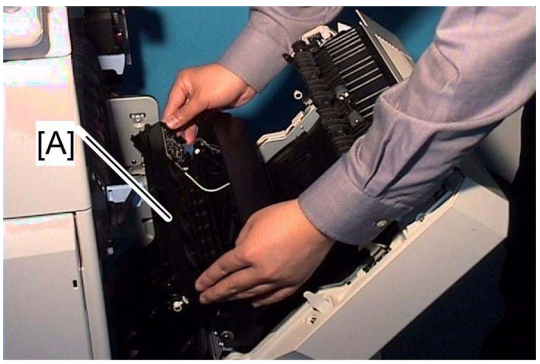
4.9.3 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD - DISCHARGE PLATE

1. Open the right door.



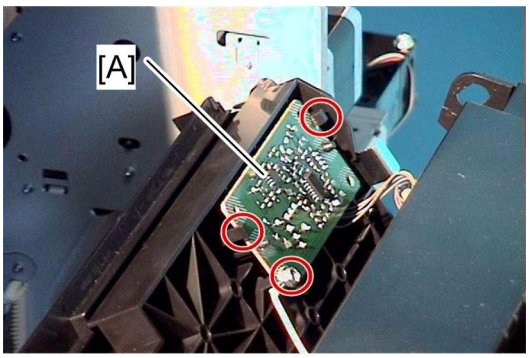
d027r144

2. Release the front [A] and rear pivots of the paper transfer roller case.



d027r557

3. Paper transfer roller case [A]



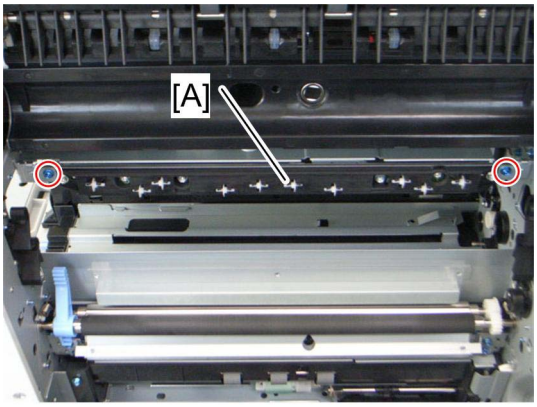
d027r558

4. High voltage supply board [A] (x 3, x 1, ground cable x 1)

http://www.manuals4you.com

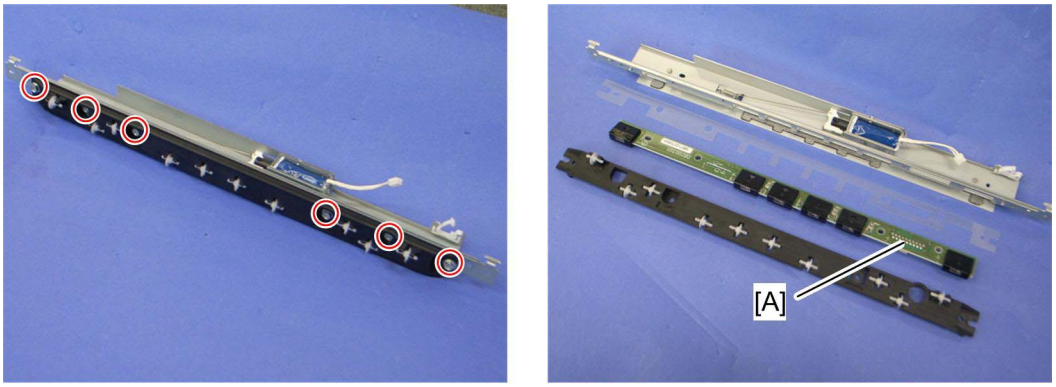
4.9.4 ID SENSOR BOARD

1. K PCU (☛ p.4-49 "PCU")
2. Open the right door.
3. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-101 "Fusing Unit")
4. Image transfer belt unit (☛ p.4-63 "Image Transfer Belt Unit")



d027r145

5. ID sensor unit [A] (x 2, x 2, x 1)

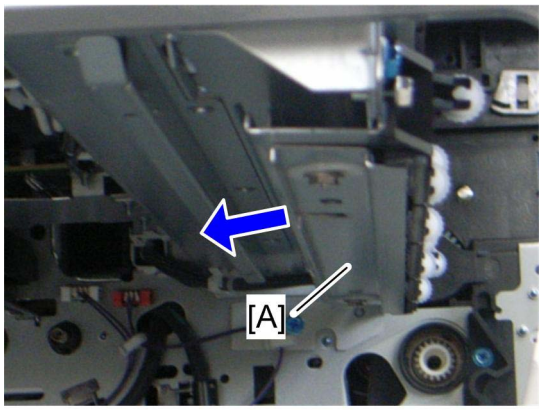


d027r146

6. ID sensor board [A] (x 6)

Cleaning for ID sensors

ID sensors require a cleaning procedure every EM. Do the following steps for ID sensor cleaning.



d027r147

1. K PCU (☛ p.4-49 "PCU")
2. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-101 "Fusing Unit")
3. Image transfer belt unit (☛ p.4-63 "Image Transfer Belt Unit")
4. Slide the ID sensor shutter [A] to the left side.
5. Clean the ID sensors keeping the ID sensor shutter to the left.

After installing a new ID sensor unit/board

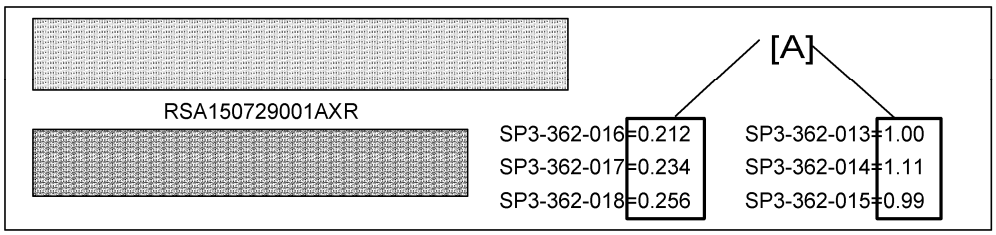
Do the following adjustment after installing a new ID sensor unit/board.

1. Plug in and turn on the main power switch of the copier.
2. Enter the SP mode.
3. Input all correction coefficients [A] for the ID sensor with the SP modes referring to the barcode sheet provided with the new ID sensor unit/board.

Note

- For example, input "**1.00**" with SP3-362-013.

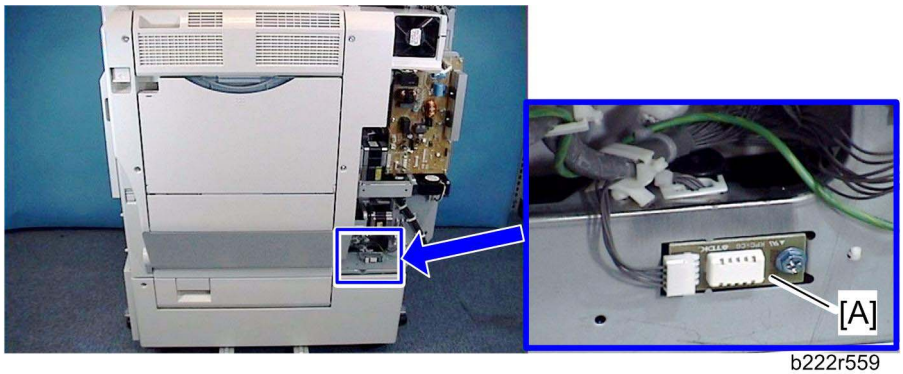
4. Exit the SP mode.



http://www.manuals4you.com

4.9.5 TEMPERATURE AND HUMIDITY SENSOR

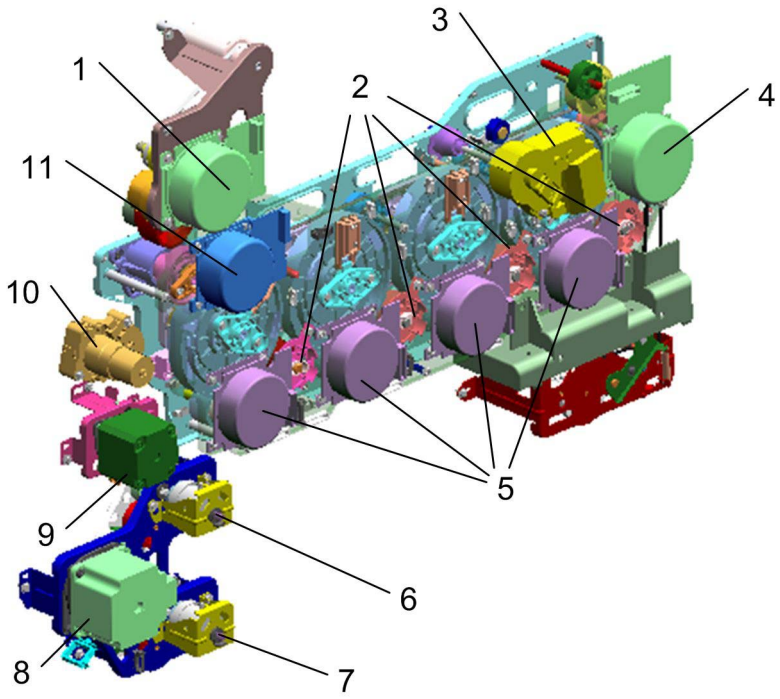
1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")



b222r559

3. Temperature and humidity sensor [A] (🔩 x 1, 🖐 x 1)

4.10 DRIVE UNIT



The drawing above shows the drive unit layout.

1. Fusing/paper exit motor 2. Development clutches 3. Image transfer belt contact motor 4. Toner transport motor 5. Drum/Development drive motors 6. Paper feed clutch – Tray 1	7. Paper feed clutch – Tray 2 8. Paper feed motor 9. Registration motor 10. Paper transfer contact motor 11. ITB drive motor

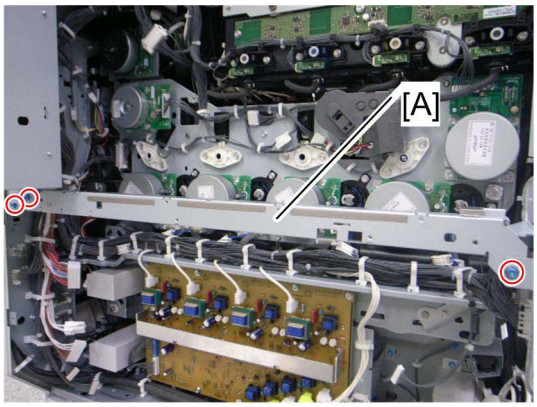
There are some motors and clutches that are not shown in the above drawing:

▪ Tray lift motor 1 and 2 ▪ Duplex inverter motor ▪ Duplex/By-pass Motor	▪ Junction gate 1 motor ▪ Shutter motor ▪ By-pass clutch

http://www.manuals4you.com

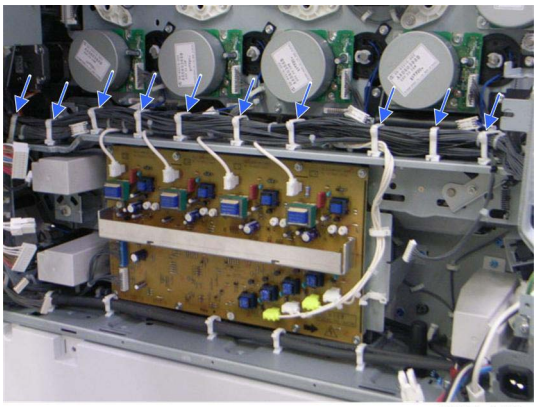
4.10.1 GEAR UNIT

1. All PCU's
2. Image transfer belt unit (☛ p.4-63 "Image Transfer Belt Unit")
3. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
4. Controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box")
5. Third duct (☛ p.4-56 "Third Duct Fan")
6. Left cover (☛ p.4-19 "Left Cover")
7. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-158 "PSU")



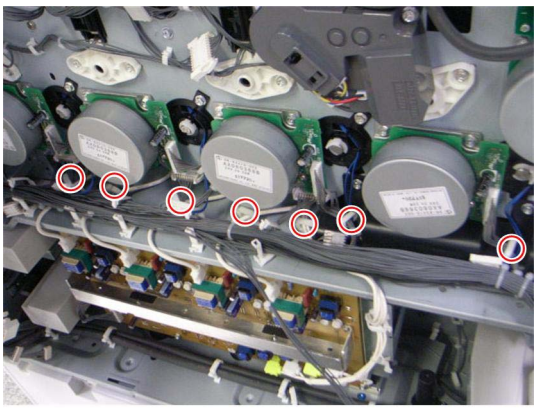
d027r148

8. Remove the rear stay [A] (x 3).



d027r149

9. Remove ten clamps (blue arrows).



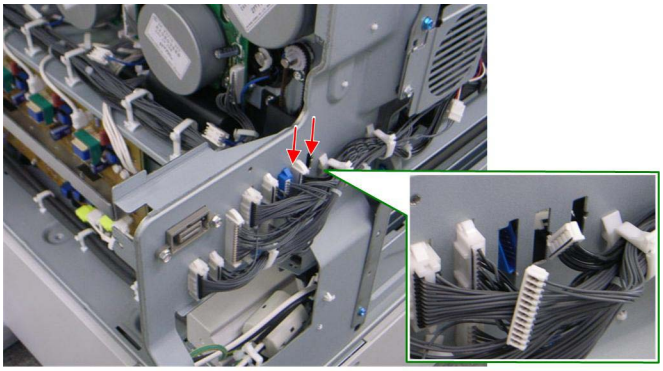
d027r150

10. Release seven clamps and turn each harness aside.



d027r151

11. Disconnect four connectors (red arrows).

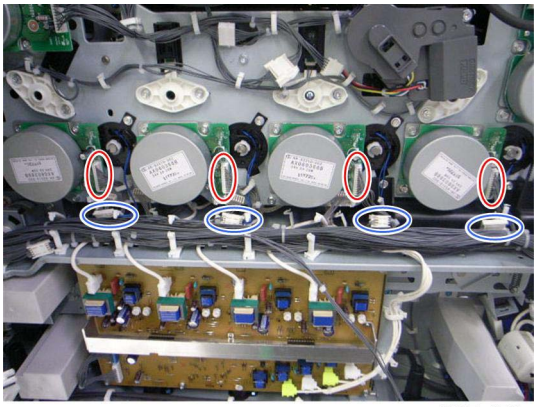


d027r152

12. Disconnect two connectors (red arrows) and put these harnesses inside the machine.

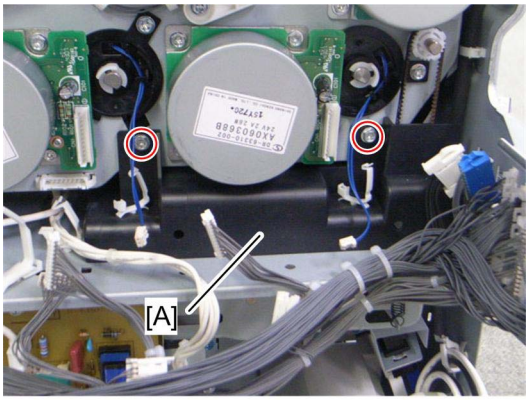
http://www.manuals4you.com

Drive Unit



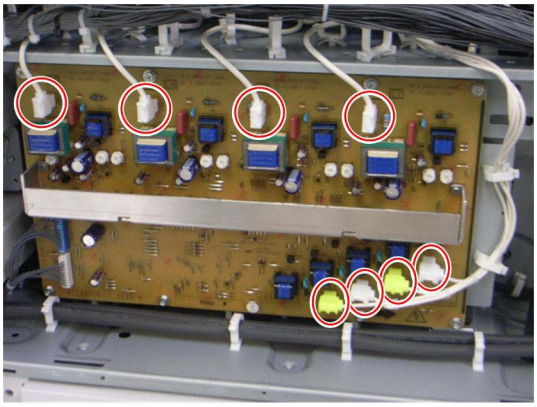
d027r153

13. Disconnect each connector (red circles) from the drum/development drive motors (x 1, x 1 each).
14. Disconnect each connector (blue circles) from the development clutches (x 1 each).



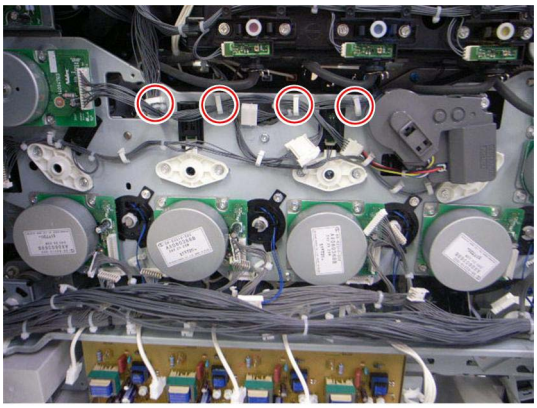
d027r155

15. Cover [A] (x 2)



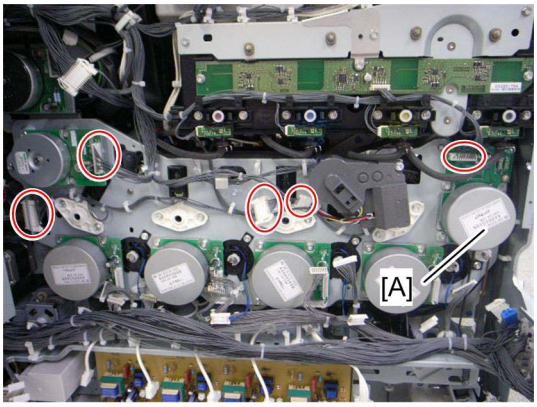
d027r156

16. Disconnect eight connectors from the high voltage supply board (x 8, x 2).



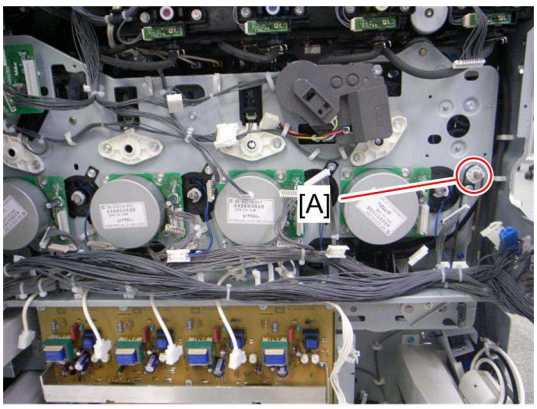
d027r157b

17. Release four clamps (red circles) and turn the harnesses aside.



d027r158

18. Disconnect five connectors (red circles) (☞ x 5).
19. Toner transport motor [A] (☞ x 3)

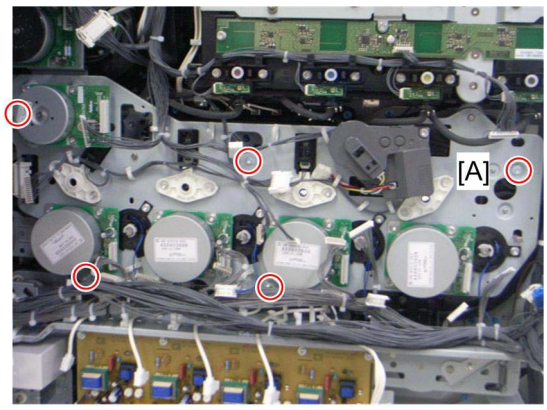


d027r159

20. Pulley [A] (timing belt)

http://www.manuals4you.com

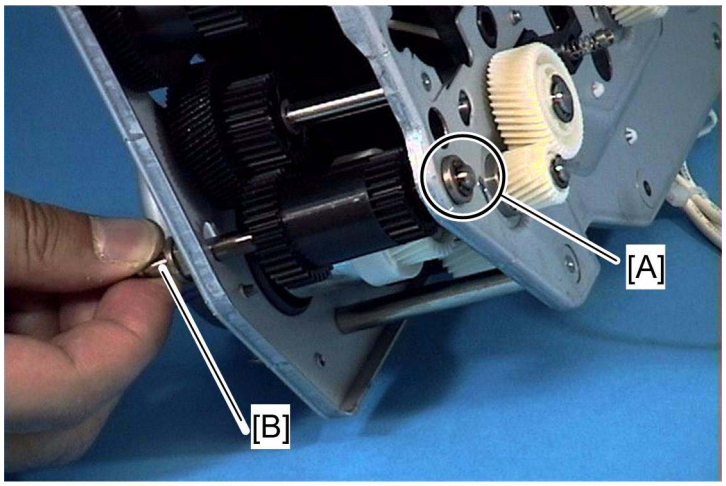
Drive Unit



d027r160a

21. Gear unit [A] (☞ x 8)

When installing the drive unit



b222r573

Make sure that the bushing [A] is fully set in the frame of the gear unit before installing the timing belt and pulley to the shaft [B].

Adjustment after replacing the gear unit

Do the following procedures after replacing the gear unit.

1. Turn on the main power switch.
2. Enter "Copy SP" in the SP mode.
3. Do “Amplitude Control" with SP1-902-001.
4. Check the result of the Amplitude Control with SP1-902-002.
   0: Success, 1: Failure due to no sampling data,
   2: Failure due to insufficient number of pattern detections
   When the result of this adjustment is "1" or "2":
   - Check that all the PCUs are correctly set and that the image transfer belt unit is correctly set.

- Do "Amplitude Control " again after checking the PCUs and image transfer belt unit.

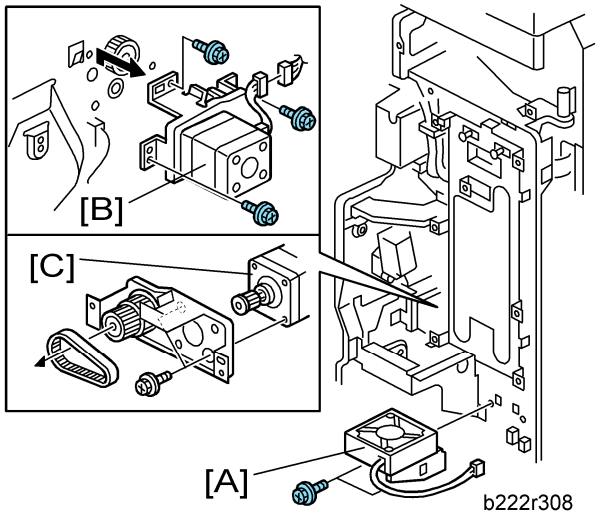
When the result is still "1" or "2" after checking the PCUs and image transfer belt unit:

- Check that the gear unit is installed correctly.

5. Exit the SP mode.

4.10.2 REGISTRATION MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Ventilation duct (☛ p.4-158 "PSU")
4. Turn the harnesses aside (x 5)

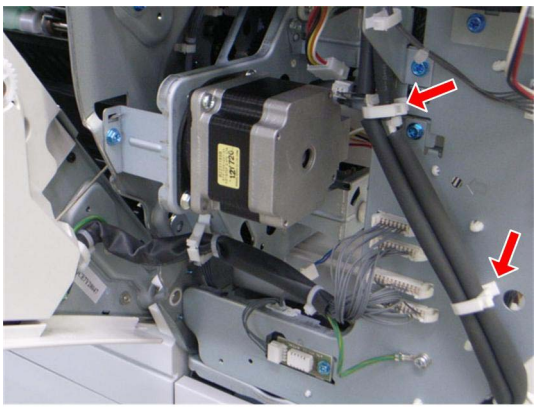


5. Fusing power supply board fan bracket [A] (x 2, x 1)
6. Registration motor assembly [B] (x 3, x 1)
7. Registration motor [C] (x 2, timing belt)

http://www.manuals4you.com

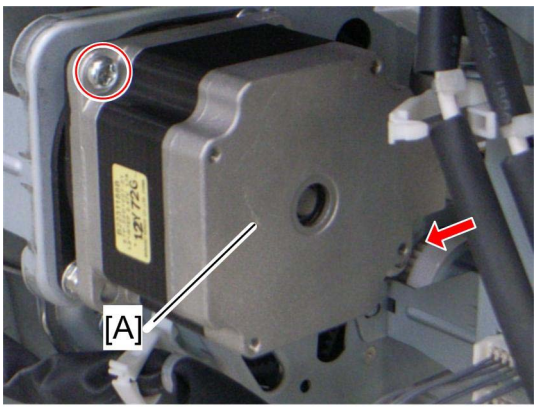
4.10.3 PAPER FEED MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")



d027r161

3. Release the two clamps (x 2)

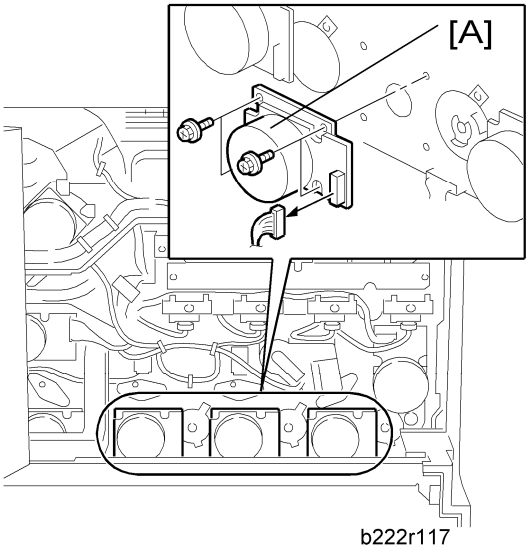


d027r162a

4. Paper feed motor [A] (x 1, x 2, timing belt)

4.10.4 DRUM/DEVELOPMENT MOTORS FOR M, C, AND Y

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-158 "PSU")
3. Open the controller box.



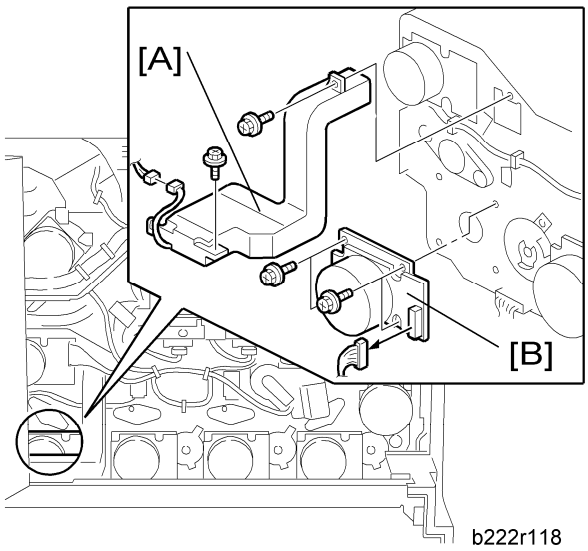
b222r117

4. Drum/Development motors (three motors, one each for MCY) [A] (x 4, x 1 each)

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.10.5 DRUM/DEVELOPMENT MOTOR-K

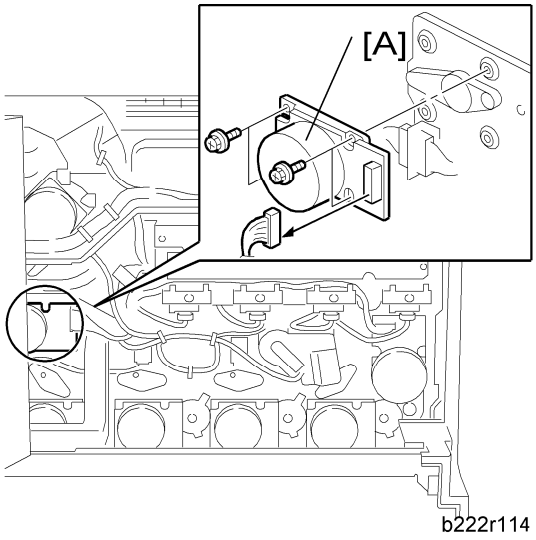
1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-158 "PSU")
3. Controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box")



4. Third duct [A] (x 2, x 1)
5. Drum/Development motor-K [B] (x 4, x 1)

4.10.6 ITB DRIVE MOTOR

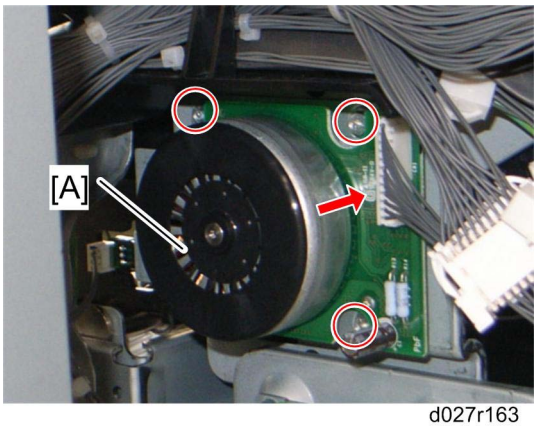
1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box")



3. ITB drive motor [A] (x 4, x 1)

4.10.7 FUSING/PAPER EXIT MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box")

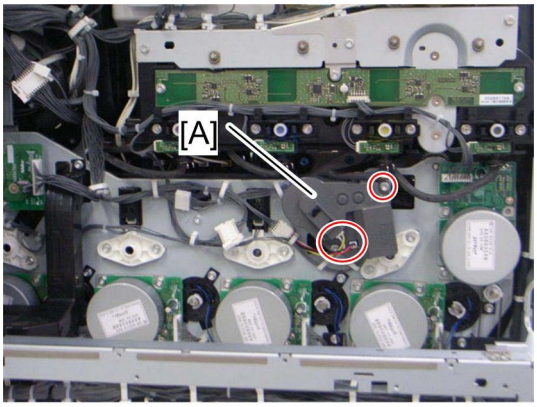


3. Fusing/paper exit motor [A] (x 3, x 1)

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.10.8 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT CONTACT MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box")

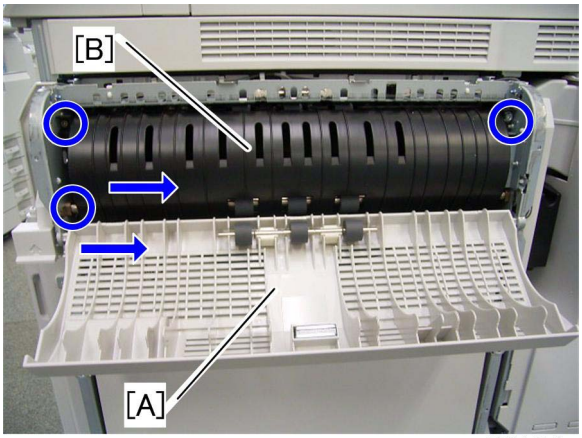


d027r164

3. Transfer belt contact motor [A] (x 2, x 2)

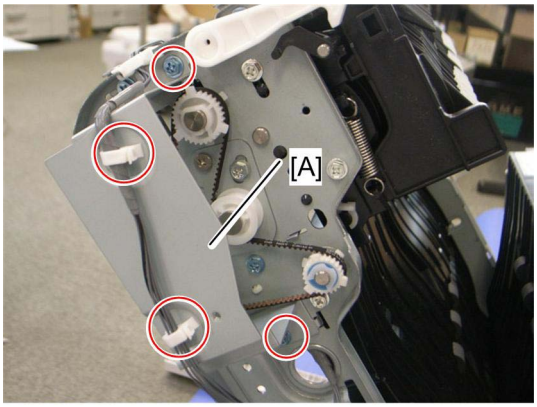
4.10.9 DUPLEX INVERTER MOTOR

1. Open the right door.
2. Right door cover (☛ p.4-136 "By-Pass Bottom Tray")



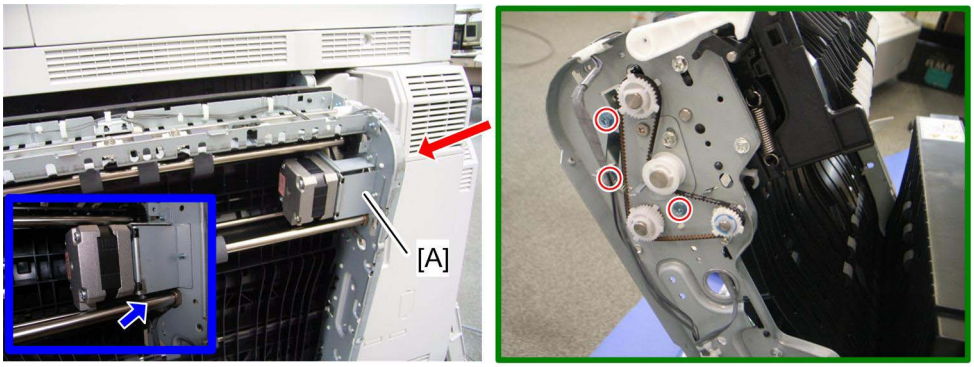
d027r659

3. Duplex door [A] (2 hooks)
4. Duplex guide plate [B] (x 3, 2 hooks)



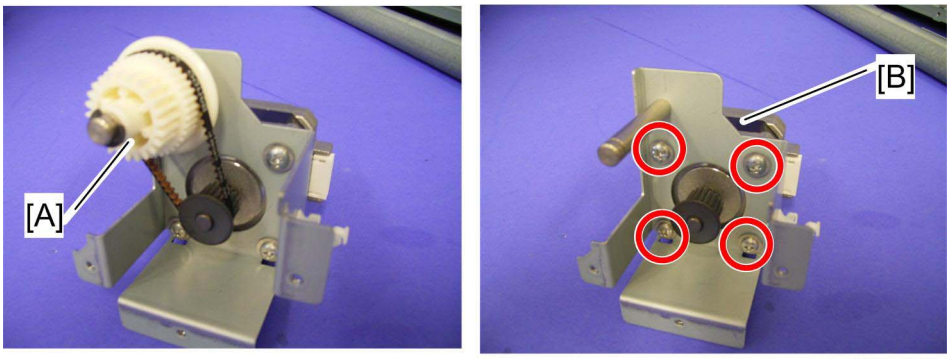
d027r166

5. Duplex inverter motor bracket cover [A] (x 2, x 2)



d027r660b

6. Duplex inverter motor bracket [A] (x 3, x 1, x 1)



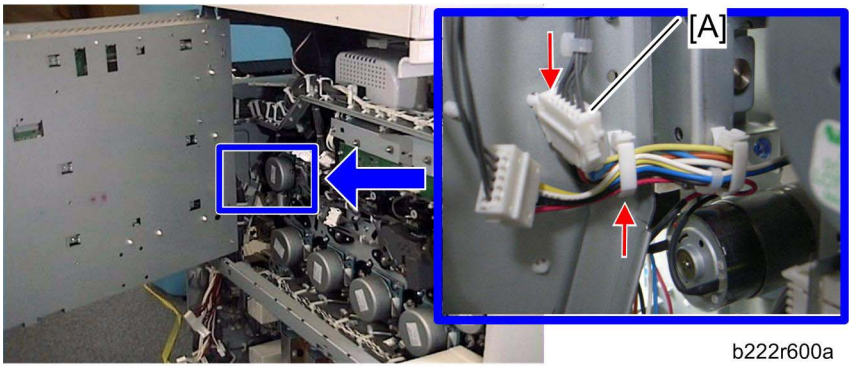
d027r661

7. Gear [A] (x 1, belt x 1)
8. Duplex inverter motor [B] (x 4)

http://www.manuals4you.com

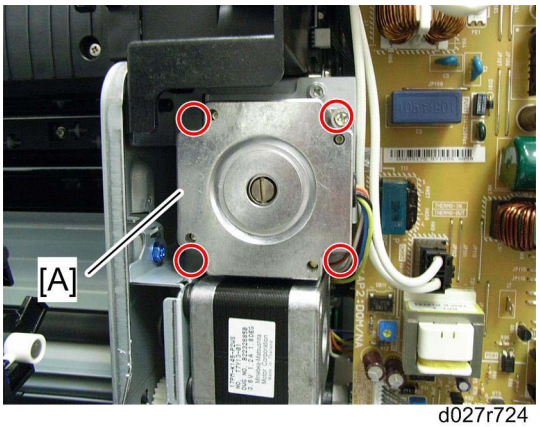
4.10.10 PRESSURE ROLLER CONTACT MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box")



b222r600a

4. Disconnect the connector (🔌 x 1).

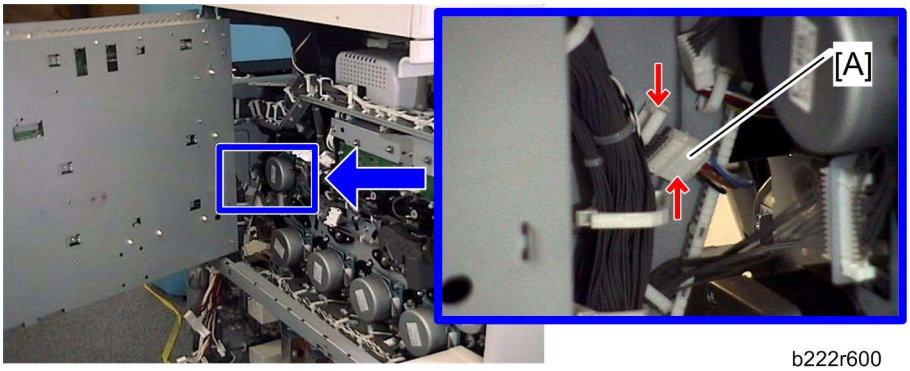


d027r724

5. Pressure roller contact motor [A] (🔩 x 4)

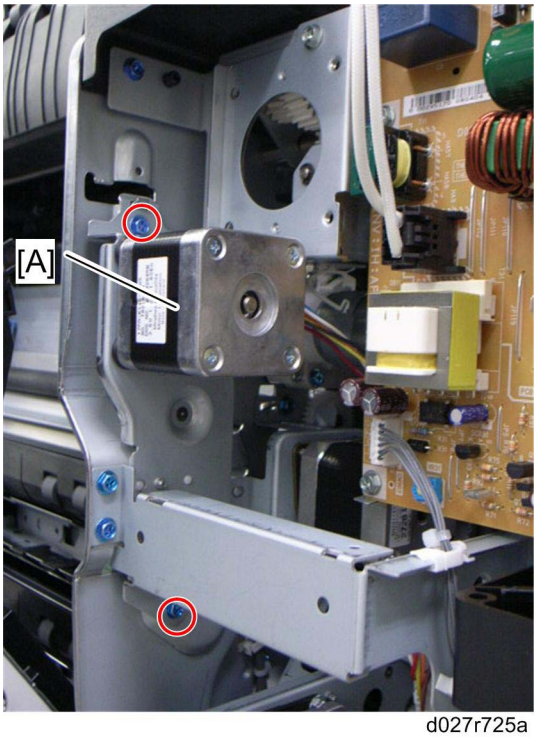
4.10.11 DUPLEX/BY-PASS MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box").
4. Pressure roller contact motor (☛ p.4-89 "Pressure Roller Contact Motor")



b222r600

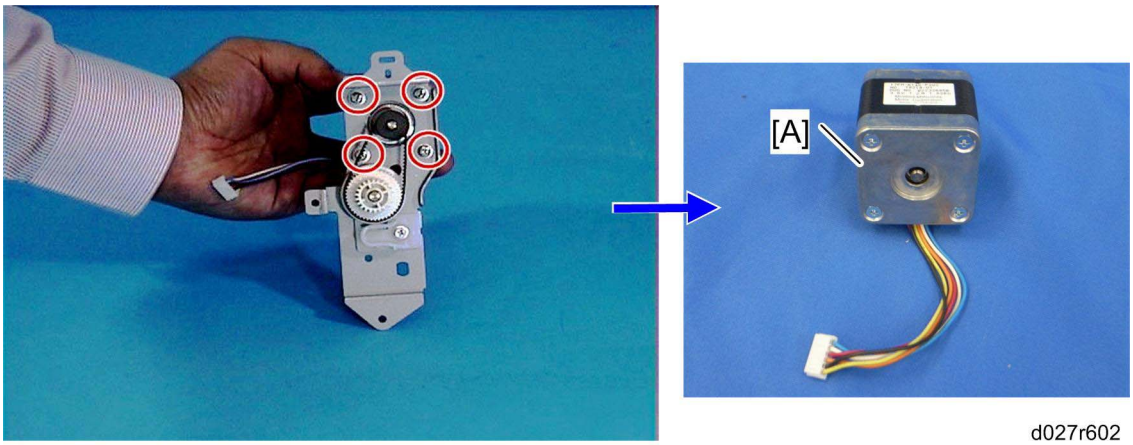
5. Disconnect the connector [A] (x 1, x 1)



d027r725a

6. Duplex/by-pass motor bracket [A] (x 2)

http://www.manuals4you.com

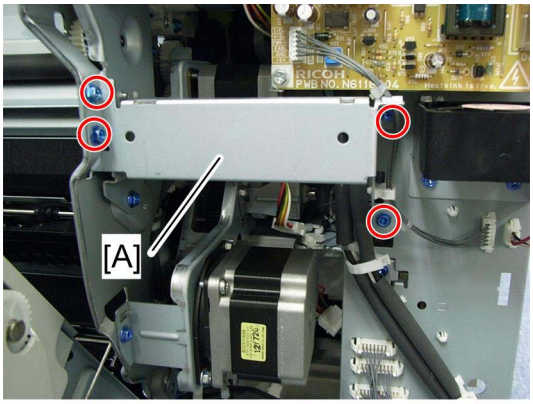


d027r602

7. Duplex/by-pass motor [A] (x 4, belt x 1)

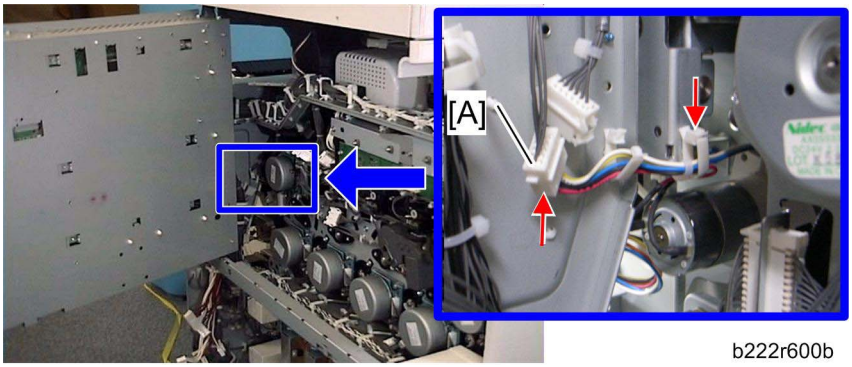
4.10.12 PAPER TRANSFER CONTACT MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box")



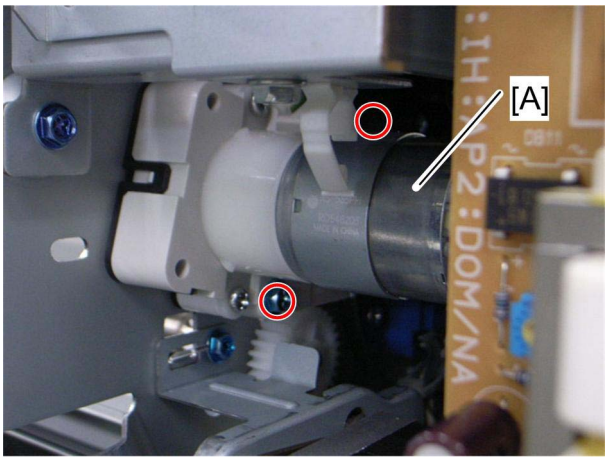
d027r723

4. Stay [A] (x 4)
5. Pressure roller contact motor (☛ p.4-89 "Pressure Roller Contact Motor")
6. Duplex/by-pass motor bracket (☛ p.4-90 "Duplex/By-pass Motor")



b222r600b

7. Disconnect the connector [A] (☞ x 1)

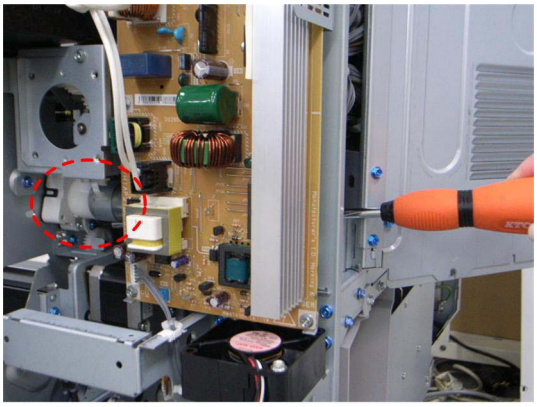


d027r726

8. Paper transfer contact motor [A] (☞ x 2)

NOTE:

The picture below shows how to use the screwdriver to remove the screws of the paper transfer contact motor.

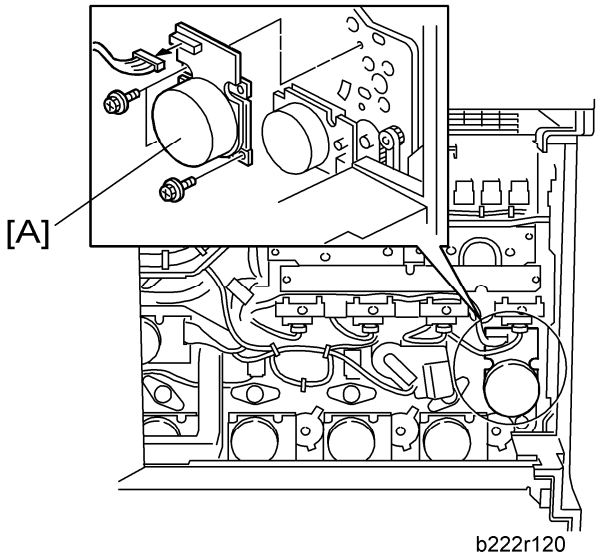


d027r727

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.10.13 TONER TRANSPORT MOTOR

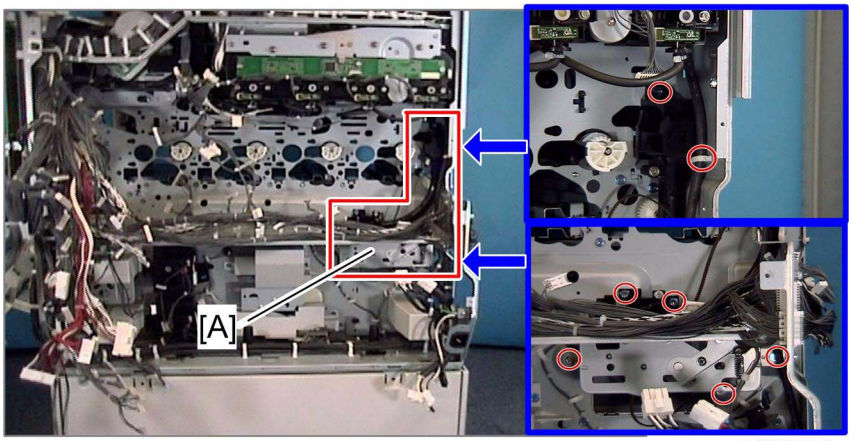
1. Rear cover(☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box")



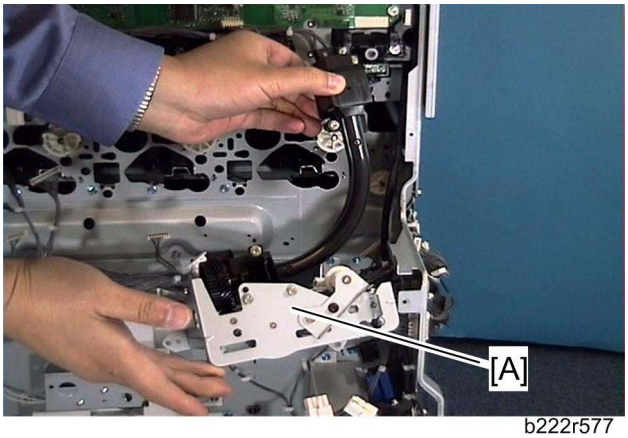
3. Toner transport motor [A] (x 3, x 1)

4.10.14 TONER COLLECTION UNIT

1. Gear Unit (☛ p.4-78 "Gear Unit")



b222r576



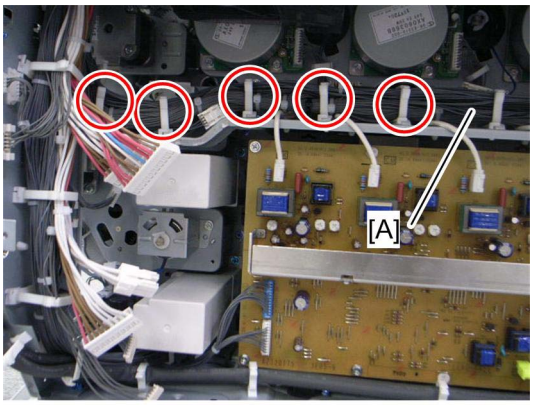
b222r577

2. Toner collection unit [A] (x 6, x 1)

http://www.manuals4you.com

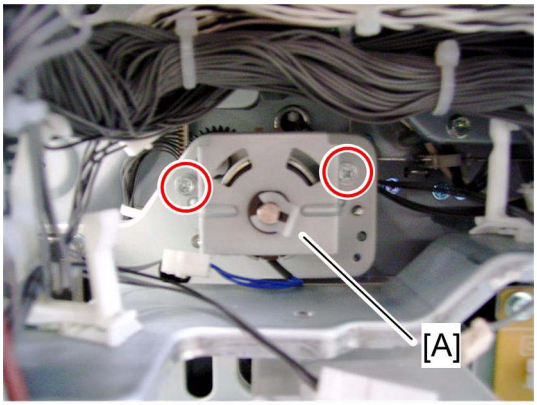
4.10.15 PAPER FEED CLUTCHES

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-158 "PSU")



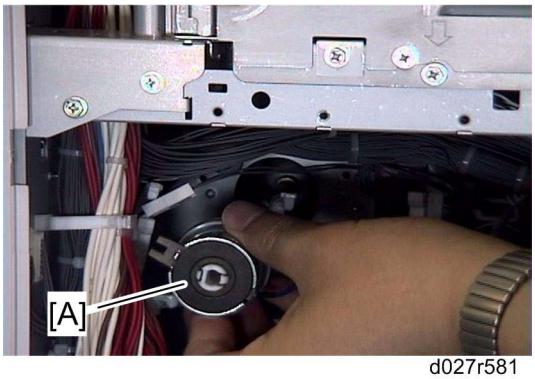
d027r578

3. Release five clamps, and then turn the harness [A] aside.



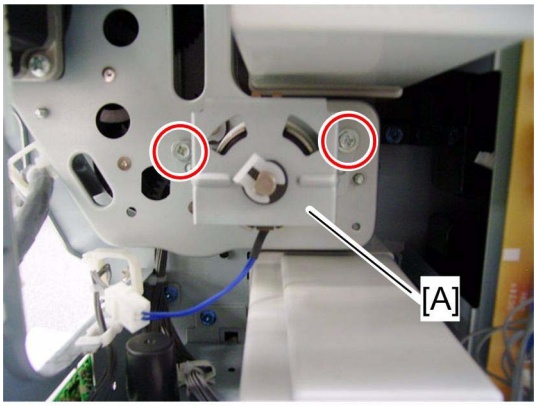
d027r580

4. Paper feed clutch 1 bracket [A] (x 2, x 1, x 1, x 1)



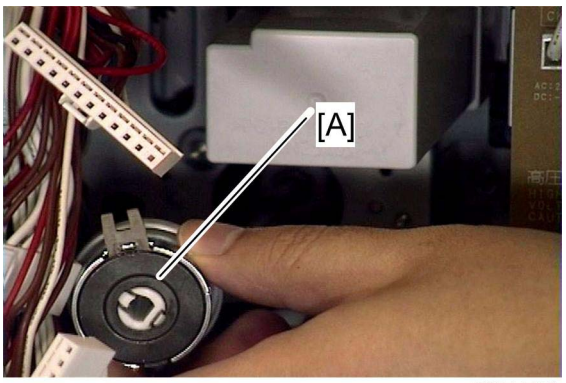
d027r581

5. Paper feed clutch 1 [A]



d027r582

6. Paper feed clutch 2 bracket [A] (x 2, x 1, x 1)



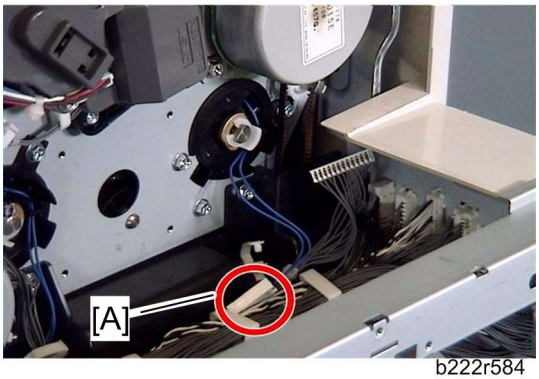
d027r583

7. Paper feed clutch 2 [A]

http://www.manuals4you.com

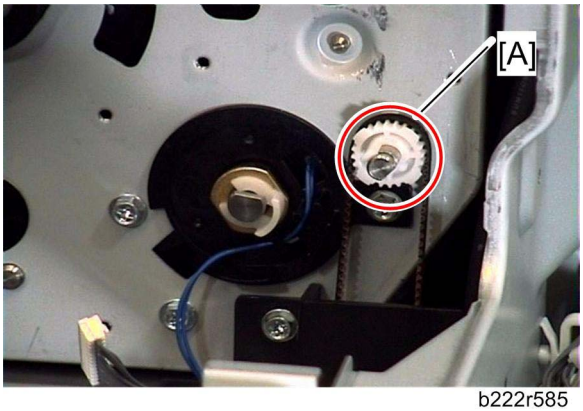
4.10.16 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCH-Y

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-158 "PSU")
3. Open the controller box. (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box").
4. Drum/development motor-Y (☛ p.4-84 "Drum/Development Motors for M, C, and Y")



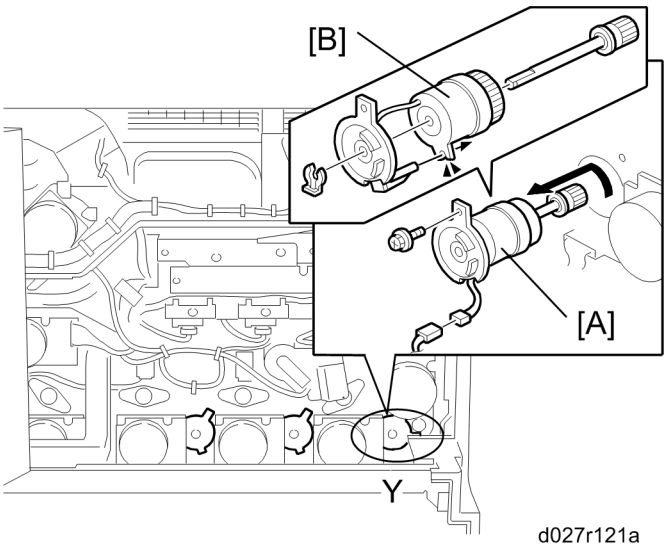
b222r584

5. Disconnect the connector [A] (☜ x 1).



b222r585

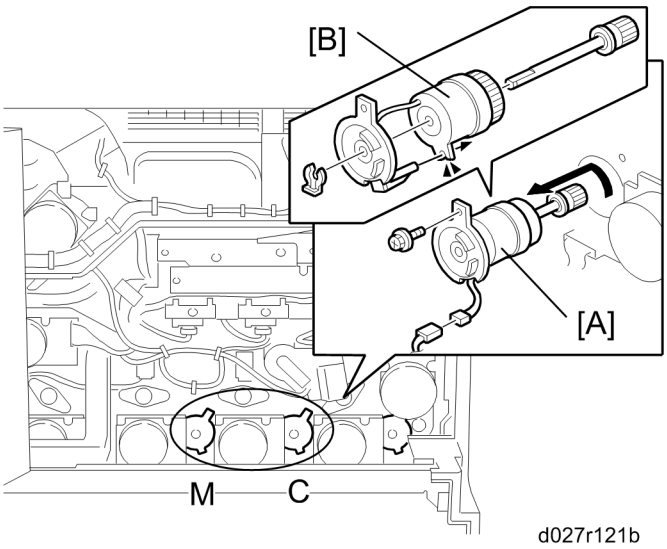
6. Remove the pulley and bushing [A].



7. Turn the development clutch unit [A] counter-clockwise and then pull it out (☞ x 1).
8. Development clutch-Y [B] (☞ x 1)

4.10.17 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCHES FOR M AND C

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-158 "PSU")
3. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box").
4. Drum/development motors for M and C (☛ p.4-84 "Drum/Development Motors for M, C, and Y")
5. Disconnect the connector for each development clutch (☞ x 1).

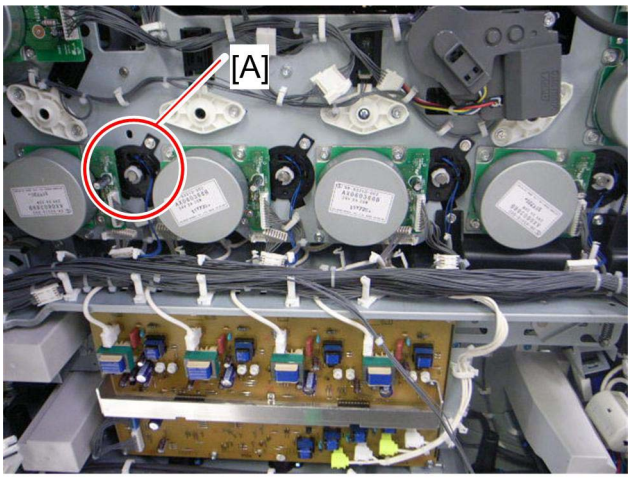


6. Turn the development clutch unit [A] counter-clockwise and then pull it out (☞ x 1).
7. Development clutches for M and C [B] (☞ x 1)

http://www.manuals4you.com

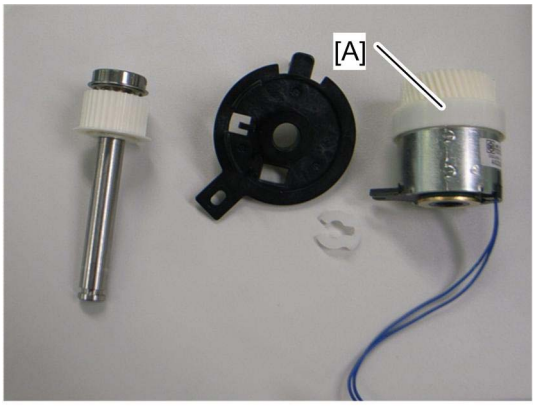
4.10.18 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCH-K

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-158 "PSU")
3. Controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box")
4. Drum/development motor-K (☛ p.4-85 "Drum/Development Motor-K")



d027r586

5. Turn the development clutch unit [A] counter-clockwise and then pull it out (🔩 x 1).



d027r167

6. Development clutch-K [A] (⚙ x 1)

4.11 FUSING

4.11.1 PM PARTS

In the fusing unit, there are many PM parts. Refer to the following list to check the PM parts.

PM Parts	Replacement Procedure
Heating Roller	☛ p.4-102 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing"
-Bearing	☛ p.4-102 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing"
Pressure Roller	☛ p.4-112 "Pressure Roller and Pressure Roller Bearing"
-Bearing	☛ p.4-112 "Pressure Roller and Pressure Roller Bearing"
Heating Roller Thermistor	☛ p.4-115 "Heating Roller Thermistor"
Pressure Roller Thermistor	☛ p.4-117 "Pressure Roller Thermistor"
Lower Cover	
Stripper Plate	☛ p.4-102 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing"
Entrance Guide Plate	☛ p.4-116 "Pressure Roller Thermostat"
Exit Guide Plate	
Fusing Cleaning Felt	☛ p.4-108 "Fusing Cleaning Felt"
Thermopile	☛ p.4-122 "Thermopile"

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.11.2 FUSING UNIT

CAUTION

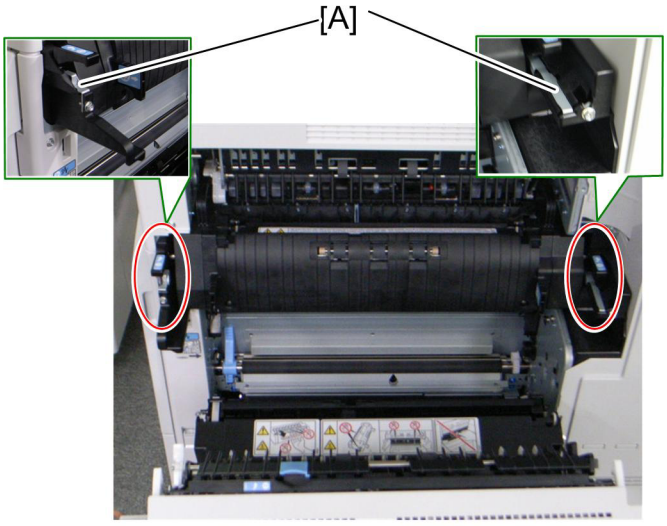
- Turn off the main switch and wait until the fusing unit cools down before beginning any of the procedures in this section. The fusing unit can cause serious burns.

1. If you will install a lot of new parts in the fusing unit (at PM for example), then set SP 3902-014 to "1".

Note

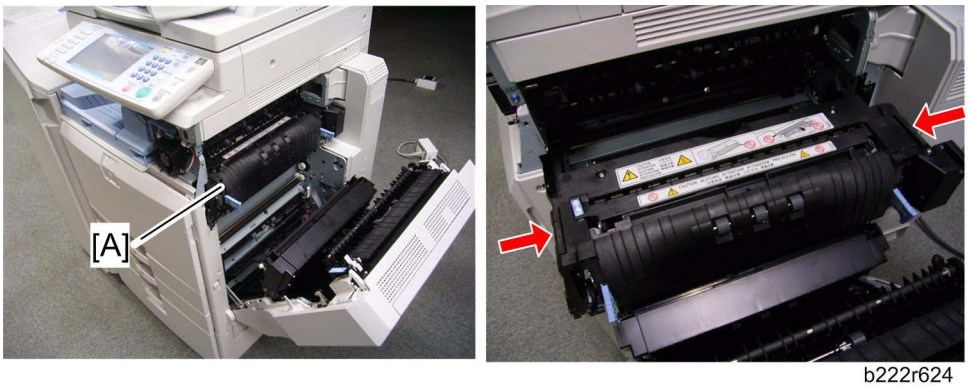
- If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the fusing unit automatically, after you turn the power on again.
  Do not do this if you replace the complete fusing unit. This is because the fusing unit has a new detection mechanism.

2. Turn off the main power switch.
3. Open the right door.



d027r411

4. Loosen the screws to remove the stays [A] (x 1 each).

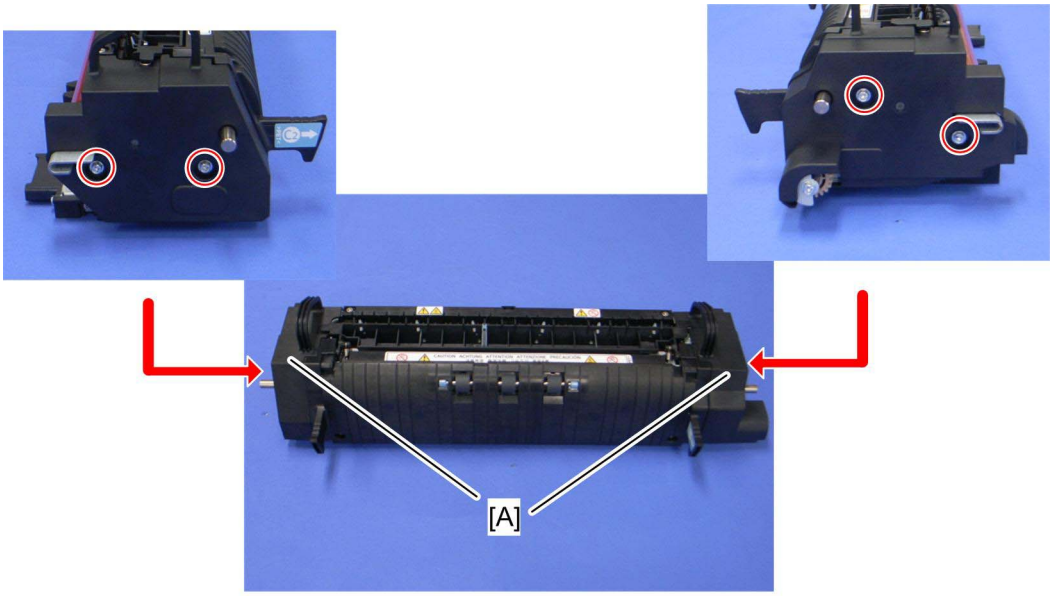


b222r624

5. Pull out the fusing unit [A].

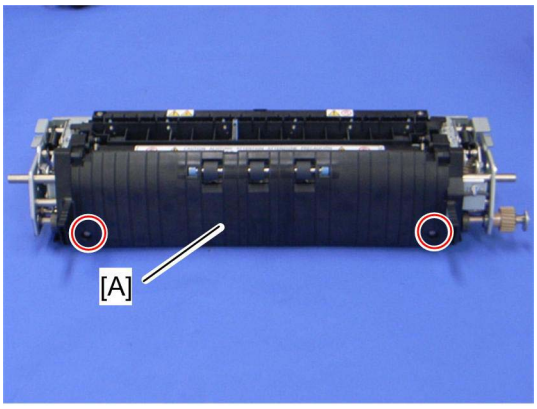
4.11.3 HEATING ROLLER AND HEATING ROLLER BEARING

1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-101 "Fusing Unit")



d027r186

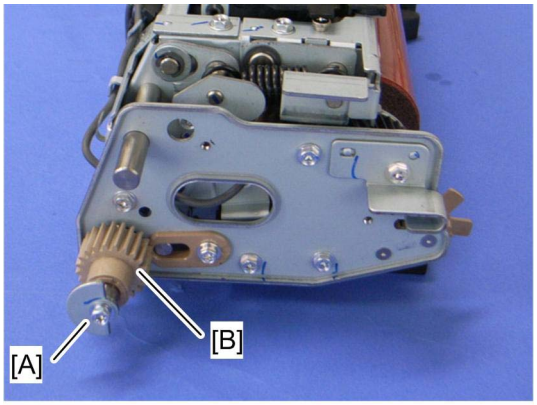
2. Front and rear fusing covers [A] (🔩 x 2 each; Stepped screws)



d027r190

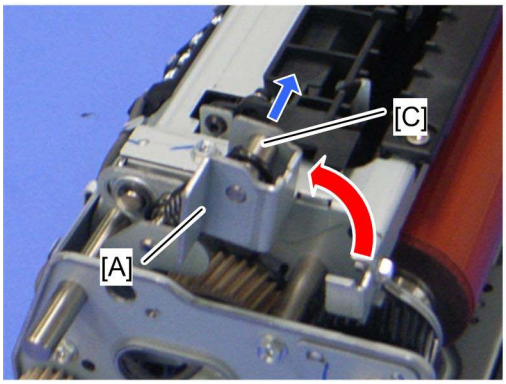
3. Fusing right cover [A] (🔩 x 2; Stepped screws)

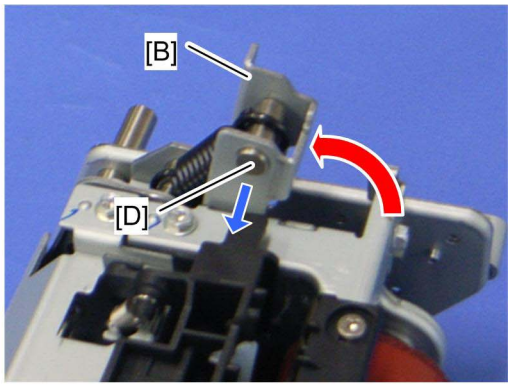
http://www.manuals4you.com



d027r187

4. Pressure roller contact shaft actuator [A] and pressure roller contact shaft gear [B] (🔩 x 1, 𝄐 x 1)



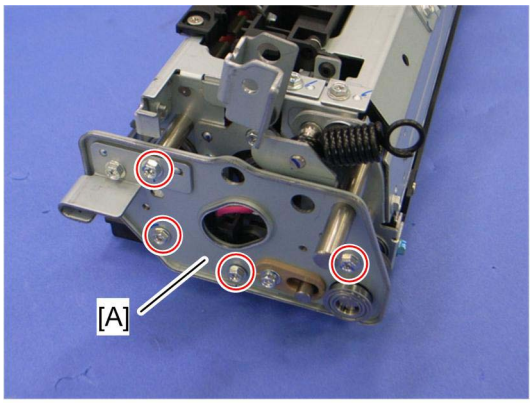


d027r191

5. Turn both pressure levers [A] [B], and pull out pins [C] [D].

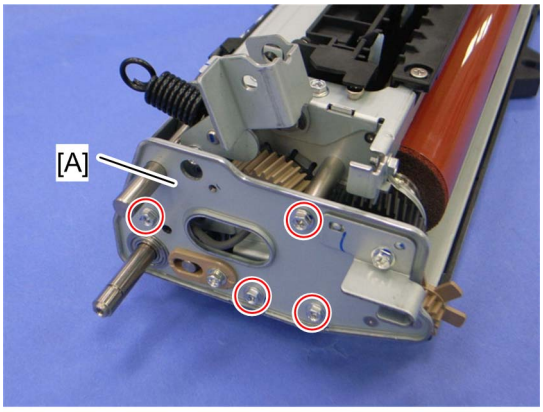
⚠CAUTION

- If the pins [C] [D] are not pulled out in this step, the fusing unit frames may become bent.



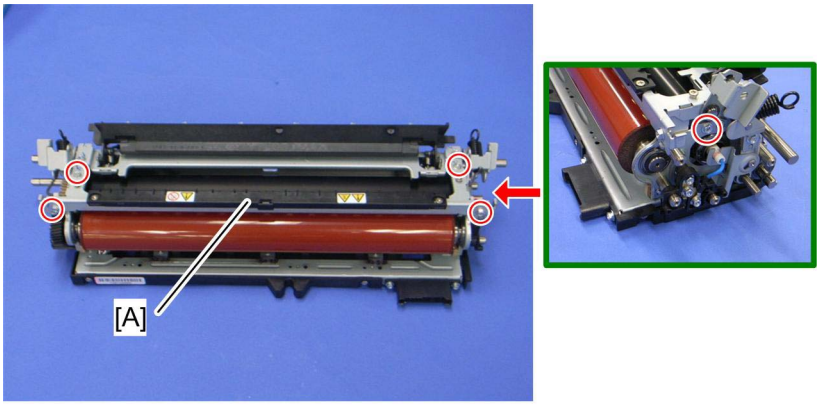
d027r188

6. Front bracket [A] (🔩 x 4)



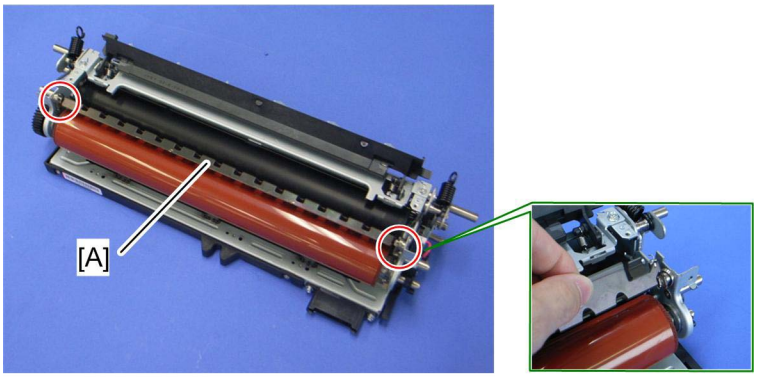
d027r189

7. Rear bracket [A] (x 4)



d027r195

8. Top stay [A] (x 5)

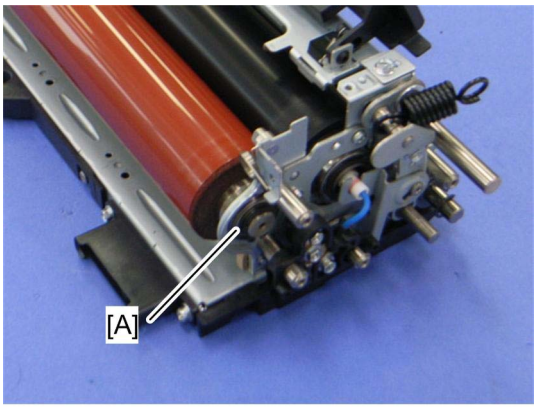


d027r197

9. Stripper plate [A] (two springs)

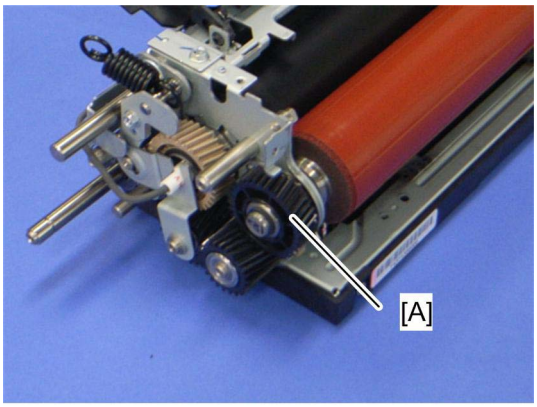
http://www.manuals4you.com

Fusing



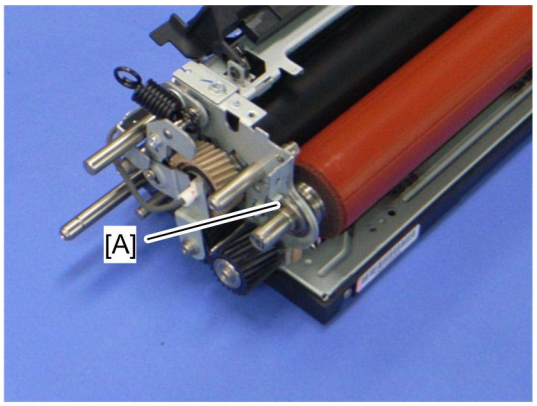
d027r208

10. Heating roller bearing [A] at the front side (℃ x 1)



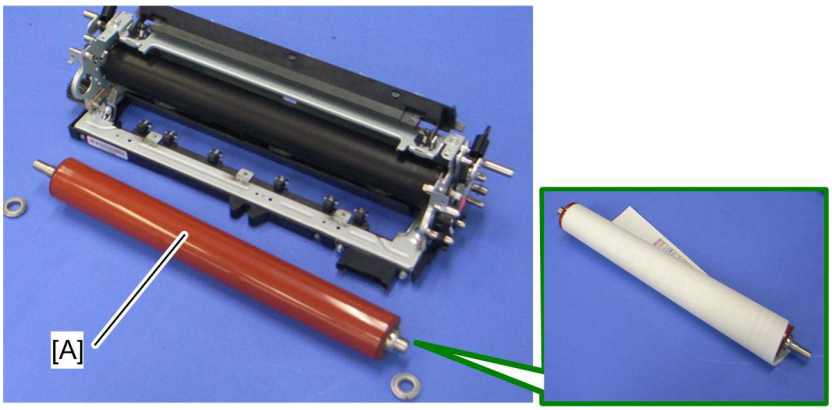
d027r209

11. Heating roller gear [A] (℃ x 1)



d027r217

12. Heating roller bearing [A] at the rear side



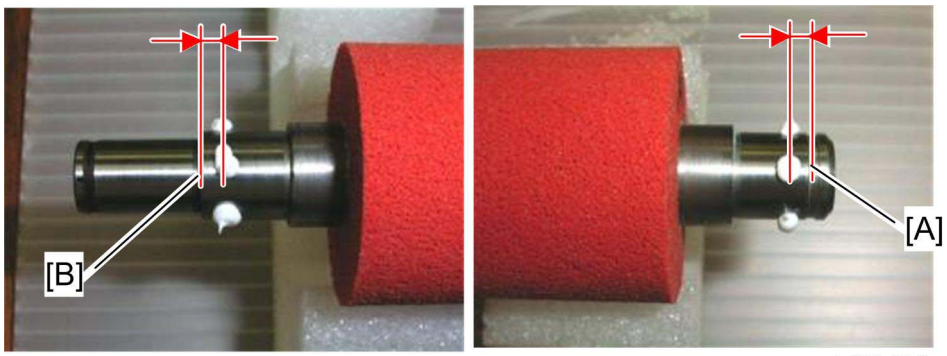
d027r210

13. Heating roller [A]

Note

- The surface of the heating roller is fragile, so the heating roller must be covered with a sheet of paper when it is placed on a table or floor.

When re-installing the heating roller

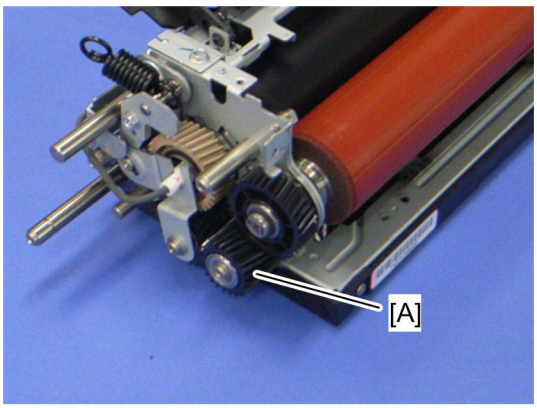


b222r682

1. Apply three spots of "Barrierta S552R" (the diameter of each spot must be about 3 mm in diameter, and approximately 0.1 g in weight) to the front shaft of the heating roller at 2 - 3 mm from the notch [A].
2. Apply three spots of "Barrierta S552R" (the diameter of each spot must be about 3 mm in diameter, and approximately 0.1 g in weight) to the rear shaft of the heating roller at 2 - 3 mm from the edge [B] (rear side of the heating roller).

http://www.manuals4you.com

Fusing



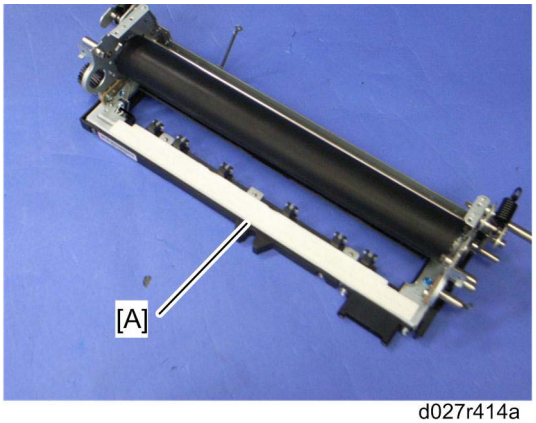
d027r209a

Note

- Do not wipe off the grease of the new idle gear when replacing the idle gear [A]. (The actual idle gear [A] is white.)

4.11.4 FUSING CLEANING FELT

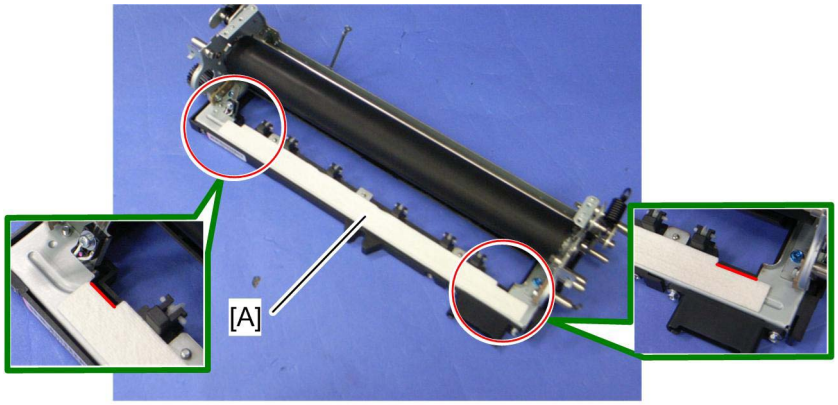
1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-101 "Fusing Unit")
2. Heating roller (☛ p.4-102 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")



d027r414a

3. Remove the fusing cleaning felt [A].

When attaching a new fusing cleaning felt



d027r414

Attach the fusing cleaning felt [A], aligning both edges of the fusing cleaning felt with the red lines on the bottom cover.

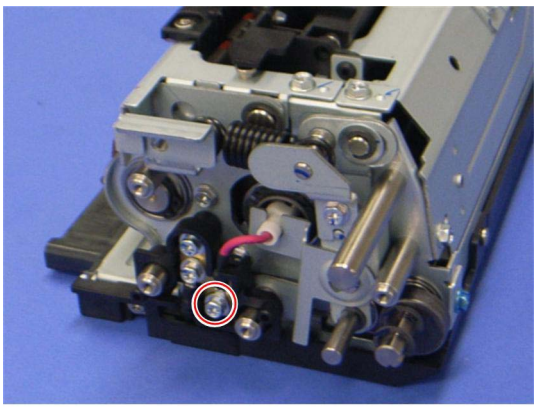
Note

- Make sure that the fusing cleaning felt is correctly attached to the frame. Otherwise, dust from the IH coil unit may fall on the paper in the fusing unit and the output becomes dirty.

http://www.manuals4you.com

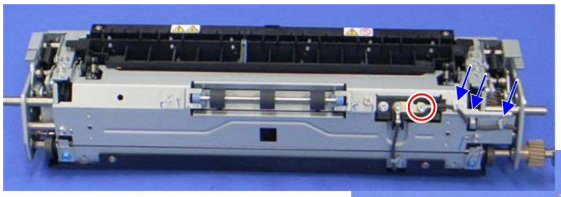
4.11.5 FUSING LAMP

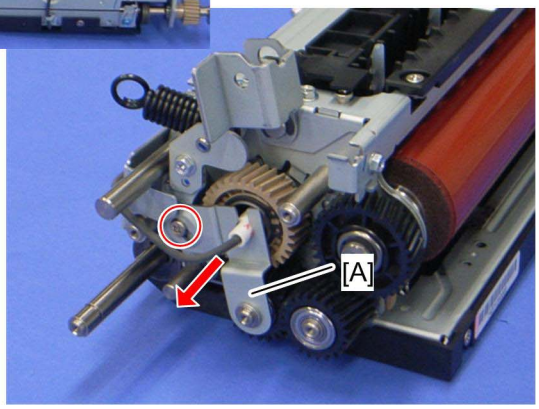
1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-101 "Fusing Unit")
2. Front bracket (☛ p.4-102 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")
3. Rear bracket (☛ p.4-102 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")



d027r192

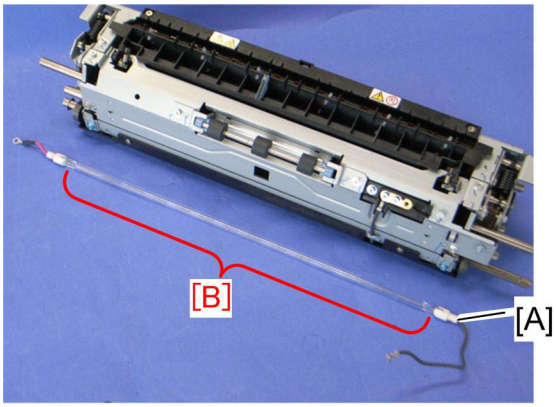
4. Front terminal of the fusing lamp (x 1)





d027r193

5. Rear terminal of the fusing lamp (x 1, x 3)
6. Fusing lamp rear bracket [A] (x 1)



d027r193a

7. Fusing lamp [A]

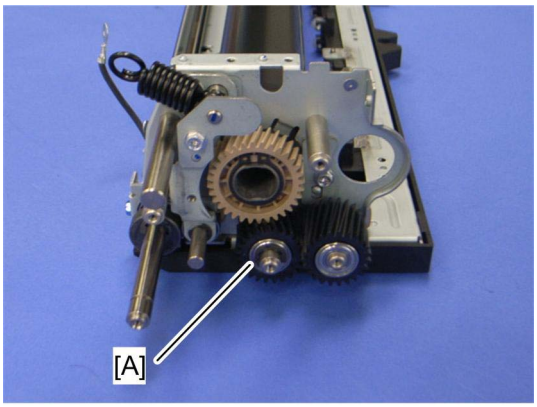
CAUTION

- Remove the fusing lamp without touching the glass part [B].
- Pay attention to the direction of the fusing lamp during the re-installation.

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.11.6 FUSING DRIVE GEAR

1. Heating roller (☛ p.4-102 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")
2. Fusing lamp rear bracket (☛ p.4-109 "Fusing Unit")

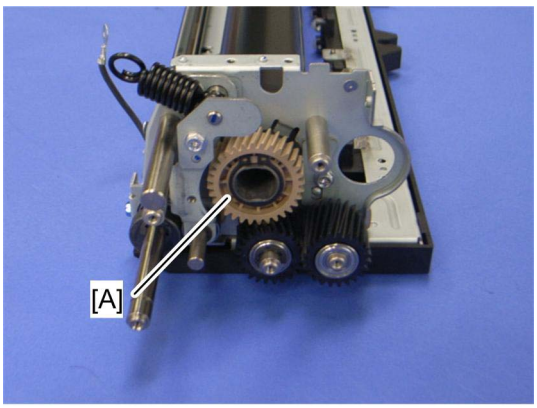


d027r201a

3. Fusing drive gear [A] (ℂ x 1)

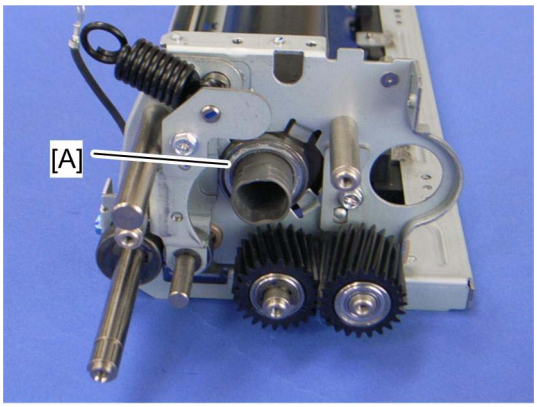
4.11.7 PRESSURE ROLLER AND PRESSURE ROLLER BEARING

1. Heating roller(☛ p.4-102 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")
2. Fusing lamp (☛ p.4-109 "Fusing Lamp")



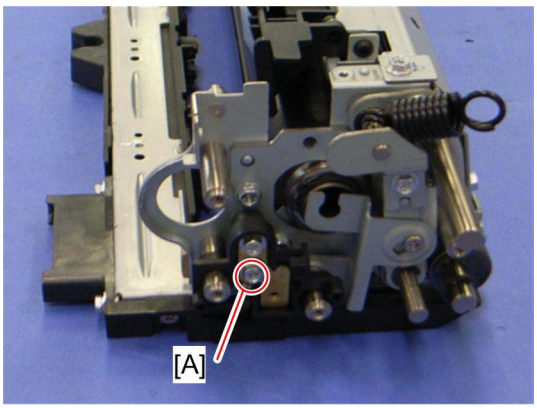
d027r201

3. Pressure roller gear [A] at the rear side (x 1)



d027r216

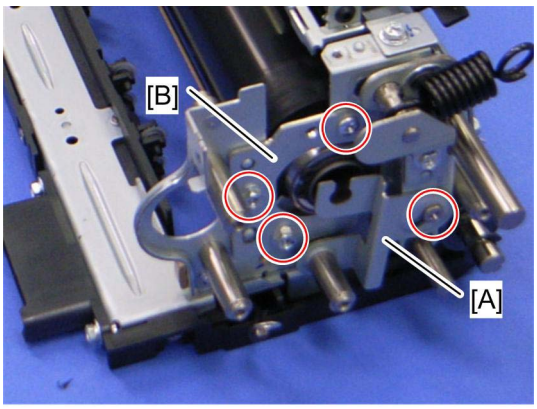
4. Pressure roller bearing [A] at the rear side



d027r198

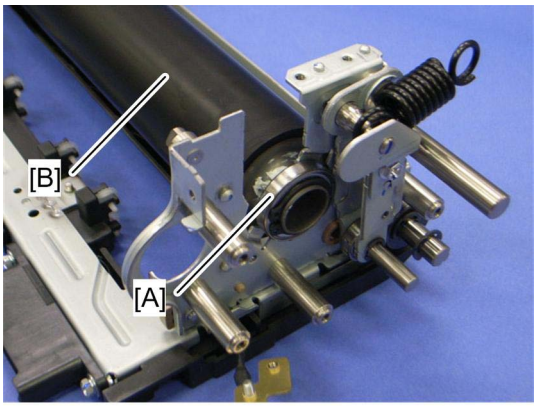
5. Front terminal [A] (x 1)

http://www.manuals4you.com



d027r199

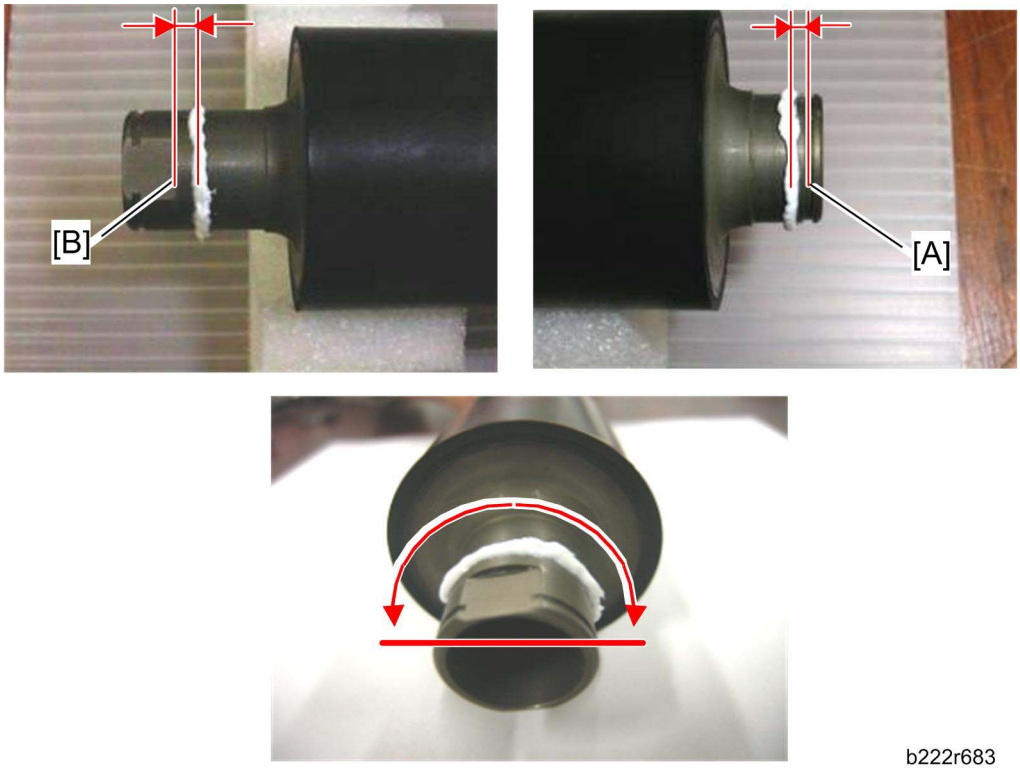
6. Lamp holder front bracket [A] (☞ x 1)
7. Pressure roller bracket [B] at the front side (☞ x 2, binding screw x 1)



d027r200

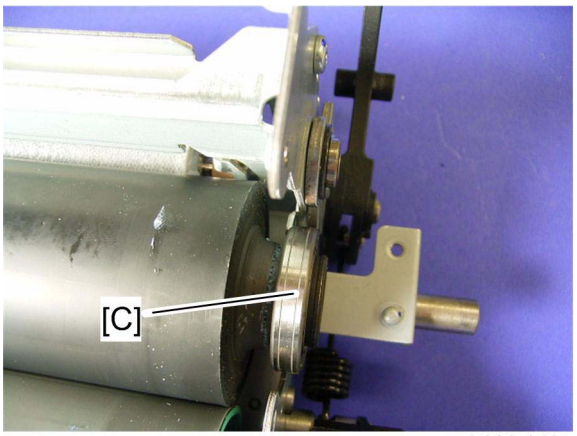
8. Pressure roller bearing [A] at the front side (ℂ x 1)
9. Pressure roller [B]

When re-installing the pressure roller



b222r683

1. Apply "Barrierta S552R" to the front shaft of the pressure roller at 2 mm from the notch [A], and to the rear shaft of the pressure roller at 2 mm from the edge [B]. (Apply the lubricant to half of the circumference of the pressure roller, as shown in the lower of the three above diagrams.)



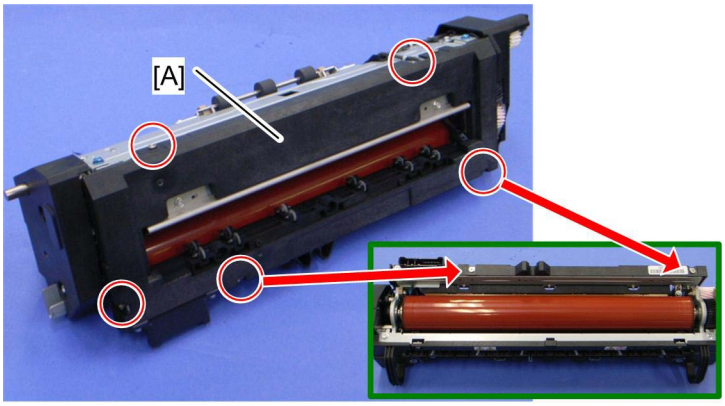
b222r648

2. Make sure that pressure roller bearing [A] at the front side is set as shown above.

http://www.manuals4you.com

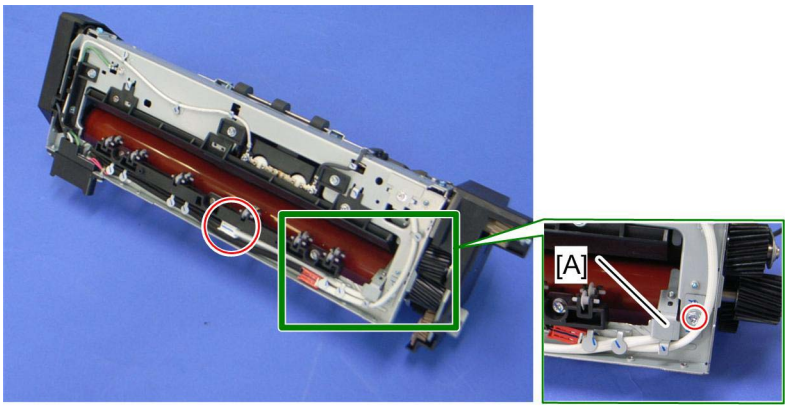
4.11.8 HEATING ROLLER THERMISTOR

1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-101 "Fusing Unit")
2. Fusing right cover (☛ p.4-109 "Fusing Lamp")



d027r211

3. Fusing bottom cover [A] (x 5)

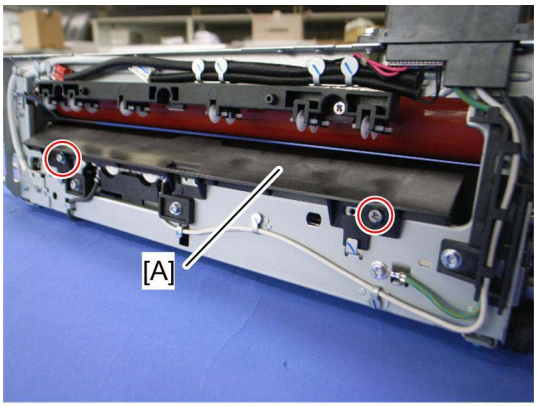


d027r212

4. Heating roller thermistor with bracket [A] (x 1, x 1)

4.11.9 PRESSURE ROLLER THERMOSTAT

1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-101 "Fusing Unit")
2. Fusing right cover (☛ p.4-102 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")
3. Fusing bottom cover (☛ p.4-115 "Heating Roller Thermistor")

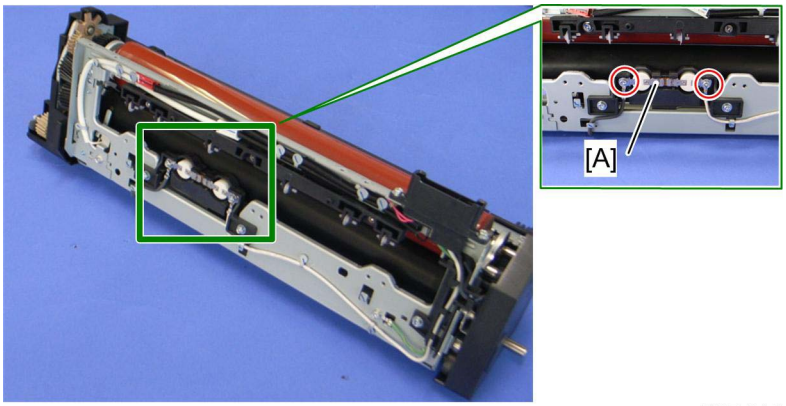


d027r213

4. Entrance guide plate [A] (☞ x 2)

Note

- The entrance guide plate must be removed with the orientation of the fusing unit as shown above, to protect the surface of the heating roller from damage.



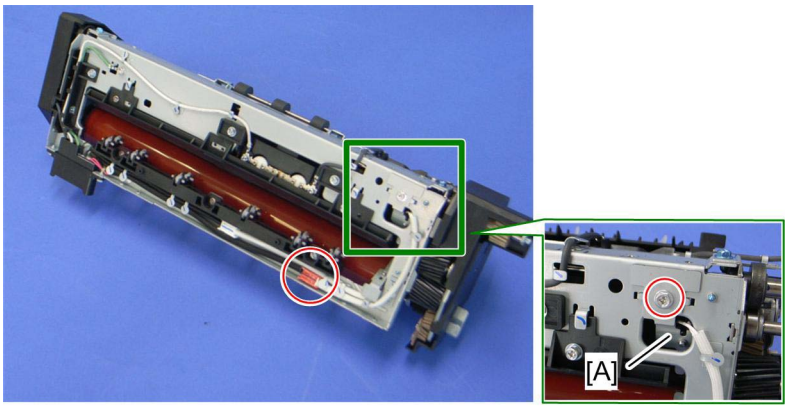
d027r214

5. Pressure roller thermostats [A] (☞ x 4)

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.11.10 PRESSURE ROLLER THERMISTOR

1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-101 "Fusing Unit")
2. Fusing right cover (☛ p.4-102 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")
3. Fusing bottom cover (☛ p.4-115 "Heating Roller Thermistor")

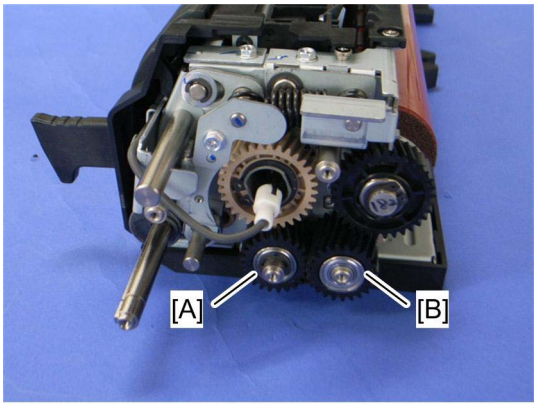


d027r215

4. Pressure roller thermistor [A] (🔩 x 1)

4.11.11 ONE-WAY CLUTCH GEAR AND IDLE GEAR

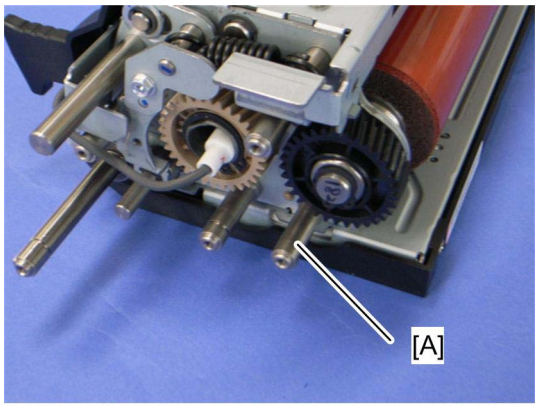
1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-101 "Fusing Unit")
2. Rear fusing cover (☛ p.4-102 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")
3. Pressure roller contact shaft actuator and pressure roller contact shaft gear (☛ p.4-102 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")
4. Rear bracket (☛ p.4-102 "Heating Roller and Heating Roller Bearing")
5. Fusing lamp rear bracket (☛ p.4-109 "Fusing Lamp")



d027r218

6. One-way clutch gear [A] (℃ x 1) and idle gear [B]

When re-installing the idle gear



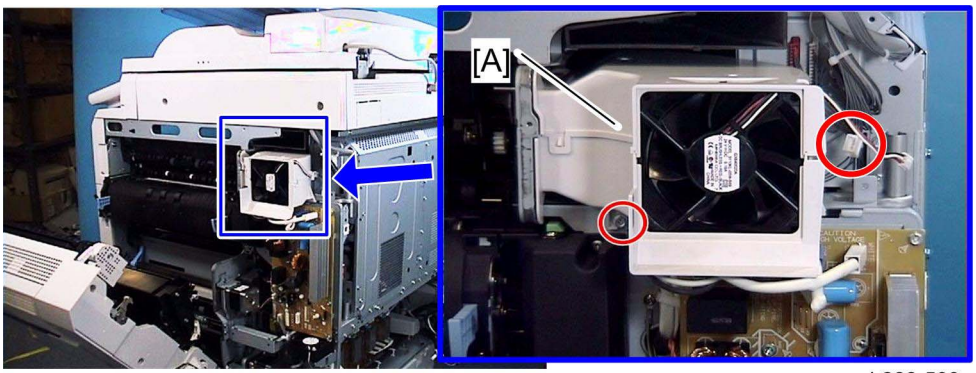
d027r218a

1. Apply one spot of "Barrierta S552R" (the diameter of the spot must be about 3 mm in diameter, and approximately 0.1 g in weight) to the idle gear shaft [A].

http://www.manuals4you.com

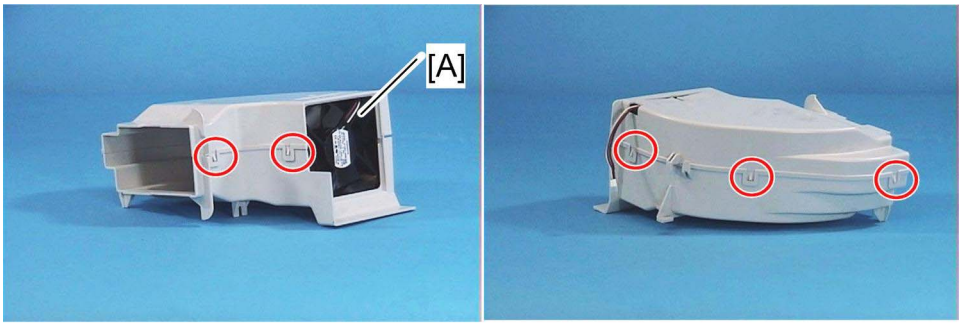
4.11.12 FUSING FAN

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")



b222r588

3. Fusing duct [A] (x 1, x 1)



d027r589

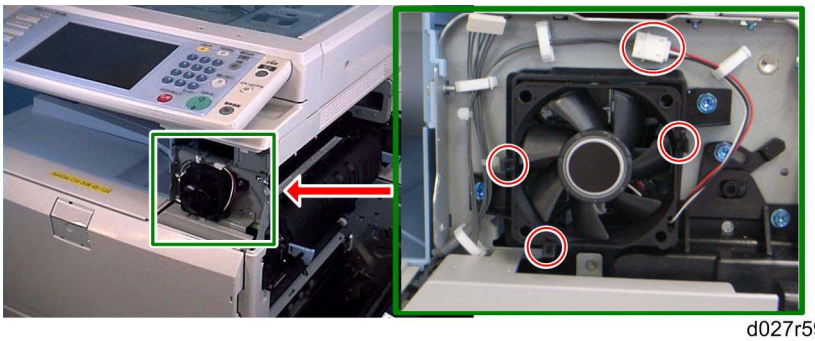
4. Fusing fan [A] (hook x 5)

When installing the fusing fan

Make sure that the fusing fan is installed with its decal facing the right side of the machine.

4.11.13 PAPER EXIT FAN

1. Open the right door.
2. Front right cover (☛ p.4-20 "Operation Panel")



d027r590

3. Paper exit fan [A] (☞ x 1, hook x 3)

When installing the paper exit fan

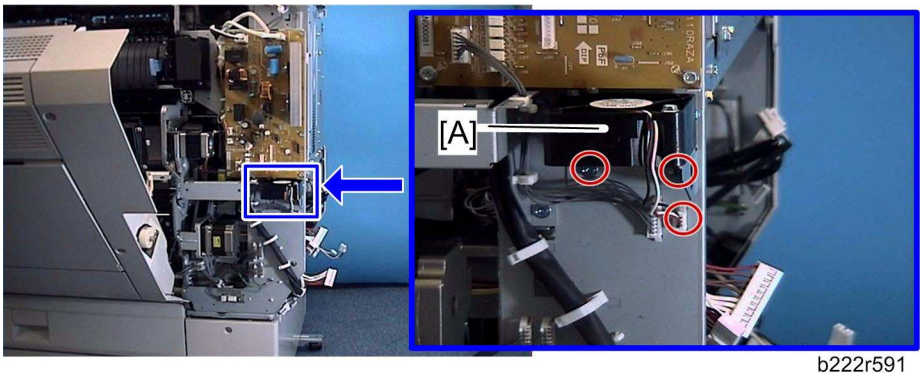
Note

- Make sure that the paper exit fan is installed with its decal facing the rear of the machine.

http://www.manuals4you.com

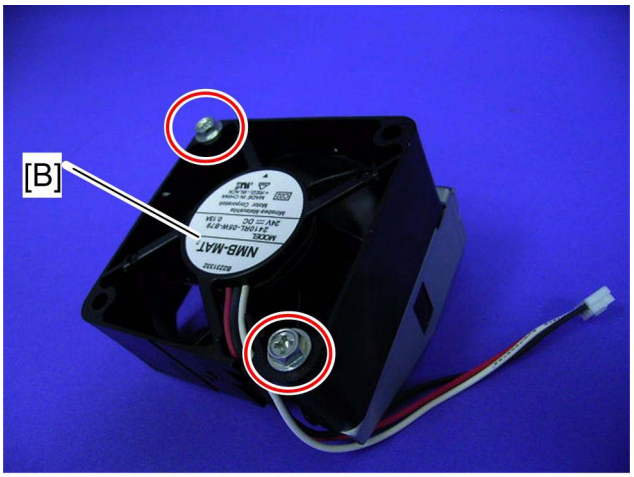
4.11.14 IH (INDUCTION HEATING) INVERTER FAN

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")



b222r591

3. IH inverter fan bracket [A] (🔩 x 2, ✋ x 1)



b222r592

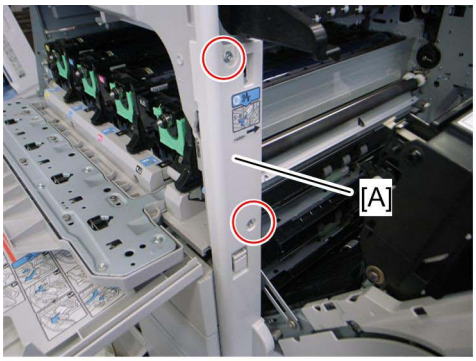
4. IH inverter fan [B] (🔩 x 2)

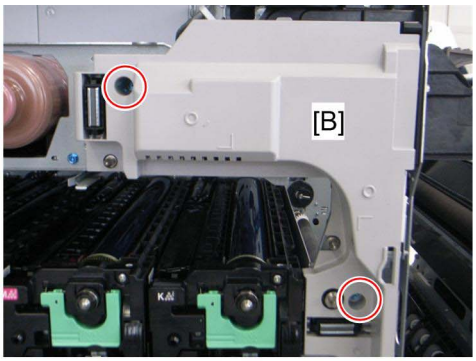
When installing the IH inverter fan

Make sure that the IH inverter fan is installed with its decal facing the upper side of the machine.

4.11.15 THERMOPILE

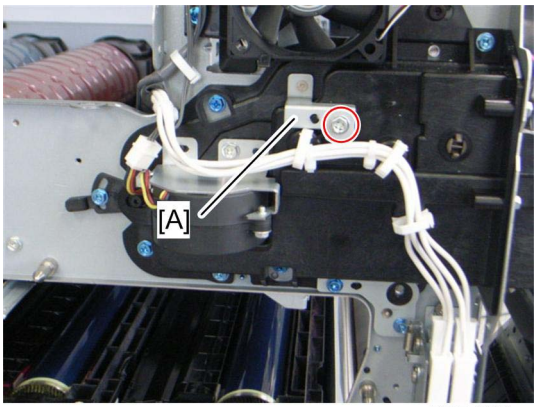
1. Open the right door.
2. Front right cover (☛ p.4-20 "Operation Panel")
3. Pull out trays 1 and 2, and the image transfer belt unit.





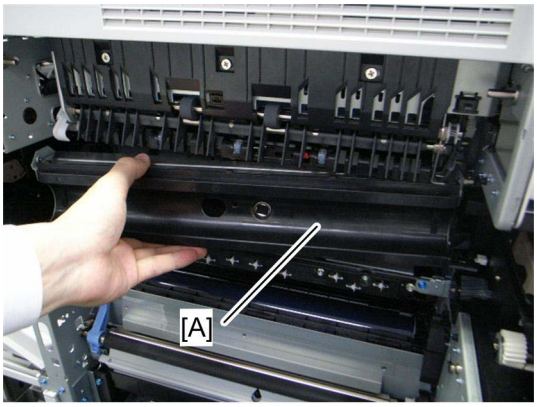
d027r219

4. Right front cover [A] and front inner cover [B]



d027r220a

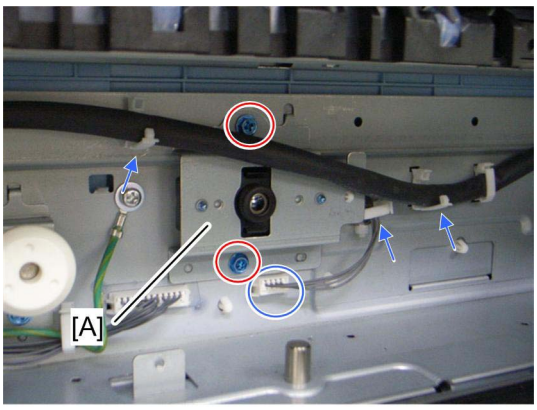
5. Bracket [A] (☞ x 1)



d027r223

6. IH coil unit [A]
   - First, release the front side of the IH coil unit.

http://www.manuals4you.com



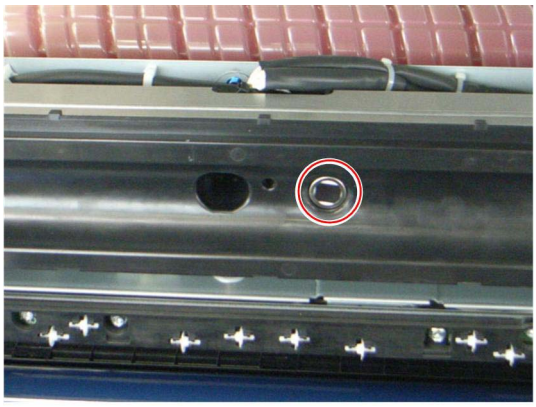
d027r224

7. Thermopile bracket [A] (x 2, x 1, x 3)
8. Thermopile (x 2)

When cleaning the lens of the thermopile

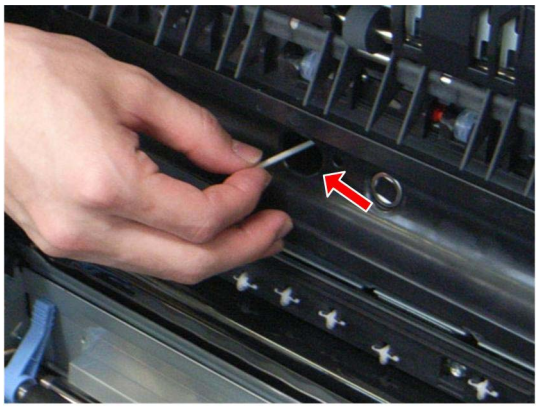
CAUTION

- Do this cleaning procedure after the fusing unit has completely cooled down. Otherwise, you may get a serious burn.
- Do not push the thermostats on the IH coil unit. If you do, the thermostats will be opened. In that case, the IH coil unit must be replaced.



d027r617

1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-101 "Fusing Unit")



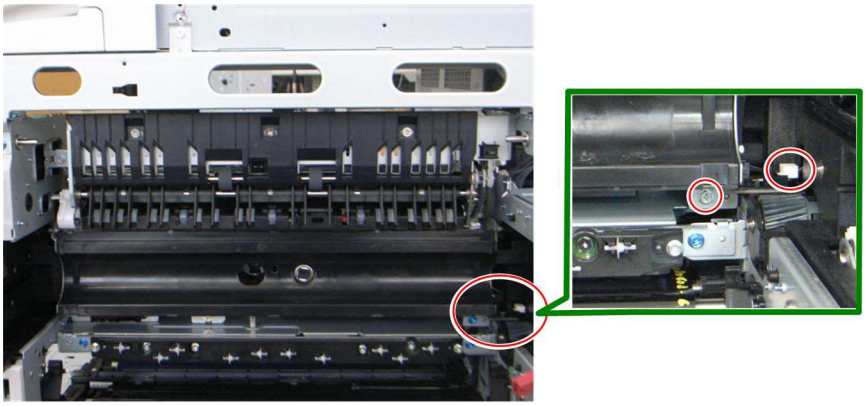
d027r415

2. Clean with a cotton-swab dipped in alcohol.

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.11.16 PRESSURE ROLLER HP SENSOR

1. Open the right door.
2. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-101 "Fuser Unit")

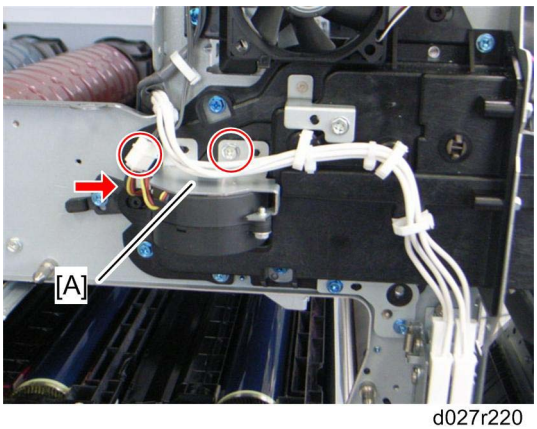


d027r413

3. Pressure roller HP sensor (x 1, x 1)

4.11.17 IH COIL FAN

1. Open the right door.
2. Front right cover (☛ p.4-20 "Operation Panel")
3. Pull out trays 1 and 2, and the image transfer belt unit (☛ p.4-122 "Thermopile")
4. Right front cover and front inner cover (☛ p.4-122 "Thermopile")



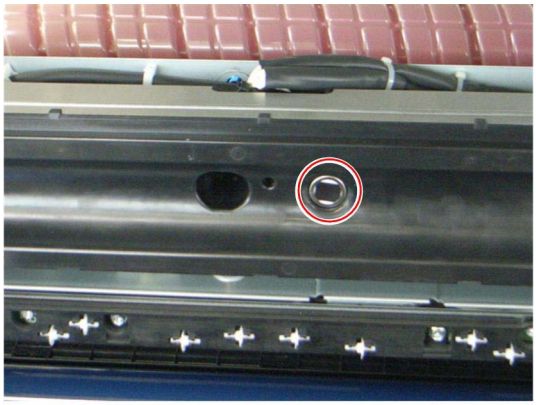
d027r220

5. IH coil fan bracket [A] (x 1, x 1, x 1)
6. IH coil fan (x 2)

4.11.18 IH COIL UNIT

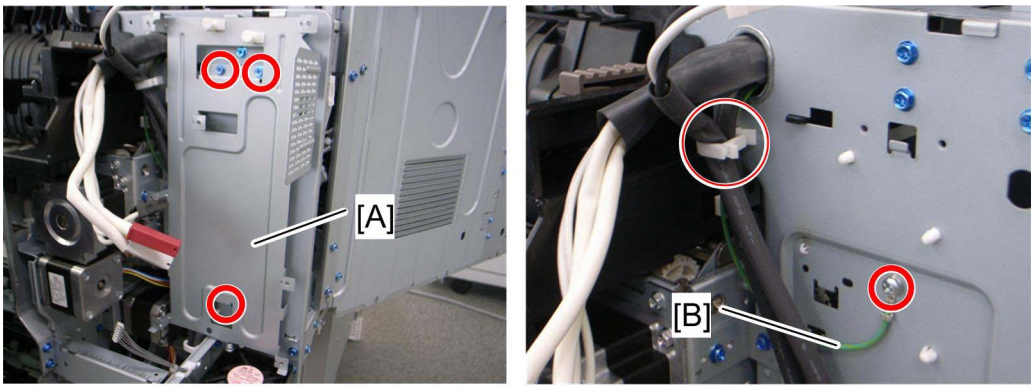
⚠CAUTION

- Do not push the thermostats on the IH coil unit. If you do, the thermostats will be opened. In that case, the IH coil unit must be replaced.



d027r617

1. Fusing unit (☛ p.4-101 "Fusing Unit")
2. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
3. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
4. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box").
5. Fusing duct (☛ p.4-119 "Fusing Fan")
6. IH inverter (☛ p.4-161 "IH Inverter")

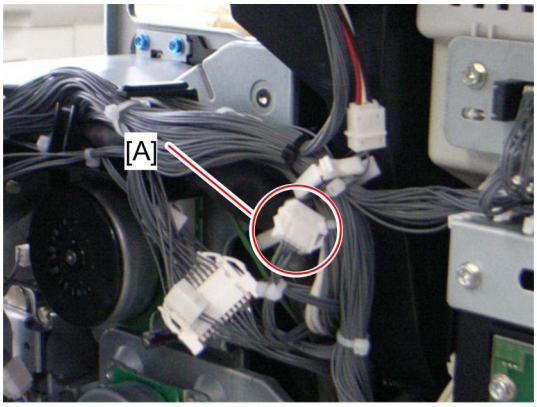


d027r618

7. IH inverter bracket [A] (x 3)
8. Ground cable [B] (x 1, x 1)

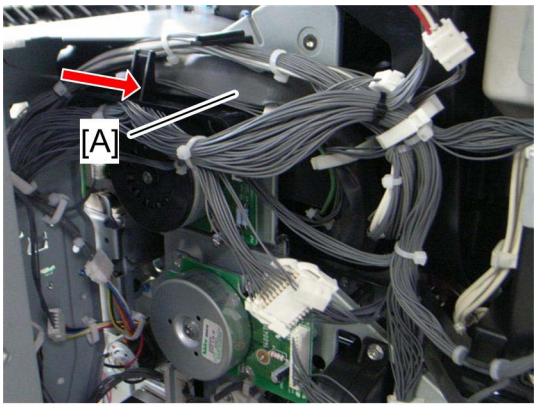
http://www.manuals4you.com

Fusing



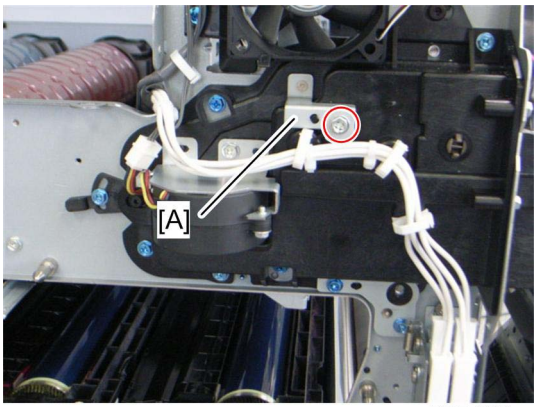
d027r221

9. Remove the connector [A].



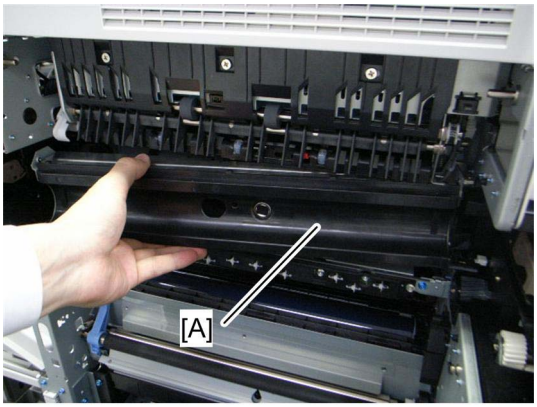
d027r222

10. Pull the Harness [A] in the arrow direction.



d027r220a

11. Bracket [A] (x 1)



d027r223

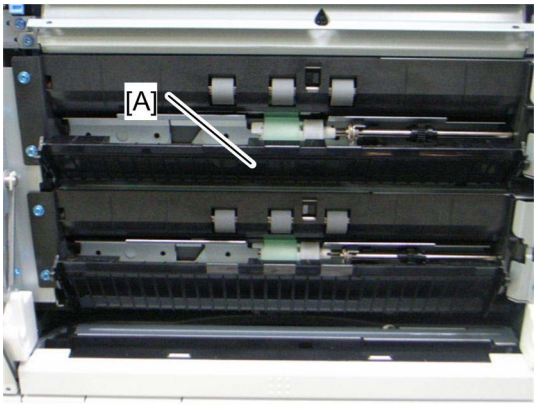
12. IH coil unit [A] (First, release the front side of the IH coil unit.)

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.12 PAPER FEED

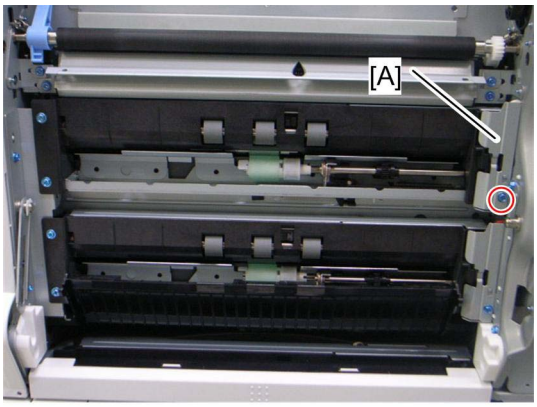
4.12.1 PAPER FEED UNIT

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Duplex unit (☛ p.4-145 "Duplex Unit")
4. Pull out tray 1 and tray 2.



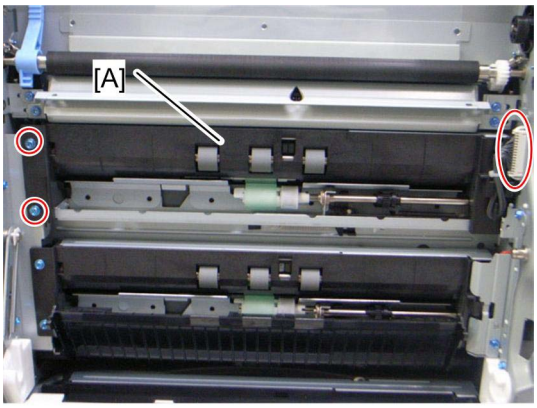
d027r168

5. Paper guide plate [A] (hook x 2)



d027r169

6. Harness cover [A] (🔩 x 1)



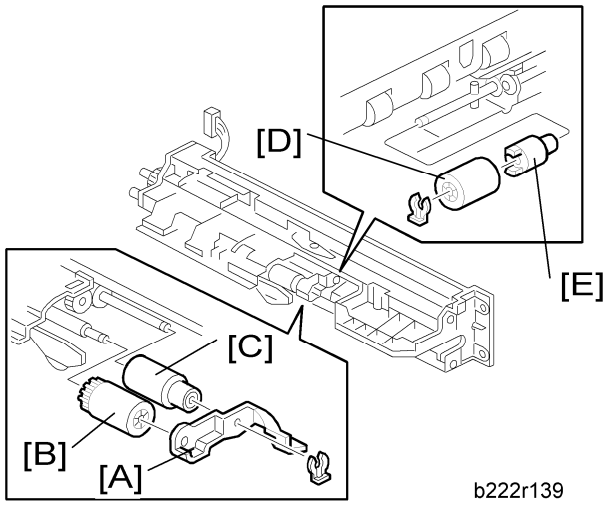
d027r170

7. Paper feed unit [A] (x 2, x 1)

4.12.2 PICK-UP, FEED AND SEPARATION ROLLERS

Tray 1 and Tray 2

1. Paper feed unit (☛ p.4-129 "Paper Feed Unit")



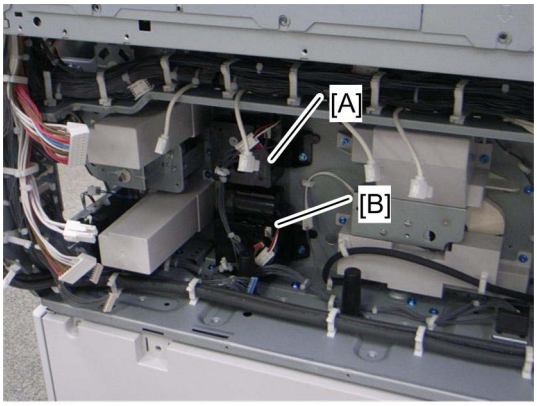
b222r139

2. Roller holder [A] (x 1)
3. Pick-up roller [B]
4. Feed roller [C]
5. Separation roller [D] and torque limiter [E] (x 1)

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.12.3 TRAY LIFT MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-158 "PSU")
3. High voltage supply board bracket (☛ p.4-160 "High Voltage Supply Board Bracket")

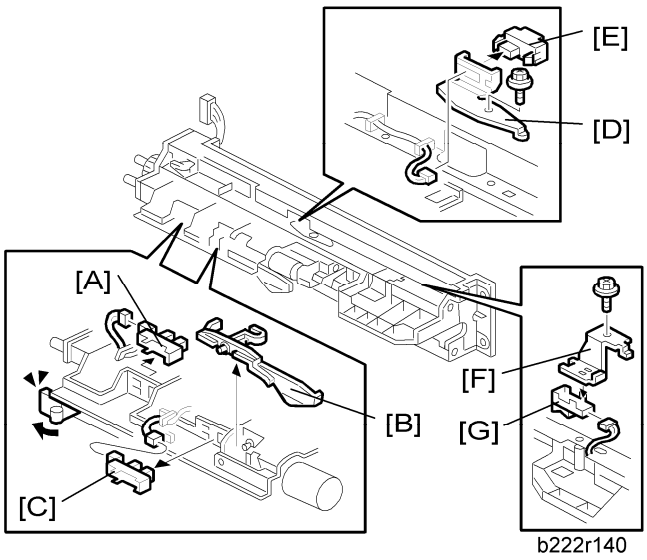


d027r173

4. Tray lift motor 1 [A] or 2 [B] (x 2, x 3, x 1 each)

4.12.4 VERTICAL TRANSPORT, PAPER OVERFLOW, PAPER END AND PAPER FEED SENSOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Paper feed unit (☛ p.4-129 "Paper Feed Unit")



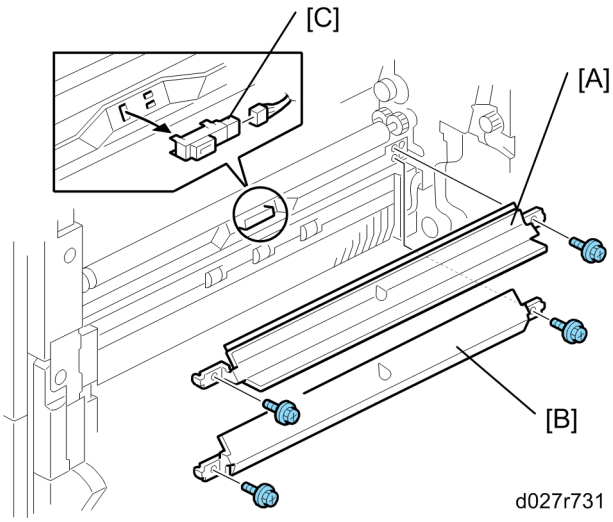
b222r140

4. Paper overflow sensor [A]
5. Paper end feeler [B] and paper end sensor [C] (hook, x 1 each)
6. Vertical transport sensor bracket [D] (x 1, x 1)
7. Vertical transport sensor [E] (x 1, hook)
8. Paper feed sensor bracket [F] (x 1)
9. Paper feed sensor [G] (x 1, hook)

http://www.manuals4you.com

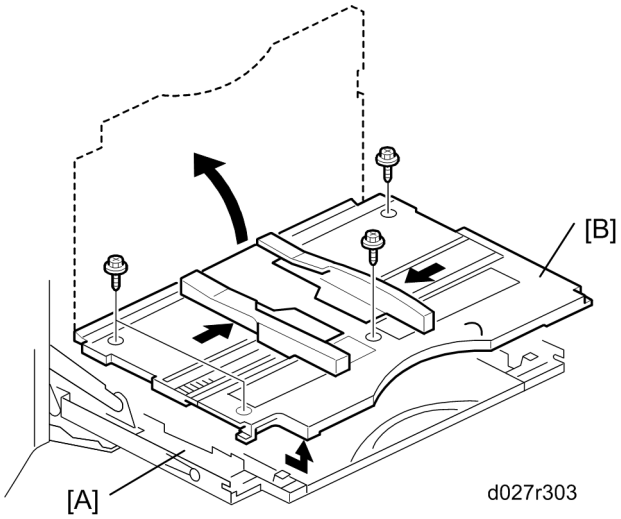
4.12.5 REGISTRATION SENSOR

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")

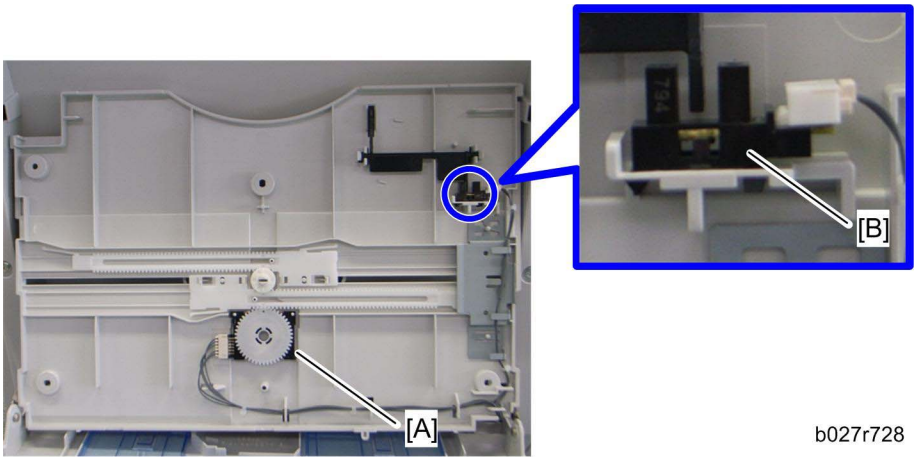


3. Paper guide plate 1 [A] and 2 [B] (x 2 each)
4. Registration sensor [C] (x 1, hook)

4.12.6 BY-PASS PAPER SIZE SENSOR AND BY-PASS PAPER LENGTH SENSOR



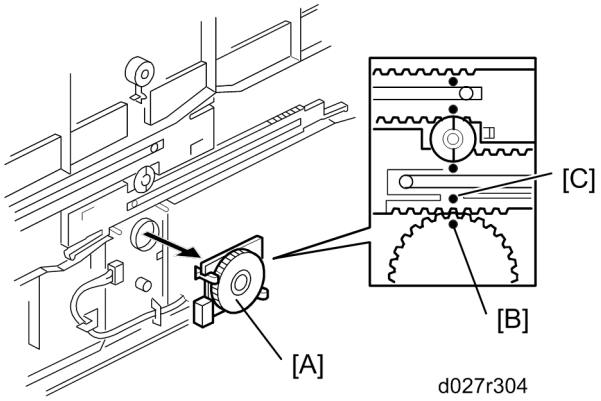
1. Open the by-pass tray [A].
2. Move the side fences to the center.
3. By-pass tray cover [B] (☞ x 4)



4. By-pass paper size sensor [A] (☞ x 1).
5. By-pass paper length sensor [B] (☞ x 1)

http://www.manuals4you.com

When reinstalling the by-pass paper size sensor



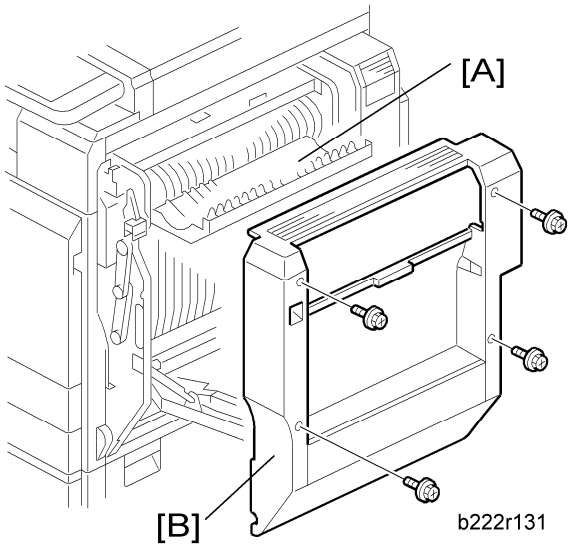
1. Adjust the projection [A] of the left side fence bar (it must be centered).
2. Install the by-pass paper size detection switch so that the hole [B] in this switch faces the projection [C] of the left side fence bar.
3. Reassemble the copier.
4. Plug in and turn on the main power switch.
5. Check this switch operation with SP5803-011 (By-pass paper size < Input Check).

- Display on the LCD -

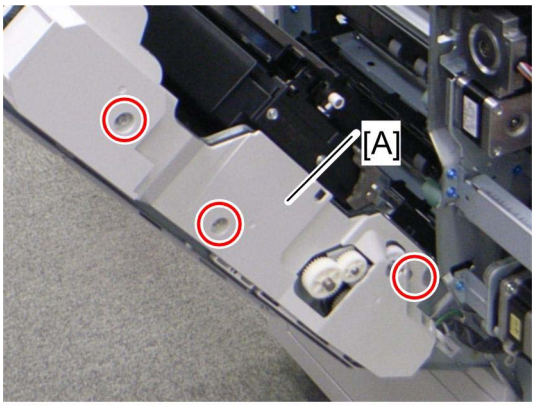
Paper Size	Display	Paper Size	Display
A3 SEF	00001110	A5 SEF	00001011
B4 SEF	00001100	B6 SEF	00000011
A4 SEF	00001101	A6 SEF	00000111
B5 SEF	00001001	Smaller A6 SEF	00001111

4.12.7 BY-PASS BOTTOM TRAY

1. Open the right door.
2. By-pass tray cover (☛ p.4-134 "By-pass Paper Size Sensor and By-pass Paper Length Sensor")

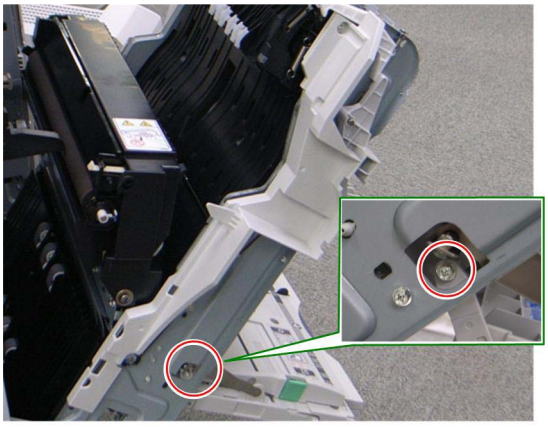


3. Open the duplex door [A].
4. Right door cover [B] (☞ x 4)



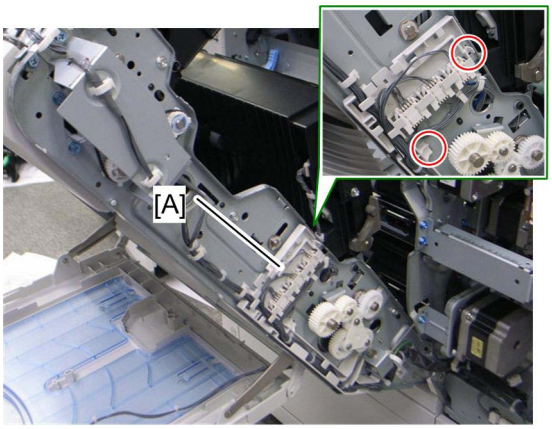
5. Right door rear cover [A] (☞ x 3)

http://www.manuals4you.com



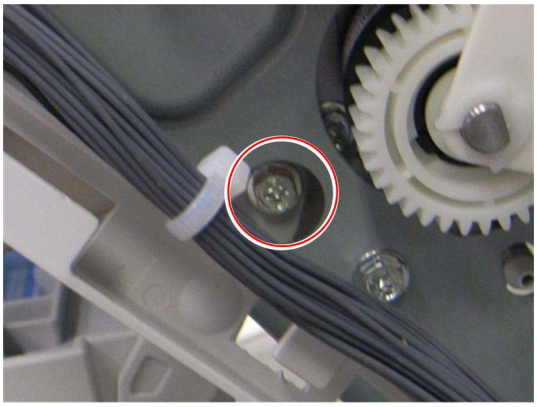
d027r175

6. Remove the screw at the front side (🔩 x 1).



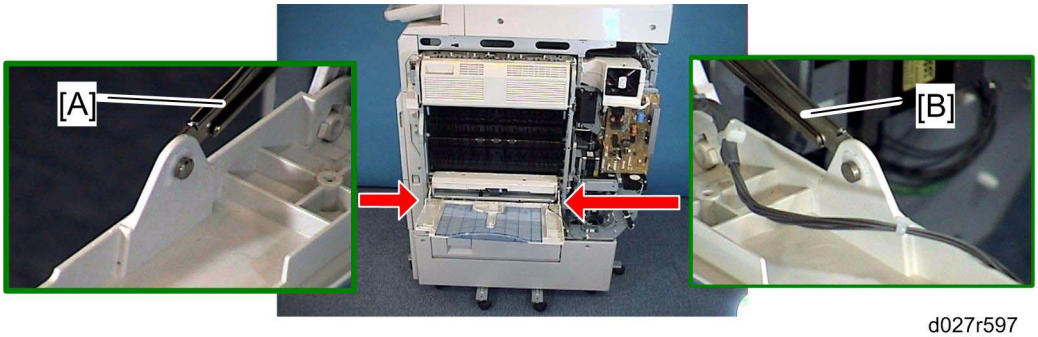
d027r177

7. Remove the cover [A] (2 hooks).



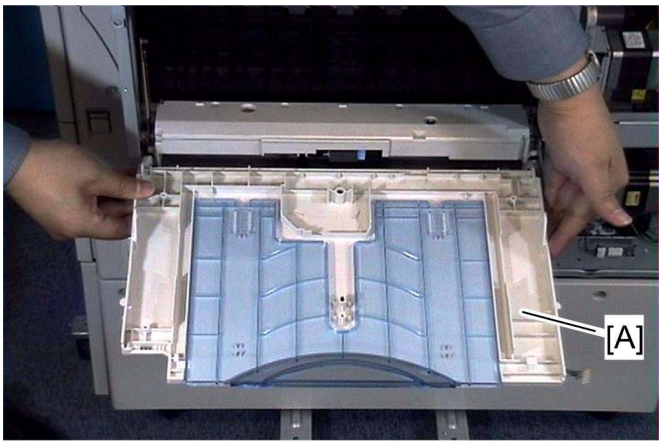
d027r178

8. Remove the screw at the rear side.



d027r597

9. Release the front [A] and rear [B] arms (x 1 each).



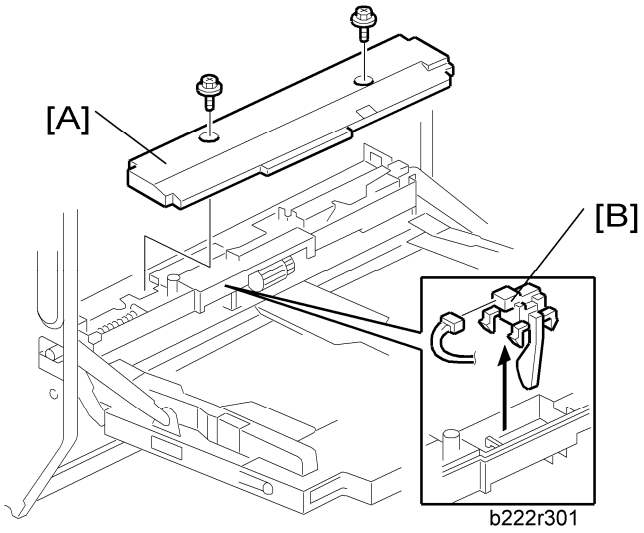
d027r598

10. By-pass bottom tray [A]

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.12.8 BY-PASS PAPER END SENSOR

1. Right door cover (☛ p.4-136 "By Pass Bottom Tray")

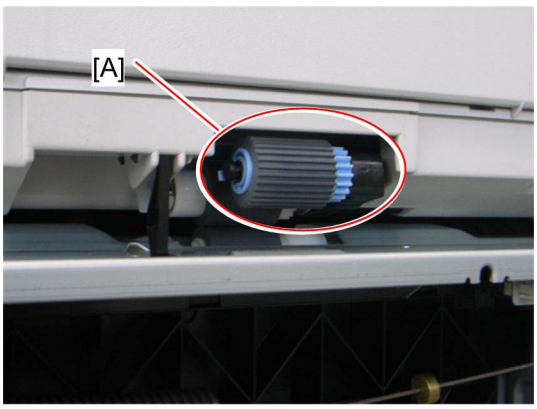


b222r301

2. By-pass feed unit cover [A] (☞ x 2).
3. By-pass paper end sensor [B] (☞ x 1, hook)

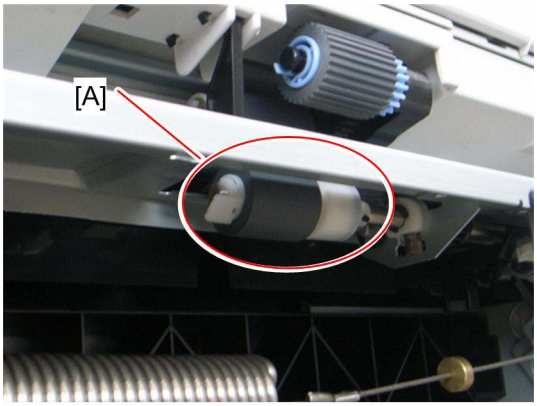
4.12.9 BY-PASS PICK-UP, FEED AND SEPARATION ROLLER, TORQUE LIMITER

1. Right door cover (☛ p.4-136 "By Pass Bottom Tray")



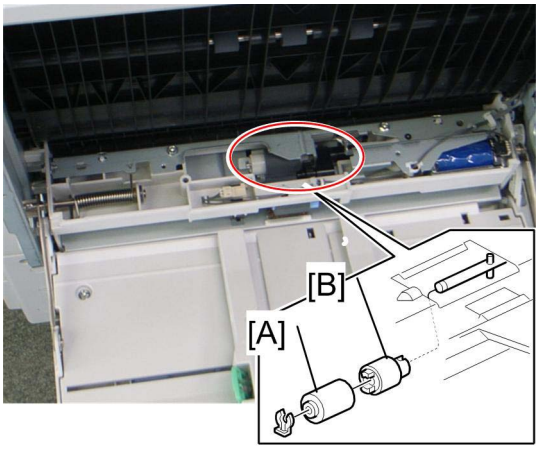
d027r179

2. By-pass pick-up roller [A] (hook)



d027r180

3. By-pass feed roller [A] (x 1)
4. By-pass feed unit cover (☛ p.4-139 "By-pass Paper End Sensor")



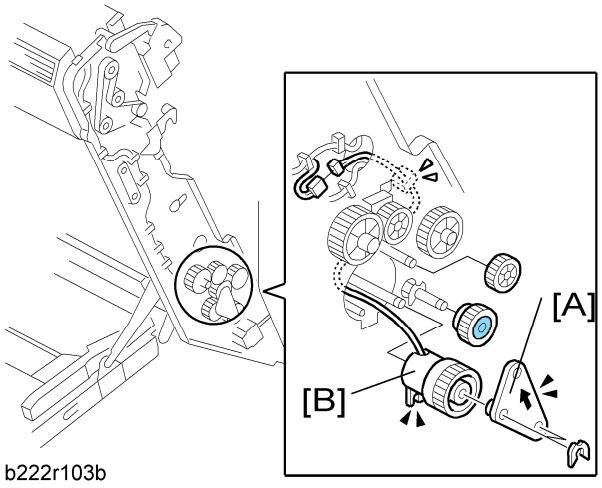
d027r302

5. By-pass separation roller [A] (x 1)
6. Torque limiter [B]

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.12.10 BY-PASS FEED CLUTCH

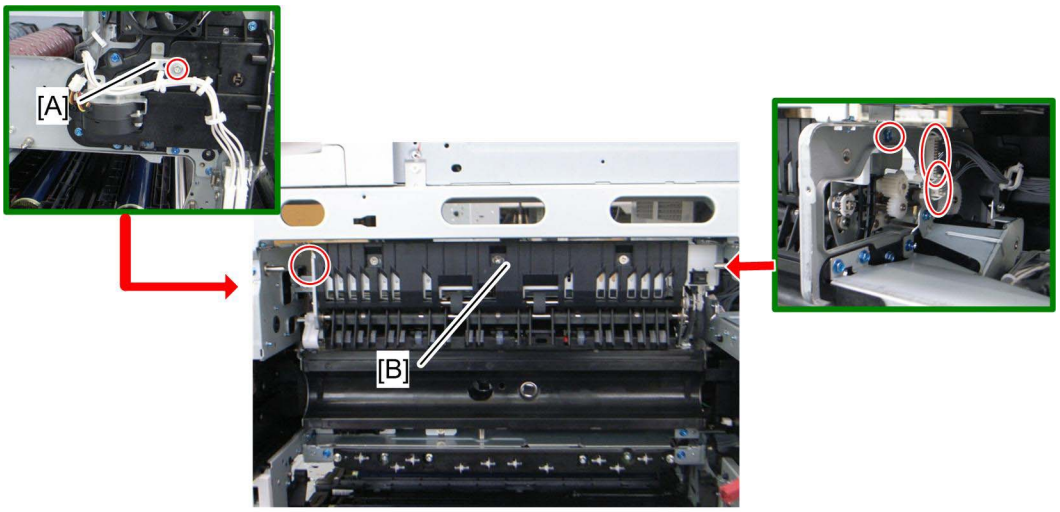
1. Open the right door.
2. Right door rear cover (☛ p.4-136 "By-Pass Bottom Tray")



3. By-pass feed clutch holder [A] (x 2)
4. By-pass feed clutch [B] (x 1, x 1)

4.12.11 PAPER EXIT UNIT

1. Fusing Unit (☛ p.4-101 "Fusing Unit")
2. Front right cover (☛ p.4-20 "Operation Panel")
3. Image transfer belt unit (☛ p.4-63 "Image Transfer Belt Unit")
4. Inner Tray (☛ p.4-22 "Inner Tray")
5. Thermopile (☛ p.4-122 "Thermopile")
6. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
7. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
8. Fusing duct (☛ p.4-119 "Fusing Fan")
9. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box").

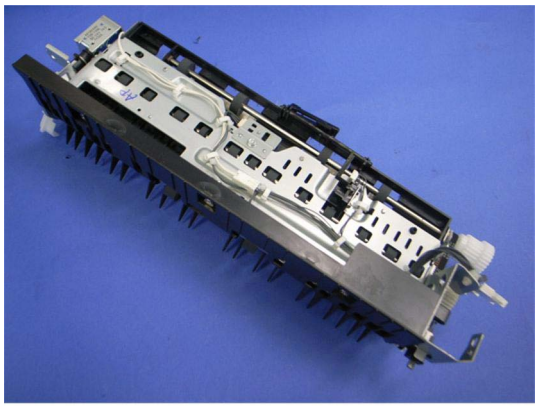


d027r181

10. Gear cover [A] (x 1)
11. Paper exit unit [B] (x 2, x 2)

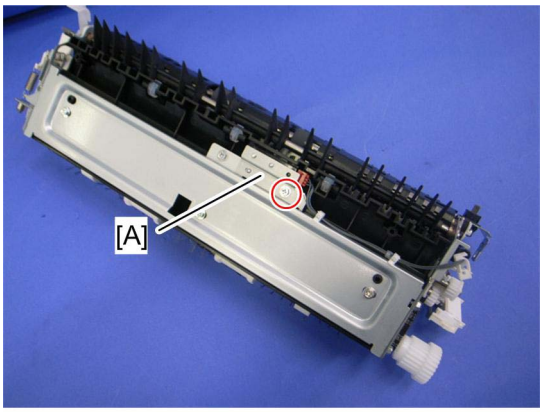
http://www.manuals4you.com

4.12.12 FUSING EXIT, PAPER OVERFLOW, JUNCTION PAPER JAM AND PAPER EXIT SENSOR



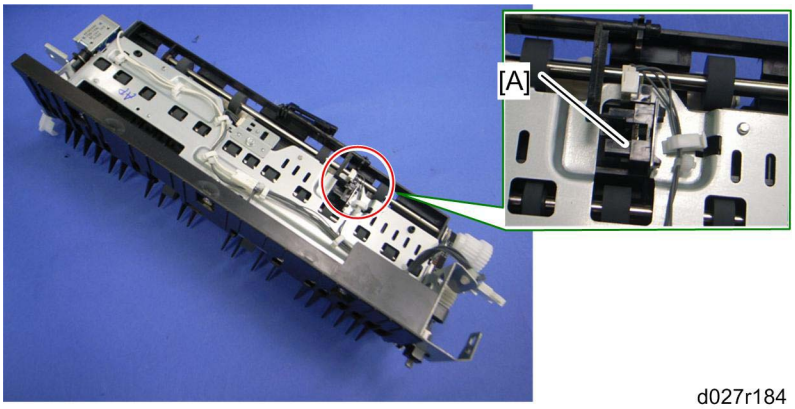
d027r182

1. Paper exit unit (☛ p.4-141 "Paper Exit Unit")



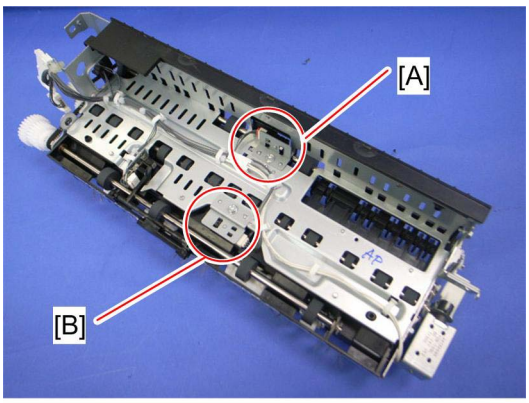
d027r183

2. Fusing exit sensor bracket [A] (x 1, x 1)
3. Remove the fusing exit sensor from the fusing exit sensor bracket (x 1)



d027r184

4. Paper overflow sensor [A] (x 1, hook)



d027r185

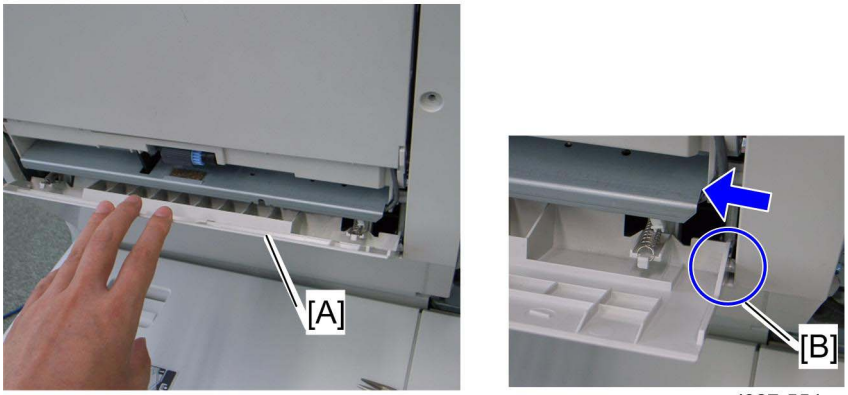
5. Junction paper jam sensor bracket [A] (x 1, x 1)
6. Remove the junction paper jam sensor from the junction paper jam sensor bracket (hook)
7. Paper exit sensor bracket [B] (x 1, x 1)
8. Remove the paper exit sensor from the paper exit sensor bracket (hook)

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.13 DUPLEX UNIT

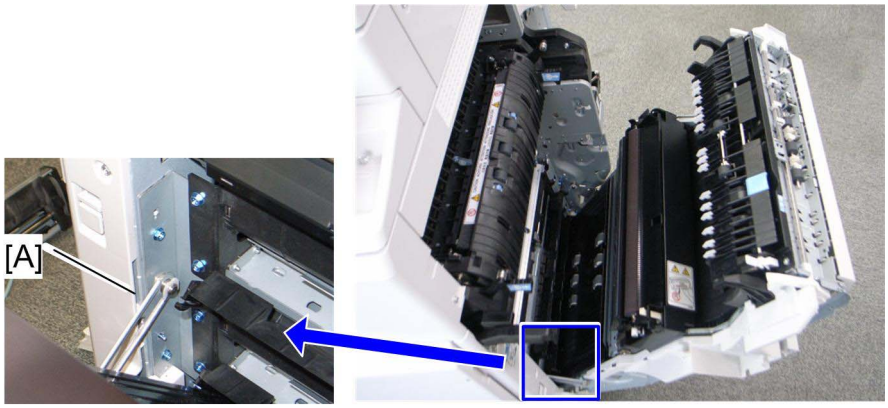
4.13.1 DUPLEX UNIT

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")



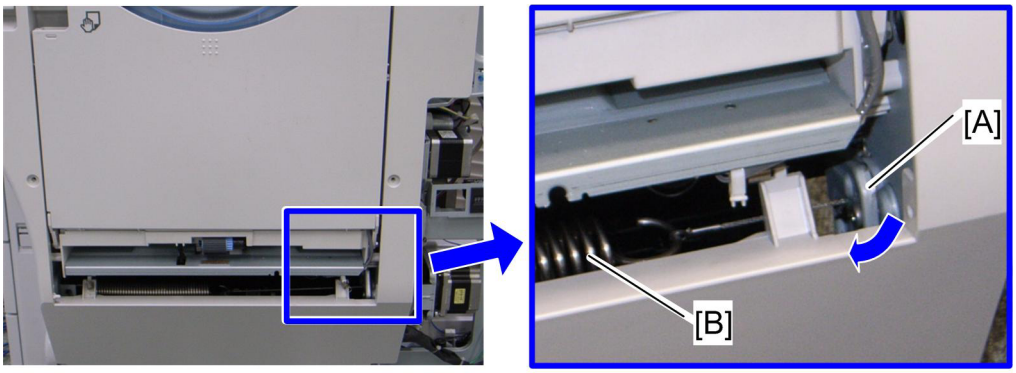
d027r554a

3. Open the lower door [A] of the duplex unit.
4. Release the tab [B] and remove the lower door (spring x 2).
5. Open the right door.



d027r555a

6. Release the front link [A] (x 1).
7. Keep the right door fully open.

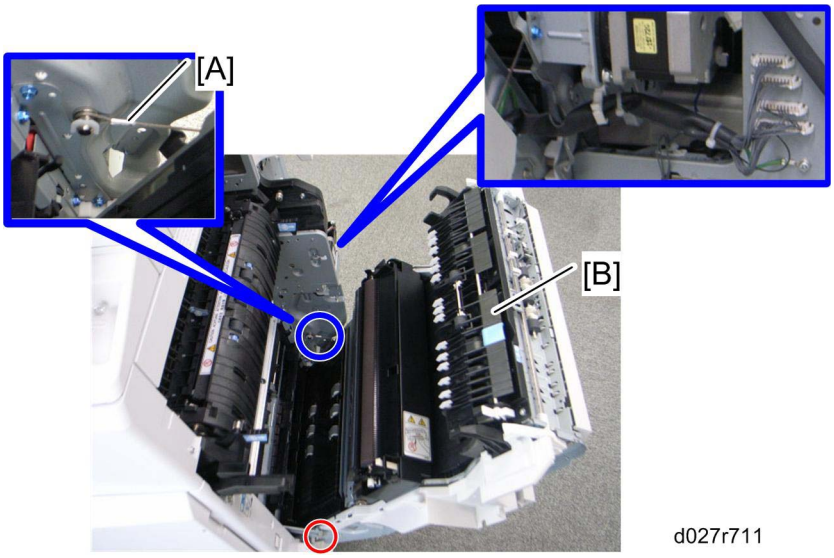


d027r556a

8. Push up the duplex unit a little bit, while pressing the bracket [A] to lock the spring [B].

Note

- Do not let the duplex unit open fully before releasing the wire (step 9). Otherwise, the lock for the spring [B] is released.



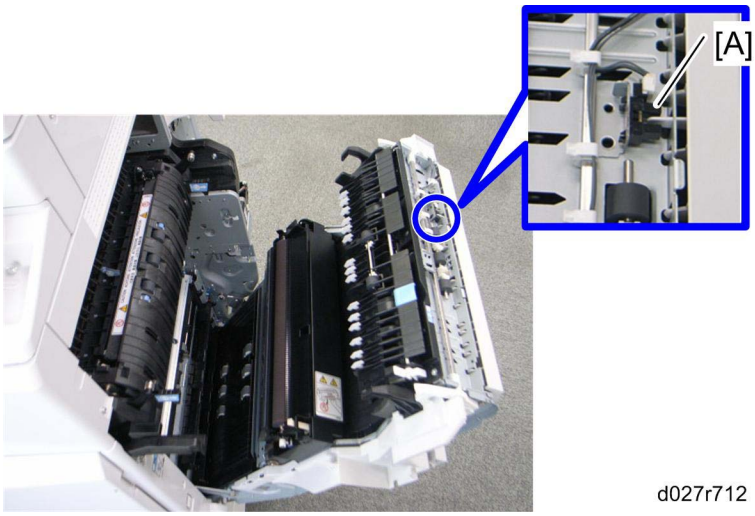
d027r711

9. Wire [A] (x 1)
10. Duplex unit [B] (x 1, Stud screw x 1, x 1, x 4, ground cable x 1)

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.13.2 DUPLEX DOOR SENSOR

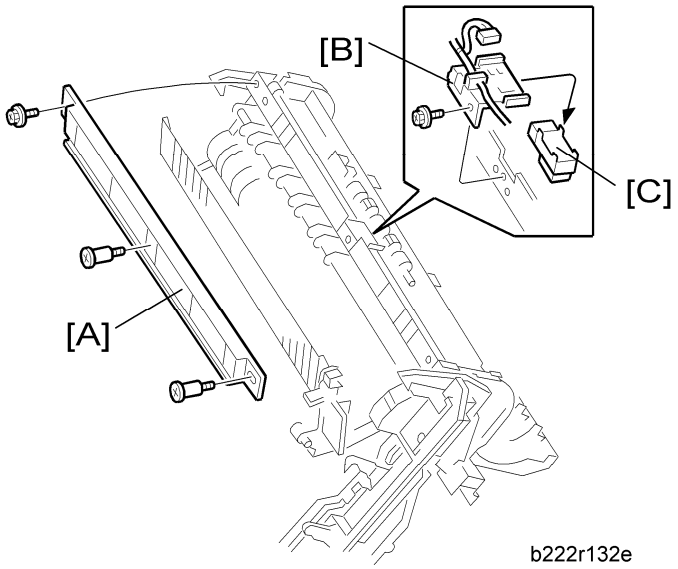
1. Right door cover (☛ p.4-145 "Duplex Unit")
2. Open the right door.



3. Duplex door sensor [A] (☞ x 1, hook)

4.13.3 DUPLEX ENTRANCE SENSOR

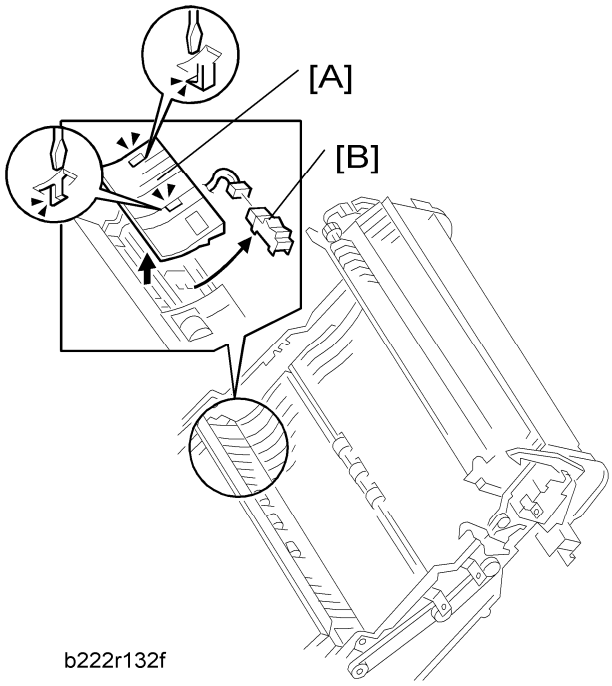
1. Right door cover (☛ p.4-145 "Duplex Unit")
2. Open the right door.



3. Duplex entrance guide [A] (☞ x1, stepped screw x 2)
4. Duplex entrance sensor bracket [B] (☞ x 1, ☞ x 1)
5. Duplex entrance sensor [C] (hook)

4.13.4 DUPLEX EXIT SENSOR

1. Paper transfer unit (☛ p.4-71 "Paper Transfer Unit")



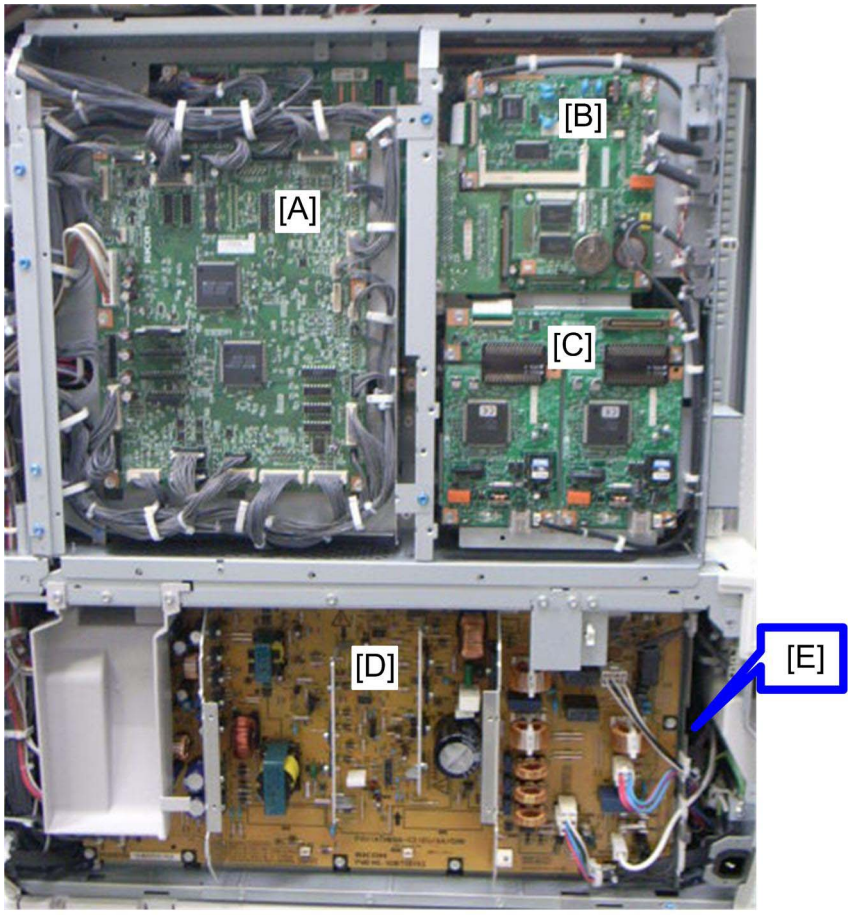
2. Guide plate [A] (two hooks)
3. Duplex exit sensor [B] (☞ x 1, hook)

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.14 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

4.14.1 BOARDS

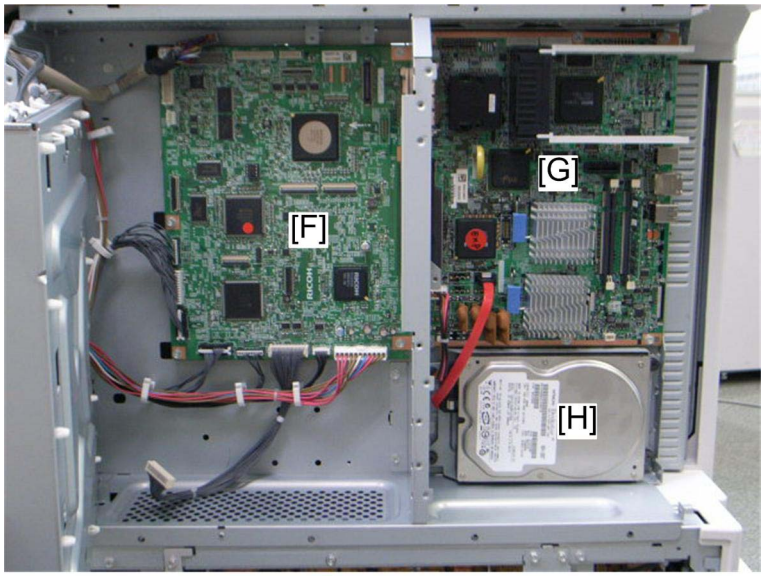
Controller Box closed



d027r729

[A]	IOB
[B]	FCU (Option)
[C]	G3 Interface Unit (Option)
[D]	PSU
[E]	High Voltage Supply Board (Behind the PSU [D])

Behind the IOB, FCU and G3 Interface Unit

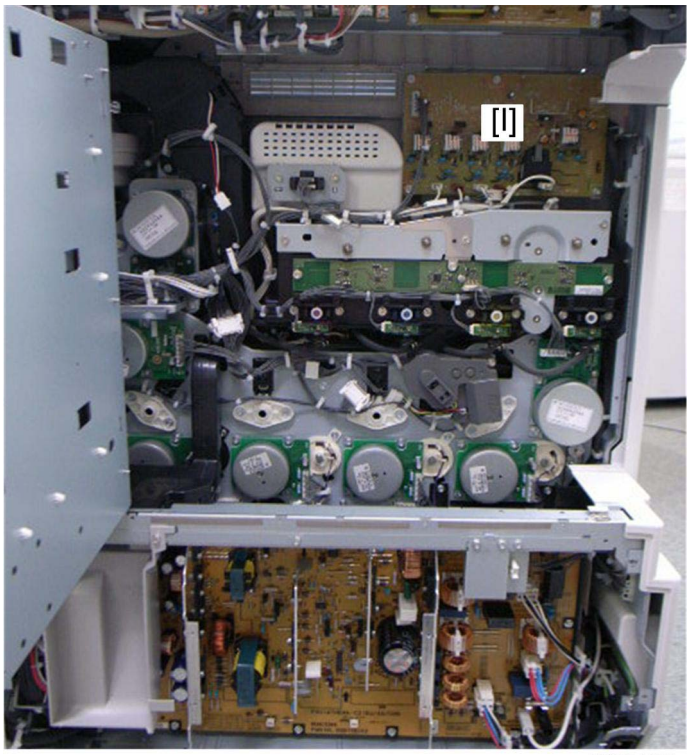


d027r729a

[F]	BICU
[G]	Controller Board
[H]	HDD

http://www.manuals4you.com

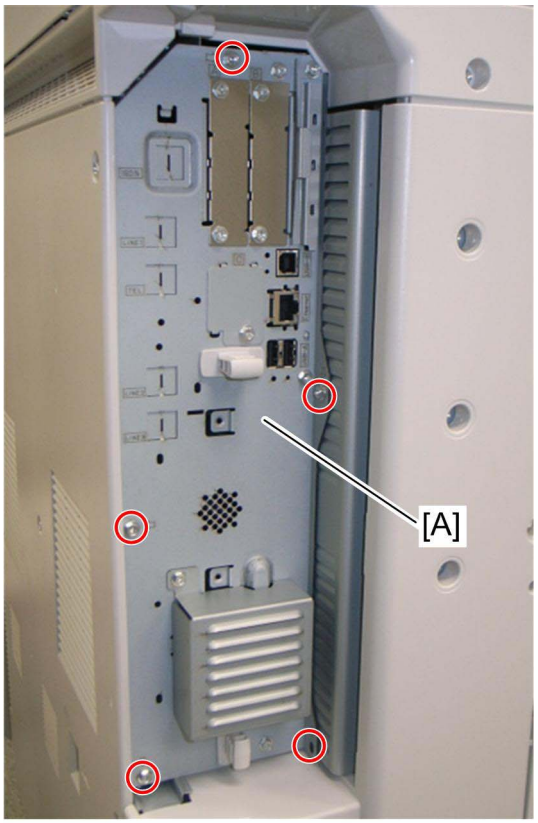
Controller Box Open



d027r730

[I]	ITB Power Supply Board

4.14.2 CONTROLLER UNIT



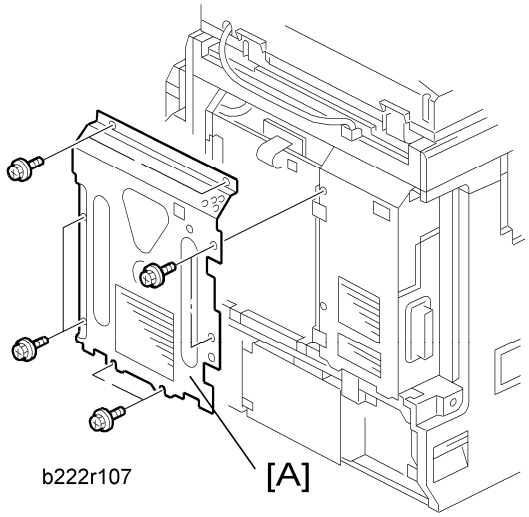
d027i075

1. Controller unit [A] (🔩 x 5)

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.14.3 CONTROLLER BOX RIGHT COVER

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")

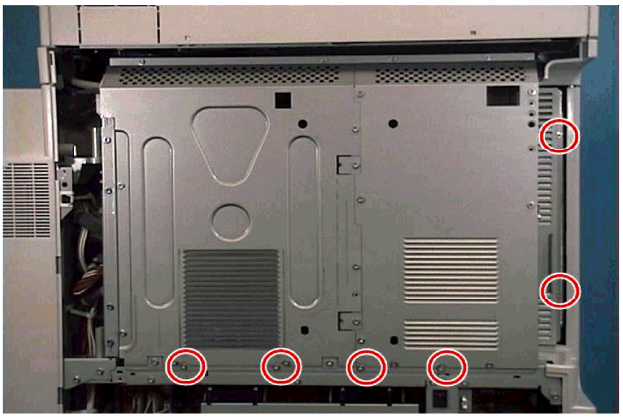


2. Controller box right cover [A] (☞ x 8)

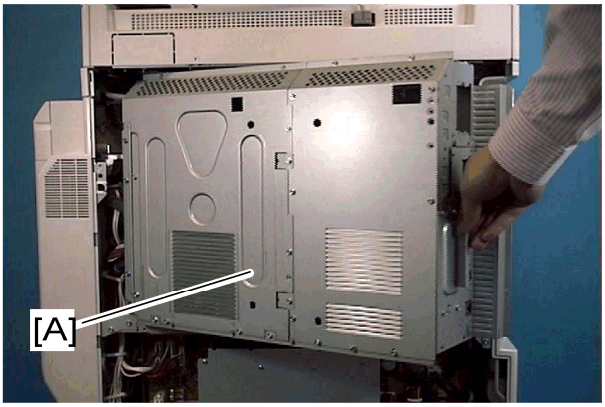
4.14.4 CONTROLLER BOX

When opening the controller box

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")



2. Remove six screws (red circles).

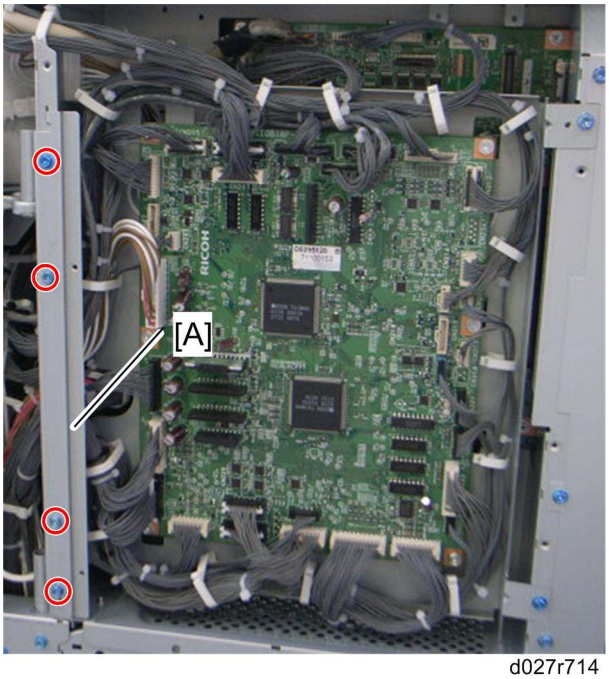


b222r604

3. Open the controller box [A].

When removing the controller box

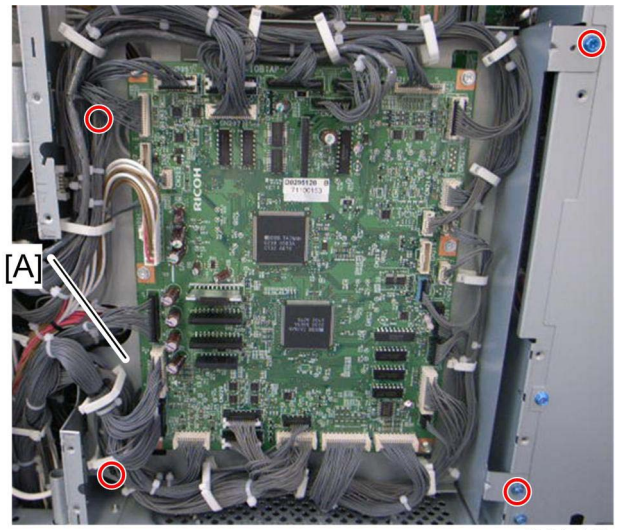
1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Controller box right cover (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box Right Cover ")



d027r714

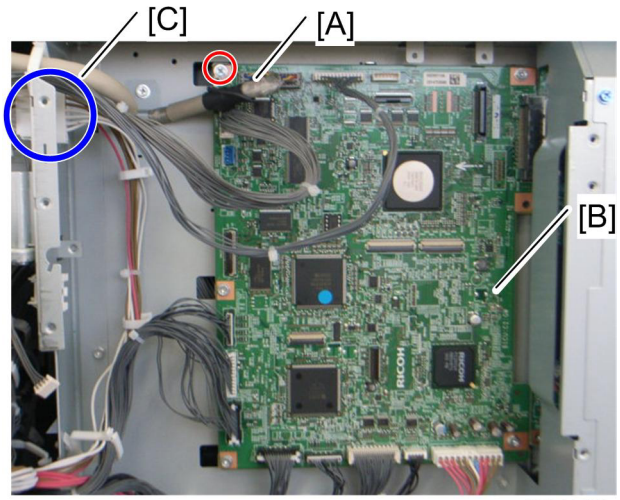
4. Remove the controller box stay [A] (🔩 x 4).

http://www.manuals4you.com



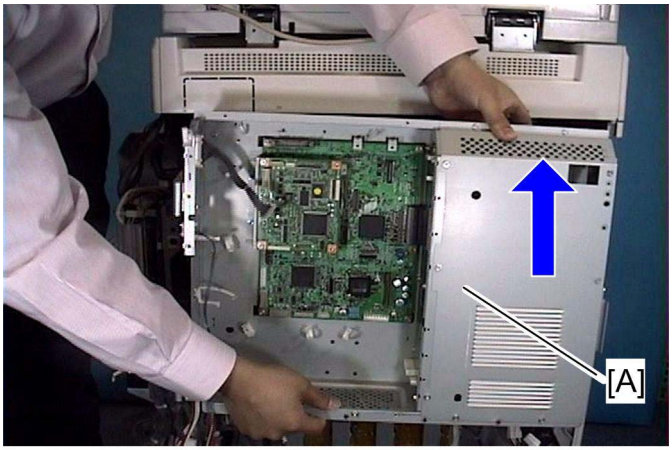
d027r713

5. Move the IOB bracket [A] aside (x 4, x All).



d027r715

6. Disconnect the scanner interface cable [A] (ground cable)
7. Release all clamps on the controller box frame.
8. Disconnect all connectors on the BICU [B] board.
9. Disconnect the connector [C] at the outer controller box and at the inner controller box.

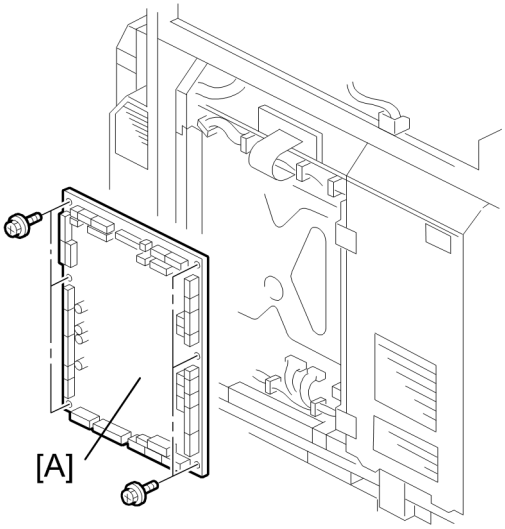


d027r607

10. Lift up the controller box [A], and then remove it.

4.14.5 IOB (IN/OUT BOARD)

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Controller box right cover (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box Right Cover ")



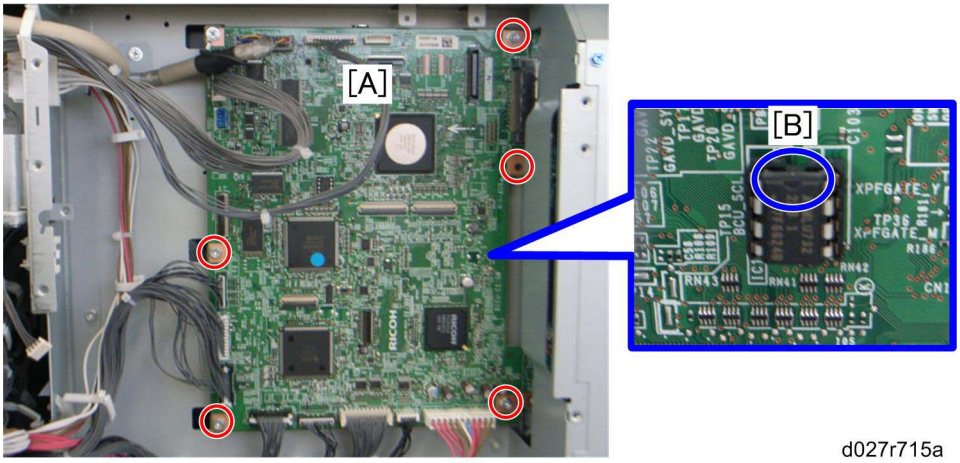
d027r716

3. IOB [A] (☞ x 6, All ☜s)

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.14.6 BICU

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Controller box right cover (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box Right Cover ")
3. Disconnect the harness (CN225) on the IOB board.
4. Move the IOB bracket aside (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box")



5. BICU [A] (x 5, x All)

Note

- Make sure the NVRAM is correctly installed on the BICU. Insert the NVRAM in the NVRAM slot with the "half-moon" pointing [B] to the upward side.

When installing the new BICU

Remove the NVRAM from the old BICU. Then install it on the new BICU after you replace the BICU. Replace the NVRAM (☛ p.4-166 "NVRAM Replacement Procedure") if the NVRAM on the old BICU is defective.

Note

- Make sure you print out the SMC reports (“SP Mode Data” and “Logging Data”) before you replace the NVRAM.

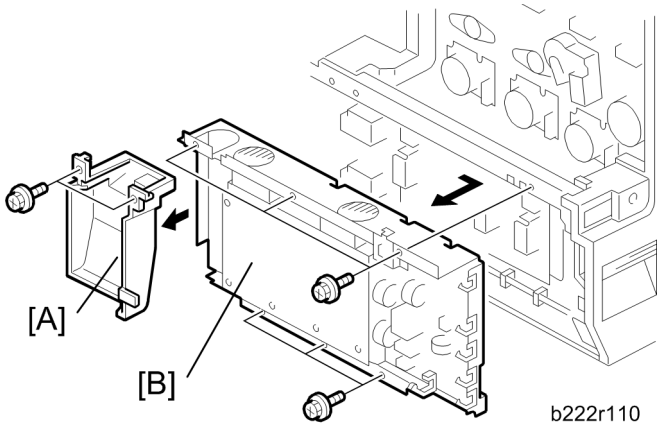
⚠CAUTION

- Keep NVRAMs away from any objects that can cause static electricity. Static electricity can damage NVRAM data.
- Make sure that the DIP-switch settings on the old BICU are the same for the new BICU when. Do not change the DIP switches on the BICU in the field.
- Make sure the serial number is input in the machine for the NVRAM data, if not, SC 995-001 occurs.

4.14.7 PSU

PSU bracket

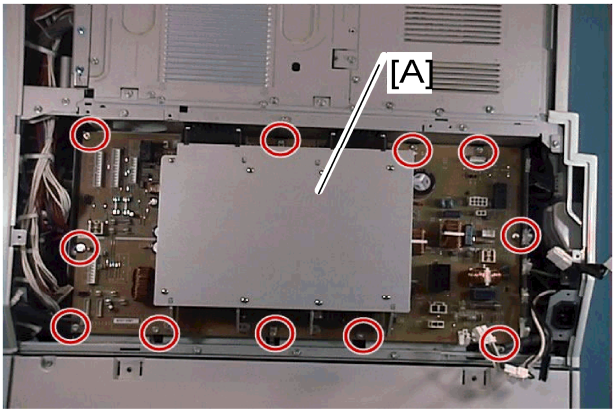
1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")



2. Ventilation duct [A] (x 2)
3. PSU bracket [B] (x 6, x All, x All)

PSU board

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Ventilation duct (☛ p.4-158 "PSU")

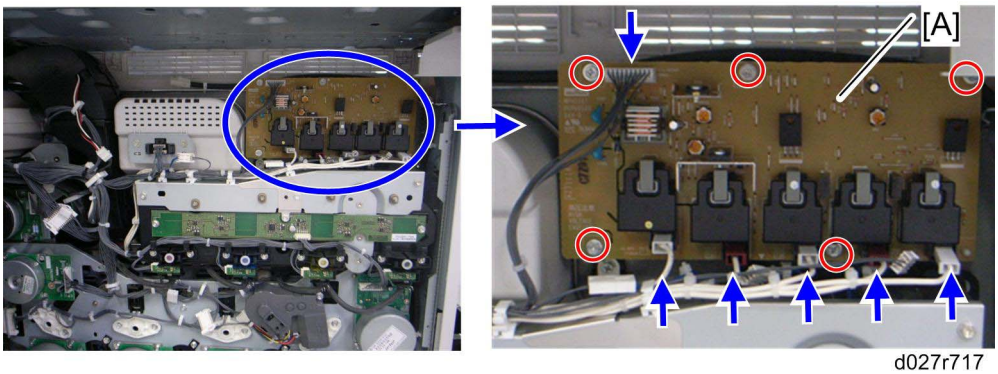


3. PSU board [A] (x 11, all s, all s)

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.14.8 ITB POWER SUPPLY BOARD

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Open the controller box (☛ p.4-153 "Controller Box")

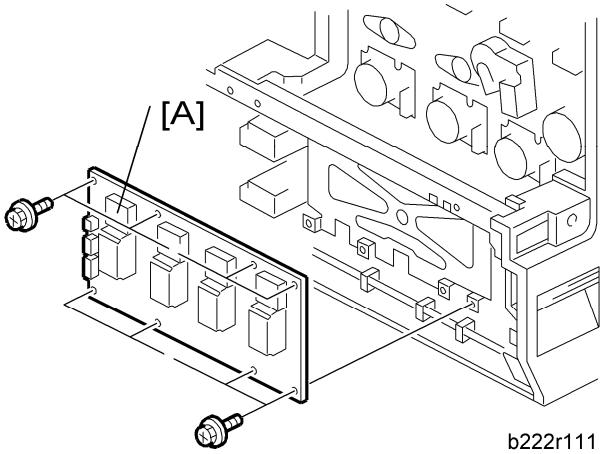


d027r717

3. ITB power supply board [A] (x 5, x 6)

4.14.9 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-158 "PSU")

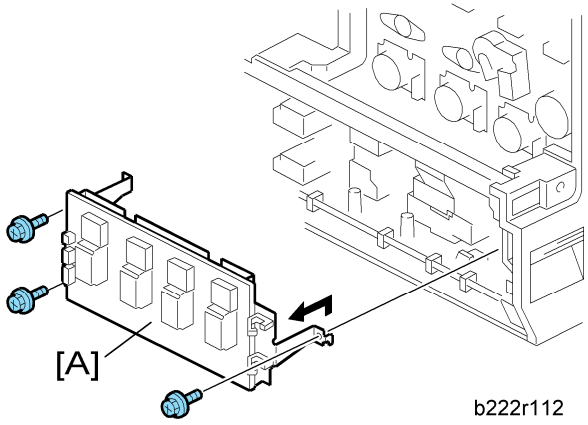


b222r111

3. High voltage supply board [A] (x 8, All s, x 2)

4.14.10 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD BRACKET

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (☛ p.4-158 "PSU")

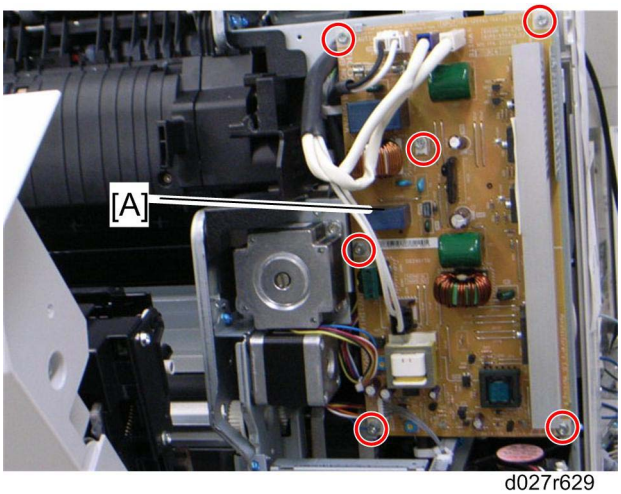


3. High voltage supply board bracket [A] (x 3, x All, x 2)

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.14.11 IH INVERTER

1. Rear cover (☛ p.4-19 "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛ p.4-20 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Fusing duct (☛ p.4-119 "Fusing Fan")

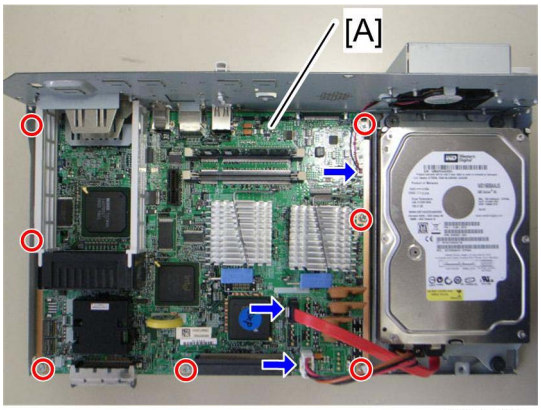


d027r629

4. IH inverter [A] (x 6, x 5)

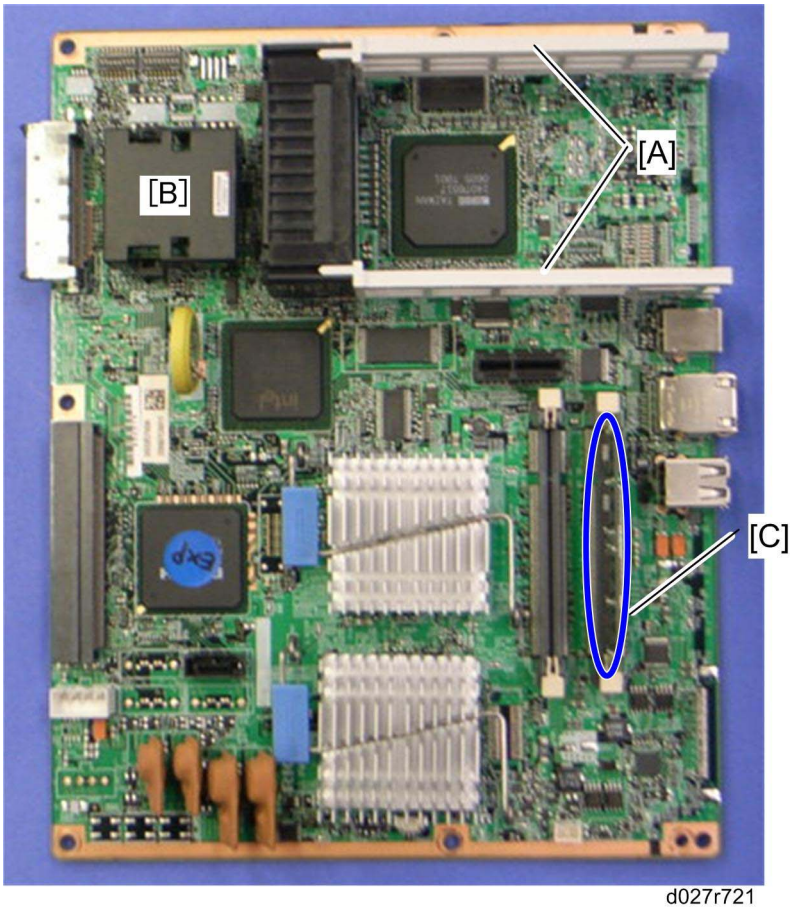
4.14.12 CONTROLLER BOARD

1. Controller unit (☛ p.4-152 "Controller Unit")



d027r720

2. Controller board [A] (x 7, x 3)



d027r721

3. Interface rails [A], NV-RAM [B], RAM-DIMM [C]

When installing the new controller board

Remove the NVRAM from the old controller board. Then install it on the new controller board after you replace the controller board. Replace the NVRAM (☛ p.4-166 "NVRAM Replacement Procedure") if the NVRAM on the old controller board is defective.

Note

- Make sure you print out the SMC reports (“SP Mode Data” and “Logging Data”) before you replace the NVRAM.

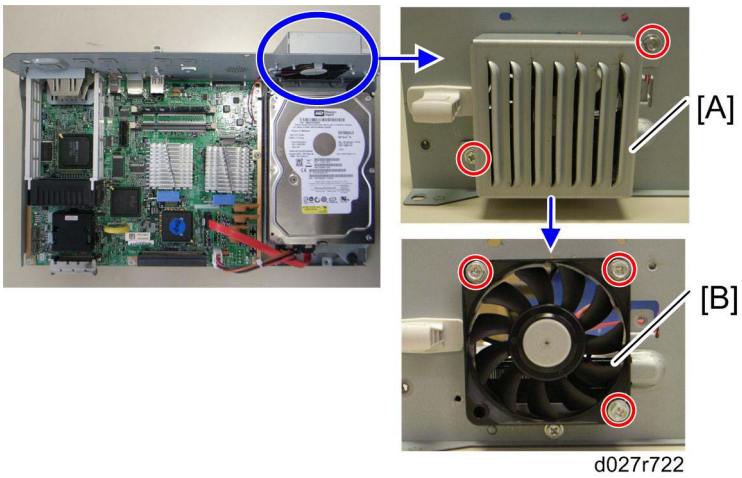
⚠CAUTION

- Keep NVRAMs away from any objects that can cause static electricity. Static electricity can damage NVRAM data.
- Make sure the NVRAM is correctly installed on the controller board.
- Make sure that the DIP-switch settings on the old controller board are the same for the new controller board. Do not change the DIP switches on the controller board in the field.

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.14.13 HDD FAN

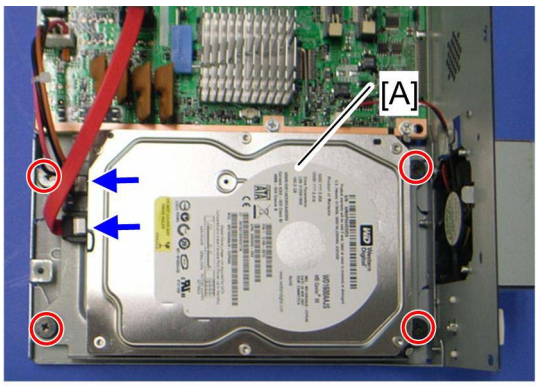
1. Controller unit (☛ p.4-152 "Controller Unit")



2. HDD fan cover [A] (x 2)
3. HDD fan [B] (x 3, x 1)

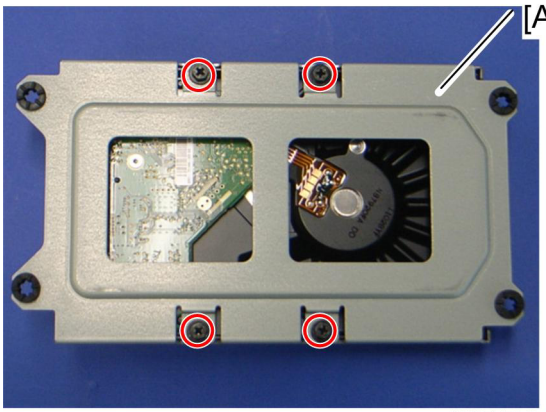
4.14.14 HDD

1. Controller unit (☛ p.4-152 "Controller Unit")



d027r718

2. Remove the HDD [A] with the bracket (🔩 x 4, 🖐 x 2).



d027r719

3. Remove the HDD from the bracket [A] (🔩 x 4).

When installing a new HDD unit

1. Turn the main power switch on. The disk is automatically formatted.
2. Install the stamp data using "SP5853".
3. Switch the machine off and on to enable the fixed stamps for use.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Disposal of HDD Units

- Never remove an HDD unit from the work site without the consent of the client.
- If the customer has any concerns about the security of any information on the HDD, the HDD must remain with the customer for disposal or safe keeping.
- The HDD may contain proprietary or classified (Confidential, Secret) information. Specifically, the HDD contains document server documents and data stored in temporary files created automatically during copy job sorting and jam recovery. Such data is stored on the HDD in a special format so it cannot normally be read but can be recovered with illegal methods.

Reinstallation

Explain to the customer that the following information stored on the HDD is lost when the HDD is replaced:

- Document server documents
- Custom-made stamps
- Document server address book

The address book and document server documents (if needed) must be input again.

If you previously backed up the address book to an SD card with SP5846-051, you can use SP 5846-052 to copy the data from the SD card to the hard disk.

If the customer is using the DataOverwriteSecurity feature, the DOS function must be set up again. For more, see p.2-87 "Controller Options".

If the customer is using the optional Browser Unit, this unit must be installed again. For more, see p.2-87 "Controller Options".

4.14.15 NVRAM REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

NVRAM on the BICU

1. Make sure that you have the SMC report (factory settings). This report comes with the machine.
2. Output the SMC data (☛ SP5-990-001) if possible.
3. Turn the main switch off.
4. Install an SD card into SD card slot 2. Then turn the main power on.
5. Copy the NVRAM data to an SD card (☛ SP5-824-001) if possible.
6. Turn off the main switch. Then unplug the power cord.
7. Replace the NVRAM on the BICU and reassemble the machine.
8. Plug in the power cord. Then turn the main switch on.
9. Select a paper-size type (☛ SP5-131-001).
10. Specify the serial number and destination code of the machine.

Note

- Contact your supervisor for details on how to enter the serial number and destination code.
- SC 195 or "Fusing Unit Setting Error" can be shown until the serial number and destination code are correctly programmed.

11. Turn the main switch off and on.
12. Copy the data from the SD card to the NVRAM (☛ SP5-825-001) if you have successfully copied them to the SD card.
13. Turn the main switch off. Then remove the SD card from SD card slot 2.
14. Turn the main switch on.
15. Specify the SP and UP mode settings.
16. Do the process control self-check.
17. Do ACC for the copier application program.
18. Do ACC for the printer application program.

NVRAM on the Controller

1. Make sure that you have the SMC report (factory settings). This report comes with the machine.
2. Output the SMC data (☛ SP5-990-001) if possible.
3. Turn the main switch off. Then put a blank formatted SD card into SD card slot 2.
4. Turn the main switch on.
5. Copy the NVRAM data (☛ SP5-824-001) and the address book data in the HDD (SP5846-051) to an SD card if possible.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Note

- An error message shows if local user information cannot be stored in an SD card because the capacity is not enough.
- You cannot do this procedure if the SD card is write-protected.

6. Enter SP mode. Then print out the SMC reports (☛ SP5-990-001) if possible.
7. Turn off the main switch. Then unplug the power cord.
8. Replace the NVRAM on the controller. Then reassemble the machine.
9. Check if the serial number shows on the operation panel. (SP5-811-002). Input the serial number if it does not show. (Contact your supervisor about this setting.)
10. Plug in the power cord. Then turn the main switch on.
11. Copy the data from the SD card to the NVRAM (☛ SP5-825-001) and HDD (SP5-846-52) if you have successfully copied them to the SD card.

Note

- The counter data in the user code information clears even if step 11 is done correctly.
- An error message shows if the download is incomplete. However, you can still use the part of the address book data that has already been downloaded in step 11.
- An error message shows when the download data does not exist in the SD card, or, if it is already deleted.
- You cannot do this procedure if the SD card is write-protected.

12. Go out of SP mode. Then turn the main switch off. Then remove the SD card from SD card slot 2.
13. Turn the main switch on.
14. Specify the SP and UP mode settings.
15. Do ACC for the copier application program.
16. Do ACC for the printer application program.

4.15 USING DIP SWITCHES

4.15.1 CONTROLLER BOARD

DIP SW No.	OFF	ON
1	Boot-up from Flash Memory	Boot-up from SD card
2 to 8	Factory Use Only: Do not change the switch settings.	

4.15.2 BICU BOARD

DIP SW No.	OFF	ON
1 and 2	Factory Use Only: Do not change the switch settings.	

http://www.manuals4you.com

SYSTEM MAINTENANCE REFERENCE

SYSTEM MAINTENANCE REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

5. SYSTEM MAINTENANCE REFERENCE

5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

⚠CAUTION

- Make sure that the data-in LED (⇨) is not on before you go into the SP mode. This LED indicates that some data is coming to the machine. When the LED is on, wait for the copier to process the data.

5.1.1 SP TABLES

See "Appendices" for the following information:

- System SP Tables
- Printer SP Tables
- Scanner SP Tables

5.1.2 ENABLING AND DISABLING SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

Note

- The Service Program Mode is for use by service representatives only. If this mode is used by anyone other than service representatives for any reason, data might be deleted or settings might be changed. In such case, product quality cannot be guaranteed any more.

Entering SP Mode

1. Press the "Clear Mode" key (C/⊘).
2. Use keypad to enter "107" (1 0 7).
3. Hold down "Clear/Stop" (C/⊘) for 3 seconds at least.
4. Enter the Service Mode.

Exiting SP Mode

1. Press "Exit" on the LCD twice to return to the copy window.

5.1.3 TYPES OF SP MODES

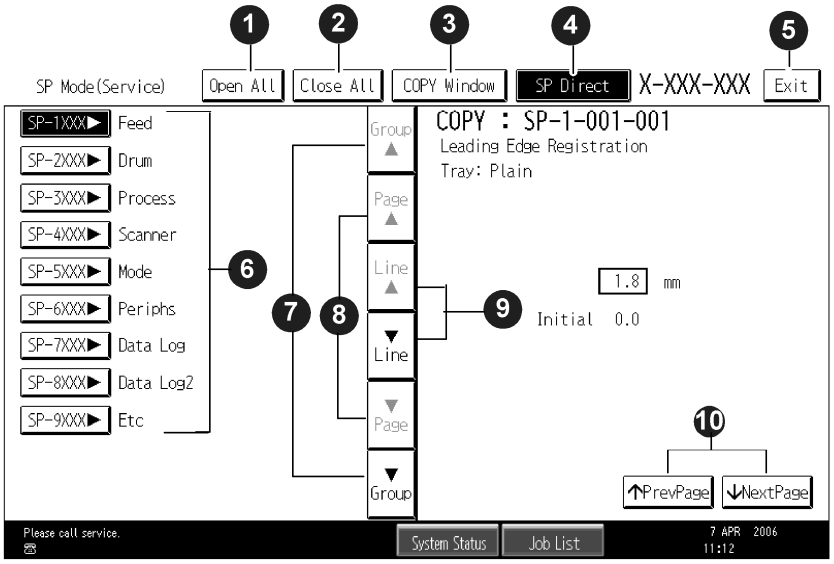
- System SP: SP modes related to the engine functions
- Printer SP: SP modes related to the controller functions
- Scanner SP: SP modes related to the scanner functions
- Fax SP: SP modes related to the fax functions

Select one of the Service Program modes (System, Printer, Scanner, or Fax) from the touch panel as shown in the diagram below after you access the SP mode. This section explains the functions of the System/Printer/Scanner SP modes. Refer to the Fax service manual for the Fax SP modes.



SP Mode Button Summary

Here is a short summary of the touch-panel buttons.



http://www.manuals4you.com

❶	Opens all SP groups and sublevels.
❷	Closes all open groups and sublevels and restores the initial SP mode display.
❸	Opens the copy window (copy mode) so you can make test copies. Press SP Mode (highlighted) in the copy window to return to the SP mode screen,
❹	Enter the SP code directly with the number keys if you know the SP number. Then press #. (The required SP Mode number will be highlighted when pressing #. If not, just press the required SP Mode number.)
❺	Press two times to leave the SP mode and return to the copy window to resume normal operation.
❻	Press any Class 1 number to open a list of Class 2 SP modes.
❼	Press to scroll the show to the previous or next group.
❽	Press to scroll to the previous or next display in segments the size of the screen display (page).
❾	Press to scroll the show the previous or next line (line by line).
❿	Press to move the highlight on the left to the previous or next selection in the list.

Switching Between SP Mode and Copy Mode for Test Printing

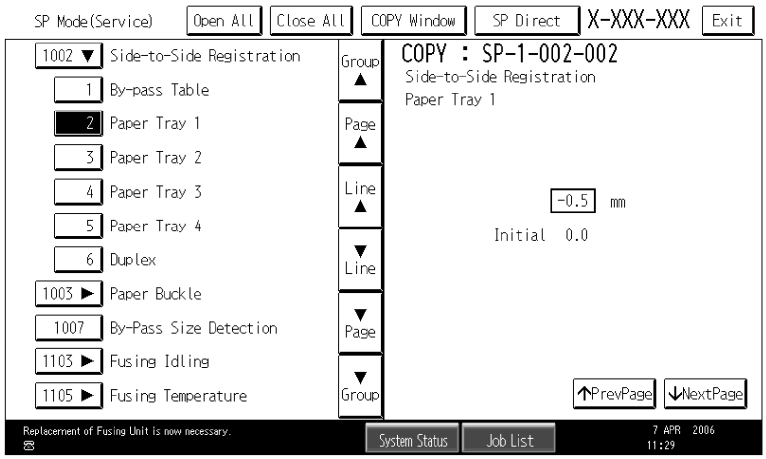
1. In the SP mode, select the test print. Then press "Copy Window".
2. Use the copy window (copier mode), to select the appropriate settings (paper size, etc.) for the test print.
3. Press Start ◇ to start the test print.
4. Press SP Mode (highlighted) to return to the SP mode screen and repeat from step 1.

Selecting the Program Number

Program numbers have two or three levels.

1. Refer to the Service Tables to find the SP that you want to adjust before you begin.
2. Press the Group number on the left side SP Mode window that contains the SP that you want to adjust.
3. Use the scrolling buttons in the center of the SP mode window to show the SP number that you want to open. Then press that number to expand the list.

4. Use the center touch-panel buttons to scroll to the number and title of the item that you want to set and press it. The small entry box on the right activates and shows the below default or the current settings.



Note

- Refer to the Service Tables for the range of allowed settings.

1. Do this procedure to enter a setting:
   - Press (*) to toggle between plus and minus and use the keypad to enter the appropriate number. The number you enter writes over the previous setting.
   - Press (#) to enter the setting. (The value is not registered if you enter a number that is out of range.)
   - Press “Yes” when you are prompted to complete the selection.
2. If you need to perform a test print, press Copy Window to open the copy window and select the settings for the test print. Press Start ◇ and then press SP Mode (highlighted) in the copy window to return to the SP mode display.
3. Press Exit two times to return to the copy window when you are finished.

Exiting Service Mode

Press the Exit key on the touch-panel.

Service Mode Lock/Unlock

At locations where the machine contains sensitive data, the customer engineer cannot operate the machine until the Administrator turns the service mode lock off. This function makes sure that work on the machine is always done with the permission of the Administrator.

1. If you cannot go into the SP mode, ask the Administrator to log in with the User Tool and then set “Service Mode Lock” to OFF after he or she logs in:
   User Tools > System Settings > Administrator Tools > Service Mode Lock > OFF
   - This unlocks the machine and lets you get access to all the SP codes.

http://www.manuals4you.com

- The CE can service the machine and turn the machine off and on. It is not necessary to ask the Administrator to log in again each time the machine is turned on.

2. Go into the SP mode and set SP5169 to “1” if you must use the printer bit switches.
3. After machine servicing is completed:
   - Change SP5169 from “1” to “0”.
   - Turn the machine off and on. Tell the administrator that you have completed servicing the machine.
   - The Administrator will then set the “Service Mode Lock” to ON.

5.1.4 REMARKS

Display on the Control Panel Screen

The maximum number of characters which can show on the control panel screen is limited to 30 characters. For this reason, some of the SP modes shown on the screen need to be abbreviated. The following are abbreviations used for the SP modes for which the full description is over 20 characters.

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">Paper Weight
Thin paper: 52-59 g/m^2
Plain Paper: 60-90 g/m^2, 16-24lb.
Middle Thick: 91-105 g/m^2, 24-28lb.
Thick Paper 1: 106-169 g/m^2, 28.5-44.9lb.
Thick Paper 2: 170-220 g/m^2, 45-58lb.
Thick Paper 3: 221-256 g/m^{2,} 59lb-68lb</td></tr>
<tr><td>Paper Type
N: Normal paper
MTH: Middle thick paper
TH: Thick paper</td><td>Paper Feed Station
P: Paper tray
B: By-pass table</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Color Mode [Color]
[K]: Black in B&W mode
[Y], [M], or [C]: Yellow, Magenta, or Cyan in Full Color mode
[YMC]: Only for Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan
[FC]: Full Color mode
[FC, K], [FC, Y], [FC, M], or [FC, C]: Black, Yellow, Magenta, or Cyan in full color mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>Print Mode
S: Simplex
D: Duplex</td><td>Process Speed
L: Low speed (77 mm/s)
M: Middle speed (154 mm/s)
H: High speed (C2d: 230, C2c 205 mm/s)</td></tr>
</table>

Others

The following symbols are used in the SP mode tables.

FA: Factory setting

http://www.manuals4you.com

(Data may be adjusted from the default setting at the factory. Refer to the factory setting sheets enclosed. You can find it under the jammed paper removal decal.)

DFU: Design/Factory Use only

Do not touch these SP modes in the field.

A sharp (#) to the right hand side of the mode number column means that the main switch must be turned off and on to effect the setting change.

An asterisk (*) to the right hand side of the mode number column means that this mode is stored in the NVRAM. If you do a RAM clear, this SP mode will be reset to the default value.

“ENG” and “CTL” show which NVRAM contains the data.

- ENG: NVRAM on the BICU board
- CTL: NVRAM on the controller board

The settings of each SP mode are explained in the right-hand column of the SP table in the following way.

[Adjustable range / **Default setting** / Step] Alphanumeric



- If “Alphanumeric” is written to the right of the bracket as shown above, the setting of the SP mode shows on the screen using alphanumeric characters instead of only numbers. However, the settings in the bracket in the SP mode table are explained by using only the numbers.

SSP: This denotes a “Special Service Program” mode setting.

5.2 FIRMWARE UPDATE

To update the firmware for this machine, you must have the new version of the firmware downloaded onto an SD (Secure Digital) Card. The SD Card is inserted into SD Card Slot 2 on the left rear side of the controller box.

5.2.1 TYPE OF FIRMWARE

There are 19 types of firmware as shown below.

Type of firmware	Function	Location of firmware	Message shown
Engine	Printer engine control	BICU Flash ROM	Engine
System/Copy Application	Operating system	Flash ROM on the controller board	System/Copy
Netfile Application	Feature application	Flash ROM on the controller board	NetworkDocBox
Printer Application	Feature application	Flash ROM on the controller board	SD Printer
Scanner Application	Feature application	Flash ROM on the controller board	SD Scanner
Fax Application	Feature application	Flash ROM on the controller board	Fax
NIB	Network Interface	Flash ROM on the controller board	Network
Operation Panel	Panel control	Operation Panel	OpePanel.
Jam Animation	Jam animation	Flash ROM on the controller board	Animation
Fax FCU	Fax control	FCU	GWFCU 3-3
Remote Fax	Fax control	Flash ROM on the	Fax (option)

http://www.manuals4you.com

		controller board	
Language (16 languages)	Language firmware Two languages can be selected from 16 languages.	Operation Panel	LANG
WebDocBox	Document server application	Flash ROM on the controller board	Web Uapl
WebSys	Web Service application	Flash ROM on the controller board	Web Support
PS3	Page description language (PostScript3)	PS3 SD card	Option PS3
PictBridge	PictBridge control	PictBridge SD card	Option PctBrgd
DESS	Security control	Flash ROM on the controller board	Security Module
ARDF	ARDF control	ARDF	ADF
Finisher (B804/805 only)	Finisher control	Finisher (B804/805only)	Finisher

5.2.2 BEFORE YOU BEGIN

An SD card is a precision device. Always observe the following precautions when you handle SD cards:

- Always switch the machine off before you insert an SD card. Never insert the SD card into the slot with the power on.
- Do not remove the SD card from the service slot after the power has been switched on.
- Never switch the machine off while the firmware is downloading from the SD card.
- Keep SD cards in a safe location where they are not exposed to high temperature, high humidity, or exposure to direct sunlight.
- Always handle SD cards with care. Do not bend or scratch them. Do not let the SD card get exposed to shock or vibration.
- Make sure that the write protection of an SD card is unlocked when you download an application to it. If not, downloading fails and a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade.

Keep the following points in mind when you use the firmware update software:

- “Upload” means to send data from the machine to the SD card. “Download” means to send data from the SD card to the machine.
- To select an item on the LCD, touch the appropriate button on the soft touch-screen of the LCD, or, press the appropriate number key on the 10-key pad of the operation panel. For example, when “Exit (0)” shows on the screen you can touch the Exit button on the screen, or, press the ⓪ button on the operation panel of the copier.
- Make sure that the machine is disconnected from the network to prevent a print job for arriving while the firmware update is in progress before you start the firmware update procedure.

http://www.manuals4you.com

5.2.3 UPDATING FIRMWARE

Preparation

- If the SD card is blank, copy the entire “romdata” folder onto the SD card.
- If the card already contains the “romdata” folder, copy the “D027” folder onto the card.

If the card already contains folders up to “D027”, copy the necessary firmware files (e.g. D027xxxx.fwu) into this folder.

Note

- Do not put multiple machine firmware programs on the same SD card. Copy the only model firmware you want.

Updating Procedure

1. Turn the main power switch off.
2. Remove the slot cover (x 1).
3. Insert the SD card into SD Card Slot 2. Make sure the label on the SD card faces the front side of the machine.
4. Slowly push the SD card into the slot so it locks in place. You will hear it click. Make sure the SD card locks in place.

   Note

   - To remove the SD, push it in to unlock the spring lock. Then release it so it pops out of the slot.
5. Disconnect the network cable from the copier if the machine is connected to a network.
6. Switch the main power switch on. After about 45 seconds, the initial version update screen appears on the LCD in English.
7. On the screen, touch the button or press the corresponding number key on the operation panel to select the item in the menu that you want to update.

ROM/NEW	What it means
ROM:	Tells you the number of the module and name of the version currently installed. The first line is the module number, the second line the version name.
NEW:	Tells you the number of the module and name version on the SD card. The first line is the module number, the second line the version name.

Firmware Update

Note

- Controller, engine and operation panel firmware cannot be updated at the same time. It is recommended to update firmware modules one by one.

8. Touch “UpDate (#)” (or ⓗ) to start the update.

Note

- The progress bar does not show for the operation panel firmware after you touch “OpPanel”. The power on key flashes on and off at 0.5 s intervals when the LCDC firmware is updating. The power key flashes on and off at three seconds intervals when the update is finished.

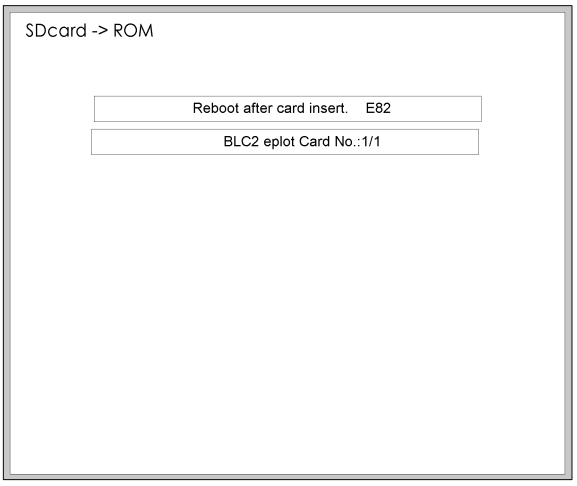
9. The "Update is Done" message appears on the operation panel after completing the updating. The message differs depending on the firmware that has been updated.
10. Switch the copier main power switch off when you see the “Update is Done” message or follow the procedure that is displayed on the operation panel.
11. Press in the SD card to release it. Then remove it from the slot.
12. Switch the copier on for normal operation.

Error Messages

An error message shows in the first line if an error occurs during the download.
The error code consists of the letter “E” and a number. The example above shows error “E24” displayed. For details, refer to the Error Message Table. (☛ "Handling Firmware Update Errors" in this section)

Firmware Update Error

If a firmware update error occurs, this means the update was cancelled during the update because the module selected for update was not on the SD card.



http://www.manuals4you.com

Recovery after Power Loss

If the ROM update is interrupted as a result of accidental loss of power while the firmware is updating, then the correct operation of the machine cannot be guaranteed after the machine is switched on again. If the ROM update does not complete successfully for any reason, then in order to ensure the correct operation of the machine, the ROM update error will continue to show until the ROM is updated successfully.
In this case, insert the card again and switch on the machine to continue the firmware download automatically from the card without the menu display.

5.2.4 UPDATING THE LCDC FOR THE OPERATION PANEL

Do the following procedure to update the LCDC (LCD Control Board).

1. Turn the copier main switch off.
2. Remove the SD slot cover (🖉 x 1).
3. Insert the SD card into SD Card Slot 2.
4. Switch the copier main switch on.
5. The initial screen opens in English after about 45 seconds.
6. Touch “Ope Panel.xx”.
7. "xx" differs depending on the destination.
8. Touch “UpDate(#) or (#) to start the update.
9. Downloading starts after about 9 seconds.
10. The operation panel goes off and the main power on key flashes in red at 0.5 s intervals when the data is downloading. The same key starts flashing in green at 1 s intervals when the update is finished.
11. Switch the copier main power switch off and remove the SD card. Then switch the copier on.

5.2.5 HANDLING FIRMWARE UPDATE ERRORS

An error message shows in the first line if an error occurs during a download. The error code consists of the letter “E” and a number (“E20”, for example).

Error Message Table

Code	Meaning	Solution
20	Cannot map logical address	Make sure the SD card is inserted correctly.
21	Cannot access memory	HDD connection incorrect or replace hard disks.
22	Cannot decompress compressed data	Incorrect ROM data on the SD card, or data is corrupted.
23	Error occurred when ROM update program started	Controller program abnormal. If the second attempt fails, replace controller board.
24	SD card access error	Make sure SD card inserted correctly, or use another SD card.
30	No HDD available for stamp data download	HDD connection incorrect or replace hard disks.
31	Data incorrect for continuous download	Insert the SD card with the remaining data required for the download, the re-start the procedure.
32	Data incorrect after download interrupted	Execute the recovery procedure for the intended module download, then repeat the installation procedure.
33	Incorrect SD card version	Incorrect ROM data on the SD card, or data is corrupted.
34	Module mismatch - Correct module is not on the SD card)	SD update data is incorrect. Acquire the correct data (Japan, Overseas, OEM, etc.) then install again.

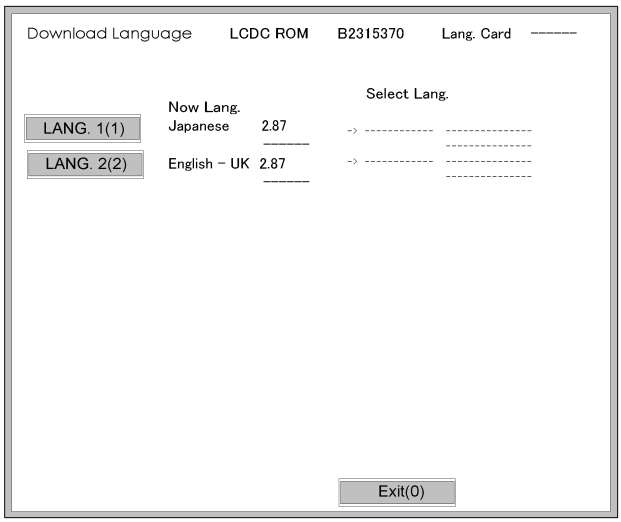
http://www.manuals4you.com

Code	Meaning	Solution
35	Module mismatch – Module on SD card is not for this machine	SD update data is incorrect. The data on the SD card is for another machine. Acquire correct update data then install again.
36	Cannot write module – Cause other than E34, E35	SD update data is incorrect. The data on the SD card is for another machine. Acquire correct update data then install again.
40	Engine module download failed	Replace the update data for the module on the SD card and try again, or replace the BICU board.
42	Operation panel module download failed	Replace the update data for the module on the SD card and try again, or replace the LCDC.
43	Stamp data module download failed	Replace the update data for the module on the SD card and try again, or replace the hard disks.
44	Controller module download failed	Replace the update data for the module on the SD card and tray again, or replace controller board.
50	Electronic confirmation check failed	SD update data is incorrect. The data on the SD card is for another machine. Acquire correct update data then install again.

5.3 INSTALLING ANOTHER LANGUAGE

Many languages are available. But you can only switch between two languages at a time. Do the following procedure to select the two languages you want. You can select both of the languages you want from the user interface on the operation panel.

1. Switch the copier main power switch off.
2. Remove the SD slot cover (☞ x 1).
3. Insert the SD card with the language data into SD Card Slot 2.
4. Switch the copier main power switch on. The initial screen opens after about 45 seconds.
5. Touch "Language Data (2)" on the screen (or press ②).

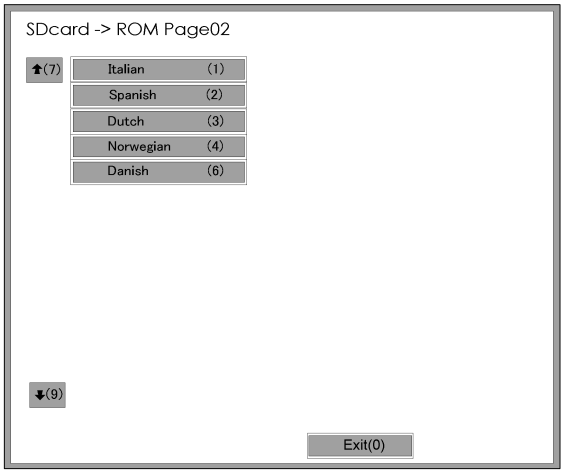


6. Touch "LANG. 1(1)" or "LANG. 2(2)"

Key	What it does
LANG. 1(1)	Touch this button on the screen (or press ① on the 10-key pad) to open the next screen so you can select the 1st language.
LANG. 1(2)	Touch this button on the screen (or press ② on the 10-key pad) to open the next screen so you can select the 2nd language.
Exit (0)	Touch this key on the screen (or press ⓪ on the 10-key pad) to quit the update procedure and return to normal screen.

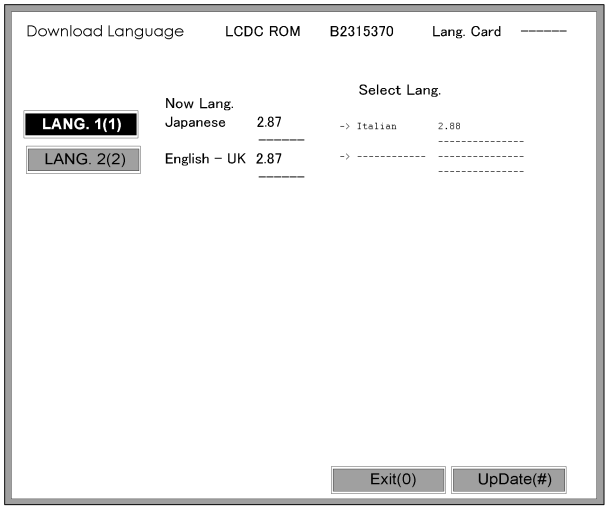
7. Touch "LANG 1(1)" to select the 1st Language. Touch "LANG (2)" to select the 2nd Language.

http://www.manuals4you.com



8. Touch the appropriate button on the screen (or press the number on the 10-keypad) to select a language as the 1st (or 2nd) language.
   - If a language is already selected, it will show in reverse.
   - Touching "Exit (0)" returns you to the previous screen.
9. If you do not see the language that you want to select, touch "↑(7)" or "↓(9)" on the screen (or press ⑦ or ⑨) to show more choices.
   The Download Screen opens after you select a language.
   The 1st or 2nd language selected for updating shows.
   The following show to right of the selection:
   - 1. The first column shows the language currently selected.
   - 2. The 2nd column shows the language selected to replace that language.

   The example below shows that the download will replace "Japanese" with "Italian" as the 1st language.



10. Touch "Update(#)" on the screen (or press ⑭) to start the download.
    Another screen with a progress bar does not show when the language is downloading.

Installing Another Language

The following occur at the time the language is downloading:

- The operation panel switches off.
- The LED on the power on key flashes rapidly.

11. After the message of installation completed has shown on the LCD, switch the copier main power switch off. Then remove the SD card from the slot.
12. Switch the copier main power switch on to resume normal operation.

http://www.manuals4you.com

5.4 REBOOT/SYSTEM SETTING RESET

5.4.1 SOFTWARE RESET

You can reboot the software with one of the following two procedures:

1. Turn the main power switch off and on.
2. Press and hold down ⊙/✂ # together for over 10 seconds. When the machine beeps once, release both buttons. After “Now loading. Please wait” shows for a few seconds, the copy window will open. The machine is ready for normal operation.

5.4.2 SYSTEM SETTINGS AND COPY SETTING RESET

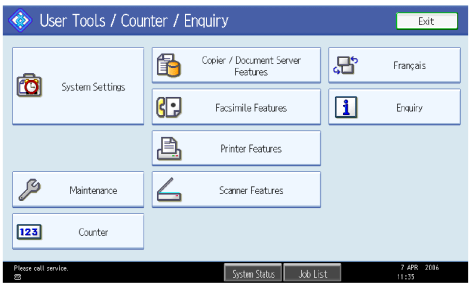
System Setting Reset

The system settings in the UP mode can be reset to their defaults. Use the following procedure.

1. Press User Tools/Counter ◈/123.
2. Hold down # and then press System Settings.

Note

- You must press # first.



3. Press yes when the message prompts you to confirm that you want to reset the system settings.
4. Press exit when the message tells you that the settings have been reset.

Copier Setting Reset

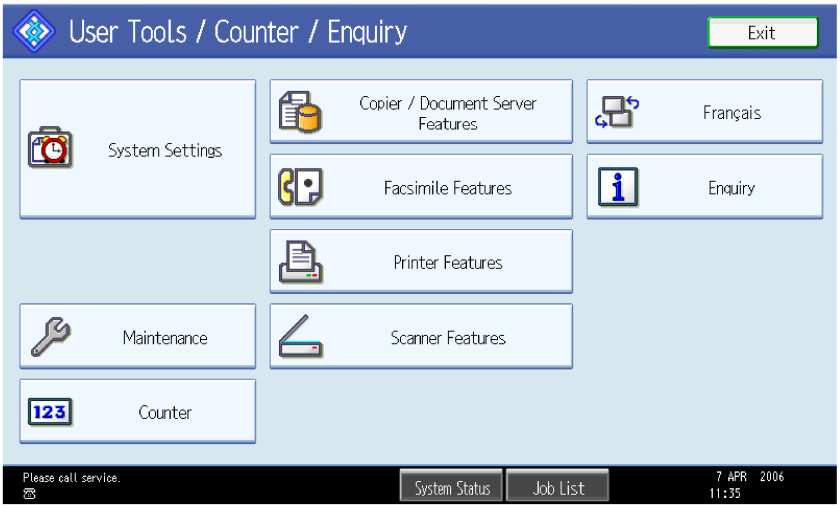
Use the following procedure to reset the copy settings in the UP mode to their defaults.

1. Press User Tools/Counter ◈/123.
2. Hold down # and then press Copier/Document Server Settings.

Reboot/System Setting Reset

Note

- You must press # first.



3. Press “Yes” when the message prompts you to confirm that you want to reset the Copier Document Server settings.
4. Press exit when the message tells you that the settings have been reset.

http://www.manuals4you.com

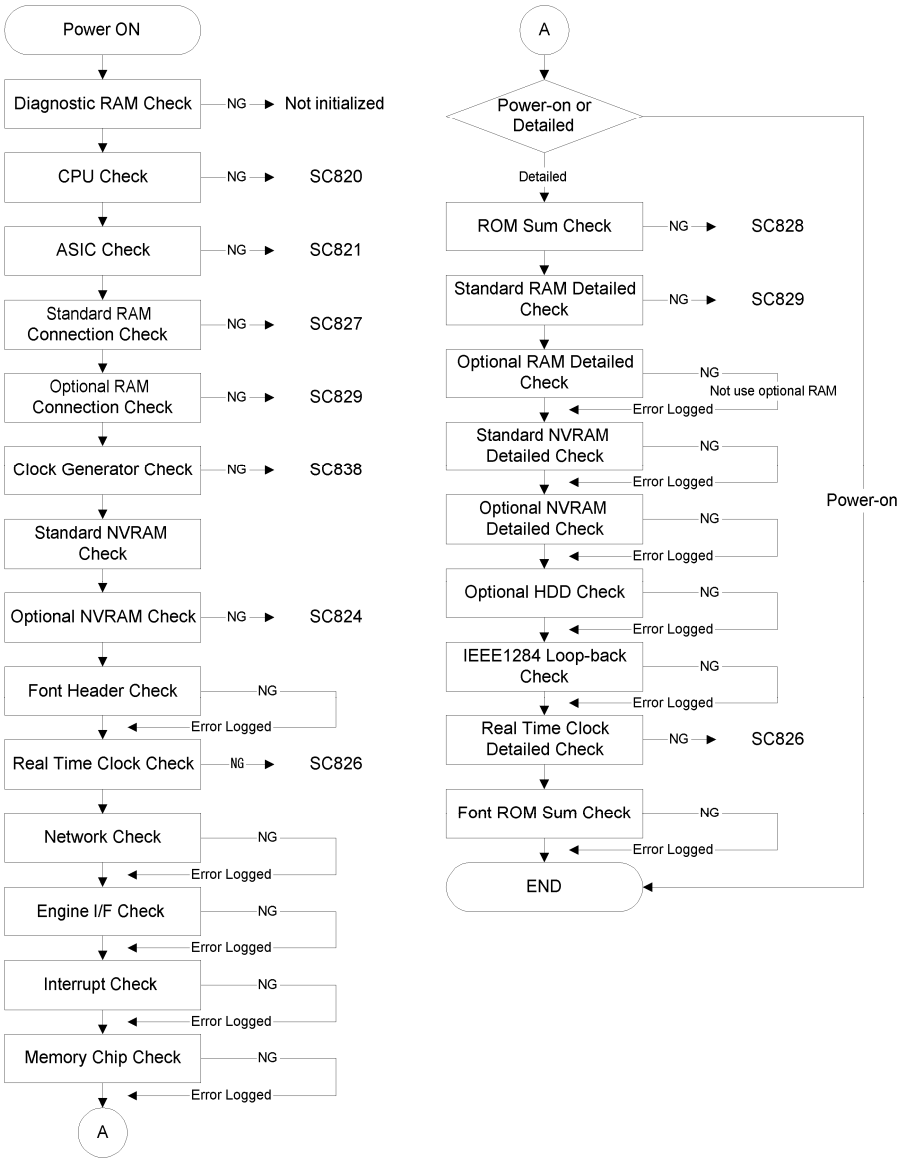
5.5 CONTROLLER SELF-DIAGNOSTICS

5.5.1 OVERVIEW

There are three types of self-diagnostics for the controller.

1. Power-on self-diagnostics: The machine automatically starts the self-diagnostics just after the power has been turned on.
2. SC detection: The machine automatically detects SC conditions at power-on or during operation.

The following shows the workflow of the power-on and detailed self-diagnostics.



5.6 SD CARD APPLI MOVE

5.6.1 OVERVIEW

The service program “SD Card Appli Move” (SP5-873) lets you to copy application programs from one SD card to another SD card.

Slot 1 and Slot 2 are used to store application programs. However, more than two optional applications are supplied for this machine. In that case, you can move application programs from Slot 2 to Slot 1 with the following procedure.

Consider the following limitations when you try to merge SD cards.

- PostScript3 cannot be moved to the other SD card.
- The destination SD card should have the largest memory size of all the application SD cards. Refer to the following table for the memory size of each SD card.

Outline of SD Card Appli Move:

1. Choose a SD card with enough space.

   Note

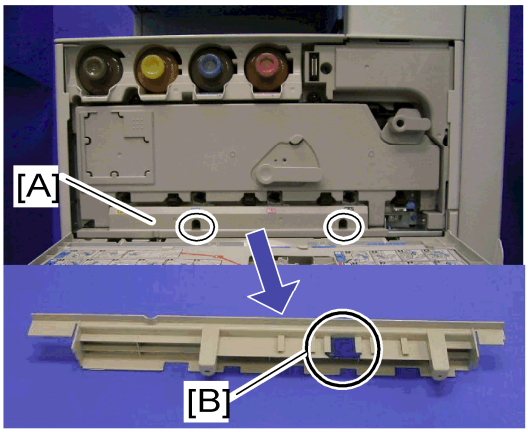
   - Do not use an SD card if it has been used on a computer. Normal operation is not guaranteed when such an SD card is used.
2. Enter SP5873 “SD Card Appli Move”. Then move the application from the SD Card in Slot 2 to the card in slot 1.
3. Exit the SP mode

   Use caution when you do the SD Card Appli Move procedure:

   Note

   - The data necessary for authentication is transferred with the application program from an SD card to another SD card. Authentication fails if you try to use the SD card after you copy the application program from one card to another card.

http://www.manuals4you.com



4. Remove the cover [A] (x 2).
5. Keep the SD card in the place [B] after you have copied the application program from one card to another card. This is done for the following reasons:
   - 1) The SD card can be the only proof that the user is licensed to use the application program.
   - 2) You may need to check the SD card and its data to solve a problem in the future.

5.6.2 MOVE EXEC

The menu “Move Exec” (SP5-873-001) lets you copy application programs from the original SD card to another SD card.

Important

- Do not turn ON the write protect switch of an application SD card on the machine. If the write protect switch is ON, a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade or application merge.

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. Make sure that an SD card is in SD Card Slot 1. The application program is copied into this SD card.
3. Insert the SD card (having stored the application program) to SD Card Slot 2. The application program is copied from this SD card.
4. Turn the main switch on.
5. Start the SP mode.
6. Select SP5-873-001 “Move Exec.”
7. Follow the messages shown on the operation panel.
8. Turn the main switch off.
9. Remove the SD card from SD Card Slot 2.
10. Turn the main switch on.
11. Check that the application programs run normally.

http://www.manuals4you.com

5.6.3 UNDO EXEC

The menu “Undo Exec” (SP5-873-002) lets you copy back application programs from an SD card to the original SD card. You can use this program when, for example, you have mistakenly copied some programs by using Move Exec (SP5-873-001).

Important

- Do not turn ON the write protect switch of an application SD card on the machine. If the write protect switch is ON, a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade or application merge.

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. Insert the original SD card in SD Card Slot 2. The application program is copied back into this card.
3. Insert the SD card (having stored the application program) to SD Card Slot 1. The application program is copied back from this SD card.
4. Turn the main switch on.
5. Start the SP mode.
6. Select SP5-873-002 “Undo Exec.”
7. Follow the messages shown on the operation panel.
8. Turn the main switch off.
9. Remove the SD card from SD Card Slot 2.

Note

- This step assumes that the application programs in the SD card are used by the machine.

10. Turn the main switch on.
11. Check that the application programs run normally.

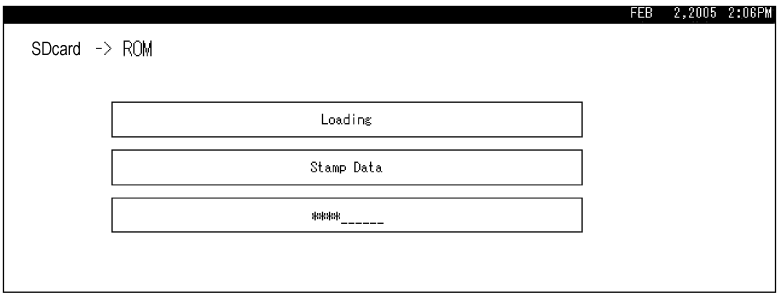
5.7 DOWNLOADING STAMP DATA

The stamp data should be downloaded from the controller firmware to the hard disks at the following times:

- After the hard disks have been replaced.

The print data contains the controller software. Execute SP 5853 to download the fixed stamp data required by the hard disks.

1. Enter the SP mode.
2. Select SP5853 and then press “EXECUTE”. The following screen opens while the stamp data is downloading.



The download is finished when the message prompts you to close.



3. Press the “Exit” button. Then turn the copier off and on again.

http://www.manuals4you.com

5.8 NVRAM DATA UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD

5.8.1 UPLOADING CONTENT OF NVRAM TO AN SD CARD

Do the following procedure to upload SP code settings from NVRAM to an SD card.

Note

- This data should always be uploaded to an SD card before the NVRAM is replaced.
- Make sure that the write protection of an SD card is unlocked

1. Do SP5990-001 (SMC Print) before you switch the machine off. You will need a record of the NVRAM settings if the upload fails.
2. Switch the copier main power switch off.
3. Remove the SD slot cover (🖉 x 1).
4. Insert the SD card into SD card slot 2. Then switch the copier on.
5. Execute SP5824-001 (NVRAM Data Upload) and then press the “Execute” key.
6. The following files are coped to an NVRAM folder on the SD card when the upload procedure is finished. The file is saved to the path and the following filename:
   NVRAM¥<serial number>.NV
   Here is an example with Serial Number “K5000017114”:
   NVRAM¥K5000017114.NV
7. In order to prevent an error during the download, be sure to mark the SD card that holds the uploaded data with the number of the machine from which the data was uploaded.

   Note

   - You can upload NVRAM data from more than one machine to the same SD card.

5.8.2 DOWNLOADING AN SD CARD TO NVRAM

Do the following procedure to download SP data from an SD card to the NVRAM in the machine.

- The NVRAM data down load may fail if the SD card with the NVRAM data is damaged, or if the connection between the controller and BICU is defective.
- Do the download procedure again if the download fails.
- Do the following procedure if the second attempt fails:
- Enter the NVRAM data manually using the SMC print you created before uploading the NVRAM data.

1. Switch the copier main power switch off.
2. Remove the SD slot cover (x 1).
3. Insert the SD card with the NVRAM data into SD Card Slot 2.
4. Switch the copier main power switch on.
5. Do SP5825-001 (NVRAM Data Download) and press the “Execute” key.

Note

- The serial number of the file on the SD card must match the serial number of the machine for the NVRAM data to download successfully. The download fails if the serial numbers do not match.

This procedure does not download the following data to the NVRAM:

- Total Count
- C/O, P/O Count

http://www.manuals4you.com

5.9 ADDRESS BOOK UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD

5.9.1 INFORMATION LIST

The following information is possible to be uploaded and downloaded.

Information	
▪ Registration No. ▪ User Code ▪ E-mail ▪ Protection Code ▪ Fax Destination ▪ Fax Option ▪ Group Name ▪ Key Display	▪ Select Title ▪ Folder ▪ Local Authentication ▪ Folder Authentication ▪ Account ACL ▪ New Document Initial ACL ▪ LDAP Authentication

5.9.2 DOWNLOAD

1. Prepare a formatted SD card.
2. Make sure that the write-protection on the SD card is off.
3. Turn off the main power switch of the main machine.
4. Remove the SD slot cover at the left rear side of the machine (☞ x 1).
5. Install the SD card into the SD card slot 2 (for service use).
6. Turn on the main power switch.
7. Enter the SP mode.
8. Do SP5-846-051 (Backup All Addr Book).
9. Exit the SP mode, and then turn off the main power switch.
10. Remove the SD card form the SD card slot 2.
11. Install the SD slot cover.

Note

- If the capacity of SD card is not enough to store the local user information, an error message is displayed.
- Carefully handle the SD card, which contains user information. Do not take it back to your location.

5.9.3 UPLOAD

1. Turn off the main power switch of the main machine.
2. Remove the SD slot cover at the left rear side of the machine (x 1).
3. Install the SD card, which has already been uploaded, into the SD card slot 2.
4. Turn on the main power switch.
5. Enter the SP mode.
6. Do SP5-846-052 (Restore All Addr Book).
7. Exit the SP mode, and then turn off the main power switch.
8. Remove the SD card form the SD card slot 2.
9. Install the SD slot cover.

Note

- The counter in the user code information is initialized after uploading.
- The information of an administrator and supervisor cannot be downloaded nor uploaded.
- If there is no data of address book information in the SD card, an error message is displayed.

http://www.manuals4you.com

5.10 USING THE DEBUG LOG

5.10.1 OVERVIEW

This machine provides a Save Debug Log feature that allows the Customer Engineer to save and retrieve error information for analysis.

Every time an error occurs, debug information is recorded in volatile memory. But this information is lost when the machine is switched off and on.

To capture this debug information, the Save Debug Log feature provides two main features:

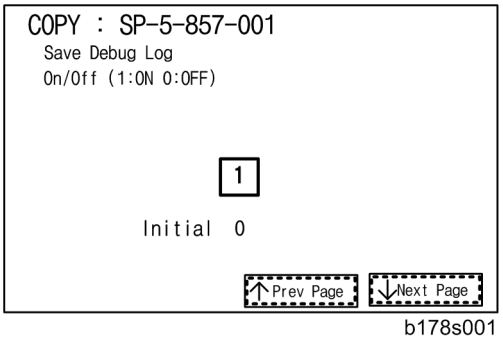
- Switching on the debug feature so error information is saved directly to the HDD for later retrieval.
- Copying the error information from the HDD to an SD card.

Do the following procedure below to set up the machine so the error information is saved automatically to the HDD when a user has problems with the machine. Then ask the user to reproduce the problem.

5.10.2 SWITCHING ON AND SETTING UP SAVE DEBUG LOG

The debug information cannot be saved until the “Save Debug Log” function has been switched on and a target has been selected.

1. Enter the SP mode and switch the Save Debug Log feature on.
   - Press ⌨ then use the 10-key pad to enter ①⓪⑦.
   - Press and hold down ⓒ/⊘ for more than 3 seconds.
   - Touch “Copy SP”.
   - On the LCD panel, open SP5857.
2. Under “5857 Save Debug Log”, touch “1 On/Off”.

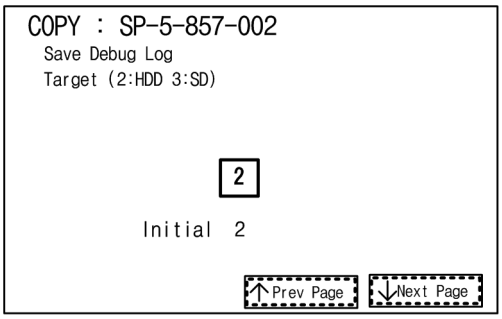


b178s001

3. On the control panel keypad, press “1”. Then press ⓝ. This switches the Save Debug Log feature on.

Note

- The default setting is “0” (OFF). This feature must be switched on in order for the debug information to be saved.



b178s002

4. Select the target destination where the debug information will be saved. Under “5857 Save Debug Log”, touch “2 Target”, enter “2” with the operation panel key to select the hard disk as the target destination. Then press #.

Note

- Select “3 SD Card” to save the debug information directly to the SD card if it is inserted in the service slot.

5. Now touch “5858” and specify the events that you want to record in the debug log. SP5858 (Debug Save When) provides the following items for selection.

1	Engine SC Error	Saves data when an engine-related SC code is generated.
2	Controller SC Error	Saves debug data when a controller-related SC Code is generated.
3	Any SC Error	Saves data only for the SC code that you specify by entering code number.
4	Jam	Saves data for jams.

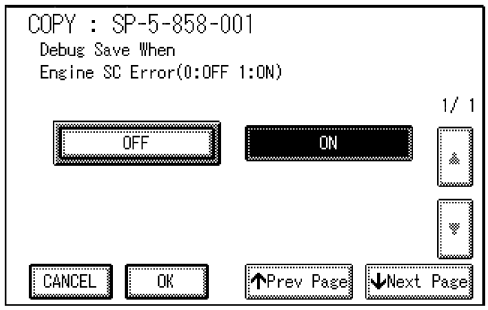
Note

- More than one event can be selected.

Example 1: To Select Items 1, 2, 4

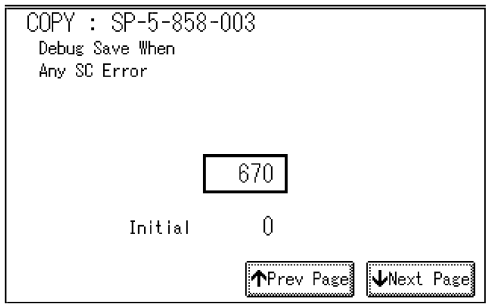
Touch the appropriate items(s). Press “ON” for each selection. This example shows “Engine SC Error” selected.

http://www.manuals4you.com



Example 2: To Specify an SC Code

Touch “3 Any SC Error”, enter the 3-digit SC code number with the control panel number keys. Then press #. This example shows an entry for SC670.



Note

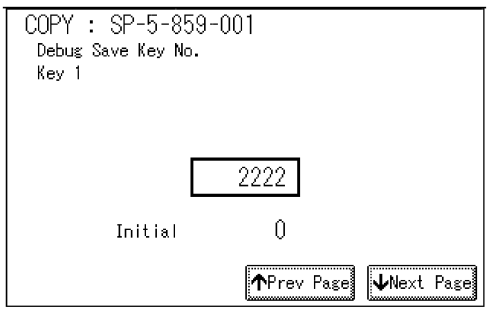
- For details about SC code numbers, please refer to the SC tables in Section 4. “Troubleshooting”.

6. Select one or more memory modules for reading and recording debug information.
   Touch “5859”.
   Under “5859” press the necessary key item for the module that you want to record.
   Enter the appropriate 4-digit number. Then press #.

Note

- Refer to the two tables below for the 4-digit numbers to enter for each key.

The example below shows “Key 1” with “2222” entered.



The following keys can be set with the corresponding numbers. (The initials in parentheses indicate the names of the modules.)

4-Digit Entries for Keys 1 to 10

Key No.	Copy	Printer	Scanner	Web
1	2222 (SCS)			
2	14000 (SRM)			
3	256 (IMH)			
4	1000 (ECS)			
5	1025 (MCS)			
6	4848 (COPY)	4400 (GPS)	5375 (Scan)	5682 (NFA)
7	2224 (BICU)	4500 (PDL)	5682 (NFA)	6600 (WebDB)
8		4600 (GPS-PM)	3000 (UCS)	3300 (PTS)
9		2000 (NCS)	2000 (NCS)	6666 (WebSys)
10		2224 (BICU)	4126 (DCS)	2000 (NCS)

Note

- The default settings for Keys 1 to 10 are all zero (“0”).

Key to Acronyms

http://www.manuals4you.com

Acronym	Meaning	Acronym	Meaning
ECS	Engine Control Service	NFA	Net File Application
GPS	GW Print Service	PDL	Printer Design Language
GSP-PM	GW Print Service – Print Module	PTS	Print Server
IMH	Image Memory Handler	SCS	System Control Service
MCS	Memory Control Service	SRM	System Resource Management
NCS	Network Control Service	WebDB	Web Document Box (Document Server)

1. The machine is now set to record the debugging information automatically on the HDD (the target selected with SP5857-002) for the events that you selected with SP5858 and the memory modules selected with SP5859.

Please keep the following important points in mind when you do this setting:

- Note that the number entries for Keys 1 to 5 are the same for the Copy, Printer, Scanner, and Web memory modules.
- The initial settings are all zero.
- These settings remain in effect until you change them. Be sure to check all the settings, especially the settings for Keys 6 to 10. To switch off a key setting, enter a zero for that key.
- You can select any number of keys from 1 to 10 (or all) by entering the corresponding 4-digit numbers from the table.
- You cannot mix settings for the groups (COPY, PRINTER, etc.) for 006 to 010. For example, if you want to create a PRINTER debug log you must select the settings from the 9 available selections for the “PRINTER” column only.
- One area of the disk is reserved to store the debug log. The size of this area is limited to 4 MB.

5.10.3 RETRIEVING THE DEBUG LOG FROM THE HDD

Retrieve the debug log by copying it from the hard disk to an SD card.

1. Insert the SD card into slot 2 (service slot) of the copier.
2. Enter the SP mode and execute SP5857-009 (Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB)) to write the debugging data to the SD card.
3. Use a card reader to copy the file and send it for analysis to your local Ricoh representative by email. You can also send the SD card by regular mail if you want.

5.10.4 RECORDING ERRORS MANUALLY

SC errors and jams only are recorded to the debug log automatically. Please instruct the user to do the following immediately after occurrence to save the debug data for any other errors that occur while the customer engineer is not on site. Such problems also include a controller or panel freeze.

Note

- You must previously switch on the Save Debug Feature (SP5857-001) and select the hard disk as the save destination (SP5857-002) if you want to use this feature.

1. Press (Clear Modes).on the operation panel when the error occurs.
2. On the control panel, enter “01”. Then hold down C/⊘ for at least 3 seconds until the machine beeps and then release it. This saves the debug log to the hard disk for later retrieval with an SD card by the service representatives.
3. Switch the machine off and on to resume operation.
   The debug information for the error is saved on the hard disk. This lets the service representative retrieve it on their next visit by copying it from the HDD to an SD card.

http://www.manuals4you.com

5.10.5 NEW DEBUG LOG CODES

SP5857-015 Copy SD Card-to-SD Card: Any Desired Key

This SP copies the log on an SD card (the file that contains the information written directly from shared memory) to a log specified by key number. The copy operation is executed in the log directory of the SD card inserted in the same slot. (This function does not copy from one slot to another.) Each SD card can hold up to 4 MB of file data. Unique file names are created for the data during the copy operation to prevent overwriting files of the same name. This means that log data from more than one machine can be copied onto the same SD card. This command does not execute if there is no log on the HDD for the name of the specified key.

SP5857-016 Create a File on HDD to Store a Log

This SP creates a 32 MB file to store a log on the HDD. However, this is not a completely empty file. The created file will hold the number “2225” as the SCS key number and other non-volatile information. Even if this SP is not executed, a file is created on the HDD when the first log is stored on the HDD (it takes some time to complete this operation). This creates the possibility that the machine may be switched off and on before the log can be created completely. If you execute this SP to create the log file beforehand, this will greatly reduce the amount of time required to acquire the log information and save onto the HDD. With the file already created on the HDD for the log file, the data only needs to be recorded. A new log file does not need to be created. To create a new log file, do SP5857-011 to delete the debug log data from the HDD. Then do SP5857-016.

SP5857-017 Create a File on SD Card to Store a Log

This SP creates a 4 MB file to store a log on an SD card. However, this is not a completely empty file. The created file will hold the number “2225” as the SCS key number and other non-volatile information. Even if this SP is not executed, a file is created on the SD card when the first log is stored on the SD card (it takes some time to complete this operation). This creates the possibility that the machine may be switched off and on before the log can be created completely. If you execute this SP to create the log file beforehand, this will greatly reduce the amount of time required to acquire the log information and save onto the SD card. With the file already created on the SD card for the log file, the data only needs to be recorded; a new log file does not require creation. To create a new log file, do SP5857-012 to delete the debug log data from the SD card. Then do SP5857-017.

5.11 CARD SAVE FUNCTION

5.11.1 OVERVIEW

Card Save:

- The Card Save function is used to save print jobs received by the printer on an SD card with no print output. Card Save mode is toggled using printer Bit Switch #1 bit number 4. Card Save will remain enabled until the SD card becomes full, or until all file names have been used.
- Captures are stored on the SD card in the folder /prt/cardsave. File names are assigned sequentially from PRT00000.prn to PRT99999.prn. An additional file PRT.CTL will be created. This file contains a list of all files created on the card by the card save function.
- Previously stored files on the SD card can be overwritten or left intact. Card Save SD has “Add” and “New” menu items.
  - **Card Save (Add):** Appends files to the SD Card. Does not overwrite existing files. If the card becomes full or if all file names are used, an error will be displayed on the operation panel. Subsequent jobs will not be stored.
  - **Card Save (New):** Overwrites files in the card's /prt/cardsave directory.

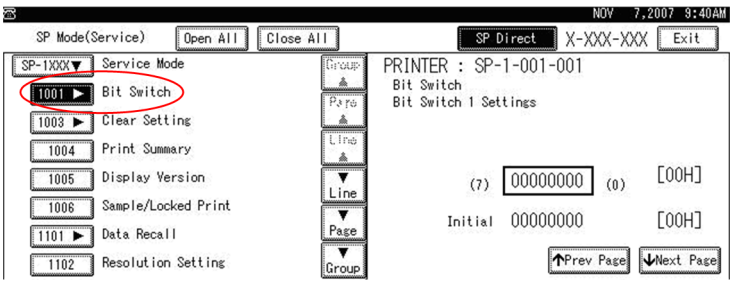
Limitation:

- Card Save cannot be used with PJL Status Readback commands. PJL Status Readbacks will not work. In addition they will cause the Card Save to fail.

http://www.manuals4you.com

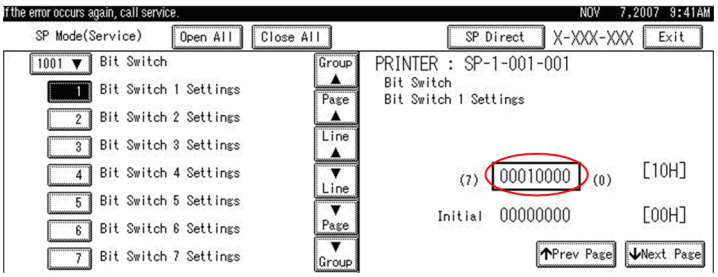
5.11.2 PROCEDURE

1. Turn the main power switch OFF.
2. Insert the SD card into slot 2. Then turn the power ON.
3. Enter SP mode.
4. Select the “Printer Sp”.
5. Select SP-1001 "Bit Switch”.



d027t101

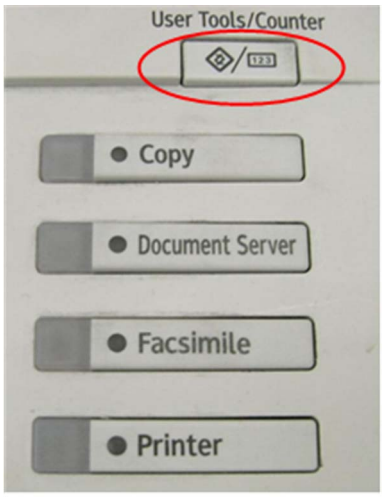
6. Select “Bit Switch 1 Settings” and use the numeric keypad to turn bit 4 ON and then press the “#” button to register the change. The result should look like: **00010000**. By doing this, Card Save option will appear in the “List/Test Print” menu.



d027t102

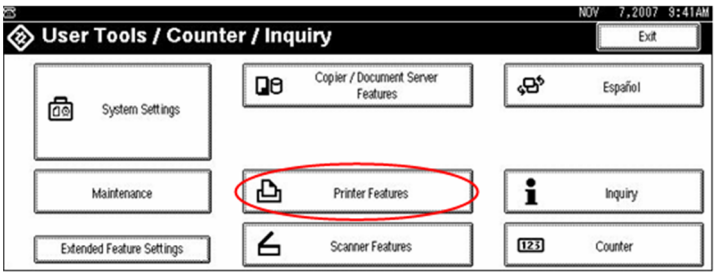
7. Press “Exit” to exit SP Mode.
8. Press the “User Tools/Counter” button.

Card Save Function



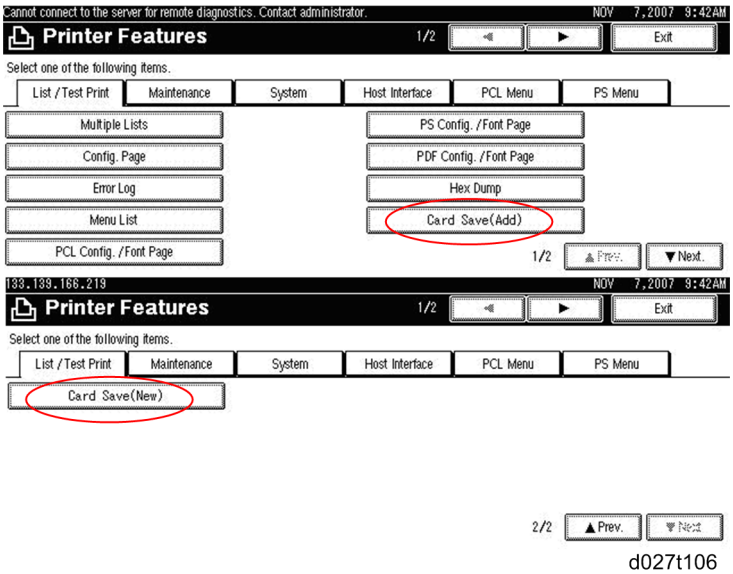
d027t103

9. Select “Printer Features”.



d027t105

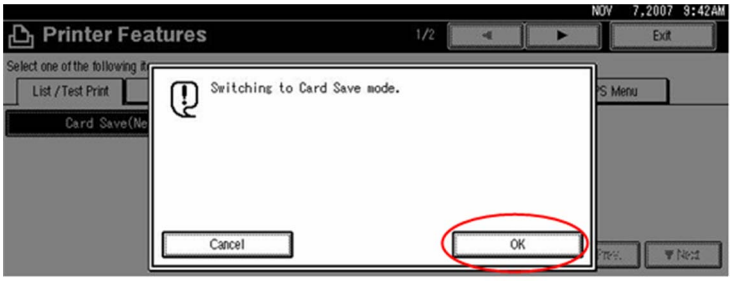
10. Card Save (Add) and Card Save (New) should be displayed on the screen. Select Card Save (Add) or Card Save (New).



d027t106

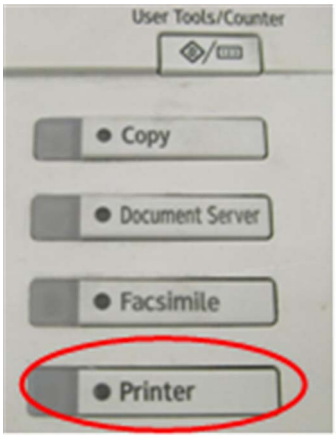
11. Press “OK” and then exit the “User Tools/Counter” menu.

http://www.manuals4you.com



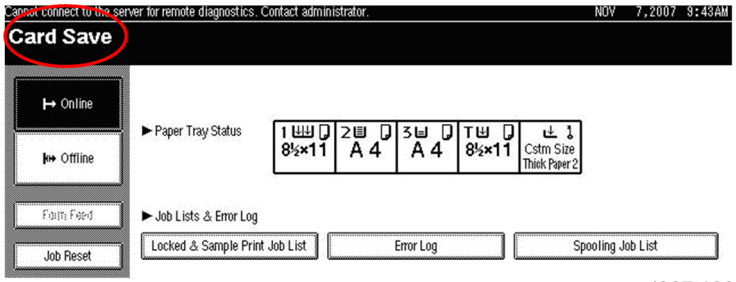
d027t107

12. Press the “Printer” button.



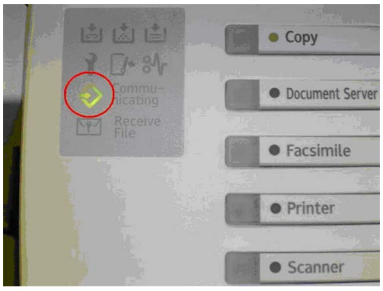
d027t108

13. Card Save should be displayed in the top left of the display panel.



d027t109

14. Send a job to the printer. The Communicating light should start blinking as shown below.

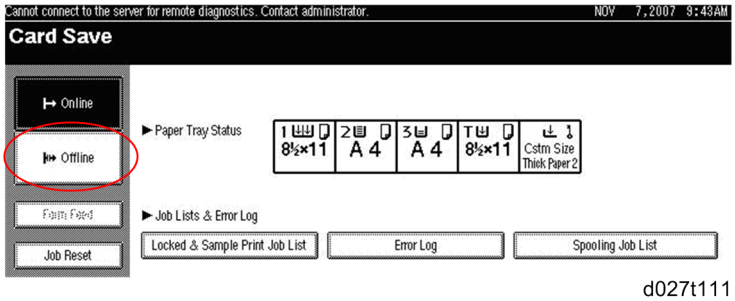


d027t110

15. As soon as the printer receives the data, it will be stored on the SD card automatically

with no print output. Nothing is displayed on the screen, indicating that a Card Save operation was successful.

16. Press “Offline” and then the “Clear/Stop” button to exit Card Save mode.



d027t111

17. Change the Bit Switch Settings back to the default **00000000**. Press the “#” button in the numeric keypad to register the changes.
18. Remove the SD card after the main power switch is turned off.

5.11.3 ERROR MESSAGES

Card Save error messages:

- **Init error:** A card save process (e.g. card detection, change to kernel mode) failed to initialize.
- **Card not found:** Card cannot be detected in the slot.
- **No memory:** Insufficient working memory to process the job.
- **Write error:** Failed to write to the card.
- **Other error:** An unknown error occurred.

If an error occurs, pressing “OK” will cause the device to discard the job and return to the ready state.

http://www.manuals4you.com

TROUBLESHOOTING

TROUBLESHOOTING REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

6. TROUBLESHOOTING

6.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

See the Appendices for the following information:

- SC Tables

6.2 PROCESS CONTROL ERROR CONDITIONS

See the Appendices for the following information:

- Developer Initialization Result
- Process Control Self-Check Result
- Line Position Adjustment Result

http://www.manuals4you.com

6.3 TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

See the Appendices for the following information:

- Image Quality
- Line Position Adjustment

6.3.1 IMAGE PROBLEMS

Stain on the outputs

If a stain appears at the edge of the output, do the following procedure.

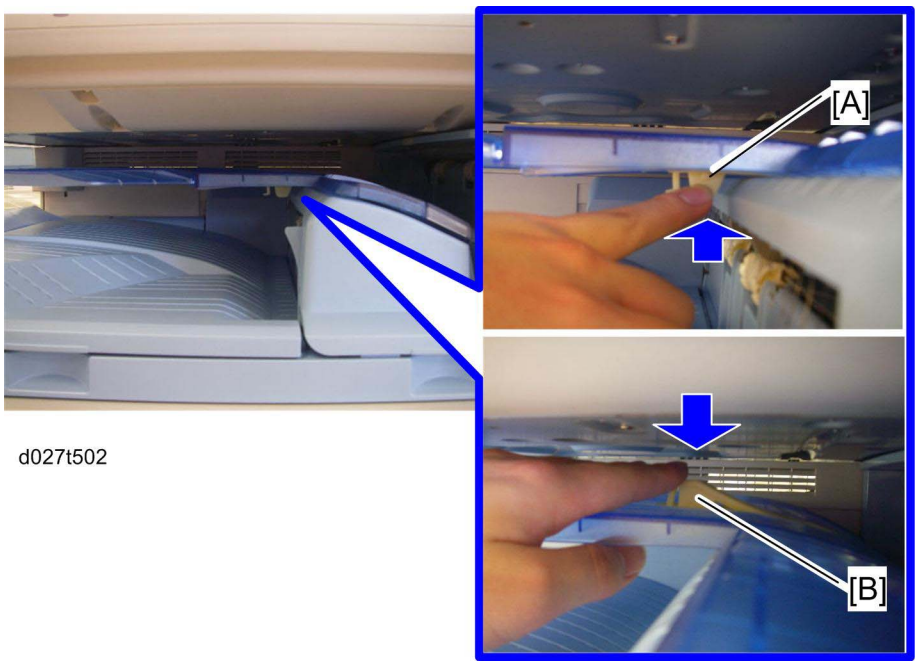
1. Execute the fusing cleaning mode with SP1123-002.

   Note

   - It takes 160 seconds to complete the fusing cleaning mode.
2. Make a sample copy, and then check if a stain appears on the output.

6.3.2 STACK PROBLEM IN THE 1-BIN TRAY

If a stack problem occurs on the 1-bin tray, raise the guide on the 1-bin tray.



d027t502

If a stack problem occurs;

- Push the guide to lift the guide [A].

If another type or size of paper is used;

- Press down the guide [B].

6.4 JAM DETECTION

See the Appendices for the following information:

- Paper Jam Display
- Jam Codes and Display Codes
  (Paper Size Code)
  (Sensor Locations)

http://www.manuals4you.com

6.5 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

See the Appendices for the following information:

- Sensors
- Blown Fuse Conditions
  (Power Supply Unit)
  (IH Inverter)

6.6 SCANNER TEST MODE

6.6.1 SBU TEST MODE

Output the SBU test pattern with SP4-807-001 to make sure the scanner SBU control operates correctly. The SBU test pattern prints out after you have set the SP mode settings and pressed the start key.

- The CCD on the SBU board may be defective if the copy is abnormal and the SBU test pattern is normal.
- The followings can be the cause if the copy is normal and the SBU test pattern is abnormal:
  - The harness may not be correctly connected between the SBU and the BICU.
  - The BICU or SBU board may be defective.

6.6.2 IPU TEST MODE

You can check the BICU board with the SP mode menu, SP4-904-1.
If no error is detected, the test ends. Then the completion code shows in the operation panel display. If an error is detected, the test is interrupted. Then an error code shows. The table below lists the completion and error codes.

SP4-904-1 Register Access

There are 16 bits switches in this SP. Each bit indicates a different CPU. The error result is displayed on the operation panel as a decimal number.
0: Normal, 1: Error

SP4-904-2 Image Path

There are 16 bits switches in this SP. Each bit indicates a different CPU path. The error result is displayed on the operation panel as a decimal number.
0: Normal, 1: Error
Errors may be caused by the following problems:

1. Short circuit on the signal lines
   - When the BICU board is installed, a pin or two on the ASIC is damaged.
   - Some conductive matter or object is trapped among the pins.
   - Condensation
2. Destruction of circuit elements
   - Over current or a defective element breaks the circuit.
3. Abnormal power supply

http://www.manuals4you.com

•The required voltage is not supplied to the devices.

4. Overheat/overcooling
   - The environment is inappropriate for the board (the scanner unit).
5. Static electricity
   - Static electricity of a high voltage occurs during the test.
6. Others
   - The scanner and BICU are incorrectly connected.

When you have completed a check, turn the main switch off and on before you do another check. When you have completed all necessary checks, turn the main switch off and on.

D027/D029 SERVICE MANUAL
APPENDICES

http://www.manuals4you.com

D027/D029 FSM APPENDICES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. APPENDIX: SPECIFICATIONS 1-1

1.1 MAIN FRAME 1-1
1.2 PRINTER 1-5
1.3 SCANNER 1-7
1.4 SUPPORTED PAPER SIZES 1-8
1.4.1 PAPER FEED 1-8
North America 1-8
Europe/ Asia 1-10
1.4.2 PAPER EXIT 1-13
2000/3000 Sheet Booklet Finisher (B804/B805) 1-13
1000-Sheet Finisher (B408) 1-16
1.4.3 PLATEN/ARDF ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION 1-19
1.5 SOFTWARE ACCESSORIES 1-21
1.5.1 PRINTER DRIVERS 1-21
1.5.2 SCANNER AND LAN FAX DRIVERS 1-22
1.5.3 UTILITY SOFTWARE 1-23
1.6 OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT 1-24
1.6.1 ARDF (B802) 1-24
1.6.2 PAPER FEED UNIT (D351) 1-25
1.6.3 LCT 2000-SHEET (D352) 1-25
1.6.4 LCT 1200-SHEET (D353) 1-26
1.6.5 3000-SHEET FINISHER (B805) 1-26
1.6.6 2000-SHEET BOOKLET FINISHER (B804) 1-28
1.6.7 PUNCH UNIT (B702) FOR 2000/3000-SHEET (BOOKLET) FINISHER 1-31
1.6.8 1000-SHEET FINISHER (B408) 1-32
Upper Tray 1-32
Lower Tray 1-32

http://www.manuals4you.com

1.6.9 BRIDGE UNIT (D386) 1-33
1.6.10 SHIFT TRAY (D388) 1-34
1.6.11 1-BIN TRAY UNIT (D414) 1-34

2. APPENDIX: MAINTENANCE TABLES 2-1
2.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES 2-1
2.1.1 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE ITEMS 2-1
Mainframe 2-1
ARDF (B802) 2-4
Two-tray Paper Feed Unit (D351) 2-5
1200-sheet LCT (D353) 2-5
2000-sheet LCT (D352) 2-6
2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher (B804/B805) 2-6
2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher Punch Kit (B702) 2-6
1000-Sheet Finisher (B408) 2-7
1 Bin Tray (D414) 2-7
Bridge Unit (D386) 2-7
Shift Tray (D388) 2-7
2.1.2 OTHER YIELD PARTS 2-8
Mainframe 2-8
ARDF 2-8

3. APPENDIX: SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS 3-1
3.1 SC TABLES 3-1
3.1.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS 3-1
Summary 3-1
3.1.2 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 1 3-5
SC1xxx: Scanning 3-5
3.1.3 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 2 3-10
SC Codes Group 2: Exposure 3-10
3.1.4 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 3 3-16
SC3xx: Image Processing – 1 3-16
3.1.5 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 4 3-20
SC4xx: Image Processing - 2 3-20
3.1.6 SERVICE CALL TABLES – 5 3-25
SC5xx: Paper Feed and Fusing 3-25
3.1.7 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 6 3-41

SC6xx: Device Communication 3-41
3.1.8 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 7 3-50
SC7xx: Peripherals 3-50
3.1.9 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 8 3-61
SC8xx: Overall System 3-61
3.1.10 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 9 3-74
SC9xx: Miscellaneous 3-74

4. APPENDIX: PROCESS CONTROL ERROR CONDITIONS 4-1
4.1 PROCESS CONTROL TABLES 4-1
4.1.1 DEVELOPER INITIALIZATION RESULT 4-1
4.1.2 PROCESS CONTROL SELF-CHECK RESULT 4-2
Vsg Adjustment Result 4-4
4.1.3 LINE POSITION ADJUSTMENT RESULT 4-6

5. APPENDIX: TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE 5-1
5.1 TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE 5-1
5.1.1 IMAGE QUALITY 5-1
5.1.2 LINE POSITION ADJUSTMENT 5-3
Test 5-3
Countermeasure list for color registration errors 5-3

6. APPENDIX: JAM DETECTION 6-1
6.1 JAM DETECTION 6-1
6.1.1 PAPER JAM DISPLAY 6-1
6.1.2 JAM CODES AND DISPLAY CODES 6-1
Paper Size Code 6-8
Sensor Locations 6-9

7. APPENDIX: ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS 7-1
7.1 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS 7-1
7.1.1 SENSORS 7-1
7.1.2 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS 7-8
Power Supply Unit 7-8
IH Inverter 7-8

8. APPENDIX: SP MODE TABLES 8-1
8.1 SYSTEM SERVICE MODE 8-1

http://www.manuals4you.com

8.1.1 SERVICE MODE TABLE 8-1
SP1-XXX (Feed) 8-1
SP2-XXX (Drum) 8-29
SP3-XXX (Process) 8-119
SP4-XXX (Scanner) 8-167
SP5-XXX (Mode) 8-190
SP6-XXX (Peripherals) 8-254
SP7-XXX (Data Log) 8-264
SP8-xxx: Data Log2 8-297
SP9-XXX: Others 8-347
8.1.2 INPUT CHECK TABLE 8-351
Copier 8-352
ADF (B802) 8-356
2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher (B804, B805) 8-358
1000-Sheet Finisher (B408) 8-362
Bridge Unit (D386) 8-363
Internal Shift Tray (D388) 8-364
1 Bin Tray (D414) 8-364
Two-Tray Paper Feed Unit (D351)/ LCIT 2000 (D352)/ LCIT 1200 (D353) 8-365
Table 1: Paper Height Sensor 8-366
Table 2: Paper Size Switch (Tray 2) 8-366
Table 3: Paper Size (By-pass Table) 8-368
Table 4: APS Original Size Detection 8-369
8.1.3 OUTPUT CHECK TABLE 8-370
Copier 8-370
ARDF (B802) 8-378
1000-Sheet Finisher (B408) 8-379
2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher 8-380
Bridge Unit (D386) 8-382
Shift Tray (D388) 8-382
1 Bin Tray (D414) 8-382
Two-Tray Paper Feed Unit (D351)/ LCT 2000 (D352)/ LCT 1200 (D353) 8-383
8.1.4 TEST PATTERN PRINTING 8-385
8.2 PRINTER SERVICE MODE 8-387

8.2.1 SP1-XXX (SERVICE MODE) 8-387
8.3 SCANNER SP MODE 8-394
8.3.1 SP1-XXX (SYSTEM AND OTHERS) 8-394
8.3.2 SP2-XXX (SCANNING-IMAGE QUALITY) 8-395

http://www.manuals4you.com

APPENDIX:

SPECIFICATIONS

APPENDIX: SPECIFICATIONS REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

1. APPENDIX: SPECIFICATIONS

1.1 MAIN FRAME

Configuration:	Desktop
Print Process:	Laser beam scanning & Dry electrostatic transfer system 4 drums tandem method
Number of scans:	1
Resolution:	Scan: 600 dpi Print: 600 dpi
Gradation:	Scan: 600dpi / 10bits/pixel Print: 600dpi / 4 bits/pixel
Original type:	Sheets, book, objects
Maximum original size:	A3/11" x 17"
Original reference position:	Left rear corner, ad hoc lists
Copy speed:	Normal (ADF 1 to 1, LT/ A4 LEF) C2c: 40 cpm (color/black & white) C2d: 50 cpm (color/black & white) Thick 1 (169 g/m^2 or less) C2c: 25 cpm (color/black & white) C2d 25 cpm (color/black & white) Thick 2 (220 g/m^2 or less) C2c: 17.5 cpm (color/black & white) C2d 17.5 cpm (color/black & white) Thick 3 (256 g/m^2 or less) C2c: 17.5 cpm (color/black & white) C2d 17.5 cpm (color/black & white) OHP, Glossy (1200 dpi) C2c: 17.5 cpm (color/black & white)

http://www.manuals4you.com

Main Frame

<table>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="3">C2d 17.5 cpm (color/black & white)</td></tr>
<tr><td>First copy (normal mode):</td><td colspan="3">C2c
Color: 6.5 seconds or less (A4/LT LEF)
Black & white: 3.9 seconds or less (A4/LT LEF)
C2d
Color: 5.9 seconds or less (A4/LT LEF)
Black & white: 3.5 seconds or less (A4/LT LEF)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Warm-up time:</td><td colspan="3">C2c: 34 seconds or less (20°C)
C2d: 51 seconds or less (20°C)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Print Paper Capacity: (80 g/m^2, 20 lb)</td><td colspan="3">Standard tray: 550 sheets x 2
By-pass tray: 100 sheets (Normal), 40 sheets (Thick 1: 106 – 169 g/m^2), 20 sheets (Thick 2/3: 170 - 256 g/m^2), 35 sheets (Postcard)
Optional paper feed tray: 550 sheets x 2
2000-sheet LCT: 2000 sheets
1200-sheet LCT: 1200 sheets</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">Print Paper Size:</td><td colspan="3">(Refer to “Supported Paper Sizes”.)</td></tr>
<tr><td>-</td><td>Minimum</td><td>Maximum</td></tr>
<tr><td>Tray 1</td><td colspan="2">A4/8.5" x 11" (LEF)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Tray 2</td><td>A5 (LEF)/
8.5" x 11"</td><td>A3/11" x 17"</td></tr>
<tr><td>By-pass</td><td>90 x 148 mm</td><td>305 x 600 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>Optional Tray</td><td>A5 (LEF)/
8.5" x 11"</td><td>A3/11" x 17"</td></tr>
<tr><td>2000-sheet LCT</td><td colspan="2">A4/8.5" x 11" (LEF)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1200-sheet LCT</td><td>B5 (LEF)/
257 x 182mm</td><td>A4 (LEF)/
297 x 210mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>Printing Paper Weight:</td><td colspan="3">Standard tray: 60 to 256 g/m^2 (16 to 68 lb.)
Optional paper tray: 60 to 256 g/m^2 (16 to 68 lb.)</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="2">By-pass tray: 60 to 256 g/m^2 (16 to 68 lb.)
Duplex unit: 60 to 169 g/m^2 (16 to 45 lb.)
1200-sheet LCT : 60 to 216 g/m^2 (10 to 571lb)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Output Paper Capacity:</td><td colspan="2">Standard exit tray: 500 sheets or more (face down)*1
Shift Tray: 250 sheets (80 g/m^2)
1-bin Tray: 125 (80 g/m^2)
1000-sheet finisher 250 + 1000 sheets (80 g/m^2)
2000-sheet booklet finisher: 250 + 2000 sheets (80 g/m^2)
3000-sheet booklet finisher: 250 + 3000 sheets (80 g/m^2)
*1: T6200, A4 LEF</td></tr>
<tr><td>Continuous copy:</td><td colspan="2">Up to 999 sheets</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="15">Zoom:</td><td colspan="2">Arbitrary: From 25 to 400% (1% step)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Fixed:</td></tr>
<tr><td>North America</td><td>Europe</td></tr>
<tr><td>25%</td><td>25%</td></tr>
<tr><td>50%</td><td>50%</td></tr>
<tr><td>65%</td><td>61%</td></tr>
<tr><td>73%</td><td>71%</td></tr>
<tr><td>78%</td><td>82%</td></tr>
<tr><td>85%</td><td>87%</td></tr>
<tr><td>93%</td><td>93%</td></tr>
<tr><td>100%</td><td>100%</td></tr>
<tr><td>121%</td><td>115%</td></tr>
<tr><td>129%</td><td>122%</td></tr>
<tr><td>155%</td><td>141%</td></tr>
<tr><td>200%</td><td>200%</td></tr>
</table>

http://www.manuals4you.com

Main Frame

<table>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="4">400%</td><td colspan="2">400%</td></tr>
<tr><td>Memory:</td><td colspan="6">Standard: 1024 MB</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power Source:</td><td colspan="6">120 V, 60 Hz: More than 12A (for North America)
220 V – 240 V, 50/60 Hz: More than 8A (for Europe/ASIA)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Power Consumption:</td><td colspan="3">-</td><td>120V</td><td colspan="2">220 - 240V</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Maximum</td><td>1500 W or less</td><td colspan="2">1600 W or less</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Energy Saver</td><td>2.5 W or less</td><td colspan="2">4.0 W or less</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">Noise Emission:
(Sound Power Level)</td><td>Model</td><td colspan="2">State</td><td>Mainframe</td><td colspan="2">Complete system
(*1)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">C2c</td><td colspan="2">Standby</td><td>40 dB(A)
or Less</td><td colspan="2">49 dB(A)
or Less</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">Operating</td><td>B/W: 70 dB(A)
or Less</td><td colspan="2">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>Color:70dB(A)
or Less</td><td colspan="2">Color: 74 dB(A)
or Less</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">C2d</td><td colspan="2">Standby</td><td>40 dB(A)
or Less</td><td colspan="2">52 dB(A)
or Less</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">Operating</td><td>B/W: 72 dB(A)
or Less</td><td colspan="2">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>Color:72dB(A)
or Less</td><td colspan="2">Color: 76 dB(A)
or Less</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">(*1) The complete system consists of mainframe, ARDF, finisher, and LCT.
The above measurements were made in accordance with Ricoh standard methodology.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Dimensions (W x D x H):
Copier: 670 x 677 x 760 mm (26.4" x 26.7" x 29.9")
Copier + PFU or LCT: 670 x 677 x 1020 mm (26.4" x 26.7" x 40.2")</td></tr>
<tr><td>Weight:</td><td colspan="6">Less than 130 kg (286 lb.) [with ARDF excluding toner]</td></tr>
</table>

1.2 PRINTER

Printer Languages:	PCL 6/5c RPCS (Refined Printing Command Stream) Adobe PostScript 3 (optional) PDF Direct (optional) PictBridge (optional)
Resolution and Gradation:	PCL 5c: 300 x 300 dpi : Available only in B/W mode 600 x 600 dpi : Fast (1 bit), Standard (2 bits), Fine (4 bits) PCL 6: 600 x 600 dpi : Fast (1 bit), Standard (2 bits), Fine (4 bits) / 1200 x 1200 dpi RPCS: 600 x 600 dpi, 1,800 x 600 dpi*, 9600 dpi x 600 dpi* *1,800 x 600 dpi = 600 x 600 dpi (2 bits) *9600 dpi x 600 dpi* = 600 x 600 dpi (4 bits) PS3: 600 x 600 dpi : Fast (1 bit), Standard (2 bits), Fine (4 bits)
Printing speed:	C2c: 40 ppm in Plain/Middle Thick mode 17.5 ppm in Thick/OHP mode (depending on paper type) C2d: 50 ppm in Plain mode 25 ppm in Middle Thick mode 17.5 ppm in Thick/OHP mode (depending on paper type)
Resident Fonts:	PCL 6/5c (Standard): 45 Compatible fonts 13 International fonts 1 Bitmap font Adobe PostScript 3 (Optional): 136 fonts (24 Type 2 fonts, 112 Type 14 fonts)

http://www.manuals4you.com

Printer

Host Interfaces:	USB2.0: Standard USB Host (PictBridge): Optional Ethernet (100 Base-TX/10 Base-T): Standard Gigabit Ethernet (1000 Base-T): Optional IEEE1284 parallel x 1: Optional IEEE802.11a/g, g (Wireless LAN): Optional Bluetooth (Wireless): Optional
Network Protocols:	TCP/IP (IPv4, IPv6), IPX/SPX, AppleTalk (Auto Switching)

1.3 SCANNER

Standard Scanner Resolution:	Main scan/Sub scan 600 dpi
Available scanning Resolution Range:	Twain Mode: 100 to1200 dpi Delivery Mode: 100/200/300/400/600 dpi
Grayscales:	1 bit or 8 bits/pixel each for RGB
Scanning Throughput (ARDF mode):	Scan to E-mail / Folder: BW: 63 ppm (A4LEF / BW Text / Line Art / 200dpi /Compression: On (MH)) FC: 60 ppm (A4LEF / FC Text / Photo / 200dpi / Compression: Standard)
Interface:	Ethernet (100 Base-TX/10 Base-T/1000 Base-T for TCP/IP), Wireless LAN, USB2.0/SD Slot
Compression Method:	B&W: TIFF (MH, MR, MMR) Gray Scale, Full Color: JPEG

http://www.manuals4you.com

1.4 SUPPORTED PAPER SIZES

1.4.1 PAPER FEED

North America

BT: By-pass Tray, T1: Tray 1, T2/3/4: Tray 2/3/4, LCT 2000: Large Capacity Tray: 2000-sheet, LCT 1200: Large Capacity Tray: 1200-sheet, DU: Duplex Unit

Paper	Size (W x L)	BT	T1	T2/3/4	LCT 2000	LCT 1200	DU
A3 W	12" x 18"	M	-	-	-	-	-
A3 SEF	297 x 420mm	M	-	M	-	-	M
A4 SEF	210 x 297mm	M	-	A	-	-	M
A4 LEF	297 x 210mm	M	S	M	S	S	M
A5 SEF	148 x 210mm	M	-	-	-	-	-
A5 LEF	210 x 148mm	M	S	A	-	-	M
A6 SEF	105 x 148mm	M	-	-	-	-	-
B4 SEF	257 x 364mm	M	-	M	-	-	M
B5 SEF	182 x 257mm	M	-	A	-	-	M
B5 LEF	257 x 182mm	M	S	M	-	S	M
B6 SEF	128 x 182mm	M	-	-	-	-	-
Ledger	11" x 17"	A	-	A	-	-	M
Letter SEF	8.5" x 11"	A	-	A	-	-	M
Letter LEF	11" x 8.5"	A	M	A	M	M	M
Legal SEF	8.5" x 14"	M	-	A	-	-	M
Government	8.25" x 14"	M	-	M	-	-	M

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper	Size (W x L)	BT	T1	T2/3/4	LCT 2000	LCT 1200	DU
Legal SEF							
Half Letter SEF	5.5" x 8.5"	A	-	-	-	-	-
Executive SEF	7.25" x 10.5"	M	-	M	-	-	M
Executive LEF	10.5" x 7.25"	M	-	A	-	-	M
F SEF	8" x 13"	M	-	M	-	-	M
Foolscap SEF	8.5" x 13"	M	-	M	-	-	M
Folio SEF	8.25" x 13"	M	-	M	-	-	M
	11" x 15"	M	-	M	-	-	M
	10" x 14"	M	-	M	-	-	M
	8" x 10"	M	-	M	-	-	M
8K	267 x 390mm	M	-	M	-	-	M
16K SEF	195 x 267mm	M	-	M	-	-	M
16K LEF	267 x 195mm	M	-	M	-	-	M
Custom		M	-	M	-	-	-
Com10 Env.	4.125" x 9.5"	M	-	-	-	-	-
Monarch Env.	3.875" x 7.5"	M	-	-	-	-	-
C6 Env.	114 x 162mm	M	-	-	-	-	-
C5 Env.	162 x 229mm	M	-	-	-	-	-
DL Env.	110 x 220mm	M	-	-	-	-	-

http://www.manuals4you.com

Supported Paper Sizes

Remarks:

A	Supported: the sensor detects the paper size.
M	Supported: the user specifies the paper size.
S	Supported: depends on a technician adjustment
-	Not supported

Europe/ Asia

BT: By-pass Tray, T1: Tray 1, T2/3/4: Tray 2/3/4, LCT 2000: Large Capacity Tray: 2000-sheet, LCT 1200: Large Capacity Tray: 1200-sheet, DU: Duplex Unit

Paper	Size (W x L)	BT	T1	T2/3/4	LCT 2000	LCT 1200	DU
A3 W	12" x 18"	M	-	-	-	-	-
A3 SEF	297 x 420mm	A	-	A	-	-	M
A4 SEF	210 x 297mm	A	-	A	-	-	M
A4 LEF	297 x 210mm	A	M	A	M	S	M
A5 SEF	148 x 210mm	A	-	-	-	-	-
A5 LEF	210 x 148mm	A	S	A	-	-	M
A6 SEF	105 x 148mm	A	-	-	-	-	-
B4 SEF	257 x 364mm	M	-	A	-	-	M
B5 SEF	182 x 257mm	M	-	A	-	-	M
B5 LEF	257 x 182mm	M	S	A	-	S	M
B6 SEF	128 x 182mm	M	-	-	-	-	-
Ledger	11" x 17"	M	-	M	-	-	M

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper	Size (W x L)	BT	T1	T2/3/4	LCT 2000	LCT 1200	DU
Letter SEF	8.5" x 11"	M	-	A	-	-	M
Letter LEF	11" x 8.5"	M	S	M	S	S	M
Legal SEF	8.5" x 14"	M	-	M	-	-	M
Government Legal SEF	8.25" x 14"	M	-	M	-	-	M
Half Letter SEF	5.5" x 8.5"	M	-	-	-	-	-
Executive SEF	7.25" x 10.5"	M	-	M	-	-	M
Executive LEF	10.5" x 7.25"	M	-	M	-	-	M
F SEF	8" x 13"	M	-	M	-	-	M
Foolscap SEF	8.5" x 13"	M	-	M	-	-	M
Folio SEF	8.25" x 13"	M	-	M	-	-	M
	11" x 15"	M	-	M	-	-	M
	10" x 14"	M	-	M	-	-	M
	8" x 10"	M	-	M	-	-	M
8K	267 x 390mm	M	-	M	-	-	M
16K SEF	195 x 267mm	M	-	M	-	-	M
16K LEF	267 x 195mm	M	-	M	-	-	M
Custom		M	-	M	-	-	-
Com10 Env.	4.125" x 9.5"	M	-	-	-	-	-

http://www.manuals4you.com

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper	Size (W x L)	BT	T1	T2/3/4	LCT 2000	LCT 1200	DU
Monarch Env.	3.875" x 7.5"	M	-	-	-	-	-
C6 Env.	114 x 162mm	M	-	-	-	-	-
C5 Env.	162 x 229mm	M	-	-	-	-	-
DL Env.	110 x 220mm	M	-	-	-	-	-

Remarks:

A	Supported: the sensor detects the paper size.
M	Supported: the user specifies the paper size.
S	Supported: depends on a technician adjustment
-	Not supported

1.4.2 PAPER EXIT

2000/3000 Sheet Booklet Finisher (B804/B805)

MF: Main Frame, Prf: Proof, Clr: Clear, Shf: Shift, Stp: Staple, SS: Saddle Stitch,
2P: 2 Holes Punch, N2P: North Europe 2 Holes, 3P: 3 Holes Punch,
Punch 4 P: 4 Holes Punch, N4P: North Europe 4 Holes Punch

Paper	Size (W x L)	MF	2000/3000-sheet booklet finisher								
			Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	SS	2P/N2P	3P	4P	N4P
A3 W	12" x 18"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	15	-	-	-	-
A3 SEF	297 x 420 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	15	Y	Y	Y	Y
A4 SEF	210 x 297 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	15	Y	-	-	Y
A4 LEF	297 x 210 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
A5 SEF	148 x 210 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	-	Y	-	-	Y
A5 LEF	210 x 148 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	-	Y	-	-	Y
A6 SEF	105 x 148 mm	Y	Y	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
B4 SEF	257 x 364 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	15	Y	Y	Y*[4]	Y*[4]
B5 SEF	182 x 257 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	15	Y	-	-	Y
B5 LEF	257 x 182 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

http://www.manuals4you.com

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper	Size (W x L)	MF	2000/3000-sheet booklet finisher								
			Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	SS	2P/N2P	3P	4P	N4P
B6 SEF	128 x 182 mm	Y	Y	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Ledger	11" x 17"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	15	Y	Y	Y	Y
Letter SEF	8.5" x 11"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	15	Y	-	-	Y
Letter LEF	11" x 8.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
Legal SEF	8.5" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	15	Y	-	-	Y
Government Legal SEF	8.25" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	-	-	Y
Half Letter SEF	5.5" x 8.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	-	Y	-	-	Y
Executive SEF	7.25" x 10.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	-	-	Y
Executive LEF	10.5" x 7.25"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
F SEF	8" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	-	-	Y
Foolscap SEF	8.5" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	-	-	Y
Folio SEF	8.25" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	-	-	Y
	11" x 15"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
	10" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	Y	-	Y
	8" x 10"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	-	-	Y

Paper	Size (W x L)	MF	2000/3000-sheet booklet finisher								
			Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	SS	2P/N2P	3P	4P	N4P
8K	267 x 390 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
16K SEF	195 x 267 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	-	-	Y
16K LEF	267 x 195 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
Custom		Y	Y	Y	-	-	-	Y*[3]	Y*[3]	Y*[3]	Y*[3]
Com10 Env.	4.125" x 9.5"	Y	Y*[1]	Y*[2]	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Monarch Env.	3.875" x 7.5"	Y	-	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
C6 Env.	114 x 162 mm	Y	-	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
C5 Env.	162 x 229 mm	Y	-	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
DL Env.	110 x 220 mm	Y	-	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Remarks:

Y	Supported
15	Output up to 15 sheets
30	Output up to 30 sheets
50	Output up to 50 sheets
-	Not supported

http://www.manuals4you.com

Supported Paper Sizes

*1: Minimum 100 mm or more, Maximum 600 mm or less

*2: Minimum 100 mm or more, Maximum 600 mm or less

- Longer paper (feed length) than DLT (432 mm) is not guaranteed in this mode.

*3: Minimum 100 mm for 2P, 230 mm for 3P, 255 mm for 4P, 125 mm for N4P

*4: Corner stapling is not available in this mode.

1000-Sheet Finisher (B408)

MF: Main Frame, Prf: Proof, Clr: Clear, Shf: Shift, Stp: Staple

Paper	Size (W x L)	MF	1000-sheet finisher				1 Bin
			Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	
A3 W	12" x 18"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-
A3 SEF	297 x 420 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
A4 SEF	210 x 297 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
A4 LEF	297 x 210 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
A5 SEF	148 x 210 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y
A5 LEF	210 x 148 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y
A6 SEF	105 x 148 mm	Y	Y	-	-	-	-
B4 SEF	257 x 364 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
B5 SEF	182 x 257 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
B5 LEF	257 x 182 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
B6 SEF	128 x 182 mm	Y	Y	-	-	-	N
Ledger	11" x 17"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
Letter SEF	8.5" x 11"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
Letter LEF	11" x 8.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
Legal SEF	8.5" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper	Size (W x L)	MF	1000-sheet finisher				1 Bin
			Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	
Government Legal SEF	8.25" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
Half Letter SEF	5.5" x 8.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y
Executive SEF	7.25" x 10.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
Executive LEF	10.5" x 7.25"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
F SEF	8" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
Foolscap SEF	8.5" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
Folio SEF	8.25" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
	11" x 15"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
	10" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
	8" x 10"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
8K	267 x 390 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
16K SEF	195 x 267 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
16K LEF	267 x 195 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
Custom		Y	Y	-	-	-	-
Com10 Env.	4.125" x 9.5"	Y	-	-	-	-	-
Monarch Env.	3.875" x 7.5"	Y	-	-	-	-	-
C6 Env.	114 x 162 mm	Y	-	-	-	-	-
C5 Env.	162 x 229 mm	Y	-	-	-	-	-
DL Env.	110 x 220 mm	Y	-	-	-	-	-

Remarks:

http://www.manuals4you.com

Supported Paper Sizes

Y	Supported
30	Output up to 30 sheets
50	Output up to 50 sheets
-	Not supported

1.4.3 PLATEN/ARDF ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION

Size (width x length) [mm]	Platen	ARDF	Platen	ARDF
	Inches	Inches	Metric	Metric
A3 (297 x 420) SEF	-	Y	Y*[3]	Y
B4 (257 x 364) SEF	-	-	Y*[3]	Y
A4 (210 x 297) SEF	Y*[1]	Y	Y*[3]	Y
A4 (297 x 210) LEF	Y*[3]	Y	Y*[3]	Y
B5 (182 x 257) SEF	-	-	Y*[3]	Y
B5 (257 x 182) LEF	-	-	Y*[3]	Y
A5 (148 x 210) SEF	-	-	-*[1]	Y
A5 (210 x 148) LEF	-	-	-*[1]	Y
B6 (128 x 182) SEF	-	-	-	Y
B6 (182 x 128) LEF	-	-	-	Y
11" x 17" (DLT)	Y	Y*[2]	-	Y*[2]
11" x 15"	-	y*[2]	-	-
10" x 14"	-	Y	-	-
8.5" x 14" (LG)	Y	Y*[2]	-	-
8.5" x 13" (F4)	-	y*[2]	Y*[4]	Y*[4]
8.25" x 13"	-	-	Y*[4]	Y*[4]
8" x 13"(F)	-	-	Y*[4]	Y*[4]
8.5" x 11" (LT)	Y*[3]	Y*[2]	Y*[3]	Y*[2]
11" x 8.5" (LT)	Y*[3]	Y*[2]	Y*[3]	Y*[2]

http://www.manuals4you.com

Supported Paper Sizes

8" x 10"	-	y*2	-	-
5.5" x 8.5" (HLT)	-*1	Y	-	-
8.5" x 5.5" (HLT)	-*1	Y	-	-
8K (267 x 390)	-	-	Y*3	y*2
16K L (195 x 267)	-	-	Y*3	y*2
16K S (267 x 195)	-	-	Y*3	y*2
7.25" x 10.5" (Executive)	-	Y	-	-
10.5" x 7.25" (Executive)	-	y*2	-	-

*1: Use SP4-303 to detect original sizes as A5 lengthwise/HLT when the message “Can-t detect original size” shows.

*2: The machine can detect the paper size depending on the setting of SP6-016-1. In default setting, "Y" is detected. "y" can be detected if you change setting of SP6-016-1.

*3: The machine can detect the paper size depending on the setting of SP4-305-1.

*4: The machine can detect the paper size depending on the setting of SP5-126-1.

1.5 SOFTWARE ACCESSORIES

The printer drivers and utility software are provided as following two CD-ROMs

1: Printer Drivers and Utilities CD-ROM

2: Scanner/PostScript® Drivers and Utilities CD-ROM.

An auto-run installer lets you to select the components you want to install.

1.5.1 PRINTER DRIVERS

Printer Language	Windows 95/98/ME	Windows NT4.0	Windows 2000, XP, Server 2003/Vista	MacOS8.6 to 9.x, MacOSX10.1 or later
PCL5c / PCL6	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
PS3 *2)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
RPCS	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

Note

- The PCL5c/6 and RPCS drivers are provided on the printer drivers CD-ROM
- The PS drivers are provided on the Scanner/PostScript® Drivers and Utilities CD-ROM.
- The printer drivers for Windows NT 4.0 are only for the Intel x86 platform. There is no Windows NT 4.0 printer driver for the PowerPC, Alpha, or MIPS platforms.
- The PS3 drivers are all genuine Adobe PS drivers, except for Windows 2000/XP/2003/Vista. Windows 2000 uses Microsoft PS. A PPD file for each operating system is provided with the driver.
- The PS3 driver for Macintosh supports Mac OS X 10.1 or later versions.

http://www.manuals4you.com

1.5.2 SCANNER AND LAN FAX DRIVERS

Printer Language	Windows 95/98/ME	Windows NT4.0	Windows 2000, XP, Server 2003/Vista	MacOS8.6 to 9.x, MacOSX10.1 or later
Network TWAIN	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
LAN-FAX	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

Note

- The Network TWAIN and LAN Fax drivers are provided on the scanner drivers CD-ROM.
- This software lets you fax documents directly form your PC. Address Book Editor and Cover Sheet Editor are to be installed as well. (These require the optional fax unit.)

1.5.3 UTILITY SOFTWARE

Software	Description
Font Manager 2000 (Win9x/ME, 2000/XP/2003, NT4)	A font management utility with screen fonts for the printer This is provided on the printer drivers CD-ROM
Smart Device Monitor for Admin (Win 95/98/Me, NT4, 2000/XP/Server 2003/Vista)	A printer management utility for network administrators. NIB setup utilities are also available. This is provided on the printer drivers CD-ROM
DeskTopBinder – SmartDeviceMonitor for Client (Win 95/98/Me, NT4, 2000/XP/Server 2003/Vista)	A printer management utility for client users. A utility for peer-to-peer printing over a NetBEUI or TCP/IP network. A peer-to-peer print utility over a TCP/IP network. This provides the parallel printing and recovery printing features. This is provided on the printer drivers CD-ROM
Printer Utility for Mac (Mac)	A utility for peer-to-peer printing over a NetBEUI or TCP This software provides several convenient functions for printing from Macintosh clients. This is provided on the scanner drivers CD-ROM
DeskTopBinder Lite (Win9x/ME, 2000/XP/2003, NT4)	DeskTopBinder Lite itself can be used as personal document management software and can manage both image data converted from paper documents and application files saved in each client's PC. This is provided on the scanner drivers CD-ROM

http://www.manuals4you.com

1.6 OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

1.6.1 ARDF (B802)

Paper Size/Weight:	Simplex	Size	A3 to A5, DLT to HLT
		Weight	40 to 128 g/m^2 (11 to 34 lb.)
	Duplex	Size	A3 to A5, DLT to HLT
		Weight	52 to 128 g/m^2 (14 to 34 lb.)
Table Capacity:	100 sheets (81.4 g/m^2, 22 lb)		
Original Standard Position:	Rear left corner		
Separation:	Feed belt and separation roller		
Original Transport:	Roller transport		
Original Feed Order:	From the top original		
Supported Magnification Ratios:	Copy	-	32 to 200 %
	Fax	Color	32.6 to 200 %
		Black & white	48.9 to 200 %
Power Source:	DC 24V, 5V from the scanner unit		
Power Consumption:	Less than 60W		
Dimensions (W × D × H):	570 mm x 520 mm x 135 mm (22.4”x20.5”x5.3”)		
Weight:	Less than 12kg (26.5 lb.)		

1.6.2 PAPER FEED UNIT (D351)

Paper Feed System:	FRR
Paper Height Detection:	5 steps (100%, 70%, 30%, 10% (Near end), and Empty)
Capacity:	500 sheets x 2 trays
Paper Weight:	60 to 256 g/m^2 (16 to 68 lb.)
Paper Size:	A3 SEF to A5, DLT SEF to HLT
Power Source:	DC 24V, 5V (from the main frame)
Power Consumption:	Less than 60 W (Max.)/ Less than 35 W (Ave,)
Dimensions (W x D x H):	580 mm x 620 mm x 260 mm (22.8" x 24.4" x 10.2")
Weight:	26 kg (57.3 lb.)

1.6.3 LCT 2000-SHEET (D352)

Paper Size:	A4 LEF/LT LEF
Paper Weight:	60 g/m^2 to 256 g/m^2 (16 lb. to 68 lb.)
Tray Capacity:	2,000 sheets (80 g/m^2, 20lb.)
Remaining Paper Detection:	5 steps (100%, 70%, 30%, 10%, Empty): Right Tray 4 steps (100%, 70%, 30%, Empty): Left Tray
Power Source:	DC 24 V, 5 V (from copier/printer)
Power Consumption:	55 W (Max.)/30 W (Ave.)
Weight:	26 kg (57.3 lb.)
Size (W x D x H):	580 mm x 620 mm x 260 mm (22.8" x 24.4" x 10.2")

http://www.manuals4you.com

1.6.4 LCT 1200-SHEET (D353)

Paper Size:	A4 LEF/ LT LEF/ B5 LEF
Paper Weight:	60 g/m^2 to 216 g/m^2 (16 lb to 57 lb.)
Tray Capacity:	1,200 sheets (80 g/m^2, 20lb)
Remaining Paper Detection:	5 steps (100%, 75%, 30%, 10%, End)
Power Source:	24 Vdc, 5 Vdc (from copier/printer)
Power Consumption:	55 W (Max)/ 25 W (Ave.)
Weight:	14 kg (30.8 lb.)
Size (W x D x H):	348 mm x 540 mm x 290 mm (13.7" x 21.3" x 11.4")

1.6.5 3000-SHEET FINISHER (B805)

Finisher		
Dimension (w x d x h)		657 mm x 613 mm x 960 mm (25.9” x 24.1” x 37.8”)
Weight		Less than 54 kg (119 lb.) (no punch unit) Less than 56 kg (123.5 lb.) (with punch unit)
Power Consumption		Less than 96 W
Noise		Less than 75 db
Configuration		Console type attached base-unit
Power Source		From base-unit
Proof Tray	Stack Capacity	250 sheets: A4, 8.5” x 11” or smaller 50 sheets: B4, 8.5” x 14 or larger
	Paper Size	A5-A3 SEF, A6 SEF, A6 SEF

		5.5” x 8.5”-11” x 17” SEF, 12” x 18” SEF	
	Paper Weight	52 g/m^2 - 163 g/m^2 (14 lb. - 43 lb.)	
Shift Tray	Stack Capacity	3,000 sheets	A4 LEF, 8.5" x 11” LEF
		1,500 sheets	A3 SEF, A4 SEF, B4 SEF, B5, 11” x 17” SEF, 8.5” x 14” SEF, 8.5” x 11” SEF, 12” x 18” SEF
		500 sheets	A5 LEF
		100 sheets	A5 SEF, B6 SEF, A6 SEF, 5.5” x 8.5” SEF
	Paper Size	A5 - A3 SEF, A6 SEF, B6 SEF, 5.5” x 8.5”- 11” x 17” SEF, 12” x 18” SEF	
	Paper Weight	52 g/m^2 - 256 g/m^2 (14 lb. - 68 lb.)	
Staples			
Paper Size		B5 - A3 8.5” x 11” - 11” x 17”, 12” x 18”	
Paper Weight		64 g/m^2 - 90 g/m^2 (14 lb. - 24 lb.)	
Staple Position		Top, Bottom, 2 Staple, Top-slant	
Stapling Capacity	Same Paper Size	50 sheets	A4, 8.5" x 11” or smaller
		30 sheets	B4, 8.5" x 14" or larger
	Mixed Paper Size	30 sheets	A4 LEF + A3 SEF, B5 LEF + B4 SEF, 8.5" x11” LEF + 11” x 17” SEF

http://www.manuals4you.com

Staple Replenishment	Cartridge exchange / 5000 pins per cartridge		
Stapled Stack Capacity (same size)	Paper Size	Pages/Set	Sets
	A4 LEF, 8.5” x 11” LEF	20 - 50 pages	150 - 60 sets
		2 - 19 pages	150 sets
	A4 SEF, B5, 8.5” x 11” SEF	15 - 50 pages	100 - 30 sets
		2 - 14 pages	100 sets
	Others	15 - 30 pages	100 - 33 sets
		2 - 14 pages	100 sets
Stapled Stack Capacity (mixed sizes)	A4 LEF & A3 SEF, B5 LEF & B4 SEF, 8.5” x11” LEF & 11” x 17” SEF	2 - 30 pages	50 set

1.6.6 2000-SHEET BOOKLET FINISHER (B804)

Finisher		
Dimension W x D x H		657 mm x 613 mm x 960 mm (25.9 x 24.1 x 37.8")
Weight		Less than 63 kg (138.6 lb.) (no punch unit) Less than 65 kg (143 lb.) (with punch unit)
Power Consumption		Less than 96 W
Noise		Less than 75 db
Configuration		Console type attached base-unit
Power Source		From base-unit
Proof Tray	Stack Capacity	250 sheets: A4, 8.5” x 11” or smaller 50 sheets: B4, 8.5” x 14 or larger

	Paper Size	A5 - A3 SEF, B6 SEF, A6 LEF 5.5" x 8.5" to 11” x 17” SEF, 12”x18” SEF	
	Paper Weight	52 g/m^2 - 163 g/m^2 (14 lb. - 43 lb.)	
Shift Tray	Stack Capacity	2,000 sheets	A4 LEF, 8.5” x 11” LEF
		1,000 sheets	A3 SEF, A4 SEF, B4 SEF, B5 11” x 17” SEF, 8.5" x 14” SEF, 8.5" x 11” SEF, 12”x18” SEF
		500 sheets	A5 LEF
		100 sheets	A5 SEF, B6 SEF, A6 SEF, 5.5" x 8.5" SEF
	Paper Size	A5 - A3 SEF, A6 SEF, B6 SEF 5.5" x 8.5" to 11” x 17” SEF, 12” x 18” SEF	
	Paper Weight	52 g/m^2 - 256 g/m^2 (14 lb. - 68 lb.)	

Staple			
Paper Size		B5-A3, 8.5" x 11” - 11” x 17”, 12” x 18”	
Paper Weight		64 g/m^2 - 90 g/m^2, 17 lb. Bond - 28 lb. Bond	
Staple Position		Top, Bottom, 2 Staple, Top-slant	
Staples Capacity	Same Paper Size	50 sheets	A4, 8.5" x 11” or smaller
		30 sheets	B4, 8.5" x 14” or larger
	Mixed Paper Size	30 sheets	A4 LEF & A3 SEF, B5 LEF & B4 SEF, 8.5" x 11” LEF & 11” x 17” SEF
	Booklet Stapling	15 sheets	A4 SEF, A3 SEF, B5 SEF, B4 SEF 8.5" x 11” SEF, 8.5” x 14” SEF, 11” x 17” SEF, 12” x 18” SEF

http://www.manuals4you.com

Optional Equipment

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">Staple Replenishment</td><td>Corner staple</td><td>5,000 staples per cartridge</td></tr>
<tr><td>Booklet staple</td><td>2,000 staples per cartridge</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="7">Corner Staple Capacity</td><td rowspan="5">Same Size</td><td rowspan="2">A4 LEF, 8.5” x 11” LEF</td><td>13 - 50 pages</td></tr>
<tr><td>2 - 12 pages</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">A4 SEF, B5, 8.5” x 11” SEF</td><td>10 - 50 pages</td></tr>
<tr><td>2 - 9 pages</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Others</td><td>10 - 30 pages</td></tr>
<tr><td>2 - 9 pages</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mixed Size</td><td>A4 LEF + A3 SEF
B5 LEF + B4 SEF
8.5” x 11” LEF + 11” x 17” SEF</td><td>2 - 30 pages</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Booklet Staple Capacity</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="3">A4 SEF, A3 SEF, B5 SEF, B4 SEF
8.5” x 11” SEF, 8.5” x 14” SEF, 11” x 17” SEF
12” x 18” SEF</td><td>2 - 5 pages</td></tr>
<tr><td>6 - 10 pages</td></tr>
<tr><td>11 - 15 pages</td></tr>
</table>

1.6.7 PUNCH UNIT (B702) FOR 2000/3000-SHEET (BOOKLET) FINISHER

Available Punch Units		NA	2/3 holes switchable
		EU	2/4 holes switchable
		Scandinavia	4 holes
Punch Waste Replenishment		NA 2-holes	Up to 5,000 sheets
		NA 3-holes	Up to 5,000 sheets
		EU 2-holes	Up to 14,000 sheets
		EU 4-holes	Up to 7,000 sheets
		Scandinavia 4-holes	Up to 7,000 sheets
Paper Weight		52 g/m^2 - 163 g/m^2, 14 lb Bond - 43 lb Bond	
Paper Sizes	NA 2-holes	SEF	A5 to A3, 5.5" x 8.5" to 11” x 17”
		LEF	A5 to A4, 5.5" x 8.5" , 8.5" x 11”
	NA 3-holes	SEF	A3, B4, 11” x 17”
		LEF	A4, B5, 8.5" x 11”
	EU 2-holes	SEF	A5 to A3, 5.5" x 8.5" to 11” x 17”
		LEF	A5 to A4, 5.5" x 8.5", 8.5" x 11”
	EU 4-holes	SEF	A3, B4, 11”x17”
		LEF	A4, B5, 8.5" x 11”
	Scandinavia 4-holes	SEF	A5 to A3, 5.5" x 8.5" to 11” x 17”
		LEF	A5 to A4, 5.5" x 8.5", 8.5" x 11”

http://www.manuals4you.com

1.6.8 1000-SHEET FINISHER (B408)

Upper Tray

Paper Size:	A3 to A6 11" x 17" to 5.5" x 8.5"
Paper Weight:	60 to 157 g/m^2 (16 to 42 lb.)
Paper Capacity:	250 sheets (A4 LEF/8.5" x 11" SEF or smaller) 50 sheets (A4, 8.5" x 11" or smaller) 30 sheets (B4, 8.5" x 14" or larger)

Lower Tray

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="5">Paper Size:</td><td colspan="4">No staple mode:
A3 to B5, DLT to HLT
Staple mode:
A3, B4, A4, B5, DLT to LT</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">No staple mode: 60 to 157 g/m^2 (16 to 42 lb)
Staple mode: 64 to 90 g/m^2 (17 to 24 lb)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">30 sheets (A3, B4, DLT, LG)
50 sheets (A4, B5 LEF, LT)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">No staple mode:
1,000 sheets (A4/LT or smaller: 80 g/m^2, 20 lb.)
500 sheets (A3, B4, DLT, LG: 80 g/m^2, 20 lb.)
Staple mode: (80 g/m^2, 20 lb., number of sets)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Size</td><td rowspan="2">2 to 9</td><td colspan="2">10 to 50</td></tr>
<tr><td>Size</td><td>10 to 30</td><td>31 to 50</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>A4/LT LEF
B5 LEF</td><td>100</td><td>100 to 20</td><td>100 to 20</td></tr>
</table>

	A4/LT SEF	100	50 to 10	50 to 10
	A3, B4, DLT, LG	50	50 to 10	-
Staple positions:	1 Staple: 2 positions (Front, Rear) 2 Staples: 2 positions (Upper, Left)			
Staple Replenishment:	Cartridge (5,000 staples/cartridge)			
Power Source:	DC 24 V, 5 V (from the copier/printer)			
Power Consumption:	50 W			
Weight:	25 kg (55.2 lbs)			
Dimensions (W x D x H):	527 x 520 x 790 mm (20.8" x 20.5" x 31.1")			

1.6.9 BRIDGE UNIT (D386)

Paper Size:	Standard sizes A6 SEF to A3, HLT to DLT Non-standard sizes Width: 90 to 305 mm Length: 148 to 600 mm
Paper Weight:	52 g/m^2 to 256 g/m^2, 16 lb. to 68 lb.
Paper Capacity:	250 sheet (A4/ $8_{1/2}$" x $11_{1/2}$" or smaller: 80g/m^2/ 20 lbs) 125 sheet (B4 $8_{1/2}$" x $11_{1/2}$" or larger: 80g/m^2/ 20 lbs)
Power Source:	DC 24 V, 5 V (form the copier/printer)
Dimensions (W x D x H):	415 mm x 412 mm x 111 mm (16.3" x 16.2" x 4.4")
Weight	5 kg (11 lb.)

http://www.manuals4you.com

1.6.10 SHIFT TRAY (D388)

Paper Capacity:	250 sheet (A4/ $8_{1/2}$" x $11_{1/2}$" or smaller: 80g/m^2/ 20 lbs) 125 sheet (B4 $8_{1/2}$" x $11_{1/2}$" or larger: 80g/m^2/ 20 lbs)
Paper Size:	Standard sizes A6 SEF to A3, HLT to DLT Non-standard sizes Width: 90 to 305 mm Length: 148 to 600 mm
Paper Weight:	52-256 g/m^2/ 14 - 68 lbs
Power Consumption:	Max 10W (Power is supplied from the mainframe.)
Dimension (W x D x H):	423 mm x 468 mm x 114 mm (16.7" x 18.4" x 4.5")
Weight:	Approx. 2kg (4.4lbs)

1.6.11 1-BIN TRAY UNIT (D414)

Paper Size:	Standard Size: A3 /DLT to A5/ HLT SEF
Paper Weight:	60 to 169 g/m^2, 16 to 45 lb.
Tray Capacity:	125 sheets (80 g/m^2, 20 lb., A4)
Power Source:	DC 24 V, 5 V (from the copier)
Power Consumption:	Less than 1 W
Weight:	1.7 kg
Size (W x D x H):	565 mm x 410 mm x 115 mm (22.2" x 16.1" x 4.5")

APPENDIX:

MAINTENANCE TABLES

APPENDIX: MAINTENANCE TABLES REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
394 ~ 395	04/09/2009	Updated Information – Scanner SP Mode

http://www.manuals4you.com

2. APPENDIX: MAINTENANCE TABLES

2.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES

2.1.1 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE ITEMS

Chart: A4 (LT)/5%

Mode: 4 copies / original (prints/job)

Ratio 30%

Environment: Normal temperature and humidity

Yield may change depending on circumstances and print conditions.

Symbol keys: C: Clean, R: Replace, L: Lubricant, I: Inspect

Mainframe

Item	120K	240K	360K	480K	600K	EM	Remarks
Scanner							
Reflector	C						Optics cloth
1st/2nd/3rd mirrors	C						Optics cloth
Front and Rear Rails	C						Dry cloth
Exposure Glass	C					C	Dry cloth; alcohol
ADF Exposure Glass	C					C	Dry cloth; alcohol
APS Sensor	C						Dry cloth
PCU							
Dev. Unit–K				R			

http://www.manuals4you.com

Maintenance Tables

Item	120K	240K	360K	480K	600K	EM	Remarks
Drum Unit-K, C, M, Y	R						
Developer-K		R					
Transfer							
Image transfer belt-cleaning unit		R					
Paper Transfer Roller Unit			R				
Toner Collection Bottle	R						
Fusing							
Heating Roller		R					
-Bearing		R					S552R
Pressure Roller		R					
-Bearing		R/L					S552R
Idle Gear						R/L	S552R
Heating Roller Thermistor		C					
Pressure Roller Thermistor		C					
Lower Cover		C					
Stripper Plate		C					Alcohol
Entrance Guide Plate		C					Alcohol
Exit Guide Plate		C					Alcohol
Fusing Cleaning Felt		R					
Thermopile		C					Cotton

Item	120K	240K	360K	480K	600K	EM	Remarks
							swab with alcohol
Paper Path							
Registration Roller						C	Damp cloth
Registration Sensor						C	Dry cloth
Vertical Transport Roller						C	Damp cloth
Vertical Transport Sensor						C	Dry cloth
Paper Feed Sensor						C	Dry cloth
Pick-up Roller						C	Dry cloth
Feed Roller						C	Dry cloth
Separation Roller						C	Dry cloth
Fusing Entrance Sensor						C	Dry cloth
Fusing Exit Sensor						C	Dry cloth
Paper Dust Container	C					C	
Duplex Unit							
Inverter Roller						C	Damp cloth
Transport Roller						C	Damp cloth
Duplex Entrance Sensor						C	Dry cloth
Duplex Exit Sensor						C	Dry cloth
Miscellaneous							

http://www.manuals4you.com

Maintenance Tables

Item	120K	240K	360K	480K	600K	EM	Remarks
Dust Filter	R						
Dust Glass						C	
ID Sensor						C	Blower Brush

*1: Clean this thermistor only when it has paper dust.

ARDF (B802)

Item	120K	EM	Remarks
Sensors		C	Blower brush
Platen Sheet Cover		C	Damp cloth; alcohol (Replace if required.)
White Plate		C	Dry or damp cloth
Drive Gear		L	Grease G501
Transport Roller		C	Damp cloth; alcohol
Exit Roller		C	Damp cloth; alcohol
Inverter Roller		C	Damp cloth; alcohol
Idle Rollers		C	Damp cloth; alcohol

Two-tray Paper Feed Unit (D351)

Item	EM	Remarks
Feed Roller	C	Dry cloth
Separation Roller	C	Dry cloth
Pick-up Roller	C	Dry cloth
Paper Feed Sensor	C	Dry cloth
Relay Sensor	C	Dry cloth
Relay Roller	C	Damp cloth
Bottom Plate Pad	C	Damp cloth

1200-sheet LCT (D353)

Item	EM	Remarks
Feed Roller	C	Dry cloth
Separation Roller	C	Dry cloth
Pick-up Roller	C	Dry cloth
Paper Feed Sensor	C	Dry cloth
Relay Sensor	C	Dry cloth
Relay Roller	C	Damp cloth
Bottom Plate Pad	C	Damp cloth

http://www.manuals4you.com

2000-sheet LCT (D352)

Item	EM	Remarks
Feed Roller	C	Dry cloth
Separation Roller	C	Dry cloth
Pick-up Roller	C	Dry cloth
Paper Feed Sensor	C	Dry cloth
Relay Sensor	C	Dry cloth
Relay Roller	C	Damp cloth
Bottom Plate Pad	C	Damp cloth

2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher (B804/B805)

Items	EM	Remarks
Rollers	C	Damp cloth
Discharge Brush	C	Dry cloth
Sensors	C	Blower brush

2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher Punch Kit (B702)

Items	EM	Remarks
Punch Chads	C	Discard chads.

1000-Sheet Finisher (B408)

Items	EM	Remarks
Rollers	C	Damp cloth
Discharge Brush	C	Dry cloth
Sensors	C	Blower brush

1 Bin Tray (D414)

Items	EM	Remarks
Rollers	C	Damp cloth
Tray	C	Damp cloth
Sensor	C	Blower brush
Bearing	C	S552R

Bridge Unit (D386)

Items	EM	Remarks
Rollers	C	Damp cloth

Shift Tray (D388)

Items	EM	Remarks
Tray	C	Damp cloth

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.1.2 OTHER YIELD PARTS

The parts mentioned in these tables have a target yield. However, the total copy/print volume made by the machine will not reach the target yield within the machine's targeted lifetime if the machine is used under the target usage conditions (ACV, color ratio, P/J, and C/O). So, these parts are categorized not as PM parts but as yield parts (EM parts).

Mainframe

Item	120K	240K	480K	600K	Remarks
Dev. Unit–C, M, Y			R		
Developer- C, M, Y		R			
ITB Unit				R	

ARDF

Item	80K	120K	240K	320K	Remarks
Pick-up Roller		R			Number of originals
Feed Belt		R			Number of originals
Separation Roller		R			Number of originals

APPENDIX:

SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

APPENDIX: SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

3. APPENDIX: SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

3.1 SC TABLES

3.1.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

Summary

The "SC Table" section shows the SC codes for controller errors and other errors. The latter (not controller errors) are put into four types. The type is determined by their reset procedures. The table shows the classification of the SC codes.

	Key	Definition	Reset Procedure
Controller errors	CTL	The error has occurred in the controller.	See “Troubleshooting Procedure” in the table.
Other errors	A	The error involves the fusing unit. The machine operation is disabled. The user cannot reset the error.	Turn the main switch off and on. Reset the SC (set SP5-810-1). Turn the main switch off and on.
	B	The error involves one or some specific units. The machine operates as usual, excluding the related units.	Turn the operation switch off and on.
	C	The error is logged. The SC-code history is updated. The machine operates as usual.	The SC will not show. Only the SC history is updated.
	D	The machine operation is disabled. You can reset the machine by turning the operation switch or main switch off and on. If the error occurs	Turn the operation switch or main power switch off and on.

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

	Key	Definition	Reset Procedure
		again, the same SC code is displayed.	

After you turn the main power switch off, wait for one second or more before you turn the main power switch on (☛ SC 672). All SCs are logged. The print log data (SP5-990-004) in SP mode can check the latest 10 SC codes detected and total counters when the SC code is detected.

Note

- If the problem concerns electrical circuit boards, first disconnect then reconnect the connectors before you replace the PCBs.
- If the problem concerns a motor lock, first check the mechanical load before you replace motors or sensors.

SC Code Classification

The table shows the classification of the SC codes:

Class 1	Section	SC Code	Detailed section
1XX	Scanning	100 -	Scanner
		190 -	Unique for a specific model
2XX	Laser exposure	200 -	Polygon motor
		220 -	Synchronization control
		230 -	FGATE signal related
		240 -	LD control
		280 -	Unique for a specific model
		290 -	Shutter
3XX	Image development 1	300 -	Charge
		330 -	Drum potential
		350 -	Development

Class 1	Section	SC Code	Detailed section
		380 -	Unique for a specific model
4XX	Image development 2	400 -	Image transfer
		420 -	Paper separation
		430 -	Cleaning
		440 -	Around drum
		460 -	Unit
		480 -	Others
5XX	Paper feed / Fusing	500 -	Paper feed
		515 -	Duplex
		520 -	Paper transport
5XX	Paper feed / Fusing	530 -	Fan motor
		540 -	Fusing
		560 -	Others
		570 -	Unique for a specific model
6XX	Communication	600 -	Electrical counters
		620 -	Mechanical counters
		630 -	Account control
		640 -	CSS
		650 -	Network
		670 -	Internal data processing
		680 -	Unique for a specific model
7XX	Peripherals	700 -	Original handling

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

Class 1	Section	SC Code	Detailed section
		720 -	Two-tray finisher
		740 -	Booklet finisher
8XX	Controller	800 -	Error after ready condition
		820 -	Diagnostics error
		860 -	Hard disk
		880 -	Unique for a specific model
9XX	Others	900 -	Counter
		920 -	Memory
		990 -	Others

3.1.2 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 1

SC1xxx: Scanning

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
101	D	Exposure lamp error
		The peak white level is less than 64/255 digits (8 bits) when scanning the shading plate.
		▪ Exposure lamp defective ▪ Lamp stabilizer defective ▪ Exposure lamp connector defective ▪ Standard white plate dirty ▪ Scanner mirror or scanner lens out of position or dirty
		1. Check and clean the scanner mirror(s) and scanner lens. 2. Check and clean the shading plate. 3. Replace the exposure lamp. 4. Replace the lamp stabilizer. 5. Replace the scanner mirror(s) or scanner lens.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
120	D	Scanner home position error 1
		The scanner home position sensor does not detect the “OFF” condition during operation.
		▪ Scanner motor driver defective ▪ Scanner motor defective ▪ Harness between SIO board and scanner motor disconnected ▪ Scanner HP sensor defective ▪ Harness between SIO and HP sensor disconnected
		1. Check the cable connection between the SIO board and scanner motor.

http://www.manuals4you.com

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		2. Check the cable connection between the SIO and HP sensor. 3. Replace the scanner motor. 4. Replace the HP sensor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
121	D	Scanner home position error 2
		The scanner home position sensor does not detect the “ON” condition during operation.
		▪ Scanner motor driver defective ▪ Scanner motor defective ▪ Harness between SIO board and scanner motor disconnected ▪ Scanner HP sensor defective ▪ Harness between SIO and HP sensor disconnected
		1. Check the cable connection between the SIO board and scanner motor. 2. Check the cable connection between the SIO and HP sensor. 3. Replace the scanner motor. 4. Replace the HP sensor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
141	D	Black level detection error
		The black level cannot be adjusted within the target value during the zero clamp.
		▪ Harness disconnected ▪ Defective SBU
		1. Check the cable connection 2. Replace the SBU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
142	D	White level detection error
		The white level cannot be adjusted within the target during auto gain control.
		▪ Dirty exposure glass or optics section ▪ SBU board defective ▪ Exposure lamp defective ▪ Lamp stabilizer defective ▪ Scanner motor defective
		1. Clean the exposure glass, white plate, mirrors, and lens. 2. Check if the exposure lamp is lit during initialization. 3. Check the harness connection between SBU and BICU. 4. Replace the exposure lamp. 5. Replace the scanner motor. 6. Replace the SBU board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
144	D	SBU communication error
		The SBU connection cannot be detected at power on or recovery from the energy save mode.
		▪ Defective SBU ▪ Defective harness ▪ Defective detection port on the BICU
		1. Replace the harness. 2. Replace the SBU. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
161		IPU error

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
001	D	The error result of self-diagnostic by the ASIC on the BICU is detected.
		▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective connection between BICU and SBU
		1. Check the connection between BICU and SBU. 2. Replace the BICU.
002	D	Detected an error during an access to the Ri.
		▪ Defective BICU board
		1. Replace the BICU board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
165	D	Copy Data Security Unit error
		▪ The copy data security board is not detected when the copy data security function is set "ON" with the initial setting. ▪ A device check error occurs when the copy data security function is set "ON" with the initial setting.
		▪ Incorrect installation of the copy data security board ▪ Defective copy data security board
		1. Reinstall the copy data security board. 2. Replace the copy data security board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
195	D	Serial Number Mismatch
		▪ Serial number stored in the memory does not have the correct code.
		▪ NVRAM defective ▪ BICU replaced without original NVRAM

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		1. Check the serial number with SP5-811-002. 2. If the stored serial number is incorrect, contact your supervisor.

http://www.manuals4you.com

3.1.3 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 2

SC Codes Group 2: Exposure

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
202	D	Polygon motor error 1: ON timeout
		The polygon mirror motor does not reach the targeted operating speed within the specified time after turning on or changing speed
		▪ Defective or disconnected harness to polygon motor driver board ▪ Defective polygon motor driver board ▪ Defective polygon motor.
		1. Replace the polygon motor. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the harness. 4. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
203	D	Polygon motor error 2: OFF timeout
		The polygon mirror motor does leave the READY status within 3 seconds after the polygon motor switches off.
		▪ Disconnected or defective harness to polygon motor driver board ▪ Defective polygon motor driver board ▪ Defective polygon motor
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the polygon motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
204	D	Polygon motor error 3: XSCRDY signal error

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		The SCRDY_N signal goes HIGH (inactive) while the laser diode is firing.
		▪ Disconnected or defective harness to polygon motor driver board ▪ Defective polygon motor ▪ Defective polygon motor driver board
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the polygon motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
210	C	Laser synchronizing detection error: end position [K]
211	C	Laser synchronizing detection error: end position [Y]
212	C	Laser synchronizing detection error: end position [M]
213	C	Laser synchronizing detection error: end position [C]
-	-	The laser synchronizing detection signal for the end position of LDB [K], [Y], [M], [C] is not detected for one second after the LDB unit turned on when detecting the main scan magnification.
		▪ Disconnected or defective harness to synchronizing detector for end position ▪ Defective synchronizing detector board ▪ Defective LD board or driver ▪ Defective BICU
		1. Replace the harness of the LD board. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
220	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [K]: LD0

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
221	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [K]: LD1
222	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [Y]: LD0
223	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [Y]: LD1
224	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [M]: LD0
225	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [M]: LD1
226	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [C]: LD0
227	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [C]: LD1
-	-	The laser synchronizing detection signal for the start position of the LDB [K], [Y], [M], [C] is not output for two seconds after LDB unit turns on while the polygon motor is rotating normally.
		▪ Disconnected cable from the laser synchronizing detection unit or defective connection ▪ Defective laser synchronizing detector ▪ Defective LDB ▪ Defective BICU
		1. Check the connectors. 2. Replace the laser-synchronizing detector. 3. Replace the LDB. 4. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
230	D	FGATE ON error: K
		The PFGATE ON signal does not assert within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for start position [K].
		▪ Defective ASIC (Lupus) ▪ Poor connection between controller and BICU. ▪ Defective BICU

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		1. Check the connection between the controller board and the BICU. 2. Replace the BICU. 3. Replace the controller board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
231	D	FGATE OFF error: K
		▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for end position [K]. ▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts when the next job starts.
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
232	D	FGATE ON error: Y
		The PFGATE ON signal does not assert within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for start position [Y].
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
233	D	FGATE OFF error: Y
		▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for end position [Y]. ▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts when the next job starts.
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
234	D	FGATE ON error: M

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		The PFGATE ON signal does not assert within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for start position [M].
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
235	D	FGATE OFF error: M
		▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for end position [M]. ▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts when the next job starts.
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
236	D	FGATE ON error: C
		The PFGATE ON signal does not assert within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for start position [C].
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
237	D	FGATE OFF error: C
		▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for end position [C]. ▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts when the next job starts.
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
240	C	LD error: K

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
241	C	LD error: Y
242	C	LD error: M
243	C	LD error: C
-	-	The BICU detects LDB error a few times consecutively when LDB unit turns on after LDB initialization.
		▪ Worn-out LD ▪ Disconnected or broken harness of the LD
		1. Replace the harness of the LD. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
285	D	Line position adjustment (MUSIC) error
		Line position adjustment fails four consecutive times.
		▪ Pattern sampling error (insufficient image density) ▪ Defective ID sensors for the line position adjustment ▪ Defective image transfer belt unit ▪ Defective PCU(s) ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit
		1. Check and reinstall the image transfer belt unit and PCUs. 2. Check if each toner bottle has enough toner. 3. Replace the ID sensor. 4. Replace the image transfer belt unit. 5. Replace the PCU(s). 6. Replace the laser optics housing unit.

http://www.manuals4you.com

3.1.4 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 3

SC3xx: Image Processing – 1

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
300	D	AC charge output error [K]
301	D	AC charge output error [M]
302	D	AC charge output error [C]
303	D	AC charge output error [Y]
-	-	The measured voltage is not proper when IOB measures the charge output for each color.
		▪ Disconnected or broken high voltage cable ▪ Defective or not installed PCU ▪ Defective high voltage power supply
		1. Check or replace the connectors. 2. Replace the PCU for the affected color. 3. Replace the high voltage power supply.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
360	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 1: K
361	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 1: M
362	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 1: C
363	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 1: Y
-	-	▪ The Vt value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor exceeds the specified value (default: 4.7V) with SP3020-002 for twenty counts. ▪ The [Vt - Vtref] value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor exceeds the specified value (default: 5.0V) with SP3020-001.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor disconnected ▪ Harness between TD sensor and PCU defective ▪ Defective TD sensor.
		1. Check the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor connector and harness between the TD sensor and PCU for damage. 2. Check the drawer connector. 3. Replace the defective PCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
364	D	TD sensor (Vt low) error 2: K
365	D	TD sensor (Vt low) error 2: M
366	D	TD sensor (Vt low) error 2: C
367	D	TD sensor (Vt low) error 2: Y
-	-	The Vt value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor is below the specified value with SP3020-004 (default: 0.5V) for 10 counts.
		▪ TD sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ A drawer connector disconnected, loose, defective ▪ TD sensor defective
		1. Check the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor connector and harness between the TD sensor and PCU for damage. 2. Check the drawer connector. 3. Replace the defective PCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
372	D	TD sensor adjustment error: K
373	D	TD sensor adjustment error: M
374	D	TD sensor adjustment error: C

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
375	D	TD sensor adjustment error: Y
-	-	During TD sensor initialization, the output value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor is not within the range of the specified value with SP3238-001 to -004 (default: 2.5V) ± 0.2V
		▪ Heat seal not removed from a new developer pack ▪ TD harness sensor disconnected, loose or defective ▪ TD sensor defective ▪ Harness between TD sensor and drawer disconnected, defective
		1. Remove the heat seal from each PCU. 2. Replace the defective PCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
380	C	Drum gear position sensor error: K
381	C	Drum gear position sensor error: M
382	C	Drum gear position sensor error: C
383	C	Drum gear position sensor error: Y
		The machine does not detect the drum position signal for 3 seconds at the drum phase adjustment.
▪ Dirty or defective drum gear position sensor		
1. Replace the drum gear		

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
position sensor. 2. Replace the PCU.		

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
396	D	Drum/Development motor error: K
397	D	Drum/Development motor error: M
398	D	Drum/Development motor error: C
399	D	Drum/Development motor error: Y
-	-	The machine detects a High signal from the drum/development motor for 2 seconds after the drum/development motor turned on.
		▪ Overload on the drum/development motor ▪ Defective drum/development motor ▪ Defective harness ▪ Shorted 24 V fuse on the PSU ▪ Defective interlock system
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the drum/development motor. 3. Replace the 24V fuse on the PSU.

http://www.manuals4you.com

3.1.5 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 4

SC4xx: Image Processing - 2

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
400	D	ID sensor adjustment error
		When the Vsg error counter reaches "3", the machine detects "SC400". The Vsg error counter counts "1" when the Vsg detected by ID sensor is more than the value (default: 4.5V) specified with SP3324-005 or less than the value (default: 3.5V) specified with SP3324-006.
		▪ Dirty or defective ID sensor ▪ Defective ID sensor shutter
		1. Check the harness of the ID sensor. 2. Clean or replace the ID sensor. Note ▪ After replacing the ID sensor, input the ID sensor correction coefficient with SP3362-013 to -018. For details, refer to "ID sensor board" in the Replacement and Adjustment section. 1. Replace the IOB. 2. Replace the image transfer belt unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
441	D	Image transfer unit motor error
		The motor LOCK signal is not detected for more than two seconds while the motor START signal is on.
		▪ Motor overload ▪ Defective image transfer unit motor
		1. Replace the image transfer belt unit. 2. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
442	D	Image transfer belt contact motor error
		The image transfer belt contact sensor does not detect the movement of actuator at the sensor while the polygon motor rotates.
		▪ Dirty image transfer belt contact sensor ▪ Defective image transfer belt contact motor ▪ Disconnected connector of image transfer belt contact sensor or motor ▪ Disconnected cable
		1. Replace the image transfer belt contact sensor. 2. Replace the image transfer belt contact motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
443	C	Image transfer unit error
		The machine detects the encoder sensor error.
		▪ Defective encoder sensor ▪ Image transfer unit installation error ▪ Defective image transfer unit motor
		1. Check if the image transfer unit is correctly set. 2. Replace the image transfer unit motor. 3. Replace the image transfer unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
452	D	Paper transfer unit contact error
		The paper transfer unit contact sensor does not detect the movement of actuator at the sensor while the polygon motor rotates.
		▪ Defective paper transfer unit contact sensor ▪ Defective paper transfer unit contact motor

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Broken +24V fuse on PSU ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check the connection between the paper transfer unit and PSU. 2. Replace the paper transfer unit contact sensor. 3. Replace the paper transfer unit contact motor. 4. Replace the +24V fuse on the PSU. 5. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
460	D	Separation power pack output error
		An interrupt checks the status of the power pack every 20 ms. This SC is issued if the BICU detects a short in the power pack 10 times at D(ac).
		▪ Damaged insulation on the high-voltage supply cable ▪ Damaged insulation around the high-voltage power supply.
		1. Replace the high-voltage supply cable. 2. Replace the high-voltage power supply unit. 3. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
490	D	Toner transport motor error
		The LOCK signal is not detected for 2 seconds when the transport motor turns on.
		▪ Toner transport motor overload ▪ Disconnected or broken harness ▪ Defective toner transport motor ▪ Opened +24V fuse on the PSU ▪ Defective interlock switch

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the toner transport motor. 3. Replace the +24V fuse on the PSU. 4. Replace the interlock switch.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
491	D	High voltage power: Drum/ development bias output error
		An error signal is detected for 0.2 seconds when charging the drum or development.
		▪ High voltage leak ▪ Broken harness ▪ Defective drum unit or development unit ▪ Defective high voltage supply unit
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the drum unit or paper transfer unit. 3. Replace the high voltage supply unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
492	C	High voltage power: Image transfer/ paper transfer bias output error
		An error signal is detected for 0.2 seconds when charging the separation, image transfer bet or paper transfer roller.
		▪ High voltage leak ▪ Broken harness ▪ Defective image transfer belt unit or paper transfer unit ▪ Defective high voltage supply unit
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the image transfer belt unit or paper transfer unit. 3. Replace the high voltage supply unit.

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
498	C	Temperature and humidity sensor error 2
		▪ The thermistor output of the temperature sensor was not within the prescribed range (0.5V to 4.2V). ▪ The thermistor output of the humidity sensor was not within the prescribed range (0.01V to 2.4V).
		▪ Temperature and humidity sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Temperature and humidity sensor defective
		1. Check the connector and harness. 2. Replace the temperature/humidity sensor.

3.1.6 SERVICE CALL TABLES – 5

SC5xx: Paper Feed and Fusing

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
501	B	Paper Tray 1 error
502	B	Paper Tray 2 error
-	-	▪ When the tray lift motor rotates counterclockwise, (if the upper limit is not detected within 10 seconds), the machine asks the user to reset the tray. ▪ When the tray lift motor rotates clockwise, (if the upper limit is not detected within 1.5 seconds), the machine asks the user to reset the tray. If one of these conditions occurs three consecutive times, the SC is generated.
		▪ Disconnected or defective paper lift sensor ▪ Disconnected or defective tray lift motor ▪ Defective bottom plate lift mechanism ▪ Too much paper in the tray ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check if the paper is not loaded too much. 2. Check if the bottom plate smoothly moves up and down manually. 3. Check and / or replace the tray lift motor / paper lift sensor. 4. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
503-01	B	Tray 3 error (Paper Feed Unit or LCT)
		For the paper feed unit: ▪ When the tray lift motor is turned on, the upper limit is not detected within 10 seconds **For the LCT:**

http://www.manuals4you.com

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ SC 503-01 occurs if the upper or lower limit is not detected within 8 seconds when the tray lift motor is turned on to lift or lower the tray.
		For the paper feed unit: ▪ Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective lift sensor or connector disconnection **For the LCT:** ▪ Defective stack transport clutch or connector disconnection ▪ Defective tray motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective end fence home position sensor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective upper limit sensor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection
		1. Check the cable connections. 2. Check and/or replace the defective component.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
503-02	B	Tray 3 error (Paper Feed Unit or LCT)
		This SC is generated if the following condition occurs 3 consecutive times. **For the paper feed unit:** ▪ When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec. **For the LCT:** ▪ When the main switch is turned on or when the LCT is set, if the end fence is not in the home position (home position sensor ON), the tray lift motor stops. ▪ If the upper limit does not go off for 1.5 seconds even the tray lift motor turns on to lower the tray after the upper limit has been detected at power on.
		For the paper feed unit: ▪ Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Defective lift sensor or connector disconnection **For the LCT:** ▪ Defective stack transport clutch or connector disconnection ▪ Defective tray motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective end fence home position sensor or connector disconnection
		1. Check the cable connections. 2. Check and/or replace the defective component.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
504-01	B	Tray 4 error (Paper Feed Unit or LCT)
		For the two-tray paper feed unit When the tray lift motor is turned on, the upper limit is not detected within 10 seconds. If this condition occurs three consecutive times, the SC is generated. **For the LCT** If the upper or lower limit is not detected within 8 seconds when the tray lift motor is turned on to lift up or lower the tray
		▪ Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective lift sensor or connector disconnection
		1. Check the cable connections. 2. Check and/or replace the defective component.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
504-02	B	Tray 4 error (3 Tray Paper Feed Unit)
		This SC is generated if the following condition occurs 3 consecutive times.

For the two-tray paper feed unit

- When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5

http://www.manuals4you.com

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		sec. **For the LCT** ▪ If the upper limit does not go off for 1.5 seconds even the tray lift motor turns on to lower the tray after the upper limit has been detected at power on.
		▪ Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective lift sensor or connector disconnection
		1. Check the cable connections. 2. Check and/or replace the defective component.

505		5th tray lift malfunction (optional LCT)
-1	B	This SC is generated if the following condition occurs: ▪ When the tray lift sensor of the LCT 1200-sheet does not go on after the tray lift motor has turned on to lift the paper tray. ▪ When the tray lift sensor of the LCT 1200-sheet does not go off after the tray lift motor has turned on to lower the paper tray. ▪ When the tray lift sensor of the LCT 1200-sheet does not go on after the pick-up roller solenoid has turned on at power on.
		▪ Tray lift motor defective or disconnected ▪ Tray lift sensor defective or disconnected
-2	B	Both tray lift sensor and lower limit sensor are turned on at the same time when the main power is turned on or the right door is closed.
		▪ Tray lift motor defective or disconnected ▪ Tray lift sensor defective or disconnected ▪ Lowe limit sensor defective or disconnected

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
530	D	Fusing fan error
		The IOB does not receive the lock signal 10 seconds after turning on

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		the fusing fan.
		▪ Defective fusing fan motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check the connector and/or replace the fusing fan motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
531	D	Ventilation fan (at the left side of the machine) motor-front/rear error
		The IOB does not receive the lock signal for 2 seconds after turning on the ventilation fan motor-front/rear.
		▪ Defective ventilation fan motor-front or rear
		1. Replace the ventilation fan (at the left side of the machine) motor-front or rear.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
532	D	IH coil fan error
		The machine does not detect the fan motor lock signal for 2 seconds while the IH coil fan turns on.
		▪ Disconnected harness ▪ Overload on the IH coil fan motor ▪ Defective IH coil fan motor ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the IH coil fan. 3. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
533	D	IH inverter fan error
		The machine does not detect the fan motor lock signal for 2 seconds while the IH inverter fan turns on.
		▪ Disconnected harness ▪ Overload on the IH inverter fan motor ▪ Defective IH inverter fan motor ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the IH inverter fan. 3. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
534	D	Second duct fan error
		The machine does not detect the fan motor lock signal for 2 seconds while the second duct fan turns on.
		▪ Disconnected harness ▪ Overload on the second duct fan motor ▪ Defective second duct motor ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the second duct fan. 3. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
535	D	Paper exit fan error
		The machine does not detect the fan motor lock signal for 2 seconds while the paper exit fan turns on.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Disconnected harness ▪ Overload on the paper exit fan motor ▪ Defective paper exit motor ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the paper exit fan. 3. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
536	D	Controller fan error
		The motor lock signal error is detected for 10 seconds after the motor lock signal was first detected.
		▪ Defective controller fan motor ▪ Disconnected or defective harness ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Replace the controller fan motor. 2. Check or replace the harness. 3. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
540	D	Fusing/Paper exit motor error
		The IOB does not receive the lock signal 10 seconds after turning on the fusing/paper exit motor.
		▪ Motor overload ▪ Defective fusing/paper exit motor
		1. Replace the fusing/paper exit motor.

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
541	A	Heating roller thermopile error
		The temperature measured by the heating roller thermopile does not reach 0°C for 6 seconds.
		▪ Loose connection of the heating roller thermopile ▪ Defective heating roller thermopile ▪ Defective thermopile
		1. Check if the heating roller thermopile is firmly connected. 2. Replace the heating roller thermopile.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
542	A	Heating roller warm-up error 1
		▪ The heating roller temperature does not reach the ready temperature for 190 seconds after the heating lamp on. ▪ The heating roller temperature does not reach 80°C for 18 seconds after the IH inverter on.
		▪ Dirty or defective thermopile ▪ Defective IH coil unit
		1. Check if the heating roller thermopile is firmly connected. 2. Replace the thermopile. 3. Replace the IH coil unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
543	A	Heating roller overheat 1 (software error)
		The detected fusing temperature stays at 215°C for 1 second.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BICU

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		Related SC code: SC 553
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
544	A	Heating roller overheat 1 (hardware error)
		During stand-by mode or a print job, the detected heating roller temperature reaches 220 °C.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective fusing control system
		Related SC code: SC 543
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
547	D	Zero cross error
		▪ The zero cross signal is detected three times even though the heater relay is off when turning on the main power. ▪ The zero cross signal is not detected for 3 seconds even though the heater relay is on after turning on the main power or closing the front door. ▪ The detection error occurs twice or more in the 11 zero cross signal detections. This error is defined when the detected zero cross signal is less than 39.

http://www.manuals4you.com

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Defective fusing relay ▪ Defective fusing relay circuit ▪ Shorted +24V fuse on the PSU ▪ Unstable power supply
		1. Check the power supply source. 2. Replace the +24V fuse on the PSU. 3. Replace the PSU

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
548	A	Fusing unit rotation error
		The fuser rotation sensor does not detect change in the actuator for 0.5 seconds after the fusing/paper exit motor has turned on.
		▪ Defective fusing/paper exit motor ▪ Deformed actuator for the fuser rotation sensor ▪ Defective fuser rotation sensor ▪ Broken connection between IH inverter and IOB ▪ Incorrectly set fusing unit
		1. Check if the fusing unit is correctly set. 2. Check or replace the actuator for fuser rotation sensor. 3. Replace the fuser rotation sensor. 4. Replace the IH inverter. 5. Check the connection between IH inverter and IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
551	A	Heating roller thermistor error
		The temperature measured by the pressure roller thermistor does not reach 0 °C for 7 seconds.
		▪ Loose connection of pressure roller thermistor ▪ Defective pressure roller thermistor

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		Related SC code: SC 541
		1. Check that the pressure roller thermistor is firmly connected. 2. Replace the pressure roller thermistor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
552	A	Heating roller warm-up error 2
		▪ The heating roller temperature does not reach the ready temperature for 90 seconds after the heating lamp on. ▪ The heating roller temperature does not reach 80°C for 13 seconds after the IH inverter on.
		▪ Defective thermistor ▪ Defective IH inverter
		Related SC code: SC 542
		1. Check if the heating roller thermistor is firmly connected. 2. Replace the IH inverter.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
553	A	Heating roller overheat (software error)
		The detected heating roller temperature stays at 230°C or more for 1 second.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BICU
		Related SC code: SC 543
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB. 3. Replace the BICU.

http://www.manuals4you.com

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
554	A	Heating roller overheat (hardware error)
		The heating roller thermistor detects 240°C or more.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective fusing control system
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
557	C	Zero cross frequency error
		When the zero cross signal is 66 or more and it is detected 10 times or more in 11 detections, the machine determines that input 60 Hz and SC557 occurs.
		▪ Noise (High frequency)
		1. Check the power supply source.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
559	A	Consecutive fusing jam
		The paper jam counter for the fusing unit reaches 3 times. The paper jam counter is cleared if the paper is fed correctly. This SC is activated only when SP1159-001 is set to "1" (default "0").
		▪ Paper jam in the fusing unit.
		Remove the paper that is jammed in the fusing unit. Then make sure that the fusing unit is clean and has no obstacles in the paper feed path.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
561	A	Pressure roller thermistor error
		The temperature measured by the thermistor does not reach 0 °C for 37 seconds.
		▪ Loose connection of the thermopile ▪ Defective thermopile
		1. Check if the thermistor is firmly connected. 2. Replace the thermistor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
562	A	Pressure roller temperature error
		The temperature of the pressure roller does not reach the ready temperature for 120 seconds after the fusing lamp has turned on.
		▪ Defective thermistor ▪ Defective fusing lamp
		1. Replace the thermistor for the pressure roller. 2. Replace the fusing lamp.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
563	A	Pressure roller overheat 3 (software error)
		The detected pressure roller temperature stays at 215°C or more for 1 second.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BICU
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB.

http://www.manuals4you.com

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
564	A	Pressure roller overheat 3 (hardware error)
		The thermistor detects 220°C or more.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective fusing control system
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
565	A	Pressure roller fusing lamp consecutive full power 3
		When the fusing unit is not running in the ready condition, the pressure roller fusing lamp keeps ON full power for 180 seconds or more.
		▪ Broken pressure roller fusing lamp
		1. Replace the pressure roller lamp. 2. Replace the PSU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
569	D	Pressure roller contact sensor error
		Pressure roller contact sensor failed to detect 3 times.
		▪ Broken or defective pressure roller contact sensor ▪ Deformed or broken pressure roller contact sensor feeler

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Defective fusing unit
		1. Turn the main power switch ON/OFF.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
581	D	IH inverter input voltage error
		The IH inverter detects 70V or less/140V or more for 10 seconds.
		▪ Unusual input voltage ▪ Disconnected CN981 on the IH inverter ▪ Defective IH inverter
		1. Check CN981 on the IH inverter. 2. Replace the IH inverter.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
582	D	IH inverter current error at power on
		The output current from the IH inverter does not reach the proper value when the IH inverter turns on.
		▪ Disconnected power input terminal 1 and 2 ▪ Defective IH inverter ▪ Defective IH coil unit ▪ Defective fusing unit
		1. Check the power input terminals 1 and 2. 2. Replace the IH inverter. 3. Replace the IH coil unit. 4. Replace the fusing unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
585	A	IH coil unit full power (1250W) error

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		The IH coil unit full power (1250W) continues for 220 seconds or more.
		▪ Defective IH inverter ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Broken connection between IH inverter and IOB ▪ Defective thermopile
		1. Replace the IH inverter. 2. Replace the BICU. 3. Replace the IOB. 4. Check the connection between IH inverter and IOB. 5. Replace the thermopile.

3.1.7 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 6

SC6xx: Device Communication

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
610	D	Mechanical counter error: K
611	D	Mechanical counter error: FC
-	-	This SC is only for NA models. The machine detects the mechanical counter error when SP5987-001 is set to "1".
		▪ Disconnected mechanical counter ▪ Defective mechanical counter
		1. Check or replace the mechanical counter.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
620	D	ARDF communication error
		After the ARDF is detected, the break signal occurs or communication timeout occurs.
		▪ Incorrect installation of ARDF ▪ ARDF defective ▪ BICU board defective ▪ External noise
		1. Check the cable connection of the ARDF. 2. Shut out the external noise. 3. Replace the ARDF. 4. Replace the BICU board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
621	D	Finisher communication error
622	D	Paper tray unit communication error
-	-	While the IOB communicates with an optional unit, an SC code is displayed if one of following conditions occurs. ▪ The IOB receives the break signal which is generated by the peripherals only just after the main switch is turned on. ▪ When the IOB does not receive an OK signal from a peripheral 100ms after sending a command to it. The IOB resends the command. The IOB does not receive an OK signal after sending the command 3 times.
		▪ Cable problems ▪ IOB problems ▪ BICU problems ▪ PSU problems in the machine ▪ Main board problems in the peripherals
		1. Check if the cables of peripherals are correctly connected. 2. Replace the IOB or main board of peripherals. 3. Replace the BICU if no power is supplied to peripherals.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
623	D	2nd Paper Bank communication error
		This SC is not issued for this machine. When a communication error signal between the 1st paper bank and 2nd paper bank is received.
		▪ Loose connector

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
632	CTL	Counter device error 1

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
	B	After 3 attempts to send a data frame to the optional counter device via the serial communication line, no ACK signal was received within 100 ms.
		▪ Serial line between the optional counter device, the relay board and copier control board is disconnected or damaged ▪ Make sure that SP5113 is set to enable the optional counter device.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
633	CTL B	Counter device error 2
		After 3 attempts to send a data frame to the optional counter device via the serial communication line, no ACK signal was received within 100 ms.
		▪ Serial line between the optional counter device, the relay board and copier control board is disconnected or damaged ▪ Make sure that SP5113 is set to enable the optional counter device.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
634	CTL B	Counter device error 3
		A backup RAM error was returned by the counter device.
		▪ Counter device control board defective ▪ Backup battery of counter device defective

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
635	CTL B	Counter device error 4
		A backup battery error was returned by the counter device.

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Counter device control board defective ▪ Backup battery of counter device defective

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
636	CTL D	SD Card Error
01	-	Expanded authentication module error
		There is no expanded authentication module in the machine. The SD card or the file of the expanded authentication module is broken. There is no DESS module in the machine.
		▪ No expanded authentication module ▪ Defective SD card ▪ No DESS module
		1. Install the expanded authentication module. 2. Install the SD card. 3. Install the DESS module.
02	-	Version error
		The version of the expanded authentication module is not correct.
		▪ Incorrect module version
		1. Install the correct file of the expanded authentication module.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
641	CTL D	BICU control data transfer abnormal
		A sampling of the control data sent from the BICU reveals an abnormality.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Controller board defective ▪ External noise ▪ BICU board defective

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
650	CTL B	Communication error of the remote service modem (Cumin-M)
-001	-	Authentication error
		The authentication for the Cumin-M fails at a dial up connection.
		▪ Incorrect SP settings ▪ Disconnected telephone line ▪ Disconnected modem board
		1. Check and set the correct user name (SP5816-156) and password (SP5816-157).
-004	-	Incorrect modem setting
		Dial up fails due to the incorrect modem setting.
		Same as -001
		1. Check and set the correct AT command (SP5819-160).
-005	-	Communication line error
		The supplied voltage is not sufficient due to the defective communication line or defective connection.
		Same as -001
		1. Consult with the user's local telephone company.

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
651	CTL C	Incorrect dial up connection
		-001: Program parameter error
		-002: Program execution error
		An unexpected error occurs when the modem (Cumin-M) tries to call the center with a dial up connection.
		▪ Caused by a software bug
		No action required because this SC does not interfere with operation of the machine.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
669	D	EEPROM error
		Retry of EEPROM communication fails three times after the machine has detected the EEPROM error.
		▪ Caused by noise
		Turn the main power switch off and on.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
670	CTL D	Engine start up error
		The ready signal from the engine board is not detected.
		▪ Defective engine board.
		1. Replace the engine board.

671	CTL D	Engine board mismatch error
		Engine board and controller mismatch detected.

		▪ Wrong engine board installed. ▪ Wrong controller board installed. ▪ Check the type of engine board and controller board.
		1. Replace the BICU. 2. Replace the controller board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
672	CTL D	Controller-to-operation panel communication error at startup
		After powering on the machine, the communication circuit between the controller and the operation panel is not opened, or communication with controller is interrupted after a normal startup.
		▪ Controller stall ▪ Controller board installed incorrectly ▪ Controller board defective ▪ Operation panel connector loose or defective
		1. Check the harness connection. 2. Replace the controller board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
681	D	RFID: Communication error ▪ Communication error occurs when the RFID starts to communicate with the RFID receptor. ▪ Retry of RFID communication fails three times after the machine has detected the RFID communication error.
		▪ Defective RFID reader and writer ▪ Disconnected ASAP I/F ▪ No memory chip on the toner cartridge ▪ Noise
		1. Replace the RFID controller board. 2. Replace the toner cartridge.

http://www.manuals4you.com

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
682	D	Memory chip at TD sensor: Communication error
		Retry of memory chip communication fails three times after the machine has detected the memory chip communication error.
		▪ Damaged memory chip data ▪ Disconnected inter face ▪ No memory chip on the development unit ▪ Noise
		1. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
683	B	RFID: Unit check error
		The machine gets RFID communication error even the toner cartridges have not been installed in the machine.
		Caused by noise
		1. Turn the main power switch off and on.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
687	D	Memory address command error
		The BICU does not receive a memory address command from the controller 120 seconds after paper is in the position for registration.
		▪ Loose connection ▪ Defective controller ▪ Defective BICU
		1. Check if the controller is firmly connected to the BICU. 2. Replace the controller. 3. Replace the BICU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
690	D	GAVD communication error
		▪ The I2C bus device ID is not identified during initialization. ▪ A device-status error occurs during I2C bus communication. ▪ The I2C bus communication is not established due to an error other than a buffer shortage.
		▪ Loose connection ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective LD controller board
		1. Turn the main switch off and on. 2. Check the cable connection. 3. Replace the laser optics-housing unit. 4. Replace the BICU board.

http://www.manuals4you.com

3.1.8 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 7

SC7xx: Peripherals

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
700	D	Original stopper HP error
		When the pick-up motor turns on clockwise, the original stopper HP sensor does not detect the home position of the original stopper.
		▪ Defective original stopper HP sensor ▪ Defective pick-up motor ▪ Defective DF drive board
		1. Replace the DF drive board if the pick-up motor does not work correctly. 2. Replace the pick-up motor. 3. Replace the original stopper HP sensor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
701	D	Pick-up roller HP error
		When the pick-up motor turns on counterclockwise, the pick-up roller HP sensor does not detect the home position of the pick-up roller.
		▪ Defective pick-up roller HP sensor ▪ Defective pick-up motor ▪ Defective DF drive board
		1. Replace the DF drive board if the pick-up motor does not work correctly. 2. Replace the pick-up motor. 1. Replace the pick-up roller HP sensor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
721	B	Finisher jogger motor error
		The jogger fences move out of the home position but the HP sensor output does not change within the specified number of pulses. The 1st failure issues an original jam message, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Jogger HP sensor disconnected, defective ▪ Jogger motor disconnected, defective ▪ Jogger motor overloaded due to obstruction ▪ Finisher main board and jogger motor

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
723	B	Stack feed-out motor error
		▪ The stack feed-out HP sensor does not detect the home position of the stack feed-out belt 3000ms after the stack feed-out belt has moved to its home position. ▪ The stack feed-out HP sensor does not turn off 200 ms after the stack feed-out belt has moved from its home position. ▪ The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code.
		▪ Defective stack feed-out HP sensor ▪ Overload on the stack feed-out motor ▪ Defective stack feed-out motor ▪ Defective main board ▪ Disconnected or defective harness

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
725	B	Finisher exit guide plate motor error
		After moving away from the guide plate position sensor, the exit guide is not detected at the home position within the prescribed time. The 1st

http://www.manuals4you.com

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Guide plate motor disconnected, defective ▪ Guide plate motor overloaded due to obstruction ▪ Guide plate position sensor disconnected, defective
		1. Check the connections and cables for the components mentioned above. 2. Check for blockages in the guide plate motor mechanism. 3. Replace the guide plate position sensor and/or guide plate motor 4. Replace the finisher main board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
730	B	Finisher Tray 1 shift motor error
		The shift roller HP sensor of the upper tray does not activate within the prescribed time after the shift tray starts to move toward or away from the home position. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Shift tray HP sensor of the upper tray disconnected, defective ▪ Shift tray motor of the upper tray is disconnected, defective ▪ Shift tray motor of the upper tray overloaded due to obstruction
		1. Check the connections and cables for the components mentioned above. 2. Check for blockages in shift motor mechanism. 3. Replace the shift tray HP sensor and/or shift motor 4. Replace the finisher main board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
740	B	Finisher corner stapler motor error
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		this SC code. **For the 2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher** ▪ Staple movement is not finished after a certain time. **For the 1000-sheet finisher** ▪ The stapler motor does not switch off within the prescribed time after operating. ▪ The HP sensor of the staple unit does not detect the home position after the staple unit moves to its home position. ▪ The HP sensor of the staple unit detects the home position after the staple unit moves from its home position.
		▪ Staple jam ▪ Motor overload ▪ Defective stapler motor
		1. Check the connections and cables for the components mentioned above. 2. Replace the HP sensor and/or stapler motor 3. Replace the finisher main board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
741	B	Finisher corner stapler rotation motor error
		The stapler does not return to its home position within the specified time after stapling. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Defective stapler rotation motor ▪ Overload to the stapler rotation motor ▪ Defective stapler rotation HP sensor
		1. Replace the stapler rotation motor. 2. Replace the stapler rotation HP sensor.

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
742	B	Finisher stapler movement motor error
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. **For the 2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher** ▪ Staple movement is not finished for a certain time. **For the 1000-sheet finisher** ▪ The stapler HP sensor is not activated within the specified time after the stapler motor turned on. (First detection: jam error, consecutive twice detection SC code).
		▪ Motor overload ▪ Loose connection of the stapler home position sensor ▪ Loose connection of the stapler movement motor ▪ Defective stapler home position sensor ▪ Defective stapler movement motor
		1. Check the connection of the stapler movement motor. 2. Check the connection of the stapler home position sensor. 3. Replace the stapler home position sensor. 4. Replace the stapler movement motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
743	B	Booklet stapler motor error 1
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. **For the 2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher** The front stapler unit saddle-stitch motor does not start operation within the specified time.
		▪ Motor overload ▪ Loose connection of the front stapler motor ▪ Defective front stapler motor
		1. Replace the front stapler motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
744	B	Booklet staple motor error 2
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. **For the 2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher** The rear stapler unit saddle-stitch motor does not start operation within the specified time.
		▪ Motor overload ▪ Loose connection of the rear stapler motor ▪ Defective rear stapler motor
		1. Replace the front stapler motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
746	B	1000-sheet booklet finisher: Stack feed motor error
		▪ **This SC is not used in this machine.**

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
750	B	1000/2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher: Tray lift motor error
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. The upper tray paper height sensor does not change its status with the specified time after the tray raises or lowers.
		1. Check the connections to the shift tray motor. 2. Defective shift tray motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
753	B	Return roller motor error

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		This occurs during the operation of the lower tray pressure motor
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Motor overloaded ▪ Home position sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Home position defective

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
760	B	Finisher punch motor error
		The punch HP sensor is not activated within the specified time after the punch motor turned on. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Punch HP sensor disconnected, defective ▪ Punch motor disconnected or defective ▪ Punch motor overload due to obstruction
		1. Check the connections and cables for the punch motor and HP sensor. 2. Check for blockages in the punch motor mechanism. 3. Replace the punch HP sensor and/or punch motor 4. Replace the finisher main board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
761	B	Finisher folder plate motor error
		The folder plate moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Folder plate HP sensor disconnected, defective ▪ Folder plate motor disconnected, defective ▪ Folder plate motor overloaded due to obstruction.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		1. Check the connections and cables for the folder plate motor and HP sensor. 2. Check for blockages in the folder plate motor mechanism. 3. Replace the folder plate HP sensor and/or folder plate motor 4. Replace the finisher main board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
763	B	Punch movement motor error
		The punch unit moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Defective motor
		1. Check the connections to the punch movement motor. 2. Defective punch movement motor

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
764	B	Paper position sensor slide motor error
		The paper position sensor moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Defective motor
		1. Check the connections to the paper position sensor slide motor. 2. Defective paper position sensor slide motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
765	B	Paper position sensor slide motor error
		The paper position sensor moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Defective motor
		1. Check the connections to the paper position sensor slide motor. 2. Defective paper position sensor slide motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
766	B	Paper position sensor slide motor error
		The paper position sensor moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Defective motor
		1. Check the connections to the paper position sensor slide motor. 2. Defective paper position sensor slide motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
767	B	Paper position sensor slide motor error
		The paper position sensor moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Defective motor
		1. Check the connections to the paper position sensor slide motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		2. Defective paper position sensor slide motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
770	B	Shift motor error
		The shift motor HP sensor does not detect any change for 1.86 seconds after the shift motor has turned on at power on or during its operation.
		▪ Defective shift motor ▪ Defective shift motor HP sensor
		1. Check the connections to the shift motor and the shift motor HP sensor. 2. Defective shift motor or the shift motor HP sensor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
791	D	Bridge unit error
		The machine recognizes the finisher, but does not recognize the bridge unit.
		▪ Defective connector ▪ Broken harness
		1. Check the connections between the bridge unit and the machine. 2. Install a new bridge unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
792	B	Finisher error
		The machine does not recognize the finisher, but recognizes the bridge unit.

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Defective connector ▪ Defective harness ▪ Incorrect installation
		1. Check the connections between the finisher and the machine. 2. Install a new finisher.

3.1.9 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 8

SC8xx: Overall System

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
816	CTL D	Energy saving I/O sub-system error
		The energy saving I/O sub-system detects an error.
		▪ Controller board defective
		1. Replace the controller board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)	
819	CTL C	Fatal kernel error	
		Due to a control error, a RAM overflow occurred during system processing. One of the following messages was displayed on the operation panel.	
[0x5032]		HAIC-P2 error	▪ System program defective ▪ Controller board defective ▪ Optional board defective ▪ Replace controller firmware
[0x5245]		vm_pageout: VM is full	
[0x5355]		L2 status time out	
[554C]		USB error	

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
820	CTL D	Self-diagnostics error: CPU [XXXX]: Detailed error code
[0612]		Cut-in in ASIC occurs.
		▪ Defective ASIC ▪ Defective devices in which ASIC detects cut-in.

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		1. Replace the controller board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
833	CTL C	Self-diagnostic error 8: Engine I/F ASIC
[0F30] [0F31]		▪ ASIC (Mandolin) for system control could not be detected. After the PCI configuration, the device ID for the ASIC could not be checked.
		1. Replace the VBCU
[0F41]		▪ ASIC (Mandolin) for system control could not be detected. After the PCI configuration, the device ID for the ASIC could not be checked.
		1. Replace the VBCU
[50B1]		Could not initialize or read the bus connection.
		▪ Check for loose connections at the mother board.
		1. Replace the mother board
[50B2]		Value of the SSCG register is incorrect.
		▪ Check for loose connections at the mother board.
		1. Replace the mother board

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
851	CTL B	IEEE1394 interface error
		The 1394 interface is unusable.
		▪ Defective IEEE1394 ▪ Defective controller.
		1. Turn the main switch off and on. 2. Replace the IEEE1394 interface board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		3. Replace the controller.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
853	CTL B	Wireless LAN card not detected
		The wireless LAN card is not detected before communication is established, though the wireless LAN board is detected.
		▪ Loose connection
		1. Check the connection.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
854	CTL B	Wireless LAN/Bluetooth card not detected
		The wireless LAN/Bluetooth card is not detected after communication is established, but the wireless LAN board is detected.
		▪ Loose connection
		1. Check the connection.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
855 856	CTL B	Wireless LAN/Bluetooth card error
		An error is detected in the wireless LAN/Bluetooth card.
		▪ Loose connection ▪ Defective wireless LAN/Bluetooth card
		1. Check the connection. 2. Replace the wireless LAN/Bluetooth card.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
857	CTL B	USB interface error
		The USB interface cannot be used due to a driver error.
		▪ Defective USB driver ▪ Loose connection
		1. Check the connection. 2. Replace the USB board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
858	CTL C	HDD Encryption unit error 1
		A serious error occurs when data is encrypted to update an encryption key with the HDD encryption unit.
	[0]	Encryption key acquisition error: The controller fails to get a new encryption key.
▪ Defective controller board 1. Replace the controller board.		
[1]	Encryption key setting for HDD error: The controller fails to copy a new	

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
	encryption key to the HDD.	
	▪ Defective SATA chip on the controller board 1. Replace the controller board.	
[2]	Encryption key setting for HDD error: The controller fails to copy a new encryption key to the HDD.	
	▪ Defective SATA chip on the controller board 1. Replace	

http://www.manuals4you.com

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
	the controller board.	
[30]	NVRAM data encryption error 2: An error occurs before the NVRAM data is encrypted.	
	▪ Defective controller board 1. Replace the controller board.	
[0]	NVRAM data encryption error 2: An error occurs before the NVRAM data is encrypted.	
[31]	Other error: A serious error occurs while the data is	

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
	encrypted.	
	Same as SC991	

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
859	CTL C	HDD Encryption unit error 2
		A serious error occurs when the HDD data is encrypted to update an encryption key with the HDD encryption unit.
[8]		HDD check error: The HDD is not correctly installed.
		▪ No HDD installed ▪ Unformatted HDD ▪ The encryption key on the controller is different from the one on the HDD 1. Install the HDD correctly. 2. Initialize the HDD.
[9]		Power failure during the data encryption: The data encryption (NVRAM and HDD) has not been completed.
		▪ Power failure during the data encryption 1. Initialize the HDD.
[10]		Data read/write error: The DMAC error is detected twice or more.
		▪ Same as SC863

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
860	CTL	HDD: Initialization error

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
	B	The controller detects that the hard disk fails.
		▪ HDD not initialized ▪ Defective HDD
		1. Reformat the HDD. 2. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
861	CTL D	HDD: Reboot error
		The HDD does not become ready within 30 seconds after the power is supplied to the HDD.
		▪ Loose connection ▪ Defective cables ▪ Defective HDD ▪ Defective controller
		1. Check the connection between the HDD and controller. 2. Check and replace the cables. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace the controller.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
863	CTL D	HDD: Read error
		The data stored in the HDD cannot be read correctly.
		▪ Defective HDD ▪ Defective controller
		1. Replace the HDD. 2. Replace the controller.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
864	CTL D	HDD: CRC error
		While reading data from the HDD or storing data in the HDD, data transmission fails.
		▪ Defective HDD
		1. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
865	CTL D	HDD: Access error
		An error is detected while operating the HDD.
		▪ Defective HDD
		1. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
866	CTL B	SD card authentication error
		A correct license is not found in the SD card.
		▪ SD-card data is corrupted.
		1. Store correct data in the SD card.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
867	CTL D	SD card error
		The SD card is ejected from the slot.
		1. Install the SD card. 2. Turn the main switch off and on.

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
868	CTL D	SD card access error ▪ -13 to -3: File system error ▪ Other number: Device error
		An error report is sent from the SD card reader. ▪ An error is detected in the SD card.
		1. For a file system error, format the SD card on your PC. 2. For a device error, turn the mains switch off and on. 3. Replace the SD card. 4. Replace the controller.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
870	CTL B	Address book error
		An error is detected in the data copied to the address book over a network.
		▪ Defective software program ▪ Defective HDD ▪ Incorrect path to the server
		1. Initialize the address book data (SP5-846-050). 2. Initialize the user information (SP5-832-006). 3. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
872	CTL B	HDD mail data error
		An error is detected in the HDD at machine initialization.
		▪ Defective HDD ▪ Power failure during an access to the HDD
		1. Turn the main switch off and on.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		2. Initialize the HDD partition (SP5-832-007). 3. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
873	CTL B	HDD mail transfer error
		An error is detected in the HDD at machine initialization.
		▪ Defective HDD ▪ Power failure during an access to the HDD
		1. Initialize the HDD partition (SP5-832-008). 2. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
874	CTL D	Delete All error 1: HDD
		An error is detected while all of the HDD or NVRAM are formatted physically by the Data Overwrite Security Unit (D377).
		▪ Data Overwrite Security Unit (SD card) not installed ▪ Defective HDD
		1. Install the Data Overwrite Security Unit (D377). 2. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
875	CTL D	Delete All error 2: Data area
		An error is detected while all of the HDD or NVRAM are formatted logically by the Data Overwrite Security Unit (D377).
		▪ The logical format for the HDD fails.
		1. Turn the main switch off/on and try the operation again

http://www.manuals4you.com

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
876	CTL D	Log Data Error
		An error was detected in the handling of the log data at power on or during machine operation. This can be caused by switching the machine off while it is operating.
-001		Log Data Error 1
		▪ Damaged log data file in the HDD
		1. Initialize the HDD with SP5832-004.
-002		Log Data Error 2
		▪ An encryption module not installed
		1. Disable the log encryption setting with SP9730-004 ("0" is off.)
		1. Install the DESS module.
-003		Log Data Error 3
		▪ Invalid log encryption key due to defective NVRAM data
		1. Initialize the HDD with SP5832-004. 2. Disable the log encryption setting with SP9730-004 ("0" is off.)
-004		Log Data Error 4
		▪ Unusual log encryption function due to defective NVRAM data
		1. Initialize the HDD with SP5832-004.
-005		Log Data Error 5
		▪ Installed NVRAM or HDD which is used in another machine
		1. Reinstall the previous NVRAM or HDD. 2. Initialize the HDD with SP5832-004.
-099		Log Data Error 99

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Other than the above causes
		1. Ask your supervisor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
877	CTL D	HDD Data Overwrite Security SD card error
		The 'all delete' function cannot be executed but the Data Overwrite Security Unit (D377) is installed and activated.
		▪ Defective SD card (D377) ▪ SD card (D377) not installed
		1. Replace the NVRAM and then install the new SD card (D377). 2. Check and reinstall the SD card (D377).

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
878	CTL D	TPM system authentication error
		The system firmware is not authenticated by TPM (security chip).
		▪ Incorrect updating for the system firmware ▪ Defective flash ROM on the controller board 1. Replace the controller board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
880	CTL D	File format converter error
		The file format converter does not respond.
		▪ Defective file format converter
		1. Replace the file format converter.

http://www.manuals4you.com

3.1.10 SERVICE CALL TABLES - 9

SC9xx: Miscellaneous

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
900	CTL D	Electric counter error
		Abnormal data in the counters.
		▪ Defective NVRAM ▪ Defective controller
		1. Check the connection between the NVRAM and controller. 2. Replace the NVRAM. 3. Replace the controller.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
910	CTL D	External Controller Error 1
911		External Controller Error 2
912		External Controller Error 3
913		External Controller Error 4
914		External Controller Error 5
-	-	The external controller alerted the machine about an error.
-	-	▪ Please refer to the instructions for the external controller (application).

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
919	CTL D	External Controller Error 6
		While EAC (External Application Converter), the conversion module, was operating normally, the receipt of a power line interrupt signal from

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		the FLUTE serial driver was detected, or BREAK signal from the other station was detected.
		▪ Power outage at the EFI controller ▪ EFI controller was rebooted ▪ Connection to EFI controller loose

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
920	CTL D	Printer application error
		An error is detected in the printer application program.
		▪ Defective software ▪ Unexpected hardware resource (e.g., memory shortage)
		1. Software defective; switch off/on, or change the controller firmware if the problem is not solved 2. Insufficient memory

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
921	CTL D	Printer font error
		A necessary font is not found in the SD card.
		▪ A necessary font is not found in the SD card. ▪ The SD card data is corrupted.
		1. Check that the SD card has the correct data.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
990	CTL D	Software performance error
		The software makes an unexpected operation.
		▪ Defective software

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Defective controller ▪ Software error
		1. Turn the main switch off and on. 2. Reinstall the controller and/or engine main firmware.
		Note ▪ See Note 1 at the end of the SC table.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
991	CTL C	Software continuity error
		The software has attempted to perform an unexpected operation. However, unlike SC 990, the object of the error is continuity of the software.
		▪ Software program error ▪ Internal parameter incorrect, insufficient working memory.
		1. This SC is not displayed on the LCD (logging only).

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
992	CTL D	Undefined error
		Defective software program
		▪ An error undetectable by any other SC code occurred

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
994	CTL C	Operation panel management records exceeded
		An error occurred because the number of records exceeded the limit for images managed in the service layer of the firmware. This can occur if there if there are too many application screens open on the operation

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		panel.
		▪ No action required because this SC does not interfere with operation of the machine.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
995	D	CPM setting error
-001		▪ Defective BICU ▪ NVRAM Replacement error
		1. Install the previous NVRAM. 2. Input the serial number with SP5811-004, and turn the main power switch off/on.
-002		▪ Defective NVRAM ▪ Defective controller
		1. Update the controller firmware. 2. Install a new NVRAM, and turn off and on the main power switch after SC995-002 has occurred.
-003		▪ Incorrect type controller installed ▪ Defective controller
		1. Replace the controller with the correct type.
-004		▪ Incorrect model controller installed.
		1. Replace the controller with the correct model.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
997	CTL B	Application function selection error ▪ The application selected by the operation panel key does not start or ends abnormally.

http://www.manuals4you.com

SC Tables

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Software (including the software configuration) defective ▪ An option required by the application (RAM, DIMM, board) is not installed ▪ Nesting of the fax group addresses is too complicated
		1. Check the devices necessary for the application program. If necessary devices have not been installed, install them. 2. Check that application programs are correctly configured. 3. For a fax operation problem, simplify the nesting of the fax group addresses. 4. Take necessary countermeasures specific to the application program. If the logs can be displayed on the operation panel, see the logs.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
998	CTL D	Application start error
		No applications start within 60 seconds after the power is turned on.
		▪ Loose connection of RAM-DIMM, ROM-DIMM ▪ Defective controller ▪ Software problem
		1. Check the setting of SP5875-001. If the setting is set to "1 (OFF)", change it to "0 (OFF)". 2. Check if the RAM-DIMM and ROM-DIMM are correctly connected. 3. Reinstall the controller system firmware. 4. Replace the controller.

Note 1

If a problem always occurs in a specific condition (for example. printer driver setting, image file), the problem may be caused by a software error. In this case, the following data and information needs to be sent back to your product specialist. Please understand that it may take some time to get a reply on how to solve the problem, because in some cases the design staff in Japan must analyze the data.

- Symptom / Possible Causes / Action taken
- Summary sheet (SP mode “Printer SP”, SP1-004 [Print Summary])
- SMC - All (SP5-990-001)
- SMC - Logging (SP5-990-004)
- Printer driver settings used when the problem occurs
- All data displayed on the screen (SC code, error code, and program address where the problem is logged.)
- Image file which causes the problem, if possible

http://www.manuals4you.com

APPENDIX:

PROCESS CONTROL ERROR CONDITIONS

APPENDIX: SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

4. APPENDIX: PROCESS CONTROL ERROR CONDITIONS

4.1 PROCESS CONTROL TABLES

4.1.1 DEVELOPER INITIALIZATION RESULT

SP-3-014-001 (Developer Initialization Result)

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes/Action
1	Successfully completed	Developer initialization is successfully completed.	-
2	Forced termination	Developer initialization was forcibly terminated.	▪ A cover was opened or the main switch was turned off during the initialization. 1. Do the developer initialization again when done in SP mode. Reinstall the engine main firmware if the result is the same. 2. Turn the main switch off and on when done at unit replacement.
6	Vt error	Vt is more than 0.7V when Vcnt is 4.3V.	1. Make sure that the heat seal on the development unit is not removed. 2. Defective TD sensor
7	Vcnt error 1	Vcnt is less than 4.7V when Vcnt is Vt target ±0.2V.	1. Defective TD sensor 2. Vt target settings are not correct. 3. Toner density error
8	Vcnt error 2	Vt is more than 0.7V when Vcnt is 4.3V and	1. Make sure that the heat seal on the development unit is not removed.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Process Control Tables

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes/Action
		Vcnt is less than 4.7V when Vcnt is Vt target ±0.2V.	2. Defective TD sensor
9	Vcnt error 3	Vcnt is less than 4.7V.	1. Make sure that the heat seal on the development unit is not removed 2. Defective TD sensor 3. Vt target settings are not correct. 4. Toner density error

Note

- The machine starts developer initialization after you set “Enable” in SP3-902-005, 006, 007, or 008. Developer initialization automatically resumes when you open and close the front door or turn the main switch off and on if an error other than Error 8 occurs.

4.1.2 PROCESS CONTROL SELF-CHECK RESULT

Displayed number shows results of each color sensor check.

00000000 = YYCCMMKK

SP3-012-001 to -010 (Process Control Self-check Result)

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes/Action
11	Successfully completed	Process control self-check successfully completed.	Check the Vsg adjustment. See the "Vsg Adjustment Result" following this table.
41	Vt error	Vt maximum or minimum error is detected.	▪ Defective development unit Vt maximum error and an image is faint: 1. Replace the toner supply pump unit. Vt maximum error and an image is O.K: 1. Replace the development unit. 2. Replace the IOB board. Vt minimum error:

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes/Action
			1. Replace the development unit. 2. Replace the IOB board.
53	ID sensor coefficient (K5) detection error	Not enough data can be sampled.	▪ Solid image is not sufficient density: 1. Retry the process control. 2. Replace the ID sensors. 3. Replace the IOB board. ▪ Solid image is O.K. 1. Replace the ID sensors. 2. Replace the IOB board. ▪ ID sensor is dirty: 1. Clean the ID sensors. 2. Retry the process control.
54	ID sensor coefficient (K5) maximum/ minimum error	When the K5 is more than the value of SP3-362-003 or less than the value of SP3-362-004, the error 54 is displayed.	▪ ID sensor pattern density is too high or low. ▪ ID sensor or shutter is defective. Same as 53
55	Gamma error: Maximum	Gamma is out of range. 5.0 < Gamma	▪ ID sensor pattern density is too high. ▪ Hardware defective. Same as 53
56	Gamma error: Minimum	Gamma is out of range. Gamma < 0.15	▪ ID sensor pattern density is too low. ▪ Hardware defective. 1. Same as 53 2. Replace the toner supply pump unit.
57	Vk error: Maximum	Vk is out of range. 150 < Vk	▪ ID sensor pattern density is too low. ▪ Hardware defective. Same as 53
58	Vk error: Minimum	Vk is out of range. Vk < –150	▪ ID sensor pattern density is too high. ▪ Background dirty ▪ Hardware defective

http://www.manuals4you.com

Process Control Tables

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes/Action
			Same as 53
59	Sampling data error during gamma correction	Not enough data can be sampled during the gamma correction.	▪ ID sensor pattern density is too high or low. ▪ Hardware defective Same as 53
99	Unexpected error	Process control fails.	▪ Power Failure Check the power source.

Vsg Adjustment Result

SP3-325-001 to -010 (Vsg Adjustment Result)

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes/Action
1	O.K	Vsg adjustment is correctly done.	-
2	ID sensor adjustment error	Vsg cannot be adjusted within 4.0 ±0.5V.	▪ Dirty ID sensor (toner, dust, or foreign material) ▪ Dirty transfer belt ▪ Scratched image transfer belt ▪ Defective ID sensor ▪ Poor connection ▪ Defective IOB 1. Clean the ID sensor. 2. Check the belt cleaning. Clean or replace the transfer belt. 3. Replace the image transfer belt. 4. Replace the ID sensor. 5. Check the connection. 6. Replace the IOB board.
3	ID sensor output error	ID sensor output is more than	▪ Defective ID sensor ▪ Poor connection

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes/Action
		"Voffset Threshold" (SP3-324-004)	▪ Defective IOB 1. Replace the ID sensor. 2. Check the connection. 3. Replace the IOB board.
9	Vsg Adjustment error	Vsg adjustment has not been completed.	▪ Other cases Retry SP3-321-010.

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.1.3 LINE POSITION ADJUSTMENT RESULT

SP2-194-010 to -012 (Line Position Adjustment Result: M, C, Y)

This SP shows the number as a line position adjustment result on the LCD. It shows which color has an error (M, Y or C).

No.	Result	Description	Note
0	Not done	Line position adjustment has not been done.	-
1	Completed successfully	Line position adjustment has correctly been done,	-
2	Cannot detect patterns	ID sensors have not detected the patterns for line position adjustment.	See Note
3	Fewer lines on the pattern than the target	The patterns, which ID sensors have detected, are not enough for line position adjustment.	See Note
4	More lines on the pattern than the target	Not used in this machine.	-
5	Out of the adjustment range	ID sensors have correctly detected the patterns for line position adjustment, but a shift of patterns is out of adjustable range.	See Note
6-9	Not used	-	-

Note

- For details, see the "Troubleshooting Guide - Line Position Adjustment" section.

APPENDIX:

TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

APPENDIX: TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

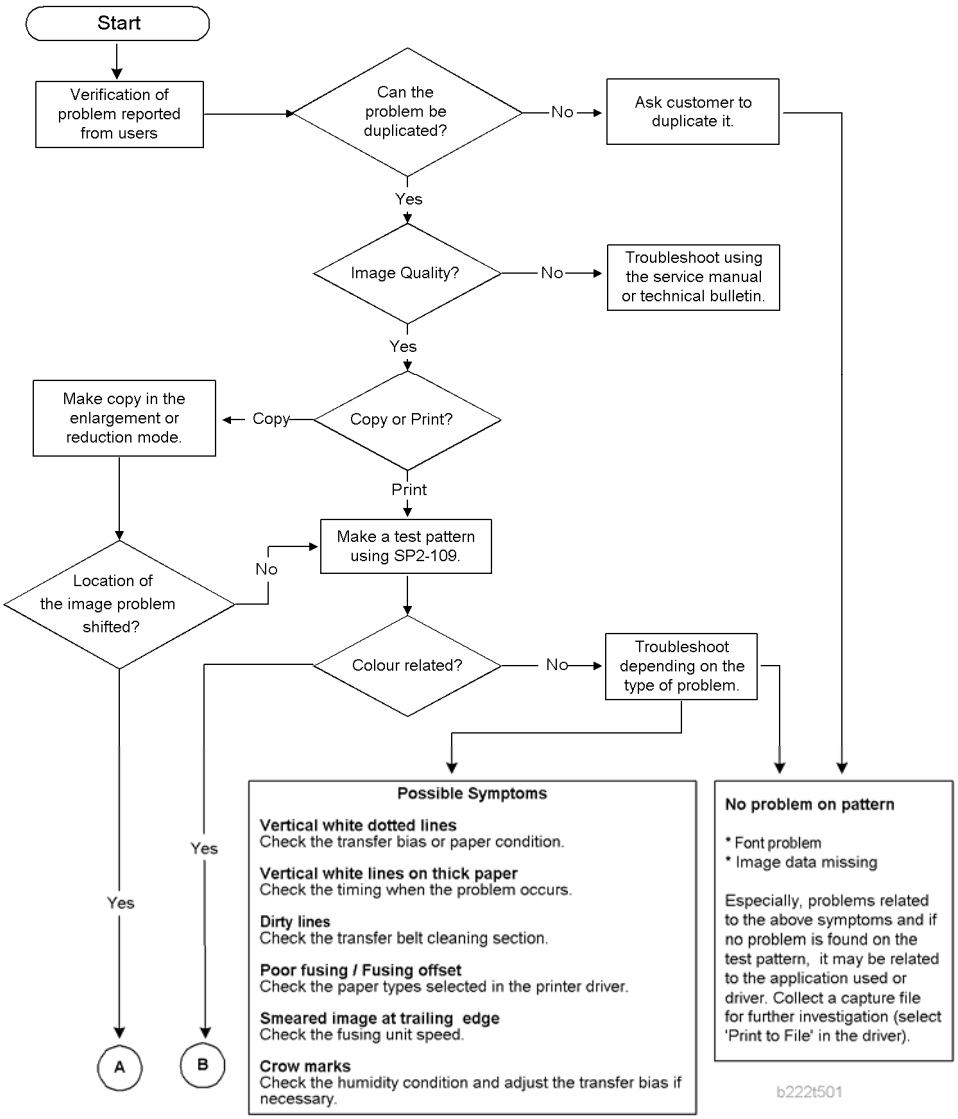
http://www.manuals4you.com

5. APPENDIX: TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

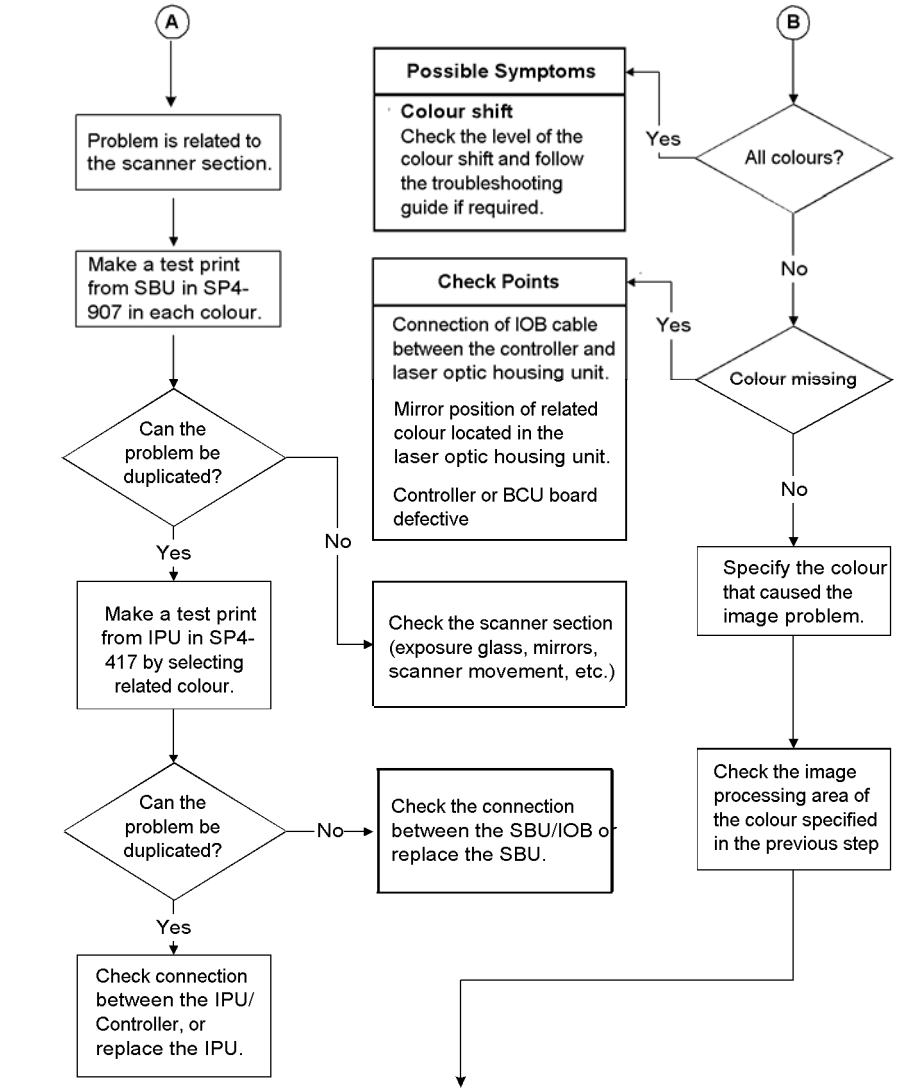
5.1 TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

5.1.1 IMAGE QUALITY

The following work-flow shows the basic troubleshooting steps for the image quality problems on this product.



http://www.manuals4you.com



Considerable Symptoms

Toner blasting
Check which colour is blasting and adjust the toner limit or transfer bias.
Image density change
Check when the problem is reported and follow the necessary steps.
Dirty Background
Check in which condition the problem is reported, and follow the required procedure.
Colour vertical bands/lines/dirty background
Check the OPC drum and/or development unit.
Colour shift
Check the level of the colour shift and follow the troubleshooting guide if required.
Colour lines/bands/dirty background
When the PCU/development unit is close to its life end, the developer or the cleaning blade of the PCU wears out, causing vertical colour lines, bands, or dirty background. Check the related colour unit and replace it if necessary.

b222t502

5.1.2 LINE POSITION ADJUSTMENT

When there are color registration errors on the output, do the line position adjustment as follows.

Note

- Use A3/DLT size paper for this adjustment.

Test

1. Do SP2-111-003 (Mode c: rough adjustment).
2. Use SP2-194-007 to check if the result of the line position adjustment is correct (0: Completed successfully, 1: Not completed). If the result is "1", refer to 'Countermeasure list for color registration errors'.
3. Do SP2-111-001 (Mode a: fine adjustment twice).
4. Use SP2-194-007 to check if the result of the line position adjustment is correct (0: Completed successfully, 1: Not completed). If the result is "1", refer to 'Countermeasure list for color registration errors'.
5. Put some A3/DLT paper on the by-pass tray.

   Note

   - When you print a test pattern, use the by-pass tray to feed the paper.
6. Print out test pattern "7" with SP2-109-003.
7. Check the printed output with a loupe.
8. If there are no color registration errors on the output, the line position adjustment is correctly done. If not, refer to the countermeasure list for color registration errors.

Countermeasure list for color registration errors

After Executing SP2-111-003

- Result: "1" in SP2-194-007
- Result: "2" or "3" (Line pattern detection failure) in SP2-194-010, -011, -012

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
White image, Abnormal image, Low density	▪ Defective laser optics housing unit shutter ▪ Defective image processing unit ▪ Low density of test pattern ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the shutter motor.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Troubleshooting Guide

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
	2. Replace the high voltage power supply unit. 3. Do the forced process control (SP3-011-001) or supply some toner (SP3-015-xxx). 4. Replace the BICU.
Normal image, but with color registration errors	▪ Defective ID sensor shutter ▪ Defective ID sensor ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the ID sensor shutter solenoid. 2. Replace the ID sensor. 3. Replace the BICU.

After Executing SP2-111-003

- Result: "1" in SP2-194-007
- One of results: "5" (Out of adjustable range) in SP2-194-010, -011, -012.

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
The main scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted by more than ±15 mm from the main scan registration of K.	▪ Defective laser optics housing unit ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 2. Replace the BICU.
The sub scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted by more than ±20 mm from the sub scan registration of K.	▪ Defective image transfer belt ▪ Defective drive units ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the image transfer belt. 2. Replace the drum motor. 3. Replace the BICU.
The main scan registration is shifted by more than ±0.66 mm, but only at the central area of the image on the output.	▪ Defective ID sensor at center ▪ Deformed center area on the image transfer belt ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the ID sensor. 2. Replace the image transfer belt.

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
	3. Replace the BICU.
The skew for M, C, Y is more than ±0.75 mm from the main scan registration of K	▪ Defective PCU ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit ▪ Defective BICU 1. Reinstall or replace the PCU. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the BICU.
Others	▪ Skew correction upper limit error ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit 1. Replace the BICU. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit.

After Executing SP2-111-003

- Result: "1" in SP2-194-007
- Result: "0" in SP2-194-010, -011, -012.

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
	Do SP2-111-001 or -002.

After Executing SP2-111-001

- Result: "1" in SP2-194-007
- Result: "2" or "3" (Line pattern detection failure) in SP2-194-010, -011, -012

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
White image, Abnormal image, Low density	▪ Defective laser optics housing unit shutter ▪ Defective image processing unit ▪ Low density of test pattern ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the shutter motor. 2. Replace the high voltage power supply unit.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Troubleshooting Guide

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
	3. Do the forced process control (SP3-011-001) or supply some toner (SP3-015-xxx). 4. Replace the BICU.
Normal image, but with color registration errors	▪ Defective ID sensor shutter ▪ Defective ID sensor ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the ID sensor shutter solenoid. 2. Replace the ID sensor. 3. Replace the BICU.

After Executing SP2-111-001

- Result: "1" in SP2-194-007
- Result: "5" (Out of adjustable range) in SP2-194-010, -011, -012

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
Low image density on the output	▪ Low pattern density Do the forced process control (SP3-011-001) or supply some toner (SP3-015-xxx).
The main scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted by more than ±1.4 mm from the main scan registration of K.	▪ No defective component ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit ▪ Defective BICU 1. Do SP2-111-003 again. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the BICU.
The sub scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted by more than ±1.4mm from the sub scan registration of K.	▪ No defective component ▪ Defective image transfer belt ▪ Defective drive units ▪ Defective BICU 1. Do SP2-111-003 again. 2. Replace the image transfer belt. 3. Replace the drum motor.

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
	4. Replace the BICU.
The main scan registration is shifted by more than ±0.66 mm, but only at the central area of the image on the output.	▪ Defective ID sensor at center ▪ Deformed center area on the image transfer belt ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the ID sensor. 2. Replace the image transfer belt. 3. Replace the BICU.
The skew for M, C, Y is more than ± 0.75 mm from the main scan registration of K. – at the end of the scan line?	▪ Defective PCU ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit ▪ Defective BICU 1. Reinstall or replace the PCU. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the BICU.
Others	▪ Skew correction upper limit error ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit 1. Replace the BICU. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit.

After Executing SP2-111-001

- Result: "0" in SP2-194-007
- Result: No color registration errors in SP2-194-010, -011, -012

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
The main scan registration of K is shifted.	▪ Abnormal SP setting value of main scan: K Adjust the value with SP2-101-001.
The main scan length of K is shifted.	▪ Abnormal SP setting value of main scan length detection: K Adjust the value with SP2-185-001.

After Executing SP2-111-001

http://www.manuals4you.com

Troubleshooting Guide

- Result: "0" in SP2-194-007
- Result: Color registration errors in SP2-194-010, -011, -012

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
Low image density on the output	▪ Low pattern density Do the forced process control (SP3-011-001) or supply some toner (SP3-015-xxx).
The main scan registration is shifted, but only at the central area of the image on the output.	▪ Defective ID sensor at center ▪ Deformed center area on the image transfer belt ▪ Defective BICU 1. Replace the ID sensor. 2. Replace the image transfer belt. 3. Replace the BICU.
The main scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted.	▪ Defective laser optics housing unit ▪ Defective ID sensor ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Incorrect SP value 1. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 2. Replace the ID sensor. 3. Replace the BICU. 4. Adjust the value with SP2-182-004 to -021.
The sub scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted.	▪ Defective image transfer belt ▪ Defective drive units ▪ Defective ID sensor ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Incorrect SP value 1. Replace the image transfer belt. 2. Replace the ID sensor. 3. Replace the drum motor. 4. Replace the BICU. 5. Adjust the value with SP2-182-022 to -039.
The skew of M, C, Y is different.	▪ Defective PCU ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit

Test pattern check	Possible cause/Countermeasure
	▪ Defective IOB 1. Reinstall or replace the PCU. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the IOB.
The sub scan lines are shifted. Shifted lines appear cyclically.	▪ Defective PCU ▪ Defective drive unit ▪ Drum phase adjustment error 1. Do SP1-902-001 (Drum phase adjustment); see Replacement and Adjustment – Drive Unit – Gear Unit for details. 2. Reinstall or replace the PCU. 3. Check or replace the drive unit.

http://www.manuals4you.com

APPENDIX:

JAM DETECTION

APPENDIX: JAM DETECTION REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

6. APPENDIX: JAM DETECTION

6.1 JAM DETECTION

6.1.1 PAPER JAM DISPLAY

SP7-507 shows the paper jam history.

```
CODE :011
SIZE    :05h
TOTAL:000034
DATE  :Fri Feb 15 11:44:50 2006
```

- **CODE**: Indicates the jam code.
- **SIZE**: Indicates the paper Size Code.
- **TOTAL**: Indicates the total counter (SP7-502-001).
- **DATE**: indicates the date when the jam occurred.

6.1.2 JAM CODES AND DISPLAY CODES

SP7-504 shows how many jams occurred at each location.

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
7504 3	Tray 1: ON	Paper is not fed from tray 1.	A
7504 4	Tray 2: ON	Paper is not fed from tray 2.	A
7504 5	Tray 3: ON	Paper is not fed from tray 3 (LCT).	Y
7504 6	Tray 4: ON	Paper is not fed from tray 4.	Y
7504 7	LCT: ON	Paper is not fed from LCT.	U
7504 8	Bypass: ON	Paper is not fed from the by-pass tray.	A
7504 9	Duplex: ON	Paper is jammed at the duplex unit.	Z
7504 10	-	-	-

http://www.manuals4you.com

Jam Detection

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
7504 11	Vertical Transport 1: ON	Vertical transport sensor 1 does not detect paper from tray 1.	A
7504 12	Vertical Transport 2: ON	Vertical transport sensor 2 does not detect paper from tray 2.	A
7504 13	Bank Transport 1	Vertical transport sensor 1 or relay sensor does not detect paper from tray 3 (LCT).	Y
7504 15	-	-	-
7504 16	-	-	-
7504 17	Registration: ON	Registration sensor does not detect paper.	B
7504 18	Fusing Entrance: ON	Fusing entrance sensor does not detect paper.	B
7504 19	Fusing Exit: ON	Fusing exit sensor does not detect paper.	B
7504 20	Paper Exit: ON	Paper exit sensor does not detect paper.	C
7504 21	Relay Exit: ON	Tray exit sensor (bridge unit) does not detect paper.	D
7504 22	Relay Transport: ON	Relay sensor (bridge unit) does not detect paper.	D
7504 23	-	-	-
7504 24	Junction Gate Feed: ON	Junction gate jam sensor does not detect paper.	C
7504 25	Duplex Exit: ON	Duplex exit sensor does not detect paper.	Z
7504 26	Duplex Entrance: ON	Duplex entrance sensor does not detect	Z

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
	(In)	paper.	
7504 27	Duplex Entrance: ON (Out)	Duplex entrance sensor does not detect paper again after paper has passed this sensor.	Z
7504 28	-	-	-
7504 51	SEF Sensor 1	Vertical transport sensor 1 does not turn off.	A
7504 52	SEF Sensor 2	Vertical transport sensor 2 does not turn off.	A
7504 53	Bank SEF Sensor 1	Vertical transport sensor or relay sensor 1 does not turn off.	Y
7504 54	Bank SEF Sensor 2	Vertical transport sensor 2 does not turn off.	Y
7504 55	-	-	-
7504 56	-	-	-
7504 57	Regist Sensor	Registration sensor does not turn off.	B
7504 58	LCT Sensor	LCT sensor does not turn off.	U
7504 59	-	-	-
7504 60	Exit Sensor	Paper exit sensor does not turn off.	C
7504 61	Relay Exit Sensor	Tray exit sensor (bridge unit) does not turn off.	D
7504 62	Relay Sensor	Relay sensor (bridge unit) does not turn off.	D
7504 63	-	-	-

http://www.manuals4you.com

Jam Detection

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
7504 64	Junction Gate Feed: OFF	Junction gate jam sensor does not turn off.	C
7504 65	Duplex Exit Sensor	Duplex exit sensor does not turn off.	Z
7504 66	Duplex Entrance: OFF (In)	Duplex entrance sensor does not turn off.	Z
7504 67	Duplex Entrance: OFF (Out)	Duplex entrance sensor does not turn off after paper has passed this sensor.	Z
7504 68	-	-	-
7504 100	Finisher Entrance (B408)	Paper does not reach to the entrance sensor or stay at the entrance sensor.	R1-R2
7504 101	Finisher Shift Tray Exit (B408)	Paper does not reach to the lower tray exit sensor or stay at the lower tray exit sensor.	R1-R2
7504 102	Finisher Staple (B408)	Paper does not reach to the staple tray entrance sensor or stay at the staple tray entrance sensor.	R3-R5
7504 103	Finisher Exit (B408)	Lower tray exit sensor does not detect paper after the stack feed-out belt has fed paper. Lower tray exit sensor still detects paper after the stack feed-out belt has returned to the home position.	R3-R5
7504 104	-	-	-
7504 105	Finisher Tray Lift Motor (B408)	Stack height sensor does not detect paper after the lower tray has lifted up. Stack height sensor still detects paper after the lower tray has lifted down.	R1-R2

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
7504 106	Finisher Jogger Motor (B408)	Jogger fence HP sensor does not turn off after the jogger fence has moved from its home position. Jogger fence HP sensor does not turn on after the jogger fence has returned to its home position.	R3-R5
7504 107	Finisher Shift Motor (B408)	Shift roller HP sensor does not turn off after the shift roller has moved from its home position. Shift roller HP sensor does not turn on after the shift roller has returned to its home position.	R1-R2
7504 108	Finisher Staple Motor (B408)	Stapler HP sensor does not turn off after the stapler has moved from its home position. Stapler HP sensor does not turn on after the stapler has returned to its home position.	R3-R5
7504 109	Finisher Exit Motor (B408)	Stack feed-out belt HP sensor does not turn off after the stack feed-out belt has moved from its home position. Stack feed-out belt HP sensor does not turn on after the stack feed-out belt has returned to its home position.	R3-R5
7504 191	Finisher Entrance: EUP (B804/B805)	Paper does not reach the finisher entrance sensor or stays at the finisher entrance sensor.	R1-R4
7504 192	Finisher Proof Exit: EUP (B804/B805)	Paper does not reach the proof tray exit sensor or stays at the proof tray exit sensor.	R1-R4

http://www.manuals4you.com

Jam Detection

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
7504 193	Finisher Shift Tray Exit: EUP (B804/B805)	Paper does not reach the upper tray exit sensor or stays at the upper tray exit sensor.	R1-R4
7504 194	Finisher Stapler Exit: EUP (B804/B805)	Stapling tray paper sensor does not turn on after the finisher entrance sensor has turned on. Stapling tray paper sensor does not turn off after it has turned on.	R5-R7
7504 195	Finisher Exit: EUP (B804/B805)	Upper tray exit sensor does not turn on while the stack feed-out belt is turned on. Upper tray exit sensor does not turn off after the stack feed-out belt has returned to its home position.	R8-R12
7504 196	-	-	-
7504 197	-	-	-
7504 198	Finisher Folder: EUP (B804 only)	Fold bottom fence HP sensor does not turn on after the fold roller motor has stopped. Fold unit exit sensor does not turn on after the fold rollers have stopped. Fold unit exit sensor does not turn off after the fold rollers have stopped.	R8-R12
7504 199	Finisher Tray Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	Upper tray limit sensor does not turn on after the upper tray has lifted up. Upper tray limit sensor does not turn off after the upper tray has moved down.	R1-R4
7504 200	Finisher Jogger Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	Jogger fence HP sensor does not turn on/off after the jogger motor has turned	R8-R12

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
		on. Stack feed out belt HP sensor does not turn on/off after the feed out belt motor has turned on.	
7504 201	Finisher Shift Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	Shift roller HP sensor does not turn on/off after the shift roller motor has turned on. Exit guide plate HP sensor does not turn on/off after the exit guide plate motor has turned on. Stacking roller HP sensor does not turn on/off after the stacking sponge roller motor has turned on.	R1-R4
7504 202	Finisher Staple Moving Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	Corner stapler HP sensor does not turn on/off after the corner stapler movement motor has turned on. Stapler rotation HP sensor does not turn on/off after the corner stapler rotation motor has turned on.	R8-R12
7504 203	Finisher Staple Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	Corner stapler does not finish stapling after a specified time. Booklet stapler does not finish stapling after a specified time.	R8-R12
7504 204	Finisher Folder Motor: EUP (B804 only)	Fold plate HP sensor does not turn on/off after the fold plate motor has turned on. Clamp roller HP sensor does not turn on/off after the clamp roller retraction motor has turned on. Fold bottom fence HP sensor does not turn on/off after the fold unit bottom	R8-R12

http://www.manuals4you.com

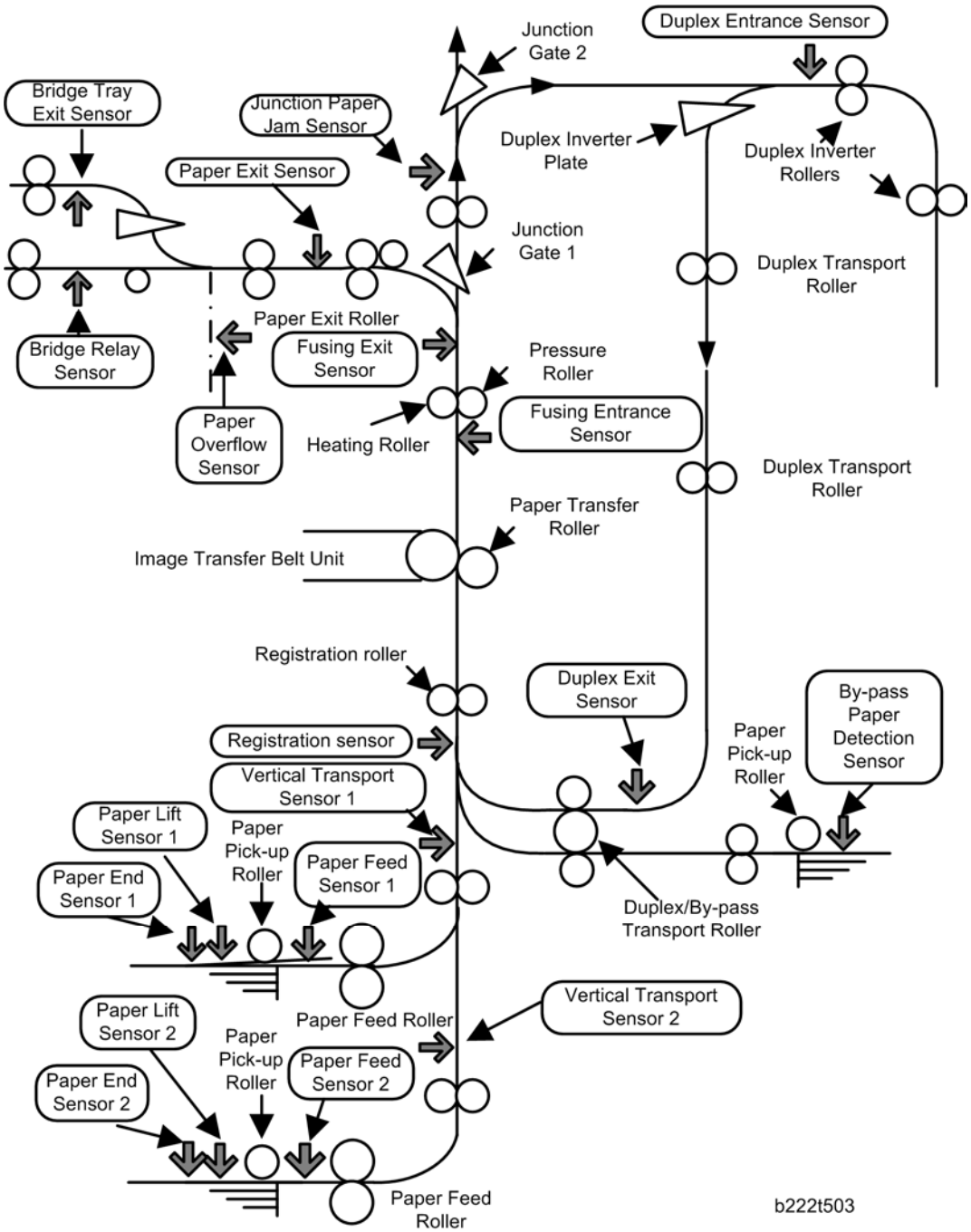
Jam Detection

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
		fence lift motor has turned on. Stack junction gate HP sensor does not turn on/off after the stack junction gate motor has turned on.	
7504 205	-	-	-
7504 206	Finisher Punch Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	Punch encoder sensor does not turn on/off after the punch drive motor has turned on. Punch movement HP sensor does not turn on/off after the punch movement motor has turned on. Paper position slide HP sensor does not turn on/off after the paper position sensor slide motor has turned on.	R1-R4

Paper Size Code

Size Code	Paper Size	Size Code	Paper Size
05	A4 LEF	141	B4 SEF
06	A5 LEF	142	B5 SEF
14	B5 LEF	160	DLT SEF
38	LT LEF	164	LG SEF
44	HLT LEF	166	LT SEF
132	A3 SEF	172	HLT SEF
133	A4 SEF	255	Others
134	A5 SEF	-	-

Sensor Locations



http://www.manuals4you.com

APPENDIX:

ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

APPENDIX: ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

7. APPENDIX: ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

7.1 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

7.1.1 SENSORS

Note

- The CN numbers in the following table are the connector numbers on the IOB.

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
SW1	Right Door Open Switch	L	CN204/1	Open	"Open Cover" is displayed.
				Shorted	"Open cover" cannot be detected.
S10	Duplex Door	L	CN232/B9	Open	"Open Cover" is displayed.
				Shorted	"Open cover" cannot be detected.
S1	ID Sensor: M	A	CN211/ 7, 11	Open/ Shorted	SC400
	ID Sensor: C	A	CN211/ 8, 12	Open/ Shorted	
	ID Sensor: Y	A	CN211/ 9, 13	Open/ Shorted	
	ID Sensor: Front	A	CN211/1	Open/ Shorted	SC258
	ID Sensor: Center	A	CN211/2	Open/	SC400 / SC258

http://www.manuals4you.com

Electrical Component Defects

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
	and K			Shorted	
	ID Sensor: Rear	A	CN211/3	Open/ Shorted	SC258
S13	Registration Sensor	L	CN224/A2	Open	Jam A (Jam8, 17)
				Shorted	Jam A, B (Jam1)
S31	Drum Gear Position Sensor-K	H	CN222/A2	Open/ Shorted	SC380/SC396
S32	Drum Gear Position Sensor-M	H	CN222/ A5	Open/ Shorted	SC380/SC397
S33	Drum Gear Position Sensor-C	H	CN222/ A8	Open/ Shorted	SC380/SC398
S34	Drum Gear Position Sensor-Y	H	CN222/ A11	Open/ Shorted	SC380/SC399
S27 S28 S29 S30	Toner End Sensor - K Toner End Sensor - Y Toner End Sensor - C Toner End Sensor - M	L	CN207/A1 CN207/B9 CN207/ B12 CN207/ B15	Open	Toner end cannot be detected.
				Shorted	Toner end is detected when there is enough toner.
S52	Image Transfer Belt Rotation Sensor	H/L	CN208/11	Open/ Shorted	SC443
S20	Vertical Transport Sensor 1	L	CN230/A7	Open	Jam A (Jam3, 11)
				Shorted	Jam A, B (Jam1)
S21 S25	Paper End Sensor 1, 2	L	CN230/ A10, B10	Open	Paper end is not detected when there is no paper in the paper tray.

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
				Shorted	Paper end is detected when there is paper in the paper tray.
S22 S26	Paper Lift Sensor 1, 2	H	CN230/ A13, B13	Open/ Shorted	SC501, SC502
S24	Vertical Transport Sensor 2	L	CN230/B7	Open	Jam A (Jam4, 12)
				Shorted	Jam A, B (Jam1)
S15 S16	Tray 1 Paper Height Sensor 1, 2	L	CN224/ B2, B5	Open/ Shorted	Remaining paper volume on the LCD is wrong.
S17 S18	Tray 2 Paper Height Sensor 1, 2	L	CN224/ B10, B13	Open/ Shorted	Remaining paper volume on the LCD is wrong.
S19	Tray 1 Paper Feed Sensor	L	CN230/A4	Open/ Shorted	Jam A, B
S23	Tray 2 Paper Feed Sensor	L	CN230/B4	Open/ Shorted	Jam A, B
SW4	Tray 1 Set Switch	L	CN224/A9	Open	Tray 1 is not detected when tray 1 is set.
				Shorted	Tray 1 is detected when tray 1 is not set.
S12	By-pass Paper Size Sensor	L	CN232/ B16, B17, B19, B20	Open/ Shorted	Paper size error
SW2	By-pass Paper Detection Sensor	L	CN232/ A15	Open	Paper on the by-pass tray is not detected when paper is set.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Electrical Component Defects

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
				Shorted	Paper on the by-pass tray is detected when paper is not set.
S11	By-pass Paper Length Sensor	L	CN232/ B12	Open	Paper size error
				Shorted	
S9	Fusing Entrance Sensor	L	CN232/B6	Open	Jam C (Jam 18)
				Shorted	Jam C (Jam 1)
S7	Duplex Entrance Sensor	L	CN232/A8	Open	Jam Z (Jam 26/27)
				Shorted	Jam Z (Jam 1)
S8	Duplex Exit Sensor	L	CN232/ A11	Open	Jam Z (Jam 25)
				Shorted	Jam Z (Jam 1)
S35	TD Sensor - K	A	CN227/A7	Open/ Shorted	SC372
S36	TD Sensor - M	A	CN227/ A15	Open/ Shorted	SC373
S37	TD Sensor - C	A	CN227/B7	Open/ Shorted	SC374
S38	TD Sensor - Y	A	CN227/ B15	Open/ Shorted	SC375
S4	Fusing Exit Sensor	L	CN204/12	Open	Jam C (Jam 19)
				Shorted	Jam C (Jam 1)
S14	Waste Toner Sensor	H	CN224/A5	Open	Waste toner near full indicated when it is not near full.

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
				Shorted	Waste toner near full cannot be detected when the waste toner bottle is nearly full.
SW3	Waste Toner Bottle Set Switch	L	CN224/A7	Open	Waste toner bottle is not detected when the waste toner bottle is set.
				Shorted	Waste toner bottle is detected when the waste toner bottle is not set.
SW5	Tray 2 Paper Size Switch	L	CN224/ A11, A12, A13, A15	Open/ Shorted	Paper size error
S6	Temperature/ Humidity Sensor	A	CN231/ 25, 27	Open/ Shorted	SC498 Printed image has some problems such as rough image, dirty background, weak image or poor fusing.
S39	Thermopile	A	CN209/16	Open/ Shorted	SC541
TH2	Thermistor - Heating Roller	A	CN212/22	Open/ Shorted	SC551
TH1	Thermistor - Pressure Roller	A	CN212/18	Open/ Shorted	SC561
S3	Paper Exit Sensor	L	CN204/9	Open	Jam C (Jam 20)

http://www.manuals4you.com

Electrical Component Defects

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
				Shorted	Jam C (Jam 1)
S5	Paper Overflow Sensor	L	CN204/15	Open	Paper overflow message is not displayed when the paper overflow condition still remains.
				Shorted	Paper overflow message is displayed when the paper overflow condition does not remain.
S48	Original Width Sensor 1	A	CN313/14 SIO	Open/ Shorted	Original paper size cannot be detected.
S47	Original Width Sensor 2	A	CN313/11 SIO	Open/ Shorted	Original paper size cannot be detected.
S46	Original Length Sensor 1	A	CN313/8 SIO	Open/ Shorted	Original paper size cannot be detected.
S45	Original Length Sensor 2	A	CN313/5 SIO	Open/ Shorted	Original paper size cannot be detected.
S44	Original Length Sensor 3	A	CN313/2 SIO	Open/ Shorted	Original paper size cannot be detected.
S42	Scanner HP Sensor	H	CN318/2 SIO	Open	SC120
				Shorted	SC121
S43	Platen Cover Sensor	L	CN318/5 SIO	Open/ Shorted	Platen cover open cannot be detected.
-	Paper Transfer Contact Sensor	L	CN208/7	Open/ Shorted	SC452

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
-	Image Transfer Belt Contact Sensor	L	CN208/2	Open/ Shorted	SC442
S40	Heating Roller Rotation Sensor	H/L	CN210/2	Open/ Shorted	SC584
S41	Pressure Roller HP Sensor	L	CN210/5	Open/ Shorted	SC569
S2	Junction Paper Jam Sensor	L	CN204/6	Open/ Shorted	Jam C (Jam 24/64)

http://www.manuals4you.com

7.1.2 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS

Power Supply Unit

Fuse	Rating		Symptom when turning on the main switch
	115V	220V - 240V	
FU1	15A/125V	8A/250V	No response. (5V power to the PSU is not supplied.)
FU2	10A/125V	6.3A/250V	No response. (5V power to the BICU and controller is not supplied.)
FU3	2A/250V	1A/250V	5V power to the scanner heater and tray heater is not supplied.
FU4	1A/250V	1A/250V	5V power to the SIO and heater is not supplied.
FU5	5A/250V	5A/250V	5V power to the IOB not supplied.
FU6	2A/250V	2A/125V	5VS power to the BICU not supplied.
FU7	10A/125V	10A/125V	24VS power to the IOB not supplied.
FU8	10A/125V	10A/125V	24VS power to the IOB not supplied.
FU9	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	24V power to the IOB not supplied.
FU10	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	24V power to the SIO not supplied.
FU11	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	24V power to the BICU and MB not supplied.
FU12	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	24V power to the PFU or LCT not supplied.
FU13	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	24V power to the finisher not supplied.
FU14	5A/250V	5A/250V	5V power to the BICU not supplied.

IH Inverter

Fuse	Rating		Symptom when turning on the main switch
	115V	220V - 240V	
FU1	15A/125V	8A/250V	15V power to the IH coil unit is not supplied. SC689 occurs.
FU2	115°C		No response
FU3	115°C		No response
FU4	1A/250V		15V power to the IH coil unit is not supplied. SC689 occurs.

⚠CAUTION

- For continued protection against risk of fire, replace only with same type and rating of fuse.

http://www.manuals4you.com

APPENDIX

SP MODE TABLES

APPENDIX: SP MODE TABLES REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
203	04/09/2009	Updated Information – SP5420-002
250 ~ 251	05/14/2009	Updated Information – SP5887
394 ~ 395	04/09/2009	Updated Information – Scanner SP Mode

http://www.manuals4you.com

8. APPENDIX: SP MODE TABLES

8.1 SYSTEM SERVICE MODE

8.1.1 SERVICE MODE TABLE

SP1-XXX (Feed)

1001	**[Leading Edge Registration]** Leading Edge Registration Adjustment (Tray Location, Paper Type, Color Mode), Paper Type -> Plain, Thick 1or Thick 2		
	Adjusts the leading edge registration by changing the registration motor operation timing for each mode.		
002	Tray: Plain	*ENG	[–9 to 9 / **0.0** / 0.1 mm/step]
003	Tray: Middle Thick	*ENG	
004	Tray: Thick 1	*ENG	
005	Tray: Thick 2	*ENG	
007	By-pass: Plain	*ENG	
008	By-pass: Middle Thick	*ENG	
009	By-pass: Thick 1	*ENG	
010	By-pass: Thick 2	*ENG	
011	By-pass: Thick 3	*ENG	
013	Duplex: Plain	*ENG	
014	Duplex: Middle Thick	*ENG	
015	Duplex: Thick 1	*ENG	
016	Tray: Thick 3	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

017	Tray: Plain:1200	*ENG	
018	Tray: Middle Thick:1200	*ENG	
019	Tray: Thick 1:1200	*ENG	
020	By-pass: Plain:1200	*ENG	
021	By-pass: Middle Thick:1200	*ENG	
022	By-pass: Thick 1:1200	*ENG	
023	Duplex: Plain:1200	*ENG	
024	Duplex: Middle Thick:1200	*ENG	
025	Duplex: Thick 1:1200	*ENG	

1002	**[Side to Side Reg.]** Side-to-Side Registration Adjustment		
	Adjusts the side-to-side registration by changing the laser main scan start position for each mode.		
001	By-pass Table	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0.0** / 0.1 mm/step]
002	Paper Tray 1	*ENG	
003	Paper Tray 2	*ENG	
004	Paper Tray 3	*ENG	
005	Paper Tray 4	*ENG	
006	Duplex	*ENG	
007	Paper Tray 5	*ENG	
008	Large Capacity Tray	*ENG	

1003	**[Paper Buckle]** Paper Buckle Adjustment (Tray Location, Paper Type), Paper Type: N: Normal, TH: Thick
	Adjusts the amount of paper buckle at the registration roller by changing the

	paper feed timing.		
002	Paper Tray1: Plain	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
003	Tray1: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-1** / 1 mm/step]
004	Paper Tray1: Thick1	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
007	Paper Tray2/3/4/5/LCT: Plain	*ENG	
008	Tray 2/3/4/5/LCT: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-1** / 1 mm/step]
009	Paper Tray2/3/4/5/LCT: Thick 1	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
012	By-pass: Plain	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
013	By-pass: Middle Thick	*ENG	
014	By-pass: Thick 1	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
018	Duplex: Plain	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
019	Duplex: Middle Thick	*ENG	
020	Duplex: Thick 1	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
021	Paper Tray1: Plain: 1200	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
022	Tray1: Middle Thick: 1200	*ENG	
023	Tray 2/3/4/5LCT: Plain: 1200	*ENG	
024	Tray 2/3/4/5LCT: Mid: 1200	*ENG	
025	By-pass: Plain: 1200	*ENG	
026	By-pass: Middle Thick: 1200	*ENG	
027	Paper Tray1: Thick1: 1200	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
028	Paper Tray2/3/4/5/LCT: Thick 1:1200	*ENG	
029	By-pass: Thick 1: 1200	*ENG	
030	Duplex: Plain: 1200	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

031	Duplex: Middle Thick: 1200	*ENG	
032	Duplex: Thick 1: 1200	*ENG	[–9 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]

1007	**[By-Pass Size Detection]** By-Pass Size Detection Display		
001	LG	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1] 0: Disable, 1: Enable
	Enables or disables the automatic paper size detection function of the by-pass tray. This SP determines what paper size the machine detects if the detected size is less than 8.5". 0: OFF (Letter/SEF), 1: ON (Legal/SEF)		

1103	**[Fusing Idling]** Fusing Idling Adjustment		
001	Extra Idling Time	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **0** / 1 sec/step] **Not used**
	Specifies how long the extra idling operation is executed.		
014	Minimum Idling Time	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
016	Extra Idling Time (L)	*ENG	Specifies how long the extra idling operation is executed for each environment. [0 to 250 / **60** / 1 sec/step] Each environment is determined with SP1112-001 and 002.
017	Extra Idling Time (H)	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 10, C2d: 25** / 1 sec/step]
018	Extra Idling Time (M)	*ENG	
019	Pressure TempThreshold	*ENG	[10 to 200 / **180** / 1 deg/step]

1104	**[Idling Before Job]**		
001	Feed: Pressure Temp: Plain: FC	*ENG	[10 to 150 / **20** / 1 deg/step]

002	Feed: Pressure Temp: Plain: FC:PR	*ENG	
003	Feed: Pressure Temp: Mid: FC	*ENG	[0 to 150 / **C2c: 83, C2d: 95** / 1 deg/step]
004	Feed: Pressure Temp: Mid: FC	*ENG	
005	Feed: Pressure Temp: Plain: BW: PR	*ENG	[10 to 150 / **20** / 1 deg/step]
006	Feed: Pressure Temp: Carl: M-Humidity	*ENG	[10 to 150 / **90**/ 1 deg/step]
007	Feed: Pressure Temp: Carl: H-Humidity	*ENG	[10 to 150 / **100**/ 1 deg/step]
010	Feed: Plain1: BW: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **100**/ 1 deg/step]
011	Feed: Plain1: 2C: Offset	*ENG	
012	Feed: Plain1: 2C: Offset: P	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **10**/ 1 deg/step]
013	Feed: Plain: Standby: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5**/ 1 deg/step]
014	Feed: Middle Thick: Ready: Offset	*ENG	
015	Feed: Middle Thick: Standby: Offset	*ENG	
016	Feed: Thick: Ready: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **100** / 1 deg/step]
017	Feed: Thick: Standby: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5**/ 1 deg/step]
018	Feed: Plain1: Ready :3C: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **C2c: 20, C2d: 10** / 1 deg/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

019	Feed: Plain1: Ready :3C: Offset:	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **C2c: 10, C2d: 5** / 1 deg/step]
020	Fusing Temp: Plain: Ready	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
021	Fusing Temp: Mid Speed: Ready	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
022	Fusing Temp: Mid Speed: Standby	*ENG	
023	Feed: Plain2: Ready :Bw: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **100** / 1 deg/step]
024	Feed: Plain2: Ready :2C: Offset	*ENG	
025	Feed: Plain2: Ready :2C: Offset :P	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **20** / 1 deg/step]
026	Feed: Plain2: Ready :3C: Offset	*ENG	
027	Feed: Plain2: Ready :3C: Offset :P	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
030	Feed: F: Ready : U limit	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **15** / 1 deg/step]
031	Offset: Feed Start: F	*ENG	
032	Feed: Glossy: Ready : U limit	*ENG	
033	Offset: Feed Start: Glossy	*ENG	
040	1bin: Paper Feed: Pressure Temp	*ENG	[20 to 120 / **90** / 1 deg/step]
041	F :1bin: Paper Feed: Pressure Temp	*ENG	[20 to 120 / **80** / 1 deg/step]

1105	**[Fusing Temperature]** Fusing Temperature Adjustment		
	(Printing Mode, Roller Type, [Color], Simplex/Duplex) Roller Type –> Center and Ends: Heating roller, Pressure –> Pressure roller Paper Type -> Plain, Thin, Thick, OHP, Middle Thick, Special		
001	Fusing Ready Temp.	*ENG	[150 to 200 / **200** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the heating roller target temperature for the ready condition.		
002	Fusing Ready: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
	Sets the heating roller offset temperature for the printing ready condition. Ready temperature = (Target temperature specified in SP1-105-1) – Temperature specified in this SP mode		
007	Fusing Ready Temp: H	*ENG	[150 to 200 / **C2c: 170, C2d: 175** / 1 deg/step]
	Sets the heating roller offset temperature at the end of the heating roller. This value is one of the thresholds to determine if the machine is at the heating roller target temperature during warm-up.		
008	Ready Target Add Pressure	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **80** / 1 deg /step]
	Sets the upper limit temperature of the heating roller at the end of the heating roller. This value is one of the thresholds to determine if the machine is at the heating roller target temperature during warm-up.		
012	Stand-By: Pressure	* ENG	[60 to 130 / **90** / 1 deg/step]
	Sets the pressure roller offset temperature. This value is one of the thresholds to determine if the machine is at the heating roller target temperature during warm-up.		
013	Panel Off Mode 2: Pressure	* ENG	[60 to 130 / **90** / 1 deg /step]
	Sets the limit temperature of the pressure roller. This value is one of the thresholds to determine if the machine is at the heating roller target temperature during the warm-up.		

http://www.manuals4you.com

014	Low Power: Pressure	* ENG	[60 to 130 / **90** / 1 deg /step]
	Specifies the stand-by temperature for the pressure roller.		
030	Plain: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[130 to 180 / **C2c: 160, C2d: 165** / 1 deg /step]
032	Plain: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
034	Plain: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
036	Plain: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
038	Thin: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[130 to 180 / **C2c: 155, C2d: 160** / 1 deg/step]
042	Thin: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
044	Thin: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
046	Thick 1: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[140 to 190 / **175** / 1 deg /step]
048	Thick 1: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
050	Thick 1: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
052	Thick 1: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
054	Thick 2: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[140 to 190 / **160** / 1 deg /step]
055	Thick 2: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
056	OHP: FC: Simplex	*ENG	
057	OHP: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
058	Special 1: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[140 to 190 / **C2c: 165, C2d: 170** / 1 deg/step]
060	Special 1: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
062	Special 1: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
064	Special 1: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
066	Special 2: FC: Simplex	*ENG	
068	Special 2: FC: Duplex	*ENG	

070	Special 2: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
072	Special 2: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
074	Special 3: FC: Simplex	*ENG	
076	Special 3: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
078	Special 3: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
080	Special 3: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
082	Target Temp. After Ready	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **C2c: 170, C2d: 180** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the target temperature for the maintain mode after the machine has reached the target temperature in warm-up mode.		
083	Recovery Target Temp.	*ENG	[130 to 180 / **C2c: 175 C2d: 175** / 1 deg /step]
	Specifies the target temperature for the print mode without printing/copying job after the machine's recovery.		
089	Thick 3: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[140 to 190 / **170** / 1 deg/step]
091	Thick 3: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
093	Envelop: FC	*ENG	
094	Envelop: BW	*ENG	
095	Middle Thick: Middle Speed: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **165** / 1 deg /step]
097	Middle Thick: Middle Speed: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
097	Middle Thick: Middle Speed: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
099	Middle Thick: Middle Speed: BW: Simplex	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

101	Middle Thick: Middle Speed: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
103	Middle Thick: Constant Speed: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **C2c: 5, C2d: 10** / 1 deg /step]
106	Extra Rotation Temp.: L	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **165** / 1 deg /step]
	Specifies the target temperature for extra idling mode in a low temperature environment. The low temperature threshold can be adjusted with SP1112-003.		
107	Extra Rotation Temp.: M	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **160** / 1 deg /step]
	Specifies the target temperature for extra idling mode in a medium temperature environment. The medium temperature is between the low temperature threshold (SP1112-003) and the high temperature threshold (SP1112-004).		
108	Extra Rotation Temp.: H	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **160** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the target temperature for extra idling mode in a high temperature environment. The high temperature threshold can be adjusted with SP1112-004.		
111	Thick: Small Size	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **C2c: 165, C2d: 175** / 1 deg/step]
113	Thick 4: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[140 to 190 / **175** / 1 deg/step]
114	Thick 4: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
115	Thick 5: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[140 to 190 / **170** / 1 deg/step]
116	Thick 5: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
117	Thick 6: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **180** / 1 deg/step]
118	Thick 6: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
120	Plain2: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[130 to 180 / **C2c: 165, C2d: 170** / 1 deg/step]
122	Plain2: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
124	Plain2: BW: Simplex	*ENG	

126	Plain2: BW: Duplex	*ENG	[130 to 180 / **C2c: 165, C2d: 170** / 1 deg/step]
126	Plain2: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
128	F: Plain1: FC : Simplex	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **135** / 1 deg/step]
130	F: Plain1: BW : Simplex	*ENG	
132	F: Plain2: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **140** / 1 deg /step]
134	F: Plain2: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
136	F: Middle Thick: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **145** / 1 deg /step]
138	F: Middle Thick: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
140	F: Thick1: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **150** / 1 deg/step]
141	F: Thick1: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
142	Glossy: Plain1	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **135** / 1 deg/step]
144	Glossy: Plain2	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **140** / 1 deg/step]
146	Glossy: Middle Thick	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **145** / 1 deg/step]
148	1bin: Plain	*ENG	[130 to 180 / **C2c: 150, C2d: 155** / 1 deg/step]
150	F: 1bin: Plain	*ENG	[120 to 170 / **135** / 1 deg/step]

1106	**[Fusing Temperature Display]** Fusing Temperature Display (Heating or Pressure)		
	Displays the current temperature of the heating and pressure rollers.		
001	Fusing: Center	-	[–20 to 250 / 0 / 1 deg/step] The heating roller has two lamps. One heats the center of the heating roller and the other heats both ends of the heating

http://www.manuals4you.com

			roller.
002	Fusing: Ends	-	[–10 to 250 / 0 / 1 deg/step] The heating roller has two lamps. One heats the center of the heating roller and the other heats both ends of the heating roller.
003	Pressure	-	

1108	**[Forced Ready Setting]**		
	Japan use only		
001	ON/OFF	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1] 0: OFF, 1: ON
002	Target Voltage Ratio	*ENG	[85 to 115 / **92** / 1 %/step]
003	Measured Voltage Ratio	*ENG	[70 to 120 / **100** / 1 %/step]
005	Temp: Threshold	*ENG	[10 to 32 / **17** / 1 deg/step]
006	Auto Off Timer	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 min/step]
007	Time	*ENG	[7 to 60 / **C2c: 14.0, C2d: 24.0** / 0.1 sec/step]
008	10s Forced Ready ON/OFF	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1]
009	10s Forced Ready Time	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **9.0** / 0.1 sec/step]

1109	**[Fusing Nip Band Check]**		
001	Execute	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1] Executes the nip band measurement between heat roller and pressure roller. If the nip band width is not 8 mm, and fusing is not good, replace the pressure roller or install a new fusing unit.
002	Pre-Idling Time	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **240** / 1 sec/step]

	Specifies the fusing rotation time before executing SP1109-001.		
003	Stop Time	* ENG	[5 to 30 / **10** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the time for measuring the nip.		

1110	**[Pressure Release]**		
001	Shift Time	*ENG	[0 to 240 / **1** / 1 min/step]
002	Feed Pressure: 1	*ENG	[0 to 700 / **0** / 1 msec/step]
003	Feed Pressure: 2	* ENG	
004	Feed Pressure: 3	* ENG	
005	SC Detection	* ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1]

1112	**[Environmental Correction: Fusing]**		
001	Temp.: Threshold: Low	*ENG	[10 to 23 / **17** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature for low temperature condition.		
002	Temp.: Threshold: High	*ENG	[24 to 40 / **30** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature for high temperature condition.		
003	Low Temp. Correction	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the temperature correction for the heating roller. When the low temperature condition (specified with SP1112-001) is detected, the value of this SP is added to the heating roller temperature.		
004	High Temp. Correction	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the temperature correction for the heating roller. When the high temperature condition (specified with SP1112-002) is detected, the value of this SP is subtracted from the heating roller temperature.		
005	Reference Temp	*ENG	[15 to 25 / **20** / 1 deg/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

	Specifies the temperature correction for the heating roller. When the high temperature condition (specified with SP1112-002) is detected, the value of this SP is subtracted from the heating roller temperature.		
006	Low Temp Correction a	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
007	Reference Temp Correction a	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
008	High Temp Correction a	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
009	Low Temp Correction b	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
010	Reference Temp Correction b	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
011	High Temp Correction b	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **0** / 1 deg/step]

1113	**[Stand-by Time]**		
001	Shift Time	*ENG	[0 to 180 / **60** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the interval from the ready mode to the stand-by mode. If the machine does not do any printing job for the time specified with this SP after the heating roller has reached the ready temperature, the machine returns to the stand-by mode.		
003	After Recovery	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **10** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the time for keeping the target temperature after recovery (SP1105-083) without any jobs.		
004	Time After Paper Feed	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
006	Offset: Center and Ends	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **100** / 1 deg/step]

1115	**[Stand-by Idling]**		
001	Interval	*ENG	[1 to 240 / **60** / 1 min/step]
	Specifies the interval between idling during stand-by mode. This idling during the stand-by mode prevents the roller deformation.		

002	Idling Time	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **0.7** / 0.1 sec/step]
	Specifies the length of each idling operation during stand-by mode.		

1117	**[Idling Time After Heater OFF]**		
002	SC Display	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **0** / 1 sec/step]

1118	**[Curl Temperature Correction]**		
001	ON/OFF	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1]
002	Humidity 1	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **60** / 1 %]
003	Humidity 2	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **80** / 1 %]

1120	**[Continues Print Mode Switch]**		
001	Paper Feed Condition	*ENG	[0 or 2 / **0** / 1]
	Selects the paper feed timing. 0: Productivity priority, 1: Fusing quality priory		

1121	**[Idling Time After Job]**		
001	Discontinues Job	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **15** / 1 sec/step]
002	Job End: Min	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **5** / 1 sec/step]
003	Job End: Max	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **15** / 1 sec/step]

1122	**[Repeat Print temp. Correction] DFU**		
001	JOB Interval: Plain	*ENG	[0 to 120 / **30** / 1 sec/step]
002	JOB Interval: M-Thick	*ENG	
003	Shift Time a	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **600**/ 1 sec/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

004	Shift Time b	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **150** / 1 sec/step]
005	Shift Time c	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **300** / 1 sec/step]
006	Shift Time d	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **80** / 1 sec/step]
007	Shift Time e	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
008	Shift Time f	*ENG	[0 to 1200 /**50** / 1 sec/step]
009	Shift Time g	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
010	Shift Time h	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **40** / 1 sec/step]
011	Offset Value a	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
012	Offset Value b	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
013	Offset Value c	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
014	Offset Value d	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
015	Offset Value e	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
016	Offset Value f	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **EU/NA/AA** / 1 deg/step] **EU/AA: 0, NA: 5**
017	Offset Value g	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
018	Offset Value h	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]

1123	**[Fuser Cleaning]**		
001	Select Operation	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -]
	Enables or disables the fusing cleaning mode. 0: Cleaning ON, 1: Cleaning OFF		
002	Compulsion execution	-	Execute the fusing cleaning mode.
003	Control temperature	*ENG	[0 to 185 / **185** / 1°C/step]
	Adjusts the temperature for the fusing cleaning mode.		

004	Continuance time	*ENG	[1 to 300 / **160** / 1 sec/step]
	Adjusts the execution time for the fusing cleaning mode.		
005	Operation interval	*ENG	[1 to 240 / **5** / 1 K/step]
	Adjusts the execution interval for the fusing cleaning mode. 1K= 100 sheets		
006	Count when operating	*ENG	[0 to 240,000 / **-** / 1 page/step]

1159	**[Fusing Jam Detection]**		
001	SC Display	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -]
	Enables or disables the fusing consecutive jam (three times) SC detection. 0: No detection, 1: Detection		

1801	**[Motor Speed Adj.] FA**		
001	Registration:Plain:Low	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **–1.1** / 0.1 %/step]
002	Registration:Plain:High	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **–0.1** / 0.1 %/step]
003	Registration:Middle Thick:Low	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **–1.1** / 0.1 %/step]
004	Registration:Middle Thick:Mid	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **–0.1** / 0.1 %/step]
005	Registration:Middle Thick:High	*ENG	
006	Registration:Thick 1:Low	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **–1.1** / 0.1 %/step]
007	Registration:Thick1:Mid	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **–0.1** / 0.1 %/step]
008	Registration:Thick 2:Low	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **–1.1** / 0.1 %/step]
009	Registration:Thick 3:Low	*ENG	
010	Duplex CW:Plane:Low	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0.0** / 0.1 %/step]
011	Duplex CW:Normal:High	*ENG	
012	Duplex CW:Middle Thick:Low	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

013	Duplex CW:Middle Thick:Mid	*ENG	
014	Duplex CW:Middle Thick:High	*ENG	
015	Duplex CW:Thick1:Low	*ENG	
016	Duplex CW:Thick1:Mid	*ENG	
017	Duplex CW:Thick2:Low	*ENG	
018	Duplex CW:Thick3:Low	*ENG	
019	Duplex CCW:Normal:High	*ENG	
020	Duplex CCW:Middle Thick:Mid	*ENG	
021	Duplex CCW:Middle Thick:high	*ENG	
023	Duplex CCW:Thick1:Mid	*ENG	
024	Reverse CW:Normal:High	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **–0.5** / 0.1%/step]
025	Reverse CW:Middle Thick:Mid	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0** / 0.1 %/step]
026	Reverse CW:Middle Thick:High	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **–0.5** / 0.1%/step]
028	Reverse CW:Thick1:Mid	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0** / 0.1 %/step]
029	Reverse CCW:Normal:High	*ENG	
030	Reverse CCW:Middle Thick:Mid	*ENG	
031	Reverse CCW:Middle Thick:High	*ENG	
033	Reverse CCW:Thick1:Mid	*ENG	
034	Feed:Plain:Low	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**1.1** / 0.1 %/step]
035	Feed:Plain:High	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**0.1** / 0.1 %/step]
036	Feed:Middle thick:Low	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**1.1** / 0.1 %/step]
037	Feed:Middle thick:Mid	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**0.1** / 0.1 %/step]
038	Feed:Middle thick:High	*ENG	

039	Feed:Thick 1:Low	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**1.1** / 0.1 %/step]
040	Feed:Thick 1:Mid	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**0.1** / 0.1 %/step]
041	Feed:Thick 2:Low	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**1.1** / 0.1 %/step]
042	Feed:Thick 3:Low	*ENG	
043	Bridge Motor:Low	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0** / 0.1 %/step]
044	Bridge Motor:Mid	*ENG	
045	Bridge Motor:High	*ENG	
060	KOpcDevMot:High	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / –**0.6** / 0.01 %/step]
061	KOpcDevMot:Low	*ENG	
062	KOpcDevMot:Low	*ENG	
063	MOpcDevMot:High	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / 0 / 1 step/step]
064	MOpcDevMot:Mid	*ENG	[–9 to 9 / **0** / 1 step/step]
065	MOpcDevMot:Low	*ENG	[–14 to 14 / 0 / 1 step/step]
066	COpcDevMot:High	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 step/step]
067	COpcDevMot:Mid	*ENG	[–9 to 9 / **0** / 1 step/step]
068	COpcDevMot:Low	*ENG	[–14 to 14 / **0** / 1 step/step]
069	YOpcDevMot:High	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 step/step]
070	YOpcDevMot:Mid	*ENG	[–9 to 9 / **0** / 1 step/step]
071	YOpcDevMot:Low	*ENG	[–14 to 14 / **0** / 1 step/step]
072	Fusing: High	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **1.9** / 0.01 %/step]
073	Fusing: Mid	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **1.4** / 0.01 %/step]
074	Fusing: Low	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **1.7** / 0.01 %/step]
075	TransferMot:High	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / –**0.2** / 0.01 %/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

076	TransferMot:Mid	*ENG	
077	TransferMot:Low	*ENG	
078	TonerMot	*ENG	[–30 to 30 / **10** / 5 %/step]
079	Fusing Exit Motor: 1200	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **2.1** / 0.01 %/step]
100	Drum Adjust	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1]
101	230mm/s:M	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **C2c: 0**/ 1 step/step] [–9 to 9 / **C2d: 0** / 1 step/step]
102	230mm/s:C	*ENG	
103	230mm/s:Y	*ENG	
104	205mm/s:M	*ENG	[–7 to 7 / **0** / 1 step/step]
105	205mm/s:C	*ENG	
106	205mm/s:Y	*ENG	
107	154mm/s:M	*ENG	[–14 to 14 / **0** / 1 step/step]
108	154mm/s:C	*ENG	
109	154mm/s:Y	*ENG	
110	77mm/s:M	*ENG	[– 7 to 7 / **0** / 1 step/step]
111	77mm/s:C	*ENG	
112	77mm/s:Y		

1901	**[Recovery Temp. Ope. Time]**		
004	-	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **10** / 1 sec/step] **Not used**

1902	**[Amplitude Control]**		
001	Execute	-	Execute the drum phase adjustment.
002	Result	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **0** / 1]

			Displays the result of the drum phase adjustment. 0: Successfully done 2: Sampling failure 3: Insufficient detection number
003	Auto Execution	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1] Turns the automatic drum phase adjustment on or off. 0: Off, 1: On

1907	**[Paper Feed Timing Adj.] DFU**		
002	Feed Solenoid ON: Plain	*ENG	[–10 to 40 / **0** / 2.5 mm/step]
003	Feed Clutch OFF: Plain	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
004	Feed Clutch ON: Plain	*ENG	
005	Inverter Stop Position	*ENG	
006	Reverse Stop Position	*ENG	
007	Re-Feed Stop Position	*ENG	
008	By-pass Solenoid OFF	*ENG	[0 to 40 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
009	By-pass Solenoid Re-ON	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1]
010	By-pass Feed Clutch ON	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
012	Feed Solenoid ON: Thick	*ENG	[–10 to 40 / **0** / 2.5 mm/step]
013	Feed Clutch OFF: Thick	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
014	Feed Clutch ON: Thick	*ENG	

1908	**[Paper Bank Feed Timing Adj.] DFU**		
008	Feed Clutch ON: Plain	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

009	Feed Clutch ON: Thick	*ENG	
010	Bridge Junction Gate Sol-ON	*ENG	
011	Bridge Junction Gate Sol-OFF	*ENG	
012	1 Bin Junction Gate Sol-ON	*ENG	
013	1 Bin Junction Gate Sol-OFF	*ENG	
015	Junction Gate SOL1:ON:Plain	*ENG	
016	Junction Gate SOL1:ON:Thick	*ENG	
017	Junction Gate SOL1:OFF:Plain	*ENG	
018	Junction Gate SOL1:OFF:Thick	*ENG	

1910	**[Fusing Feed Start Time]**		
	Specifies the waiting time for feeding paper after the machine has entered the print ready mode.		
011	Plain FC: Ready: M	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
012	Plain FC: Standby: M	*ENG	
013	Plain FC: Ready: L	*ENG	
014	Plain FC: Standby: L	*ENG	
015	Middle Thick: Ready: M	*ENG	
016	Middle Thick: Standby: M	*ENG	
017	Middle Thick: Ready: L	*ENG	
018	Middle Thick: Standby: L	*ENG	
019	Thick Paper: Ready: M	*ENG	
020	Thick Paper: Standby: M	*ENG	
021	Thick Paper: Ready: L	*ENG	

022	Thick Paper: Standby: L	*ENG	

1912	**[Capacitor Condition Display] Not used**		
001	Latest Capacity	*ENG	[0 to 150 / **45** / 1 F/step]
002	Current Voltage	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
003	Charge Time	*ENG	[0 to 50000 / **0** / 10 ms/step]
004	Deterioration Counter	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **0** / 1 /step]
005	Charge Current	*ENG	[5 to 15 / **10** / 0.1 A/step]

1913	**[Capacitor Discharge Stop Voltage Setting] Not used**		
001	-	*ENG	[10 to 25 / **20** / 1 V/step]

1914	**[Capacitor Deterioration Detection Condition] Not used**		
001	AC Input Voltage Display	*ENG	[0 to 150 / **100** / 1 V/step]
002	Deterioration Counter	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **30** / 1 /step]
003	AC Input Voltage	*ENG	[80 to 100 / **90** / 1 V/step]
004	Capacitor Capacity	*ENG	[20 to 130 / **35** / 1 F/step]

1915	**[After Ready Setting]**		
011	Offset: Plain: Ready	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **C2c: 35, C2d: 30** / 1 deg/step]
012	Offset: Plain: Standby	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
013	Offset: Middle Thick: Ready	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **C2c: 30, C2d: 25** / 1 deg/step]
014	Offset: Middle Thick: Standby	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **5** / 1 deg/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

015	Offset: Thick: Ready	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
016	Offset: Thick: Standby	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
017	Time: Plain: Ready	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **10** / 1 sec/step]
018	Time: Plain: Standby	*ENG	
019	Time: Middle Thick: Ready	*ENG	
020	Time: Middle Thick: Standby	*ENG	
021	Time: Thick: Ready	*ENG	
022	Time: Thick: Standby	*ENG	
023	Coefficient: Plain	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 deg/sec/step]
024	Coefficient: Middle Thick	*ENG	
025	Coefficient: Thick	*ENG	

1916	**[CPM Down Setting]**		
026	Voltage Target	*ENG	[80 to 120 / **93** / 1 %/step]
031	On/Off	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **1** / 1]
032	D1: Plain: BW: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **C2c: 20, C2d: 25** / 1 deg/step]
033	D2: Plain: BW: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **C2c: 22, C2d: 27** / 1 deg/step]
034	D3: Plain: BW: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **C2c: 25, C2d: 30** / 1 deg/step]
035	D1: Plain: FC: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **20** / 1 deg/step]
036	D2: Plain: FC: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **22** / 1 deg/step]
037	D3: Plain: FC: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **25** / 1 deg/step]
038	D1: Middle Thick: BW: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **C2c: 20, C2d: 30** / 1 deg/step]

039	D2: Middle Thick: BW: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **C2c: 22, C2d: 32** / 1 deg/step]
040	D3: Middle Thick: BW: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **C2c: 25, C2d: 35** / 1 deg/step]
041	D1: Middle Thick: FC: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **20** / 1 deg/step]
042	D2: Middle Thick: FC: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **22** / 1 deg/step]
043	D3: Middle Thick: FC: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **25** / 1 deg/step]
044	D1: Plain :BW : CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 35** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 45** / 1 cpm/step]
045	D2: Plain :BW : CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 30** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 40** / 1 cpm/step]
046	D3: Plain :BW : CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 25** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 35** / 1 cpm/step]
047	D1: Plain :FC : CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 35** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 45** / 1 cpm/step]
048	D2: Plain :FC : CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 30** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 40** / 1 cpm/step]
049	D3: Plain :FC : CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 25** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 35** / 1 cpm/step]
050	D1: Middle Thick: BW: CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 35** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 45** / 1 cpm/step]
051	D2: Middle Thick: BW: CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 30** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 40** / 1 cpm/step]
052	D3: Middle Thick: BW: CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 25** / 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 35** / 1 cpm/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

053	D1: Middle Thick: FC: CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 35**/ 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 45** / 1 cpm/step]
054	D2: Middle Thick: FC: CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 30**/ 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 40** / 1 cpm/step]
055	D3: Middle Thick: FC: CPM	*ENG	[20 to 40 / **C2c: 25**/ 1 cpm/step] [20 to 50 / **C2d: 35** / 1 cpm/step]
056	Operation Time	*ENG	[0 to 120 / **5** / 1 sec/step]
057	Operation Time:D0	*ENG	[0 to 120 / **5** / 1 sec/step]
060	Ends Down ON/OFF	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step]
061	Limit Temperature	*ENG	[200 to 250 / **250** / 1 deg/step]
062	D1: Paper Width1: Offset	*ENG	[10 to 100 / **15** / 1 deg/step]
063	D2: Paper Width1: Offset	*ENG	[10 to 100 / **15** / 1 deg/step]
064	D1: Paper Width2: Offset	*ENG	[10 to 100 / **35** / 1 deg/step]
065	D2: Paper Width2: Offset	*ENG	[10 to 100 / **30** / 1 deg/step]
066	D1: Paper Width3: Offset	*ENG	[10 to 100 / **35** / 1 deg/step]
067	D2: Paper Width3: Offset	*ENG	[10 to 100 / **30** / 1 deg/step]
068	D1: Paper Width1: CPM	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **C2c: 20** / 5 cpm/step] [10 to 50 / **C2d: 20** / 5 cpm/step]
069	D2: Paper Width1: CPM	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **C2c: 20**/ 5 cpm/step] [10 to 50 / **C2d: 20** / 5 cpm/step]
070	D1: Paper Width2: CPM	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **C2c: 35**/ 5 cpm/step] [10 to 50 / **C2d: 45** / 5 cpm/step]
071	D2: Paper Width2: CPM	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **C2c: 20**/ 5 cpm/step] [10 to 50 / **C2d: 20** / 5 cpm/step]
072	D1: Paper Width3: CPM	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **C2c: 35**/ 5 cpm/step] [10 to 50 / **C2d: 45** / 5 cpm/step]

073	D2: Paper Width3: CPM	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **C2c: 20**/ 5 cpm/step] [10 to 50 / **C2d: 20** / 5 cpm/step]
074	Ends: Sustained Time	*ENG	[0 to 120 / **30** / 1 sec/step]
075	Pressure Start Temp	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **100** / 1 deg/step]
076	D1: Paper Width4: Offset	*ENG	[10 to 100 / **45** / 1 deg/step]
077	D2: Paper Width4: Offset	*ENG	[10 to 100 / **40** / 1 deg/step]
078	D1: Paper Width4: CPM	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **C2c: 35**/ 1 cpm/step] [10 to 50 / **C2d: 45** / 1 cpm/step]
079	D2: Paper Width4: CPM	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **C2c: 20** 1 cpm/step] [10 to 50 / **C2d: 20** / 1 cpm/step]

1917	**[Magnetic Field Roller HP Detection]**		
001	Position Replacement	*ENG	[5 to 100 / **40** / 1 times/step]
	Specifies the limit times of the ferrite roller rotation for initializing the home position of the ferrite roller. After the ferrite roller rotates more than 40 times, the machine starts to find the home position of the ferrite roller.		
002	Continuous Feed Page	*ENG	[100 to 1000 / **500** / 10 sheets/step]
	Specifies the limit sheets of outputs for initializing the home position of the ferrite roller. When the outputs are more than 500 sheets of paper, the machine starts to find the home position of the ferrite roller.		

1950	**[Fan Cooling Time Set]**		
002	Fusing Exit Fan	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
006	Main Suction Fan	*ENG	
007	Paper Exit Fan	*ENG	
008	PSU Fan	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

009	Fusing IH Coil Fan	*ENG	
010	IH Power Supply Fan	*ENG	[0 to 60 / 3**0** / 1 sec/step]
011	Second Duct Fan	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
012	Third Duct Fan	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **0** / 1 sec/step]

SP2-XXX (Drum)

2005	**[Charge DC Voltage]** Charge Roller DC Voltage Adjustment (Paper Type, Process Speed, Color) Paper Type –> Plain, Thick 1, Thick 2		
	Adjusts the DC component of the charge roller bias in the various print modes. Charge bias (DC component) is automatically adjusted during process control; therefore, adjusting these settings does not effect while process control mode (SP3-041-1 Default: ON) is activated. When deactivating process control mode with SP3-041-1, the values in these SP modes are used for printing.		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **690** / 10 –V/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2&FINE: Bk	*ENG	
010	Thick 2&FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2&FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2&FINE: Y	*ENG	
013	Correction Plain	*ENG	[–100 to 100 / **C2c: –23, C2d: –16** / 1 –V/step]
014	Correction Thick 1	*ENG	[–100 to 100 / **–24** / 1 –V/step]
015	Correction Thick 2&FINE	*ENG	[–100 to 100 / **2** / 1 –V/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

2006	**[Charge AC Voltage]** Charge Roller AC Voltage Adjustment (Paper Type, Process Speed, Color) Paper Type –> Plain, Thick 1, Thick 2		
	Adjusts the AC component of the charge roller bias in the various print modes. Charge bias (AC component) is adjusted by environment correction (SP2-007-xxx to SP2-011-xxx). These SPs are activated only when SP2-012-1 is set to "1: manual control".		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **2.1** / 0.01 KV/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2&FINE: Bk	*ENG	
010	Thick 2&FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2&FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2&FINE: Y	*ENG	

2007	**[Charge AC Current: LL]** Charge Roller AC Current Adjustment for LL (Color)		
	Displays/sets the AC current target of the charge roller for LL environment (Low temperature and Low humidity). **DFU**		
001	Environmental Target: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **C2c: 1.41, C2d: 1.59** / 0.01

002	Environmental Target: M	*ENG	mA/step]
003	Environmental Target: C	*ENG	
004	Environmental Target: Y	*ENG	

2008	**[Charge AC Current: ML]** Charge Roller AC Current Adjustment for MM (Color)		
	Displays/sets the AC current target of the charge roller for ML environment (Meddle temperature and Low humidity). **DFU**		
001	Environmental Target: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **C2c: 1.49, C2d: 1.68** / 0.01 mA/step]
002	Environmental Target: M	*ENG	
003	Environmental Target: C	*ENG	
004	Environmental Target: Y	*ENG	

2009	**[Charge AC Current: MM]** Charge Roller AC Current Adjustment for MM (Color)		
	Displays/sets the AC current target of the charge roller for MM environment (Middle temperature and Middle humidity). **DFU**		
001	Environmental Target: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **C2c: 1.56, C2d: 1.76** / 0.01 mA/step]
002	Environmental Target: M	*ENG	
003	Environmental Target: C	*ENG	
004	Environmental Target: Y	*ENG	

2010	**[Charge AC Current: MH]** Charge Roller AC Current Adjustment for MH (Color)		
	Displays/sets the AC current target of the charge roller for MH environment (Middle temperature and High humidity). **DFU**		

http://www.manuals4you.com

001	Environmental Target: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **C2c: 1.64, C2d: 1.83** / 0.01 mA/step]
002	Environmental Target: M	*ENG	
003	Environmental Target: C	*ENG	
004	Environmental Target: Y	*ENG	

2011	**[Charge AC Current: HH]** Charge Roller AC Current Adjustment for HH (Color)		
	Displays/sets the AC current target of the charge roller for HH environment (High temperature and High humidity). **DFU**		
001	Environmental Target: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **C2c: 1. 66, C2d: 1.85** / 0.01 mA/step]
002	Environmental Target: M	*ENG	
003	Environmental Target: C	*ENG	
004	Environmental Target: Y	*ENG	

2012	**[Charge Output Control]**		
001	AC Voltage	*ENG	Selects the AC voltage control type. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Process control 1: Manual control (AC voltages are decided with SP2006.)

2013	**[Environmental Correction: PCU]**		
001	Current Environmental: Display	*ENG	Displays the environmental condition, which is measured in absolute humidity. [1 to 5 / **–** / 1 /step] 1: LL (LL <= 4.3 g/m^3) 2: ML (4.3 < ML <= 11.3 g/m^3) 3: MM (11.3 < MM <= 18.0 g/m^3)

			4: MH (18.0 < MH <= 24.0 g/m^3) 5: HH (24.0 g/m^3 < HH)
002	Forced Setting	*ENG	Selects the environmental condition manually. [0 to 5 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: The environmental condition is determined automatically. 1: LL, 2: ML, 3: MM, 4: MH, 5: HH
003	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 1	*ENG	Changes the humidity threshold between LL and ML. [0 to 100 / **4.3** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
004	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 2	*ENG	Changes the humidity threshold between ML and MM. [0 to 100 / **11.3** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
005	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 3	*ENG	Changes the humidity threshold between MM and MH. [0 to 100 / **18.0** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
006	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 4	*ENG	Changes the humidity threshold between MH and HH. [0 to 100 / **24.0** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
007	Current Temp.: Display	*ENG	Displays the current temperature. [0 to 100 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
008	Current Relative Humidity: Display	*ENG	Displays the current relative humidity. [0 to 100 / **0** / 1%RH/step]
009	Current Absolute Humidity: Display	*ENG	Displays the absolute humidity. [0 to 100 / **0** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
010	Previous Environmental: Display	*ENG	Displays the previous environmental condition, which is measured in absolute humidity. [1 to 5 / – / 1 /step] 1: LL, 2: ML, 3: MM, 4: MH, 5: HH

http://www.manuals4you.com

011	Previous Temp.: Display	*ENG	Displays the previous temperature. [0 to 100 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
012	Previous Relative Humidity: Display	*ENG	Displays the previous relative humidity. [0 to 100 / **0** / 1%RH/step]
013	Previous Absolute Humidity: Display	*ENG	Displays the previous absolute humidity. [0 to 100 / **0** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]

2014	**[Charge AC Control: Setting]**		
001	Exec Interval: Power ON	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **500** / 1 page/step]
002	Exec Interval: Print	*ENG	
003	Page Interval	*ENG	[0 to 500 / **10** / 5 page/step]
004	Temperature	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **25** / 1 deg/step]
005	Relative Humidity	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **50** / 1 %RH/step]
006	Absolute Humidity	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **12** / 1 g/m^3/step]
007	Temp Threshold M	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
008	RH Threshold M	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **50** / 1 %RH/step]
009	AH Threshold M	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **6** / 1 g/m^3/step]
010	Temp Threshold S	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **1** / 0.1 deg/step]
011	RH Threshold S	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **5** / 1 %RH/step]
012	AH Threshold S	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **1** / 0.1 g/m^3/step]
013	Non-use Time	*ENG	[0 to 1440 / **360** / 10 min/step]

2015	**[Charge AC Adj: Result]**		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	M	*ENG	

003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

2101	**[Color Registration Correction] FA**		
	These values are the parameters for the automatic line position adjustment and are adjusted at the factory. However, you must input a value for SP2101-001 after replacing the laser optics housing unit. For details, see "Laser Optics Housing Unit" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section. The value should be provided with the new laser optics housing unit.		
001	Main Dot: Bk	*ENG	[–512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
002	Main Dot: M	*ENG	
003	Main Dot: C	*ENG	
004	Main Dot: Y	*ENG	
005	Sub Line: Bk	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
006	Sub Line: M	*ENG	
007	Sub Line: C	*ENG	
008	Sub Line: Y	*ENG	

2102	**[Magnification Adjustment] DFU**		
001	Main Mag.: High Speed: Bk	*ENG	These are results of the main scan length adjustment. [0 to 560 / **280** / 1 /step]
002	Main Mag.: Medium Speed: Bk	*ENG	
003	Main Mag.: Low Speed: Bk	*ENG	
004	Main Mag.: High Speed: M	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

005	Main Mag.: Medium Speed: M	*ENG	
006	Main Mag.: Low Speed: M	*ENG	
007	Main Mag.: High Speed: C	*ENG	
008	Main Mag.: Medium Speed: C	*ENG	
009	Main Mag.: Low Speed: C	*ENG	
010	Main Mag.: High Speed: Y	*ENG	
011	Main Mag.: Medium Speed: Y	*ENG	
012	Main Mag.: Low Speed: Y	*ENG	
013	Offset: Mag Bk1-2	*ENG	[-256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
014	Offset: Mag M1-2	*ENG	
015	Offset: Mag C1-2	*ENG	
016	Offset: Mag Y1-2	*ENG	

2103	**[Erase Margin Adjustment]** (Area, Paper Size)		
	Adjusts the erase margin by deleting image data at the margins.		
001	Lead Edge Width	*ENG	[0 to 9.9 / **4.2** / 0.1 mm/step]
002	Trail. Edge Width	*ENG	
003	Left	*ENG	[0 to 9.9 / **2** / 0.1 mm/step]
004	Right	*ENG	
005	Lead Edge Width: Thin	*ENG	[0 to 9.9 / **5** / 0.1 mm/step]

006	Duplex Trail. L Size	*ENG	[0 to 4 / **1** / 0.1 mm/step]
007	Duplex Trail. M Size	*ENG	[0 to 4 / **0.8** / 0.1 mm/step]
008	Duplex Trail. S Size	*ENG	[0 to 4 / **0.6** / 0.1 mm/step]
009	Duplex Left Edge	*ENG	[0 to 1.5 / **0.3** / 0.1 mm/step]
010	Duplex Right Edge	*ENG	
011	Duplex Trail. L Size:Thick	*ENG	[0 to 4 / **1** / 0.1 mm/step]
012	Duplex Trail. M Size:Thick	*ENG	[0 to 4 / **0.8** / 0.1 mm/step]
013	Duplex Trail. S Size:Thick	*ENG	[0 to 4 / **0.6** / 0.1 mm/step]
014	Duplex Left Edge:Thick	*ENG	[0 to 1.5 / **0.3** / 0.1 mm/step]
015	Duplex Right Edge:Thick	*ENG	

2105	**[LD Power Adj.]** (Process Speed, Color)		
	Adjusts the LD power of each color for each process speed. Each LD power setting is decided by process control. High Speed: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Middle Speed: 154 mm/sec, Low Speed: 77 mm/sec		
001	High Speed: Bk	*ENG	[50 to 120 / **100** / 1%/step] Decreasing a value makes lines thinner on the output. Increasing a value makes lines thicker on the output.
002	High Speed: M	*ENG	
003	High Speed: C	*ENG	
004	High Speed: Y	*ENG	
005	Middle Speed: Bk	*ENG	
006	Middle Speed: M	*ENG	
007	Middle Speed: C	*ENG	
008	Middle Speed: Y	*ENG	
009	Low Speed: Bk	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

010	Low Speed: M	*ENG	
011	Low Speed: C	*ENG	
012	Low Speed: Y	*ENG	

2106	**[Polygon Rotation Time]**		
	Adjusts the time of the polygon motor rotation. **DFU**		
001	Warming-Up	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **10** / 1 sec/step]
002	Job End	*ENG	

2107	**[Image Parameter]**		
	DFU		
001	Image Gamma Flag	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step]
002	Shading Correction Flag	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step]

2109	**[Test Pattern]**		
	Generates the test pattern using "COPY Window" tab in the LCD.		
003	Pattern Selection	-	[0 to 23 / **0** / 1/step] 0 None 1: 1-dot line pattern (Vertical) 2: 2-dot line pattern (Vertical) 3: 1-dot line pattern (Horizontal) 4: 2-dot line pattern (Horizontal) 5: 1-dot grid pattern (Vertical) 6: 1-dot grid pattern (Horizontal) 7: 1-dot grid pattern (Fine) 8: 1-dot grid pattern (Rough) 9: 1-dot slant pattern (Fine) 10: 1-dot slant pattern (Rough)

			11. 1-dot pattern 12. 2-dot pattern 13. 4-dot pattern 14. 1-dot trimming pattern 15: Cross stitch: sub-scan 16: Cross stitch: main-scan 17: Belt pattern (Horizontal) 18: Belt pattern (Vertical) 19: Checkered flag 20: Gray scale (Vertical) 21: Gray scale (Horizontal) 22: Dual beams density pattern 23: Solid
005	Color Selection	-	Specifies the color for the test pattern. [1 to 4 / **1** / 1/step] 1: All colors, 2: Magenta, 3: Yellow, 4: Cyan
006	Density: Bk	-	Specifies the color density for the test pattern. [0 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step] 0: Lightest density 15: Darkest density
007	Density: M	-	
008	Density: C	-	
009	Density: Y	-	

2111	**[Forced Line Position Adj.]**		
001	Mode a	-	Executes the fine line position adjustment twice. If this SP is not completed (NG is displayed), do SP2111-003 first and then try this SP again.
002	Mode b	-	Executes the fine line position adjustment once. If this SP is not completed, do SP2111-003

http://www.manuals4you.com

			first and then try this SP again.
003	Mode c	-	Executes the rough line position adjustment once. After doing this SP, make sure to execute SP2111-001 or -002. Otherwise, the line position adjustment is not perfectly done.

2112	**[TM/ID Sensor Check]** ID Sensor Check **FA**		
001	Execute		[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] This SP is used to check the ID sensors at the factory. The results of this SP are displayed in SP2140 to SP2145.

2117	**[Skew Adjustment]**		
	Specifies a skew adjustment value for the skew motor M, C or Y. These SPs must be used when a new laser optics housing unit is installed or when SC285 occurs. For details, see "Laser Optics Housing Unit" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section.		
001	Pulse: M	*ENG	[–50 to 50 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
002	Pulse: C	*ENG	
003	Pulse: Y	*ENG	

2118	**[Skew Adjustment]**		
001	Execute: M	*ENG	Changes the current skew adjustment values to the values specified with SP2117. These SPs must be used when a new laser optics housing unit is installed or when SC285 occurs. For details, see "Laser Optics Housing Unit" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section.
002	Execute: C	*ENG	
003	Execute: Y	*ENG	

2119	**[Skew Adjustment Display]**		
	Displays the current skew adjustment value for each skew motor.		
001	M	*ENG	[–50 to 50 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
002	C	*ENG	
003	Y	*ENG	

2120	**[Thick Paper Skew Adj]**		
	Selects the skew adjustment value for thick paper.		
001	On/Off	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Off, 1: On

2140	**[ID Sensor Check Result] DFU**		
	Displays the results of the ID sensor check. Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1024 / **0** / 1/step]
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	
005	Front	*ENG	
006	Center	*ENG	
007	Rear	*ENG	

2141	**[ID Sensor Check Result: Ave.] DFU**		
	Displays the average result values of the ID sensor check.		

http://www.manuals4you.com

	Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01V/step]
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	
005	Front	*ENG	
006	Center	*ENG	
007	Rear	*ENG	

2142	**[ID Sensor Check Result] DFU**		
	Displays the maximum result values of the ID sensor check. Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment		
001	Maximum: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01V/step]
002	Maximum: M	*ENG	
003	Maximum: C	*ENG	
004	Maximum: Y	*ENG	
005	Maximum: Front	*ENG	
006	Maximum: Center	*ENG	
007	Maximum: Rear	*ENG	

2143	**[ID Sensor Check Result] DFU**
	Displays the minimum result values of the ID sensor check. Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment

001	Minimum: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01V/step]
002	Minimum: M	*ENG	
003	Minimum: C	*ENG	
004	Minimum: Y	*ENG	
005	Minimum: Front	*ENG	
006	Minimum: Center	*ENG	
007	Minimum: Rear	*ENG	

2144	**[ID Sensor Check Result] DFU**		
	Displays the maximum result 2 values of the ID sensor check. Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment		
001	Maximum 2: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01V/step]
002	Maximum 2: M	*ENG	
003	Maximum 2: C	*ENG	
004	Maximum 2: Y	*ENG	
005	Maximum 2: Front	*ENG	
006	Maximum 2: Center	*ENG	
007	Maximum 2: Rear	*ENG	

2145	**[ID Sensor Check Result] DFU**		
	Displays the minimum result 2 values of the ID sensor check. Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment		
001	Minimum 2: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01V/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

002	Minimum 2: M	*ENG	
003	Minimum 2: C	*ENG	
004	Minimum 2: Y	*ENG	
005	Minimum 2: Front	*ENG	
006	Minimum 2: Center	*ENG	
007	Minimum 2: Rear	*ENG	

2150	**[Area Mag. Correction]** LD Pulse Area Correction (Color, Area) **FA** Adjusts the magnification for each area. The main scan (297 mm) is divided into 8 areas. Area 1 is at the front side of the machine (left side of the image) and area 8 is at the rear side of the machine (right side of the image). Decreasing a value makes the image shift to the left side on the print. Increasing a value makes the image shift to the right side on the print. 1 pulse = 1/16 dot		
027	Area0: Bk	*ENG	[-256 to 255 / **0** / 1sub-dot/step]
028	Area1: Bk	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 0. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
029	Area2: Bk	*ENG	
030	Area3: Bk	*ENG	
031	Area4: Bk	*ENG	
032	Area5: Bk	*ENG	
033	Area6: Bk	*ENG	
034	Area7: Bk	*ENG	
035	Area8: Bk	*ENG	
036	Area9: Bk	*ENG	Not used
037	Area10: Bk	*ENG	

038	Area11: Bk	*ENG	
039	Area12: Bk	*ENG	
040	Area0: Bk	*ENG	Not used
041	Area1: Bk	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 1. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
042	Area2: Bk	*ENG	
043	Area3: Bk	*ENG	
044	Area4: Bk	*ENG	
045	Area5: Bk	*ENG	
046	Area6: Bk	*ENG	
047	Area7: Bk	*ENG	
048	Area8: Bk	*ENG	
049	Area9: Bk	*ENG	Not used
050	Area10: Bk	*ENG	
051	Area11: Bk	*ENG	
052	Area12: Bk	*ENG	
079	Area0: M	*ENG	Not used
080	Area1: M	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 0. [–255to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
081	Area2: M	*ENG	[–256to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
082	Area3: M	*ENG	
083	Area4: M	*ENG	
084	Area5: M	*ENG	
085	Area6: M	*ENG	
086	Area7: M	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

087	Area8: M	*ENG	
088	Area9: M	*ENG	Not used
089	Area10: M	*ENG	
090	Area11: M	*ENG	
091	Area12: M	*ENG	
092	Area0: Bk	*ENG	Not used
093	Area1: Bk	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 1. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
094	Area2: Bk	*ENG	
095	Area3: Bk	*ENG	
096	Area4: Bk	*ENG	
097	Area5: Bk	*ENG	
098	Area6: Bk	*ENG	
099	Area7: Bk	*ENG	
100	Area8: Bk	*ENG	
101	Area9: Bk	*ENG	Not used
102	Area10: Bk	*ENG	
103	Area11: Bk	*ENG	
104	Area12: Bk	*ENG	
131	Area0: C	*ENG	Not used
132	Area1: C	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 0. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
133	Area2: C	*ENG	
134	Area3: C	*ENG	
135	Area4: C	*ENG	

136	Area5: C	*ENG	
137	Area6: C	*ENG	
138	Area7: C	*ENG	
139	Area8: C	*ENG	
140	Area9: C	*ENG	Not used
141	Area10: C	*ENG	
142	Area11: C	*ENG	
143	Area12: C	*ENG	
144	Area0: C	*ENG	Not used
145	Area1: C	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 1. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
146	Area2: C	*ENG	
147	Area3: C	*ENG	
148	Area4: C	*ENG	
149	Area5: C	*ENG	
150	Area6: C	*ENG	
151	Area7: C	*ENG	
152	Area8: C	*ENG	
153	Area9: C	*ENG	Not used
154	Area10: C	*ENG	
155	Area11: C	*ENG	
156	Area12: C	*ENG	
183	Area0: Y	*ENG	Not used
184	Area1: Y	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 0.

http://www.manuals4you.com

185	Area2: Y	*ENG	[–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
186	Area3: Y	*ENG	
187	Area4: Y	*ENG	
188	Area5: Y	*ENG	
189	Area6: Y	*ENG	
190	Area7: Y	*ENG	
191	Area8: Y	*ENG	
192	Area9: Y	*ENG	Not used
193	Area10: Y	*ENG	
194	Area11: Y	*ENG	
195	Area12: Y	*ENG	
196	Area0: Y	*ENG	Not used
197	Area1: Y	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 1. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
198	Area2: Y	*ENG	
199	Area3: Y	*ENG	
200	Area4: Y	*ENG	
201	Area5: Y	*ENG	
202	Area6: Y	*ENG	
203	Area7: Y	*ENG	
204	Area8: Y	*ENG	
205	Area9: Y	*ENG	Not used
206	Area10: Y	*ENG	
207	Area11: Y	*ENG	

208	Area12: Y	*ENG	

2152	**[Area Shad. Correct. Setting] FA** Adjusts the area correction value for each LD power. The main scan is divided into 16 areas. However, the image areas are limited from area 1 to area 14. For BK and Magenta, area 1 is at the rear side of the machine (left side of the image) and area 14 is at the front side of the machine (right side of the image). For Cyan and Yellow, area 1 is at the front side of the machine (right side of the image) and area 14 is at the rear side of the machine (left side of the image).		
001	Area 0: Bk	*ENG	This is for the synchronizing detection board. [50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
002	Area 1: Bk	*ENG	
003	Area 2: Bk	*ENG	
004	Area 3: Bk	*ENG	
005	Area 4: Bk	*ENG	
006	Area 5: Bk	*ENG	
007	Area 6: Bk	*ENG	
008	Area 7: Bk	*ENG	
009	Area 8: Bk	*ENG	
010	Area 9: Bk	*ENG	
011	Area 10: Bk	*ENG	
012	Area 11: Bk	*ENG	
013	Area 12: Bk	*ENG	
014	Area 13: Bk	*ENG	
015	Area 14: Bk	*ENG	
016	Area 15: Bk	*ENG	This is out of the image area.

http://www.manuals4you.com

			[50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
033	Area 0: M	*ENG	This is for the synchronizing detection board.
034	Area 1: M	*ENG	[50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
035	Area 2: M	*ENG	
036	Area 3: M	*ENG	
037	Area 4: M	*ENG	
038	Area 5: M	*ENG	
039	Area 6: M	*ENG	
040	Area 7: M	*ENG	
041	Area 8: M	*ENG	
042	Area 9: M	*ENG	
043	Area 10: M	*ENG	
044	Area 11: M	*ENG	
045	Area 12: M	*ENG	
046	Area 13: M	*ENG	
047	Area 14: M	*ENG	
048	Area 15: M	*ENG	This is out of the image area. [50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
065	Area 0: C	*ENG	This is for the synchronizing detection board. [50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
066	Area 1: C	*ENG	[50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
067	Area 2: C	*ENG	
068	Area 3: C	*ENG	

069	Area 4: C	*ENG	
070	Area 5: C	*ENG	
071	Area 6: C	*ENG	
072	Area 7: C	*ENG	
073	Area 8: C	*ENG	
074	Area 9: C	*ENG	
075	Area 10: C	*ENG	
076	Area 11: C	*ENG	
077	Area 12: C	*ENG	
078	Area 13: C	*ENG	
079	Area 14: C	*ENG	
080	Area 15: C	*ENG	This is out of the image area. [50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
097	Area 0: Y	*ENG	This is for the synchronizing detection board. [50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
098	Area 1: Y	*ENG	[50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
099	Area 2: Y	*ENG	
100	Area 3: Y	*ENG	
101	Area 4: Y	*ENG	
102	Area 5: Y	*ENG	
103	Area 6: Y	*ENG	
104	Area 7: Y	*ENG	
105	Area 8: Y	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

106	Area 9: Y	*ENG	
107	Area 10: Y	*ENG	
108	Area 11: Y	*ENG	
109	Area 12: Y	*ENG	
110	Area 13: Y	*ENG	
111	Area 14: Y	*ENG	
112	Area 15: Y	*ENG	This is out of the image area.

2160	**[Vertical Line Width] DFU**		
001	600dpi:Bk	*ENG	[10 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step]
002	600dpi:Ma	*ENG	
003	600dpi:Cy	*ENG	
004	600dpi:Ye	*ENG	
005	1200dpi:Bk	*ENG	
006	1200dpi:Ma	*ENG	
007	1200dpi:Cy	*ENG	
008	1200dpi:Ye	*ENG	

2180	**[Line Position Adj. Setting Clear]**		
001	Color Regist.	-	**DFU**
002	Main Scan Length Detection	-	**DFU**
003	MUSIC Result	-	**DFU**
004	Area Magnification Correction	-	**DFU**

2181	[Line Position Adj. Result]		
	Displays the values for each correction. ▪ "Paper Int. Mag: Subdot" indicates the magnification correction value between two sheets of paper. ▪ "Mag.Cor. Subdot" indicates the magnification correction value. ▪ "M. Scan Erro." indicates the shift correction value in the main scan direction. ▪ "S. Scan Erro." Indicates the shift correction value in the sub scan direction. ▪ "M. Cor.: Dot" indicates the dot correction value in the main scan direction. ▪ "M. Cor.: Subdot" indicates the sub dot correction value in the main scan direction. ▪ Bk: Black, M: Magenta, C: Cyan, Y: Yellow		
001	Paper Int. Mag: Subdot: Bk	*ENG	[–32768 to 32767 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
002	Mag.Cor. Subdot: Bk	*ENG	[–32768 to 32767 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
003	Skew: M	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
004	Bent: M	*ENG	
005	M. Scan Erro.: Left: M	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
006	M. Scan Erro.: Center: M	*ENG	
007	M. Scan Erro.: Right: M	*ENG	
008	S. Scan Erro.: Left: M	*ENG	
009	S. Scan Erro.: Center: M	*ENG	
010	S. Scan Erro.: Right: M	*ENG	
011	M. Cor.: Dot: M	*ENG	[–512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
012	M. Cor.: Subdot: M	*ENG	[–15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
013	Paper Int. Mag: Subdot: M	*ENG	[–32768 to 32767 / 0 / 1 pulse/step]
014	Mag.Cor. Subdot: M	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

015	M. Left Mag.: Subdot: M	*ENG	
016	M. Right Mag.: Subdot: M	*ENG	
017	S. Cor.: 600 Line: M	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
018	S. Cor.: 600 Sub: M	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]
019	S. Cor.: 1200 Line: M	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
020	S. Cor.: 1200 Sub: M	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]
021	Skew: C	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
022	Bent: C	*ENG	
023	M. Scan Erro.: Left: C	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
024	M. Scan Erro.: Center: C	*ENG	
025	M. Scan Erro.: Right: C	*ENG	
026	S. Scan Erro.: Left: C	*ENG	
027	S. Scan Erro.: Center: C	*ENG	
028	S. Scan Erro.: Right: C	*ENG	
029	M. Cor.: Dot: C	*ENG	[–512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
030	M. Cor.: Subdot: C	*ENG	[–15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
031	Paper Int. Mag: Subdot: C	*ENG	[–32768 to 32767 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
032	Mag.Cor. Subdot: C	*ENG	
033	M. Left Mag.: Subdot: C	*ENG	
034	M. Right Mag.: Subdot: C	*ENG	
035	S. Cor.: 600 Line: C	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
036	S. Cor.: 600 Sub: C	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]
037	S. Cor.: 1200 Line: C	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]

038	S. Cor.: 1200 Sub: C	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]
039	Skew: Y	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
040	Bent: Y	*ENG	
041	M. Scan Erro.: Left: Y	*ENG	
042	M. Scan Erro.: Center: Y	*ENG	
043	M. Scan Erro.: Right: Y	*ENG	
044	S. Scan Erro.: Left: Y	*ENG	
045	S. Scan Erro.: Center: Y	*ENG	
046	S. Scan Erro.: Right: Y	*ENG	
047	M. Cor.: Dot: Y	*ENG	[–512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
048	M. Cor.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	[–15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
049	Paper Int. Mag: Subdot: Y	*ENG	[–32768 to 32767 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
050	Mag.Cor. Subdot: Y	*ENG	
051	M. Left Mag.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	
052	M. Right Mag.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	
053	S. Cor.: 600 Line: Y	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
054	S. Cor.: 600 Sub: Y	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]
055	S. Cor.: 1200 Line: Y	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
056	S. Cor.: 1200 Sub: Y	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]

2182	**[Line Position Adj. Offset]** (Color) M. Scan: Main scan, S. Scan: Sub-scan High: 205 (C2c)/ 230 (C2d) mm/sec, Medium: 154 mm/sec, Low: 77 mm/sec		
001	M Magnification	*ENG	Adjusts the line position

http://www.manuals4you.com

002	C Magnification	*ENG	manually. [-1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001%/step] When line shifts are not corrected by the automatic line position adjustment, do this SP. Increasing a value reduces the image in the main scan direction. Decreasing a value enlarges the image in the main scan direction.
003	Y Magnification	*ENG	
004	M. Scan: High: Dot: M	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
005	M. Scan: High: Subdot: M	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
006	M. Scan: Medium: Dot: M	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
007	M. Scan: Medium: Subdot: M	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
008	M. Scan: Low: Dot: M	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
009	M. Scan: Low: Subdot: M	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
010	M. Scan: High: Dot: C	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
011	M. Scan: High: Subdot: C	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
012	M. Scan: Medium: Dot: C	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
013	M. Scan: Medium: Subdot: C	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
014	M. Scan: Low: Dot: C	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
015	M. Scan: Low: Subdot: C	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
016	M. Scan: High: Dot: Y	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
017	M. Scan: High: Subdot: Y	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
018	M. Scan: Medium: Dot: Y	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
019	M. Scan: Medium: Subdot: Y	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
020	M. Scan: Low: Dot: Y	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]

021	M. Scan: Low: Subdot: Y	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
022	S. Scan: High: Line: M	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
023	S. Scan: High: Subline: M	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
024	S. Scan: Medium: Line: M	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
025	S. Scan: Medium: Subline: M	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
026	S. Scan: Low: Line: M	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
027	S. Scan: Low: Subline: M	*ENG	Not used
028	S. Scan: High: Line: C	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
029	S. Scan: High: Subline: C	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
030	S. Scan: Medium: Line: C	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
031	S. Scan: Medium: Subline: C	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
032	S. Scan: Low: Line: C	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
033	S. Scan: Low: Subline: C	*ENG	Not used
034	S. Scan: High: Line: Y	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
035	S. Scan: High: Subline: Y	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
036	S. Scan: Medium: Line: Y	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
037	S. Scan: Medium: Subline: Y	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
038	S. Scan: Low: Line: Y	*ENG	[-16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
039	S. Scan: Low: Subline: Y	*ENG	Not used

2183	**[Main Scan Length Detection] DFU**		
001	Execute: High: Bk	-	Executes the adjustment for the main scan length detection manually.
002	Execute: Medium: Bk	-	
003	Execute: Low: Bk	-	

http://www.manuals4you.com

004	Execute: High: M	-	
005	Execute: Medium: M	-	
006	Execute: Low: M	-	
007	Execute: High: C	-	
008	Execute: Medium: C	-	
009	Execute: Low: C	-	
010	Execute: High: Y	-	
011	Execute: Medium: Y	-	
012	Execute: Low: Y	-	

2184	**[Main Scan Length Detection Target] DFU**		
001	Execute: Bk	-	Executes the target value for the main scan length detection.
002	Execute: M	-	
003	Execute: C	-	
004	Execute: Y	-	

2185	**[Main Scan Length Detection Disp.]**		
	Displays/adjusts the target value for the main scan magnification correction of the line position adjustment. After replacing the laser optics housing unit, input the standard value for Bk provided with the new unit. For details, see "Laser Optics Housing Unit" in the "Replacement Adjustment" section. It is not necessary to input the values for the other colors; these are automatically adjusted after doing the line position adjustment.		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 266667 / **249449** / 1 sub-dot/step]
002	M	*ENG	

003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

2186	**[Main Scan Length Detection] DFU**		
001	Selection	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Enables or disables the main scan length detection for the laser.		
002	Paper Interval	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **1** / 1 sec/step]
	Adjusts the interval of the main scan length detection for the laser.		

2190	**[Line Position Adj.]**		
001	Paper Int. Mag.: Subdot: Bk	*ENG	**DFU** [0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step]
002	Paper Int. Mag.: Subdot: M	*ENG	
003	Paper Int. Mag.: Subdot: C	*ENG	
004	Paper Int. Mag.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	
005	M. Scan Mag.: Subdot: M	*ENG	**DFU** [0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] 0: Disable correction, 1: Enable correction
006	M. Scan Mag.: Subdot: C	*ENG	
007	M. Scan Mag.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	
008	Area Mag.: Subdot: M	*ENG	**DFU** [0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step]
009	Area Mag.: Subdot: C	*ENG	
010	Area Mag.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	
011	S. Scan Cor. Setting	*ENG	**DFU** [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Adjusted with Bk 1: Adjusted in minimum shift among four colors

http://www.manuals4you.com

012	1 Line Shift Control	*ENG	**DFU** [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step]

2191	**[MUSIC Coefficient Setting]** Line Position Adjustment: Coefficient Setting **DFU** ch 0: ID sensor at rear, ch 1: ID sensor at center, ch 2: ID sensor at front		
001	ch 0: Filter: Front: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **125869** / 1 bit/step]
002	ch 0: Filter: Front: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–60488** / 1 bit/step]
003	ch 0: Filter: Front: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
004	ch 0: Filter: Front: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **77** / 1 bit/step]
005	ch 0: Filter: Front: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
006	ch 0: Filter: Rear: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **128596** / 1 bit/step]
007	ch 0: Filter: Rear: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–63398** / 1 bit/step]
008	ch 0: Filter: Rear: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
009	ch 0: Filter: Rear: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **168** / 1 bit/step]
010	ch 0: Filter: Rear: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
011	ch 1: Filter: Front: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **125869** / 1 bit/step]
012	ch 1: Filter: Front: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–60488** / 1 bit/step]
013	ch 1: Filter: Front: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
014	ch 1: Filter: Front: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **77** / 1 bit/step]
015	ch 1: Filter: Front: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
016	ch 1: Filter: Rear: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **128596** / 1 bit/step]
017	ch 1: Filter: Rear: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–63398** / 1 bit/step]
018	ch 1: Filter: Rear: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
019	ch 1: Filter: Rear: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **168** / 1 bit/step]

020	ch 1: Filter: Rear: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
021	ch 2: Filter: Front: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **125869** / 1 bit/step]
022	ch 2: Filter: Front: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–60488** / 1 bit/step]
023	ch 2: Filter: Front: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
024	ch 2: Filter: Front: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **77** / 1 bit/step]
025	ch 2: Filter: Front: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
026	ch 2: Filter: Rear: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **128596** / 1 bit/step]
027	ch 2: Filter: Rear: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–63398** / 1 bit/step]
028	ch 2: Filter: Rear: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
029	ch 2: Filter: Rear: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **168** / 1 bit/step]
030	ch 2: Filter: Rear: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
031	Q Format Selection	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **3** / 1/step]

2192	**[MUSIC Threshold Setting]** Line Position Adjustment: Threshold Setting **DFU** ch 0: ID sensor at rear, ch 1: ID sensor at center, ch 2: ID sensor at front		
001	ch 0: 1st	*ENG	[0.5 to 3 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
002	ch 0: 2nd	*ENG	
003	ch 0: 3rd	*ENG	
004	ch 0: 4th	*ENG	
005	ch 1: 1st	*ENG	
006	ch 1: 2nd	*ENG	
007	ch 1: 3rd	*ENG	
008	ch 1: 4th	*ENG	
009	ch 2: 1st	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

010	ch 2: 2nd	*ENG	
011	ch 2: 3rd	*ENG	
012	ch 2: 4th	*ENG	

2193	**[MUSIC Condition Set]** Line Position Adjustment: Condition Setting		
001	Auto Execution	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1] 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Enables/disables the automatic line position adjustment		
002	Page: Job End: BW+FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **500** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for BW and color printing mode after job end.		
003	Page: Job End: FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **200** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for color printing mode after job end.		
004	Page: Interrupt: BW+FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **200** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for BW and color printing mode during job.		
005	Page: Interrupt: FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **200** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for color printing mode during jobs.		
006	Page: Stand-By: BW	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **100** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for BW printing mode in stand-by mode. The line position adjustment is done when the number of outputs in BW printing mode reaches the value specified with this SP and the condition of SP2-193-008 or SP2-193-009 is satisfied.		
007	Page: Stand-By: FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **100** / 1 page/step]

	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for FC printing mode in stand-by mode. The line position adjustment is done when the number of outputs in color printing mode reaches the value specified with this SP and the condition of SP2-193-008 or SP2-193-009 is satisfied.		
008	Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 1deg/step]
	Adjust the temperature change threshold for the line position adjustment (Mode b: adjustment once). The timing for line position adjustment depends on the combinations of several conditions.		
009	Time	*ENG	[1 to 1440 / **300** / 1 minute/step]
	Adjust the time threshold for the line position adjustment (Mode b: adjustment once). The timing for line position adjustment depends on the combinations of several conditions.		
010	Magnification	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **1** / 0.01%/step]
	Adjusts the magnification threshold for line position adjustment. If the length of the main scan is changed by this amount since the previous MUSIC, then MSUIC is done again.		
011	Temp. 2	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **10** / 1deg/step]
	Adjust the temperature change threshold for the line position adjustment (Mode a: adjustment twice). The timing for line position adjustment depends on the combinations of several conditions.		
012	Time 2	*ENG	[1 to 9999 / **600** / 1 minute/step]
	Adjust the time threshold for the line position adjustment (Mode a: adjustment twice). The timing for line position adjustment depends on the combinations of several conditions.		
013	Page: Power ON:BW+FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **200** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for BW and FC printing mode at power-on. The line position adjustment is done when the number of outputs in BW and color printing mode reaches the value specified with this SP		

http://www.manuals4you.com

	and the condition of SP2-193-008 or SP2-193-009 is satisfied.

2194	**[MUSIC Execution Result]** Line Position Adjustment: Execution Result		
001	Year	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **0** / 1 year/step]
002	Month	*ENG	[1 to 12 / **1** / 1 month/step]
003	Day	*ENG	[1 to 31 / **1** / 1 day/step]
004	Hour	*ENG	[0 to 23 / **0** / 1 hour/step]
005	Minute	*ENG	[0 to 59 / **0** / 1 minute/step]
006	Temperature	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
007	Execution Result	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Completed successfully, 1: Failed
008	Number of Execution	*ENG	[0 to 999999 / **0** / 1 times/step]
009	Number of Failure	*ENG	[0 to 999999 / **0** / 1 times/step]
010	Error Result: M	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Not done 1: Completed successfully 2: Cannot detect patterns 3: Fewer lines on the pattern than the target 4: Not used 5: Out of the adjustment range 6 to 9: Not used
011	Error Result: C	*ENG	
012	Error Result: Y	*ENG	

2197	**[MUSIC Start Time]**		
	DFU		
001	MUSIC Start Time (EDT)	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **20** / 10ms/step]
002	TM Sensor Position	*ENG	[50 to 500 / **105.5** / 0.1mm/step]

2198	**[Music A/D Interval]**		
	ADC Trigger Counter		
001	ADC Trigger Counter	*ENG	[7.5 to 20 / **10** / 0.1 μs/step]

2199	**[Music Error Time Setting]**		
	DFU		
001	Error Detection Counter	*ENG	[0.5 to 3 / **2.5** / 0.1 sec /step]

2221	**[LD Power] LD Power Control**		
	Adjusts the fixed LD power for each line speed and color. These SPs are activated only when SP3-041-002 is set to "0". Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **100** / 1%/step] Increasing this value makes the image density darker.
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2&FINE: Bk	*ENG	
010	Thick 2&FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2&FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2&FINE: Y	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

2229	**[Development DC Vias]** Development DC Bias Adjustment		
	Adjusts the development bias. Development bias is automatically adjusted during process control; therefore, adjusting these settings has no effect while Process Control (SP3-041-001 Default: ON) is activated. After deactivating Process Control with SP3-041-001, the values in these SP modes are used for printing. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 800 / **550** / 10 –V/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2: Bk	*ENG	
010	Thick 2: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2: Y	*ENG	
013	Fine: Bk	*ENG	
014	Fine: M	*ENG	
015	Fine: C	*ENG	
016	Fine: Y	*ENG	

2241	**[Temperature/Humidity: Display]**		
	Displays the environment temperature and humidity.		
001	Temperature	-	[–1280 to 1270 / - / 0.1deg/step]
002	Relative Humidity	-	[0 to 1000 / - / 0.1 %RH/step]
003	Absolute Humidity	-	[0 to 100 / - / 0.01 g/m^3/step]

2302	**[Environmental Correction: Transfer]** Environmental Correction: Image Transfer Belt Unit		
002	Forced Setting	*ENG	Sets the environment condition manually. [0 to 6 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Automatic environment control 1: LL (Low temperature/ Low humidity) 2: ML (Middle temperature/ Low humidity) 3: MM (Middle temperature/ Middle humidity) 4: MH (Middle temperature/ High humidity) 5: HH (High temperature/ High humidity)
003	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 1	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold value between LL and ML. [0 to 100 / **4** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
004	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 2	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold value between ML and MM. [0 to 100 / **8** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
005	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 3	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold value between MM and MH. [0 to 100 / **16** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
006	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 4	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold value between MH and HH. [0 to 100 / **24** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
007	Temp Threshold	*ENG	[–5 to 30 / **5** / 1 deg/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

2308	**[Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the threshold value for the paper size correction.		
001	Threshold 1	*ENG	[0 to 350 / **297** / 1 mm/step] Threshold 1 ≤ paper: Paper is detected as "S1" size.
002	Threshold 2	*ENG	[0 to 350 / **257** / 1 mm/step] Threshold 2 ≤ paper ≤ Threshold 1: Paper is detected as "S2" size.
003	Threshold 3	*ENG	[0 to 350 / **210** / 1 mm/step] Threshold 3 ≤ paper ≤ Threshold 2: Paper is detected as "S3" size.
004	Threshold 4	*ENG	[0 to 350 / **148** / 1 mm/step] Threshold 4 ≤ paper ≤ Threshold 3: Paper is detected as "S4" size. Paper ≤ Threshold 4: Paper is detected as "S5" size.

2311	**[Non Image Area: Bias]**		
001	Image Transfer	*ENG	Adjusts the bias of the image transfer belt between images. This value is added to the value of the image transfer belt bias. [10 to 250 / **100** / 5 %/step]
002	Paper Transfer	*ENG	Adjusts the bias of the paper transfer roller between images. [0 to 130 / **5** / 1 –μA/step]

2326	**[Transfer Roller CL: Bias]** Transfer Roller Cleaning: Bias Adjustment		
001	Positive	*ENG	[0 to 2100 / **500** / 100 V /step]
	Adjusts the positive voltage of the paper transfer roller for cleaning the paper		

	transfer roller.		
002	Negative	*ENG	[10 to 400 / **300** / 10 %/step]
	Adjusts the negative current of the paper transfer roller for cleaning the paper transfer roller.		
003	Positive	*ENG	[0 to 2100 / **2000** / 100 V/step]
	Adjusts the negative current limit of the paper transfer roller for cleaning the paper transfer roller.		
004	Negative	*ENG	[10 to 400 / **100** / 10 %/step]

2351	**[Common: BW: Bias]** Image Transfer Belt: B/W: Bias Adjustment Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	ITB unit: Plain	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 33, C2d: 37** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt in B/W mode for plain paper.		
002	1TB unit: Thick 1	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **25** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt in B/W mode for thick 1 paper.		
003	Image Transfer: Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **12** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt in B/W mode for thick 2 paper or FINE mode.		

2357	**[Common: FC: Bias]** Image Transfer Belt: Full Color: Bias Adjustment Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	1TB unit: Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 30, C2d: 33** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Black in full color mode for plain paper.		

http://www.manuals4you.com

002	1TB unit: Plain: M	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 30, C2d: 33** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Magenta in full color mode for plain paper.		
003	1TB unit: Plain: C	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 33, C2d: 37** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Cyan in full color mode for plain paper.		
004	1TB unit: Plain: Y	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 38, C2d: 42** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Yellow in full color mode for plain paper.		
005	1TB unit: Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **22** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Black in full color mode for thick 1 paper.		
006	1TB unit: Thick 1: M	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **22** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Magenta in full color mode for thick 1 paper.		
007	1TB unit: Thick 1: C	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **25** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Cyan in full color mode for thick 1 paper.		
008	1TB unit: Thick 1: Y	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **28** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Yellow in full color mode for thick 1 paper.		
009	1TB unit: Thick 2 & FINE: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **11** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Black in full color mode for Thick 2 and fine.		
010	1TB unit: Thick 2 & FINE: M	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **11** / 1 μA]

	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Magenta in full color mode for Thick 2 and fine.		
011	1TB unit: Thick 2 & FINE: C	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **12** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Cyan in full color mode for Thick 2 and fine.		
012	1TB unit: Thick 2 & FINE: Y	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **14** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Yellow in full color mode for Thick 2 and fine.		

2360	**[Common: BW Environment Correction]**		
001	ITB unit: Plain	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]
002	ITB unit: Thick 1	*ENG	
003	ITB unit: Thick 2	*ENG	
004	ITB uni: Plain: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **13**/ 1 /step]
005	ITB unit: Plain: M	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **2** / 1 /step]
006	ITB unit: Plain: C	*ENG	
007	ITB unit: Plain: Y	*ENG	
008	ITB unit: Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **31** / 1 /step]
009	ITB unit: Thick 1: M	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **2** / 1 /step]
010	ITB unit: Thick 1: C	*ENG	
011	ITB unit: Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
012	ITB unit: Thick 2: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **31** / 1 /step]
013	ITB unit: Thick 2: M	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **2** / 1 /step]
014	ITB unit: Thick 2: C	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]
015	ITB unit: Thick 2: Y	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

002	ITB unit: Thick 1	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **25** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt in B/W mode for thick 1 paper.		
003	Image Transfer: Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **12** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt in B/W mode for thick 2 paper or fine mode.		

2401	**[Plain: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for plain paper. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **3000** / 10 –V/step]
003	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]
004	Separation DC: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **3000** / 10 –V/step]

2403	**[Plain: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for plain paper in black-and-white mode. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 30, C2d: 34** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **7** / 1 –μA /step]

	Side		
004	Paper Transfer: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]

2407	**[Plain: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for plain paper in full color mode. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 36, C2d: 40** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 45, C2d: 50** / 1 –μA /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **10** / 1 –μA /step]
004	Paper Transfer: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]

2411	**[Plain: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2403 and SP2407 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain : 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	
004	Paper Transfer: 2nd side:	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

	1200: S1		
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **105** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
007	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
008	Paper Transfer: 2nd side: 1200: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **150** / 5%/step]
009	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **110** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
011	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	
012	Paper Transfer: 2nd side: 1200: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **300** / 5%/step]
013	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **115** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
014	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
015	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **240** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)

016	Paper Transfer: 2nd side: 1200: S44	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **340** / 5%/step]
017	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
018	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
019	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **300** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
020	Paper Transfer: 2nd side: 1200: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **400** / 5%/step]

2421	**[Plain: Leading Edge Correction]** Plain Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2403 and SP2407 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2422.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	
2421	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2401 is multiplied by these SPs values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2422.		

http://www.manuals4you.com

005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	
008	Separation DC: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	

2422	**[Plain: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
004	Paper Transfer: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	
008	Separation DC: 1200:	*ENG	

	2nd side		

2423	**[Plain: Trailing Edge Correction]** Plain Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction coefficient to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2403 and SP2407 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2424.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
004	Paper Transfer: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	
008	Separation DC: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	

2424	**[Plain: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image

http://www.manuals4you.com

	area. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
004	Paper Transfer: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	
008	Separation DC: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	

2430	**[Plain: Environment Correction]**		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
002	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Page	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **32** / 1 /step]
003	Paper Transfer: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]
004	Paper Transfer: BW: 2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
005	Paper Transfer: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **39** / 1 /step]
006	Paper Transfer: FC: 2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **14** / 1 /step]
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
008	Separation DC: 1200: 2nd side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **32** / 1 /step]
009	Paper Transfer: 1200: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
010	Paper Transfer: 1200: BW: 2	*ENG	
011	Paper Transfer: 1200: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **49** / 1 /step]
012	Paper Transfer: 1200: FC: 2	*ENG	

2451	**[Thin: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for thin paper. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]
003	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	

2453	**[Thin: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thin paper in black-and-white mode. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 30, C2d: 34** / 1 –μA /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **11** / 1 –μA /step]

2457	**[Thin: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thin paper in full color mode. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 40, C2d: 45** / 1 –μA /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

2461	**[Thin: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2453 and SP2457 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)

http://www.manuals4you.com

005	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
009	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
013	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Pape r width)
017	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step]

2471	**[Thin: Leading Edge Correction]** Thin Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2453 and SP2457 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2472.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
2471	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2451 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2472.		
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

2472	**[Thin: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge		

	plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2473	**[Thin: Trailing Edge Correction]** Thin Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction coefficient to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2453 and SP2457 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2474.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

2474	**[Thin: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	

2480	**[Thin: Environment Correction]**		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
009	Paper Transfer: 1200: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
011	Paper Transfer: 1200: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]

2481	**[Glossy: Bias]**		
001	Separation DC: Glossy: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]

2482	**[Glossy: Bias: BW]**		
001	Paper Transfer: Glossy: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]

2483	**[Glossy: Bias: FC]**		
001	Paper Transfer: Glossy: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

2484	[Glossy: Paper Size Correction]		
001	Paper Transfer: Glossy: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step]
005	Paper Transfer: Glossy: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step]
009	Paper Transfer: Glossy: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step]
013	Paper Transfer: Glossy: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step]
017	Paper Transfer: Glossy: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step]

2485	[Grossy: Leading Edge Correction]		
001	Paper Transfer: Grossy: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
005	Separation DC: Grossy: 1st Page	*ENG	[10 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]]

2486	[Grossy: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]		
001	Paper Transfer: Grossy: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
005	Separation DC: Grossy: 1st Page	*ENG	

2487	[Grossy: Trailing Edge Correction]		
001	Paper Transfer: Grossy: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5 %/step]
005	Separation DC: Grossy: 1st	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

	Page		

2488	**[Grossy: Trailing Edge Correction]**		
001	Paper Transfer: Grossy: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
005	Separation DC: Grossy: 1st Page	*ENG	

2489	**[Glossy: Environment Correction]**		
001	Separation DC: Glossy: 1st Page	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
003	Paper Transfer: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
005	Paper Transfer: BW: 2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]

2501	**[Thick 1: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for thick 1 paper. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2502	**[Thick 1: Bias: BW]**
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick 1 paper in black-and-white mode. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec

001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **24** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]

2507	**[Thick 1: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick 1 paper in full color mode. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **30** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / –μA /step]

2511	**[Thick 1: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2502 and SP2507 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
005	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **105** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm

http://www.manuals4you.com

			(Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **130** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
007	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
009	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **110** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
011	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
013	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **115** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
014	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **190** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
015	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
017	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
018	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **220** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
019	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step]

	Side: S5		148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2521	**[Thick 1: Leading Edge Correction]** Thick 1 Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2502 and SP2507 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2522.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

2522	**[Thick 1: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	

2523	**[Thick 1: Trailing Edge Correction]** Thick 1 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction coefficient to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2502 and SP2507 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2524.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
007	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	

2524	**[Thick 1: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / Paper Transfer: Plain: FC: 1st Side2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	

2530	**[Thick 1: Environment Correction]**		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **22** / 1 /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
004	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW:2nd Side	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC:2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
007	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **22** / 1 /step]
009	Paper Transfer: 1200: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
011	Paper Transfer: 1200: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]

2551	**[Thick 2: Bias]**
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for thick 2 paper.

http://www.manuals4you.com

001	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2553	**[Thick 2: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick 2 paper in black-and-white mode.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **7** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]

2558	**[Thick 2: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick 2 paper in full color mode.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **16** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

2561	**[Thick 2: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2553 and SP2558 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **105** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
004	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
005	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **110** / 5%/step]

			275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **260** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
007	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
008	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **430** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
009	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **600** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2571	**[Thick 2: Leading Edge Correction]** Thick 2 Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2553 and SP2558 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2572.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2571	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2551 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2572.		
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

2572	**[Thick 2: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2573	**[Thick 2: Trailing Edge Correction]** Thick 2 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2553 and SP2558 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2574.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

2574	**[Thick 2: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	

004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2580	**[Thick 2 Environment Correction]**		
001	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **22** / 1 /step]
002	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
004	Paper Transfer: BW: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **53** / 1 /step]
006	Paper Transfer: FC: 2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]

2601	**[OHP: Bias]**		
001	Separation DC	*ENG	[0 to 40000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]

2601	**[OHP: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for OHP.		
001	Separation DC	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]

2603	**[OHP: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for OHP in black-and-white mode.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]

2608	**[OHP: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for OHP in full color mode.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

2611	**[OHP: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2603 and SP2608 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
003	Paper Transfer: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **200** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
004	Paper Transfer: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **260** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
005	Paper Transfer: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **330** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2621	**[OHP: Leading Edge Correction]** OHP: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2603 and SP2608 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2622.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
2621	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2601 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2622.		
002	Separation DC	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

2622	**[OHP: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge

	plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Separation DC	*ENG	

2623	**[OHP: Trailing Edge Correction]** OHP: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2603 and SP2608 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2624.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Separation DC	*ENG	

2624	**[OHP: Trailing Edge Correction]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[–100 to 0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Separation DC	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]

2630	**[OHP: Environment Correction]**		
001	Separation DC	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **22** / 1 /step]
002	Paper Transfer: BW	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
003	Paper Transfer: FC	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]

2650	**[Thick 3: Bias]**
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for thick paper 3.

http://www.manuals4you.com

001	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2651	**[Thick 3: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick paper 3 in black-and-white mode.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **10** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]

2652	**[Thick 3: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick paper 3 in full color mode.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **11** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

2653	**[Thick 3: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
003	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)

004	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
005	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **260** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
007	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
008	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **430** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
009	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **600** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2654	**[Thick 3: Leading Edge Correction]** Thick 3 Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2655.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	
2654	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge		

http://www.manuals4you.com

	in each mode. SP2650 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2655.		
003	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2655	**[Thick 3: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2656	**[Thick 3: Trailing Edge Correction]** Thick 3 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2657.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	
004	Separation DC: 2st Page	*ENG	

2657	**[Thick 3: Trailing Edge Correction]**
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge

	plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2660	**[Thick 3: Environment Correction]** Thick 3 Paper: MM Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **22** / 1 /step]
002	-	*ENG	
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2650 is multiplied by these SP values.		
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
004	Separation DC: Thick 3: 2nd Side:	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **55** / 1 /step]

2661	**[Thick 3: MH]** Thick 3 Paper: MH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
2661	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2650 is multiplied by these SP values.		

http://www.manuals4you.com

003	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: Thick 3: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **180** / 5%/step]

2662	**[Thick 3: HH]** Thick 3 Paper: HH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
2662	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2650 is multiplied by these SP values.		
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: Thick 3: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]

2751	**[Special 1: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for special paper 1. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **3000** / 10 –V/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]

2753	**[Special 1: Bias: BW]**
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 1 in black-and-white mode. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec

001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 30, C2d: 34** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **11** / 1 –μA /step]

2757	**[Special 1: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 1 in full color mode. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 40, C2d: 45** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 45, C2d: 50** / 1 –μA /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

2761	**[Special 1: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2753 and SP2757 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	
009	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	
013	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

			210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
014	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
017	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
018	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2771	**[Special 1: Leading Edge Correction]** Special 1 Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2753 and SP2757 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2772.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
2771	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2751 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2772.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

008	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2772	**[Special 1: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2773	**[Special 1: Trailing Edge Correction]** Special 1 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2753 and SP2757 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2774.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

2774	**[Special 1: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2780	**[Special 1: Environment Correction]**		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
002	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **32** / 1 /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
004	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW:2nd Side	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC:2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **14** / 1 /step]
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
009	Paper Transfer: 1200: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
011	Paper Transfer: 1200: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]

2801	**[Special 2: Bias]**

	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for special paper 2. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **3000** / 10 –V/step]
003	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]

2803	**[Special 2: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 2 in black-and-white mode. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 30/ C2d: 34** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **11** / 1 –μA /step]

2807	**[Special 2: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 2 in full color mode. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 40/ C2d: 45** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 45/ C2d: 50** / 1 –μA /step]
003	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

2811	**[Special 2: Paper Size Correction]**

http://www.manuals4you.com

	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2803 and SP2807 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
009	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
013	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
014	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **220** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
015	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
016	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	
017	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

018	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2821	**[Special 2: Leading Edge Correction]** Special 2 Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2803 and SP2807 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2822.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
2821	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2801 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2822.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Side	*ENG	
008	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2822	**[Special 2: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2823	**[Special 2: Trailing Edge Correction]** Special 2 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2803 and SP2807 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2824.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2824	**[Special 2: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	

003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2830	**[Special 2: Environment Correction]**		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **32** / 1 /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]
004	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW:2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC:2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **14** / 1 /step]
007	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
009	Paper Transfer: 1200: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
011	Paper Transfer: 1200: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]

2851	**[Special 3: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for special paper 3. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **3000** / 10 –V/step]
003	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 4000 / **2000** / 10 –V/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

2852	**[Special 3: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 3 in black-and-white mode. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 30/ C2d: 45** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **11** / 1 –μA /step]

2857	**[Special 3: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 3 in full color mode. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 40/ C2d: 45** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **C2c: 45/ C2d: 50** / 1 –μA /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

2861	**[Special 3: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2852 and SP2857 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side:	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step]

	S2		297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
009	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
013	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
014	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
017	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
018	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2871	**[Special 3: Leading Edge Correction]** Special 3 Paper: Leading Edge Correction
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2852 and SP2857 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2872.

http://www.manuals4you.com

001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
005-008	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2851 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2872.		
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	

2872	**[Special 3: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Page	*ENG	
008	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	

2873	**[Special 3: Trailing Edge Correction]** Special 3 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction

	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2852 and SP2857 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2874.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	

2874	**[Special 3: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	

2880	**[Special 3: Environment Correction]**		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

002	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **32** / 1 /step]
003	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
004	Paper Transfer: Plain: BW:2nd Side	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: FC:2nd Side	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **26** / 1 /step]
009	Paper Transfer: 1200: BW: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **11** / 1 /step]
011	Paper Transfer: 1200: FC: 1st Side	*ENG	[1 to 60 / **1** / 1 /step]

2901	**[OPC Drum Brake Time]**		
	Adjusts the time when the OPC drum motor reverses from normal rotation after job end. **DFU** Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Plain	*ENG	[300 to 1500 / **500** / 10 msec/step]
002	Thick 1	*ENG	
003	Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	

2902	**[OPC Drum Reverse Time]**		
	Adjusts the time for how long the OPC drum motor reverses after job end. **DFU**		
001	All: BW	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **30** / 10 msec/step]
002	All: FC	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **30** / 10 msec/step]

2903	**[Image Transfer Roller Brake Time]**
	Adjusts the time when the image transfer belt motor reverses from normal rotation after job end. **DFU**

	Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
003	Plain	*ENG	[300 to 1500 / **500** / 10 msec/step]
004	Thick 1	*ENG	
005	Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	

2904	**[OPC Drum Reverse Time]**		
	Adjusts the time for how long the image transfer belt motor reverses after job end. **DFU**		
003	All	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **30** / 10 msec/step]

2906	**[Phase Angle]**		
	DFU		
001	Y Drum	*ENG	[0 to 359 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
002	C Drum	*ENG	
003	M Drum	*ENG	
004	K Drum	*ENG	
005	Stop Position	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **0** / 6 deg/step]
2906	**[Amplitude Setting]**		
	DFU		
006	Y Drum	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **0.0** / 0.1 μm/step]
007	C Drum		
008	M Drum		
009	K Drum		

http://www.manuals4you.com

2907	**[ACS Setting (FC to Bk)]**		
	Adjusts the threshold for moving away the image transfer belt from the color PCUs. This SP moves the image transfer belt away from the color PCUs when the number of B/W image printouts reaches the number of sheets specified with this SP after consecutive full color image printouts in the full color mode. If this SP is set to "0", the image transfer belt does not move away.		
001	Continuous Bk Pages	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]

2908	**[Gain Adjust]** Gain Adjustment of Image Transfer Belt Motor		
	DFU		
001	230 mm/sec	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: High speed (Low level) 1: Low speed (High level)
002	205 mm/sec	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] 0: High speed (Low level) 1: Low speed (High level)
003	115 mm/sec	*ENG	
004	77 mm/sec	*ENG	

2911	**[Offset Angle] DFU**		
001	Y Drum	*ENG	[0 to 359 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
002	C Drum	*ENG	
003	M Drum	*ENG	
004	K Drum	*ENG	

2912	**[Offset Amplitude Setting] DFU**		
001	Y Drum	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **0.0** / 0.1 μm/step]
002	C Drum	*ENG	

003	M Drum	*ENG	
004	K Drum	*ENG	

2913	**[Drum Control] DFU**		
001	Rotation Direction	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step]

2914	**[Sutter Motor] Not used**		
001	Delay Time Open	*ENG	**DFU** [1 to 50 / **38** / 1 msec/step]
002	Delay Time Close	*ENG	
003	Sutter Open	*ENG	Opens the shutter on the laser optics housing unit manually for test purposes.
004	Sutter Close	*ENG	Closes the shutter on the laser optics housing unit manually for test purposes.
005	Brake Open	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **100** / 10 msec/step]
006	Brake Close	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **100** / 10 msec/step]
007	Existence	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 msec/step]

2920	**[Transfer Motor Control]**		
001	0: Encorder 1 :FG	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	SC443 Count	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **0** / 1 /step]

2930	**[SecondaryFB: Threshold]** Paper Transfer Roller Feed-back: Threshold Adjustment		
	Adjusts the threshold between high resistance (division 1) and low resistance (division 2) at the paper transfer roller. This SP affects SP2931 to SP2939.		
001	Voltage	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **6000** / 10 –V/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

2960	**[Process Interval]**		
001	Additional Time	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **0** / 1 sec/step]

2970	**[Cleaning After JOB]**		
001	No Refresh	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	Refresh	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step]

2971	**[T1 Non Image Area ON Timing]**		
001	-	*ENG	[–270 to 180 / **C2c: 10/ C2d: 20** / 10 msec/step]

SP3-XXX (Process)

3011	**[Process Cont. Manual Execution]**		
001	Normal	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] Executes the normal process control manually (potential control). Check the result with SP3-325-001 and 3-012-001 after executing this SP.
002	Density Adjustment	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] Executes the toner density adjustment manually.
003	Pre-ACC	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] Executes the process control that is normally done before ACC. The type of process control is selected with SP3-041-004.
004	Full MUSIC	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] Executes the process control that is normally done at the same time as MUSIC. This SP does the MUSIC (line position adjustment) twice.
005	Normal MUSIC	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] Executes the process control that is normally done at the same time as MUSIC. This SP does the MUSIC (line position adjustment) once.

3012	**[Process Cont. Check Result]** Process Control Self-check Result
	Displays the result of the latest process control self-check. All colors are displayed. The results are displayed in the order “Y C M K” e.g., 11 (Y) 99 (C) 11 (M) 11 (K): The self-check for Cyan failed but the others

http://www.manuals4you.com

	were successful. See the "Error Condition Tables" in the "Appendix: Process Control Error Conditions" section for details.		
001	History: Latest	*ENG	[1111 to 99999999 / 99999999 / 1/step]
002	Result: Latest 1	*ENG	
003	Result: Latest 2	*ENG	
004	Result: Latest 3	*ENG	
005	Result: Latest 4	*ENG	
006	Result: Latest 5	*ENG	
007	Result: Latest 6	*ENG	
008	Result: Latest 7	*ENG	
009	Result: Latest 8	*ENG	
010	Result: Latest 9	*ENG	

3013	**[T Sensor Initial Set: Execution]** Developer Initialization Setting		
001	Execution: ALL	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step]
002	Execution: COL	-	
003	Execution: Bk	-	
004	Execution: M	-	
005	Execution: C	-	
006	Execution: Y	-	

3014	**[T Sensor Initial Set Result: Display]** Developer Initialization Result: Display		
001	Display: YCMK	*ENG	[0 to 9999 / 9999 / 1 /step]

			1: Success, 2 to 9: Failure
	Displays the developer initialization result. See section "Developer Initialization Result" in the "Appendix: Process Control Error Conditions" section for details on the meaning of each code. All colors are displayed. Values are displayed in the order Y C M Bk. e.g., 1 (Y) 2 (C) 1 (M) 1 (Bk): Initialization of Cyan failed but the others succeeded.		

3015	**[Forced Toner Supply: Execute]** Forced Toner Supply ([Color])		
001	Execution: ALL	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] Executes the manual toner supply to the development unit.
002	Execution: COL	-	
003	Execution: Bk	-	
004	Execution: M	-	
005	Execution: C	-	
006	Execution: Y	-	

3016	**[Forced Toner Supply: Setting]** Forced Toner Supply Setting ([Color])		
	Specifies the manual toner supply time for each color.		
001	Supply Time: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **4** / 1 sec/step]
002	Supply Time: M	*ENG	
003	Supply Time: C	*ENG	
004	Supply Time: Y	*ENG	

3020	**[Vt Limit Error]**		
	DFU		
001	Delta Vt Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **5** / 0.01 V/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

002	Upper Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4.7** / 0.01 V/step]
003	Threshold Number of Upper counter	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **20** / 1 time/step]
004	Lower Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.5** / 0.01 V/step]
005	Number of Lower counter	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **10** / 1 times/step]
006	Upper Counter: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **0** / 1 times/step]
007	Upper Counter: M	*ENG	
008	Upper Counter: C	*ENG	
009	Upper Counter: Y	*ENG	
010	Lower Counter: Bk	*ENG	
011	Lower Counter: M	*ENG	
012	Lower Counter: C	*ENG	
013	Lower Counter: Y	*ENG	

3021	**[TD Sensor Initial Set]** Developer Initialization Setting		
	Specifies the developer agitation time for each color at the developer initialization. **DFU**		
001	Agitation Time: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **30** / 1 sec/step]
002	Agitation Time: M	*ENG	
003	Agitation Time: C	*ENG	
004	Agitation Time: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Sets the execution flag of the developer initialization for each color. **DFU**		
005	Execution Flag: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Flag OFF, 1: Flag ON
006	Execution Flag: M	*ENG	

007	Execution Flag: C	*ENG	This flag is cleared after executing TD sensor initialization.
008	Execution Flag: Y	*ENG	
009	Prohibition	*ENG	Enables or disables developer initialization. **DFU** [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Enable, 1: Disable

3022	**[Toner Replenishment Mode] DFU**		
	Specifies the toner supply time for each color in the toner supply mode.		
001	Number: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **8** / 1 sec/step]
002	Number: M	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **6** / 1 sec/step]
003	Number: C	*ENG	
004	Number: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Sets the execution flag for the toner supply mode for each color.		
005	Execution Flag: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Flag OFF, 1: Flag ON This flag is cleared after executing TD sensor initialization.
006	Execution Flag: M	*ENG	
007	Execution Flag: C	*ENG	
008	Execution Flag: Y	*ENG	

3041	**[Process Control Type]**		
001	Voltage Control	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] Alphanumeric 0: FIXED (Use the fixed values for the charge DC bias and development DC bias set with SP2-005 and SP2-229.) 1: CONTROL
	Enables or disables potential control.		

http://www.manuals4you.com

002	LD Power Control	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] Alphanumeric 0: FIXED (at the value in SP2221-xxx) 1: CONTROL (adjusted by process control)
	Selects the LD power control mode.		
004	Pre-ACC	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **2** / 1/step] 0: Not Executed 1: Process Control 2: TC Control (TD Adjustment) 3: Not used
	Selects the process control mode that is done before ACC.		

3043	**[TD Adjustment Mode]**		
001	Repeat Number: Power ON	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **4** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment at power on. 0: Disabled, 1 to 3: Repeat number, 4: Repeat three times (No consumption mode) 5: Repeat three times (Toner is supplied only when the toner density is too low, and toner is consumed only when the toner density is too dark.) 6 to 9: Disabled		
002	Repeat Number: Initialization	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **3** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment at the developer initialization. 0: Disabled, 1 to 3: Repeat number, 4: Repeat three times (No consumption mode) 5: Repeat three times (Toner is supplied only when the toner density is too low, and toner is consumed only when the toner density is too dark.) 6 to 9: Disabled		
003	Repeat Number: Non-use	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **0** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment in		

	stand by mode. 0: Disabled, 1 to 3: Repeat number, 4: Repeat three times (No consumption mode) 5: Repeat three times (Toner is supplied only when the toner density is too low, and toner is consumed only when the toner density is too dark.) 6 to 9: Disabled		
004	Repeat Number: ACC	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **3** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment at ACC. 0: Disabled, 1 to 3: Repeat number, 4: Repeat three times (No consumption mode) 5: Repeat three times (Toner is supplied only when the toner density is too low, and toner is consumed only when the toner density is too dark.) 6 to 9: Disabled		
005	Repeat Number: Recovery	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **0** / 1 time/step]
	Not used		
006	Repeat Number: Job End	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **4** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment at job end. 0: Disabled, 1 to 3: Repeat number, 4: Repeat three times (No consumption mode) 5: Repeat three times (Toner is supplied only when the toner density is too low, and toner is consumed only when the toner density is too dark.) 6 to 9: Disabled		
007	Repeat: Interrupt	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **0** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment during printing. **DFU**		
008	Toner Supply Coefficient	*ENG	[0 to 25.5 / **10** / 0.1 sec/step]
	Adjusts the time for the toner supply mode when a toner density is detected to be low.		

http://www.manuals4you.com

009	Consumption pattern: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **5** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the belt mark generating time for checking the black toner density when toner density is detected to be low at the toner density adjustment.		
010	Consumption pattern: M	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **5** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the belt mark generating time for checking the magenta toner density when toner density is detected to be low at the toner density adjustment.		
011	Consumption pattern: C	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **5** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the belt mark generating time for checking the cyan toner density when toner density is detected to be low at the toner density adjustment.		
012	Consumption pattern: Y	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **5** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the belt mark generating time for checking the yellow toner density when toner density is detected to be low at the toner density adjustment.		
013	T1 Bias: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 22, C2d: 30** / 1 µA/step]
	Adjusts the image transfer belt bias for Black.		
014	T1 Bias: M	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 22, C2d: 30**/ 1 µA/step]
	Adjusts the image transfer belt bias for Magenta.		
015	T1 Bias: C	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 25, C2d: 33**/ 1 µA/step]
	Adjusts the image transfer belt bias for Cyan.		
016	T1 Bias: Y	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **C2c: 33, C2d: 45** / 1 µA/step]
	Adjusts the image transfer belt bias for Yellow.		
017	Developer Mixing Time	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **10** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the developer mixing time at the toner density adjustment.		
018	Consumption Pattern: LD: DUTY: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step]
	Adjusts the LD duty for the toner consumption mode at the toner density adjustment.		

	In toner consumption mode, toner is discharged when the detected development gamma values (SP3611-001) exceed the target values (SP3611-005) by more than the specified thresholds (SP3239-009).		
019	Consumption Pattern: LD: DUTY: M	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step]
	Adjusts the LD duty for the toner consumption mode at the toner density adjustment. In toner consumption mode, toner is discharged when the detected development gamma values (SP3611-002) exceed the target values (SP3611-006) by more than the specified thresholds (SP3239-009).		
020	Consumption Pattern: LD: DUTY: C	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step]
	Adjusts the LD duty for the toner consumption mode at the toner density adjustment. In toner consumption mode, toner is discharged when the detected development gamma values (SP3611-003) exceed the target values (SP3611-007) by more than the specified thresholds (SP3239-009).		
021	Consumption Pattern: LD: DUTY: Y	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step]
	Adjusts the LD duty for the toner consumption mode at the toner density adjustment. In toner consumption mode, toner is discharged when the detected development gamma values (SP3611-004) exceed the target values (SP3611-008) by more than the specified thresholds (SP3239-009).		

3044	**[Toner Supply Type]** Toner Supply Type ([Color])		
	Selects the toner supply method type.		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **2** / 1/step] Alphanumeric 0: FIXED (with the supply rates stored with SP 3401) 1: PID (Vtref_Fixed) 2: PID (Vtref_Control) 3: Not used
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

3045	**[Toner End Detection: Set]**		
	Enables/disables the toner alert display on the LCD.		
001	ON/OFF	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Detect, 1: Not Detect

3101	**[Toner End/Near End]**		
	Displays the amount of each color toner. **DFU**		
001	Toner Replenishment: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 600 / **510** / 1 g/step]
002	Toner Replenishment: M	*ENG	[1 to 600 / **400** / 1 g/step]
003	Toner Replenishment: C	*ENG	
004	Toner Replenishment: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Displays the consumed amount of each color toner.		
005	Toner Consumption: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3000 / **0** / 0.001 g/step]
006	Toner Consumption: M	*ENG	
007	Toner Consumption: C	*ENG	
008	Toner Consumption: Y	*ENG	
009-012	Displays the remaining amount of each color toner. These are calculated by the operating times of the toner supply pumps.		
009	Toner Remaining: Bk	*ENG	[–50000 to 600 / **0** / 0.001 g/step]
010	Toner Remaining: M	*ENG	
011	Toner Remaining: C	*ENG	
012	Toner Remaining: Y	*ENG	
013-016	Adjusts the threshold of toner near end for each color. The toner near end message appears on the LCD when the remaining toner amount reaches this threshold. When one of these SPs (SP3-101-009 to 012 or -032 to -035) reaches this threshold, toner near end is detected.		

013	Near End Threshold: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 600 / **50** / 1 g/step]
014	Near End Threshold: M	*ENG	
015	Near End Threshold: C	*ENG	
016	Near End Threshold: Y	*ENG	
017-020	**DFU**		
017	Cartridge Error Threshold: Bk	*ENG	[–50000 to 0 / **–50000** / 1 g/step]
018	Cartridge Error Threshold: M	*ENG	
019	Cartridge Error Threshold: C	*ENG	
020	Cartridge Error Threshold: Y	*ENG	
021	Delta Vt Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.5** / 0.01 V/step]
	This SP is the threshold for toner end. Delta Vt: Vt-Vtref When both this SP and SP3-101-026 occur at same time, toner end is determined.		
022-025	Displays the total delta Vt (Vt-Vtref) value for each color.These are calculated by pixel counting.		
022	Delta Vt Sum: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 655 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
023	Delta Vt Sum: M	*ENG	
024	Delta Vt Sum: C	*ENG	
025	Delta Vt Sum: Y	*ENG	
026	Delta Vt Sum Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 255 / 10 / 1 V/step]
027	Gamma Threshold: Coefficient	*ENG	Not used
028-031	Displays the consumed toner amount calculated with the pixel count for each color.		
028	Pixel: Consumption: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3000 / **0** / 0.001 g/step]
029	Pixel: Consumption: M	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

030	Pixel: Consumption: C	*ENG	
031	Pixel: Consumption: Y	*ENG	
032-035	Displays the remaining toner amount for each color, using pixel count.		
032	Pixel: Remaining : Bk	*ENG	[-50000 to 600 / **0** / 0.001 g/step]
033	Pixel: Remaining : M	*ENG	
034	Pixel: Remaining : C	*ENG	
035	Pixel: Remaining : Y	*ENG	
036-039	Adjusts the threshold of toner end for each color.		
036	End Threshold: Bk	*ENG	Not used
037	End Threshold: M	*ENG	
038	End Threshold: C	*ENG	
039	End Threshold: Y	*ENG	
040-043	Displays the pixel M/A for each color.		
040	Pixel M/A: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.4** / 0.001 mg/cm^2/step]
041	Pixel M/A: M	*ENG	
042	Pixel M/A: C	*ENG	
043	Pixel M/A: Y	*ENG	
044	Delta Vt Threshold Before Near End	*ENG	Adjusts the delta Vt (Vt – Vtref) of toner end before toner near end is detected. [0 to 5 / **0.5** / 0.01 V/step]
045	Delta Vt Sum Threshold Before Near End	*ENG	Adjusts the total delta Vt (Vt – Vtref) of toner end before toner near end is detected. [0 to 255 / **10** / 1 V/step]

046-049	Displays the latest mohno-pump off time.		
046	Mohno Off Time: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 0 x FFFFFFFF / **0** / 1 sec/step]
047	Mohno Off Time: M	*ENG	
048	Mohno Off Time: C	*ENG	
049	Mohno Off Time: Y	*ENG	

3102	**[Toner End Recovery]**		
	Adjusts the number of times toner supply is attempted for each color when the TD sensor continues to detect toner end during toner recovery.		
001	Repeat: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 20 / **5** / 1 time/step]
002	Repeat: M	*ENG	
003	Repeat: C	*ENG	
004	Repeat: Y	*ENG	

3131	**[TE Count m: Display]**		
	Display the number of toner end detections for each color.		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **0** / 1 time/step]
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

3201	**[TD Sensor: Vt Display]**		
	Display the current voltage of the TD sensor for each color.		
001	Current: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0.01** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Current: M	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

003	Current: C	*ENG	
004	Current: Y	*ENG	

3211	**[Vt Shift: Display/Set]**		
	Adjusts the Vt correction value for each line speed. Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Thick 1 Shift: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **C2c: 0.28, C2d: 0.39** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Thick 1 Shift: M	*ENG	
003	Thick 1 Shift: C	*ENG	
004	Thick 1 Shift: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 2 & FINE Shift: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **C2c: 0.74, C2d: 0.85** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Thick 2 & FINE Shift: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 2 & FINE Shift: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 2 & FINE Shift: Y	*ENG	

3221	**[Vtcnt: Display/Set]**		
	Displays or adjusts the current Vtcnt value for each color.		
001	Current: Bk	*ENG	[2 to 5 / **3.86** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Current: M	*ENG	
003	Current: C	*ENG	
004	Current: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Displays or adjusts the Vtcnt value for each color at developer initialization. **DFU**		
005	Initial: Bk	*ENG	[2 to 5 / **3.86** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Initial: M	*ENG	

007	Initial: C	*ENG	
008	Initial: Y	*ENG	

3222	**[Vtref: Display/Set]**		
	Displays or adjusts the current Vtref value for each color.		
001	Current: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **3** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Current: M	*ENG	
003	Current: C	*ENG	
004	Current: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Displays or adjusts the Vtref value for each color at developer initialization. **DFU**		
005	Initial: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **3** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Initial: M	*ENG	
007	Initial: C	*ENG	
008	Initial: Y	*ENG	
009-012	Displays and adjusts Vtref correction by pixel coverage for each color. **DFU**		
009	Pixel Correction: Bk	*ENG	[-5 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
010	Pixel Correction: M	*ENG	
011	Pixel Correction: C	*ENG	
012	Pixel Correction: Y	*ENG	

3223	**[Vtref Upper Lower: Set] DFU**		
	Adjusts the lower or upper limit value of Vtref for each color.		
001	Lower: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2** / 0.01 V/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

002	Lower: M	*ENG	
003	Lower: C	*ENG	
004	Lower: Y	*ENG	
005	Upper: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Upper: M	*ENG	
007	Upper: C	*ENG	
008	Upper: Y	*ENG	
009	Initial TC	*ENG	Adjusts the initial toner concentration. [1 to 15 / **7** / 0.1 wt%/step]
010	Upper: TC	*ENG	Adjusts the upper limit of the toner concentration. [1 to 15 / **9.5** / 0.1 wt%/step]
011	Lower: TC	*ENG	Adjusts the lower limit of the toner concentration. [1 to 15 / **4** / 0.1 wt%/step]
012	Upper Sensitivity	*ENG	Adjusts the upper limit of the TD sensor sensitivity. [0.2 to 0.5 / **0.44** / 0.001 V/wt% /step]
013	Lower Sensitivity	*ENG	Adjusts the lower limit of the TD sensor sensitivity. [0.2 to 0.5 / **0.209** / 0.001 V/wt% /step]
014	Toner Density Between H and M	*ENG	[1 to 10 / **3.5** / 0.1 wt%/step]
015	Toner Density Between M and L	*ENG	[1 to 10 / **3.5** / 0.1 wt%/step]

3224	**[Vtref Correction: Pixel] DFU**

	Adjusts the coefficient of Vtref correction for each coverage and color.		
001	Low Coverage Coefficient: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 /step]
002	Low Coverage Coefficient: M	*ENG	
003	Low Coverage Coefficient: C	*ENG	
004	Low Coverage Coefficient: Y	*ENG	
005	High Coverage Coefficient: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.01 V/step]
006	High Coverage Coefficient: M	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.5** / 0.01 V/step]
007	High Coverage Coefficient: C	*ENG	
008	High Coverage Coefficient: Y	*ENG	
009	Low Coverage: Threshold	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold of the low coverage. [0 to 20 / **3** / 0.1 %/step]
010	High Coverage: Threshold	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold of the high coverage. [0 to 100 / **60** / 1 %/step]
011	TC Upper Limit Correction	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0** / 0.1 wt%/step]
012	Upper Limit TC: Display: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 15 / **10** / 0.1 wt% /step]
013	Upper Limit TC: Display: M	*ENG	
014	Upper Limit TC: Display: C	*ENG	
015	Upper Limit TC: Display: Y	*ENG	
016	Process Control Execution Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **50** / 1 time/step]

3231	**[Toner Supply: Setting]**		
	Adjusts the coefficient of the toner supply time for each color. **DFU**		
001	Replacement Coefficient:Bk	*ENG	[0.5 to 9.99 / **1.66** / 0.01 /step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

002	Replacement Coefficient: M	*ENG	[0.5 to 9.99 / **1.66**/ 0.01 /step]
003	Replacement Coefficient: C	*ENG	[0.5 to 9.99 / **1.6** / 0.01 /step]
004	Replacement Coefficient: Y	*ENG	[0.5 to 9.99 / **1.66** / 0.01 /step]

3232	**[Toner Supply Coefficient: Setting] DFU**		
001	Vt Proportion: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2550 / **50** / 1 /step]
002	Vt Proportion: M	*ENG	
003	Vt Proportion: C	*ENG	
004	Vt Proportion: Y	*ENG	
005	Pixel Proportion: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0.47** / 0.01 /step]
006	Pixel Proportion: M	*ENG	
007	Pixel Proportion: C	*ENG	
008	Pixel Proportion: Y	*ENG	
009	Vt Integral Control: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2550 / **500** / 1 /step]
010	Vt Integral Control: M	*ENG	
011	Vt Integral Control: C	*ENG	
012	Vt Integral Control: Y	*ENG	
013	Vt Sum Times: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **20** / 1 time/step]
014	Vt Sum Times: M	*ENG	
015	Vt Sum Times: C	*ENG	
016	Vt Sum Times: Y	*ENG	

3233	**[Pixel Proportion Coefficient 2: Setting] DFU**		
001	Correction Coefficient: 1	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1** / 0.01 /step]

002	Correction Coefficient: 2	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0.5** / 0.01 /step]
003	Correction Coefficient: 3	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0** / 0.01 /step]
004	Correction Coefficient: 4	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0.25** / 0.01 /step]
005	Correction Coefficient: 5	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0.5** / 0.01 /step]

3234	**[Pixel Proportion Coefficient 3: Setting] DFU**		
001	Correction Value 1	*ENG	[-0.1 to 0 / -**0.01** / 0.01 /step]
002	Correction Value 2	*ENG	[0 to 0.1 / **0.01** / 0.01 /step]

3235	**[Toner Supply Coefficient: Display] DFU**		
001	Pixel Proportion 2: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
002	Pixel Proportion 2: M	*ENG	
003	Pixel Proportion 2: C	*ENG	
004	Pixel Proportion 2: Y	*ENG	
005	Pixel Proportion 3: Bk	*ENG	[0.7 to 1.3 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
006	Pixel Proportion 3: M	*ENG	
007	Pixel Proportion 3: C	*ENG	
008	Pixel Proportion 3: Y	*ENG	
009	Vt Integral Value: Bk	*ENG	[-255 to 255 / **0** / 0.01 /step]
010	Vt Integral Value: M	*ENG	
011	Vt Integral Value: C	*ENG	
012	Vt Integral Value: Y	*ENG	

3236	**[Toner Supply Consumption: Display] DFU**

http://www.manuals4you.com

	Displays the toner amount of the latest toner supply for each color.		
001	Latest: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 40000 / **0** / 0.1 mg/step]
002	Latest: M	*ENG	
003	Latest: C	*ENG	
004	Latest: Y	*ENG	

3237	**[Developer Mixing Setting]**		
	Displays the toner amount of the latest toner supply for each color. **DFU**		
001	Mixing Time	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **5** / 1 sec/step]

3238	**[Vt Target: Setting]**		
	Displays the Vt target value at developer initialization. **DFU**		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.01 V/step]
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

3239	**[Vtref Correction: Setting]**		
	Adjusts the parameter for Vtref correction at the process control.		
001	(+)Consumption: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.1** / 0.01 V/step]
002	(+)Consumption: M	*ENG	
003	(+)Consumption: C	*ENG	
004	(+)Consumption: Y	*ENG	
005	(-)Consumption: Bk	*ENG	

006	(-)Consumption: M	*ENG	
007	(-)Consumption: C	*ENG	
008	(-)Consumption: Y	*ENG	
009-012	Threshold for development gamma rank.		
009	P Rank 1 Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0.2** / 0.1 /step]
010	P Rank 2 Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0.1** / 0.1 /step]
011	P Rank 3 Threshold	*ENG	[-2 to 0 / **-0.1** / 0.1 /step]
012	P Rank 4 Threshold	*ENG	[-2 to 0 / **-0.2** / 0.1 /step]
013-014	Threshold for image density rank on the image transfer belt.		
013	T Rank 1 Threshold	*ENG	[-1 to 0 / **-0.2** / 0.01 V/step]
014	T Rank 2 Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.2** / 0.01 V/step]

3241	**[Background Potential Setting]**		
001	Coefficient: Bk	*ENG	These are parameters for calculating the charge bias referring to the development bias at process control. [-1000 to 1000 / **0** / 1 /step] DC charge bias = Development bias x (1 + 0.001 x these vales) + SP3-241-005 to -008
002	Coefficient: M	*ENG	
003	Coefficient: C	*ENG	
004	Coefficient: Y	*ENG	
005	Offset: Bk	*ENG	These are additional values for calculating the charge bias referring to the development bias at process control. [0 to 255 / **140** / 1 V/step] DC charge bias = Development bias x (1 + 0.001 x SP3-241-001 to -004) + these values
006	Offset: M	*ENG	
007	Offset: C	*ENG	
008	Offset: Y	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

3242	**[LD Power Setting]**		
	Adjusts the coefficient for LD power control value at the process control.		
001	Coefficient: Bk	*ENG	[-1000 to 1000 / **79** / 1 /step]
002	Coefficient: M	*ENG	
003	Coefficient: C	*ENG	
004	Coefficient: Y	*ENG	
005	Offset: Bk	*ENG	[-1000 to 1000 / **62** / 1 /step]
006	Offset: M	*ENG	
007	Offset: C	*ENG	
008	Offset: Y	*ENG	

3251	**[Coverage]**		
	These (-001 to -016) are coefficients for SP3-222-009 to -012.		
001	Latest: Bk	*ENG	Displays the latest coverage for each color. [0 to 9999 / **0** / 1 cm^2/step]
002	Latest: M	*ENG	
003	Latest: C	*ENG	
004	Latest: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Displays the average coverage of each color for the Vtref correction. "Average S" is defined when the number of developed pages does not reach the number specified with SP3251-017.		
005	Average S: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 0.01 %/step]
006	Average S: M	*ENG	
007	Average S: C	*ENG	
008	Average S: Y	*ENG	

009-012	Displays the average coverage of each color for the Vtref correction. "Average M" is defined when the number of developed pages does not reach the number specified with SP3251-018.		
009	Average M: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 0.01 %/step]
010	Average M: M	*ENG	
011	Average M: C	*ENG	
012	Average M: Y	*ENG	
013-016	Displays the average coverage of each color for the Vtref correction. "Average L" is defined when the number of developed pages does not reach the number specified with SP3-251-019.		
013	Average L: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 0.01 %/step]
014	Average L: M	*ENG	
015	Average L: C	*ENG	
016	Average L: Y	*ENG	
017-019	Adjusts the threshold for SP3-251-005 to -016.		
017	Total Page Setting: S	*ENG	[1 to 100 / **10** / 1 sheet/step]
018	Total Page Setting: M	*ENG	[1 to 500 / **10** / 1 sheet/step]
019	Total Page Setting: L	*ENG	[1 to 999 / **50** / 1 sheet/step]
020-023	Adjusts the threshold for SP3-251-024 to -027.		
020	Total Page Setting: S2	*ENG	[1 to 100 / **20** / 1 sheet/step]
021	Total Page Setting: M2	*ENG	[1 to 500 / **10** / 1 sheet/step]
022	Total Page Setting: L2	*ENG	[1 to 999 / **50** / 1 sheet/step]
024-027	Displays the latest coverage ratio for each color.		
024	Latest Coverage: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / - / 0.01 %/step]
025	Latest Coverage: M	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

026	Latest Coverage: C	*ENG	
027	Latest Coverage: Y	*ENG	
028	Displays the threshold of whether to perform developer churning or not.		
	DevMix Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **20** / 1 %/step]

3311	**[ID Sensor Detection Value: Vofset]**		
	Displays the ID sensor (regular) offset voltage for Vsg adjustments.		
001	Voffset reg: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Voffset reg: M	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
003	Voffset reg: C	*ENG	
004	Voffset reg: Y	*ENG	
005-007	Displays the ID sensor (diffusion) offset voltage for Vsg adjustments.		
005	Voffset dif: M	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Voffset dif: C	*ENG	
007	Voffset dif: Y	*ENG	
008-010	Displays the ID sensor offset voltage for Vsg adjustments.		
008	Voffset TM (Front)	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
009	Voffset TM (Center)	*ENG	
010	Voffset TM (Rear)	*ENG	

3321	**[Vsg Adjustment: Execution]**		
010	P/TM Sensor All	-	Execute the ID sensor initialization setting for all sensors

3322	**[Vsg Adjustment Result: Vsg]**

	Displays the result value of the Vsg adjustment for each sensor.		
001	Vsg reg: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Vsg reg: M	*ENG	
003	Vsg reg: C	*ENG	
004	Vsg reg: Y	*ENG	
005	Vsg dif: M	*ENG	
006	Vsg dif: C	*ENG	
007	Vsg dif: Y	*ENG	
008	Vsg TM (Front)	*ENG	
009	Vsg TM (Center)	*ENG	
010	Vsg TM (Rear)	*ENG	

3323	**[Vsg Adjustment Result: Ifsg] DFU**		
001	Ifsg: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 0.1 mA/step]
002	Ifsg: M	*ENG	
003	Ifsg: C	*ENG	
004	Ifsg: Y	*ENG	
005	Ifsg TM (Front)	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 0.1 mA/step]
006	Ifsg TM (Center)	*ENG	
007	Ifsg TM (Rear)	*ENG	

3324	**[Vsg Adjustment: Set] DFU**		
001	SC Detection	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 1p]
003	Vofset Error Counter	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **0** / 0.1 time/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

004	Vofset Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.01 V/step]
005	Vsg Upper Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4.5** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Vsg Lower Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3.5** / 0.01 V/step]

3325	**[Vsg Adjustment Result]**		
	Displays the result of the Vsg adjustment. The displayed numbers mean the result of each sensor (sensor for Front, sensor for Bk, sensor for Cyan, sensor for Center, sensor for Magenta, sensor for Yellow and sensor for Rear).		
001	Latest	*ENG	[111111 to 999999 / **999999** / 1 /step] 9: Unexpected error 3: Offset voltage error 2: Vsg adjustment value error 1: O.K
002	Latest 1	*ENG	
003	Latest 2	*ENG	
004	Latest 3	*ENG	
005	Latest 4	*ENG	
006	Latest 5	*ENG	
007	Latest 6	*ENG	
008	Latest 7	*ENG	
009	Latest 8	*ENG	
010	Latest 9	*ENG	

3361	**[ID Sensor Sensitivity: Display] Not Used**		
001	K2K (Latest)	*ENG	[0 to 5 / - / 0.0001 /step]
002	K5K (Latest)	*ENG	
003	K2M (Latest)	*ENG	
004	K5M (Latest)	*ENG	

005	K2C (Latest)	*ENG	
006	K5C (Latest)	*ENG	
007	K2Y (Latest)	*ENG	
008	K5Y (Latest)	*ENG	

3362	**[ID Sensor Sensitivity: Setting] DFU**		
001	K2: Upper	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.32** / 0.01 /step]
002	K2: Lower	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.22** / 0.01 /step]
003	K5: Upper	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **5** / 0.01 /step]
004	K5: Lower	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.5** / 0.01 /step]
005	Kn: Lower	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.1** / 0.01 /step]
006	Kn: Upper	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
007	K5 Edit Point	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.15** / 0.01 /step]
008	K5 Target Voltage	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.63** / 0.01 V/step]
009	K5 Approximate Method	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0:Linear, 1: Curve
010	K2: Upper/Lower Limit Coefficient 1	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0** / 0.01 /step]
011	K2: Upper Limit Correction	*ENG	[–0.2 to 0.4 / **0.07** / 0.01 /step]
012	K2: Lower Limit Correction	*ENG	[–0.2 to 0.4 / **–0.07** / 0.01 /step]
013	Diffusion Correction: M	*ENG	[0.75 to 1.35 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
014	Diffusion Correction: C	*ENG	
015	Diffusion Correction: Y	*ENG	
016	K2: Check: M	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.25** / 0.001 /step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

017	K2: Check: C	*ENG	
018	K2: Check: Y	*ENG	

3363	**[ID Pattern Timing Setting] DFU**		
001	Scan YCMBk	*ENG	Adjusts the detection timing for the process control pattern. [-500 to 500 / **13.7** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer Release Start Time	*ENG	Adjusts the timing when the paper transfer unit is kept away from the image transfer belt. [0 to 2500 / **0** / 1 msec/step]
003	Delay Time	*ENG	Adjusts the processing timing for the process control pattern. [0 to 2500 / **880** / 1 msec/step]
004	MUSIC Delay Time	*ENG	Adjusts the processing timing for the pattern that is used for the line position adjustment. [-2500 to 2500 / **300** / 1 msec/step]

3371	**[M/A Calculation] DFU**		
001	Correction Coefficient: Bk	*ENG	[0.5 to 2.0 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
002	Correction Coefficient: M	*ENG	[0.5 to 2.0 / **0.95** / 0.01 /step]
003	Correction Coefficient: C	*ENG	[0.5 to 2.0 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
004	Correction Coefficient: Y	*ENG	[0.5 to 2.0 / **1.02** / 0.01 /step]

3401	**[Fixed Supply Mode]**		
	Adjusts the toner supply rate in the fixed toner supply mode.		
001	Fixed Rate: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 1 %/step]

002	Fixed Rate: M	*ENG	These SPs are used only when SP3-044 is set to "1".
003	Fixed Rate: C	*ENG	
004	Fixed Rate: Y	*ENG	

3411	**[Toner Supply Rate: Display]**		
	Displays the current toner supply rate.		
001	Latest: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **-** / 1 %/step]
002	Latest: M	*ENG	
003	Latest: C	*ENG	
004	Latest: Y	*ENG	

3421	**[Toner Supply Range]**		
001	Upper Limit: Bk	*ENG	Adjusts the toner supply rate during printing. [0 to 100 / **100** / 1%/step]
002	Upper Limit: M	*ENG	
003	Upper Limit: C	*ENG	
004	Upper Limit: Y	*ENG	
005	Minimum Supply Time: Bk	*ENG	Adjusts the minimum toner supply time. [0 to 1000 / **0** / 1 msec/step]
006	Minimum Supply Time: M	*ENG	
007	Minimum Supply Time: C	*ENG	
008	Minimum Supply Time: Y	*ENG	

3451	**[Toner Supply Carry Over: Display] DFU**		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 10000 / **0** / 1 msec/step]
002	M	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

3452	**[Toner Supply Carry Over: Setting] DFU**		
001	Maximum: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 10000 / **1000** / 1 msec/step]
002	Maximum: M	*ENG	
003	Maximum: C	*ENG	
004	Maximum: Y	*ENG	

3501	**[Process Control Target M/A]**		
	Adjusts the target M/A.		
001	Maximum M/A: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.444** / 0.001 mg/cm^2/step]
002	Maximum M/A: M	*ENG	
003	Maximum M/A: C	*ENG	
004	Maximum M/A: Y	*ENG	

3510	**[Pixel Adj. Sheet Counter: Display]**		
	Displays the total page counter for each adjustment mode.		
001	Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **0** / 1 page/step]
002	Potential Control: FC	*ENG	
003	Power ON: BW	*ENG	
004	Power ON: FC	*ENG	
005	MUSIC: BW	*ENG	
006	MUSIC: FC	*ENG	

007	Vsg Adj.	*ENG	
008	Charge AC Control	*ENG	
009	MUSIC: Power ON: BW	*ENG	
010	MUSIC: Power ON: FC	*ENG	

3511	**[Execution Interval: Setting]**		
	Adjusts the threshold for each adjustment mode.		
001	Job End: Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **250** / 1 page/step]
002	Job End: Potential Control: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **100** / 1 page/step]
003	Interrupt: Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **500** / 1 page/step]
004	Interrupt: Potential Control: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **200** / 1 page/step]
005	Initial: Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **250** / 1 page/step]
006	Initial: Potential Control: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **100** / 1 page/step]
007	Vsg Adj. Counter	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **0** / 1 page/step]
008	Charge AC Control Counter	*ENG	
009	Interrupt: Vtref Correction: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **100** / 1 page/step]
010	Interrupt: Vtref Correction: FC	*ENG	
011	Initial: Vtref Correction: FC	*ENG	
012	Initial: Vtref Correction: BW	*ENG	
013	Job End: Vt Line Speed Correction: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **1000** / 1 page/step]
014	Job End: Vt Line Speed Correction: BW	*ENG	
015	Interrupt: Vt Line Speed Correction: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **0** / 1 page/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

016	Interrupt: Vt Line Speed Correction: FC	*ENG	
017	Initial: Vt Line Speed Correction: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **1000** / 1 page/step]
018	Initial: Vt Line Speed Correction: FC	*ENG	
019	Environmental Correction	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Not Correct (OFF), 1: Correct (ON)
020	Gamma Correction	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Not Correct (OFF), 1: Correct (ON)
021	Non-use Time Correction	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Not Correct (OFF), 1: Correct (ON)
022	Correction Coefficient 1: JE: BW	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.2** / 0.01 page/step]
023	Correction Coefficient 2: JE: BW	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 0.01/step]
024	Correction Coefficient 1: JE: FC	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.5** / 0.01/step]
025	Correction Coefficient 2: JE: FC	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 0.01/step]
026	Correction Coefficient 1: Interrupt: BW	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.1** / 0.01/step]
027	Correction Coefficient 2: Interrupt: BW	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 0.01/step]
028	Correction Coefficient 1: Interrupt: FC	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.25** / 0.01/step]
029	Correction Coefficient 2: Interrupt: FC	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 0.01/step]

030	Max. Number Correction Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **5** / 1/step]
031	Max. Number Correction Counter	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1/step]

3512	**[Image Quality Adj.: Interval]**		
	Adjusts the timing for execution of process control and line position adjustment.		
001	During Job	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **30** / 1 page/step]
002	During Stand-by	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **10** / 1 minute/step]

3513	**[PCU Motor Stop Time: Bk]**		
	Displays the last time that the PCU motors stopped. These are used for process control execution timing.		
001	Year	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **0** / 1/step]
002	Month	*ENG	[1 to 12 / **1** / 1/step]
003	Date	*ENG	[1 to 31 / **1** / 1/step]
004	Hour	*ENG	[0 to 23 / **0** / 1/step]
005	Minute	*ENG	[0 to 59 / **0** / 1/step]

3514	**[Environmental Display: Job End]**		
	Displays the environmental conditions for the last job. These are used for process control execution timing.		
001	Temperature	*ENG	[-1280 to 1270 / **0** / 0.1°C/step]
002	Relative Humidity	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **-** / 0.1%RH/step]
003	Absolute Humidity	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **-** / 0.1 g/cm^3/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

3515	**[Execution Interval: Display]**		
	Displays the current interval for process control execution. When the machine calculates the timing for process control, it uses a number of conditions. These are the results after considering all the conditions.		
001	Job End: Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **500** / 1 page/step]
002	Job End: Potential Control: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **200** / 1 page/step]
003	Interrupt: Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **500** / 1 page/step]
004	Interrupt: Potential Control: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **200** / 1 page/step]

3516	**[Refresh Mode] DFU**		
	While making prints with low coverage, the developer is agitated with less toner consumption and the toner carrier attraction tends to increase. This may cause low image density or poor transfer (white dots). To prevent this, the coagulated toner or overcharged toner has to be consumed by performing the refresh mode.		
001	Dev. Motor Rotation: Display: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **0** / 0.1 m/step]
002	Dev. Motor Rotation: Display: M	*ENG	
003	Dev. Motor Rotation: Display: C	*ENG	
004	Dev. Motor Rotation: Display: Y	*ENG	
005	Rotation Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **1** / 1 m/step]
006	Pixel Coverage Sum: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 65535 / **0** / 1 cm^2/step]
007	Pixel Coverage Sum: M	*ENG	

008	Pixel Coverage Sum: C	*ENG	
009	Pixel Coverage Sum: Y	*ENG	
010	Required Area: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 65535 / **0** / 1 cm^2/step]
011	Required Area: M	*ENG	
012	Required Area: C	*ENG	
013	Required Area: Y	*ENG	
014	Refresh Threshold: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **34** / 1 cm^2/m/step]
015	Refresh Threshold: M	*ENG	
016	Refresh Threshold: C	*ENG	
017	Refresh Threshold: Y	*ENG	
018	Pattern Generation Number: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 time/step]
019	Pattern Generation Number: M	*ENG	
020	Pattern Generation Number: C	*ENG	
021	Pattern Generation Number: Y	*ENG	
022	Pattern Generation Number: Upper limit	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 time/step]
023	Toner Consumption Pattern Area	*ENG	[10 to 2550 / **300** / 10 cm^2/step]
024	Supply Coefficient	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1** / 0.01/step]
025	Job End Area Coefficient	*ENG	[0.1 to 25.5 / **1** / 0.1/step]
026	Job End Vb Coefficient	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **40** / 1%/step]
027	Job End Length	*ENG	[0 to 56 / **25** / 1mm/step]
028	Job End Supply	*ENG	[0 to 1 / 0.45 / 0.001 mg/cm^2/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

3517	**[Blade damage prevention mode]**		
	Adjusts the threshold temperature for preventing the cleaning blade at the drum unit from being damaged. If the temperature is above this value, the drum reverses briefly at the end of the job to prevent the blade from flipping over.		
001	Execution Temp. Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 50/ **40** / 1°C/step]

3518	**[Image Quality Adj. Execution Flag] DFU**		
001	Toner End Recovery: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON
002	Toner End Recovery: M	*ENG	
003	Toner End Recovery: C	*ENG	
004	Toner End Recovery: Y	*ENG	
005	Vsg Adj.	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON
006	Developer Mixing	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON
007	Process Control	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON (once), 2: ON (twice)
008	MUSIC	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON (once), 2: ON (twice)
009	Drum Phase Adj.	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON
010	Charge AC Control	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON
011	Blade Damage Prevention	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON

3519	[Toner End Prohibition Setting]		
	Enables or disables each adjustment at toner near end.		
001	Process Control	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] 0: Permit (adjustment is done even toner near end condition) 1: Forbid (adjustment is not done at toner near end condition)
002	MUSIC	*ENG	
003	TC Adj.	*ENG	

3520	[ITB Idling Number]		
001	Temperature: H	*ENG	[0 or 3 / **0** / 1 revolution/step]
002	Temperature: M	*ENG	
003	Temperature: L	*ENG	
004	Temperature: L: Power ON	*ENG	

3521	[Temperature Threshold]		
001	Threshold: t2	*ENG	[20 or 30 / **25** / 1 deg/step]
002	Threshold: t1	*ENG	[0 or 15 / **15** / 1 deg/step]

3522	[Initial Process Control Setting]		
	Adjusts the threshold for the process control at power on. When the current condition has changed by more than the values of these SPs when compared with the conditions at the previous operation, the process control at power on is executed.		
001	Fusing Temp. Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 150 / **60** / 1°C/step]
002	Non-use Time Setting	*ENG	[0 to 1440 / **360** / 1 minute/step]
003	Temperature Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **10** / 1°C/step]
004	Relative Humidity Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **50** / 1 %RH/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

005	Absolute Humidity Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **6** / 1 g/m^3/step]
100	[Rapi_timer]		
	Time Setting	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **30** / 1 sec/step]

3531	**[Non-use Time Process Control Setting]**		
	Adjusts the threshold for the process control at stand-by. When the current condition has changed by more than the values of these SPs when compared with the conditions at the previous operation, the process control at stand-by is executed.		
001	Non-use Time Setting	*ENG	[0 to 1440 / **360** / 1 minute/step]
002	Temperature Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **10** / 1°C/step]
003	Relative Humidity Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **50** / 1 %RH/step]
004	Absolute Humidity Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **6** / 1 g/m^3/step]
005	Maximum Execution Number	*ENG	Adjusts the maximum execution time for the process control at stand-by. [0 to 99 / **10** / 1 time/step]

3611	**[Development Gamma: Display/Set]**		
001	Bk (Current)	*ENG	Displays the current development gamma for each color. [0 to 5 / - / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
002	M (Current)	*ENG	
003	C (Current)	*ENG	
004	Y (Current)	*ENG	
005	Bk (Target Display)	*ENG	Displays the target development gamma for each color. [0 to 5 / **0.85** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
006	M (Target Display)	*ENG	
007	C (Target Display)	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.8** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]

008	Y (Target Display)	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.77** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
009	Bk (Standard Target Set)	*ENG	Displays the standard target development gamma for each color. [0 to 5 / **0.9** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
010	M (Standard Target Set)	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.8** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
011	C (Standard Target Set)	*ENG	
012	Y (Standard Target Set)	*ENG	
013	Environmental Correction	*ENG	Turns on or off the environmental correction for target development gamma. [0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Not Correct, 1: Correct
014	K (Max Correction)	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.1** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kv/step]
015	M (Max Correction)	*ENG	
016	C (Max Correction)	*ENG	
017	Y (Max Correction)	*ENG	
018	K (Max Abs Hum)	*ENG	[1 to 99 / **15** / 1 g/m^3/step]
019	M (Max Abs Hum)	*ENG	
020	C (Max Abs Hum)	*ENG	
021	Y (Max Abs Hum)	*ENG	

3612	**[Vk Display]**		
	Displays Vk for each color.		
001	Bk	*ENG	[-300 to 300 / - / 1 V/step]
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

004	Y	*ENG	

3621	**[Development DC Control: Display]** Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2 & FINE: 77 mm/sec		
	Displays the development DC bias adjusted with the process control for each line speed and color.		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 700 / **550** / 1 -V/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 700 / **550** / 1 -V/step]
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2 & FINE: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 700 / **550** / 1 -V/step]
010	Thick 2 & FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2 & FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2 & FINE: Y	*ENG	

3631	**[Charge DC Control: Display]** Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 1: 154 mm/sec, Thick 2 & FINE: 77 mm/sec		
	Displays the charge DC voltage adjusted with the process control for each line speed and color.		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **690** / 1 -V/step]

002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 2 & FINE: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **690** / 1 -V/step]
006	Thick 2 & FINE: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 2 & FINE: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 2 & FINE: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2 & FINE: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **690** / 1 -V/step]
010	Thick 2 & FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2 & FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2 & FINE: Y	*ENG	

3641	**[Charge AC Control: Display]** Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec		
	Displays the charge AC voltage adjusted with the process control for each color.		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **1.75** / 0.01 kV/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	

3651	**[LD Power Control: Display]** Plain: 205 (C2c)/230 (C2d) mm/sec, Thick 2 & FINE: 77 mm/sec		
	Displays the LD power adjusted for each environment.		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **100** / 1 %/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **100** / 1 %/step]
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2 & FINE: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **100** / 1 %/step]
010	Thick 2 & FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2 & FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2 & FINE: Y	*ENG	

3710	**[HST Concentration Control: Set]** TD Sensor: Toner Concentration Control Setting		
	Selects the toner concentration control method by HST memory, which is in the TD sensor.		
001	Control Method: Selection	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Not Use, 1: Use

3711	**[HST Concentration Control: Bk]**		
	Displays the factory settings of the black PCU.		
001	Vcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.1 V/step]
002	Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.1 V/step]
003	Sensitivity: HL	*ENG	[1.22 to 3.77 / **2.1** / 0.01 V/step]
004	Sensitivity: HM	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1.05** / 0.01 V/step]
005	Sensitivity: ML	*ENG	

006	Set Detection	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 V/step]
007	Without Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
008	With Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
009	Serial Number 1	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **-** / 1 V/step]
010	Serial Number 2	*ENG	
011	Adjustment: Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
012	Adjustment: Vtref	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
013	Adjustment: Vtcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]
014	Adjustment: Gamma	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
015	Adjustment: Vcnt Result	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **9** / 1 /step]

3712	**[HST Concentration Control: M]**		
	Displays the factory settings of the magenta PCU.		
001	Vcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.1 V/step]
002	Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.1 V/step]
003	Sensitivity: HL	*ENG	[1.22 to 3.77 / **2.1** / 0.01 V/step]
004	Sensitivity: HM	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1.05** / 0.01 V/step]
005	Sensitivity: ML	*ENG	
006	Set Detection	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 V/step]
007	Without Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
008	With Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
009	Serial Number 1	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **-** / 1 V/step]
010	Serial Number 2	*ENG	
011	Adjustment: Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

012	Adjustment: Vtref	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
013	Adjustment: Vtcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]
014	Adjustment: Gamma	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
015	Adjustment: Vcnt Result	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **9** / 1 /step]

3713	**[HST Concentration Control: C]**		
	Displays the factory settings of the cyan PCU.		
001	Vcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.1 V/step]
002	Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.1 V/step]
003	Sensitivity: HL	*ENG	[1.22 to 3.77 / **2.1** / 0.01 V/step]
004	Sensitivity: HM	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1.05** / 0.01 V/step]
005	Sensitivity: ML	*ENG	
006	Set Detection	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 V/step]
007	Without Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
008	With Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
009	Serial Number 1	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **-** / 1 V/step]
010	Serial Number 2	*ENG	
011	Adjustment: Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
012	Adjustment: Vtref	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
013	Adjustment: Vtcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]
014	Adjustment: Gamma	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
015	Adjustment: Vcnt Result	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **9** / 1 /step]

3714	**[HST Concentration Control: Y]**

	Displays the factory settings of the yellow PCU.		
001	Vcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.1 V/step]
002	Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.1 V/step]
003	Sensitivity: HL	*ENG	[1.22 to 3.77 / **2.1** / 0.01 V/step]
004	Sensitivity: HM	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1.05** / 0.01 V/step]
005	Sensitivity: ML	*ENG	
006	Set Detection	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 V/step]
007	Without Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
008	With Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
009	Serial Number 1	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **-** / 1 V/step]
010	Serial Number 2	*ENG	
011	Adjustment: Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
012	Adjustment: Vtref	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
013	Adjustment: Vtcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]
014	Adjustment: Gamma	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
015	Adjustment: Vcnt Result	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **9** / 1 /step]

3800	**[Toner Collection Bottle Full Detection]**		
	Displays/ adjusts the toner collection bottle detection settings. These SPs are used for NRS.		
001	Condition	*CTL	[0 to 4 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	Detection Times	*CTL	[0 to 50 / **-** / 1 /step]
003	Print Page After Near Full	*CTL	[0 to 1000 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]
004	Pixel Count After Near	*CTL	[0 to 200000 / **-** / 1 cm^2/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

	Full		
005	Pixel Count After Replacement	*CTL	Displays the pixel counter after replacement of toner collection bottle. [0 to 200000 / **-** / 1 cm^2/step]
008	Coefficient	*ENG	[0.5 to 1.5 / **1** / 0.1 /step]
011	Notice Setting	*ENG	Enables or disables the calling for @Remote. [0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Enable @Remote calling 1: Disable @Remote calling
	NOTE: If the toner collection bottle has been replaced before the machine detects used toner near full when this setting is set to "0", the machine cannot detect toner collection bottle near full. In that case, set SP3-902-017 to "1".		
012	Day Threshold: Toner Collection bottle:NF	*ENG	[1 to 30 / **5** / 1 day/step]
	Sets the threshold days for the near-full display. The near-full of the toner collection bottle is displayed after the toner collection full sensor has detected the actuator in the toner collection bottle.		
013	Total:Toner Collection Bottle	*ENG	Displays the total amount of the used toner. [0 to 999999999 / **1** / 1]
014	Mechanism Full Detection Date	*ENG	Displays the date of the full detection fot the toner collection bottle.

3900	**[Toner Collection Bottle Full Detection]**		
	Turns toner collection bottle full detection on or off.		
001	ON/OFF Setting	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON

3901	**[New PCU Detection]**		
	Turns new PCU detection on or off.		
001	ON/OFF Setting	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON

3902	**[Manual New Unit Set]**		
	Turns the new unit detection flag for each PM unit on or off. The use of these counters is explained in the PM section and in the relevant parts of section 3 (Replacement and Adjustment).		
001	Development Unit: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
002	Development Unit: Y	*ENG	
003	Development Unit: C	*ENG	
004	Development Unit: M	*ENG	
005	Developer: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
006	Developer: Y	*ENG	
007	Developer: C	*ENG	
008	Developer: M	*ENG	
009	PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
010	PCU: Y	*ENG	
011	PCU: M	*ENG	
012	PCU: C	*ENG	
013	Image Transfer Unit	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON Do not use 3902-013 if you only change the cleaning unit. 3902-015: This is for the image transfer
014	Fusing Unit	*ENG	
015	Cleaning Unit	*ENG	
016	Paper Transfer Unit	*ENG	

http://www.manuals4you.com

017	Toner Collection Bottle	*ENG	belt cleaning unit.

SP4-XXX (Scanner)

4008	**[Sub Scan Magnification Adjustment]**		
	Adjusts the sub-scan magnification by changing the scanner motor speed.		
001	Sub Scan Magnification Adjustment	*ENG	[-1.0 to 1.0 / **0** / 0.1%/step] **FA**

4010	**[Leading Edge Registration Adjustment]**		
	Adjusts the leading edge registration by changing the scanning start timing in the sub-scan direction.		
001	-	*ENG	[-2.0 to 2.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step] **FA**

4011	**[Side-to-Side registration Adjustment]**		
	Adjusts the side-to-side registration by changing the scanning start timing in the main scan direction.		
001	-	*ENG	[-2.5 to 2.5 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step] **FA**

4012	**[Scanner Erase Margin: Scale]** Scanner: Erase Margin: Scale		
	Sets the blank margin at each side for erasing the original shadow caused by the gap between the original and the scale.		
001	Book: Leading Edge	*ENG	[0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step] **FA**
002	Book: Trailing Edge		
003	Book: Left		
004	Book: Right		
005	ADF: Leading Edge	*ENG	[0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step] **FA**
007	ADF: Right		

http://www.manuals4you.com

008	ADF: Left		

4013	**[Scanner Free Run]**		
	Performs the scanner free run with the exposure lamp on or off in the following mode. Full color mode / Full Size / A3 or DLT		
001	Lamp: ON	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
002	Lamp: OFF		

4014	**[Scan]**		
	Execute the scanner free fun with each mode.		
001	HP Detection Enable	-	Scanner free run with HP sensor check.
002	HP Detection Disable	-	Scanner free run without HP sensor check.

4020	**[Dust Check]**		
001	Detection: ON/OFF	*ENG	Turns the ADF scan glass dust check on/ off. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: OFF, 1: ON
002	Dust Detect: Level	*ENG	Selects the detect level. [0 to 8 / **4** / 1 /step] 0: lowest detection level 8: highest detection level
003	Correction Level	*ENG	Selects the level of the sub scan line correction when using the ARDF. [0 to 4 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Off 1: Weakest 2: Weak

			3: Strong 4: Strongest

4301	**[APS Operation Check]**		
	Displays a code that represents the original size detected by the original sensors. (See "Input Check Table" in this section.)		
001	APS Operation Check	-	-

4303	**[APS Min Size (A5/HLT/16K)]**		
	Specifies the result of the detection when the outputs from the original sensors are all OFF.		
001	APS Min. Size **(A5/HLT/16K)**	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: No Original 1: A5-Lengthwise (16K SEF if 4305 is set to 3) 2: A5-Sideways (16K LEF if 4305 is set to 3)

4305	**[8K/16K Detection]**	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Normal Detection (the machine detects A4/LT size as A4 or LT, depending on the paper size setting) 1: A4-Sideways LT-Lengthwise 2: LT-Sideways A4-Lengthwise 3: 8K 16K
001	This program enables the machine to automatically recognize the 8K/16K size.		

4400	**[Scanner Erase Margin]**	*ENG	
	Set the Mask for Original. These SPs set the area to be masked during platen (book) mode scanning.		

http://www.manuals4you.com

001	Book: Leading Edge	[0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]
002	Book: Trailing Edge	
003	Book: Left	
004	Book: Right	
005	ADF: Leading Edge	
007	ADF: Right	
008	ADF: Left	

4417	**[IPU Test Pattern]**		
	Selects the IPU test pattern.		
001	Test Pattern Selection	[0 to 24 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Scanned image 1: Gradation main scan A 2: Gradation main scan B 3: Gradation main scan C 4: Gradation main scan D 5: Gradation sub scan (1) 6: Grid pattern 7: Slant grid pattern 8: Gradation RGBCMYK 9: UCR pattern 10: Color patch 16 (1) 11: Color patch 16 (2) 12: Color patch 64	13: Grid pattern CMYK 14: Color patch CMYK 15: Gray pattern (1) 16: Gray pattern (2) 17: Gray Pattern (3) 18: Shading pattern 19: Thin line pattern 20: Scanned + Grid pattern 21: Scanned + Gray scale 22: Scanned + Color patch 23: Scanned + Slant Grid C 24: Scanned + Slant Grid D

4429	**[Illegal Copy Output]**		
001	Copy	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **3** / 1 /step]
002	Scanner		

003	Fax		

4440	**[Saturation Adjustment]**		
	Adjusts the level of saturation for copying.		
001	Saturation Adj. 1	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 1 /step] 0: High 1: Lowest 2: Lower 3: Default 4: Higher 5: Highest

4450	**[Scan Image Path Selection]**	
001	Black Subtraction ON/OFF	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Uses or does not use the black reduction image path.	
002	SH ON/OFF	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: ON, 1: OFF
	Uses or does not use the shading image path.	

4460	**[Digital AE Set] DFU**		
	Specifies the level of deleting the background in the ADS mode. You can adjust its level for each scanning method (platen, ADF).		
001	Lower Limit	*ENG	[0 to 1023 / **364** / 4 digit/step]
002	Background Level	*ENG	[512 to 1532 / **932** / 1 digit/step]

4501	**[ACC Target Density]**		
	Selects the ACC result.		
001	Copy: Bk: Text	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **5** / 1 /step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

002	Copy: C: Text	*ENG	10: Darkest density
003	Copy: M: Text	*ENG	
004	Copy: Y: Text	*ENG	
005	Copy: Bk: Photo	*ENG	
006	Copy: C: Photo	*ENG	
007	Copy: M: Photo	*ENG	
008	Copy: Y: Photo	*ENG	

4505	**[ACC Offset: Light]**		
	Adjusts the offset correction for light areas of the ACC pattern.		
001	Self Machine: Bk	*ENG	[-128 to 127 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	Self Machine: M	*ENG	
003	Self Machine: C	*ENG	
004	Self Machine: Y	*ENG	
005	Other Machine: Bk	*ENG	Reserved
006	Other Machine: M	*ENG	
007	Other Machine: C	*ENG	
008	Other Machine: Y	*ENG	

4506	**[ACC Offset: Dark]**		
	Adjusts the offset correction for dark areas of the ACC pattern.		
001	Self Machine: Bk	*ENG	[-128 to 127 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	Self Machine: M	*ENG	
003	Self Machine: C	*ENG	

004	Self Machine: Y	*ENG	
005	Other Machine: Bk	*ENG	Reserved
006	Other Machine: M	*ENG	
007	Other Machine: C	*ENG	
008	Other Machine: Y	*ENG	

4540	**[Printer Vector Correction]**		
	This SP corrects the printer coverage of 12 hues (RY, YR, YG, etc. x 4 Colors [R, G, B, Option]) for a total of 48 parameters.		
001-004	RY Phase: Option/R/G/B	*ENG	Specifies the printer vector correction value. [0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]
005-008	YR Phase: Option/R/G/B		
009-012	YG Phase: Option/R/G/B		
013-016	GY Phase: Option/R/G/B		
017-020	GC Phase: Option/R/G/B		
021-024	CG Phase: Option/R/G/B		
025-028	CB Phase: Option/R/G/B		
029-032	BC Phase: Option/R/G/B		
033-036	BM Phase: Option/R/G/B		
037-040	MB Phase: Option/R/G/B		
041-044	MR Phase: Option/R/G/B		
045-048	RM Phase: Option/R/G/B		

4550	**[Scanner Application: text/Printing] DFU**
4551	**[Scanner Application: text] DFU**

http://www.manuals4you.com

4552	**[Scanner Application: text (Drop Out Coor)] DFU**		
4553	**[Scanner Application: text-Photo] DFU**		
4554	**[Scanner Application: Photo] DFU**		
4565	**[Scanner Application: GrayScale] DFU**		
4570	**[Scanner Application: Color: Text-Photo] DFU**		
4571	**[Scanner Application: Color: Glossy Photo] DFU**		
4572	**[Scanner Application: AutoColor] DFU**		
-005	MTF: 0 (Off), 1-15 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **8** / 1 /step] 0: MTF Off
	Sets the MTF level (Modulation Transfer Function) designed to improve image contrast. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect.		
-006	Smoothing: 0 (x1), 1-7 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **4** / 1 /step]
	Use to remove "jaggies" if they appear. Set higher for smoother images.		
-007	Brightness: 1–255	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step]
	Set higher for darker, set lower for lighter.		
-008	Contrast: 1–255	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step]
	Set higher for more contrast, set lower for less contrast.		
-009	Independent Dot Erase (0), 1-7 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Sets the erasure level of Irregular Dots. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect. 0: Not activated		

4580	**[FAX Application: Text/Chart] DFU**
4582	**[FAX Application: Text/Photo] DFU**

4583	**[FAX Application: Photo] DFU**		
-005	MTF: 0 (Off), 1-15 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **8** / 1 /step] 0: MTF Off
	Sets the MTF level (Modulation Transfer Function) designed to improve image contrast. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect.		
-006	Smoothing: 0 (x1), 1-7 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **4** / 1 /step]
	Use to remove "jaggies" if they appear. Set higher for smoother images.		
-007	Brightness: 1–255	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step]
	Set higher for darker, set lower for lighter.		
-008	Contrast: 1–255	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step]
	Set higher for more contrast, set lower for less contrast.		
-009	Independent Dot Erase (0), 1-7 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Selects the contrast level for B/W the Text mode. Sets the erasure level of Irregular Dots. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect. 0: Not activated		
-010	Texture Erase: 0	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Sets the erasure level of textures. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect. This SP (suffix "-010") only exists in SP4580, 4582 and 4583. 0: Not activated		

4581	**[FAX Application: Text] DFU**		
4584	**[FAX Application: Original 1] DFU**		
4585	**[FAX Application: Original 2] DFU**		
-005	MTF: 0 (Off), 1-15 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **8** / 1 /step] 0: MTF Off

http://www.manuals4you.com

	Sets the MTF level (Modulation Transfer Function) designed to improve image contrast. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect.		
-006	Smoothing: 0 (x1), 1-7 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **4** / 1 /step]
	Use to remove "jaggies" if they appear. Set higher for smoother images.		
-007	Brightness: 1–255	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step]
	Set higher for darker, set lower for lighter.		
-008	Contrast: 1–255	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step]
	Set higher for more contrast, set lower for less contrast.		
-009	Independent Dot Erase (0), 1-7 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Selects the contrast level for B/W the Text mode. Sets the erasure level of Irregular Dots. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect. 0: Not activated		

4600	**[SBU Version Display]**		
001	SBU_ID	-	[0 to 0xFF / 0 / 1 /step] Displays the ID of the SBU.
002	GASBU-N_ID	-	[0 to 0xFF / 0 / 1 /step]
003	VSP5100_ID	-	[0 to 0xFF / 0 / 1 /step]

4602	**[Scanner Memory Access]**		
001	Scanner Memory Access	-	Enables the read and write check for the SBU registers.
002	Address Set	-	Not used
003	Data Set	-	

4603	[AGC Execution]		
001	HP Detection Enable	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] Executes the AGC.
002	HP Detection Disable	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] **DFU**

4604	[FGATE Open/Close] DFU		
001	-	-	Opens or closes the FGATE signal. This SP automatically returns to the default status (close) after exiting this SP. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF, 1: ON

4609	[Gray Balance Set: R]		
001	Book Read	-	[-512 to 511 / **-46** / 1 digit/step]
002	DF Read	-	[-512 to 511 / **-46** / 1 digit/step]

4610	[Gray Balance Set: G]		
001	Book Read	-	[-512 to 511 / **-20** / 1 digit/step]
002	DF Read		

4611	[Gray Balance Set: B]		
001	Book Read	-	[-512 to 511 / **-28** / 1 digit/step]
002	DF Read		

4623	[Black Level Adj. Display] RE: Red Even signal, RO: Red Odd signal		
001	Latest: RE Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even red signal in the

http://www.manuals4you.com

			CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: RO Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4624	**[Black Level Adj. Display]** GE: Green Even signal, GO: Green Odd signal		
001	Latest: GE Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: GO Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4625	**[Black Level Adj. Display]** BE: Blue Even signal, BO: Blue Odd signal		
001	Latest: BE Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: BO Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4628	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**

	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Red.		
001	Latest: R Color	-	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4629	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Green.		
001	Latest: G Color	-	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4630	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Blue.		
001	Latest: B Color	-	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4631	**[Gain Adjustment: Digital]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Red.		
001	Latest: RE Color	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: RO Color	-	

4632	**[Gain Adjustment: Digital]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Green.		
001	Latest: GE Color	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: GO Color	-	

4633	**[Gain Adjustment: Digital]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Blue.		
001	Latest: BE Color	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: BO Color	-	

http://www.manuals4you.com

4645	**[Scan Adj. Time Out Error]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Blue.		
001	White Offset Correction	-	[0 to 65535 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Black Offset Correction	-	

4647	**[Read Hard Error]**		
	Displays the result of the SBU connection check.		
001	Power-ON	-	[0 to 35535 / **0** / 1digit /step] 0: OK, Other: SBU connection check failure If the SBU connection check fails, SC144 occurs.

4654	**[Black Level Adj. Display]** RE: Red Even signal, RO: Red Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: RE Color	*ENG	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: RO Color	*ENG	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4655	**[Black Level Adj. Display]** GE: Green Even signal, GO: Green Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: GE Color	*ENG	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing

			speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: GO Color	*ENG	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4656	**[Black Level Adj. Display]** BE: Blue Even signal, BO: Blue Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: BE Color	*ENG	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: BO Color	*ENG	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4658	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**		
	Displays the previous gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Red.		
001	Last Correct Value: R Color	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4659	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**		
	Displays the previous gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Green.		
001	Last Correct Value: G Color	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4660	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**
	Displays the previous gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Blue.

http://www.manuals4you.com

001	Last Correct Value: B Color	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4661	**[Gain Adjustment: Digital]** RE: Red Even signal, RO: Red Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: RE Color	*ENG	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: RO Color	*ENG	

4662	**[Gain Adjustment: Digital]** GE: Green Even signal, GO: Green Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: GE Color	*ENG	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: GO Color	*ENG	

4663	**[Gain Adjustment: Digital]** BE: Blue Even signal, BO: Blue Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: BE Color	*ENG	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: BO Color	*ENG	

4673	**[Black Level Adj. Display]** RE: Red Even signal, RO: Red Odd signal		
001	Factory Setting: RE Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).. [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: RO Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4674	**[Black Level Adj. Display]** GE: Green Even signal, GO: Green Odd signal		
001	Factory Setting: GE Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: GO Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4675	**[Black Level Adj. Display]** BE: Blue Even signal, BO: Blue Odd signal		
001	Factory Setting: BE Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: BO Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 16383 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4677	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**		
	Displays the factory setting values of the gain adjustment for Red.		
001	Factory Setting: R Color	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

4678	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**		
	Displays the factory setting values of the gain adjustment for Green.		
001	Factory Setting: G Color	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4679	**[Gain Adjustment: Analog]**		
	Displays the factory setting values of the gain adjustment for Blue.		
001	Factory Setting: BE Color	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 digit/step]

4680	**[Gain Adjustment: Digital]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Red.		
001	Factory Setting: RE Color	*ENG	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: RO Color	*ENG	

4681	**[Gain Adjustment Digital]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Green.		
001	Factory Setting: GE Color	*ENG	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: GO Color	*ENG	

4682	**[Gain Adjustment Digital]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Blue.		
001	Factory Setting: BE Color	*ENG	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: BO Color	*ENG	

4688	**[DF: Density Adjustment]**
	Adjusts the white shading parameter when scanning an image with the ARDF.

	Adjusts the density level if the ID of outputs made in the DF and Platen mode is different.		
001	-	*ENG	[50 to 150 / **100** / 1%/ step]

4690	**[White Level Peak Read]**		
	Displays the peak level of the white level scanning.		
001	RE	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	RO	-	

4691	**[White Level Peak Read]**		
	Displays the peak level of the white level scanning.		
001	GE	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	GO	-	

4692	**[White Level Peak Read]**		
	Displays the peak level of the white level scanning.		
001	BE	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	BO	-	

4693	**[Black Level Read]**		
	Displays the peak level of the black level scanning.		
001	RE	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	RO	-	

4694	**[Black Level Read]**

http://www.manuals4you.com

	Displays the peak level of the black level scanning.		
001	GE	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	GO	-	

4695	**[Black Level Read]**		
	Displays the peak level of the black level scanning.		
001	BE	-	[0 to 1023 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	BO	-	

4802	**[DF Shading FreeRun]**		
001	Lamp ON	-	Executes the scanner free run of shading movement with exposure lamp on or off. Press "OFF" to stop this free run. Otherwise, the free run lasts.
002	Lamp OFF		

4803	**[Home Position Adjustment]**		
001	-	-	[-1 to 1 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]

4804	**[Home Position]**		
001	-	-	Executes the scanner HP detection.

4806	**[Carriage Save]**		
001	-	-	Moves the carriage from the scanner home position. Dust may fall through the DF exposure glass. Therefore, do this SP when you transport the machine a long distance.

4807	**[SBU Test Pattern Change]**		
001	-	-	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]

4902	**[ACC Data Display]**		
	This SP outputs the final data read at the end of ACC execution. A zero is returned if there was an error reading the data. [0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]		
001	R DATA1	*ENG	Photo C Patch Level 1 (8-bit)
002	G DATA1	*ENG	Photo M Patch Level 1 (8-bit)
003	B DATA1	*ENG	Photo Y Patch Level 1 (8-bit)
004	R DATA2	*ENG	Photo C Patch Level 17 (8-bit)
005	G DATA2	*ENG	Photo M Patch Level 17(8-bit)
006	B DATA2	*ENG	Photo Y Patch Level 17 (8-bit)

4904	**[Scanner IPU Board Test]**		
001	Test1	-	Bit0: TAURUS register Bit1: ORION register Bit2: LUPUS register Bit3 to 11: Not used Bit12: Ri20 Bit13 to 15: Not used 0: OK, 1: Error
	Performs a write and read check of the ASICs on the IPU board and displays the result.		
002	Test2	-	Bit0: Image path from SBU to TAURUS Bit1: Image path from TAURUS to ORION Bit2: Image path from ORION to TAURUS Bit3: Image path from TAURUS to LUPUS

http://www.manuals4you.com

			Bit4 to 11: Not used Bit12: Image path from LUPUS to Ri20 Bit13: Image path from Ri20 to GAVD Bit14 and 15: Not used 0: OK, 1: Error
	Performs an image path check on the IPU board and displays the result.		

4905	**[Dither Selection] DFU**		
	Changes the parameters for error diffusion.		
001	Dither Selection	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step] **DFU**

4918	**[Manual Gamma Adj.]**		
	Adjusts the offset data of the printer gamma for yellow in Photo mode. See “Printer Gamma Correction" in the Replacement and Adjustment for how to use.		
009	Change	-	Enter the manual gamma adjustment screen (-001 to 008). For details, see the "Printer Gamma Correction" in the section "Replace and Adjustment".

4954	**[Standard Chart Scan: Clear Setting]**		
001	Execution	-	Execute the scanning of the A4 chart.
002	Clear Setting	-	Clear the data of the scanned A4 chart.
004	Rewrite Target	-	Overwrite the standard data.

4991	**[IPU Image Pass Selection]**
	Selects the image path. Enter the number to be selected using the 10-key pad.

001	RGB Frame Memory	*ENG	[0 to 11 / **2** / 1 /step]
	0: Scanner input RGB images 1: Scanner I/F RGB images 2: RGB images done by Shading correction (Shading ON, Black offset ON) 3: Shading data 4: Inner pattern data: Gray scale 5: RGB images done by Line skipping correction 6: RGB images done by Digital AE 7: RGB images done by Vertical line correction 8: RGB image done by Scanner gamma correction 9: RGB image done by Filtering correction 10: RGB images done by Full color ADS 11: RGB image done by Color correction		

4993	**[High Light Correction]**		
001	Sensitivity Selection	*ENG	Selects the Highlight correction level. [0 to 9 / **4** / 1 /step] 0: weakest sensitivity 9: strongest sensitivity
002	Range Selection	*ENG	Selects the range level of Highlight correction. [0 to 9 / **4** / 1 /step] 0: weakest skew correction, 9: strongest skew correction

4994	**[Text/Photo Detection Level Adj.]**		
	Selects the definition level between Text and Photo for high compression PDF.		
001	PDF Sensitivity Level text/photo	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Text priority 1: Normal 2: Photo priority

http://www.manuals4you.com

SP5-XXX (Mode)

5024	**[mm/inch Display Selection]**		
	Display units (mm or inch) for custom paper sizes.		
001	0:mm 1:inch	*CTL	0: mm (Europe/Asia) 1: inch (USA)

5045	**[Accounting Counter]**		
	Selects the counting method. **NOTE:** The counting method can be changed only once, regardless of whether the counter value is negative or positive.		
001	Counter Method	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Developments 1: Prints

5047	**[Paper Display]**		
	Turns on or off the printed paper display on the LCD.		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON

5051	**[Toner Refill Detection Display]**		
	Enables or disables the toner refill detection display.		
5051 1	Toner Refill Detection Display	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] Alphanumeric 0: ON 1: OFF

5055	**[Display IP Address]**
	Display or does not display the IP address on the LCD.

001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF 1: ON

5056	**[Coverage Counter Display]**		
	Display or does not display the coverage counter on the LCD.		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Not display, 1: Display

5061	**[Toner Remaining Icon Display]**		
	Display or does not display the remaining toner display icon on the LCD.		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Not display, 1: Display

5062	**[Parts PM Display Setting]**		
	Display or does not display the PM part yield on the LCD.		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Not display, 1: Display

5067	**[Parts PM System Setting]**		
	Selects the service maintenance or user maintenance for each PM parts. If the user service is selected, PM alart is displayed on the LCD.		
001	PCU:Bk	*CTL	**[0: Service]** or [1: User]
002	PCU:M	*CTL	
003	PCU:C	*CTL	
004	PCU:Y	*CTL	
005	Dev Unit:Bk	*CTL	**[0: Service]** or [1: User]

http://www.manuals4you.com

006	Dev Unit:M	*CTL	
007	Dev Unit:C	*CTL	
008	Dev Unit:Y	*CTL	
009	Developer:Bk	*CTL	**[0: Service]** or [1: User]
010	Developer:M	*CTL	
011	Developer:C	*CTL	
012	Developer:Y	*CTL	
013	Int Trans Unit	*CTL	**[0: Service]** or [1: User]
014	Belt Cleaning Unit	*CTL	**[0: Service]** or [1: User]
015	Fusing Unit	*CTL	**[0: Service]** or [1: User]
016	Transfer Roller	*CTL	**[0: Service]** or [1: User]
017	WasteToner Bottle	*CTL	**[0: Service]** or [1: User]

5104	**[A3/DLT Double Count] SSP**		
	Specifies whether the counter is double clicked for A3/DLT size prints. When you have to change this SP, ask your supervisor.		
5104 1	Double Count	*CTL	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: NO (Normal count) 1: YES (Double count) 2: YES except By-pass (Normal count for unknown size)

5112	**[Non-Std. Paper Sel.]** Non-Standard Paper Selection
001	Determines whether a non-standard paper size can be input for the universal cassette trays (Tray 2, and Optional paper tray unit trays 1 and 2) [0 or 1/ **0** / -] 0: OFF

	1: ON, If “1” is selected, the customer will be able to input a non-standard paper size using the UP mode.

5113	**[Optional Counter Type]**		
001	Default Optional Counter Type	*CTL	This program specifies the counter type. **0**: **None**, 1: Key card (RK 3, 4) 2: Key card (down), 3: Prepaid card 4: Coin rack, 5: MF key card 8: Key counter + Vendor 9: Bar-code Printer
002	External Optional Counter Type	*CTL	This program specifies the external counter type. **0**: **None** 1: Expansion Device 1 2: Expansion Device 2 3: Expansion Device 3

5114	**[Optional Counter I/F]**		
001	MF Key Card Extension	*CTL	[**0: Not installed/** 1: Installed (scanning accounting)]

5118	**[Disable Copying]**	*CTL	[**0**: Not disabled/ 1: Disabled]
001	This program disables copying.		

5120	**[Mode Clear Opt. Counter Removal]**	*CTL	[**0**: **Yes (removed)**/ 1: Standby (installed but not used)/ 2: No (not removed)]
001	This program updates the information on the optional counter. When you install or remove an optional counter, check the settings.		

5121	**[Counter Up Timing]**	*CTL	[**0: Feed**/ 1: Exit]

http://www.manuals4you.com

001	This program specifies when the counter goes up. The settings refer to “paper feed” and “paper exit” respectively.

5126	**[F Size Original Setting]**	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: 8 1/2" x 13" (Foolscap) 1: 8 1/4" x 13" (Folio) 2: 8" x 13" (F)
001	Selects F size original setting.		

5127	**[APS Mode]**	*CTL	[**0**: Not disabled/ 1: Disabled]
001	This program disables the APS.		

5128	**[Code Mode With Key/Card Option]**	*CTL	-
001	**DFU**		

5131	**[Paper Size Type Selection]**	*ENG	[0: JP (Japan)/ 1: NA / 2: EU]
001	The program selects a paper size system from the following alternatives: the AB system (0), the LT system (1), and the AF system (2).		

5150	**[By-Pass Length Setting]**	*CTL	[**0**: OFF/ 1: ON]
001	Determines whether the transfer sheet from the by-pass tray is used or not. Normally the paper length for sub scanning paper from the by-pass tray is limited to 600 mm, but this can be extended with this SP to 1260 mm.		

5162	**[App. Switch Method]**	*CTL	[**0**: Soft Key Set/ 1: Hard Key Set]
001	This program specifies the switch that selects an application program.		

5167	**[Fax Printing Mode at Optional]**		
	Enables or disables the automatic print out without an accounting device. This SP is used when the receiving fax is accounted by an external accounting device.		
001	Fax Printing Mode at Optional Counter Off	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Automatic printing 1: No automatic printing

5169	**[CE Login]**		
	If you will change the printer bit switches, you must 'log in' to service mode with this SP before you go into the printer SP mode.		
001	CE Login	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled

5179	**[By-pass Size Error Detection]**		
	Turns on or off the by-pass tray size error message.		
001	-	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF 1: ON (Paper size error message is displayed when the paper jam occurs due to the wrong direction of set paper in by-pass mode.)

5181	**[Size Adjust]**		
	Adjusts the paper size for each tray.		
001	TRAY 1	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / 1 /step] 0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF, 2: B5 LEF, 3: A5 LEF
002	TRAY 2: 1	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -]

http://www.manuals4you.com

			0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF
003	TRAY 2: 2	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: A3, 1: DLT
004	TRAY 2: 3	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: B4, 1: LG
005	TRAY 2: 4	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: B5 LEF, 1: Exe LEF
006	TRAY 3/T-LCT: 1	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF
007	TRAY 3: 2	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: A3, 1: DLT
008	TRAY 3: 3	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: B4, 1: LG
009	TRAY 3: 4	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: B5 LEF, 1: Exe LEF
010	TRAY 4: 1	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF
011	TRAY 4: 2	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: A3, 1: DLT
012	TRAY 4: 3	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: B4, 1: LG
013	TRAY 4: 4	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: B5 LEF, 1: Exe LEF
018	LCT	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0 (EU/ASIA), 1 (NA)** / -] 0: A4LEF, 1: LTLEF, 2: B5LEF

5186	**[RK 4]**
	Enables or disables the prevention for RK4 (accounting device) disconnection.

	If the RK4 is disconnected for 10 seconds when this SP is set to "1 (Enable)", the machine automatically jams a sheet of paper and stops.		
001	-	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Disable 1: Enable

5188	**[Copy NV Version]**		
	Displays the version number of the NVRAM on the controller board.		
001	-	-	-

5191	**[Mode Set] DFU**		
001	-	-	-

5193	**[External Controller Info. Settings] DFU**		
001	-	-	-

5195	**[Limitless SW] DFU**		
001	-	-	-

5212	**[Page Numbering]**	*CTL	
	This program adjusts the position of the second side page numbers. A "– value" moves the page number positions to the left edge. A "+ value" moves the page number positions to the right edge.		
003	Duplex Printout Right/Left Position	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]	
004	Duplex Printout High/Low Position	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]	

http://www.manuals4you.com

5302	**[Set Time]**		
	Adjusts the RTC (real time clock) time setting for the local time zone. Examples: For Japan (+9 GMT), enter 540 (9 hours x 60 min.) DOM: +540 (Tokyo) NA: -300 (New York) EU: + 60 (Paris) CH: +480 (Peking) TW: +480 (Taipei) AS: +480 (Hong Kong)		
002	Time Difference	*CTL #	[-1440 to 1440 / **Area** / 1 min./step]

5307	**[Summer Time]**		
001	Setting		[0 to 1 / **NA, EU, ASIA** / 1 /step] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled NA and EUR: 1, ASIA: 0
	Enables or disables the summer time mode. Note ▪ Make sure that both SP5-307-3 and -4 are correctly set. Otherwise, this SP is not activated even if this SP is set to "1".		
003	Rule Set (Start)		
	Specifies the start setting for the summer time mode. There are 8 digits in this SP. For months 1 to 9, the "0" cannot be input in the first digit, so the eight-digit setting for -2 or -3 becomes a seven-digit setting. 1st and 2nd digits: The month. [1 to 12] 3rd digit: The week of the month. [1 to 5] 4th digit: The day of the week. [0 to 6 = Sunday to Saturday] 5th and 6th digits: The hour. [00 to 23] 7th digit: The length of the advanced time. [0 to 9 / 1 hour /step] 8th digit: The length of the advanced time. [0 to 5 / 10 minutes /step] For example: 3500010 (EU default)		

	The timer is advanced by 1 hour at am 0:00 on the 5th Sunday in March ▪ The digits are counted from the left. ▪ Make sure that SP5-307-1 is set to "1".		
004	Rule Set (End)	-	-
	Specifies the end setting for the summer time mode. There are 8 digits in this SP. 1st and 2nd digits: The month. [1 to 12] 3rd digit: The week of the month. [0 to 5] 4th digit: The day of the week. [0 to 7 = Sunday to Saturday] 5th and 6th digits: The hour. [00 to 23] The 7th and 8 digits must be set to "00". ▪ The digits are counted from the left. ▪ Make sure that SP5-307-1 is set to "1".		

5401	**[Access Control]**		
	When installing the SDK application, SAS (VAS) adjusts the following settings. **DFU**		
103	Default Document ACL	*CTL	Whenever a new login user is added to the address book in external certification mode (for Windows, LDAP, RDH), the default document ACL is updated according to this SP setting. [0 to 3 / **0** / 1] 0: View 1: Edit 2: Edit/Delete 3: Full control Note: This SP setting is ignored on a machine that is not using document server.
200	SDK1 Unique ID	*CTL	"SDK" is the "Software Development Kit". This data can be converted from SAS (VAS) when installed or uninstalled. **(DFU)**
201	SDK1 Certification Method	*CTL	

http://www.manuals4you.com

210	SDK2 Unique ID	*CTL	
211	SDK2 Certification Method	*CTL	
220	SDK3 Unique ID	*CTL	
221	SDK3 Certification Method	*CTL	
230	SDK certification device		

5404	**[User Code Counter Clear]**		
001	UCodeCtrClr		Clears all counters for users.

5411	**[LDAP Certification]**		
004	Easy Certification	*CTL	Determines whether easy LDAP certification is done. [0 to 1/1/1] 1: On, 0: Off
005	Password Null Not Permit	*CTL	This SP is referenced only when SP5411-4 is set to "1" (On). [0 to 1/0/1] 0: Password NULL not permitted. 1: Password NULL permitted.

5501	**[PM Alarm]**	*CTL	-
001	PM Alarm Level	[0 to 9999 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Alarm off 1 to 9999: Alarm goes off when **Value (1 to 9999) x 1000** ≥ **PM counter**	
002	Original Count Alarm	[0 or 1 / **1** / –] 0: No alarm sounds 1: Alarm sounds after the number of originals	

		passing through the ARDF ≥ 10,000

5413	**[Lockout Setting]**		
001	Lockout On/Off	*CTL	Switches on/off the lock on the local address book account. [0 to 1/ **0** /1] 0: Off, 1: On
002	Lockout Threshold	*CTL	Sets a limit on the frequency of lockouts for account lockouts. [1 to 10 / **5** /1]
003	Cancellation On/Off	*CTL	Determines whether the system waits the prescribed time for input of a correct user ID and password after an account lockout has occurred. [0 to 1/0/1] 0: Off (no wait time, lockout not cancelled) 1: On (system waits, cancels lockout if correct user ID and password are entered.
004	Cancellation Time	*CTL	Determines the length of time that the system waits for correct input of the user ID and password after a lockout has occurred. This setting is used only if SP5413-3 is set to "1" (on). [1 to 999/60/1 min.]

5414	**[Access Mitigation]**		
001	Mitigation On/Off	*CTL	Switches on/off masking of continuously used IDs and passwords that are identical. [0 to 1/0/1] 0: Off 1: On

http://www.manuals4you.com

002	Mitigation Time	*CTL	Sets the length of time for excluding continuous access for identical user IDs and passwords. [0 to 60/15/1 min.]

5415	**[Password Attack]**		
001	Permissible Number	*CTL	Sets the number of attempts to attack the system with random passwords to gain illegal access to the system. [0 to 100/30/1 attempt]
002	Detect Time	*CTL	Sets the time limit to stop a password attack once such an attack has been detected. [1 to 10/5/1 sec.]

5416	**[Access Information]**		
001	Access User Max Number	*CTL	Limits the number of users used by the access exclusion and password attack detection functions. [50 to 200/200/1 users]
002	Access Password Max Number	*CTL	Limits the number of passwords used by the access exclusion and password attack detection functions. [50 to 200/200/1 passwords]
003	Monitor Interval	*CTL	Sets the processing time interval for referencing user ID and password information. [1 to 10/3/1 sec.]

5417	**[Access Attack]**		
001	Access Permissible	*CTL	Sets a limit on access attempts when an

	Number		excessive number of attempts are detected for MFP features. [0 to 500/100/1]
002	Attack Detect Time	*CTL	Sets the length of time for monitoring the frequency of access to MFP features. [10 to 30/10/1 sec.]
003	Productivity Fall Wait	*CTL	Sets the wait time to slow down the speed of certification when an excessive number of access attempts have been detected. [0 to 9/3/1 sec.]
004	Attack Max Number	*CTL	Sets a limit on the number of requests received for certification in order to slow down the certification speed when an excessive number of access attempts have been detected. [50 to 200/200/1 attempt]

5420	**[User Authentication]**		
	These settings should be done with the System Administrator. **Note**: These functions are enabled only after the user access feature has been enabled.		
001	Copy	*CTL	Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the copy applications. [0 to 1 / **0** /1] 0: On 1: Off
⇒ 002	Color Security Setting **NOTE**: Enabling the SP Mode (Value=1) for Bit 4, diables the login dialog for that color.	*CTL	Bit0: Black& White Mode 1: Enable / 0: Disable **(0)** Bit3: Full Color Mode 1: Enable / 0: Disable **(0)** Bit4: Auto Color Select Mode 1: Enable / 0: Disable **(0)**
011	Document Server	*CTL	Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the document server. [0 to 1/ **0** /1] 0: On 1: Off

http://www.manuals4you.com

021	Fax	*CTL	Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the fax application. [0 to 1/ **0** /1] 0: On 1: Off
031	Scanner	*CTL	Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the scan applications. [0 to 1/ **0** /1] 0: On 1: Off
041	Printer	*CTL	Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the printer applications. [0 to 1/ **0** /1] 0: On 1: Off
051	SDK1	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1] 0: ON. 1: OFF Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the SDK application.
061	SDK2		
071	SDK3		

5481	**[Authentication Error Code]**		
	These SP codes determine how the authentication failures are displayed.		
001	System Log Disp	*CTL	Determines whether an error code appears in the system log after a user authentication failure occurs. [0 to 1/ **0** /1] 0: Off 1: On
002	Panel Disp	*CTL	Determines whether an error code appears on the operation panel after a user

			authentication failure occurs. [0 to 1/ **1** /1] 1: On 0: Off

5490	**[MF Key Card (Japan only)]**		
001	-	*CTL	Sets up operation of the machine with a keycard. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1] 0: Disabled. Cancels operation without a user code. 1: Enabled. Allows operation without a user code.

5504	**[Jam Alarm]**	*CTL	-
001	Sets the alarm to sound for the specified jam level (document misfeeds are not included). [0 to 3 / **3** / 1 /step] 0: Zero (Off) 1: Low (2.5K jams) 2: Medium (3K jams) 3: High (6K jams)		

5505	**[Error Alarm]**		
	Sets the error alarm level. The error alarm counter counts "1" when any SC is detected. However, the error alarm counter decreases by "1" when an SC is not detected during a set number of copied sheets (for example, default 1500 sheets). The error alarm occurs when the SC error alarm counter reaches "5".		
001	-	*CTL	[0 to 255 / **C2c: 50, C2d: 100** / 100 copies /step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

5507	**[Supply Alarm]**	*CTL	-
001	Paper Supply Alarm	**0**: Off, 1: On, **DFU**	
002	Staple Supply Alarm	**0**: Off, 1: On, **Japan only**	
003	Toner Supply Alarm	**0**: Off, 1: On, **DFU**	
080	Toner Call Timing	Changes the timing of the “Toner Supply Call” via the NRS, when the following conditions occur. 0: Toner is replaced 1: Toner near end or End	
128	Interval :Others	[250 to 10000 / **1000** / 1 /step] **DFU**	
132	Interval :A3		
133	Interval :A4		
134	Interval :A5		
141	Interval :B4		
142	Interval :B5		
160	Interval :DLT		
164	Interval :LG		
166	Interval :LT		
172	Interval :HLT		

5508*	**[CC Call]**	*CTL	-
001*	Jam Remains	0: Disable, **1**: Enable	
	Enables/disables initiating a call for an unattended paper jam.		
002*	Continuous Jams	0: Disable, **1**: Enable	
	Enables/disables initiating a call for consecutive paper jams.		
003*	Continuous Door Open	0: Disable, **1**: Enable	

	Enables/disables initiating a call when the front door remains open.	
011*	Jam Detection: Time Length	[3 to 30 / **10** / 1 minute /step]
	Sets the time a jam must remain before it becomes an “unattended paper jam”. This setting is enabled only when SP5508-004 is set to "1".	
012*	Jam Detection: Continuous Count	[2 to 10 / **5** / 1 /step]
	Sets the number of consecutive paper jams required to initiate a call. This setting is enabled only when SP5508-004 is set to "1".	
013*	Door Open: Time Length	[3 to 30 / **10** / 1 /step]
	Sets the length of time the door remains open before the machine initiates a call. This setting is enabled only when SP5-508-004 is set to "1".	

5515	**[SC/Alarm Setting]**	*CTL	-
	With NRS (New Remote Service) in use, these SP codes can be set to issue an SC call when an SC error occurs. If this SP is switched off, the SC call is not issued when an SC error occurs.		
001	SC Call		[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Off 1: On
002	Service Parts Near End Call		
003	Service Parts End Call		
004	User Call		
006	Communication Test Call		[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Off 1: On
007	Machine Information Notice		
008	Alarm Notice		
009	Non Genuine Toner Alarm		
010	Supply Automatic Ordering Call		

http://www.manuals4you.com

011	Supply Management Report Call	
012	Jam/Door Open Call	

5516	**[Individual PM Part Alarm Call]**	*CTL	-
001	Disable/ Enable Setting	Enables or disables the PM part alarm call. [0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Not Send, 1: Send	

5610	**[Base Gamma Control Point: Command]**		
004	Factory Setting	-	-
	Recalls the factory settings.		
005	Restore	-	-
	Overwrites the current values onto the factory settings.		
006	Restore	-	-
	Recalls the previous settings.		

5611	**[Toner Color in 2C]**		
001	B-C	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density
	Adjusts the Cyan correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		
002	B-M	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density
	Adjusts the Magenta correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		
003	G-C	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density

	Adjusts the Cyan correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		
004	G-Y	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density
	Adjusts the Yellow correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		
005	R-M	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density
	Adjusts the Magenta correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		
006	R-Y	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density
	Adjusts the Yellow correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		

5618	**[Color Mode Display Selection]**		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: ACS, Colour, Black & White, Two Colour, Single colour 1: ACD, Full Colour, Black & White
	Selects the color selection display on the LCD.		

Note

- Memory Clear (SP5-801)
- The following tables list the items that are cleared. The serial number information, meter charge setting and meter charge counters (SP8-581, 582, 583, 584, and 586) are not cleared.

5801	**[Memory Clear]**	
001	All Clear	Resets all correction data for process control and all software counters, and returns all modes and adjustments to their default values.
002	ENG All	Clears the engine settings.

http://www.manuals4you.com

System Service Mode

003	SCS	Initializes default system settings, SCS (System Control Service) settings, operation display coordinates, and ROM update information.
006	Copier application	Initializes all copier application settings.
007	Fax application	Initializes the fax reset time, job login ID, all TX/RX settings, local storage file numbers, and off-hook timer.
008	Printer application	The following service settings: ▪ Bit switches ▪ Gamma settings (User & Service) ▪ Toner Limit The following user settings: ▪ Tray Priority ▪ Menu Protect ▪ System Setting except for setting of Energy Saver ▪ I/F Setup (I/O Buffer and I/O Timeout) ▪ PCL Menu
009	Scanner application	Initializes the scanner defaults for the scanner and all the scanner SP modes.
010	Netfile application	Deletes the network file application management files and thumbnails, and initializes the job login ID.
011	NCS	All setting of Network Setup (User Menu) (NCS: Network Control Service)
012	R-Fax	Initializes the job login ID, SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, job history, and local storage file numbers.
014	Clear DCS Settings	Initializes the DCS (Delivery Control Service) settings.
015	Clear UCS Settings	Initializes the UCS (User Information Control Service) settings.

016	MIRS Setting	Initializes the MIRS (Machine Information Report Service) settings.
017	CCS	Initializes the CCS (Certification and Charge-control Service) settings.
018	SRM Memory Check	Initializes the SRM (System Resource Manager) settings.
020	Web Uapli	Initializes the web user application settings.
021	ECS	Initializes the ECS settings.

5802	**[Free Run]** Performs a free run on the copier engine. Note ▪ The machine starts free run in the same condition as the sequence of A4/LT, A3 or A4 SEF printing from the 1st or 2nd tray. Therefore, the correct paper should be loaded in the 1st tray or 2nd tray, but paper is not fed. ▪ The main switch has to be turned off and on after using the free run mode for a test.		
001	TRAY1: A4LEF: FC	-	-
002	TRAY2: A3: FC	-	
003	TRAY2: A4SEF: FC	-	

5803	**[Input Check]**	-	See "Input Check Table" in this section.
5804	**[Output Check]**	-	See "Output Check Table" in this section.

5805	**[Anti-Condensation Heater]**		
002	0:OFF / 1:ON	*ENG	-

http://www.manuals4you.com

5810	**[SC Reset]**		
	Resets a type A service call condition. Note ▪ Turn the main switch off and on after resetting the SC code.		
001	Fusing SC Reset	-	-

⇒

5812	**[Service Tel. No. Setting]**		
001	Service	*CTL	-
	Sets the telephone number for a service representative. This number is printed on the Counter List, which can be printed with the user's "Counter" menu. This can be up to 20 characters (both numbers and alphabetic characters can be input).		
002	Facsimile	*CTL	-
	Sets the fax or telephone number for a service representative. This number is printed on the Counter List. This can be up to 20 characters (both numbers and alphabetic characters can be input).		
003	Supply	*CTL	-
	Use this to input the telephone number of your supplier for consumables. Enter the number and press #.		
004	Operation	*CTL	-

	Use this to input the telephone number of your sales agency. Enter the number and press #.

5816	**[Remote Service]**	*CTL	**-**
001	I/F Setting		
	Selects the remote service setting. [0 to 2 / **2** / 1 /step] 0: Remote service off 1: CSS remote service on 2: NRS remote service on		
002	CE Call		
	Performs the CE Call at the start or end of the service. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Start of the service 1: End of the service **NOTE:** This SP is activated only when SP 5816-001 is set to “2”.		
003	Function Flag		
	Enables or disables the remote service function. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled		
006	Device Information Call Display Setting		
	Displays or does not display the device information call content. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Not displayed 1: Displayed		
007	SSL Disable		
	Uses or does not use the RCG certification by SSL when calling the RCG. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Uses the RCG certification		

http://www.manuals4you.com

	1: Does no use the RCG certification	
008	RCG Connect Timeout	
	Specifies the connect timeout interval when calling the RCG. [1 to 90 / **10** / 1 second /step]	
009	RCG Write Timeout	
	Specifies the write timeout interval when calling the RCG. [1 to 100 / **60** / 1 second /step]	
010	RCG Read Timeout	
	Specifies the read timeout interval when calling the RCG. [1 to 100 / **60** / 1 second /step]	
011	Port 80 Enable	-
	Enables/disables access via port 80 to the SOAP method. [0 or 1 / **0** / –] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	
021	RCG – C Registed	
	This SP displays the Cumin installation end flag. 0: Installation not completed 1: Installation completed	
022	RCG – C Registed Detail	
	This SP displays the Cumin installation status. 0: Basil not registered 1: Basil registered 2: Device registered	
023	Connect Type (N/M)	
	This SP displays and selects the Cumin connection method. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step 0: Internet connection	

	1: Dial-up connection	
061	Cert. Expire Timing **DFU**	Proximity of the expiration of the certification.
062	Use Proxy	This SP setting determines if the proxy server is used when the machine communicates with the service center.
063	Proxy Host	
	This SP sets the address of the proxy server used for communication between Cumin-N and the gateway. Use this SP to set up or display the customer proxy server address. The address is necessary to set up Cumin-N. Note ▪ The address display is limited to 128 characters. Characters beyond the 128 character are ignored. ▪ This address is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.	
064	Proxy Port Number	
	This SP sets the port number of the proxy server used for communication between Cumin-N and the gateway. This setting is necessary to set up Cumin-N. Note ▪ This port number is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.	
065	Proxy User Name	
	This SP sets the HTTP proxy certification user name. Note ▪ The length of the name is limited to 31 characters. Any character beyond the 31st character is ignored. ▪ This name is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.	
066	Proxy Password	

http://www.manuals4you.com

	This SP sets the HTTP proxy certification password. Note ▪ The length of the password is limited to 31 characters. Any character beyond the 31st character is ignored. ▪ This name is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.	
067	CERT: Up State	
	Displays the status of the certification update.	
	0	The certification used by Cumin is set correctly.
	1	The certification request (setAuthKey) for update has been received from the GW URL and certification is presently being updated.
	2	The certification update is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the successful update.
	3	The certification update failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failed update.
	4	The period of the certification has expired and new request for an update is being sent to the GW URL.
	11	A rescue update for certification has been issued and a rescue certification setting is in progress for the rescue GW connection.
	12	The rescue certification setting is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the certification update request.
	13	The notification of the request for certification update has completed successfully, and the system is waiting for the certification update request from the rescue GW URL.
	14	The notification of the certification request has been received from the rescue GW controller, and the certification is being stored.
	15	The certification has been stored, and the GW URL is being notified of the successful completion of this event.
	16	The storing of the certification has failed, and the GW URL is being

		notified of the failure of this event.
	17	The certification update request has been received from the GW URL, the GW URL was notified of the results of the update after it was completed, but an certification error has been received, and the rescue certification is being recorded.
	18	The rescue certification of No. 17 has been recorded, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of the certification update.
068	CERT: Error	
	Displays a number code that describes the reason for the request for update of the certification.	
	0	Normal. There is no request for certification update in progress.
	1	Request for certification update in progress. The current certification has expired.
	2	An SSL error notification has been issued. Issued after the certification has expired.
	3	Notification of shift from a common authentication to an individual certification.
	4	Notification of a common certification without ID2.
	5	Notification that no certification was issued.
	6	Notification that GW URL does not exist.
069	CERT: Up ID	The ID of the request for certification.
083	Firmware Up Status	Displays the status of the firmware update.
084	Non-HDD Firm Up	This setting determines if the firmware can be updated, even without the HDD installed. 0: Not allowed update 1: Allowed update
085	Firm Up User Check	This SP setting determines if the operator can confirm the previous version of the firmware before

http://www.manuals4you.com

		the firmware update execution. If the option to confirm the previous version is selected, a notification is sent to the system manager and the firmware update is done with the firmware files from the URL.
086	Firmware Size	Allows the service technician to confirm the size of the firmware data files during the firmware update execution.
087	CERT: Macro Version	Displays the macro version of the NRS certification.
088	CERT: PAC Version	Displays the PAC version of the NRS certification.
089	CERT: ID2 Code	Displays ID2 for the NRS certification. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asteriskes () indicate that no NRS certification exists.
090	CERT: Subject	Displays the common name of the NRS certification subject. CN = the following 17 bytes. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asterisks () indicate that no DESS exists.
091	CERT: Serial Number	Displays serial number for the NRS certification. Asterisks () indicate that no DESS exists.
092	CERT: Issuer	Displays the common name of the issuer of the NRS certification. CN = the following 30 bytes. Asteriskes () indicate that no DESS exists.
093	CERT: Valid Start	Displays the start time of the period for which the current NRS certification is enabled.
094	CERT: Valid End	Displays the end time of the period for which the current NRS certification is enabled.
150	Selection Country	
	Select from the list the name of the country where Cumin-M is installed in the machine. After selecting the country, you must also set the following SP codes for Cumin-M:	

	▪ SP5816-153 ▪ SP5816-154 ▪ SP5816-161 0: Japan, 1: USA, 2: Canada, 3: UK, 4: Germany, 5: France, 6: Italy, 7: Netherlands, 8: Belgium, 9: Luxembourg, 10: Spain
151	Line Type Authentication Judgment
	Touch [Execute]. Setting this SP classifies the telephone line where Cumin-M is connected as either dial-up or push type, so Cumin-M can automatically distinguish the number that connects to the outside line. ▪ The current progress, success, or failure of this execution can be displayed with SP5816-152. ▪ If the execution succeeded, SP5816-153 will display the result for confirmation and SP5816-154 will display the telephone number for the connection to the outside line.
152	Line Type Judgment Result
	Displays a number to show the result of the execution of SP5816 151. Here is a list of what the numbers mean. 0: Success 1: In progress (no result yet). Please wait. 2: Line abnormal 3: Cannot detect dial tone automatically 4: Line is disconnected 5: Insufficient electrical power supply 6: Line classification not supported 7: Error because fax transmission in progress – ioctl() occurred. 8: Other error occurred 9: Line classification still in progress. Please wait.
153	Selection Dial/Push
	This SP displays the classification (tone or pulse) of the telephone line to the access point for Cumin-M. The numbered displayed (0 or 1) is the result of the execution of SP5816 151. However, this setting can also be changed

http://www.manuals4you.com

	manually. [0 to 1/ **0** / 1 /step] 0: Tone Dialing Phone 1: Pulse Dialing Phone Inside Japan "2" may also be displayed: 0: Tone Dialing Phone 1: Pulse Dialing Phone 10PPS 2: Pulse Dialing Phone 20PPS
154	Outside Line/Outgoing Number
	The SP sets the number that switches to PSTN for the outside connection for Cumin-M in a system that employs a PBX (internal line). ▪ If the execution of SP5816 151 has succeeded and Cumin-M has connected to the **external** line, this SP display is completely blank. ▪ If Cumin-M has connected to an **internal** line, then the number of the connection to the external line is displayed. ▪ If Cumin-M has connected to an external line, a comma is displayed with the number. The comma is inserted for a 2 sec. pause. ▪ The number setting for the external line can be entered manually (including commas).
156	Dial Up User Name
	Use this SP to set a user name for access to remote dial up. Follow these rules when setting a user name: ▪ Name length: Up to 32 characters ▪ Spaces and # allowed but the entire entry must be enclosed by double quotation marks (").
157	Dial Up Password
	Use this SP to set a password for access to remote dial up. Follow these rules when setting a user name: ▪ Name length: Up to 32 characters ▪ Spaces and # allowed but the entire entry must be enclosed by double quotation marks (").
161	Local Phone Number

	Use this SP to set the telephone number of the line where Cumin-M is connected. This number is transmitted to and used by the Call Center to return calls. Limit: 24 numbers (numbers only)	
162	Connection Timing Adjustment: Incoming	
	When the Call Center calls out to a Cumin-M modem, it sends a repeating ID tone (*#1#). This SP sets the line remains open to send these ID tones after the number of the Cumin-M modem is dialed up and connected. [0 to 24 / **1** / 1 /step] The actual amount of time is this setting x 2 sec. For example, if you set "2" the line will remain open for 4 sec.	
163	Access Point	
	This is the number of the dial-up access point for Cumin-M. If no setting is done for this SP code, then a preset value (determined by the country selected) is used. Default: 0 Allowed: Up to 16 alphanumeric characters	
164	Line Connecting	
	This SP sets the connection conditions for the customer. This setting dedicates the line to Cumin-M only, or sets the line for sharing between Cumin-M and a fax unit. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Sharing Fax 1: No Sharing Fax Note ▪ If this setting is changed, the copier must be cycled off and on. ▪ SP5816 187 determines whether the off-hook button can be used to interrupt a Cumin-M transmission in progress to open the line for fax transaction.	
173	Modem Serial Number	This SP displays the serial number registered for the Cumin-M.

http://www.manuals4you.com

174	Retransmission Limit		
	Normally, it is best to allow unlimited time for certification and ID2 update requests, and for the notification that the certification has been completed. However, Cumin-M generates charges based on transmission time for the customer, so a limit is placed upon the time allowed for these transactions. If these transactions cannot be completed within the allowed time, do this SP to cancel the time restriction.		
187	FAX TX Priority	-	
	This SP determines whether pushing the off-hook button will interrupt a Cumin-M transmission in progress to open the line for fax transaction. This SP can be used only if SP5816 164 is set to "0". [0 or 1/ **0** / -] 0: Disable, 1: Enable		
200	Manual Polling	-	Executes the manual polling.
201	Regist: Status		
	Displays a number that indicates the status of the NRS service device. 0: Neither the NRS device nor Cumin device are set. 1: The Cumin device is being set. Only Box registration is completed. In this status the Basil unit cannot answer a polling request. 2: The Cumin device is set. In this status the Basil unit cannot answer a polling request. 3: The NRS device is being set. In this status the Cumin device cannot be set. 4: The NRS module has not started.		
202	Letter Number	Allows entry of the number of the request needed for the Cumin device.	
203	Confirm Execute	Executes the inquiry request to the NRS GW URL.	
204	Confirm Result		
	Displays a number that indicates the result of the inquiry executed with SP5816 203. 0: Succeeded		

	1: Inquiry number error 2: Registration in progress 3: Proxy error (proxy enabled) 4: Proxy error (proxy disabled) 5: Proxy error (Illegal user name or password) 6: Communication error 7: Certification update error 8: Other error 9: Inquiry executing	
205	Confirm Place	
	Displays the result of the notification sent to the device from the GW URL in answer to the inquiry request. Displayed only when the result is registered at the GW URL.	
206	Register Execute	Executes Cumin Registration.
207	Register Result	
	Displays a number that indicates the registration result. 0: Succeeded 2: Registration in progress 3: Proxy error (proxy enabled) 4: Proxy error (proxy disabled) 5: Proxy error (Illegal user name or password) 6: Communication error 7: Certification update error 8: Other error 9: Registration executing	
208	Error Code	
	Displays a number that describes the error code that was issued when either SP5816-204 or SP5816-207 was executed.	

Cause	**Code**	**Meaning**
Illegal Modem	-11001	Chat parameter error

http://www.manuals4you.com

	Parameter	-11002	Chat execution error
		-11003	Unexpected error
	Operation Error, Incorrect Setting	-12002	Inquiry, registration attempted without acquiring device status.
		-12003	Attempted registration without execution of an inquiry and no previous registration.
		-12004	Attempted setting with illegal entries for certification and ID2.
	Error Caused by Response from GW URL	-2385	Attempted dial up overseas without the correct international prefix for the telephone number.
		-2387	Not supported at the Service Center
		-2389	Database out of service
		-2390	Program out of service
		-2391	Two registrations for same device
		-2392	Parameter error
		-2393	Basil not managed
		-2394	Device not managed
		-2395	Box ID for Basil is illegal
		-2396	Device ID for Basil is illegal
		-2397	Incorrect ID2 format
		-2398	Incorrect request number format
209	@Remote Setting Clear	Releases the machine from its Cumin setup.	
250	CommLog Print	Prints the communication log.	

5821	**[Remote Service Address]**		
002	RCG IP Address	*CTL	Sets the IP address of the RCG (Remote Communication Gate) destination for call processing at the remote service center.

5824	**[NV-RAM Data Upload]**		
	Uploads the UP and SP mode data (except for counters and the serial number) from the NVRAM to an SD card. For details, see the "NVRAM Data Upload/Download" in this section.		
001	NV-RAM Data Upload	#	-

5825	**[NV-RAM Data Download]**		
	Downloads the UP and SP mode data from an SD card to the NVRAM. For details, see the "NVRAM Data Upload/Download" in this section.		
001	NV-RAM Download	#	-

5828	**[Network Setting]**	*CTL	**-**
050	1284 Compatibility (Centro)	Enables or disables 1284 Compatibility. [0 or 1 / **1** / 1 / step] 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	
052	ECP (Centro)	Enables or disables ECP Compatibility. [0 or 1 / **1** / 1 / step] 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled Note ▪ This SP is activated only when SP5-828-50 is set to "1".	
065	Job Spooling	Enables/disables Job Spooling. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1 / step]	

http://www.manuals4you.com

		0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
066	Job Spooling Clear: Start Time	Treatment of the job when a spooled job exists at power on. 0: ON (Data is cleared) **1**: OFF (Automatically printed)
069	Job Spooling (Protocol)	Validates or invalidates the job spooling function for each protocol. **0**: Validates 1: Invalidates bit0: LPR bit1: FTP bit2: IPP bit3: SMB bit4: BMLinkS bit5: DIPRINT bit6: sftp bit7: (Reserved)
090	TELNET (0: OFF 1: ON)	Enables or disables the Telnet protocol. [0 or 1 / **1** / –] 0: Disable, 1: Enable
091	Web (0: OFF 1: ON)	Enables or disables the Web operation. [0 or 1 / **1** / –] 0: Disable, 1: Enable
145	Active IPv6 Link Local Address	This is the IPv6 local address link referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b) in the format: "Link Local Address" + "Prefix Length" The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.
147	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 1	These SPs are the IPv6 status addresses (1 to 5) referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b) in the format: "Status Address" + "Prefix Length"
149	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 2	

151	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 3	The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.
153	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 4	
155	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 5	
156	IPv6 Manual Address	This SP is the IPv6 manually set address referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b) in the format: "Manual Set Address" + "Prefix Length" The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.
158	IPv6 Gateway Address	This SP is the IPv6 gateway address referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b). The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.
160	Action Mode (IPv6)	
161	IPv6 Stateless Auto Setting	Enables or disables the automatic setting for IPv6 stateless. [0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Disable, 1: Enable
236	Web Item visible	Displays or does not display the Web system items. [0 x 0000 to 0 x ffff / **0 x ffff**] 0: Not displayed, 1: Displayed bit0: Net RICOH bit1: Consumable Supplier bit2-15: Reserved (all)
237	Web shopping link visible	Displays or does not display the link to Net RICOH on the top page and link page of the web system. [0 to 1 / **1** / 1] 0: Not display, 1:Display

http://www.manuals4you.com

238	Web supplies Link visible	Displays or does not display the link to Consumable Supplier on the top page and link page of the web system. [0 to 1 / **1** / 1] 0: Not display, 1:Display
239	Web Link1 Name	This SP confirms or changes the URL1 name on the link page of the web system. The maximum characters for the URL name are 31 characters.
240	Web URL	This SP confirms or changes the link to URL1 on the link page of the web system. The maximum characters for the URL are 127 characters.
241	Web visible	Displays or does not display the link to URL1 on the top page of the web system. [0 to 1 / **1** / 1] 0: Not display, 1:Display
242	Web Link2 Name	Same as "-239"
243	Web Link2 URL	Same as "-240"
244	Web Link2 visible	Same as "-241"

5832	**[HDD]** HDD Initialization	*CTL	**-**
001	HDD Formatting (ALL)	Initializes the hard disk. Use this SP mode only if there is a hard disk error.	
002	HDD Formatting (IMH)		
003	HDD Formatting (Thumbnail)		
004	HDD Formatting (Job Log)		
005	HDD Formatting (Printer Fonts)		
006	HDD Formatting (User Info)		
007	Mail RX Data		

008	Mail TX Data	
009	HDD Formatting (Data for a Design)	
010	HDD Formatting (Log)	
011	HDD Formatting (Ridoc I/F)	

5836	**[Capture Settings]**	*CTL	-	
001	Capture Function (0:Off 1:On)		**0**: Disable, 1: Enable	
	With this function disabled, the settings related to the capture feature cannot be initialized, displayed, or selected.			
002	Panel Setting		**0**: Displayed, 1: Not displayed	
	Displays or does not display the capture function buttons.			
	5836-71 to 5836-78, Copier and Printer Document Reduction The following 6 SP modes set the default reduction for stored documents sent to the document management server via the MLB. Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is installed.			
071	Reduction for Copy Color		0: 1to-1, 1: 1/2, **2: 1/3**, 3: 1/4	
072	Reduction for Copy B&W Text		**0: 1to-1**, 1: 1/2, 2: 1/3, 3: 1/4	
073	Reduction for Copy B&W Other		**0: 1to-1**, 1: 1/2, 2: 1/3, 3: 1/4	
074	Reduction for Printer Color		0: 1to-1, 1: 1/2, **2: 1/3**, 3: 1/4	
075	Reduction for Printer B&W		**0: 1to-1**, 1: 1/2, 2: 1/3, 3: 1/4	
076	Reduction for Printer B&W HQ		**0: 1to-1**, 1: 1/2, 2: 1/3, 3: 1/4	
077	Reduction for Printer Color 1200		1: 1/2, 3: 1/4, **4: 1/6**, 5: 1/8 (2: skipped)	
078	Reduction for Printer B&W 1200		**1: 1/2**, 3: 1/4, 4: 1/6, 5: 1/8 (2: skipped)	
	5836-81 to 5836-86, Stored document format The following 6 SP modes set Sets the default format for stored documents			

http://www.manuals4you.com

	sent to the document management server via the MLB. Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is installed.		
081	Format for Copy Color	**0: JFIF/JPEG**, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR Note ▪ This SP is not used in this model.	
082	Format for Copy B&W Text	0: JFIF/JPEG, **1: TIFF/MMR**, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR	
083	Format Copy B&W Other	0: JFIF/JPEG, **1: TIFF/MMR**, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR	
084	Format for Printer Color	**0: JFIF/JPEG**, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR Note ▪ This SP is not used in this model.	
085	Format for Printer B&W	0: JFIF/JPEG, **1: TIFF/MMR**, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR	
086	Format for Printer B&W HQ	0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR, **2: TIFF/MH**, 3: TIFF/MR	
091	Default for JPEG	[5 to 95 / **50** / 1 /step]	
	Sets the JPEG format default for documents sent to the document management server via the MLB with JPEG selected as the format. Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is installed.		
101	Primary srv IP address	Sets the IP address for the primary capture server. This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	
102	Primary srv scheme	This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	
103	Primary srv port number	This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	

104	Primary srv URL path	This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	
111	Secondary srv IP address	Sets the IP address for the secondary capture server. This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	
112	Secondary srv scheme	This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	
113	Secondary srv port number	This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	
114	Secondary srv URL path	This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	
120	Default Reso Rate Switch	This is basically adjusted by the remote system.	
121	Reso: Copy (Color)	[0 to 3 / **2** / 1/step]	
	Selects the resolution for color copy mode. This is basically adjusted by the remote system. 0: 600dpi/ 1: 300dpi/ 2: 150dpi/ 3: 75dpi		
122	Reso: Copy (Mono)	[0 to 5 / **3** / 1/step]	
	Selects the resolution for BW copy mode. This is basically adjusted by the remote system. 0: 600dpi/ 1: 400dpi/ 2: 300dpi/ 3: 200dpi/ 4: 150dpi/ 5: 100dpi		
123	Reso: Print (Color)	This is basically adjusted by the remote system. [0 to 3 / **2** / 1/step]	
	Selects the resolution for color print mode. This is basically adjusted by the remote system. 0: 600dpi/ 1: 300dpi/ 2: 150dpi/ 3: 75dpi		
124	Reso: Print (Color)	This is basically adjusted by the remote system. [0 to 5 / **3** / 1/step]	
	Selects the resolution for BW print mode. This is basically adjusted by the remote system. 0: 600dpi/ 1: 400dpi/ 2: 300dpi/ 3: 200dpi/ 4: 150dpi/ 5: 100dpi		

http://www.manuals4you.com

5839	**[IEEE1394]**	*CTL	-
007	Cycle Master	Turns the cycle master function on/off. [0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: OFF 1: ON	
008	BCR mode	Selects either ‘Standard’, 'IRM Color Copy', or **'Always Effective'.**	
009	IRM 1394a Check	Turns the IRM 1394a check on/off. [0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF 1: ON If the IRM is not defined as 1394a standard, its node is used as IRM.	
010	Unique ID	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF 1: ON	
011	Logout	Prevents initiators from logging on or makes initiators log off. [0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF (Prevents the initiators, having already logged on, to log on if they try to log on.) 1: ON (Makes initiators, having already logged on, to log off if they try to log on.)	
012	Login	Allows/disallows an initiator to exclusively log on. [0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF (Disallows) 1: ON (Allows)	
013	Login MAX	Specifies the maximum initiators able to log on. [0 to 63 / **8** / 1 /step]	

5840	**[IEEE 802.11b]**		
006	Channel Max	*CTL	[1 to 11 or 13 / **11 or 13** / 1 /step] Europe/Asia: 1 to 13 NA/ Asia: 1 to 11
	Sets the maximum number of channels available for data transmission via the wireless LAN. The number of channels available varies according to location. The default settings are set for the maximum end of the range for each area. Adjust the upper 4 bits to set the maximum number of channels. **DFU** Note ▪ Do not change the setting.		
007	Channel Min	*CTL	[1 to 11 or 13 / **1** / 1 /step] Europe: 1 to 13 NA/ Asia: 1 to 11
	Sets the minimum number of channels available for data transmission via the wireless LAN. The number of channels available varies according to location. The default settings are set for the minimum end of the range for each area. Adjust the lower 4 bits to set the minimum number of channels. **DFU** Note ▪ Do not change the setting.		
008	Transmission Speed	*CTL	0 x 00 to 0 x FF / **0 x FF to Auto** / -] **0 x FF to Auto** [Default] 0 x 11 - 55M Fix 0 x 10 - 48M Fix 0 x 0F - 36M Fix 0 x 0E - 18M Fix 0 x 0D - 12M Fix 0 x 0B - 9M Fix 0 x 0A - 6M Fix 0 x 07 - 11M Fix 0 x 05 - 5.5M Fix 0 x 08 - 1M Fix 0 x 13 - 0 x FE (reserved) 0 x 12 - 72M (reserved)

http://www.manuals4you.com

			0 x 09 - 22M (reserved)
011	WEP key Select	*CTL	Selects the WEP key. [00 to 11 / **00** / 1 binary] 00: Key #1 01: Key #2 (Reserved) 10: Key #3 (Reserved) 11: Key #4 (Reserved)
042	Fragment Thresh	*CTL	Adjusts the fragment threshold for the IEEE802.11 card. [256 to 2346 / **2346** / 1] This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.
043	1g CTS to Self	*CTL	Determines whether the CTS self function is turned on or off. [0 to 1 / **1** / 1] 0: Off, 1: On This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.
044	11g Slot Time	*CTL	Selects the slot time for IEEE802.11. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1] 0: 20 μm, 1: 9 μm
045	WPA Debug Lvl	*CTL	Selects the debug level for WPA authentication application. [1 to 3 / **3** / 1] 1: Info, 2: warning, 3: error This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.

5841	**[Supply Name Setting]**		
001	Toner Name Setting: Black	*CTL	Specifies supply names. These appear on the screen when the user presses the Inquiry button in the user tools screen.
002	Toner Name Setting: Cyan		
003	Toner Name Setting: Yellow		
004	Toner Name Setting: Magenta		

007	OrgStamp		
011	Staple Std1		
012	Staple Std2		
013	Staple Std3		
021	Staple Bind 1		

5842	**[GWWS Analysis Mode] DFU**		
001	Setting 1	*CTL	Default: **00000000** – do not change Netfiles: Jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software
002	Setting 2	*CTL	Adjusts the debug program modesetting. Bit7: 5682 mmseg-log setting 0: Date/Hour/Minute/Second 1: Minute/Second/Msec. 0 to 6: Not used

5844	**[USB]**		
001	Transfer Rate	*CTL	0x01: Full speed **0x04: Auto Change**
	Adjusts the USB transfer rate.		
002	Vendor ID	*CTL	Displays the vendor ID. **DFU**
003	Product ID	*CTL	Displays the product ID. **DFU**
004	Device Release Number	*CTL	Displays the development release version number. **DFU**

5845	**[Delivery Server Setting]**	*CTL	-

http://www.manuals4you.com

	Provides items for delivery server settings.		
001	FTP Port No.	[0 to 65535 / **3670** / 1 /step]	
	Sets the FTP port number used when image files to the Scan Router Server.		
002	IP Address (Primary)	Range: **000.000.000.000** to 255.255.255.255	
	Use this SP to set the Scan Router Server address. The IP address under the transfer tab can be referenced by the initial system setting.		
006	Delivery Error Display Time	[0 to 999 / **300** / 1 second /step]	
	Use this setting to determine the length of time the prompt message is displayed when a test error occurs during document transfer with the NetFile application and an external device.		
008	IP Address (Secondary)	Range: **000.000.000.000** to 255.255.255.255	
	Specifies the IP address assigned to the computer designated to function as the secondary delivery server of Scan Router. This SP allows only the setting of the IP address without reference to the DNS setting.		
009	Delivery Server Model	[0 to 4/ **0** / 1 /step]	
	Allows changing the model of the delivery server registered by the I/O device. 0: Unknown 1: SG1 Provided 2: SG1 Package 3: SG2 Provided 4: SG2 Package		
010	Delivery Svr Capability	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]	
	Bit7 = 1 Comment information exits		Changes the capability of the registered that the I/O device
	Bit6 = 1 Direct specification of mail address possible		
	Bit5 = 1 Mail RX confirmation setting possible		
	Bit4 = 1 Address book automatic update function exists		
	Bit3 = 1 Fax RX delivery function exists		

	Bit2 = 1 Sender password function exists	registered.
	Bit1 = 1 Function to link MK-1 user and Sender exists	
	Bit0 = 1 Sender specification required (if set to 1, Bit6 is set to “0”)	
011	Delivery Svr Capability (Ext)	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Changes the capability of the registered that the I/O device registered.	
	Bit7 = 1 Address book usage limitation (Limitation for each authorized user) Bit6 = 1 RDH authorization link Bit5 to 0: Not used	
013	Server Scheme (Primary) **DFU**	
	This is used for the scan router program.	
014	Server Port Number (Primary) **DFU**	
	This is used for the scan router program.	
015	Server URL Path (Primary) **DFU**	
	This is used for the scan router program.	
016	Server Scheme (Secondary) **DFU**	
	This is used for the scan router program.	
017	Server Port Number (Secondary) **DFU**	
	This is used for the scan router program.	
018	Server URL Path (Secondary) **DFU**	
	This is used for the scan router program.	
019	Capture Server Scheme **DFU**	
	This is used for the scan router program.	
020	Capture Server Port Number **DFU**	
	This is used for the scan router program.	

http://www.manuals4you.com

021	Capture Server URL Path **DFU**
	This is used for the scan router program.
022	Rapid Sending Control
	Enables or disables the prevention function for the continuous data sending error. [0 to 1 / **0** / -] 0: Disable, 1: Enable

5846	**[UCS Settings]**	*CTL	-
001	Machine ID (For Delivery Server)		Displays ID
	Displays the unique device ID in use by the delivery server directory. The value is only displayed and cannot be changed. This ID is created from the NIC MAC or IEEE 1394 EUI. The ID is displayed as either 6-byle or 8-byte binary.		
002	Machine ID Clear (For Delivery Server)		Clears ID
	Clears the unique ID of the device used as the name in the file transfer directory. Execute this SP if the connection of the device to the delivery server is unstable. After clearing the ID, the ID will be established again automatically by cycling the machine off and on.		
003	Maximum Entries	[2000 to 20000/ **2000** /1 /step]	
	Changes the maximum number of entries that UCS can handle. If a value smaller than the present value is set, the UCS managed data is cleared, and the data (excluding user code information) is displayed.		
006	Delivery Server Retry Timer		[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Sets the interval for retry attempts when the delivery server fails to acquire the delivery server address book.		
007	Delivery Server Retry Times		[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Sets the number of retry attempts when the delivery server fails to acquire		

	the delivery server address book.	
008	Delivery Server Maximum Entries	[2000 to 50000 / **2000** / 1/step]
	Sets the maximum number account entries of the delivery server user information managed by UCS.	
010	LDAP Search Timeout	[1 to 255 / **60** / 1 /step]
	Sets the length of the timeout for the search of the LDAP server.	
040	Addr Book Migration (SD => HDD)	
	Not used in this machine.	
041	Fill Addr Acl Info.	
	This SP must be executed immediately after installation of an HDD unit in a basic machine that previously had no HDD. The first time the machine is powered on with the new HDD installed, the system automatically takes the address book from the NVRAM and writes it onto the new HDD. However, the new address book on the HDD can be accessed only by the system administrator at this stage. Executing this SP by the service technician immediately after power on grants full address book access to all users. Procedure 1. Turn the machine off. 2. Install the new HDD. 3. Turn the machine on. 4. The address book and its initial data are created on the HDD automatically. 5. However, at this point the address book can be accessed by only the system administrator or key operator. 6. Enter the SP mode and do SP5846-041. After this SP executes successfully, any user can access the address book.	
043	Addr Book Media	Displays the slot number where an address book data is in. [0 to 30 / **-** /1] 0: Unconfirmed 1: SD Slot 1

http://www.manuals4you.com

		2: SD Slot 2 4: USB Flash ROM 20: HDD 30: Nothing
047	Initialize Local Addr Book	Clears the local address book information, including the user code.
048	Initialize Delivery Addr Book	Clears the distribution address book information, except the user code.
049	Initialize LDAP Addr Book	Clears the LDAP address book information, except the user code.
050	Initialize All Addr Book	Clears all directory information managed by UCS, including all user codes.
051	Backup All Addr Book	Uploads all directory information to the SD card.
052	Restore All Addr Book	Downloads all directory information from the SD card.
053	Clear Backup Info	Deletes the address book data from the SD card in the service slot. Deletes only the files that were uploaded from this machine. This feature does not work if the card is write-protected. Note ▪ After you do this SP, go out of the SP mode, and then turn the power off. ▪ Do not remove the SD card until the Power LED stops flashing.
060	Search Option	
	This SP uses bit switches to set up the fuzzy search options for the UCS local address book. Bit: Meaning 0: Checks both upper/lower case characters	

	1: Japan Only 2: Japan Only 3: Japan Only 4 to 7: Not Used	
062	Complexity Option 1 Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to **upper case** and sets the length of the password. [0 to 32 / **0** / 1 /step] Note ▪ This SP does not normally require adjustment. ▪ This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.	
063	Complexity Option 2 **DFU**	
064	Complexity Option 3 **DFU**	
065	Complexity Option 4 **DFU**	
091	FTP Auth Port Setting	Specifies the FTP port for getting a distribution server address book that is used in the identification mode. [0 to 65535 / **3671** / 1 /step]
094	Encryption Stat	Shows the status of the encryption function for the address book data.

5847	**[Rep Resolution Reduction]**	*CTL	-
	SP5847-1 through SP5847-8 changes the default settings of image data transferred externally by the Net File page reference function. [0 to 5 / **2** / 1 /step] SP5847-21 sets the default for JPEG image quality of image files handled by NetFile. “Net files” are jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software.		

http://www.manuals4you.com

001	Rate for Copy Color	0: 1x 1: 1/2x **2: 1/3x** 3: 1/4x 4: 1/6x 5: 1/8x
002	Rate for Copy B&W Text	
003	Rate for Copy B&W Other	
004	Rate for Printer Color	
005	Rate for Printer B&W	
021	Network Quality Default for JPEG	
	Sets the default value for the quality of JPEG images sent as NetFile pages. This function is available only with the MLB (Media Link Board) option installed. [5 to 95 / **50** / 1 /step]	

5848	**[Web Service]**	*CTL	-
	5848 2 sets the 4-bit switch assignment for the access control setting. Setting of 0001 has no effect on access and delivery from Scan Router. 5848 100 sets the maximum size allowed for downloaded images. The default is equal to 1 gigabyte.		
002	Access Ctrl: Repository (only Lower 4 bits)	0000: No access control 0001: Denies access to DeskTop Binder. **0010**: No writing control	
003	Access Control: Doc. Svr. Print (Lower 4 bits)	Switches access control on and off. **0000**: No access control 0001: Denies access to DeskTop Binder.	
004	Access Control: User Directory (only Lower 4 bits)		
007	Access Ctrl: Comm. Log Fax (Lower 4 bits)		
009	Access Ctrl: Job Ctrl (Lower 4 bits)		
011	Access Ctrl: Device		

	management (Lower 4 bits)	
021	Access Ctrl: Delivery (Lower 4 bits)	
022	Access Ctrl: uAdministration (Lower 4bits)	
100	Repository: Download Image Max. Size	Specifies the max size of the image data that the machine can download. [1 to 1024 / **1024** / 1 MB /step]
210	Setting: LogType: Job1	NIA
211	Setting: LogType: Job2	
212	Setting: LogType: Access	
213	Setting: Primary Srv	
214	Setting: Secondary Srv	
215	Setting: Start Time	
216	Setting: Interval Time	
217	Setting: Timing	

5849	**[Installation Date]**	*CTL	-
5849 1	Display	The “Counter Clear Day” has been changed to “Installation Date” or “Inst. Date”.	
5849 2	Switch to Print	Determines whether the installation date is printed on the printout for the total counter. [0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF (No Print) 1: ON (Print)	
003	Total Counter	-	

http://www.manuals4you.com

5850	**[Address Book Function]**	*CTL	-
003	Replacement of Circuit Classification **Japan Only**		
	The machine is sold ready to use with a G3 line. This SP allows you to switch all at once to convert to G4 after you add a G4 line. Conversely, if for some reason the G4 line becomes unusable, you can easily switch back to G3.		

5851	**[Bluetooth Mode]**
	Sets the operation mode for the Bluetooth Unit. Press either key. [0:Public] [1: Private]

5853	**[Stamp Data Download]**
	Use this SP to download the fixed stamp data stored in the firmware of the ROM and copy it to the HDD. This SP can be executed as many times as required. This SP must be executed after replacing or formatting the hard disks. Note ▪ This SP can be executed only with the hard disks installed.

5856	**[Remote ROM Update]**		
	Allows the technician to upgrade the firmware using a local port (IEEE1284) when updating the remote ROM.		
002	Local Port	*CTL	[0 to 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Disable 1: Enable

5857	**[Save Debug Log]**	*CTL	-
001	On/Off (1:ON 0:OFF)	**0**: OFF, 1: ON	
	Switches the debug log feature on and off. The debug log cannot be captured until this feature is switched on.		

002	Target (2: HDD 3: SD)	**2**: HDD, 3: SD Card
	Selects the storage device to save debug logs information when the conditions set with SP5-858 are satisfied. [2 to 3 / **2** / 1 /step]	
005	Save to HDD	
	Saves the debug log of the input SC number in memory to the HDD. A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD Card. Up to 4MB can be copied to an SD Card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to each SD Card.	
006	Save to SD Card	
	Saves the debug log of the input SC number in memory to the SD card.	
009	Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB)	
010	Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB Any Key)	
011	Erase HDD Debug Data	
012	Erase SD Card Debug Data	
013	Free Space on SD Card	
014	Copy SD to SD (Latest 4 MB)	
015	Copy SD to SD (Latest 4 MB Any Key)	
016	Make HDD Debug	
017	Make SD Debug	

5858	**[Debug Save When]**	*CTL	-
	These SPs select the content of the debugging information to be saved to the destination selected by SP5857-002. SP5858-3 stores one SC specified by number. Refer to Section 4 for a list of SC error codes.		

http://www.manuals4you.com

001	Engine SC Error	Turns on/off the debug save for SC codes generated by copier engine errors. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/ step] 0: OFF, 1: ON
002	Controller SC Error	Turns on/off the debug save for SC codes generated by GW controller errors. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/ step] 0: OFF, 1: ON
003	Any SC Error	[0 to 65535 / **0** / 1 /step]
004	Jam	Turns on/off the debug save for jam errors. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/ step] 0: OFF, 1: ON

5859	**[Debug Save Key No.]**	*CTL	**-**
001	Key 1	These SPs allow you to set up to 10 keys for log files for functions that use common memory on the controller board. [–9999999 to 9999999 / **0** / –]	
002	Key 2		
003	Key 3		
004	Key 4		
005	Key 5		
006	Key 6		
007	Key 7		
008	Key 8		
009	Key 9		
010	Key 10		

5860	**[SMTP/POP3/IMAP4]**	*CTL	**-**
020	Partial Mail Receive Timeout		[1 to 168 / **72** / –]

	Sets the amount of time to wait before saving a mail that breaks up during reception. The received mail is discarded if the remaining portion of the mail is not received during this prescribed time.	
021	MDN Response RFC2298 Compliance	[0 to 1 / **1** / –]
	Determines whether RFC2298 compliance is switched on for MDN reply mail. 0: No **1**: Yes	
022	SMTP Auth. From Field Replacement	[0 to 1 / **0** / –]
	Determines whether the FROM item of the mail header is switched to the validated account after the SMTP server is validated. **0**: No. “From” item not switched. 1: Yes. “From item switched.	
025	SMTP Auth. Direct Setting	[0 or 1 / **0** / –]
	Selects the authentication method for SMPT. **Bit switch:** • Bit 0: LOGIN • Bit 1: PLAIN • Bit 2: CRAM MD5 • Bit 3: DIGEST MD5 • Bit 4 to 7: Not used Note ▪ This SP is activated only when SMTP authorization is enabled by UP mode.	

026	S/MIVE: MIME Header Setting	-	Selects the MIME header type of an E-mail sent by S/MIME. [0 to 2 / **0** / 1] 0: Microsoft Outlook Express standard 1: Internet Draft standard 2: RFC standard

5866	**[E-mail Alert] Not Used**

http://www.manuals4you.com

005	Add Date Field	*CTL	Adds or does not add the date field to the header of the alert mail. [0 or 1 / **0** / –] 0: Not added, 1: Added

5870	**[Common Key Info Writing]**		
001	Writing	*CTL	Writes to flash ROM the common proof for validating the device for NRS specifications.

5873	**[SD Card Appli Move]**	
001	Move Exec	This SP copies the application programs from the original SD card in SD card slot 2 to an SD card in SD card slot 1.
002	Undo Exec	This SP copies back the application programs from an SD card in SD Card Slot 2 to the original SD card in SD card slot 1. Use this menu when you have mistakenly copied some programs by using "Move Exec" (SP5873-1).

5875	**[SC Auto Reboot]**		
001	Reboot Setting	*CTL	Enables or disables the automatic reboot function when an SC error occurs. [0 or 1/ **0** / –] 0: The machine reboots automatically when the machine issues an SC error and logs the SC error code. If the same SC occurs again, the machine does not reboot. 1: The machine does not reboot when an SC error occurs. The reboot is not executed for Type A or C SC codes.
002	Reboot Type	*CTL	Selects the reboot method for SC.

			[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Manual reboot, 1: Automatic reboot

5878	**[Option Setup]**		
001	Option Setup	-	Enables the Data Overwrite Security unit. Press "EXECUTE" on the operation panel. Then turn the machine off and on.
002	HDD Encryption	-	Installs the HDD Encryption unit.

5881	**[Fixed Phrase Block Erasing]**		
001	-	-	Deletes the fixed phrase.

5883	**[Line Speed Selection]**		
	Selects the line speed for middle thick paper.		
001	Middle Thick	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: MID CARD: Half Speed (115 mm/sec) 1: MID CARD: Normal Speed (C2c: 154, C2d: 205 mm/sec)

5885	**[WIM Settings]** Web Image Monitor Settings		
	Close or disclose the functions of web image monitor.		
020	Document Server ACC Ctrl	*CTL	0: OFF, 1: ON Bit Meaning 0: Forbid all document server access (1) 1: Forbid user mode access (1) 2: Forbid print function (1) 3: Forbid fax TX (1) 4: Forbid scan sending (1) 5: Forbid downloading (1)

http://www.manuals4you.com

			6: Forbid delete (1) 7: Reserved
050	DocSvr Format		Selects the display type for the document box list. [0 to 2 / **0** / 1] 0: Thumbnail, 1: Icon, 2: Details
051	DocSvr Trans		Sets the number of documents to be displayed in the document box list. [5 to 20 / **10** / 1]
101	Set Encryption		Determines whether the scanned documents with the WIM are encrypted when they are transmitted by an e-mail. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1] 0: Not encrypted, 1:Encryption

5886	**[Permit ROM Updating] DFU**		
	This SP determines whether the ROM can be updated.		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: ON, 1: OFF

⇒

5887	**[**SD Get Counter**]**		
	This SP sends a text file to an SD card inserted in SD card Slot 2 (lower slot). The file is stored in a folder created in the root directory of the SD card called SD_COUNTER. The file is saved as a text file (*.txt) prefixed with the number of the machine.		
001	-	*CTL	1. Insert the SD card in SD card Slot 2 (lower slot). 2. Select SP5887 then touch [EXECUTE].

5888	[Personal Information Protect]		
001	-	*CTL	Selects the protection level for logs. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1} 0: No authentication, No protection for logs 1: No authentication, Protected logs (only an administrator can see the logs)

5894	[External Charge Unit Setting]		
	-		
001	Switch Charge Mode	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1/step]

5907	[Plug & Play Maker/Model Name]
	Selects the brand name and the production name for Windows Plug & Play. This information is stored in the NVRAM. If the NVRAM is defective, these names should be registered again. After selecting, press the "Original Type" key and "**#**" key at the same time. When the setting is completed, the beeper sounds five times.

5913	[Switchover Permission Time]		
002	Print Application Timer	*CTL	[3 to 30 / **3** / 1 second /step]
	Sets the amount of time to elapse while the machine is in standby mode (and the operation panel keys have not been used) before another application can gain control of the display.		

http://www.manuals4you.com

5967	**[Copy Server Set Function]**	*CTL	**0**: ON, 1: OFF
	Enables and disables the document server. This is a security measure that prevents image data from being left in the temporary area of the HDD. After changing this setting, you must switch the main switch off and on to enable the new setting.		

5974	**[Cherry Server]**		
	Specifies which version of ScanRouter, “Lite” or “Full”, is installed.		
001	Cherry Server	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / –] 0: Lite, 1: Full

5985	**[Device Setting]**	
	The NIC and USB support features are built into the GW controller. Use this SP to enable and disable these features. In order to use the NIC and USB functions built into the controller board, these SP codes must be set to "1".	
001	On Board NIC	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Disable, 1: Enable, 2: Function limitation When the "Function limitation" is set, "On board NIC" is limited only for the NRS or LDAP/NT authentication. Note ▪ Other network applications than NRS or LDAP/NT authentication are not available when this SP is set to "2". Even though you can change the initial settings of those network applications, the settings do not work.
002	On Board USB	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Disable, 1: Enable

5987	**[Mech. Counter]**	
001	0: OFF / 1: ON	This SP detects that a mechanical counter device is removed. If it is detected, SC610 occurs.

5990	[SP print mode]		
	Prints out the SMC sheets.		
001	All (Data List)	-	-
002	SP (Mode Data List)	-	
003	User Program	-	
004	Logging Data	-	
005	Diagnostic Report	-	
006	Non-Default	-	
007	NIB Summary	-	
008	Capture Log	-	
021	Copier User Program	-	
022	Scanner SP	-	
023	Scanner User Program	-	

5998	**[Fusing Cont mode]** Fusing Control Mode		
	Turns the silent fusing warm-up mode on or off.		
001	fast/silent	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Silent (less noise) 1: Fast (less time)

http://www.manuals4you.com

SP6-XXX (Peripherals)

6006	**[ADF Adj.]** ADF Adjustment		
	Adjusts the side-to-side and leading registration of originals with the ARDF.		
001	Side-to-Side Registration	*ENG	[-3.0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]
002	Side-to-Side Registration (2nd side)		
003	Leading Edge Registration	*ENG	[-5.0 to 5.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]
	Adjusts the amount of paper buckle to correct original skew for the front and rear sides.		
005	Buckle: Duplex Front	*ENG	[-3.0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]
006	Buckle: Duplex Rear		[-2.5 to 2.5 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]
	Adjusts the erase margin at the original trailing edge.		
007	Rear Edge Erase	*ENG	[-10 to 10 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]

6007	**[ADF Input Check]**
	Displays the signals received from the sensors and switches of the ARDF. Only Bit 0 is used for ADF input check (☛ “Input Check Table” in this section).

6008	**[ADF Output Check]**
	Activates the electrical components for functional check. It is not possible to activate more than one component at the same time (☛ “Output Check Table” in this section).

6009	**[ADF Free Run]**
	Performs a DF free run in simplex, duplex mode or stamp mode.

001	Free Run Simplex Motion	-	-
002	Free Run Duplex Motion	-	
003	Free Run Stamp Motion	-	

6010	**[Stamp Position Adj.]** Fax Stamp Position Adjustment		
	Adjusts the horizontal position of the stamp on the scanned originals.		
6010 1	Stamp Position Adj.	*ENG	[-5.0 to 5.0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]

6016	**[Original Size Detection Priority]** Original Size Detection Priority			
	Specifies the original size for a size detected by the original sensor, since original sensors cannot recognize all sizes.			
001	Original Size Detection Priority	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Setting 1, 1: Setting 2	
		NA	Setting 1	Setting 2
			DLT SEF	Folio SEF 11" x 15"
			LG SEF	Foolscap SEF
			LT SEF	US EXE 8" x 10"
			LT LEF	US EXE LEF
		EU/ ASIA	DLT SEF	8K 267 x 390 mm
			LT SEF	16K 195 x 267 mm
			LT LEF	16K 267 x 195 mm

6017	**[DF Magnification Adj.]** DF Magnification Adjustment		
	Adjusts the magnification in the sub-scan direction for the ARDF.		
001	DF Magnification Adj.	*CTL	[-5.0 to 5.0 / **0** / 0.1 %/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

6020	[Skew Correction Moving Setting]		
	Turns the original skew correction in the ARDF for all original sizes on or off.		
001	-	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Off (only for small original sizes) 1: On (for all original sizes)

6128	[Punch Position: Sub Scan]		
	Adjusts the punching position in the sub scan direction.		
001	Domestic (Japan) 2Hole	*ENG	[-7.5 to 7.5 / **0** / 0.5 mm/step]
002	North America 3Hole	*ENG	
003	Europe 4Hole	*ENG	
004	North Europe 4Hole	*ENG	
005	North Europe 2Hole	*ENG	

6129	[Punch Position: Main Scan]		
	Adjusts the punching position in the main scan direction.		
001	Domestic (Japan) 2Hole	*ENG	[-2.0 to 2.0 / **0** / 0.4 mm/step]
002	North America 3Hole	*ENG	
003	Europe 4Hole	*ENG	
004	North Europe 4Hole	*ENG	
005	North Europe 2Hole	*ENG	

6130	[Skew Correction: Buckle Adj.]
	Adjusts the paper buckle for each paper size.

001	A3T	*ENG	[-5.0 to 5.0 / **0** / 0.25 mm/step]
002	B4T	*ENG	
003	A4T	*ENG	
004	A4Y	*ENG	
005	B5T	*ENG	
006	B5Y	*ENG	
007	DLT-T	*ENG	
008	LG-T	*ENG	
009	LT-T	*ENG	
010	LT-Y	*ENG	
011	12" x 18"	*ENG	
012	Other	*ENG	

6131	**[Skew Correction Control]**		
	Selects the skew correction control for each paper size. These are only activated for B804/B805.		
001	A3T	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] 0: No (No skew correction) 1: Roller Stop Skew Correction
002	B4T	*ENG	
003	A4T	*ENG	
004	A4Y	*ENG	
005	B5T	*ENG	
006	B5Y	*ENG	
007	DLT-T	*ENG	
008	LG-T	*ENG	

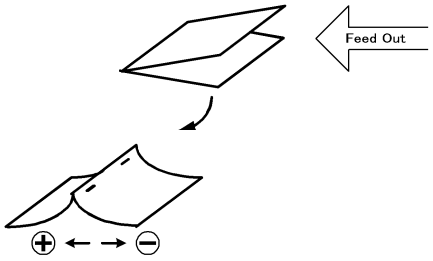
http://www.manuals4you.com

009	LT-T	*ENG	
010	LT-Y	*ENG	
011	12" x 18"	*ENG	
012	Other	*ENG	

6132	**[Jogger Fence Fine Adj]**		
	This SP adjusts the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack on the finisher stapling tray in the (Booklet) Finisher B804/B805. The adjustment is done perpendicular to the direction of paper feed.		
001	A3T	*ENG	[-1.5 to 1.5 / **0** / 0.5 mm/step] + Value: Increases distance between jogger fences and the sides of the stack. - Value: Decreases the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack.
002	B4T	*ENG	
003	A4T	*ENG	
004	A4Y	*ENG	
005	B5T	*ENG	
006	B5Y	*ENG	
007	DLT-T	*ENG	
008	LG-T	*ENG	
009	LT-T	*ENG	
010	LT-Y	*ENG	
011	12" x 18"	*ENG	
012	Other	*ENG	

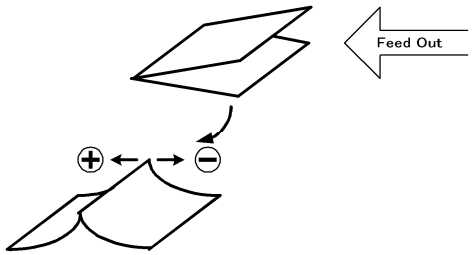
6133	**[Staple Position Adjustment]**
	Adjusts the staple position for each finisher (B408/B804/B805). + Value: Moves the staple position to the rear side.

	- Value: Moves the staple position to the front side.		
001	Finisher (B408/B804/B805)	*ENG	[-3.5 to 3.5 / **0** / 1/step]

6134	**[Saddle Stitch Position Adjustment]**	
	Use this SP to adjust the stapling position of the booklet stapler when paper is stapled and folded in the Booklet Finisher B804.	
001	A3T	[-3.0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.2 mm/step] + Value: Shifts staple position toward the crease. - Value: Shifts staple position away from the crease. 
002	B4T	
003	A4T	
004	B5T	
005	DLT-T	
006	LG-T	
007	LT-T	
008	12" x 18"	
009	Other	

6135	**[Folder Position Adj.]**	
	This SP corrects the folding position when paper is stapled and folded in the Booklet Finisher B804.	
001	A3T	[-3.0 to 3.0 / 0 / 0.2 mm/step] + Value: Shifts staple position toward the crease. - Value: Shifts staple position away from the crease.
002	B4T	
003	A4T	
004	B5T	
005	DLT-T	

http://www.manuals4you.com

006	LG-T	
007	LT-T	
008	12" x 18"	
009	Other	

6136	**[Folding Number]**	
	Sets the number of times that folding is done in the Booklet Finisher B804.	
001	-	[2 to 30 / **2** / 1 time/step]

6137	**[Finisher Free Run] Not used**	
	These SPs are used only for B793 finisher.	
001	Free Run 1	Free run for paper edge stapling.
002	Free Run 2	Free run for booklet stapling.
003	Free Run 3	Shipping free run. Simulates standby conditions during shipping.
004	Free Run 4	**DFU**

6138	**[FIN (TIG) INPUT Check]** Finisher (B793) Input Check
	Not Used in this machine

6139	**[FIN (KIN) INPUT Check]** Finisher (B408) Input Check
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the booklet finisher. (☛ "Input Check Table" in this section)

6140	**[FIN (EUP) INPUT Check]** Finisher (B804/B805) Input Check

	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the (booklet) finisher. (☛"Input Check Table" in this section)

6143	**[FIN (TIG) OUPUT Check]** Finisher (B793) Output Check
	Not Used in this machine

6144	**[FIN (KIN) OUPUT Check]** Finisher (B408) Output Check
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the booklet finisher. (☛"Output Check Table" in this section)

6145	**[FIN (EUP) OUPUT Check]** Finisher (B804/B805) Output Check
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the (booklet) finisher. (☛"Output Check Table" in this section)

6147	**[FIN (JAK) OUPUT Check]**
	Not used in this machine.

6148	**[Jogger Fine Adj]**	*ENG	Fine Adjust Output Jogger Unit Fences
001	A3T	This SP corrects the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack when the output jogger unit attached to the side of the machine jogs sheets as they exit the finisher. + Value: Increases distance between jogger fences and the sides of the stack. - Value: Decreases the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack. [-1.5 to 1.5 / **0** / 0.5 mm/step]	
002	B4T		
003	A4T		
004	A4Y		
005	B5Y		
006	A5Y		
007	DLT-T		
008	LG-T		

http://www.manuals4you.com

009	LT-T	
010	LT-Y	
011	HLT-Y	
012	Other	

6149	**[Max. Pre-Stack Sheet]**	*ENG	Number of Pre-Stack Sheets
	This SP sets the number of sheets sent to the pre-stack tray. **Note**: You may need to adjust this setting or switch it off when feeding thick or slick paper.		
001	-	[0 to 3 / **3** / 1 sheet/step]	

6150	**[INPUT Check]**
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the bridge unit (D386) (☛ "Input Check Table" in this section).

6151	**[OUTPUT Check]**
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the brisge unit (D386) (☛ "Output Check Table" in this section).

6152	**[INPUT Check]**
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the shift tray (D388) (☛ "Input Check Table" in this section).

6153	**[OUTPUT Check]**
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the shift tray (D388) (☛ "Output Check Table" in this section).

6154	**[INPUT Check]**
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the 1 bin tray (D414) (☛ "Input Check Table" in this section).

6155	**[OUTPUT Check]**
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the 1 bin tray (D414) (☛ "Output Check Table" in this section)
001	1 bin: Junction Solenoid

6157	**[OUTPUT Check]**
	Not used in this machine

6160	**[INPUT Check]**
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the two-tray paper feed unit (D351), LCT 2000 (D352) and LCT 1200 (D353) (☛ "Input Check Table" in this section)

6161	**[OUTPUT Check]**
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the two-tray paper feed unit (D351), LCT 2000 (D352) and LCT 1200 (D353) (☛ "Output Check Table" in this section)

http://www.manuals4you.com

SP7-XXX (Data Log)

7401	**[Total SC Counter]**		
	Displays the number of SC codes detected.		
001	SC Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999 / **0** / 1/step]

7403	**[SC History]**		
	Logs the SC codes detected. The 10 most recently detected SC Codes are not displayed on the screen, but can be seen on the SMC (logging) outputs.		
001	Latest	*CTL	-
002	Latest 1		
003	Latest 2		
004	Latest 3		
005	Latest 4		
006	Latest 5		
007	Latest 6		
008	Latest 7		
009	Latest 8		
010	Latest 9		

7502	**[Total Paper Jam Counter]**		
	Displays the total number of jams detected.		
001	Total Jam	* CTL	[0 to 9999 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]

7503	**[Total Original Jam Counter]**		
	Displays the total number of original jams.		
001	Original Jam counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999 / **0** / 1 original/step]

7504	**[Paper Jam Location]** ON: On check, OFF: Off Check		
	Displays the number of jams according to the location where jams were detected. **NOTE:** The LCT is counted as the 3rd feed station.		
001	At Power On	*CTL	For details, (☛ "Jam Detection" in the "Appendix: Jam Detection" section.
003	Tray 1: ON	*CTL	
004	Tray 2: ON	*CTL	
005	Tray 3: ON	*CTL	
006	Tray 4: ON	*CTL	
008	Bypass: ON	*CTL	
009	Duplex: ON	*CTL	
011	Vertical Transport 1: ON	*CTL	
012	Vertical Transport 2: ON	*CTL	
013	Bank Transport 1	*CTL	
017	Registration: ON	*CTL	
018	Fusing Entrance: ON	*CTL	
019	Fusing Exit: ON	*CTL	
020	Paper Exit: ON	*CTL	
021	Relay Exit: ON	*CTL	
022	Relay Transport: ON	*CTL	

http://www.manuals4you.com

025	Duplex Exit: ON	*CTL	
026	Duplex Reverse: ON	*CTL	
027	Duplex Entrance: ON	*CTL	
028	1 Bin Exit Sensor	*CTL	For details, (☛ "Jam Detection" in the "Appendix: Jam Detection" section.
051	SEF Sensor 1	*CTL	
052	SEF Sensor 2	*CTL	
053	Bank SEF Sensor 1	*CTL	
054	Bank SEF Sensor 2	*CTL	
057	Regist Sensor	*CTL	
059	Fusing Exit Sensor	*CTL	
060	Exit Sensor	*CTL	
061	Relay Exit Sensor	*CTL	
062	Relay Sensor	*CTL	
065	Duplex Exit Sensor	*CTL	
066	Duplex Entrance Sensor	*CTL	
068	1-Bin Exit: ON	*CTL	
100	Finisher Entrance: KIN	*CTL	
101	Finisher Shift Tray Exit: KIN	*CTL	
102	Finisher Staple: KIN	*CTL	
103	Finisher Exit: KIN	*CTL	
104	Finisher Drive Motor: KIN	*CTL	
105	Finisher Tray Lift Motor: KIN	*CTL	
106	Finisher Jogger Motor: KIN	*CTL	

107	Finisher Shift Motor: KIN	*CTL	
108	Finisher Staple Motor: KIN	*CTL	
109	Finisher Exit Motor: KIN	*CTL	
191	Finisher Entrance: EUP	*CTL	For details, (☛ "Jam Detection" in the "Appendix: Jam Detection" section.
192	Finisher Proof Exit: EUP	*CTL	
193	Finisher Shift Tray Exit: EUP	*CTL	
194	Finisher Stapler Exit: EUP	*CTL	
195	Finisher Exit: EUP	*CTL	
196	Finisher Staple: EUP	*CTL	
197	Finisher Saddle Stitch Staple: EUP	*CTL	
198	Finisher Folder: EUP	*CTL	
199	Finisher Tray Motor: EUP	*CTL	
200	Finisher Jogger Motor: EUP	*CTL	
201	Finisher Shift Motor: EUP	*CTL	
202	Finisher Staple Moving Motor: EUP	*CTL	
203	Finisher Staple Motor: EUP	*CTL	
204	Finisher Folder Motor: EUP	*CTL	
205	Finisher Exit Motor: EUP	*CTL	
206	Finisher Punch Motor: EUP	*CTL	
230	Finisher Exit No Response	*CTL	
231	Finisher Communication Error	*CTL	

http://www.manuals4you.com

7505	[Original Jam Detection]		
	Displays the total number of original jams by location.		
001	At Power On	*CTL	-
003	Separation: ON		
004	Skew Correction: ON		
005	Reading Entrance Sensor: ON		
006	Registration: ON		
007	Reading Exit Sensor: ON		
008	Paper Exit: ON		
053	Separation: OFF		
054	Skew Correction: OFF		
055	Reading Entrance Sensor: OFF		
056	Registration: OFF		
057	Reading Exit Sensor: OFF		
058	Paper Exit: OFF		

7506	[Jam Count by Paper Size]		
	Displays the number of jams according to the paper size.		
005	A4 LEF	*CTL	[0 to 9999 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]
006	A5 LEF		
014	B5 LEF		
038	LT LEF		
044	HLT LEF		
132	A3 SEF		

133	A4 SEF		
134	A5 SEF		
141	B4 SEF		
142	B5 SEF		
160	DLT SEF		
164	LG SEF		
166	LT SEF		
172	HLT SEF		
255	Others		

7507	**[Plotter Jam History]**		
	Displays the 10 most recently detected paper jams.		
001	Latest	*CTL	-
002	Latest 1		
003	Latest 2		
004	Latest 3		
005	Latest 4		
006	Latest 5		
007	Latest 6		
008	Latest 7		
009	Latest 8		
010	Latest 9		

7508	**[Original Jam History]**

http://www.manuals4you.com

	Displays the 10 most recently detected original jams.		
001	Latest	*CTL	-
002	Latest-1		
003	Latest-2		
004	Latest-3		
005	Latest-4		
006	Latest-5		
007	Latest-6		
008	Latest-7		
009	Latest-8		
010	Latest-9		

7801	**[ROM No]**		
002	Engine	*ENG	-
005	ADF	*ENG	-
007	Finisher	*ENG	-
009	Bank	*ENG	-
019	Bank2	*ENG	-
026	IH Fusing	*ENG	-
7801	**[Firmware Version]**		
102	Engine	*ENG	-
105	ADF	*ENG	-
107	Finisher	*ENG	-
110	LCT	*ENG	-

255	Engine	*CTL	Displays all versions and ROM numbers in SP7-910 and SP7-911.

7803	**[PM Counter Display]** (Page, Unit, [Color])		
	Displays the number of sheets printed for each current maintenance unit. PM counters click up based on the number of A4 (LT) LEF size sheets printed. Therefore, the A3 (DLT) Double Count is activated. The Double Count cannot be deactivated. When a unit is replaced, the machine automatically detects that the new unit is installed. Then, the current PM counter value is automatically moved to the PM Counter - Previous (SP7-906-1 to 10) and is reset to “0”. The total number of sheets printed with the last unit replaced can be checked with SP7-906-1 to 10. NOTE: The LCT is counted as the 3rd feed station.		
002	Page: PCU: Bk	-	-
003	Page: PCU: M		
004	Page: PCU: C		
005	Page: PCU: Y		
006	Page: Development Unit: Bk		
007	Page: Development Unit: M		
008	Page: Development Unit: C		
009	Page: Development Unit: Y		
010	Page: Developer: Bk		
011	Page: Developer: M		
012	Page: Developer: C		
013	Page: Developer: Y		

http://www.manuals4you.com

014	Page: Image Transfer		
015	Page: Cleaning Unit		
016	Page: Fusing Unit		
017	Page: Paper Transfer Unit		
018	Page: Toner Collection Bottle		
	Displays the number of revolutions of motors or clutches for each current maintenance unit. [0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1 revolution/step] When a unit is replaced, the machine automatically detects that the new unit is installed. Then, the current PM counter value is automatically moved to the PM Counter - Previous (SP7-906-11 to 20) and is reset to “0”. The total number of revolutions made with the last unit replaced can be checked with SP7-906-11 to 20.		
031	Rotation: PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 999999999 / - / 1 mm/step]
032	Rotation: PCU: M		
033	Rotation: PCU: C		
034	Rotation: PCU: Y		
035	Rotation: Development Unit: Bk		
036	Rotation: Development Unit: M		
037	Rotation: Development Unit: C		
038	Rotation: Development Unit: Y		
039	Rotation: Developer: Bk		
040	Rotation: Developer: M		
041	Rotation: Developer: C		
042	Rotation: Developer: Y		
043	Rotation: Image Transfer Belt		

044	Rotation: Cleaning Unit		
045	Rotation: Fusing Unit		
046	Rotation: Paper Transfer Unit		
047	Measurement: Toner Collection bottle		
	Displays the value given by the following formula: (Current revolution ÷ Target revolution) × 100. This shows how much of the unit's expected lifetime has been used up. The Rotation% counter is based on rotations, not prints. If the number of rotations reaches the limit, the machine enters the end condition for that unit. If the print count lifetime is reached first, the machine also enters the end condition, even though the R% counter is still less than 100%.		
061	Rotation (%): PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / - / 1 %/step]
062	Rotation (%): PCU: M		
063	Rotation (%): PCU: C		
064	Rotation (%): PCU: Y		
065	Rotation (%): Development Unit: Bk		
066	Rotation (%): Development Unit: M		
067	Rotation (%): Development Unit: C		
068	Rotation (%): Development Unit: Y		
069	Rotation (%): Developer: Bk		
070	Rotation (%): Developer: M		
071	Rotation (%): Developer: C		
072	Rotation (%): Developer: Y		
073	Rotation (%): Image Transfer		
074	Rotation (%): Cleaning Unit		

http://www.manuals4you.com

075	Rotation (%): Fusing Unit		
076	Rotation (%): Paper Transfer Unit		
077	Measurement (%): Toner Collection bottle		
	Displays the value given by the following formula: (Current printouts ÷ Target printouts) × 100. This shows how much of the unit's expected lifetime has been used up. The Page% counter is based on printouts, not revolutions. If the number of printouts reaches the limit, the machine enters the end condition for that unit. If the revolution count lifetime is reached first, the machine also enters the end condition, even though the Page% counter is still less than 100%.		
091	Page (%): PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / - / 1 %/step]
092	Page (%): PCU: M		
093	Page (%): PCU: C		
094	Page (%): PCU: Y		
095	Page (%): Development Unit: Bk		
96	Page (%): Development Unit: M		
97	Page (%): Development Unit: C		
98	Page (%): Development Unit: Y		
99	Page (%): Developer: Bk		
100	Page (%): Developer: M		
101	Page (%): Developer: C		
102	Page (%): Developer: Y		
103	Page (%): Image Transfer		
104	Page (%): Cleaning Unit		
105	Page (%): Fusing Unit		

106	Page (%): Paper Transfer Unit		

7804	**[PM Counter Reset]** PM Counter Clear (Unit, [Color])		
	Clears the PM counter. Press the Enter key after the machine asks “Execute?”, which will store the PM counter value in SP7-906 (PM Counter - Previous) and reset the value of the current PM counter (SP7-803) to “0”.		
002	PCU: K		
003	PCU: M		
004	PCU: C		
005	PCU: Y		
006	PCU: All		
007	Development Unit: Bk		
008	Development Unit: M		
009	Development Unit: C		
010	Development Unit: Y		
011	Development Unit: All		
012	Developer: Bk		
013	Developer: M		
014	Developer: C		
015	Developer: Y		
016	Developer: All		
017	Image Transfer Belt		
018	Cleaning Unit		

http://www.manuals4you.com

019	Fusing Unit		
020	Paper Transfer Unit		
021	Toner Collection Bottle		
0100	All		

7807	**[SC/Jam Counter Reset]**		
	Clears the counters related to SC codes and paper jams.		
001	SC/Jam Clear	-	-

7826	**[MF Error Counter] Japan Only**
001	Error Total
002	Error Staple

7827	**[MF Error Counter Clear] Japan Only**

7832	**[Self-Diagnose Result Display]**		
	Displays the result of the diagnostics.		
001	Diag. Result	*CTL	-

7836	**Total Memory Size**
	Displays the memory capacity of the controller system.

7852	**[DF Scan Glass Dust Check Counter]**
	Counts the number of occurrences (0 to 65,535) when dust was detected on the scanning glass of the ADF or resets the dust detection counter. Counting is done only if SP4-020-1 (ADF Scan Glass Dust Check) is switched on.

001	Dust Detection Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999 / - / 1 /step]
002	Dust Detection Clear Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999 / - / 1 /step]

7853	**[Replacement Counter]**		
	Displays the PM parts replacement number.		
001	PCU: Bk	*CTL	[0 to 255 / - / 1 /step]
002	PCU: M	*CTL	
003	PCU: C	*CTL	
004	PCU: Y	*CTL	
005	Development Unit: Bk	*CTL	
006	Development Unit: M	*CTL	
007	Development Unit: C	*CTL	
008	Development Unit: Y	*CTL	
009	Developer: Bk	*CTL	
010	Developer: M	*CTL	
011	Developer: C	*CTL	
012	Developer: Y	*CTL	
013	Image Transfer	*CTL	
014	Cleaning Unit	*CTL	
015	Fusing Unit	*CTL	
016	Paper Transfer Unit	*CTL	
017	Toner Collection Bottle	*CTL	

7855	**[Coverage Range]**

http://www.manuals4you.com

	Sets the color coverage threshold. Coverage rate = Coverage per page / A4 full coverage (dots) x 100 There are three coverage counters: Color 1, Color 2, and Color 3 ▪ [A] 5% (default) is adjustable with SP7855-001. ▪ [B] 20% (default) is adjustable with SP7855-002.  Note ▪ The setting value [B] must be set larger than [A]. The total numbers of printouts (BW printing plus color printing) for each coverage range are displayed with the following SPs. ▪ Color1 counter: SP8601-021 ▪ Color2 counter: SP8601-022 ▪ Color3 counter: SP8601-023		
001	Coverage Range 1	*CTL	[1 to 200 / **5** /1]
002	Coverage Range 2	*CTL	[1 to 200 / **20** /1]

7901	**[Assert Info]**		
	Records the location where a problem is detected in the program. The data stored in this SP is used for problem analysis. **DFU**		
001	File Name	*CTL	-
002	Number of Lines		
003	Location		

7906	**[Prev. Unit PM Counter]**		
	(Page or Rotations, Unit, [Color]), Dev.: Development Unit		
	Displays the number of sheets printed with the previous maintenance units.		
001	Page: PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1 page/step]

002	Page: PCU: M		
003	Page: PCU: C		
004	Page: PCU: Y		
005	Page: Development Unit: Bk		
006	Page: Development Unit: M		
007	Page: Development Unit: C		
008	Page: Development Unit: Y		
009	Page: Developer: Bk		
010	Page: Developer: M		
011	Page: Developer: C		
012	Page: Developer: Y		
013	Page: Image Transfer		
014	Page: Cleaning Unit		
015	Page: Fusing Unit		
016	Page: Paper Transfer Unit		
017	Page: Toner Collection Bottle		
	Displays the number of revolutions for motors or clutches in the previous maintenance units.		
031	Rotation: PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
032	Rotation: PCU: M		
033	Rotation: PCU: C		
034	Rotation: PCU: Y		
035	Rotation: Development Unit: Bk		
036	Rotation: Development Unit: M		

http://www.manuals4you.com

037	Rotation: Development Unit: C		
038	Rotation: Development Unit: Y		
039	Rotation: Developer: Bk		
040	Rotation: Developer: M		
041	Rotation: Developer: C		
042	Rotation: Developer: Y		
043	Rotation: Image Transfer Belt		
044	Rotation: Cleaning Unit		
045	Rotation: Fusing Unit		
046	Rotation: Paper Transfer Unit		
047	Measurement: Toner Collection bottle		
	Displays the number of sheets printed with the previous maintenance unit or toner cartridge.		
061	Rotation (%): PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 %/step]
062	Rotation (%): PCU: M		
063	Rotation (%): PCU: C		
064	Rotation (%): PCU: Y		
065	Rotation (%): Development Unit: Bk		
066	Rotation (%): Development Unit: M		
067	Rotation (%): Development Unit: C		
068	Rotation (%): Development Unit:		

	Y		
069	Rotation (%): Developer: Bk		
070	Rotation (%): Developer: M		
071	Rotation (%): Developer: C		
072	Rotation (%): Developer: Y		
073	Rotation (%): Image Transfer		
074	Rotation (%): Cleaning Unit		
075	Rotation (%): Fusing Unit		
076	Rotation (%): Paper Transfer Unit		
077	Measurement (%): Toner Collection bottle		
	Displays the value given by the following formula: (Current count ÷ Yield count) x 100, where “Current count” is the current values in the counter for the part, and “Yield count” is the recommended yield.		
091	Page (%): PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 %/step]
092	Page (%): PCU: M		
093	Page (%): PCU: C		
094	Page (%): PCU: Y		
095	Page (%): Development Unit: Bk		
96	Page (%): Development Unit: M		
97	Page (%): Development Unit: C		
98	Page (%): Development Unit: Y		
99	Page (%): Developer: Bk		
100	Page (%): Developer: M		

http://www.manuals4you.com

101	Page (%): Developer: C		
102	Page (%): Developer: Y		
103	Page (%): Image Transfer		
104	Page (%): Cleaning Unit		
105	Page (%): Fusing Unit		
106	Page (%): Paper Transfer Unit		

7931	**[Toner Bottle Bk]**		
	Displays the toner bottle information for Bk.		
001	Machine Serial ID	*ENG	
002	Cartridge Ver		
003	Brand ID		
004	Area ID		
005	Product ID		
006	Color ID		
007	Maintenance ID		
008	New Product Information		
009	Recycle Counter		
010	Date		
011	Serial No.		
012	Toner Remaining		
013	EDP Code		
014	End History		
015	Refill Information		

016	Attachment: Total Counter		
017	Attachment: Color Counter		
018	End: Total Counter		
019	End: Color Counter		
020	Attachment Date		
021	End Date		

7932	**[Toner Bottle M]**		
	Displays the toner bottle information for M.		
001	Machine Serial ID	*ENG	
002	Cartridge Ver		
003	Brand ID		
004	Area ID		
005	Product ID		
006	Color ID		
007	Maintenance ID		
008	New Product Information		
009	Recycle Counter		
010	Date		
011	Serial No.		
012	Toner Remaining		
013	EDP Code		
014	End History		
015	Refill Information		

http://www.manuals4you.com

016	Attachment: Total Counter		
017	Attachment: Color Counter		
018	End: Total Counter		
019	End: Color Counter		
020	Attachment Date		
021	End Date		

7933	**[Toner Bottle C]**		
	Displays the toner bottle information for C.		
001	Machine Serial ID	*ENG	
002	Cartridge Ver		
003	Brand ID		
004	Area ID		
005	Product ID		
006	Color ID		
007	Maintenance ID		
008	New Product Information		
009	Recycle Counter		
010	Date		
011	Serial No.		
012	Toner Remaining		
013	EDP Code		
014	End History		
015	Refill Information		

016	Attachment: Total Counter		
017	Attachment: Color Counter		
018	End: Total Counter		
019	End: Color Counter		
020	Attachment Date		
021	End Date		

7934	**[Toner Bottle Y]**		
	Displays the toner bottle information for Y.		
001	Machine Serial ID	*ENG	
002	Cartridge Ver		
003	Brand ID		
004	Area ID		
005	Product ID		
006	Color ID		
007	Maintenance ID		
008	New Product Information		
009	Recycle Counter		
010	Date		
011	Serial No.		
012	Toner Remaining		
013	EDP Code		
014	End History		
015	Refill Information		

http://www.manuals4you.com

016	Attachment: Total Counter		
017	Attachment: Color Counter		
018	End: Total Counter		
019	End: Color Counter		
020	Attachment Date		
021	End Date		

7935	**[Toner Bottle Log 1/2/3/4/5: Bk]**		
001	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 1 for Bk.
002	Attachment Date		
003	Attachment: Total Counter		
004	Refill Information		
011	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 2 for Bk.
012	Attachment Date		
013	Attachment: Total Counter		
014	Refill Information		
021	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 3 for Bk.
022	Attachment Date		
023	Attachment: Total Counter		
024	Refill Information		
031	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 4 for Bk.
032	Attachment Date		
033	Attachment: Total Counter		
034	Refill Information		

041	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 5 for Bk.
042	Attachment Date		
043	Attachment: Total Counter		
044	Refill Information		

7936	**[Toner Bottle Log 1/2/3/4/5: M]**		
001	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 1 for M.
002	Attachment Date		
003	Attachment: Total Counter		
004	Refill Information		
011	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 2 for M.
012	Attachment Date		
013	Attachment: Total Counter		
014	Refill Information		
021	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 3 for M.
022	Attachment Date		
023	Attachment: Total Counter		
024	Refill Information		
031	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 4 for M.
032	Attachment Date		
033	Attachment: Total Counter		
034	Refill Information		
041	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 5 for M.
042	Attachment Date		

http://www.manuals4you.com

043	Attachment: Total Counter		
044	Refill Information		

7937	**[Toner Bottle Log 1/2/3/4/5: C]**		
001	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 1 for C.
002	Attachment Date		
003	Attachment: Total Counter		
004	Refill Information		
011	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 2 for C.
012	Attachment Date		
013	Attachment: Total Counter		
014	Refill Information		
021	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 3 for C.
022	Attachment Date		
023	Attachment: Total Counter		
024	Refill Information		
031	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 4 for C.
032	Attachment Date		
033	Attachment: Total Counter		
034	Refill Information		
041	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 5 for C.
042	Attachment Date		
043	Attachment: Total Counter		
044	Refill Information		

7938	[Toner Bottle Log 1/2/3/4/5: Y]		
001	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 1 for Y.
002	Attachment Date		
003	Attachment: Total Counter		
004	Refill Information		
011	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 2 for Y.
012	Attachment Date		
013	Attachment: Total Counter		
014	Refill Information		
021	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 3 for Y.
022	Attachment Date		
023	Attachment: Total Counter		
024	Refill Information		
031	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 4 for Y.
032	Attachment Date		
033	Attachment: Total Counter		
034	Refill Information		
041	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 5 for Y.
042	Attachment Date		
043	Attachment: Total Counter		
044	Refill Information		

7950	[Unit Replacement Date]

http://www.manuals4you.com

	Displays the replacement date of each PM unit.		
001	Image Transfer Belt	*ENG	
002	Cleaning Unit		
003	Paper Transfer Unit		
004	Fusing Unit		
005	Toner Collection Bottle		
006	K PCU		
007	M PCU		
008	C PCU		
009	Y PCU		

7951	**[Remaining Day Counter]**		
	Displays the remaining unit life of each PM unit.		
001	Page: PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **255** / 1 day/step]
002	Page: PCU: M		
003	Page: PCU: C		
004	Page: PCU: Y		
005	Page: Development Unit: Bk		
006	Page: Development Unit: M		
007	Page: Development Unit: C		
008	Page: Development Unit: Y		
009	Page: Developer: Bk		
010	Page: Developer: M		
011	Page: Developer: C		

012	Page: Developer: Y		
013	Page: Image Transfer Belt		
014	Page: Cleaning Unit		
015	Page: Fusing Unit		
016	Page: Paper Transfer Unit		
031	Rotation: PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **255** / 1 day/step]
032	Rotation: PCU: M		
033	Rotation: PCU: C		
034	Rotation: PCU: Y		
035	Rotation: Development Unit: Bk		
036	Rotation: Development Unit: M		
037	Rotation: Development Unit: C		
038	Rotation: Development Unit: Y		
039	Rotation: Developer: Bk		
040	Rotation: Developer: M		
041	Rotation: Developer: C		
042	Rotation: Developer: Y		
043	Rotation: Image Transfer Belt		
044	Rotation: Cleaning Unit		
045	Rotation: Fusing Unit		
046	Rotation: Paper Transfer Unit		
047	Measurement: Toner Collection bottle		

http://www.manuals4you.com

7952	**[PM Yield Setting]**		
	Adjusts the unit yield of each PM unit.		
001	Rotation: Image Transfer Belt	*CTL	[0 to 999999999 / **256597000** / 1 mm/step]
002	Rotation: Cleaning Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999999 / **128299000** / 1 mm/step]
003	Rotation: Fusing Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999999 / **155595000** / 1 mm/step]
004	Rotation: Paper Transfer Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999999 / **192448000**/ 1 mm/step]
011	Page: Image Transfer Belt	*CTL	[0 to 999999 / **320000** / 1 sheet/step]
012	Page: Cleaning Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999 / **160000** / 1 sheet/step]
013	Page: Fusing Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999 / **160000** / 1 sheet/step]
014	Page: Paper Transfer Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999 / **240000**/ 1 sheet/step]
021	Day Threshold: PCU: Bk	*CTL	Adjusts the threshold day for the near end fro each PM unit. [1 to 30 / **15** / 1 day/step] These threshold days are used for NRS alarms.
022	Day Threshold: PCU: M		
023	Day Threshold: PCU: C		
024	Day Threshold: PCU: Y		
025	Day Threshold: Development Unit: Bk		
026	Day Threshold: Development Unit: M		
027	Day Threshold: Development Unit: C		
028	Day Threshold: Development Unit: Y		
029	Day Threshold: Developer: Bk		

030	Day Threshold: Developer: M		
031	Day Threshold: Developer: C		
032	Day Threshold: Developer: Y		
033	Day Threshold: Image Transfer Belt		
034	Day Threshold: Cleaning Unit		
035	Day Threshold: Fusing Unit		
036	Day Threshold: Paper Transfer Unit]		
037	Day Threshold: Toner Collection Botte		
038	Rotation: PCU: Bk		[0 to 999999999 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
039	Rotation: PCU: M		
040	Rotation: PCU: C		
041	Rotation: PCU: Y		
042	Rotation: Development Unit: Bk		[0 to 999999999 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
043	Rotation: Development Unit: M		
044	Rotation: Development Unit: C		
045	Rotation: Development Unit: Y		

http://www.manuals4you.com

046	Rotation: Developer: Bk		[0 to 999999999 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
047	Rotation: Developer: M		
048	Rotation: Developer: C		
049	Rotation: Developer: Y		
050	Page: PCU: Bk		[0 to 999999 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]
051	Page: PCU: M		
052	Page: PCU: C		
053	Page: PCU: Y		
054	Page: Development Unit: Bk		[0 to 999999 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]
055	Page: Development Unit: M		
056	Page: Development Unit: C		
057	Page: Development Unit: Y		
058	Page: Developer: Bk		[0 to 999999 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]
059	Page: Developer: M		
060	Page: Developer: C		
061	Page: Developer: Y		

7953	**[Operation Env. Log: PCU: Bk]**		
	Displays the PCU rotation distance in each specified operation environment. T: Temperature (°C), H: Relative Humidity (%)		
001	T<=5: 0<=H<30	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / - / 1 mm/step]

002	T<=5: 30<=H<55		
003	T<=5: 55<=H<80		
004	T<=5: 80<=H<=100		
005	5<T<15: 0<=H<30		
006	5<T<15: 30<=H<55		
007	5<T<15: 55<=H<80		
008	5<T<15: 80<=H<=100		
009	15<=T<25: 0<=H<30		
010	15<=T<25: 30<=H<55		
011	15<=T<25: 55<=H<80		
012	15<=T<25: 80<=H<=100		
013	25<=T<30: 0<=H<30		
014	25<=T<30: 30<=H<55		
015	25<=T<30: 55<=H<80		
016	25<=T<30: 80<=H<=100		
017	30<=T: 0<=H<30		
018	30<=T: 30<=H<55		
019	30<=T: 55<=H<80		
020	30<=T: 80<=H<=100		

7954	**[Operation Env. Log Clear]**
	Clears the operation environment log.

http://www.manuals4you.com

001			

SP8-xxx: Data Log2

Many of these counters are provided for features that are currently not available, such as sending color faxes, and so on. However, here are some Group 8 codes that when used in combination with others, can provide useful information.

SP Numbers	What They Do
SP8211 to SP8216	The number of pages scanned to the document server.
SP8401 to SP8406	The number of pages printed from the document server
SP8691 to SP8696	The number of pages sent from the document server

Specifically, the following questions can be answered:

- How is the document server actually being used?
- What application is using the document server most frequently?
- What data in the document server is being reused?

Most of the SPs in this group are prefixed with a letter that indicates the mode of operation (the mode of operation is referred to as an “application”). Before reading the Group 8 Service Table, make sure that you understand what these prefixes mean.

<table>
<tr><th>Prefixes</th><th colspan="2">What it means</th></tr>
<tr><td>T:</td><td>Total: (Grand Total).</td><td>Grand total of the items counted for all applications (C, F, P, etc.).</td></tr>
<tr><td>C:</td><td>Copy application.</td><td rowspan="4">Totals (pages, jobs, etc.) executed for each application when the job was not stored on the document server.</td></tr>
<tr><td>F:</td><td>Fax application.</td></tr>
<tr><td>P:</td><td>Print application.</td></tr>
<tr><td>S:</td><td>Scan application.</td></tr>
<tr><td>L:</td><td>Local storage (document server)</td><td>Totals (jobs, pages, etc.) for the document server. The L: counters work differently case by case. Sometimes, they count jobs/pages stored on the document server; this can be in document server</td></tr>
</table>

http://www.manuals4you.com

		mode (from the document server window), or from another mode, such as from a printer driver or by pressing the Store File button in the Copy mode window. Sometimes, they include occasions when the user uses a file that is already on the document server. Each counter will be discussed case by case.
O:	Other applications (external network applications, for example)	Refers to network applications such as Web Image Monitor. Utilities developed with the SDK (Software Development Kit) will also be counted with this group in the future.

The Group 8 SP codes are limited to 17 characters, forced by the necessity of displaying them on the small LCDs of printers and faxes that also use these SPs. Read over the list of abbreviations below and refer to it again if you see the name of an SP that you do not understand.

Key for Abbreviations

Abbreviation	What it means
/	“By”, e.g. “T:Jobs/Apl” = Total Jobs “by” Application
>	More (2> “2 or more”, 4> “4 or more”
AddBook	Address Book
Apl	Application
B/W	Black & White
Bk	Black
C	Cyan
ColCr	Color Create
ColMode	Color Mode
Comb	Combine

Abbreviation	What it means
Comp	Compression
Deliv	Delivery
DesApl	Designated Application. The application (Copy, Fax, Scan, Print) used to store the job on the document server, for example.
Dev Counter	Development Count, no. of pages developed.
Dup, Duplex	Duplex, printing on both sides
Emul	Emulation
FC	Full Color
FIN	Post-print processing, i.e. finishing (punching, stapling, etc.)
Full Bleed	No Margins
GenCopy	Generation Copy Mode
GPC	Get Print Counter. For jobs 10 pages or less, this counter does not count up. For jobs larger than 10 pages, this counter counts up by the number that is in excess of 10 (e.g., for an 11-page job, the counter counts up 11-10 =1)
IFax	Internet Fax
ImgEdt	Image Edit performed on the original with the copier GUI, e.g. border removal, adding stamps, page numbers, etc.
K	Black (YMCK)
LS	Local Storage. Refers to the document server.
LSize	Large (paper) Size
Mag	Magnification
MC	One color (monochrome)

http://www.manuals4you.com

Abbreviation	What it means
NRS	New Remote Service, which allows a service center to monitor machines remotely. “NRS” is used overseas, “CSS” is used in Japan.
Org	Original for scanning
OrgJam	Original Jam
Palm 2	Print Job Manager/Desk Top Editor: A pair of utilities that allows print jobs to be distributed evenly among the printers on the network, and allows files to moved around, combined, and converted to different formats.
PC	Personal Computer
PGS	Pages. A page is the total scanned surface of the original. Duplex pages count as two pages, and A3 simplex count as two pages if the A3/DLT counter SP is switched ON.
PJob	Print Jobs
Ppr	Paper
PrtJam	Printer (plotter) Jam
PrtPGS	Print Pages
R	Red (Toner Remaining). Applies to the wide format model A2 only. This machine is under development and currently not available.
Rez	Resolution
SC	Service Code (Error SC code displayed)
Scn	Scan
Sim, Simplex	Simplex, printing on 1 side.
S-to-Email	Scan-to-E-mail

Abbreviation	What it means
SMC	SMC report printed with SP5990. All of the Group 8 counters are recorded in the SMC report.
Svr	Server
TonEnd	Toner End
TonSave	Toner Save
TXJob	Send, Transmission
YMC	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan
YMCK	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black

Note

- All of the Group 8 SPs are reset with SP5 801 1 Memory All Clear.

8 001	T:Total Jobs	*CTL	These SPs count the number of times each application is used to do a job. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] **Note**: The L: counter is the total number of times the other applications are used to send a job to the document server, plus the number of times a file already on the document server is used.
8 002	C:Total Jobs	*CTL	
8 003	F:Total Jobs	*CTL	
8 004	P:Total Jobs	*CTL	
8 005	S:Total Jobs	*CTL	
8 006	L:Total Jobs	*CTL	

- These SPs reveal the number of times an application is used, not the number of pages processed.
- When an application is opened for image input or output, this counts as one job.
- Interrupted jobs (paper jams, etc.) are counted, even though they do not finish.
- Only jobs executed by the customer are counted. Jobs executed by the customer engineer using the SP modes are not counted.
- When using secure printing (when a password is required to start the print job), the job is counted at the time when either “Delete Data” or “Specify Output” is specified.

http://www.manuals4you.com

- A job is counted as a fax job when the job is stored for sending.
- When a fax is received to fax memory, the F: counter increments but the L: counter does not (the document server is not used).
- A fax broadcast counts as one job for the F: counter (the fax destinations in the broadcast are not counted separately).
- A fax broadcast is counted only after all the faxes have been sent to their destinations. If one transmission generates an error, then the broadcast will not be counted until the transmission has been completed.
- A printed fax report counts as one job for the F: counter.
- The F: counter does not distinguish between fax sending or receiving.
- When a copy job on the document server is printed, SP8022 also increments, and when a print job stored on the document server is printed, SP8024 also increments.
- When an original is both copied and stored on the document server, the C: and L: counters both increment.
- When a print job is stored on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When the user presses the Document Server button to store the job on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When the user enters document server mode and prints data stored on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When an image received from Palm 2 is received and stored, the L: counter increments.
- When the customer prints a report (user code list, for example), the O: counter increments. However, for fax reports and reports executed from the fax application, the F: counter increments.

8 011	T:Jobs/LS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of jobs stored to the document server by each application, to reveal how local storage is being used for input. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of jobs stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8 012	C:Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 013	F:Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 014	P:Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 015	S:Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 016	L:Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 017	O:Jobs/LS	*CTL	

- When a scan job is sent to the document server, the S: counter increments. When you enter document server mode and then scan an original, the L: counter increments.
- When a print job is sent to the document server, the P: counter increments.
- When a network application sends data to the document server, the O: counter increments.
- When an image from Palm 2 is stored on the document server, the O: counter increments.
- When a fax is sent to the document server, the F: counter increments.

8 021	T:Pjob/LS	*CTL	These SPs reveal how files printed from the document server were stored on the document server originally. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of jobs stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8 022	C:Pjob/LS	*CTL	
8 023	F:Pjob/LS	*CTL	
8 024	P:Pjob/LS	*CTL	
8 025	S:Pjob/LS	*CTL	
8 026	L:Pjob/LS	*CTL	
8 027	O:Pjob/LS	*CTL	

- When a copy job stored on the document server is printed with another application, the C: counter increments.
- When an application like DeskTopBinder merges a copy job that was stored on the document server with a print job that was stored on the document server, the C: and P: counters both increment.
- When a job already on the document server is printed with another application, the L: counter increments.
- When a scanner job stored on the document server is printed with another application, the S: counter increments. If the original was scanned from within document server mode, then the L: counter increments.
- When images stored on the document server by a network application (including Palm 2), are printed with another application, the O: counter increments.
- When a copy job stored on the document server is printed with a network application (Web Image Monitor, for example), the C: counter increments.

http://www.manuals4you.com

System Service Mode

- When a fax on the document server is printed, the F: counter increments.

8 031	T:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	These SPs reveal what applications were used to output documents from the document server. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of jobs printed from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8 032	C:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	
8 033	F:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	
8 034	P:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	
8 035	S:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	
8 036	L:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	
8 037	O:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	

- When documents already stored on the document server are printed, the count for the application that started the print job is incremented.
- When the print job is started from a network application (Desk Top Binder, Web Image Monitor, etc.) the L: counter increments.

8 041	T:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	These SPs count the applications that stored files on the document server that were later accessed for transmission over the telephone line or over a network (attached to an e-mail, or as a fax image by I-Fax). [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] **Note**: Jobs merged for sending are counted separately. The L: counter counts the number of jobs scanned from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8 042	C:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 043	F:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 044	P:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 045	S:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 046	L:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 047	O:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	

- When a stored copy job is sent from the document server, the C: counter increments.
- When images stored on the document server by a network application or Palm2 are sent as an e-mail, the O: counter increments.

8 051	T:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	These SPs count the applications used to send files from the document server over the telephone line or over a network (attached to an e-mail, or as a fax image by I-Fax). Jobs merged for sending are counted separately. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of jobs sent from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8 052	C:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	
8 053	F:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	
8 054	P:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	
8 055	S:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	
8 056	L:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	
8 057	O:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	

- If the send is started from Desk Top Binder or Web Image Monitor, for example, then the O: counter increments.

8 061	T:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total the finishing methods. The finishing method is specified by the application.		
8 062	C:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for copy jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application.		
8 063	F:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for fax jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application. **Note**: Finishing features for fax jobs are not available at this time.		
8 064	P:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for print jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application.		
8 065	S:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for scan jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application.		

http://www.manuals4you.com

	Note: Finishing features for scan jobs are not available at this time.		
8 066	L:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for jobs output from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. The finishing method is specified from the print window within document server mode.		
8 067	O:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for jobs executed by an external application, over the network. The finishing method is specified by the application.		
8 06x 1	Sort	Number of jobs started in Sort mode. When a stored copy job is set for Sort and then stored on the document server, the L: counter increments. (See SP8 066 1)	
8 06x 2	Stack	Number of jobs started out of Sort mode.	
8 06x 3	Staple	Number of jobs started in Staple mode.	
8 06x 4	Booklet	Number of jobs started in Booklet mode. If the machine is in staple mode, the Staple counter also increments.	
8 06x 5	Z-Fold	Number of jobs started In any mode other than the Booklet mode and set for folding (Z-fold).	
8 06x 6	Punch	Number of jobs started in Punch mode. When Punch is set for a print job, the P: counter increments. (See SP8 064 6.)	
8 06x 7	Other	Reserved. Not used.	

8 071	T:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of jobs broken down by the number of pages in the job, regardless of which application was used.		
8 072	C:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of copy jobs by size based on		

	the number of pages in the job.		
8 073	F:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of fax jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job.		
8 074	P:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of print jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job.		
8 075	S:Jobs/PGS		[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of scan jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job.		
8 076	L:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of jobs printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel, by the number of pages in the job.		
8 077	O:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of “Other” application jobs (Web Image Monitor, Palm 2, etc.) by size based on the number of pages in the job.		

8 07x 1	1 Page	8 07x 8	21 to 50 Pages
8 07x 2	2 Pages	8 07x 9	51 to 100 Pages
8 07x 3	3 Pages	8 07x 10	101 to 300 Pages
8 07x 4	4 Pages	8 07x 11	301 to 500 Pages
8 07x 5	5 Pages	8 07x 12	501 to 700 Pages
8 07x 6	6 to 10 Pages	8 07x 13	701 to 1000 Pages
8 07x 7	11 to 20 Pages	8 07x 14	1001 to Pages

- For example: When a copy job stored on the document server is printed in document

http://www.manuals4you.com

server mode, the appropriate L: counter (SP8076 0xx) increments.

- Printing a fax report counts as a job and increments the F: counter (SP 8073).
- Interrupted jobs (paper jam, etc.) are counted, even though they do not finish.
- If a job is paused and re-started, it counts as one job.
- If the finisher runs out of staples during a print and staple job, then the job is counted at the time the error occurs.
- For copy jobs (SP 8072) and scan jobs (SP 8075), the total is calculated by multiplying the number of sets of copies by the number of pages scanned. (One duplex page counts as 2.)
- The first test print and subsequent test prints to adjust settings are added to the number of pages of the copy job (SP 8072).
- When printing the first page of a job from within the document server screen, the page is counted.

8 111	T:FAX TX Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent by fax, either directly or using a file stored on the document server, on a telephone line. **Note**: Color fax sending is not available at this time.		
8 113	F: FAX TX Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent by fax directly on a telephone line. **Note**: Color fax sending is not available at this time.		
8 11x 1	B/W		
8 11x 2	Color		

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- This SP counts fax jobs sent over a telephone line with a fax application, including documents stored on the document server.
- If the mode is changed during the job, the job will count with the mode set when the job started.
- If the same document is faxed to both a public fax line and an I-Fax at a destination where both are available, then this counter increments, and the I-Fax counter (8 12x)

also increments.

- The fax job is counted when the job is scanned for sending, not when the job is sent.

8 121	T:IFAX TX Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent, either directly or using a file stored on the document server, as fax images using I-Fax. **Note**: Color fax sending is not available at this time.		
8 123	F: IFAX TX Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent (not stored on the document server), as fax images using I-Fax. **Note**: Color fax sending is not available at this time.		
8 12x 1	B/W		
8 12x 2	Color		

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- The counters for color are provided for future use; the color fax feature is not available at this time.
- The fax job is counted when the job is scanned for sending, not when the job is sent.

8 131	T:S-to-Email Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned and attached to an e-mail, regardless of whether the document server was used or not.		
8 135	S: S-to-Email Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned and attached to e-mail, without storing the original on the document server.		
8 13x 1	B/W		
8 13x 2	Color		

http://www.manuals4you.com

8 13x 3	ACS

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- If the job is stored on the document server, after the job is stored it is determined to be color or black-and-white then counted.
- If the job is cancelled during scanning, or if the job is cancelled while the document is waiting to be sent, the job is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- If several jobs are combined for sending to the Scan Router, Scan-to-Email, or Scan-to-PC, or if one job is sent to more than one destination. each send is counted separately. For example, if the same document is sent by Scan-to-Email as well as Scan-to-PC, then it is counted twice (once for Scan-to-Email and once for Scan-to-PC).

8 141	T:Deliv Jobs/Svr	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned and sent to a Scan Router server.		
8 145	S: Deliv Jobs/Svr	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned in scanner mode and sent to a Scan Router server.		
8 14x 1	B/W		
8 14x 2	Color		
8 14x 3	ACS		

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- The jobs are counted even though the arrival and reception of the jobs at the Scan Router server cannot be confirmed.
- If even one color image is mixed with black-and-white images, then the job is counted as a “Color” job.
- If the job is cancelled during scanning, or if the job is cancelled while the document is waiting to be delivered, the job is not counted.

- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- Even if several files are combined for sending, the transmission counts as one job.

8 151	T:Deliv Jobs/PC	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned and sent to a folder on a PC (Scan-to-PC). **Note**: At the present time, 8 151 and 8 155 perform identical counts.		
8 155	S:Deliv Jobs/PC	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned and sent with Scan-to-PC.		
8 15x 1	B/W		
8 15x 2	Color		
8 15x 3	ACS		

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- If the job is cancelled during scanning, it is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled while it is waiting to be sent, the job is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- Even if several files are combined for sending, the transmission counts as one job.

8 161	T:PCFAX TX Jobs	*CTL	These SPs count the number of PC Fax transmission jobs. A job is counted from when it is registered for sending, not when it is sent. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] **Note**: At the present time, these counters perform identical counts.
8 163	F:PCFAX TX Jobs	*CTL	

- This counts fax jobs started from a PC using a PC fax application, and sending the data out to the destination from the PC through the copier.

http://www.manuals4you.com

8 191	T:Total Scan PGS	*CTL	These SPs count the pages scanned by each application that uses the scanner to scan images. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
8 192	C:Total Scan PGS	*CTL	
8 193	F:Total Scan PGS	*CTL	
8 195	S:Total Scan PGS	*CTL	
8 196	L:Total Scan PGS	*CTL	

- SP 8 191 to 8 196 count the number of scanned sides of pages, not the number of physical pages.
- These counters do not count reading user stamp data, or reading color charts to adjust color.
- Previews done with a scanner driver are not counted.
- A count is done only after all images of a job have been scanned.
- Scans made in SP mode are not counted.

Examples

- If 3 B5 pages and 1 A3 page are scanned with the scanner application but not stored, the S: count is 4.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied and stored to the document server using the Store File button in the Copy mode window, the C: count is 6 and the L: count is 6.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied but not stored, the C: count is 6.
- If you enter document server mode then scan 6 pages, the L: count is 6.

8 201	T:LSize Scan PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of large pages input with the scanner for scan and copy jobs. Large size paper (A3/DLT) scanned for fax transmission are not counted. **Note**: These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display.		
8 203	F: LSize Scan PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of large pages input with the scanner for fax transmission. **Note**: These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User		

	Tools display.		
8 205	S:LSize Scan PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of large pages input with the scanner for scan jobs only. Large size paper (A3/DLT) scanned for fax transmission are not counted. **Note**: These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display.		

8 211	T:Scan PGS/LS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages scanned into the document server . [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen
8 212	C:Scan PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 213	F:Scan PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 215	S:Scan PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 216	L:Scan PGS/LS	*CTL	

- Reading user stamp data is not counted.
- If a job is cancelled, the pages output as far as the cancellation are counted.
- If the scanner application scans and stores 3 B5 sheets and 1 A4 sheet, the S: count is 4.
- If pages are copied but not stored on the document server, these counters do not change.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied and stored to the document server, the C: count is 6 and the L: count is 6.
- If you enter document server mode then scan 6 pages, the L: count is 6.

8 221	ADF Org Feeds	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages fed through the ADF for front and back side scanning.		
8 221 1	Front	Number of front sides fed for scanning: With an ADF that can scan both sides simultaneously, the Front	

http://www.manuals4you.com

		side count is the same as the number of pages fed for either simplex or duplex scanning. With an ADF that cannot scan both sides simultaneously, the Front side count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex front side scanning. (The front side is determined by which side the user loads face up.)
8 221 2	Back	Number of rear sides fed for scanning: With an ADF that can scan both sides simultaneously, the Back count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex scanning. With an ADF that cannot scan both sides simultaneously, the Back count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex rear-side scanning.

- When 1 sheet is fed for duplex scanning the Front count is 1 and the Back count is 1.
- If a jam occurs during the job, recovery processing is not counted to avoid double counting. Also, the pages are not counted if the jam occurs before the first sheet is output.

8 231	Scan PGS/Mode	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by each ADF mode to determine the work load on the ADF.		
8 231 1	Large Volume	Selectable. Large copy jobs that cannot be loaded in the ADF at one time.	
8 231 2	SADF	Selectable. Feeding pages one by one through the ADF.	
8 231 3	Mixed Size	Selectable. Select “Mixed Sizes” on the operation panel.	
8 231 4	Custom Size	Selectable. Originals of non-standard size.	
8 231 5	Platen	Book mode. Raising the ADF and placing the original directly on the platen.	

- If the scan mode is changed during the job, for example, if the user switches from ADF to Platen mode, the count is done for the last selected mode.
- The user cannot select mixed sizes or non-standard sizes with the fax application so if the original's page sizes are mixed or non-standard, these are not counted.
- If the user selects "Mixed Sizes" for copying in the platen mode, the Mixed Size count is enabled.
- In the SADF mode if the user copies 1 page in platen mode and then copies 2 pages with SADF, the Platen count is 1 and the SADF count is 3.

8 241	T:Scan PGS/Org	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of scanned pages by original type for all jobs, regardless of which application was used.		
8 242	C:Scan PGS/Org	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by original type for Copy jobs.		
8 243	F:Scan PGS/Org	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by original type for Fax jobs.		
8 245	S:Scan PGS/Org	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by original type for Scan jobs.		
8 246	L:Scan PGS/Org	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned and stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen		

	8 241		**8 242**	**8 243**	**8 245**	**8 246**
8 24x 1: Text		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
8 24x 2: Text/Photo		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

http://www.manuals4you.com

System Service Mode

8 24x 3: Photo	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
8 24x 4: GenCopy, Pale	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
8 24x 5: Map	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
8 24x 6: Normal/Detail	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
8 24x 7: Fine/Super Fine	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
8 24x 8: Binary	Yes	No	No	Yes	No
8 24x 9: Grayscale	Yes	No	No	Yes	No
8 24x 10: Color	Yes	No	No	Yes	No
8 24x 11: Other	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

- If the scan mode is changed during the job, for example, if the user switches from ADF to Platen mode, the count is done for the last selected mode.

8 251	T:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	These SPs show how many times Image Edit features have been selected at the operation panel for each application. Some examples of these editing features are: ▪ Erase> Border ▪ Erase> Center ▪ Image Repeat ▪ Centering ▪ Positive/Negative [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] Note: The count totals the number of times the edit features have been used. A detailed breakdown of exactly which features have been used is not given.
8 252	C:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	
8 254	P:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	
8 256	L:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	
8 257	O:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	

The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen.

8 261	T:Scan PGS/ColCr	*CTL	-
8 262	C:Scan PGS/ ColCr	*CTL	-
8 266	L:Scn PGS/ColCr	*CTL	-
8 26x 1	Color Conversion	These SPs show how many times color creation features have been selected at the operation panel.	
8 26x 2	Color Erase		
8 26x 3	Background		
8 26x 4	Other		

8 281	T:Scan PGS/TWAIN	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages scanned using a TWAIN driver. These counters reveal how the TWAIN driver is used for delivery functions. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] **Note**: At the present time, these counters perform identical counts.
8 285	S:Scan PGS/TWAIN	*CTL	

8 291	T:Scan PGS/Stamp	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages stamped with the stamp in the ADF unit. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen
8 293	F:Scan PGS/Stamp	*CTL	
8 295	S:Scan PGS/Stamp	*CTL	
8 296	L:Scan PGS/Stamp	*CTL	

8 301	T:Scan PGS/Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by all applications. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output (printing) page size [SP 8-441].		

http://www.manuals4you.com

8 302	C:Scan PGS/Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Copy application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output (printing) page size [SP 8-442].		
8 303	F:Scan PGS/Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Fax application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-443].		
8 305	S:Scan PGS/Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Scan application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-445].		
8 306	L:Scan PGS/Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned and stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-446].		
8 30x 1	A3	-	
8 30x 2	A4		
8 30x 3	A5		
8 30x 4	B4		
8 30x 5	B5		
8 30x 6	DLT		
8 30x 7	LG		
8 30x 8	LT		
8 30x 9	HLT		

8 30x 10	Full Bleed	
8 30x 254	Other (Standard)	
8 30x 255	Other (Custom)	

8 311	T:Scan PGS/Rez	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by resolution setting the total number of pages scanned by applications that can specify resolution settings.		
8 315	S: Scan PGS/Rez	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by resolution setting the total number of pages scanned by applications that can specify resolution settings. **Note**: At the present time, SP8-311 and SP8-315 perform identical counts.		
8 31x 1	1200dpi <		
8 31x 2	600dpi to 1199dpi		
8 31x 3	400dpi to 599dpi		
8 31x 4	200dpi to 399dpi		
8 31x 5	< 199dpi		

- Copy resolution settings are fixed so they are not counted.
- The Fax application does not allow finely-adjusted resolution settings so no count is done for the Fax application.

8 381	T:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages printed by the customer. The counter for the application used for storing the pages increments. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode
8 382	C:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	
8 383	F:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	
8 384	P:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	
8 385	S:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	

http://www.manuals4you.com

8 386	L:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	screen at the operation panel. Pages stored with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen go to the C: counter.
8 387	O:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	

- When the A3/DLT double count function is switched on with SP5104, 1 A3/DLT page is counted as 2.
- When several documents are merged for a print job, the number of pages stored are counted for the application that stored them.
- These counters are used primarily to calculate charges on use of the machine, so the following pages are not counted as printed pages:
  - Blank pages in a duplex printing job.
  - Blank pages inserted as document covers, chapter title sheets, and slip sheets.
  - Reports printed to confirm counts.
  - All reports done in the service mode (service summaries, engine maintenance reports, etc.)
  - Test prints for machine image adjustment.
  - Error notification reports.
  - Partially printed pages as the result of a copier jam.

8 391	LSize PrtPGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count pages printed on paper sizes A3/DLT and larger. **Note**: In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine.		

8 401	T:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages printed from the document server. The counter for the application used to print the pages is incremented. The L: counter counts the number of jobs stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
8 402	C:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	
8 403	F:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	
8 404	P:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	
8 405	S:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	
8 406	L:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	

- Print jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the L: count.
- Fax jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the F: count.

8 411	Prints/Duplex	*CTL	This SP counts the amount of paper (front/back counted as 1 page) used for duplex printing. Last pages printed only on one side are not counted. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]

8 421	T:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing. This is the total for all applications.		
8 422	C:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the copier application.		
8 423	F:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the fax application.		
8 424	P:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the printer application.		
8 425	S:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the scanner application.		
8 426	L:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing from within the document server mode		

http://www.manuals4you.com

	window at the operation panel.			
8 427	O:PrtPGS/Dup Comb		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by Other applications			
8 42x 1	Simplex> Duplex			
8 42x 2	Duplex> Duplex			
8 42x 3	Book> Duplex			
8 42x 4	Simplex Combine			
8 42x 5	Duplex Combine			
8 42x 6	2>	2 pages on 1 side (2-Up)		
8 42x 7	4>	4 pages on 1 side (4-Up)		
8 42x 8	6>	6 pages on 1 side (6-Up)		
8 42x 9	8>	8 pages on 1 side (8-Up)		
8 42x 10	9>	9 pages on 1 side (9-Up)		
8 42x 11	16>	16 pages on 1 side (16-Up)		
8 42x 12	Booklet			
8 42x 13	Magazine			

- These counts (SP8 421 to SP8 427) are especially useful for customers who need to improve their compliance with ISO standards for the reduction of paper consumption.
- Pages that are only partially printed with the n-Up functions are counted as 1 page.
- Here is a summary of how the counters work for Booklet and Magazine modes:

Booklet			**Magazine**	
Original Pages	**Count**		**Original Pages**	**Count**
1	1		1	1

2	2		2	2
3	2		3	2
4	2		4	2
5	3		5	4
6	4		6	4
7	4		7	4
8	4		8	4

8 431	T:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below, regardless of which application was used.		
8 432	C:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below with the copy application.		
8 434	P:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below with the print application.		
8 436	L:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of pages output from within the document server mode window at the operation panel with the three features below.		
8 437	O:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below with Other applications.		
8 43x 1	Cover/Slip Sheet	Total number of covers or slip sheets inserted. The count for a cover printed on both sides counts 2.	

http://www.manuals4you.com

8 43x 2	Series/Book	The number of pages printed in series (one side) or printed as a book with booklet right/left pagination.
8 43x 3	User Stamp	The number of pages printed where stamps were applied, including page numbering and date stamping.

8 441	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by all applications.		
8 442	C:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the copy application.		
8 443	F:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the fax application.		
8 444	P:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the printer application.		
8 445	S:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the scanner application.		
8 446	L:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.		
8 447	O:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by Other applications.		

8 44x 1	A3			
8 44x 2	A4			
8 44x 3	A5			
8 44x 4	B4			
8 44x 5	B5			
8 44x 6	DLT			
8 44x 7	LG			
8 44x 8	LT			
8 44x 9	HLT			
8 44x 10	Full Bleed			
8 44x 254	Other (Standard)			
8 44x 255	Other (Custom)			

- These counters do not distinguish between LEF and SEF.

8 451	PrtPGS/Ppr Tray	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of sheets fed from each paper feed station.		
8 451 1	Bypass	Bypass Tray	
8 451 2	Tray 1	Copier	
8 451 3	Tray 2	Copier	
8 451 4	Tray 3	Paper Tray Unit (Option)	
8 451 5	Tray 4	Paper Tray Unit (Option)	
8 451 6	Tray 5	LCT (Option)	
8 451 7	Tray 6	Currently not used.	

http://www.manuals4you.com

8 451 8	Tray 7	Currently not used.
8 451 9	Tray 8	Currently not used.
8 451 10	Tray 9	Currently not used.

8 461	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by all applications. ▪ These counters are not the same as the PM counter. The PM counter is based on feed timing to accurately measure the service life of the feed rollers. However, these counts are based on output timing. ▪ Blank sheets (covers, chapter covers, slip sheets) are also counted. ▪ During duplex printing, pages printed on both sides count as 1, and a page printed on one side counts as 1.		
8 462	C:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the copy application.		
8 463	F:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the fax application.		
8 464	P:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the printer application.		
8 466	L:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.		
8 46x 1	Normal		
8 46x 2	Recycled		

8 46x 3	Special
8 46x 4	Thick
8 46x 5	Normal (Back)
8 46x 6	Thick (Back)
8 46x 7	OHP
8 46x 8	Other

8 471	PrtPGS/Mag	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by magnification rate the number of pages printed.		
8 471 1	< 49%		
8 471 2	50% to 99%		
8 471 3	100%		
8 471 4	101% to 200%		
8 471 5	201% <		

- Counts are done for magnification adjusted for pages, not only on the operation panel but performed remotely with an external network application capable of performing magnification adjustment as well.
- Magnification adjustments done with printer drivers with PC applications such as Excel are also counted.
- Magnification adjustments done for adjustments after they have been stored on the document server are not counted.
- Magnification adjustments performed automatically during Auto Reduce/Enlarge copying are counted.
- The magnification rates of blank cover sheets, slip sheets, etc. are automatically assigned a rate of 100%.

8 481	T:PrtPGS/TonSave	*CTL	

http://www.manuals4you.com

8 484	P:PrtPGS/TonSave	*CTL	
	These SPs count the number of pages printed with the Toner Save feature switched on. **Note**: These SPs return the same results as this SP is limited to the Print application. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]		

8 491	T:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages printed in the Color Mode by each application.
8 492	C:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	
8 493	F:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	
8 496	L:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	
8 497	O:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	
8 49x 1	B/W		
8 49x 2	Single Color		
8 49x 3	Two Color		
8 49x 4	Full Color		

8 501	T:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages printed in the Color Mode by the print application.
8 504	P:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	
8 057	O:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	

8 50x 1	B/W
8 50x 2	Mono Color
8 50x 3	Full Color
8 50x 4	Single Color
8 50x 5	Two Color

8 511	T:PrtPGS/Emul		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by printer emulation mode the total number of pages printed.			
8 514	P:PrtPGS/Emul		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by printer emulation mode the total number of pages printed.			
8 514 1	RPCS			
8 514 2	RPDL			
8 514 3	PS3			
8 514 4	R98			
8 514 5	R16			
8 514 6	GL/GL2			
8 514 7	R55			
8 514 8	RTIFF			
8 514 9	PDF			
8 514 10	PCL5e/5c			
8 514 11	PCL XL			
8 514 12	IPDL-C			

http://www.manuals4you.com

System Service Mode

8 514 13	BM-Links	Japan Only		
8 514 14	Other			

- SP8 511 and SP8 514 return the same results as they are both limited to the Print application.
- Print jobs output to the document server are not counted.

8 521	T:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by all applications.		
8 522	C:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Copy application.		
8 523	F:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Fax application. **NOTE**: Print finishing options for received faxes are currently not available.		
8 524	P:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Print application.		
8 525	S:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Scanner application.		
8 526	L:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.		
8 52x 1	Sort		

8 52x 2	Stack
8 52x 3	Staple
8 52x 4	Booklet
8 52x 5	Z-Fold
8 52x 6	Punch
8 52x 7	Other

Note

- If stapling is selected for finishing and the stack is too large for stapling, the unstapled pages are still counted.
- The counts for staple finishing are based on output to the staple tray, so jam recoveries are counted.

8 531	Staples	*CTL	This SP counts the amount of staples used by the machine. [0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]

8 581	T:Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total output broken down by color output, regardless of the application used. In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine.		
8 581 1	Total		
8 581 2	Total: Full Color		
8 581 3	B&W/Single Color		
8 581 4	Development: CMY		
8 581 5	Development: K		
8 581 6	Copy: Color		

http://www.manuals4you.com

8 581 7	Copy: B/W
8 581 8	Print: Color
8 581 9	Print: B/W
8 581 10	Total: Color
8 581 11	Total: B/W
8 581 12	Full Color: A3
8 581 13	Full Color: B4 JIS or Smaller
8 581 14	Full Color Print
8 581 15	Mono Color Print
8 581 16	Full Color GPC

8 582	C:Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total output of the copy application broken down by color output.		
8 582 1	B/W		
8 582 2	Single Color		
8 582 3	Two Color		
8 582 4	Full Color		

8 583	F:Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total output of the fax application broken down by color output.		
8 583 1	B/W		
8 583 2	Single Color		

8 584	P:Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total output of the print application broken down by color output.		
8 584 1	B/W		
8 584 2	Mono Color		
8 584 3	Full Color		
8 584 4	Single Color		
8 584 5	Two Color		

8 586	L:Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total output of the local storage broken down by color output.		
8 582 1	B/W		
8 582 2	Single Color		
8 582 3	Two Color		
8 582 4	Full Color		

8 591	O:Counter		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the totals for A3/DLT paper use, number of duplex pages printed, and the number of staples used. These totals are for Other (O:) applications only.			
8 591 1	A3/DLT			
8 591 2	Duplex			

8 601	Coverage Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total coverage for each color and the total printout		

http://www.manuals4you.com

	pages for each printing mode.		
8 601 1	B/W		
8 601 2	Color		
8 601 11	B/W Printing Pages		
8 601 12	Color Printing Pages		

8 631	T:FAX TX PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to a telephone number.		
8 633	F:FAX TX PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to a telephone number.		
8 63x 1	B/W		
8 63x 2	Color		

- If a document has color and black-and-white pages mixed, the pages are counted separately as B/W or Color.
- At the present time, this feature is provided for the Fax application only so SP8631 and SP8633 are the same.
- The counts include error pages.
- If a document is sent to more than one destination with a Group transmission, the count is done for each destination.
- Polling transmissions are counted but polling RX are not.
- Relay, memory, and confidential mailbox transmissions and are counted for each destination.

8 641	T:IFAX TX PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to as fax images using I-Fax.		

8 643	F:IFAX TX PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by Fax as fax images using I-Fax.		
8 64x 1	B/W		
8 64x 2	Color		

- If a document has color and black-and-white pages mixed, the pages are counted separately as B/W or Color.
- At the present time, this feature is provided for the Fax application only so SP8641 and SP8643 are the same.
- The counts include error pages.
- If a document is sent to more than one destination with a Group transmission, the count is done for each destination.
- Polling transmissions are counted but polling RX are not.
- Relay, memory, and confidential mailbox transmissions and are counted for each destination.

8 651	T:S-to-Email PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages attached to an e-mail for both the Scan and document server applications.		
8 655	S-to-Email PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages attached to an e-mail for the Scan application only.		
8 65x 1	B/W		
8 65x 2	Color		

Note

- The count for B/W and Color pages is done after the document is stored on the HDD. If the job is cancelled before it is stored, the pages are not counted.
- If Scan-to-Email is used to send a 10-page document to 5 addresses, the count is 10 (the pages are sent to the same SMTP server together).

http://www.manuals4you.com

- If Scan-to-PC is used to send a 10-page document to 5 folders, the count is 50 (the document is sent to each destination of the SMB/FTP server).
- Due to restrictions on some devices, if Scan-to-Email is used to send a 10-page document to a large number of destinations, the count may be divided and counted separately. For example, if a 10-page document is sent to 200 addresses, the count is 10 for the first 100 destinations and the count is also 10 for the second 100 destinations, for a total of 20.).

8 661	T:Deliv PGS/Svr	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a Scan Router server by both Scan and LS applications.		
8 665	Deliv PGS/Svr	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a Scan Router server by the Scan application.		
8 66x 1	B/W		
8 66x 2	Color		

Note

- The B/W and Color counts are done after the document is stored on the HDD of the Scan Router server.
- If the job is canceled before storage on the Scan Router server finishes, the counts are not done.
- The count is executed even if regardless of confirmation of the arrival at the Scan Router server.

8 671	T:Deliv PGS/PC	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a folder on a PC (Scan-to-PC) with the Scan and LS applications.		
8 675	Deliv PGS/PC	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent with Scan-to-PC with the Scan application.		

8 67x 1	B/W
8 67x 2	Color

8 681	T:PCFAX TXPGS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages sent by PC Fax. These SPs are provided for the Fax application only, so the counts for SP8 681 and SP8 683 are the same. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
8 683	F:PCFAX TXPGS	*CTL	

- This counts pages sent from a PC using a PC fax application, from the PC through the copier to the destination.
- When sending the same message to more than one place using broadcasting, the pages are only counted once. (For example, a 10-page fax is sent to location A and location B. The counter goes up by 10, not 20.)

8 691	T:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages sent from the document server. The counter for the application that was used to store the pages is incremented. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. Pages stored with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen go to the C: counter.
8 692	C:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 693	F:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 694	P:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 695	S:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 696	L:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	

Note

- Print jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the count.
- If several documents are merged for sending, the number of pages stored are counted for the application that stored them.
- When several documents are sent by a Fax broadcast, the F: count is done for the number of pages sent to each destination.

http://www.manuals4you.com

8 701	TX PGS/Port	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages sent by the physical port used to send them. For example, if a 3-page original is sent to 4 destinations via ISDN G4, the count for ISDN (G3, G4) is 12.		
8 701 1	PSTN-1		
8 701 2	PSTN-2		
8 701 3	PSTN-3		
8 701 4	ISDN (G3,G4)		
8 701 5	Network		

8 711	T:Scan PGS/Comp	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
8 715	S:Scan PGS/Comp	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages sent by each compression mode.		
8 715 1	JPEG/JPEG2000		
8 715 2	TIFF(Multi/Single)		
8 715 3	PDF		
8 715 4	Other		

8 741	RX PGS/Port	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages received by the physical port used to receive them.		
8 741 1	PSTN-1		
8 741 2	PSTN-2		
8 741 3	PSTN-3		
8 741 4	ISDN (G3,G4)		

8 741 5	Network		

8 771	Dev Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the frequency of use (number of rotations of the development rollers) for black and other color toners.		
8 771 1	Total		
8 771 2	K		
8 771 3	Y		
8 771 4	M		
8 771 5	C		

8 781	Toner Bottle Info.	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the number of already replaced toner bottles. **NOTE:** Currently, the data in SP7-833-011 through 014 and the data in SP8-781-001 through 004 are the same.		
8 781 1	Toner: BK	The number of black-toner bottles	
8 781 2	Toner: Y	The number of yellow-toner bottles	
8 781 3	Toner: M	The number of magenta-toner bottles	
8 781 4	Toner: C	The number of cyan-toner bottles	

8 791	LS Memory Remain	*CTL	This SP displays the percent of space available on the document server for storing documents. [0 to 100 / **0** / 1]

8 801	Toner Remain	*CTL	[0 to 100/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the percent of toner remaining for each color. This SP		

http://www.manuals4you.com

	allows the user to check the toner supply at any time. **Note:** This precise method of measuring remaining toner supply (1% steps) is better than other machines in the market that can only measure in increments of 10 (10% steps).
8 801 1	K
8 801 2	Y
8 801 3	M
8 801 4	C

8 851	Coverage Count: 0-10%	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 0% to 10%.		
8 851 11	0 to 2%: BK	8 851 31	5 to 7%: BK
8 851 12	0 to 2%: Y	8 851 32	5 to 7%: Y
8 851 13	0 to 2%: M	8 851 33	5 to 7%: M
8 851 14	0 to 2%: C	8 851 34	5 to 7%: C
8 851 21	3 to 4%: BK	8 851 41	8 to 10%: BK
8 851 22	3 to 4%: Y	8 851 42	8 to 10%: Y
8 851 23	3 to 4%: M	8 851 43	8 to 10%: M
8 851 24	3 to 4%: C	8 851 44	8 to 10%: C

8 861	Coverage Count: 11-20%	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 11% to 20%.		

8 861 1	BK
8 861 2	Y
8 861 3	M
8 861 4	C

8 871	Coverage Count: 21-30%	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 21% to 30%.		
8 871 1	BK		
8 871 2	Y		
8 871 3	M		
8 871 4	C		

8 881	Coverage Count: 31%-	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is 31% or higher.		
8 881 1	BK		
8 881 2	Y		
8 881 3	M		
8 881 4	C		

8 891	Printing PGS: Present Ink	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the amount of the remaining current toner for each		

http://www.manuals4you.com

	color.
8 891 1	BK
8 891 2	Y
8 891 3	M
8 891 4	C

8 901	Printing PGS: Log: Latest 1	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the amount of the remaining previous toner for each color.		
8 901 1	BK		
8 901 2	Y		
8 901 3	M		
8 901 4	C		

8 911	Printing PGS: Log: Latest 2	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the amount of the remaining 2nd previous toner for each color.		
8 911 1	BK		
8 911 2	Y		
8 911 3	M		
8 911 4	C		

8 921	Coverage Count: Total	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]

	Displays the total coverage and total printout number for each color.		
8 921 1	BK (%)		
8 921 2	Y (%)		
8 921 3	M (%)		
8 921 4	C (%)		
8 921 14	BK (Page)		
8 921 15	Y (Page)		
8 921 16	M (Page)		
8 921 17	C (Page)		

8 941	Machine Status	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the amount of time the machine spends in each operation mode. These SPs are useful for customers who need to investigate machine operation for improvement in their compliance with ISO Standards.		
8 941 1	Operation Time	Engine operation time. Does not include time while controller is saving data to HDD (while engine is not operating).	
8 941 2	Standby Time	Engine not operating. Includes time while controller saves data to HDD. Does not include time spent in Energy Save, Low Power, or Off modes.	
8 941 3	Energy Save Time	Includes time while the machine is performing background printing.	
8 941 4	Low Power Time	Includes time in Energy Save mode with Engine on. Includes time while machine is performing background printing.	
8 941 5	Off Mode Time	Includes time while machine is performing	

http://www.manuals4you.com

		background printing. Does not include time machine remains powered off with the power switches.
8 941 6	SC	Total time when SC errors have been staying.
8 941 7	PrtJam	Total time when paper jams have been staying during printing.
8 941 8	OrgJam	Total time when original jams have been staying during scanning.
8 941 9	Supply PM Unit End	Total time when toner end has been staying

8 951	AddBook Register	*CTL		
	These SPs count the number of events when the machine manages data registration.			
8 951 1	User Code	User code registrations.		[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
8 951 2	Mail Address	Mail address registrations.		
8 951 3	Fax Destination	Fax destination registrations.		
8 951 4	Group	Group destination registrations.		
8 951 5	Transfer Request	Fax relay destination registrations for relay TX.		
8 951 6	F-Code	F-Code box registrations.		
8 951 7	Copy Program	Copy application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.		[0 to 255 / **0** / 255]
8 951 8	Fax Program	Fax application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.		
8 951 9	Printer Program	Printer application registrations		

		with the Program (job settings) feature.	
8 951 10	Scanner Program	Scanner application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.	

8 999	Adomin. Counter List	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	Displays the total coverage and total printout number for each color.		
8 999 1	Total		
8 999 2	Copy: Full Color		
8 999 3	Copy: BW		
8 999 4	Copy: Single Color		
8 999 5	Copy: Two Color		
8 999 6	Printer Full Color		
8 999 7	Printer BW		
8 999 8	Printer Single Color		
8 999 9	Printer Two Color		
8 999 10	Fax Print: BW		
8 999 12	A3/DLT		
8 999 13	Duplex		
8 999 14	Coverage: Color (%)		
8 999 15	Coverage: BW (%)		
8 999 16	Coverage: Color Print Page (%)		
8 999 17	Coverage: BW Print Page (%)		
8 999 101	Transmission Total: Color		

http://www.manuals4you.com

8 999 102	Transmission Total: BW	
8 999 103	FAX Transmission	
8 999 104	Scanner Transmission: Color	
8 999 105	Scanner Transmission: BW	

SP9-XXX: Others

9511	Skew Origin Set	*CTL	
001	M: Skew Motor	These SPs reset the skew correction value (SP2-119-001 to -003) to "0".	
002	C: Skew Motor		
003	Y: Skew Motor		

9911	**[Pressure Roller Condition]**		
001	Normal: Threshold: Upper Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **140** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between M (middle) and H (high). This SP is referred when the input voltage of the IH inverter is more than 93% (adjustable with SP1-916-026).		
002	Normal: Threshold: Lower Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **120** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between L (low) and M (middle). This SP is referred when the input voltage of the IH inverter is more than 93% (adjustable with SP1-916-026).		
003	Coefficient: Low	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **2** / 1 /step] 0: No effect 1: Normal 2: High 3: Highest
	DFU Adjusts the coefficient value of the temperature correction for ferrite roller rotation when the the fusing unit is in the low temperature.		
004	Coefficient: Mid.	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **1** / 1 /step] **DFU**
005	Coefficient: High	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **0** / 1 /step] **DFU**

http://www.manuals4you.com

006	Stand-by: Threshold: Upper Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **180** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between M (middle) and H (high). This SP is referred when the input voltage of the IH inverter is 93% or less (adjustable with SP1-916-026).		
007	Stand-by: Threshold: Lower Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **120** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between L (low) and M (middle). This SP is referred when the input voltage of the IH inverter is 93% or less (adjustable with SP1-916-026).		
008	Mid. Thick: A3: Threshold: Upper Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **200** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between M (middle) and H (high). This SP is referred when the paper of 275 mm width or more is used in the middle thick paper and 205/154 mm/sec line speed mode.		
009	Mid. Thick: A3: Threshold: Lower Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **190** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between L (low) and M (middle). This SP is referred when the paper of 275 mm width or more is used in the middle thick paper and 205/154 mm/sec line speed mode.		

9912	**[Target Angle]** Ferrite Roller Paper Size Adjustment **DFU**		
001	A3/DLT	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **323** / 1 PULSE/step]
002	B4	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **381** / 1 PULSE/step]
003	A4/LT	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **400** / 1 PULSE/step]
004	B5	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **498** / 1 PULSE/step]
005	A5/HLT	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **525** / 1 PULSE/step]
006	B6	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **525** / 1 PULSE/step]

007	A6	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **525** / 1 PULSE/step]

9921	Page Correction Setting	*CTL	Not used in this machine. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]

9965	**[Repeat Print Temp.Correction]**		
	These SPs are used for Preventing the fusing temperature overheating due to a multiple printing job.		
001	JOB Interval: Plain	*ENG	[0 to 120 / **30** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the job interval time in plain paper mode. The machine does not enter the temperature correction mode for preventing the overheating for the time specified with this SP.		
002	JOB Interval: M-Thick	*ENG	[0 to 120 / **30** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the job interval time in middle thick paper mode. The machine does not enter the temperature correction mode for preventing the overheating for the time specified with this SP.		
003	Shift Time	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **600** / 10 sec/step]
	Specifies the threshold time for entering the temperature correction mode. If a job continues for the time specified with this SP, the machine enteres the temperature correction mode.		
004	Offset Value: Plain: Low Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
	Specified the offset temperature for the plain paper in the low temperature. The machine decreases this temperature when a job continues for 600 seconds (adjustable with SP9-965-003) and the environment temperature is 17°C or less.		
005	Offset Value: Plain: Normal/High Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

	Specified the offset temperature for the plain paper in the low temperature. The machine decreases this temperature when a job continues for 600 seconds (adjustable with SP9-965-003) and the environment temperature is more than 17°C and 30°C or less.		
006	Offset Value: M-Thick: Low Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
	Specified the offset temperature for the middle thick paper in the middle temperature. The machine decreases this temperature when a job continues for 600 seconds (adjustable with SP9-965-003) and the environment temperature is 17°C or less.		
007	Offset Value: M-Thick: Normal/High Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
	Specified the offset temperature for the middle thick paper in the middle temperature. The machine decreases this temperature when a job continues for 600 seconds (adjustable with SP9-965-003) and the environment temperature is more than 17°C and 30°C or less.		

8.1.2 INPUT CHECK TABLE

When entering the Input Check mode, 8 digits display the result for a section. Each digit corresponds to a different device as shown in the table.

Bit No.	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Result	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1

http://www.manuals4you.com

Copier

5803	Description	Reading	
		0	1
5803 1	2nd Tray Size Detection	See table 2 following this table.	
5803 2	1st Tray Set Detection	Set	Not set
5803 3	1st Tray Paper Height Sensor1	See table 1 following this table.	
5803 4	1st Tray Paper Height Sensor2	See table 1 following this table.	
5803 5	2nd Tray Paper Height Sensor1	See table 1 following this table.	
5803 6	2nd Tray Paper Height Sensor2	See table 1 following this table.	
5803 7	1st Tray Paper End Detection	No paper	Paper remaining
5803 8	2nd Tray Paper End Detection	No paper	Paper remaining
5803 9	1st Tray Upper Limit Sensor	Not upper limit	Upper limit
5803 10	2nd Tray Upper Limit Sensor	Not upper limit	Upper limit
5803 11	Bypass Paper Width Detection	See table 3 following this table.	
5803 12	Bypass Paper End Detection	No paper	Paper remaining
5803 13	Bypass Paper Length Detection	See table 3 following this table.	
5803 14	1st Paper Feed Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 15	2st Paper Feed Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 16	Exit Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 17	Tray Full Exit Sensor	Paper not full	Paper full

5803 18	Fusing Exit Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
5803 19	Fusing Entrance Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 20	1st Vertical Transport Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 21	2nd Vertical Transport Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 22	Duplex Exit Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 23	Registration Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 24	Duplex Entrance Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 25	Junction Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 26	2nd Tray Set Detection	Set	Not set
5803 30	Toner End Sensor: Bk	Toner end	Toner remaining
5803 31	Toner End Sensor: M	Toner end	Toner remaining
5803 32	Toner End Sensor: C	Toner end	Toner remaining
5803 33	Toner End Sensor: Y	Toner end	Toner remaining
5803 34	Drum Phase Sensor: Bk	Actuator not detected	Actuator detected
5803 35	Drum Phase Sensor: M	Actuator not detected	Actuator detected
5803 36	Drum Phase Sensor: C	Actuator not detected	Actuator detected

http://www.manuals4you.com

5803 37	Drum Phase Sensor: Y	Actuator not detected	Actuator detected
5803 38	Interlock Release Detection 1	Front door open	Front door closed
5803 39	Interlock Release Detection 2	Front door open	Front door closed
5803 40	Right Door	Closed	Open
5803 41	Duplex Cover	Closed	Open
5803 42	Toner Collection Bottle Set	Set	Not set
5803 43	Toner Collection Full Sensor	Not full	Full
5803 46	ITB New Unit Detection	Not new	New
5803 50	Airflow Fan: Front: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 51	Airflow Fan: Rear: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 52	Fusing Exit Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 53	2nd Duct Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 54	3rd Duct Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 55	Paper Exit Fan:Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 56	Fusing Coil Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 57	IH Power Supply Cooling Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 58	Feed Motor Cooling Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 60	ITB Contact Motor Position	Not contact	Contact
5803 61	Paper Transfer Contact Motor Position	Not contact	Contact
5803 62	Toner Relay Motor: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 63	ITB Drive Motor: Lock	Normal	Lock

5803 64	K Drum/Development Drive Motor: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 65	M Drum/Development Drive Motor: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 66	C Drum/Development Drive Motor: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 67	Y Drum/Development Drive Motor: Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 68	Fusing Exit Motor:Lock	Normal	Lock
5803 80	HVPS:TTS:SC Detection	SC detected	No SC
5803 81	HVPS:CB:SC Detection	SC detected	No SC
5803 82	HVPS:D:SC Detection	SC detected	No SC
5803 83	Fusing Destination Detection: DOM (JPN)	Set	Not set
5803 84	Fusing Destination Detection: NA	Set	Not set
5803 83	Fusing Destination Detection: EU	Set	Not set
5803 83	Fusing Destination Detection: TWN	Set	Not set
5803 87	Fusing New Unit Detection	New	Not new
5803 88	Fusing Unit Detection1		
5803 89	Fusing Unit Detection2		
5803 90	Zero-cross Signal		
5803 91	Fusing Rotation Sensor	Actuator not detected	Actuator detected
5803 92	Fusing Pressue Release Sensor	Not contact	Contact
5803 94	GAVD Open/Close Detection	Closed (LD5V ON)	Open (LD5V OFF)

http://www.manuals4you.com

5803 100	Keycard: Set	Set	Not set
5803 101	Mechanical Counter Bk: Set	Set	Not set
5803 102	Mechanical Counter FC: Set	Set	Not set
5803 103	Key Counter: Set	Set	Not set
5803 110	IOB Version		
5803 200	Scanner HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
5803 201	Platen Cover Sensor	Open	Closed

ADF (B802)

6007	**Description**	**Reading**	
		0	**1**
6007 1	Original Length 1 (B5 Detection Sensor)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 2	Original Length 2 (A4 Detection Sensor)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 3	Original Length 3 (LG Detection Sensor)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 4	Original Width 1	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 5	Original Width 2	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 6	Original Width 3	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 7	Original Width 4	Paper not detected	Paper detected

6007 8	Original Width 5	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 9	Original Detection	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 10	Separation Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 11	Skew Correction	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 12	Scan Entrance Secsor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 13	Registration Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 14	Exit Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 15	Feed Cover Sensor	ADF cover close	ADF cover open
6007 16	Lift Up Sensor	ADF cover close	ADF cover open
6007 17	Inverter Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6007 18	Pick-Up Roller HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6007 19	Original Set HP Sensor	Original not detected	Original detected

http://www.manuals4you.com

2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher (B804, B805)

6140	Bit	Description	Reading	
			0	1
6140 1	Entrance Sensor		Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 2	Proof Exit Sensor		Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 3	Proof Full Detection Sensor		Not Full	Full
6140 4	Trailing Edge Detection: Shift		Paper not detected*1	Paper detected*1
6140 5	Staple Exit Sensor		Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 6	Shift HP Sensor		Not HP	HP
6140 7	Shift Exit Sensor		Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 8	Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor		Not HP	HP
6140 9	Paper Detection Sensor: Staple		Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 10	Paper Detection Sensor: Shift		Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 11	Paper Full Sensor: 2000-Sheet		Not Full	Full
6140 12	Oscillating Back Roller HP Sensor		Not HP	HP
6140 13	Jogger HP Sensor		Not HP	HP
6140 14	Exit Junction Gate HP Sensor		HP	Not HP
6140 15	Staple Tray Paper Sensor		Paper not	Paper detected

		detected	
6140 16	Staple Moving HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 17	Skew HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 18	Limit SW	Not Limit	Limit
6140 19	DOOR SW	Closed	Open
6140 20	Stapler 1 Rotation	Not HP	HP
6140 21	Staple Detection	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 22	Staple Leading Edge Detection	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 23	Punch Moving HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 24	Punch Registration HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 25	Punch Registratioin Detection Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 26	Punch Chad Full Sensor	Not Full	Full
6140 27	Punch HP	Not HP	HP
6140 28	Punch Selection DIPSW 1	See *[1]	
6140 29	Punch Selection DiPSW 2	See *[1]	
6140 30	Stack Junction Gate Open/Closed HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 31	Leading Edge Detection Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 32	Drive Roller HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 33	Arrival Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected

http://www.manuals4you.com

6140 34	Rear Edge Fence HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 35	Folder Cam HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 36	Folder Plate HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 37	Folder Pass Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 38	Saddle Full Sensor: Front	Paper not detected*2	Paper detected*2
6140 39	Saddle Full Sensor: Rear	Paper not detected*2	Paper detected*2
6140 40	Saddle Stitch Stapler 1 Rotation: Front	Not HP	HP
6140 41	Saddle Stitch Detection: Front	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 42	Saddle Stitch Leading Edge Detection: Front	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 43	Saddle Stitch Stapler 1 Rotation: Rear	Not HP	HP
6140 44	Saddle Stitch Detection: Rear	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 45	Saddle Stitch Leading Edge Detection: Rear	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 46	Full Sensor: 3000-Sheet	Not Full	Full
6140 47	Exit Jogger HP Sensor: Front	Not used in the machine	
6140 48	Exit Jogger HP Sensor: Rear	Not used in the machine	
6140 49	Exit Jogger HP Sensor: Rear	Not used in the machine	

*1: Combination of DIP SW 1 and SW 2

DIP SW 1	DIP SW 2	Punch Type
0	0	Japan
1	0	Europe
0	1	North America
1	1	North Europe

*2: Please refer to "Lower Tray (B804 Only)" in the Service Manual for the "2000/3000 (Booklet) Finisher".

http://www.manuals4you.com

1000-Sheet Finisher (B408)

6139	Description	Reading	
		0	1
6139 1	Entrance Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
6139 2	Shift Exit Sensor (Lower Tray Exit Sensor)	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6139 3	Staple Entrance Sensor (Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
6139 4	Staple Moving HP Sensor (Stapler HP Sensor)	Not home position	Home position
6139 5	Jogger HP Sensor (Jogger Fence HP Sensor)	Not home position	Home position
6139 6	Stack Feed-out Belt HP Sensor	Home position	Not home position
6139 7	Staple Tray Paper Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6139 8	Staple Rotation Sensor (Staple Rotation HP Sensor)	Not home position	Home position
6139 9	Staple Sensor	Staple detected	Staple not detected
6139 10	Staple READY Detection	Staple detected	Staple not detected
6139 11	Exit Guide Plate HP (Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor)	Not home position	Home position
6139 12	Shift HP Sensor	Not home position	Home position

6139 13	Paper Sensor (Stack Height Sensor)	Output tray not detected	Output tray detected
6139 14	Tray Lower Sensor (Lower Tray Lower Limit Sensor)	Lower limit	Not lower limit
6139 15	Proof Full Sensor (Paper Limit Sensor)	Not full	Full

Bridge Unit (D386)

6150	Description	Reading	
		0	1
6150 1	Bridge: Exit Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
6150 2	Bridge: Feed Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
6150 3	Bridge:Set Sensor	Set	Not set
6150 4	Bridge: Exit Cover Detection	Closed	Open
6150 5	Bridge: Feed Cover Detection	Closed	Open

http://www.manuals4you.com

Internal Shift Tray (D388)

6152	Description	Reading	
		0	1
6152 1	Shift:Set Sensor	Set	Not set
6152 2	Shift: Position Sensor	Tray position: Front	Tray position: Rear

1 Bin Tray (D414)

6154	Description	Reading	
		0	1
6154 1	1 bin: Set Sensor	Set	Not set
6154 2	1 bin: Paper Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected

Two-Tray Paper Feed Unit (D351)/ LCIT 2000 (D352)/ LCIT 1200 (D353)

6160	Description	Reading	
		0	1
6160 1	Bank: Tray3: Feed Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6160 2	Bank: Tray4: Feed Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6160 3	Bank: Tray5: Feed Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6160 4	Bank: Tray3: Relay Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6160 5	Bank: Tray4: Relay Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6160 6	Bank: Tray5: Relay Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6160 7	Bank: Feed Cover Detection	Closed	Open
6160 11	Bank: Palau: Paper Supply Switch	Closed	Open
6160 12	Bank: Palau: Slide Switch	Closed	Open

http://www.manuals4you.com

Table 1: Paper Height Sensor

0: Deactivated, 1: Activated (actuator inside sensor)

Remaining paper	Paper height sensor 1	Paper height sensor 2
Full	0	0
Nearly full	1	0
Near end	1	1
Almost empty	0	1

Table 2: Paper Size Switch (Tray 2)

Switch 1 is used for tray set detection.

0: Pushed, 1: Not pushed

Models		Switch Location		
North America	**Europe/Asia**	**4**	**3**	**2**
11" x 17" SEF*[1] (A3 SEF)	A3 SEF*[1] (11" x 17" SEF)	0	0	1
8.5" x 14" SEF *[2] (B4 SEF)	B4 SEF *[2] (8.5" x 14" SEF)	0	0	0
A4 SEF	A4 SEF	1	1	0
8.5" x 11" SEF	8.5" x 11" SEF	1	1	1
B5 SEF	B5 SEF	0	1	1
11" x 81/2" LEF*[3] (A4 LEF)	A4 LEF*[3] (11" x 81/2" LEF)	1	0	0
10.5" x 7.25" LEF*[4] (B5 LEF)	B5 LEF*[4] (10.5" x 7.25" LEF)	0	1	0

A5 LEF	A5 LEF	1	0	1

*1: The machine detects either 11" x 17" SEF or A3 SEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-003.
*2: The machine detects either 8.5" x 14" SEF or B4 SEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-004.
*3: The machine detects either 11" x 81/2" LEF or A4 LEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-002.
*4: The machine detects either B5 LEF or 10.5" x 7.25" LEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-005.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Table 3: Paper Size (By-pass Table)

0: ON, 1: OFF

By-pass Paper Size Sensor				Length Sensor	NA	EU/ASIA
bit3	Bit2	Bit1	Bit0			
1	1	1	1	1	HLT SEF	A6 SEF
0	1	1	1	1	HLT SEF	A6 SEF
0	0	1	1	1	HLT SEF	A5 SEF
1	0	1	1	1	HLT SEF	A5 SEF
1	0	0	1	0	LT/LG SEF*[1]	A4 SEF
1	0	0	1	1	LT/LG SEF*[1]	A5 LEF
1	1	0	1	0	LT/LG SEF*[1]	A4 SEF
1	1	0	1	1	LT/LG SEF*[1]	A5 LEF
1	1	0	0	0	DLT SEF	A3 SEF
1	1	0	0	1	LT LEF	A4 LEF
1	1	1	0	0	DLT SEF	A3 SEF
1	1	1	0	1	LT LEF	A4 LEF

*1: The paper size (LT or LG) can be selected with SP1-007-001.

Table 4: APS Original Size Detection

Original Size		Length Sensor			Width Sensor		SP4-301 display
Metric version	**Inch version**	L3	L2	L1	W1	W2	
A3	11" x 17"	O	O	O	O	O	00011111
B4	10" x 14"	O	O	O	O	X	00011110
F4 8.5" x 13", 8.25" x 13", or 8" x 13" SP 5126 controls the size that is detected	8.5” x 14”	O	O	O	X	X	00011100
A4 LEF	8.5" x 11"	X	X	X	O	O	00000011
B5 LEF	-	X	X	X	O	X	00000010
A4 SEF	11" x 8.5"	X	O	O	X	X	00001100
B5 SEF	-	X	X	O	X	X	00000100
A5 LEF/ SEF	5.5" x 8.5", 8.5" x 5.5"	X	X	X	X	X	00000000

http://www.manuals4you.com

8.1.3 OUTPUT CHECK TABLE

Copier

5804	Display	Description
5804 3	Drum/Dev Motor: K: 230mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-K: 230 mm/s
5804 4	Drum/Dev Motor: K: 205mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-K: 205 mm/s
5804 5	Drum/Dev Motor: K: 154mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-M: 154 mm/s
5804 7	Drum/Dev Motor: K: 77mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-M: 77 mm/s
5804 10	Drum/Dev Motor: M: 230mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor- C: 230 mm/s
5804 11	Drum/Dev Motor: M: 205mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 205 mm/s
5804 12	Drum/Dev Motor: M: 154mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 154 mm/s
5804 14	Drum/Dev Motor: M: 77mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 77 mm/s
5804 17	Drum/Dev Motor: C: 230mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor- C: 230 mm/s
5804 18	Drum/Dev Motor: C: 205mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 205 mm/s
5804 19	Drum/Dev Motor: C: 154mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 154 mm/s
5804 21	Drum/Dev Motor: C: 77mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 77

		mm/s
5804 24	Drum/Dev Motor: Y: 230mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor- C: 230 mm/s
5804 25	Drum/Dev Motor: Y: 205mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 205 mm/s
5804 26	Drum/Dev Motor: Y: 154mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 154 mm/s
5804 28	Drum/Dev Motor: Y: 77mm/s	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 77 mm/s
5804 31	Fusing Exit Motor: 230mm/s	Fusing/Paper Exit Motor: 230 mm/s
5804 32	Fusing Exit Motor: 205mm/s	Fusing/Paper Exit Motor: 205 mm/s
5804 33	Fusing Exit Motor: 154mm/s	Fusing/Paper Exit Motor: 154 mm/s
5804 35	Fusing Exit Motor: 77mm/s	Fusing/Paper Exit Motor: 77 mm/s
5804 36	Fusing Exit Motor: 56mm/s	Fusing/Paper Exit Motor: 56 mm/s
5804 37	Toner Relay Motor	Toner Transport Motor
5804 40	Image Transfer Motor: 230mm/s	ITB Drive Motor: 230 mm/s
5804 41	Image Transfer Motor: 205mm/s	ITB Drive Motor: 205 mm/s
5804 42	Image Transfer Motor: 154mm/s	ITB Drive Motor: 154 mm/s
5804 44	Image Transfer Motor: 77mm/s	ITB Drive Motor: 77 mm/s
5804 50	Feed Motor: 300mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 300 mm/s
5804 51	Feed Motor: 265mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 265 mm/s
5804 52	Feed Motor: 242mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 242 mm/s
5804 53	Feed Motor: 230mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 230 mm/s
5804 54	Feed Motor: 205mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 205 mm/s
5804 55	Feed Motor: 154mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 154 mm/s

http://www.manuals4you.com

5804 56	Feed Motor: 115mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 115mm/s
5804 57	Feed Motor: 77mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 115mm/s
5804 58	Feed Motor: 215mm/s	Registration Motor: 215 mm/s
5804 60	Regist Motor: 230mm/s	Registration Motor: 230 mm/s
5804 61	Regist Motor: 205mm/s	Registration Motor: 205 mm/s
5804 62	Regist Motor: 154mm/s	Registration Motor: 154 mm/s
5804 64	Regist Motor: 77mm/s	Registration Motor: 77 mm/s
5804 67	Duplex Feed M:CW:230mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CW: 230 mm/s
5804 68	Duplex Feed M:CW:205mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CW: 205 mm/s
5804 69	Duplex Feed Motor: CW: 154mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CW: 154 mm/s
5804 71	Duplex Feed Motor: CW: 77mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CW: 77 mm/s
5804 74	Duplex Feed M:CCW:230mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CCW: 230 mm/s
5804 75	Duplex Feed M:CCW:205mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CCW: 205 mm/s
5804 76	Duplex Feed Motor: CCW: 154mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CCW: 154 mm/s
5804 78	Duplex Feed Motor: CCW: 77mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CCW: 77 mm/s
5804 81	Duplex Reverse M:CW:230mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CW: 230 mm/s
5804 82	Duplex Reverse M:CW:205mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CW: 205 mm/s
5804 83	Duplex Reverse Motor: CW: 154mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CW: 154 mm/s
5804 85	Duplex Reverse Motor: CW: 77mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CW: 77 mm/s

5804 88	Duplex Reverse M:CCW:230mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CCW: 230 mm/s
5804 89	Duplex Reverse M:CCW:205mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CCW: 205 mm/s
5804 90	Duplex Reverse Motor: CCW: 154mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CCW: 154 mm/s
5804 92	Duplex Reverse Motor: CCW: 77mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CCW: 77 mm/s
5804 95	ITB Contact Motor	Image Transfer Belt Contact Motor
5804 96	Paper Transfer Contact Motor	Paper Transfer Contact Motor
5804 97	1st Tray Lift Motor: Up	Tray Lift Motor 1: Lift Up
5804 98	1st Tray Lift Motor: Down	Tray Lift Motor 1: Lift Down
5804 99	2nd Tray Lift Motor: Up	Tray Lift Motor 2: Lift Up
5804 100	2nd Tray Lift Motor: Down	Tray Lift Motor 2: Lift Down
5804 102	Fusing Pressue Release Motor	Pressure Roller Contact Motor
5804 104	Polygon Moter: LL	Polygon Motor: LL
5804 105	Polygon Moter: L	Polygon Motor: L
5804 107	Polygon Moter: HH	Polygon Motor: HH
5804 110	Air Flow Fan: Front	Ventilation Fan - Front
5804 111	Air Flow Fan:Rear	Ventilation Fan - Rear
5804 112	Fusing Fan:H	Fusing Fan: High Speed
5804 113	Fusing Fan:L	Fusing Fan: Low Speed
5804 114	PSU Cooling Fan	PSU Fan 1: High Speed
5804 115	2nd Duct Fan: H	Duct Fan 2: High Speed
5804 116	2nd Duct Fan: L	Duct Fan 2: Low Speed

http://www.manuals4you.com

5804 117	3rd Duct Fan: H	Duct Fan 3: High Speed
5804 118	3rd Duct Fan: L	Duct Fan 3: Low Speed
5804 119	Paper Exit Fan:H	Paper Exit Fan: High Speed
5804 120	Paper Exit Fan:L	Paper Exit Fan: Low Speed
5804 121	Fusing Coil Fan	IH Coil Fan
5804 122	IH Power Supply Cooling Fan	IH Inverter Fan
5804 123	Feed Motor Cooling Fan: Lock	Feed Motor Cooling Fan: Lock
5804 126	Development Clutch: Bk	Development Clutch-K
5804 127	Development Clutch: M	Development Clutch-M
5804 128	Development Clutch: C	Development Clutch-C
5804 129	Development Clutch: Y	Development Clutch-Y
5804 130	Toner Bottle Clutch: Bk	Toner Bottle Clutch-K
5804 131	Toner Bottle Clutch: M	Toner Bottle Clutch-M
5804 132	Toner Bottle Clutch: C	Toner Bottle Clutch-C
5804 133	Toner Bottle Clutch:Y	Toner Bottle Clutch-Y
5804 134	Toner Supply Pump: Bk	Toner Supply Clutch: Bk
5804 135	Toner Supply Pump: M	Toner Supply Clutch: M
5804 136	Toner Supply Pump: C	Toner Supply Clutch: C
5804 137	Toner Supply Pump: Y	Toner Supply Clutch: Y
5804 138	1st Paper Feed Clutch	Paper Feed Clutch 1
5804 139	2st Paper Feed Clutch	Paper Feed Clutch 2
5804 140	Bypass Feed Clutch	By-pass Feed Clutch
5804 141	Bypass Pickup Solenoid	Bypass Pickup Solenoid

5804 142	Feed Tray lock Solenoid	Tray Lock Solenoid
5804 143	TD Sensor Shutter Solenoid	ID Sensor Shutter Solenoid
5804 144	Exit Junction Solenoid	Junction Gate 1 Solenoid
5804 145	1st Feed Pickup Solenoid	1st Pickup Solenoid
5804 146	2st Feed Pickup Solenoid	2nd Pickup Solenoid
5804 147	Duplex Junction Solenoid	Duplex Junction Solenoid
5804 161	PCL: Bk	
5804 162	PCL: M	
5804 163	PCL: C	
5804 164	PCL: Y	
5804 165	TD Sensor Power Supply	
5804 166	HST Sensor:Bk	TD Sensor:Bk
5804 167	HST Sensor: M	TD Sensor: M
5804 168	HST Sensor: C	TD Sensor: C
5804 169	HST Sensor: Y	TD Sensor: Y
5804 170	Toner End Sensor: Bk	Toner End Sensor: Bk
5804 171	Toner End Sensor: M	Toner End Sensor: M
5804 172	Toner End Sensor: C	Toner End Sensor: C
5804 173	Toner End Sensor: Y	Toner End Sensor: Y
5804 174	TM Sensor: Front	ID Sensor: Front
5804 175	TM Sensor: Center	ID Sensor: Center
5804 176	TM Sensor: Rear	ID Sensor: Rear
5804 177	TM Sensor: M	ID Sensor: M

http://www.manuals4you.com

5804 178	TM Sensor: C	ID Sensor: C
5804 179	TM Sensor: Y	ID Sensor: Y
5804 181	Bank Motor 2: 115mm/s	Paper Feed Motor 2: 115 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit)
5804 182	Bank Motor 2: 154mm/s	Paper Feed Motor 2: 154 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit)
5804 183	Bank Motor 2: 205mm/s	Paper Feed Motor 2: 205 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit)
5804 184	Bank Motor 2: 215mm/s	Paper Feed Motor 2: 215 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit)
5804 186	PP:Development:K	
5804 187	PP Development:M	
5804 188	PP Development:C	
5804 189	PP Development:Y	
5804 190	PP Development:Y	
5804 192	RFID ON/OFF: K	
5804 193	RFID ON/OFF: Y	
5804 194	RFID ON/OFF: C	
5804 195	RFID ON/OFF: M	
5804 196	RFID COM ON:K	
5804 197	RFID COM ON: Y	
5804 198	RFID COM ON: C	
5804 199	RFID COM ON: M	
5804 202	Scanner Lamp	
5804 216	LD1: K	

5804 217	LD2: K	
5804 218	LD1: M	
5804 219	LD2: M	
5804 220	LD1: C	
5804 221	LD2: C	
5804 222	LD1: Y	
5804 223	LD2: Y	
5804 224	PP:1TB:K	PP: Image Transfer Roller: K
5804 225	PP:1TB:M	PP: Image Transfer Roller: M
5804 226	PP:1TB:C	PP: Image Transfer Roller: C
5804 227	PP:1TB:Y	PP: Image Transfer Roller: Y
5804 228	PP:PTR:+	PP: Paper Transfer Roller:+
5804 229	PP:PTR:-	PP: Paper Transfer Roller:-
5804 231	HVPS: ChargeDC: K	
5804 232	HVPS: ChargeDC: C	
5804 233	HVPS: ChargeDC: M	
5804 234	HVPS: ChargeDC: Y	
5804 237	PP:Charge AC:K:230mm/s	
5804 238	PP:Charge AC:K:205mm/s	
5804 239	HVPS: ChargeAC: K: 154mm/s	
5804 241	HVPS: ChargeAC: K: 77mm/s	
5804 244	PP:Charge AC:M:230mm/s	
5804 245	PP:Charge AC:M:205mm/s	

http://www.manuals4you.com

5804 246	HVPS: ChargeAC: M: 154mm/s	
5804 248	HVPS: ChargeAC: M: 77mm/s	
5804 251	PP:Charge AC:C:230mm/s	
5804 252	PP:Charge AC:C:205mm/s	
5804 253	HVPS: ChargeAC: C: 154mm/s	
5804 255	HVPS: ChargeAC: C: 77mm/s	

ARDF (B802)

6008	Display	Description
6008 3	Feed Motor Forward	Feed Motor-Forward rotation
6008 4	Feed Motor Reverse	Feed Motor-Reverse rotation
6008 5	Relay Motor Forward	Transport Motor- Forward rotation
6008 7	Relay Motor Reverse	Transport Motor- Forward rotation
6008 8	Inverter Motor Reverse	-
6008 11	Inverter Solenoid	-
6008 12	Stamp	Stamp Solenoid

1000-Sheet Finisher (B408)

6144	Display	Description
6144 1	Relay Up Motor	Upper Transport Motor
6144 2	Relay Down Motor	Lower Transport Motor
6144 3	Exit Motor	-
6144 4	Proof Junction Gate SOL	Tray Junction Gate Solenoid
6144 5	Tray Up Motor	Lower Tray Lift Motor
6144 6	Jogger Motor	Jogger Fence Motor
6144 7	Staple Moving Motor	Stapler Motor
6144 8	Staple Motor	Stapler Hammer
6144 9	Staple Junction Gate SOL	Stapler Junction Gate Solenoid
6144 10	Positioning Roller Solenoid	Positioning Roller Solenoid
6144 11	Stack Feed-out Motor	-
6144 12	Shift Motor	-
6144 13	Exit Guide Plate Motor	-

http://www.manuals4you.com

2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher

6145	Display	Description
6145 1	Entrance Motor	Finisher Entrance Motor
6145 2	Upper Feed Motor	Upper Transport Motor
6145 3	Lower Feed Motor	Lower Transport Motor
6145 4	Exit Motor	Upper/Proof Tray Exit Motor
6145 5	Knock Roller Motor	Clamp Roller Retraction Motor
6145 6	Shift Motor	Shift Roller Motor
6145 7	Exit Guide Plate Open/Close Motor	Exit Guide Plate Motor
6145 8	Tray Lift Motor	Upper Tray Lift Motor
6145 9	Oscillating Back Roller Motor	Stacking Sponge Roller Motor
6145 10	Jogger Motor	Jogger Fence Motor
6145 11	Stack Feed-out Motor	Feed Out Belt Motor
6145 12	Staple Moving Motor	Corner Stapler Movement Motor
6145 13	Staple Skew Motor	Corner Stapler Rotation Motor
6145 14	Staple Motor	Corner Stapler EH530
6145 15	Upper Junction Gate Solenoid	Proof Junction Gate Solenoid
6145 16	Lower Junction Gate Solenoid	Stapling Tray Junction Gate Solenoid
6145 17	Knock Solenoid	Stapling Edge Pressure Plate Solenoid
6145 18	Trailing Edge Hold Solenoid	Positioning Roller Solenoid
6145 19	Saddle Stitch Hold Solonoid	Booklet Pressure Roller Solenoid
6145 20	Stack Junction Gate	Stack Junction Gate Motor

	Open/Close Motor	
6145 21	Trailing Edge Fence Moving Motor	Fold Unit Bottom Fence Lift Motor
6145 22	Saddle Stitch Staple Motor: Front	Booklet Stapler EH185R: Front
6145 23	Saddle Stitch Staple Motor: Rear	Booklet Stapler EH185R: Rear
6145 24	Folder Plate Motor	Fold Plate Motor
6145 25	Folder Roller Motor	Fold Roller Motor
6145 26	Drive Roller Oscillating Motor	Positioning Roller Motor
6145 27	Punch Motor	Punch Drive Motor
6145 28	Punch Moving Motor	Punch Movement Motor
6145 29	Punch Registration Detection Motor	Paper Position Sensor Slide Motor
6145 30	Exit Jogger Motor: Front	-
6145 31	Exit Jogger Motor: Rear	-
6145 32	Exit Jogger Release Motor	-

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bridge Unit (D386)

6151	Display	Description
6151 1	Bridge: Feed Motor: Current Selection	Bridge: Feed Motor: Current switching signal
6151 2	Bridge: Feed Motor:Reset	Bridge: Feed Motor:Reset
6151 3	Bridge: Feed Motor:Enable	Bridge: Feed Motor:Enable
6151 4	Bridge: Feed Motor:230mm/s	Bridge: Feed Motor: 230mm/s
6151 5	Bridge: Feed Motor:205mm/s	Bridge: Feed Motor: 205mm/s
6151 7	Bridge: Feed Motor: 154mm/s	Bridge: Feed Motor:154mm/s
6151 8	Bridge: Feed Motor: 77mm/s	Bridge: Feed Motor: 77mm/s
6151 11	Bridge: Junction Solenoid	Bridge: Junction Solenoid

Shift Tray (D388)

6153	Display	Description
6153 1	Shift: Lift-up Motor	

1 Bin Tray (D414)

6155	Display	Description
6155 1	1 bin: Junction Solenoid	

Two-Tray Paper Feed Unit (D351)/ LCT 2000 (D352)/ LCT 1200 (D353)

6161	Display	Description
6161 5	Bank1: Feed Motor:300mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 6	Bank1: Feed Motor:265mm/s	Feed Motor:265mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 7	Bank1: Feed Motor:242mm/s	Feed Motor:242mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 8	Bank1: Feed Motor:230mm/s	Feed Motor:230mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 9	Bank1: Feed Motor:215mm/s	Feed Motor:215mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 10	Bank1: Feed Motor:205mm/s	Feed Motor:205mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 11	Bank1: Feed Motor:154mm/s	Feed Motor:154mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 12	Bank1: Feed Motor:115mm/s	Feed Motor:115mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 13	Bank1: Feed Motor:77mm/s	Feed Motor:77mm/s (D351/ D352)
6161 15	Bank2: Feed Motor:300mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 16	Bank2: Feed Motor:265mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 17	Bank2: Feed Motor:242mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 18	Bank2: Feed Motor:230mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 19	Bank2: Feed Motor:215mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 20	Bank2: Feed Motor:205mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 21	Bank2: Feed Motor:154mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 22	Bank2: Feed Motor:115mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 23	Bank2: Feed Motor:77mm/s	Feed Motor:300mm/s (D353)
6161 25	Bank1:Tray Lock Solenoid	Tray Lock Solenoid (D351/ D352)
6161 26	Bank2:Tray Lock Solenoid	Tray Lock Solenoid (D353)

http://www.manuals4you.com

6161 30	Bank:Tray3: PU Solenoid	Pick-up Solenoid (D351/ D352)
6161 31	Bank:Tray4: PU Solenoid	Pick-up Solenoid (D351/ D353)
6161 32	Bank:Tray5: PU Solenoid	Pick-up Solenoid (D353)
6161 35	Bank:Tray3: Feed Clutch	Pick-up Solenoid (D351/ D352)
6161 36	Bank:Tray4: Feed Clutch	Pick-up Solenoid (D351/ D353)
6161 37	Bank:Tray5: Feed Clutch	Pick-up Solenoid (D353)

8.1.4 TEST PATTERN PRINTING

Printing Test pattern: SP2-109

Some of these test patterns are used for copy image adjustments but most are used primarily for design testing.

Note

- Do not operate the machine until the test pattern is printed out completely. Otherwise, an SC occurs.

1. Enter the SP mode and select **SP2-109-003**.
2. Enter the number for the test pattern that you want to print and press [#].
3. When you want to select the single color of Magenta, Yellow or Cyan for printing a test pattern, select the color with SP2-109-005 (2: Magenta, 3: Yellow, 4: Cyan).
4. When you want to change the density of printing a test pattern, select the density with SP2-109-006 to -009 for each color.

   Note

   - If you select "0" with SP2-109-006 to -009, the color to be adjusted to "0" does not come up on a test pattern.
5. When you are prompted to confirm your selection, touch "Yes" to select the test pattern for printing.
6. Touch "Copy Window" to open the copy window, then select the settings for the test print (paper size etc.).

   Note

   - If you want to use black and white printing, touch "Black & White" on the LCD. If you want to use color printing, touch "Full Colour" on the LCD.
7. Press the "Start" key to start the test print.
8. After checking the test pattern, touch "SP Mode" on the LCD to return to the SP mode display.
9. Reset all settings to the default values.
10. Touch "Exit" twice to exit SP mode.

No.	Pattern	No.	Pattern
0	None	12	2-dot pattern
1	1-dot line pattern (Vertical)	13	4-dot pattern
2	2-dot line pattern (Vertical)	14	1-dot trimming pattern

http://www.manuals4you.com

3	1-dot line pattern (Horizontal)	15	Cross stitch: sub-scan
4	2-dot line pattern (Horizontal)	16	Cross stitch: main-scan
5	1-dot grid pattern (Vertical)	17	Belt pattern (Horizontal)
6	1-dot grid pattern (Horizontal)	18	Belt pattern (Vertical)
7	1-dot grid pattern (Fine)	19	Checkered flag
8	1-dot grid pattern (Rough)	20	Gray scale (Vertical)
9	1-dot slant pattern (Fine)	21	Gray scale (Horizontal)
10	1-dot slant pattern (Rough)	22	Dual beam density pattern
11	1-dot pattern	23	Solid

8.2 PRINTER SERVICE MODE

8.2.1 SP1-XXX (SERVICE MODE)

1001	Bit Switch			
001	Bit Switch 1		0	1
	bit 0	DFU	-	-
	bit 1	DFU	-	-
	bit 2	DFU	-	-
	bit 3	**No I/O Timeout**	0: Disable	1: Enable
		Enable: The MFP I/O Timeout setting will have no effect. I/O Timeouts will never occur.		
	bit 4	**SD Card Save Mode**	0: Disable	1: Enable
		Enable: Print jobs will be saved to an SD Card in the GW SD slot (☛ “Card Save Function” in "System Maintenance Reference" section of the Field Service Manual).		
	bit 5	DFU	-	-
	bit 6	DFU	-	-
	bit 7	**[RPCS,PCL]: Printable area frame border**	0: Disable	1: Enable
		Enable: The machine prints all RPCS and PCL jobs with a border on the edges of the printable area.		

1001	Bit Switch			
002	Bit Switch 2		0	1
	bit 0	DFU	-	-

http://www.manuals4you.com

	bit 1	DFU	-	-
	bit 2	**Applying a collation Type**	Shift Collate	Normal Collate
		A collation type (shift or normal) will be applied to all jobs that do not already have a 'Collate Type' configured. Note ▪ If #5-0 is enabled, this Bit Switch has no effect.		
	bit 3	**[PCL5e/c,PS]: PDL Auto Switching**	0: Enable	1: Disable
		Disable: The MFPs ability to change the PDL processor mid-job. Some host systems submit jobs that contain both PS and PCL5e/c. If Auto PDL switching is disabled, these jobs will not be printed properly.		
	bit 4	DFU	-	-
	bit 5	DFU	-	-
	bit 6	DFU	-	-
	bit 7	DFU	-	-

1001	**Bit Switch**			
003	Bit Switch 3		0	1
	bit 0	DFU	-	-
	bit 1	DFU	-	-
	bit 2	**[PCL5e/c]: Legacy HP compatibility**	0: Disable	1: Enable
		Enable: Uses the same left margin as older HP models such as HP4000/HP8000. In other words, the left margin defined in the job (usually "<ESC>*r0A") will be changed to "<ESC>*r1A"		
	bit 3	DFU	-	-
	bit 4	DFU	-	-

	bit 5	DFU	-	-
	bit 6	DFU	-	-
	bit 7	DFU	-	-

1001	**Bit Switch**		
004	Bit Switch 4 **DFU**	-	-

1001	**Bit Switch**			
005	Bit Switch 5		0	1
	bit 0	**Show "Collate Type", "Staple Type" and "Punch Type" buttons on the operation panel.**	Disable	Enable
		If enabled, users will be able to configure a Collate Type, Staple Type, and Punch Type from the operation panel. The available types will depend on the device and configured options. After enabling the function, the settings will appear under: "User Tools > Printer Features > System"		
	bit 1	DFU	-	-
	bit 2	DFU	-	-
	bit 3	**[PS] PS Criteria**	Pattern3	Pattern1
		Change the number of PS criterion used by the PS interpreter to determine whether a job is PS data or not. Pattern3: includes most PS commands. Pattern1: A small number of PS tags and headers		
	bit 4	**Increase max number of the stored jobs to 1000 jobs.**	Disable (100)	Enable (1000)
		Enable: Changes the maximum number of jobs that can be stored on the HDD via Job Type settings to 1000. The default is 100.		

http://www.manuals4you.com

	bit 5	**Face-up output**	Disable	Enable
		Enable: All print jobs will be output face-up in the destination tray.		
	bit 6	DFU	-	-
	bit 7	DFU	-	-

1001	**Bit Switch**		
006	Bit Switch 6 **DFU**	-	-

1001	**Bit Switch**		
007	Bit Switch 7 **DFU**	-	-

1001	**Bit Switch**			
008	Bit Switch 8		0	1
	bit 0	DFU	-	-
	bit 1	DFU	-	-
	bit 2	DFU	-	-
	bit 3	**[PCL,PS]: Allow BW jobs to print without requiring User Code**	Disable	Enable
		Enable: BW jobs submitted without a user code will be printed even if usercode authentication is enabled. Note ▪ Color jobs will not be printed without a valid user code.		
	bit 4	DFU	-	-
	bit 5	DFU	-	-
	bit 6	**[PS]: Orientation Auto Detect Function**	Enable	Disable
		Disable: Automatically chooses page orientations of PostScript jobs		

		(Landscape or Portrait) based on the content printed on the page.		
	bit 7	**[PDF]: Orientation Auto Detect Function**	Enable	Disable
		Automatically chooses page orientations of PDF jobs (Landscape or Portrait) based on the content printed on the page.		

1003	[Clear Setting]
1003 1	Initialize Printer System
	Initializes settings in the “System” menu of the user mode.
1003 3	Delete Program

1004	[Print Summary]
1004 1	Print Summary
	Prints the service summary sheet (a summary of all the controller settings).

1005	[Display Version]
1005 1	Disp. Version
	Displays the version of the controller firmware.

1006	[Sample/Locked Print]	*CTL	**0**: Linked, 1: On
1006 1	Enables and disables the document server. When you select “0,” the document server is enabled or disabled in accordance with Copy Service Mode SP5-967. When you select “1,” the document server is enabled regardless of Copy Service Mode SP5-967.		

1101	[Data Recall]
	Recalls a set of gamma settings. This can be either a) the factory setting, b) the previous setting, or c) the current setting.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Printer Service Mode

1101 1	Factory	*CTL	
1101 2	Previous		
1101 3	Current		
1101 4	ACC		

1102	[Resolution Setting]
	Selects the printing mode (resolution) for the printer gamma adjustment.
1102 1	**2400x600 Photo**, 1800x600 Photo, 600 x 600 Photo, 2400x600 Text, 1800x600, Text, 600x600 Text

1103	[Test Page]
	Prints the test page to check the color balance before and after the gamma adjustment.
1103 1	Color Gray Scale
1103 2	Color Pattern

1104	[Gamma Adjustment]		
	Adjusts the printer gamma for the mode selected in the “Mode Selection” menu.		
1104 1	Black: Highlight	*CTL	[0 to 30 / **15** / 1/step]
1104 2	Black: Shadow		
1104 3	Black: Middle		
1104 4	Black: IDmax		
1104 21	Cyan: Highlight		
1104 22	Cyan: Shadow		

1104 23	Cyan: Middle		
1104 24	Cyan: IDmax		
1104 41	Magenta: Highlight		
1104 42	Magenta: Shadow		
1104 43	Magenta: Middle		
1104 44	Magenta: IDmax		
1104 61	Yellow: Highlight		
1104 62	Yellow: Shadow		
1104 63	Yellow: Middle		
1104 64	Yellow: IDmax		

1105	[Save Tone Control Value]
	Stores the print gamma adjusted with the “Gamma Adj.” menu item as the current setting. Before the machine stores the new “current setting", it moves the data currently stored as the “current setting” to the “previous setting” memory storage location.
1105 1	Save Tone Control Value

1106	[Toner Limit]		
	Adjusts the maximum toner amount for image development.		
1106 1	Toner Limit Value	*CTL	[100 to 400 / **260** / 1 %/step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

8.3 SCANNER SP MODE

8.3.1 SP1-XXX (SYSTEM AND OTHERS)

1004	**[Compression Type]**		
	Selects the compression type for binary picture processing.		
1004 1	Compression Type	*CTL	[1 to 3 / **1** / 1/step] 1: MH, 2: MR, 3: MMR

1005	**[Erase margin]**		
	Creates an erase margin for all edges of the scanned image. If the machine has scanned the edge of the original, create a margin. This SP is activated only when the machine uses TWAIN scanning.		
1005 1	Range from 0 to 5 mm	*CTL	[0 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]

1009	**[Remote scan disable]**	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: enable, 1: disable
1009 1	Enable or disable remote scan.		

1010	**[Non Display Clear Light PDF]**	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Display, 1: No display
1010 1	Enable or disable remote scan.		

⟹

1011	**[Org count Disp]**	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -]
1011 1	Selects the original counter display. 0: Displays remaining memory for the original scanning. 1: Displays original counter.		

⇒ **1012**	**[UserInfo release]**	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: No, 1: Yes
1012 1	Clear the following settings: Address, Sender, Text / Subject, Filename		

⇒ **1013**	**[Multimedia Function Setting]**	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
1013 1	On or off multimedia function		

8.3.2 SP2-XXX (SCANNING-IMAGE QUALITY)

2021	**[Compression Level (Gray-scale)]**		
	Selects the compression ratio for grayscale processing mode (JPEG) for the three settings that can be selected at the operation panel.		
2021 1	Level 3 (Middle Image Quality)	*CTL	[5 to 95 / **40** / 1 /step]
2021 2	Level 2 (High Image Quality)		[5 to 95 / **50** / 1 /step]
2021 3	Level 4 (Low Image Quality)		[5 to 95 / **30** / 1 /step]
2021 4	Level 1 (Highest Image Quality)		[5 to 95 / **60** / 1 /step]
2021 5	Level 5 (Lowest Image Quality)		[5 to 95 / **20** / 1 /step]

2024	**[Compression ratio of ClearLight PDF]**		
	Selects the compression ratio for clearlight PDF for the two settings that can be selected at the operation panel.		
2024 1	Compression Ratio (Normal image)	*CTL	[5 to 95 / **25** / 1 /step]
2024 2	Compression Ratio (High comp image)		[5 to 95 / **20** / 1 /step]

http://www.manuals4you.com

1000-SHEET FINISHER
B408

1000 SHEET FINISHER SR790 REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

1000-SHEET FINISHER B408

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 1
1.1 MAIN PCB 1
1.2 STAPLER UNIT 2
1.3 MOTORS 3
1.3.1 SHIFT MOTOR 3
1.3.2 STAPLER MOTOR 3
1.3.3 UPPER TRANSPORT MOTOR AND EXIT MOTOR 4
1.3.4 LOWER TRANSPORT MOTOR 4
1.4 MOTORS AND SENSORS 5
1.4.1 PREPARATION 5
1.4.2 STACK HEIGHT SENSOR 6
1.4.3 STAPLER TRAY PAPER SENSOR 6
1.4.4 LOWER TRAY LIFT MOTOR 7
1.4.5 STACK FEED-OUT MOTOR 7

2. TROUBLESHOOTING 8
2.1 JAM DETECTION 8

3. SERVICE TABLES 9
3.1 DIP SWITCH SETTINGS 9

4. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS 10
4.1 GENERAL LAYOUT 10
4.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 11
4.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION 13
4.4 DRIVE LAYOUT 15
4.5 JUNCTION GATES 16
Upper Tray Mode 16
Sort/Stack Mode 16
Staple Mode 16
4.6 UPPER TRAY 17
4.7 LOWER TRAY UP/DOWN MECHANISMS 18
4.8 PAPER SHIFT MECHANISM 19
4.9 JOGGER UNIT PAPER POSITIONING MECHANISM 20
4.10 EXIT GUIDE PLATE 21
4.11 STAPLER MECHANISM 22
4.12 STAPLER UNIT MOVEMENT MECHANISM 23
4.13 PAPER FEED-OUT MECHANISM 24

http://www.manuals4you.com

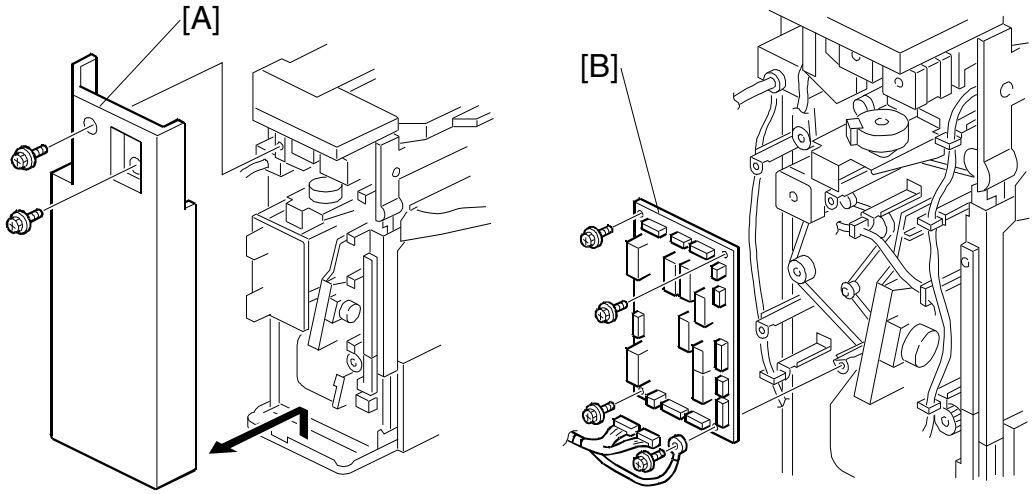
1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

⚠CAUTION

Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the procedures in this section.

NOTE: This manual uses the following symbols.
☛ : See or Refer to : Screws : Connector : Clip ring
 : E-ring

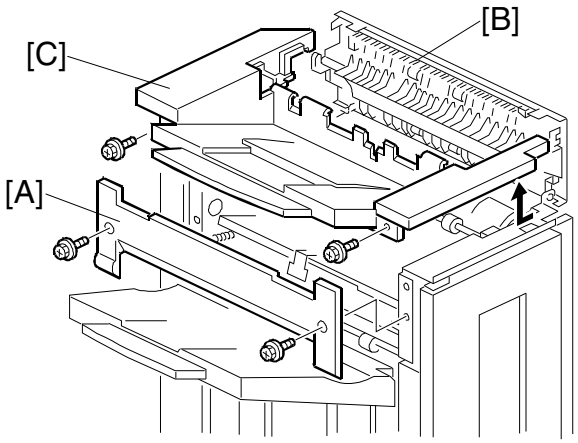
1.1 MAIN PCB



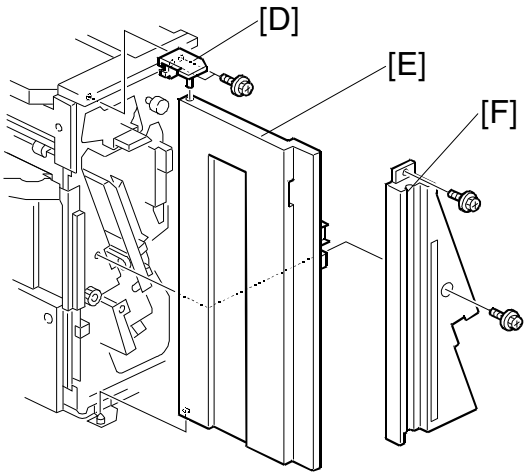
1. Rear cover [A] (x 2)
2. Main PCB [B] (x 4, All)

1.2 STAPLER UNIT

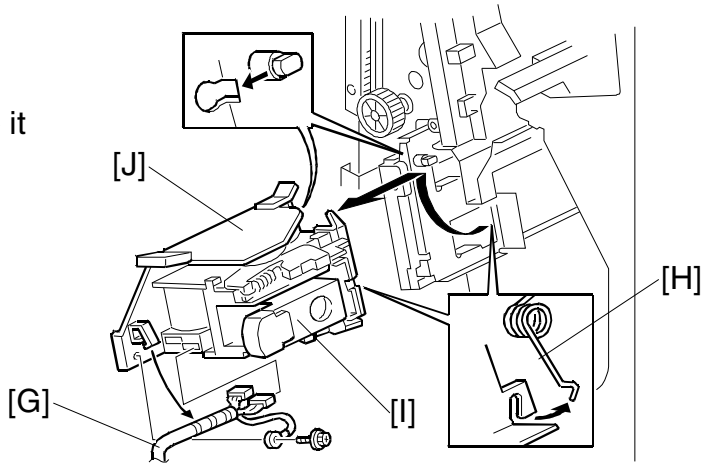
1. Side cover [A] (x 2)
2. Open exit guide plate [B]
3. Upper side cover [C] (x 2)



4. Front cover support plate [D] (x 1)
5. Front cover [E]
6. Front inner cover [F] (x 2)



7. Harness [G]
8. Unhook the spring [H]
9. Turn the stapler unit [I] and take it out.
10. Bracket [J] (x 2)

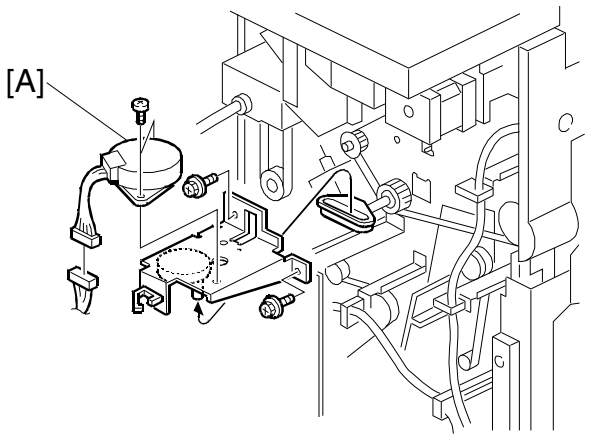


http://www.manuals4you.com

1.3 MOTORS

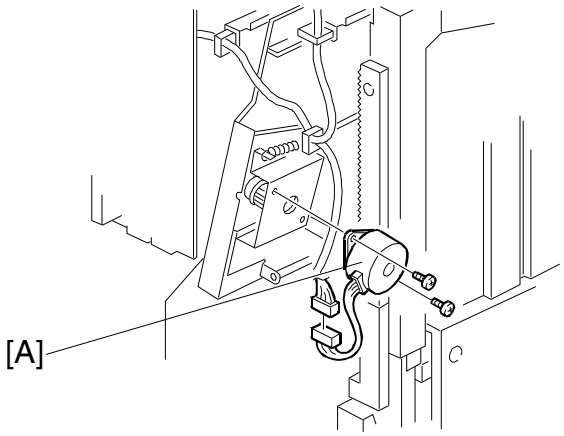
1.3.1 SHIFT MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛1.1)
2. Shift motor [A] (🔩 x 2, ✋ x 1)



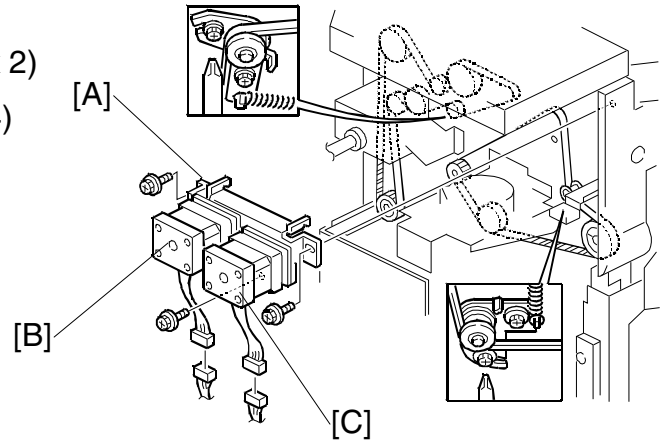
1.3.2 STAPLER MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛1.1)
2. Stapler motor [A] (🔩 x 2, ✋ x 1)



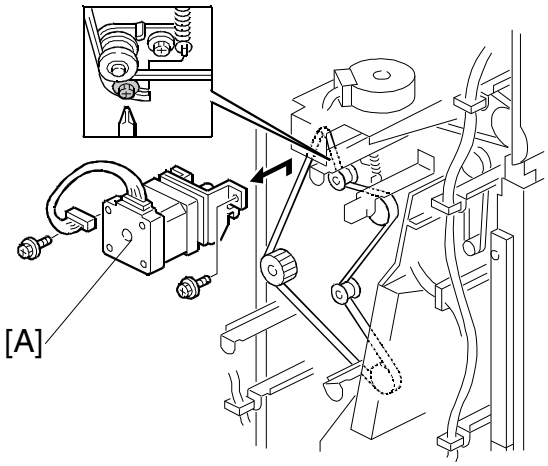
1.3.3 UPPER TRANSPORT MOTOR AND EXIT MOTOR

1. Rear cover (☛1.1)
2. Motor assembly [A] (x 4, x 2)
3. Upper transport motor [B] (x 4)
4. Exit motor [C] (x 4)



1.3.4 LOWER TRANSPORT MOTOR

1. Main PCB (☛1.1)
2. Lower transport motor [A] (x 2, x 1)

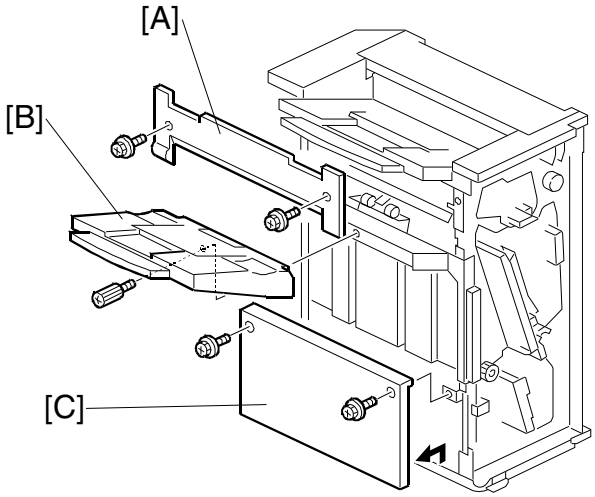


http://www.manuals4you.com

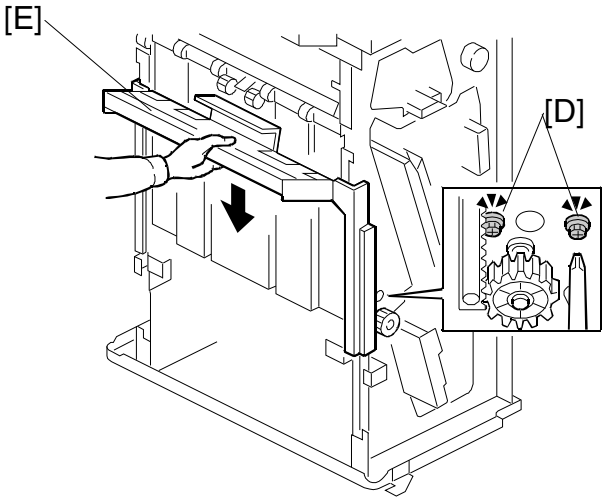
1.4 MOTORS AND SENSORS

1.4.1 PREPARATION

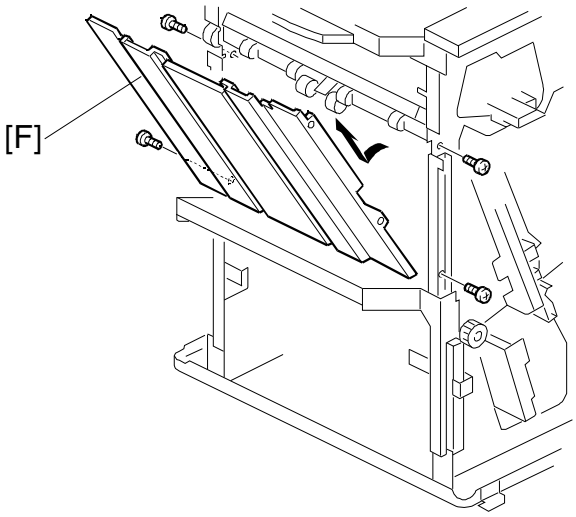
1. Front cover and inner cover (☛1.2)
2. Upper side cover [A] (☞ x 2)
3. Upper tray [B] (☞ x 1)



4. Lower side cover [C] (☞ x 2)
5. Loosen the 2 screws [D].
6. Lower the lower tray guide plate [E].

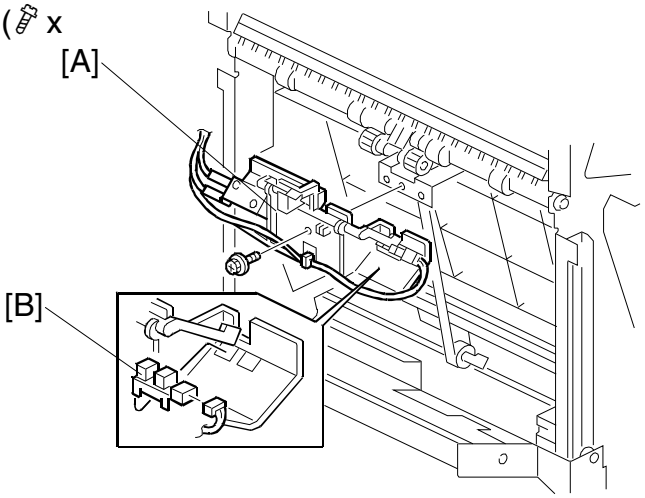


7. Guide plate [F] (☞ x 4)



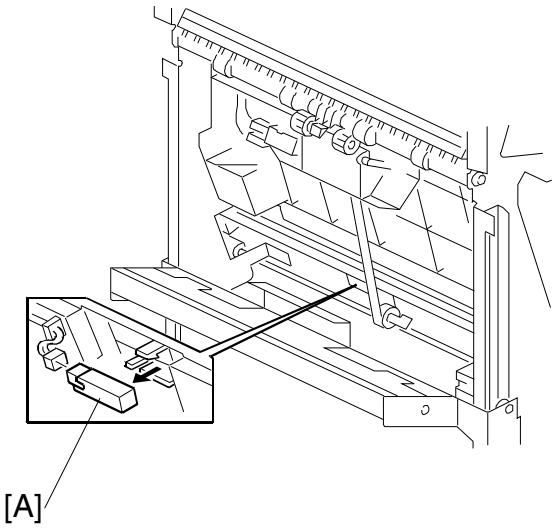
1.4.2 STACK HEIGHT SENSOR

1. Stack height sensor assembly [A] (x 1)
2. Stack height sensor [B] (x 1)



1.4.3 STAPLER TRAY PAPER SENSOR

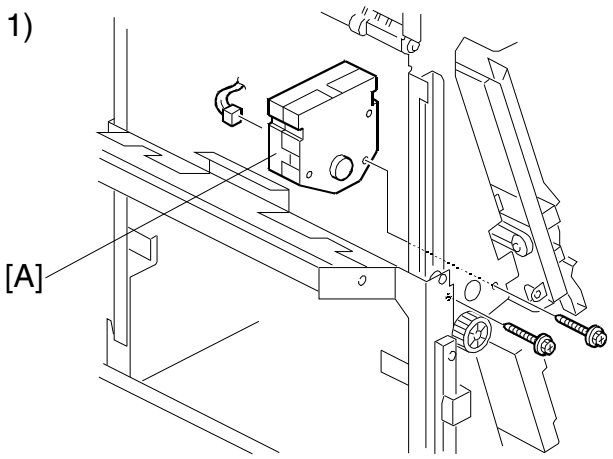
1. Stapler tray paper sensor [A] (x 1)



http://www.manuals4you.com

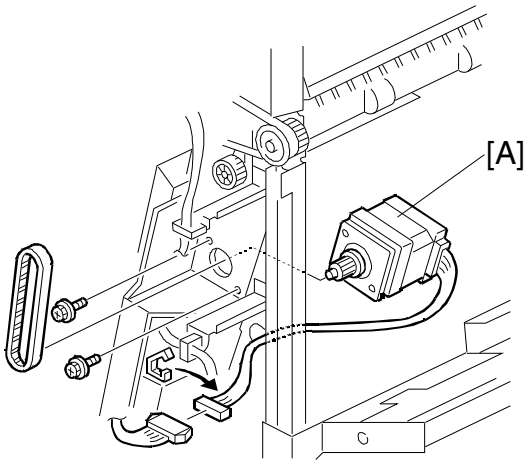
1.4.4 LOWER TRAY LIFT MOTOR

1. Lower tray lift motor [A] (x 2, x 1)



1.4.5 STACK FEED-OUT MOTOR

1. Stack feed-out motor [A] (x 2, x 1)



2. TROUBLESHOOTING

2.1 JAM DETECTION

Mode		Jam	Content
Shift	Staple		
✔	✔	Entrance sensor: On check	The entrance sensor does not turn on within the normal time after the main machine exit sensor turns on
✔	✔	Entrance sensor: Off check	The entrance sensor does not turn off within the normal time after it turns on.
✔		Lower tray exit sensor: On check	The lower tray exit sensor does not turn on within the normal time after the entrance sensor turns off.
✔		Tray exit sensor: Off check	The tray exit sensor does not turn off within the normal time after it turns on.
	✔	Stapler tray entrance sensor: On check	The stapler tray entrance sensor does not switch on within the normal time after the entrance sensor switched on.
	✔	Stapler tray entrance sensor: Off check	The staple tray entrance sensor does not turn off within the normal time after it turns on.
	✔	Lower tray exit sensor: On check	The lower exit sensor does not turn on after the feed-out pawl feeds out the outputs.
	✔	Lower tray exit sensor: Off check	The lower exit sensor turns on when the feed-out pawl returns to its home position after feeding out the outputs.

http://www.manuals4you.com

3. SERVICE TABLES

3.1 DIP SWITCH SETTINGS

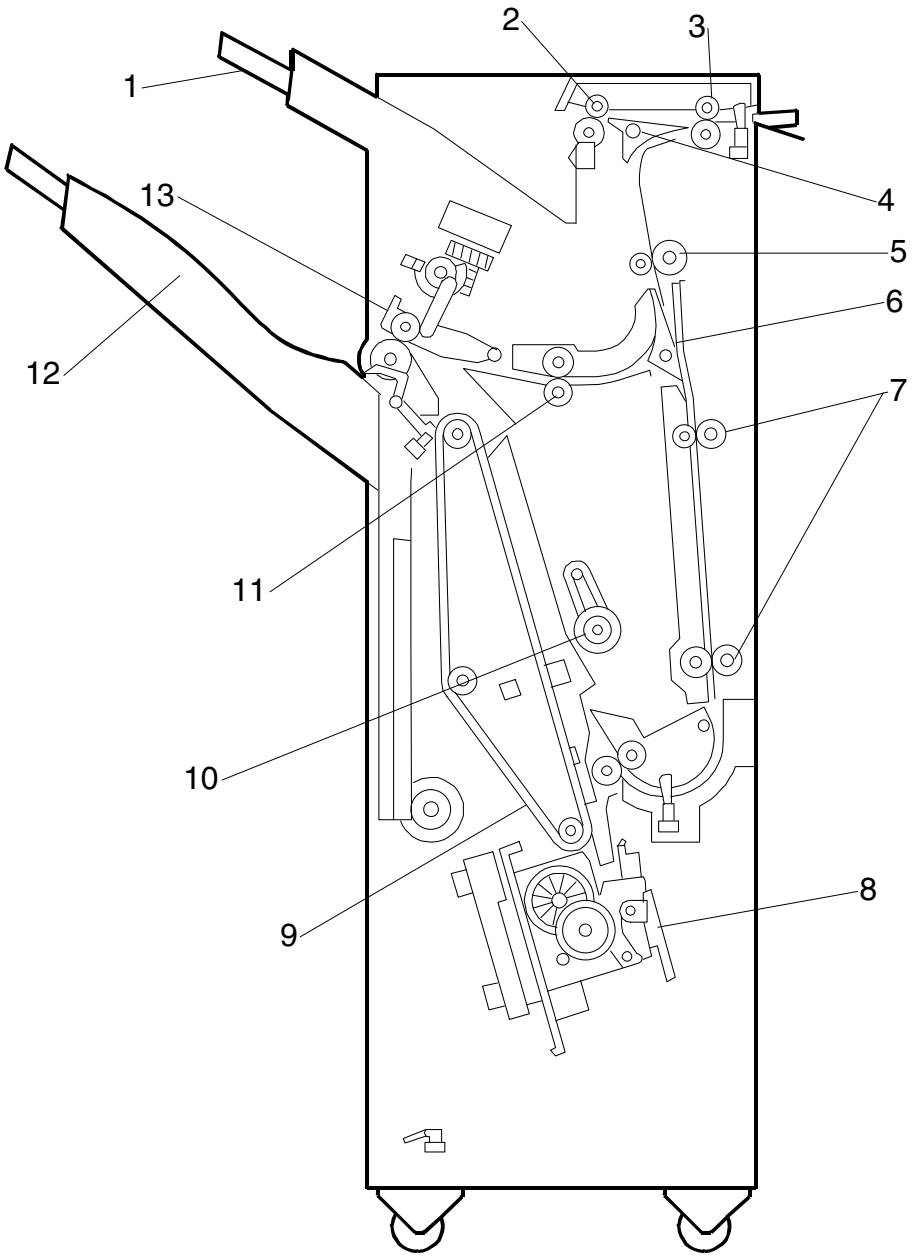
The DIP switches should not be set to any combination other than those listed in the table below.

SW100		Description
1	2	
0	0	Normal operation mode (Default)
1	0	Packing mode.

- Before packing the machine, do the following: Set switch 1 to 1 then back to zero. The lower tray moves to the lowest position. Then turn off the main switch.
- After unpacking the machine, do the following: After turning the main switch back on, the lower tray returns to home position automatically.

4. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

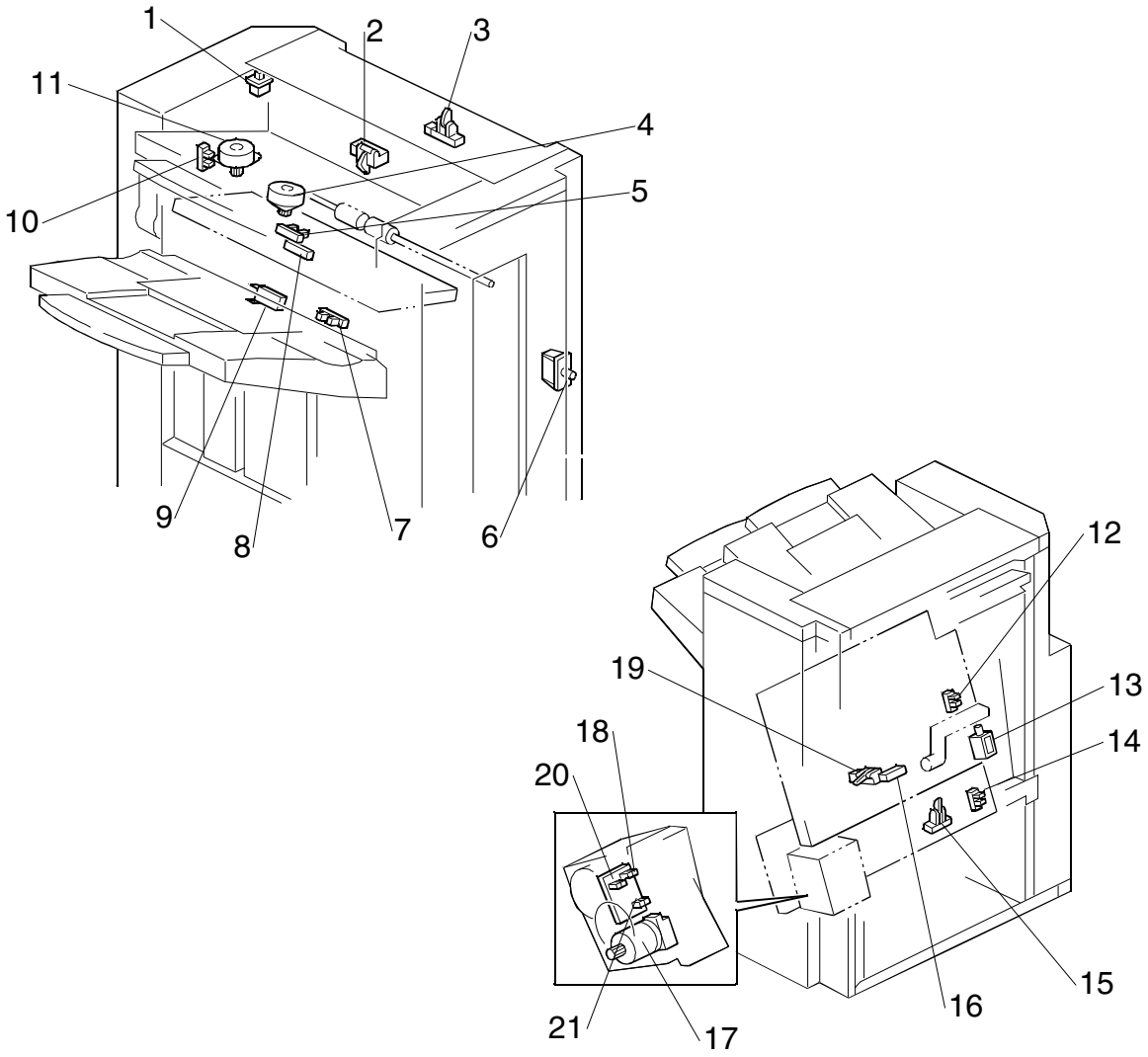
4.1 GENERAL LAYOUT



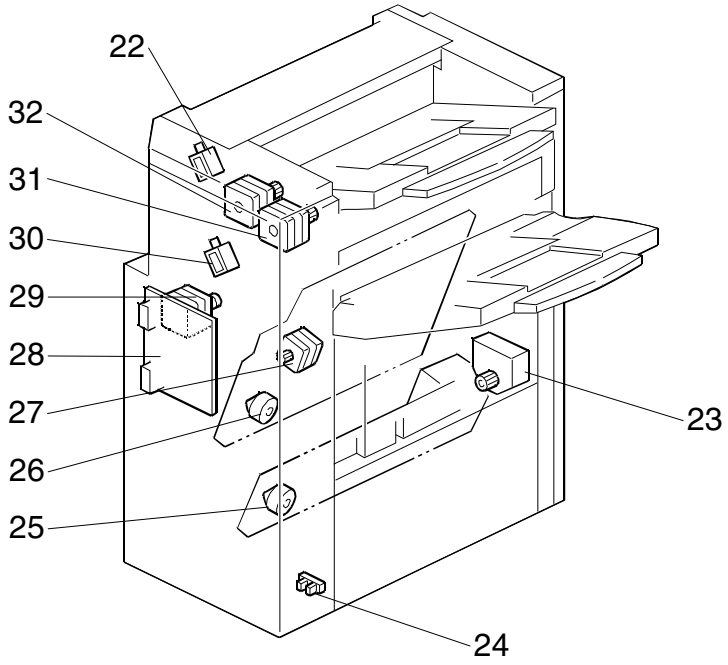
1. Upper Tray
2. Upper Tray Exit Roller
3. Entrance Roller
4. Tray Junction Gate
5. Upper Transport Roller
6. Stapler Junction Gate
7. Lower Transport Rollers
8. Stapler
9. Stack Feed-out Belt
10. Positioning Roller
11. Shift Roller
12. Lower Tray
13. Lower Tray Exit Roller

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Upper Cover Switch
2. Paper Limit Sensor
3. Entrance Sensor
4. Exit Guide Plate Motor
5. Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor
6. Front Door Safety Switch
7. Stack Height Sensor
8. Lower Tray Exit Sensor
9. Lower Tray Upper Limit Switch
10. Shift HP Sensor
11. Shift Motor
12. Jogger Fence HP Sensor
13. Positioning Roller Solenoid
14. Stapler HP Sensor
15. Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor
16. Stapler Tray Paper Sensor
17. Stapler Hammer Motor
18. Staple Sheet Sensor
19. Stack Feed-out Belt HP Sensor
20. Stapler Rotation HP Sensor
21. Staple Sensor



22. Tray Junction Gate Solenoid
23. Lower Tray Lift Motor
24. Lower Tray Lower Limit Sensor
25. Stapler Motor
26. Jogger Fence Motor
27. Stack Feed-out Motor
28. Main Board
29. Lower Transport Motor
30. Stapler Junction Gate Solenoid
31. Exit Motor
32. Upper Transport Motor

http://www.manuals4you.com

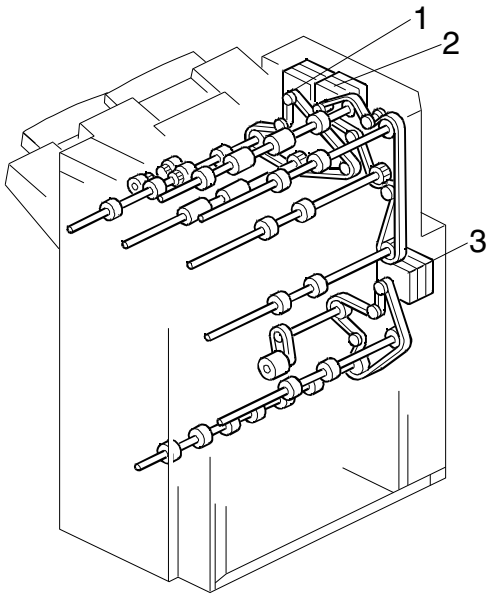
4.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION

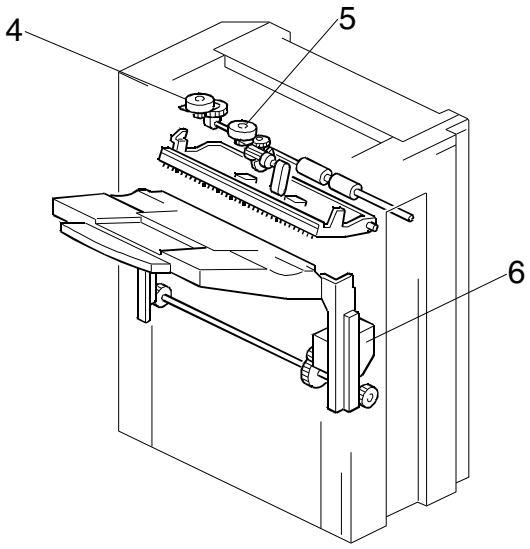
Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
Motors			
M1	Upper Transport	Drives the entrance roller and upper transport rollers.	32
M2	Lower Transport	Drives the lower transport rollers and the positioning roller.	29
M3	Jogger Fence	Drives the jogger fences.	26
M4	Staple Hammer	Drives the staple hammer.	17
M5	Stack Feed-out	Drives the stack feed-out belt.	27
M6	Exit Guide Plate	Opens and closes the exit guide plate.	4
M7	Exit	Drives the exit roller.	31
M8	Lower Tray Lift	Moves the lower tray up or down.	23
M9	Shift	Moves the shift roller from side to side.	11
M10	Stapler	Moves the stapler unit from side to side.	25
Sensors			
S1	Entrance	Detects copy paper entering the finisher and checks for misfeeds.	3
S2	Paper Limit	Detects when the paper stack height in the upper tray is at its limit.	2
S3	Jogger Fence HP	Detects when the jogger fence is at home position.	12
S4	Shift HP	Detects when the shift roller is at home position.	10
S5	Stack Feed-out Belt HP	Detects when the stack feed-out belt is at home position.	19
S6	Stapler HP	Detects when the stapler is at home position.	14
S7	Exit Guide Plate HP	Detects when the exit guide plate is at home position.	5
S8	Stapler Tray Entrance	Detects copy paper entering the stapler tray and checks for misfeeds.	15
S9	Lower Tray Exit	Checks for misfeeds.	8
S10	Stack Height	Detects the top of the copy paper stack.	7
S11	Lower Tray Lower Limit	Detects when the lower tray is at its lower limit position.	24
S12	Stapler Tray Paper	Detects when there is copy paper in the stapler tray.	16
S13	Staple Sheet	Detects the leading edge of the staple sheet.	18
S14	Stapler Rotation HP	Detects when the staple hammer is at home position.	20
S15	Staple	Detects whether there are staples in the staple cartridge.	21
Solenoids			
SOL1	Tray Junction Gate	Drives the tray junction gate.	22
SOL2	Stapler Junction Gate	Drives the stapler junction gate.	30

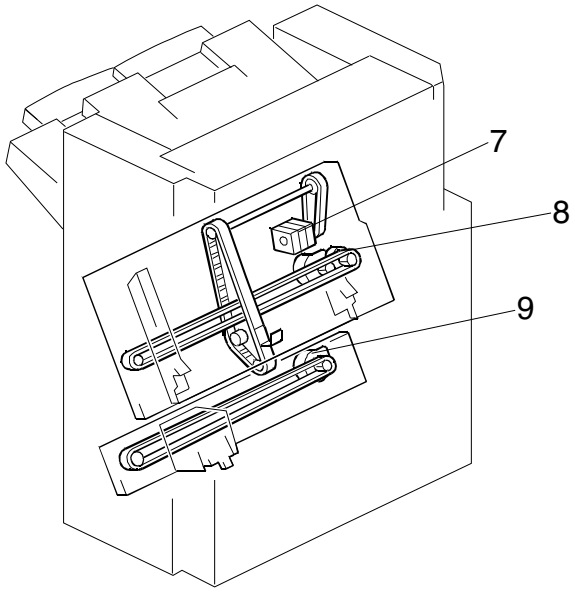
Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
SOL3	Positioning Roller	Moves the positioning roller.	13
Switches			
SW1	Lower Tray Upper Limit	Detects when the lower tray is at its upper limit position.	9
SW2	Front Door Safety	Cuts the dc power when the front door is opened.	6
SW3	Upper Cover	Cuts the dc power when the upper cover is opened.	1
PCBs			
PCB1	Main	Controls the finisher and communicates with the copier/printer.	28

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.4 DRIVE LAYOUT

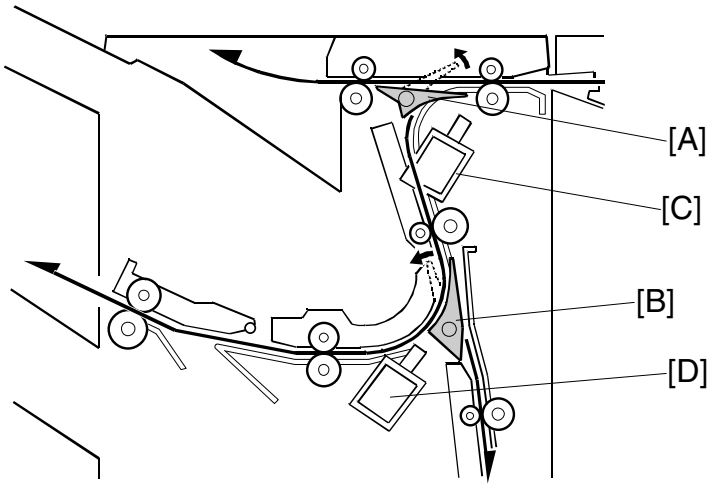






1. Exit Motor
2. Upper Transport Motor
3. Lower Transport Motor
4. Shift Motor
5. Exit Guide Plate Motor
6. Lower Tray Lift Motor
7. Stack Feed-out Motor
8. Jogger Motor
9. Stapler Motor

4.5 JUNCTION GATES



Depending on the finishing mode, the copies are directed up, straight through, or down by the combination of the tray junction gate [A] and stapler junction gate [B]. These gates are controlled by the tray junction gate solenoid [C] and stapler junction gate solenoid [D].

Upper Tray Mode

The tray junction gate solenoid remains off. The copies go up to the upper tray.

Sort/Stack Mode

The tray junction gate solenoid turns on and the stapler junction gate solenoid remains off. The copies are sent to the lower tray directly.

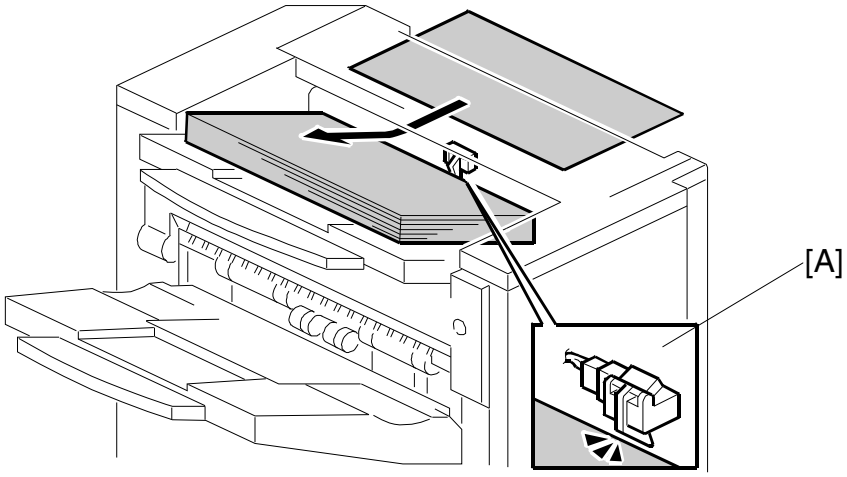
Staple Mode

The tray junction gate solenoid and the stapler junction gate solenoid both turn on.

The copies go down to the jogger unit.

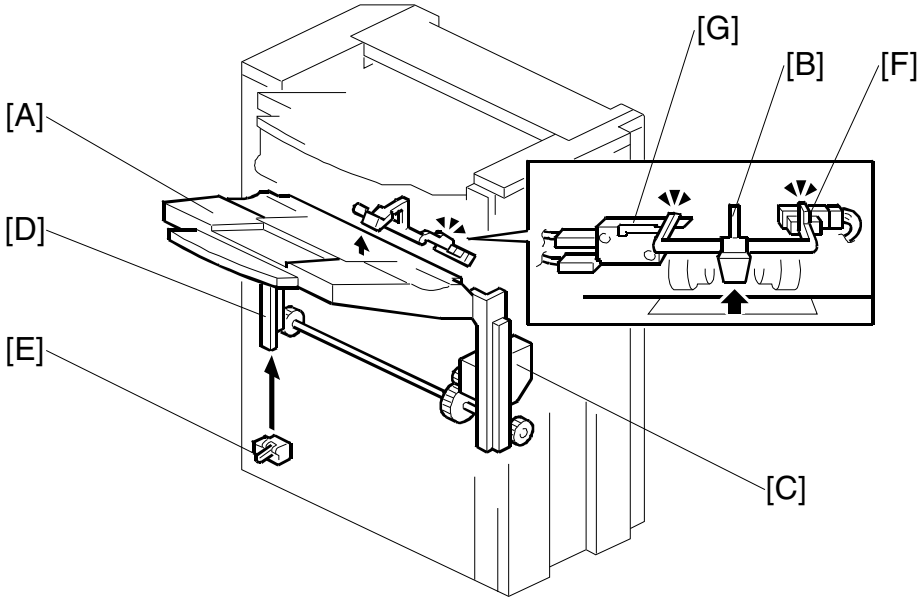
http://www.manuals.com

4.6 UPPER TRAY



When the paper limit sensor [A] switches on during feed-out for each of three consecutive sheets of paper, paper overflow is detected.

4.7 LOWER TRAY UP/DOWN MECHANISMS



The vertical position of the lower tray [A] depends on the height of the copied paper stack on the lower tray. The stack height sensor feeler [B] contacts the top of the stack, and the lower tray lift motor [C] controls the tray height.

When the lower tray reaches its lowest possible position, the actuator [D] turns on the lower tray lower limit sensor [E], and copying stops.

Tray Up

When the copy paper on the tray is removed, the stack height sensor [F] turns off and the tray lifts up. Then, the tray stops when the sensor turns on again (the tray pushes up the feeler).
If the stack height sensor fails, the lower tray upper limit switch [G] detects the tray and stops the motor. This is a safety measure against stack height sensor failure.

Sort/Stack Mode (Tray Down)

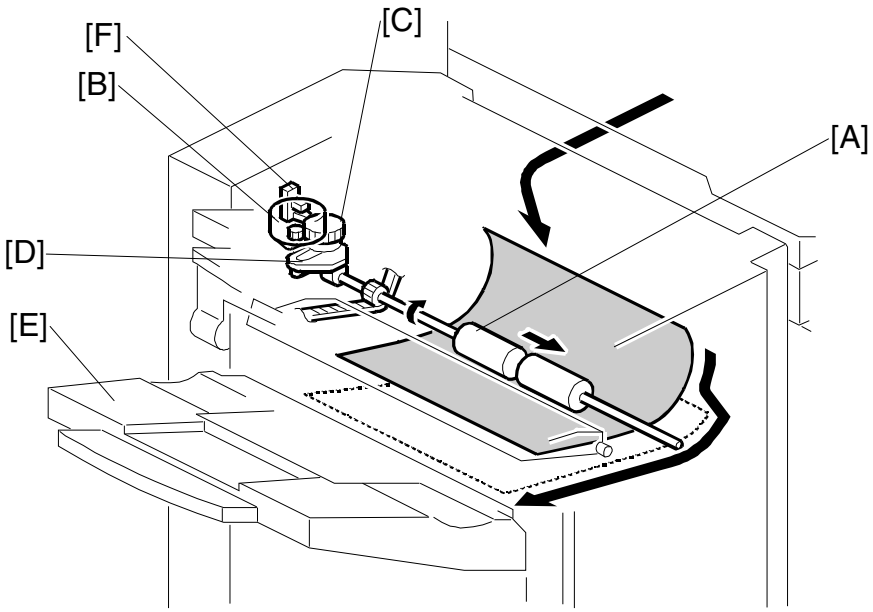
Every five sheets of paper, the tray goes down until the sensor turns off again. Then, it goes up until the sensor is on again.

Staple Mode (Tray Down)

After a stapled copy is fed out, the tray goes up for 220 ms and stops for 300 ms. Then, it goes down for 1 second, waits for 500 ms, then goes up until the sensor turns on.

http://www.manuals.com

4.8 PAPER SHIFT MECHANISM



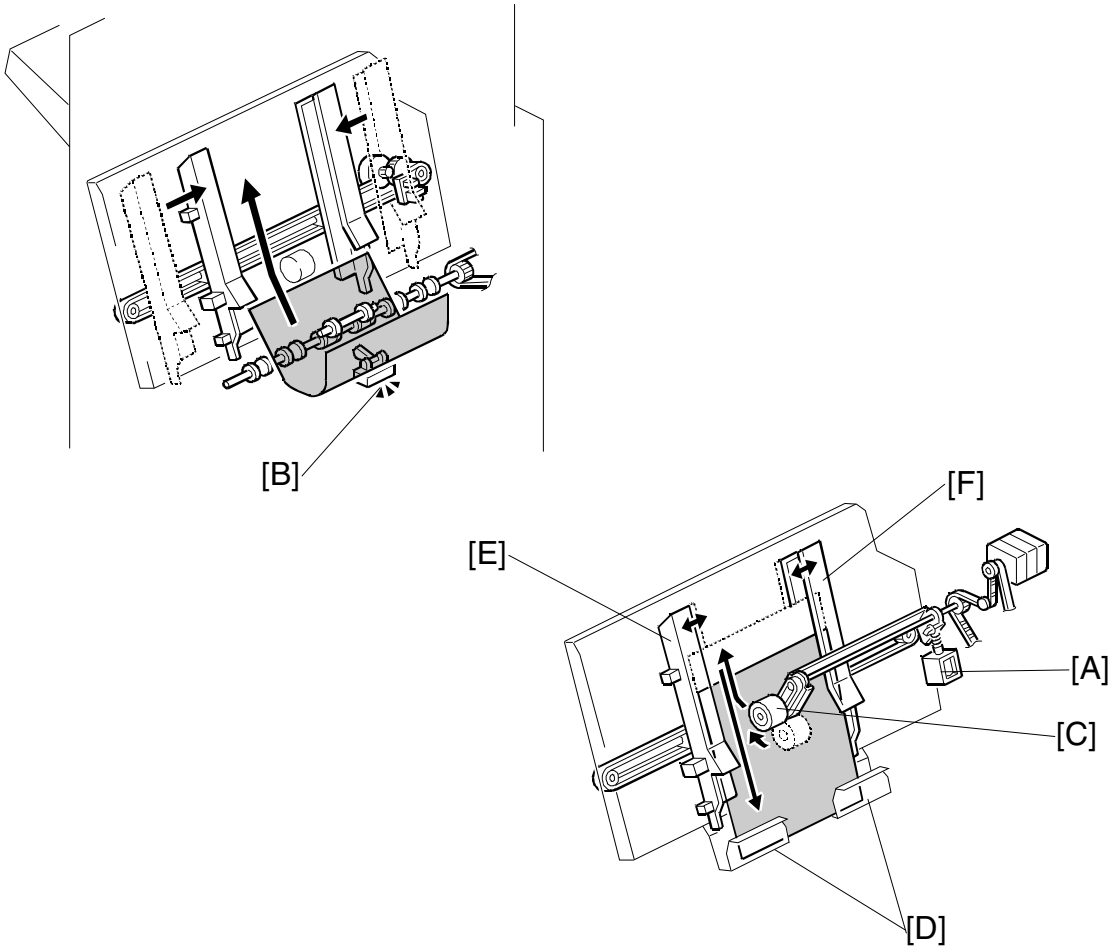
In the sort/stack mode, the shift roller [A] moves from side to side to separate the sets of copies.

The horizontal position of the shift roller is controlled by the shift motor [B] and the shift gear disk [C]. After the trailing edge of the copy passes the upper transport roller, the shift motor turns on, driving the shift gear disk and the link [D].

After the paper is delivered to the lower tray [E], the shift roller moves to its home position, which is detected by the shift HP sensor [F]. Then, when the trailing edge of the next copy passes the upper transport roller, the shift roller shifts again. This operation is done every sheet.

When the trailing edge of each page in the next set of copies passes the upper transport roller, the shift roller shifts in the opposite direction.

4.9 JOGGER UNIT PAPER POSITIONING MECHANISM



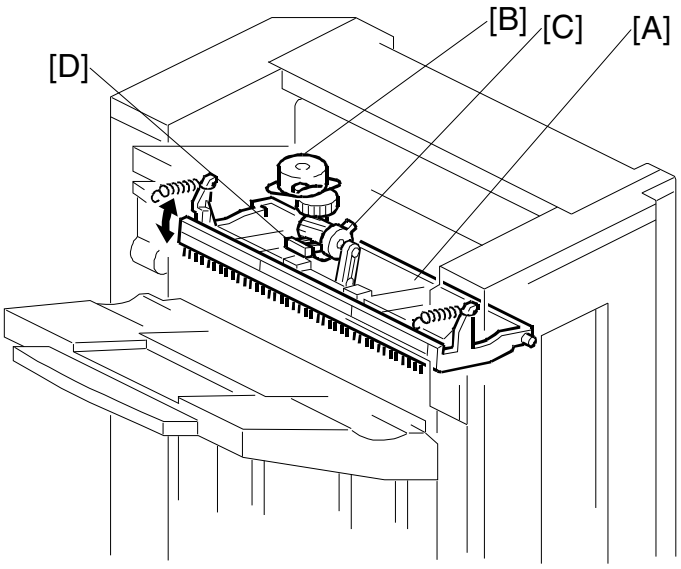
In staple mode, each sheet of copy paper is vertically and horizontally aligned when it arrives in the jogger unit.

For the vertical paper alignment, the positioning roller solenoid [A] turns on shortly after the stapler tray entrance sensor [B] turns off, and the positioning roller [C] pushes the copy against the bottom of the stack stopper [D].

For the horizontal paper alignment, the jogger front fence [E] and the rear fence [F] move to the waiting position, which is 18 mm away from the side of the paper. When aligning the paper vertically, the jogger fence moves in 14 mm from the waiting position. After the vertical position has been aligned, the jogger fence pushes the paper 4 mm against the rear fence to align the paper horizontally. Then the jogger fence moves back to the previous position.

http://www.manuals4you.com

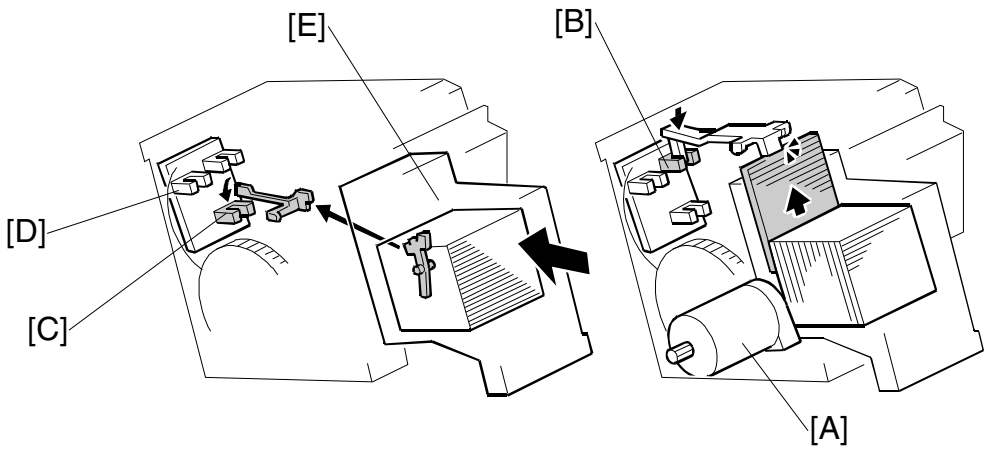
4.10 EXIT GUIDE PLATE



When stacking a large size of paper (such as A3, DLT) in the jogger unit, the leading edge of the paper reaches the exit rollers. To prevent the paper from running into the exit rollers and not being aligned correctly, the exit guide plate [A] is moved up to make a gap between the exit rollers. This operation is done for all paper sizes, but is only needed for the larger sizes.

The exit guide plate motor [B] and exit roller release cam [C] control the exit guide plate movement. When the exit guide plate motor starts, the cam turns and the exit guide plate moves up. When stapling is finished, the exit guide plate motor turns on again to close the exit guide plate. When the exit guide plate HP sensor [D] turns on, the motor stops.

4.11 STAPLER MECHANISM



The staple hammer motor [A] drives the staple hammer.

The staple sheet sensor [B] detects the leading edge of the staple sheet at the stapling position to prevent the hammer from operating if there are no staples at the stapling position.

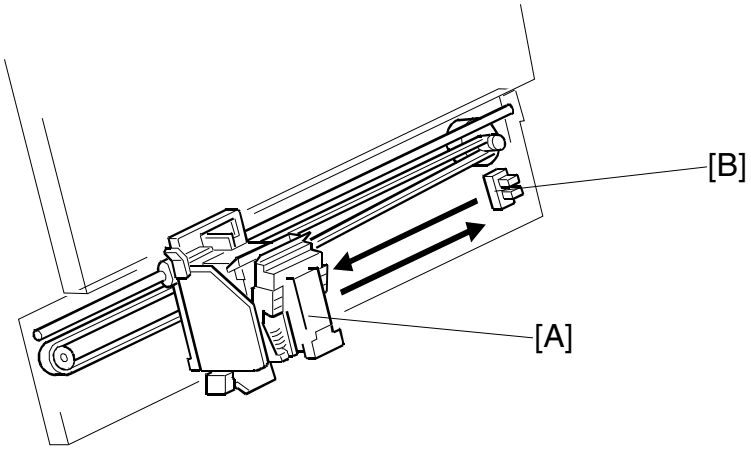
If there is no staple cartridge in the stapler unit or no staples in the staple cartridge, staple end is indicated on the operation panel. The stapler sensor [C] detects this.

The stapler rotation HP sensor [D] checks whether the staple hammer mechanism returns to home position after each stack has been stapled.

When excessive load is applied to the staple hammer motor, the copier detects a staple jam. When a staple jam has occurred, the jammed staple is inside the staple cartridge [E]. Therefore, the jammed staple can be removed easily after pulling out the staple cartridge.

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.12 STAPLER UNIT MOVEMENT MECHANISM

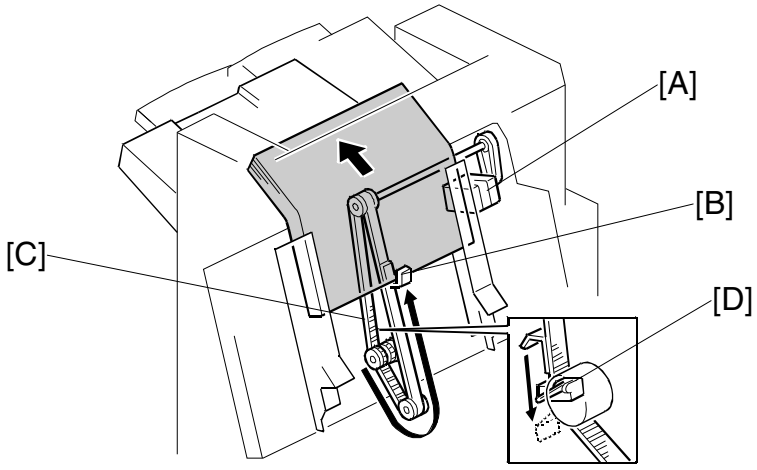


The stapler motor moves the stapler [A] from side to side. After the start key is pressed, the stapler moves from its home position to the stapling position.

If two-staple-position mode is selected, the stapler moves to the front stapling position first, then moves to the rear stapling position. However, for the next copy set, it staples in the reverse order (at the rear side first, then at the front side).

After the job is completed, the stapler moves back to its home position. The stapler HP sensor [B] detects this.

4.13 PAPER FEED-OUT MECHANISM



After the copies have been stapled, the stack feed-out motor [A] starts. The pawl [B] on the stack feed-out belt [C] transports the set of stapled copies up and feeds it to the shift roller. The shift roller takes over stack feed-out after the leading edge reaches this roller.

Just before the stapled stack passes through the lower tray exit sensor, the stack-feed-out motor turns off until the shift rollers have completely fed the stack out to the lower tray. Then, the stack-feed-out motor turns on again until the pawl [B] actuates the stack feed-out belt home position sensor [D].

http://www.manuals4you.com

BOOKLET FINISHER & FINISHER SR3020/SR3030/SR4010/SR4020 B804/B805/D373/D374

D373/D374 SADDLE STITCH FINISHER SR4010/4020 REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

BOOKLET FINISHER & FINISHER SR3020/SR3030/SR4010/SR4020

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 1

1.1 COVERS 1

1.1.1 EXTERIOR COVERS 1

1.1.2 UPPER TRAY, END FENCE 2

1.2 MAIN UNIT 3

1.2.1 UPPER TRAY LIMIT SENSOR, LIMIT SWITCH 3

1.2.2 POSITIONING ROLLER 4

1.2.3 PROOF TRAY EXIT SENSOR 4

1.2.4 UPPER TRAY HEIGHT SENSORS 1, 2 5

1.2.5 EXIT GUIDE PLATE, UPPER TRAY EXIT SENSOR 5

1.2.6 PROOF TRAY FULL SENSOR 6

1.2.7 FINISHER ENTRANCE SENSOR 7

1.2.8 PRE-STACK TRAY EXIT SENSOR 7

1.3 STAPLER UNIT 8

1.3.1 CORNER STAPLER 8

1.3.2 POSITIONING ROLLER 9

1.4 FOLD UNIT 10

1.4.1 FOLD UNIT 10

1.4.2 FOLD UNIT ENTRANCE SENSOR 12

1.4.3 FOLD UNIT EXIT SENSOR 12

1.4.4 STACK PRESENT SENSOR 13

1.4.5 FOLDING HORIZONTAL SKEW ADJUSTMENT (FOR B804 ONLY) 14

1.4.6 FOLD VERTICAL SKEW ADJUSTMENT (FOR B804 ONLY) 17

1.5 BOOKLET STAPLER UNIT 19

1.5.1 BOOKLET STAPLER 19

1.5.2 BOOKLET STAPLER MOTOR 19

2. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS 22

2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT 22

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.1.1 GENERAL LAYOUT 22
2.1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS 24
2.1.3 SUMMARY OF ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS 28
2.1.4 DRIVE LAYOUT 38
2.2 JUNCTION GATES 40
2.2.1 PROOF MODE 40
2.2.2 SHIFT MODE 40
2.2.3 STAPLE MODE 41
2.3 PRE-STACKING 42
2.4 TRAY MOVEMENT MECHANISM 44
2.4.1 UPPER TRAY 44
2.4.2 LOWER TRAY (B804 ONLY) 46
2.5 CORNER STAPLING 49
2.5.1 STACKING AND JOGGING 49
2.5.2 STAPLER MOVEMENT 50
2.5.3 CORNER STAPLING 52
2.6 BOOKLET STAPLING (B804 ONLY) 53
2.6.1 BOOKLET PRESSURE MECHANISM 53
2.6.2 BOOKLET STAPLING AND FOLDING 54
2.6.3 BOOKLET STAPLING AND FOLDING MECHANISMS 60
2.7 UPPER TRAY OUTPUT 63
2.7.1 FEED OUT 63
2.7.2 FEED OUT STACKING 64
2.8 PUNCH UNIT B702 (FOR B804/B805) 65
2.8.1 OVERVIEW OF OPERATION 65
2.8.2 PUNCH MECHANISMS 67
2.8.3 PUNCH HOPPER MECHANISM 70
2.9 FINISHER JAM DETECTION 72

Read This First

Safety and Symbols

Replacement Procedure Safety

⚠CAUTION

- Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the replacement procedures in this manual.

Symbols Used in this Manual

This manual uses the following symbols.

☛: See or Refer to

: Screws

: Connector

: Clip ring

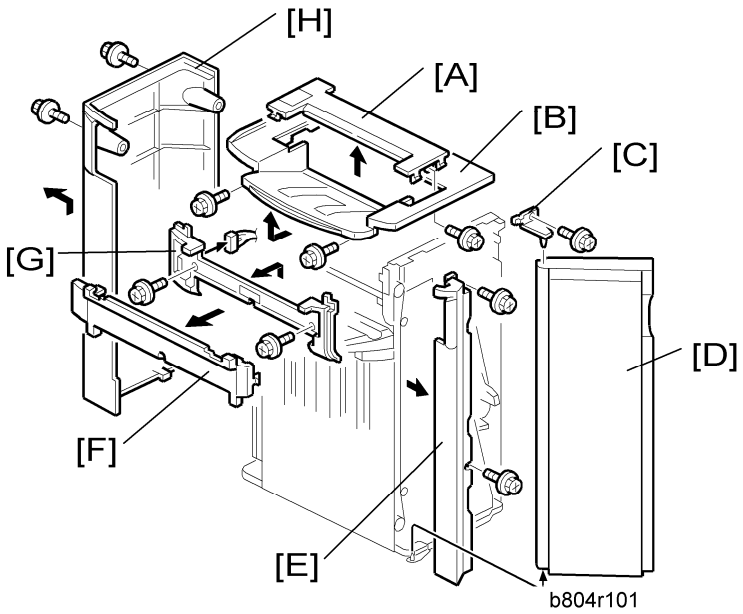
: E-ring

http://www.manuals4you.com

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

1.1 COVERS

1.1.1 EXTERIOR COVERS

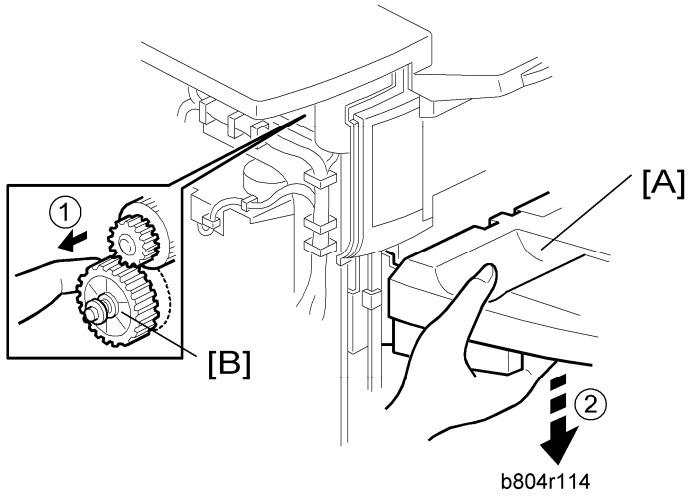


1. Open the front door [D].
2. Small upper cover [A] (x1)
3. Upper cover [B] (x2)
4. Front door bracket [C] (x1)
5. Front door [D]
6. Front left side cover [E] (x2)
7. Cover [F]
8. Paper exit cover [G] (x2)
9. Rear cover [H] (x2)

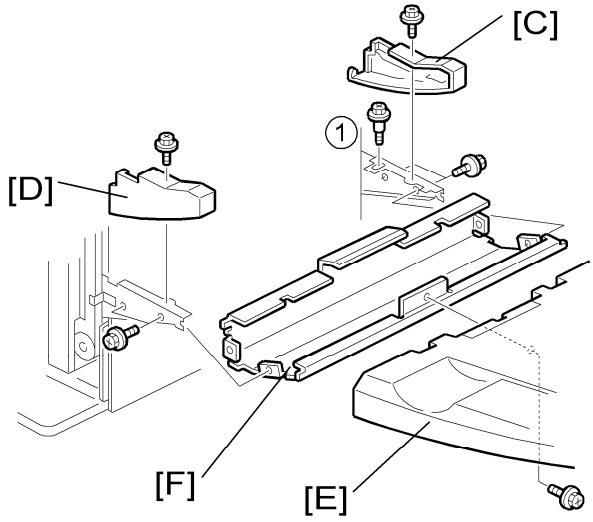
http://www.manuals4you.com

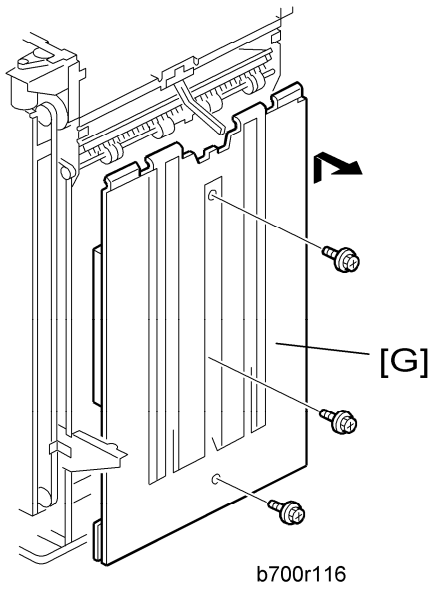
1.1.2 UPPER TRAY, END FENCE

1. Remove the rear cover. (* "Exterior Covers")



1. Support the tray [A] with your right hand.
2. Pull gear [B] toward you ① to release.
3. Slowly lower the tray ② until it stops.

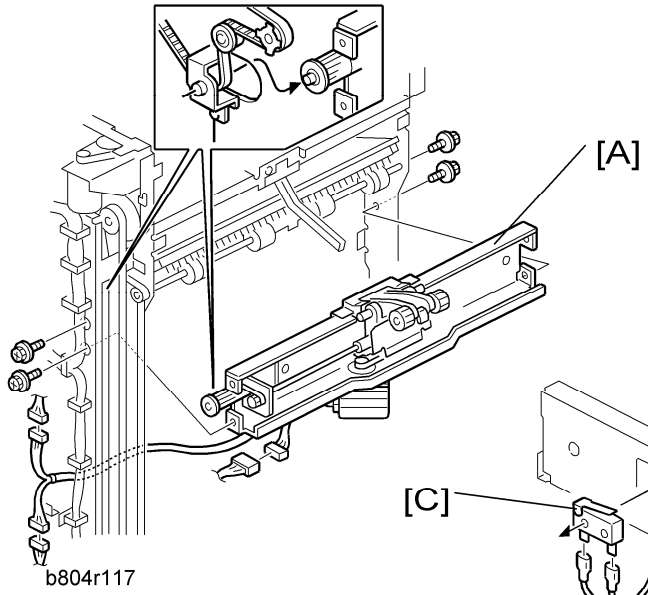


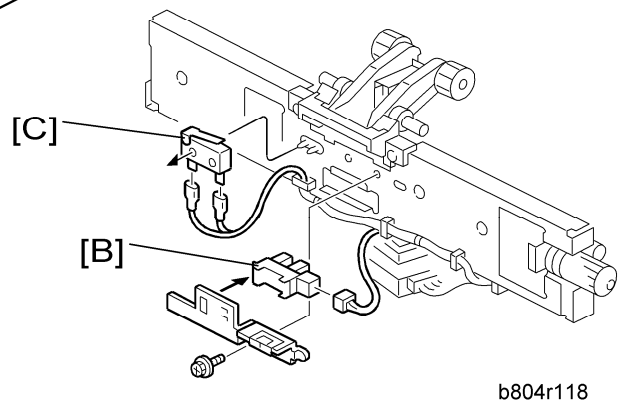


4. Front side cover [C] (x1)
5. Rear side cover [D] (x1)
6. Upper tray [E] (x1)
7. Tray bracket [F] (x4, x1 shoulder screw ①)
8. End Fence [G](x3)

1.2 MAIN UNIT

1.2.1 UPPER TRAY LIMIT SENSOR, LIMIT SWITCH

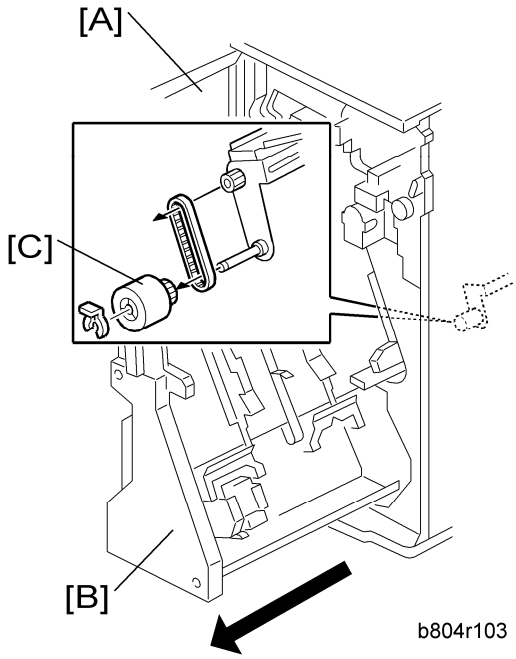




1. Front door, front left side cover, rear cover, upper cover (☛ "Exterior Cover")
2. End fence (☛1.1.2 "Upper Tray, End Fence")
3. Upper tray exit mechanism [A] (x4, x3)
4. Upper tray limit sensor [B] (x1, x1)
5. Upper tray limit switch [C] (x2)

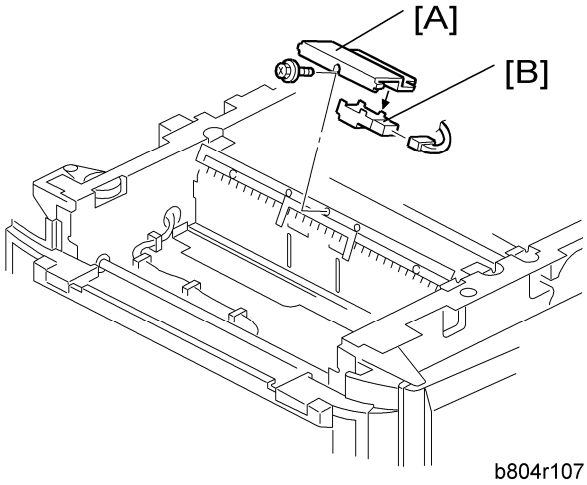
http://www.manuals4you.com

1.2.2 POSITIONING ROLLER



1. Open the front door [A].
2. Pull out the stapling unit [B].
3. Positioning roller [C] (x1, timing belt x1)

1.2.3 PROOF TRAY EXIT SENSOR

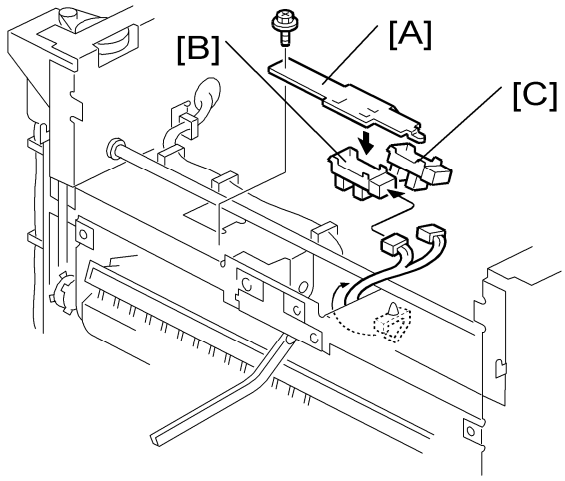


1. Small upper cover (1.1.1 "Exterior Cover")
2. Proof tray exit sensor bracket [A] (x1)

Main Unit

3. Proof tray exit sensor [B] (☞ x1)

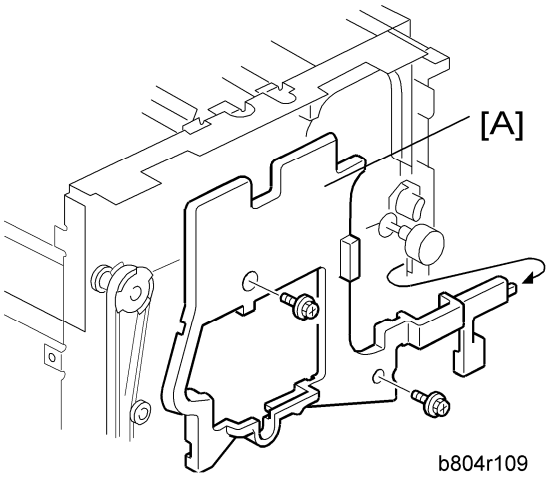
1.2.4 UPPER TRAY HEIGHT SENSORS 1, 2



b804r108

1. Small upper cover, upper cover (☛1.1.1 "Exterior Cover")
2. Upper tray paper height sensor bracket [A] (☞ x1)
3. Upper tray paper height sensor [B] – staple mode (S08) (☞ x1)
4. Upper tray paper height sensor [C] – non-staple mode (S09) (☞ x1)

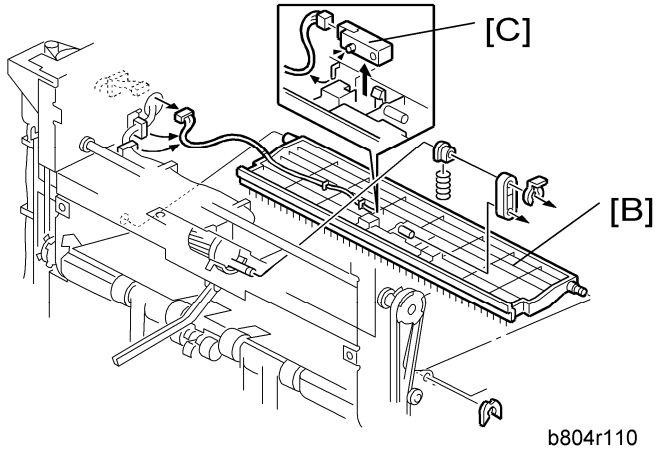
1.2.5 EXIT GUIDE PLATE, UPPER TRAY EXIT SENSOR



b804r109

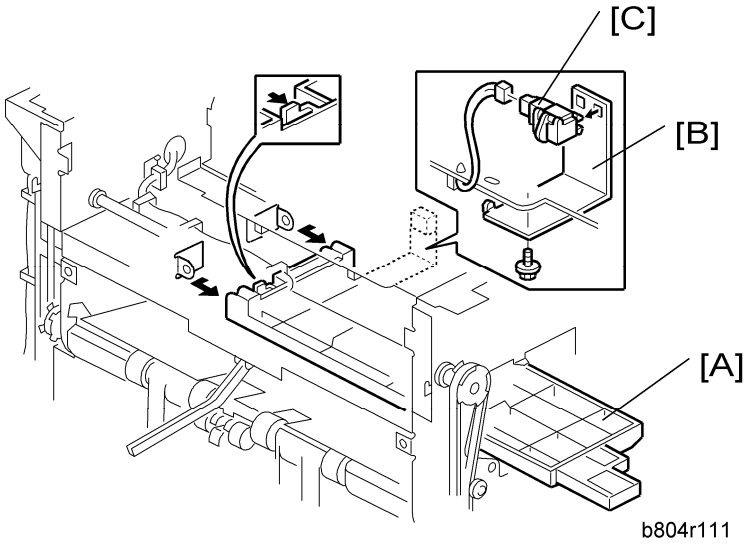
1. Rear cover, Upper covers, Front door, Cover, Paper exit cover (☛1.1.1 "Exterior Cover")
2. Inner cover [A] (☞ x2)

http://www.manuals4you.com



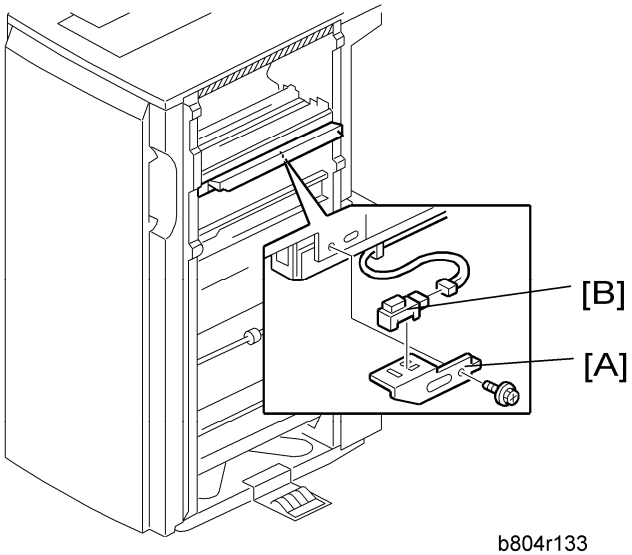
3. Exit guide plate [B] (x1, Link and spring, x1, x1)
4. Upper tray exit sensor [C] (S6) (x1)

1.2.6 PROOF TRAY FULL SENSOR



1. Exit guide plate. (1.2.5 "Exit Guide Plate, Upper Tray Exit Sensor")
2. Guide plate [A] (hook x 2)
3. Sensor bracket [B] (x1)
4. Proof tray full sensor [C] (S11) (x1)

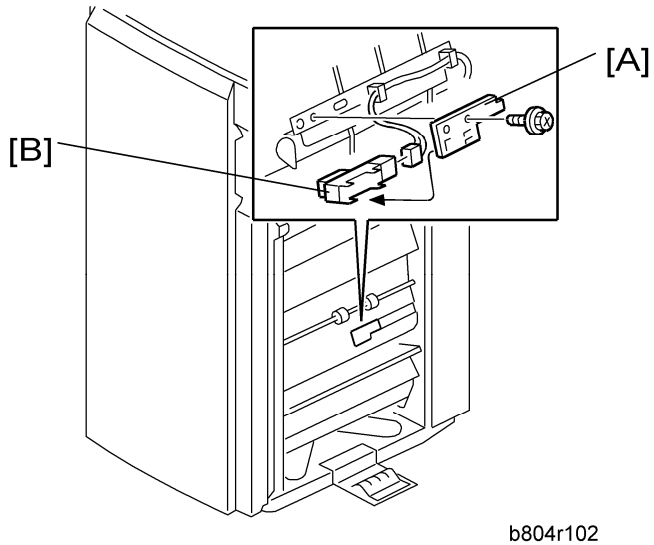
1.2.7 FINISHER ENTRANCE SENSOR



b804r133

1. Disconnect the finisher if it is connected to the copier.
2. Sensor bracket [A] (x1)
3. Finisher entrance sensor [B] (S1) (x1)

1.2.8 PRE-STACK TRAY EXIT SENSOR



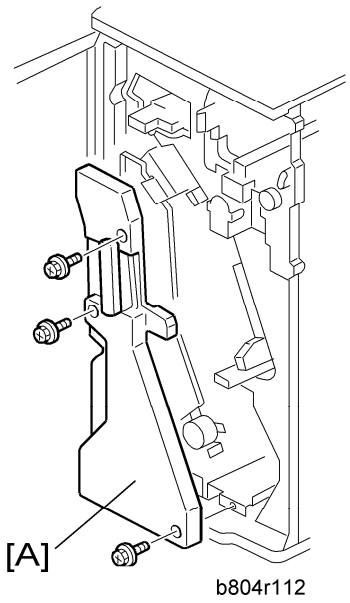
b804r102

1. Disconnect the finisher if it is connected to the copier.
2. Sensor bracket [A]
3. Pre-stack tray exit sensor [B] (S2)

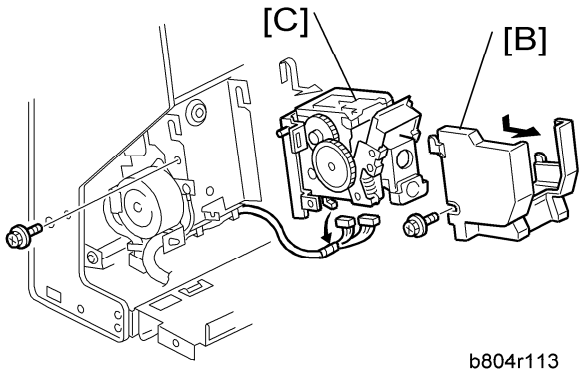
http://www.manuals4you.com

1.3 STAPLER UNIT

1.3.1 CORNER STAPLER



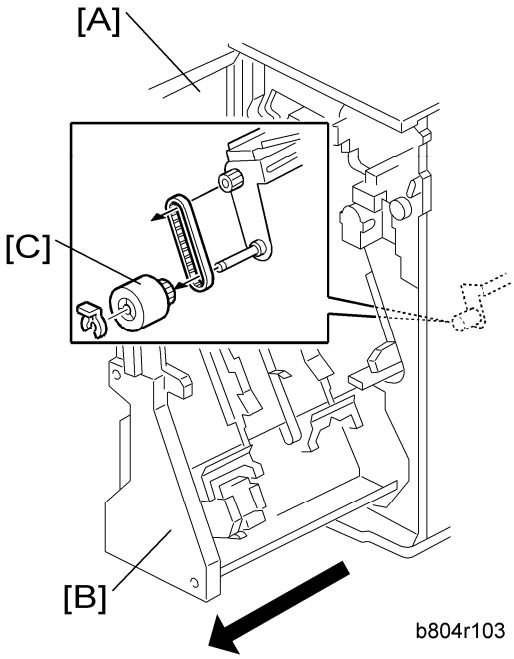
b804r112



b804r113

1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the stapler unit.
3. Inner cover [A] (x3)
4. Stapler unit holder [B] (x1)
5. Corner stapler [C] (M20) (x1)

1.3.2 POSITIONING ROLLER

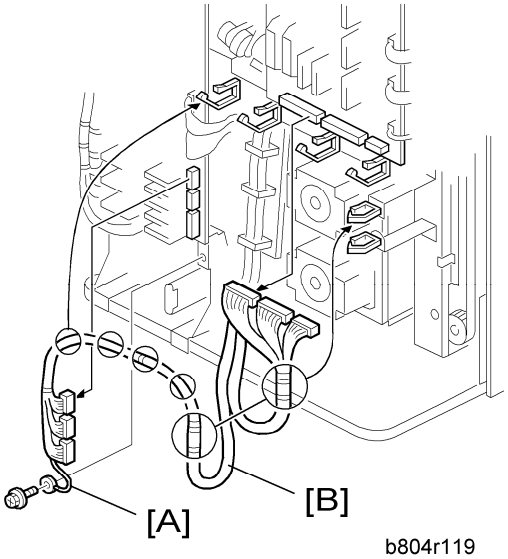


1. Open the front door [A].
2. Pull out the stapling unit [B].
3. Positioning roller [C] (x1, timing belt x1)

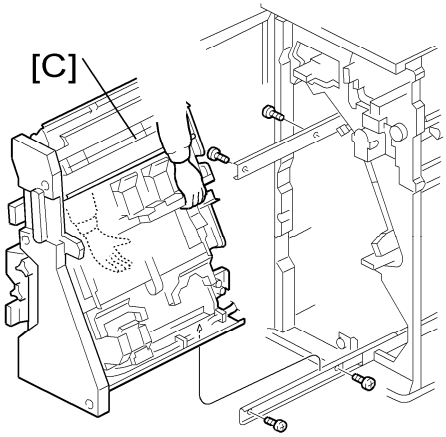
http://www.manuals4you.com

1.4 FOLD UNIT

1.4.1 FOLD UNIT



b804r119



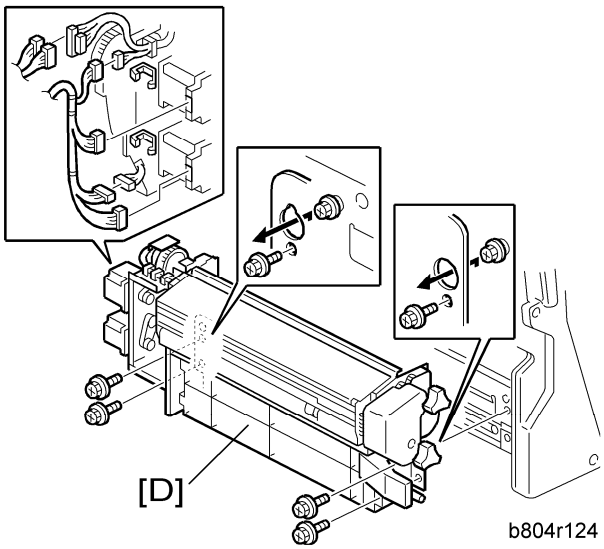
b804r801

1. Remove the back cover (☛1.1.1 "Exterior Covers").
2. Open the front door.

⚠CAUTION

- The stapler unit is heavy.

3. Ground cable [A] (☞ x1)
4. Harness [B] (☞ x6, ☞ x6)
5. Stapler unit [C] (☞ x4)



b804r124

Fold Unit

Important

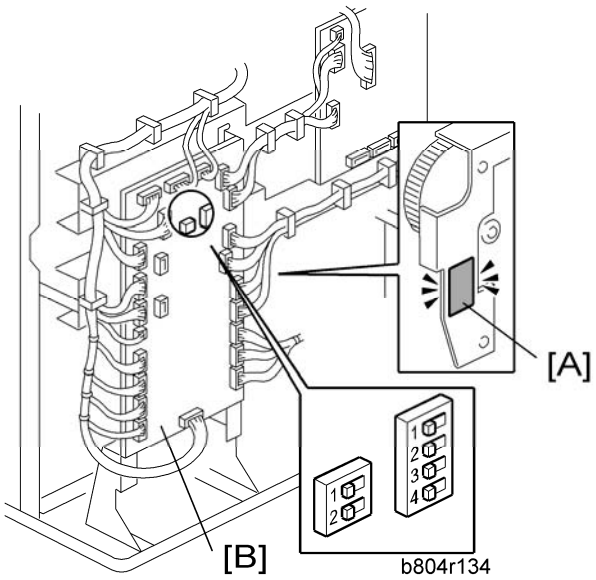
- Support the fold unit with your hand to prevent it from falling.

CAUTION

- The fold unit is heavy.

6. Folding unit [D] (x4, x2, x6)

If you have replaced the folding unit:



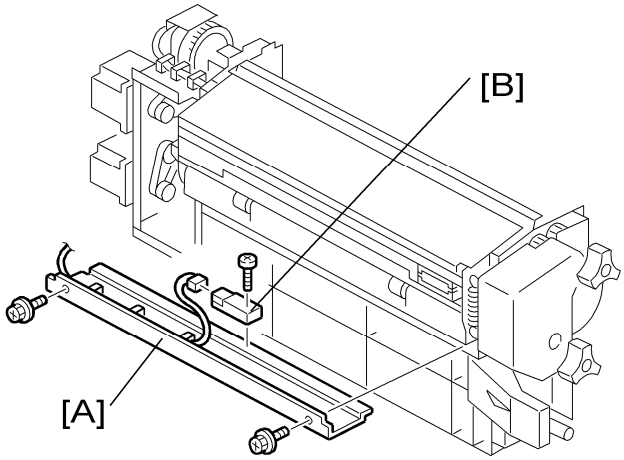
1. Read the DIP SW settings on the decal [A] attached to the back of the new folding unit.
2. Check the DIP SW settings on the main board [B] of the finisher.
3. If these settings are different, change these settings to match the settings printed on the decal attached to the folding unit.

Note

- Set DIP switches 1 to 4 (the switch set on the right). Do not touch the other DIP switches.

http://www.manuals4you.com

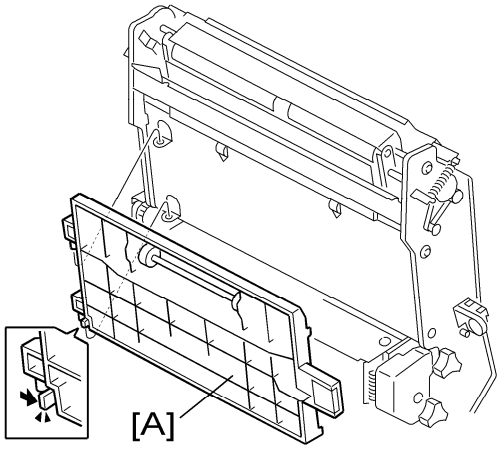
1.4.2 FOLD UNIT ENTRANCE SENSOR



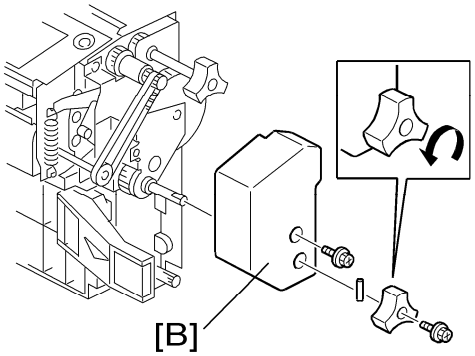
b804r132

1. Pull out the stapler unit (☛1.3.2 "Positioning Roller").
2. Fold unit entrance sensor bracket [A] (☞ x2)
3. Fold unit entrance sensor [B] (S26) (☞ x1, ☜ x1)

1.4.3 FOLD UNIT EXIT SENSOR



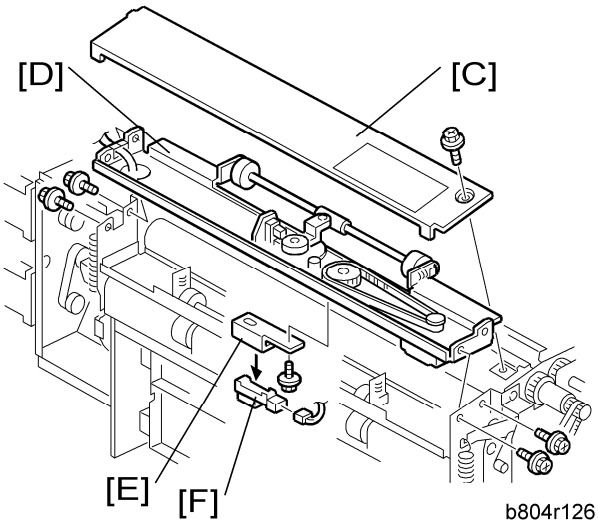
b804r121



b804r125

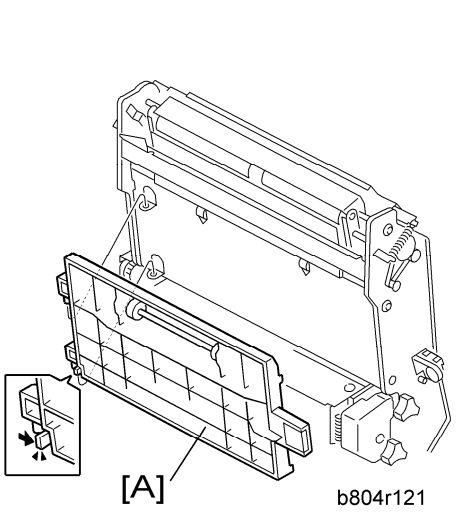
1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the stapler unit (☛1.3.2 "Positioning Roller").
3. Fold unit vertical guide plate [A]
4. Fold unit inner cover [B] (☞ x2, Spring pin x1)

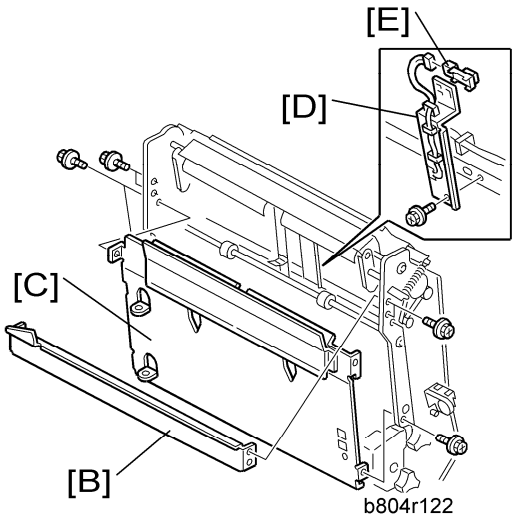
Fold Unit



5. Fold unit upper cover [C] (x1)
6. Paper clamp mechanism [D] (x4)
7. Fold unit exit sensor bracket [E] (x1)
8. Fold unit exit sensor [F] (S31) (x1)

1.4.4 STACK PRESENT SENSOR





Important

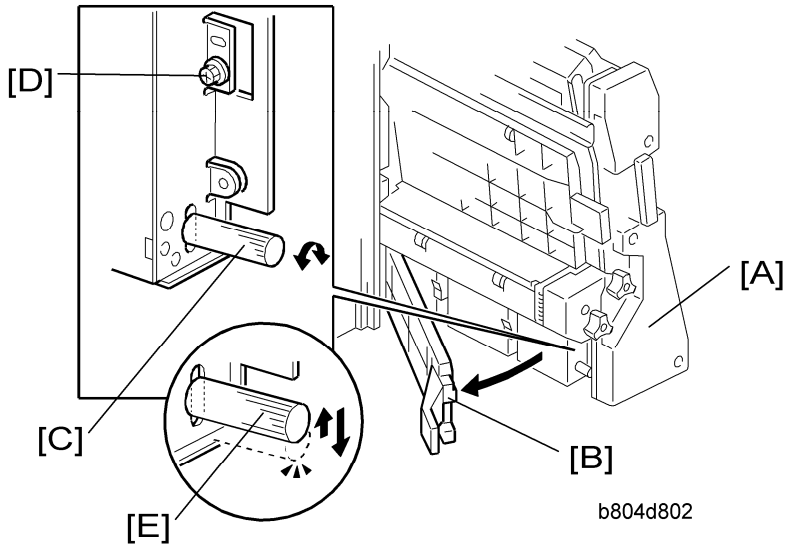
- If you intend to correct the horizontal and vertical skew for the fold unit at the same time, do those adjustments first, then replace the sensor. (1.4.5 "Folding Horizontal Skew Adjustment" or "Fold Vertical Skew Adjustment")

1. Remove the stapler unit (1.4.1 "Fold Unit")

http://www.manuals4you.com

2. Guide plate [A].
3. Stay [B] (x4)
4. Left plate [C] (x4)
5. Sensor bracket [D] (x1)
6. Stack present sensor [E] (S32) (x1)

1.4.5 FOLDING HORIZONTAL SKEW ADJUSTMENT (FOR B804 ONLY)



Important

- The fold unit is adjusted for optimum performance before the finisher is shipped from the factory. Do this adjustment only if the edges of folded booklets are not even.

1. Switch the copier on and enter the SP mode.
2. Europe, Asia: Use **SP6-134-001** (this is for A3 paper). North America: Use **SP6-134-005** (this is for DLT paper).

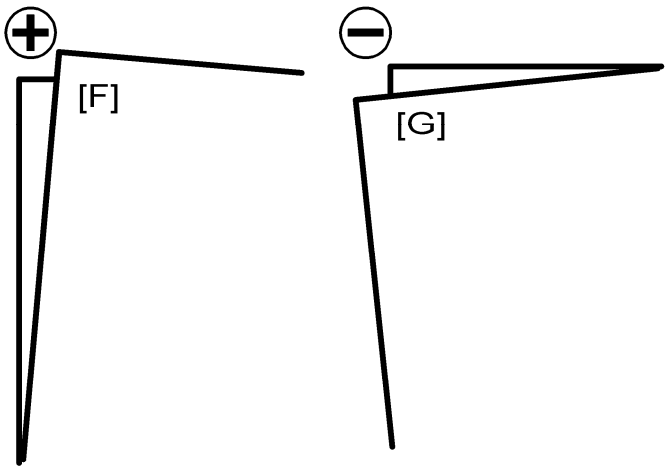
Note

- If the original setting of SP6-134-001 or -005 is not "0", then you must do the vertical skew adjustment (1.4.6 "Fold Vertical Skew Adjustment") after you finish this horizontal skew procedure.

3. Use the 10-key pad to input "-2" (mm) for the SP value. (Press [•/×] to enter the minus sign.)
4. Press [#] then exit the SP mode.

Fold Unit

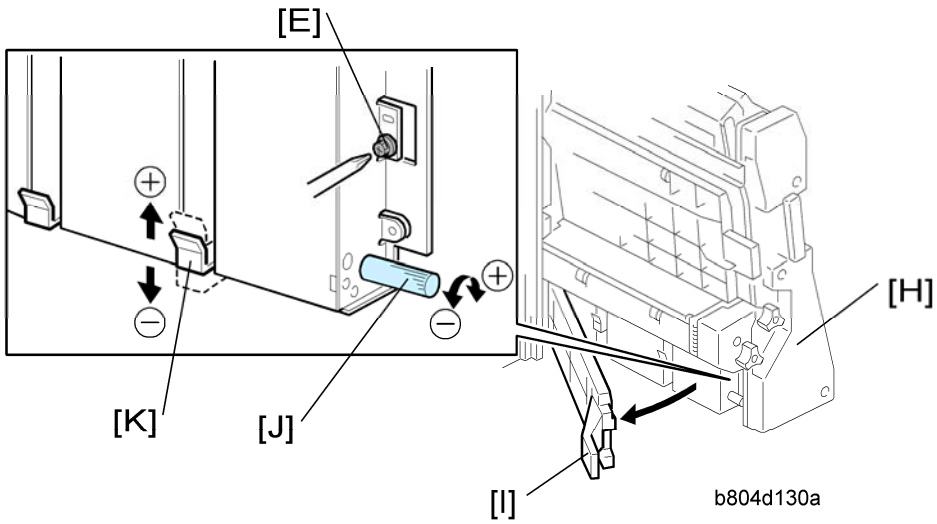
5. Open the front door and pull the stapler unit [A] out of the finisher.
6. Open the guide plate [B].
7. Loosen the adjustment screw [C] and then tighten until it stops. (Do not over tighten.)
8. Remove the lock screw [D].
9. Raise the tip [E] of the adjustment screw very slightly and allow it to descend under its own weight.



b804r901

10. Push the stapler unit into the finisher and close the front door.
11. Do a folding test.
    - Switch the copier on.
    - Put one page of A3 or DLT paper in the ARDF.
    - On the copier operation panel, select booklet stapling.
    - Press [Start]. One sheet is folded.
12. Remove the sheet from the lower tray.
13. Hold the folded sheet with the creased side pointing down and face-up (the same way that it came out of the finisher).
14. Referring to the diagram, determine if the skew is + [F] or - [G].

http://www.manuals4you.com



15. Open the front door of the finisher and pull the stapler unit [H] out.
16. Open the guide plate [I].
17. Turn the adjustment screw [J] to correct the amount of skew you measured from the test sheet.
    - For + skew [F], turn the adjustment screw (clockwise).
    - For – skew [G], turn the adjustment screw to the left (counter-clockwise).
    - Every click in the +/– direction adjusts the fold position by 0.1 mm by moving the bottom fence [K].
18. Raise the tip of the adjustment screw [J] and allow it to lower under its own weight.
19. Attach and tighten the lock screw [L].
20. Push the stapler unit into the machine, close the front door, then turn the copier on.
21. Europe, Asia: Do **SP6-134-001** (this is for A3 paper). North America: **Do SP6-134-005** (this is for DLT paper).
22. Reset it to "0".
23. Do the test again.
24. If the result is satisfactory, this completes the adjustment. -or- If some skew remains, repeat this adjustment.

Note

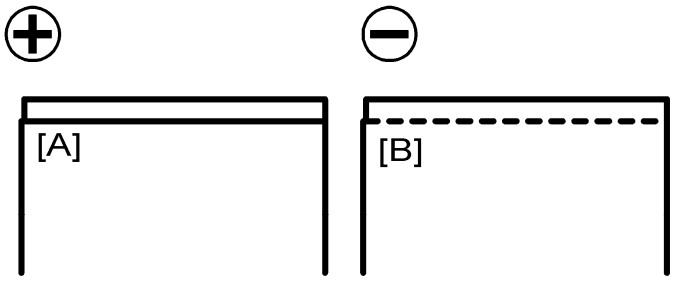
- After doing this adjustment, adjust for vertical skew, if necessary. (☛1.4.6 "Fold Vertical Skew Adjustment")

1.4.6 FOLD VERTICAL SKEW ADJUSTMENT (FOR B804 ONLY)

Important

- The fold unit is adjusted for optimum performance before the finisher is shipped from the factory. Do this adjustment only if the edges of folded booklets are not even.

1. Switch the copier on.
2. Do a folding test.
   - Switch the copier on.
   - Put one page of A3 or DLT paper in the ARDF.
   - On the copier operation panel, select booklet stapling.
   - Press [Start]. One sheet is folded.
3. Hold the folded sheet with the creased side pointing down, and face-up (the same way that it came out of the finisher).



b804r902

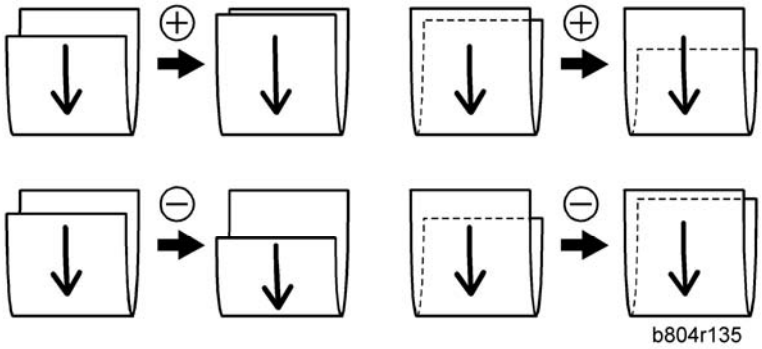
4. Referring to the diagram, determine if the skew is positive [A] or negative [B].
5. Measure the amount of skew.
6. Enter the SP mode
   - Europe, Asia: Use **SP6-134-001** (this is for A3 paper).
   - North America: Use **SP6-134-005** (this is for DLT paper).
7. Enter one-half the measured amount of skew. Example: If the measure amount of skew is -1.2 mm, enter -0.6 mm

   Note

   - The range for measurement is –3.0 mm to +3.0 mm in 0.2 mm steps for every notch adjustment.
8. Exit the SP mode and do the test again (steps 2 to 5).
9. Repeat this procedure until the skew is corrected.

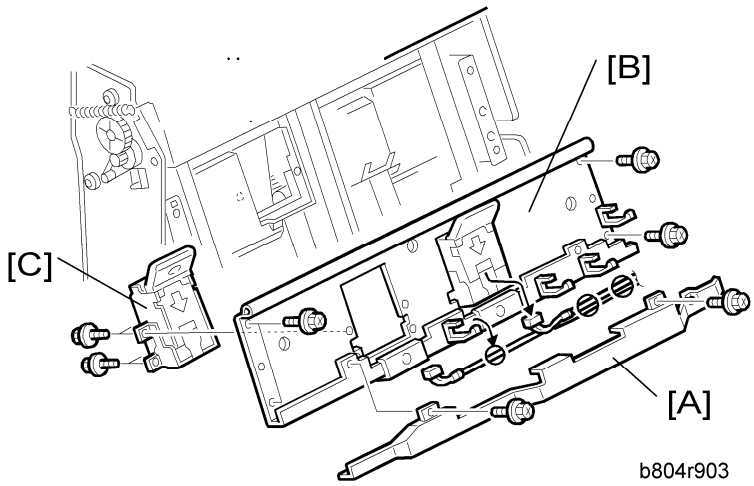
   The illustration below shows the effects of +/- adjustment with SP6113. (The vertical arrows show the direction of paper feed.)

http://www.manuals4you.com


b804r135

1.5 BOOKLET STAPLER UNIT

1.5.1 BOOKLET STAPLER

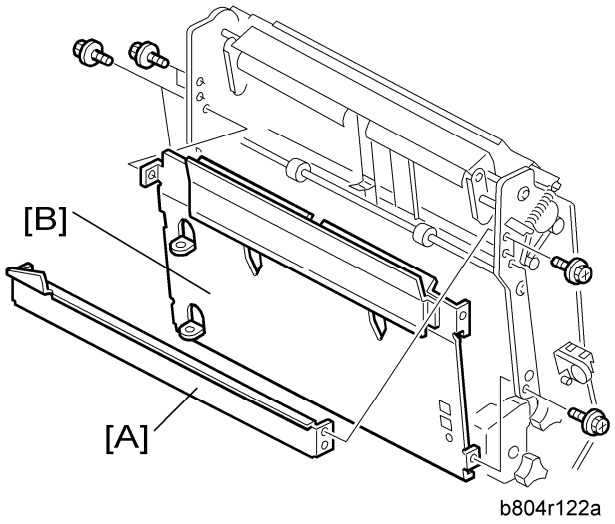


1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the stapler unit (☛1.2.2 "Positioning Roller").
3. Harness cover [A] (x2)
4. Booklet stapler support stay [B] (x4, x2, x4)
5. Stapler [C] (x4)

1.5.2 BOOKLET STAPLER MOTOR

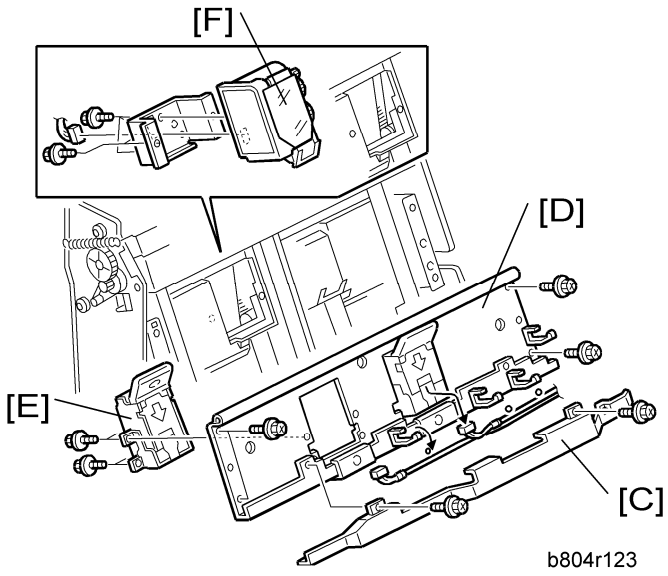
1. Open the front door.
2. Remove the stapler unit. (☛1.4.1 "Fold Unit")

http://www.manuals4you.com



b804r122a

3. Stay [A] (x4).
4. Left plate [B] (x4)



b804r123

5. Harness cover [C] (x2)
6. Booklet stapler support stay [D] (x4, x2, x4)
7. Booklet stapler [E] (x4)
8. Booklet stapler motor [F] (x2, x1)

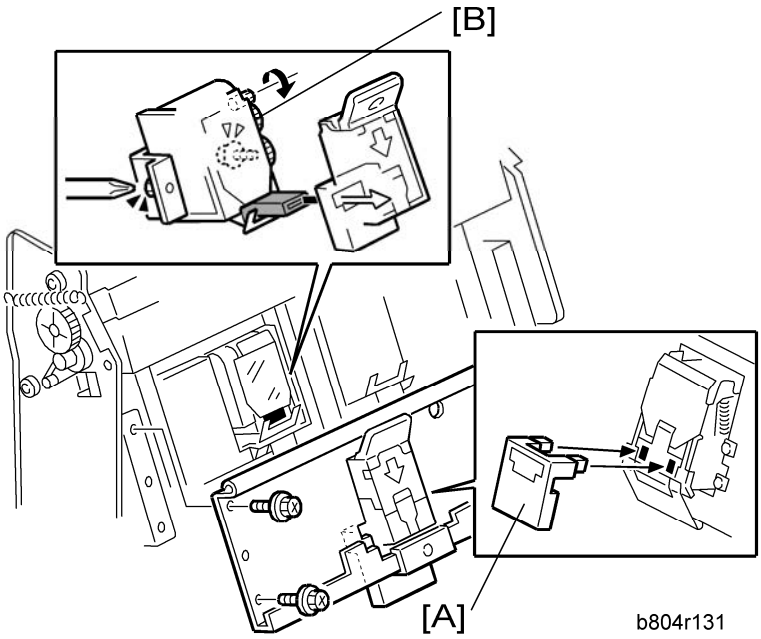
To Reattach the Booklet Stapler Motor

1. Reattach the booklet stapler motor.

Important

- Do not tighten the screws.

Booklet Stapler Unit



2. Attach the special tool [A] and reattach the booklet stapler stay.

Note

- This tool is included with the stapler spare part.

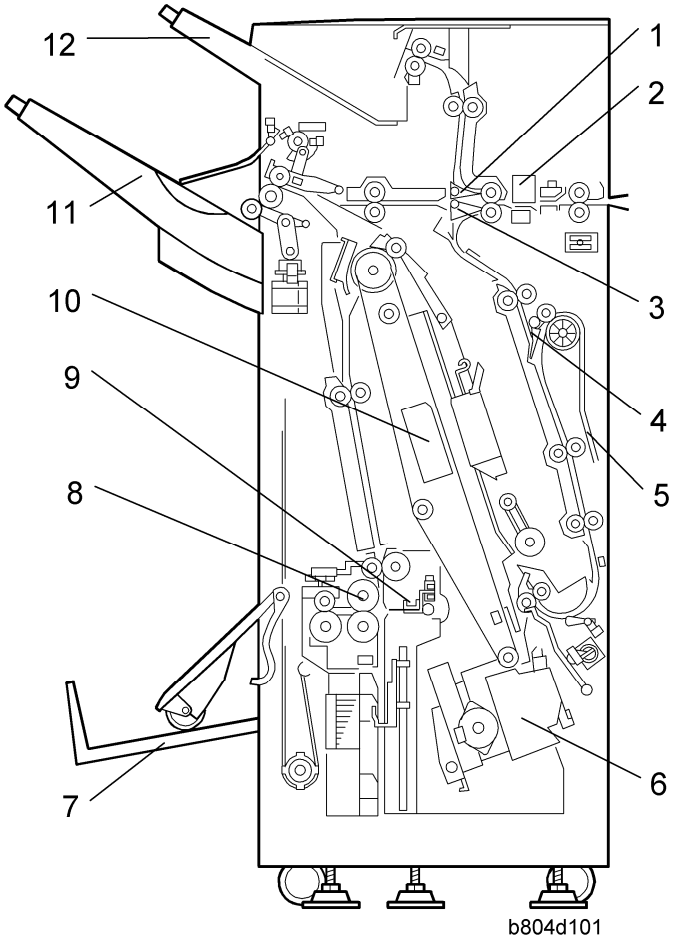
3. Turn the gear [B] with your finger until it stops.
4. Tighten the screws to attach to the booklet stapler motor.
5. Remove the stay again and remove the special tool.
6. Reattach the booklet stapler stay.
7. Push the stapler unit into the machine.

http://www.manuals4you.com

2. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT

2.1.1 GENERAL LAYOUT



1. Proof Tray Junction Gate	7. Lower Tray (Booklet)*[1]
2. Punch Unit	8. Folder Rollers*[1]
3. Stapler Junction Gate	9. Folder Plate*[1]
4. Pre-Stack Junction Gate	10. Booklet Stapler*[1]
5. Pre-Stack Tray	11. Upper Tray (Shift)
6. Corner Stapler (M20)	12. Proof Tray

Component Layout

*[1]: B804 Only

Paper direction

The operation of the proof tray and stapler junction gates direct the flow of the paper once it enters the finisher:

Proof Junction Gate	Stapler Junction Gate	Paper Feeds
Closed	Closed	Paper feeds straight through
Open	Closed	Paper feeds to the proof tray
Closed	**Open**	Paper feds to the staple tray

Proof tray

Copies are sent to the proof tray (12) when neither sorting nor stapling are selected for the job.

Upper tray

The upper tray (11) receives copies that are sorted and shifted and also receives copies that have been corner stapled. Corner stapling is provided on both the B804 and the B805.

Pre-stack tray

The pre-stack tray (5) has a switchback mechanism to increase the productivity of stapling. (☛2.3 "Pre-Stacking) Pre-stacking is done for corner stapling in the B804/B805 and for booklet stapling in the B804.

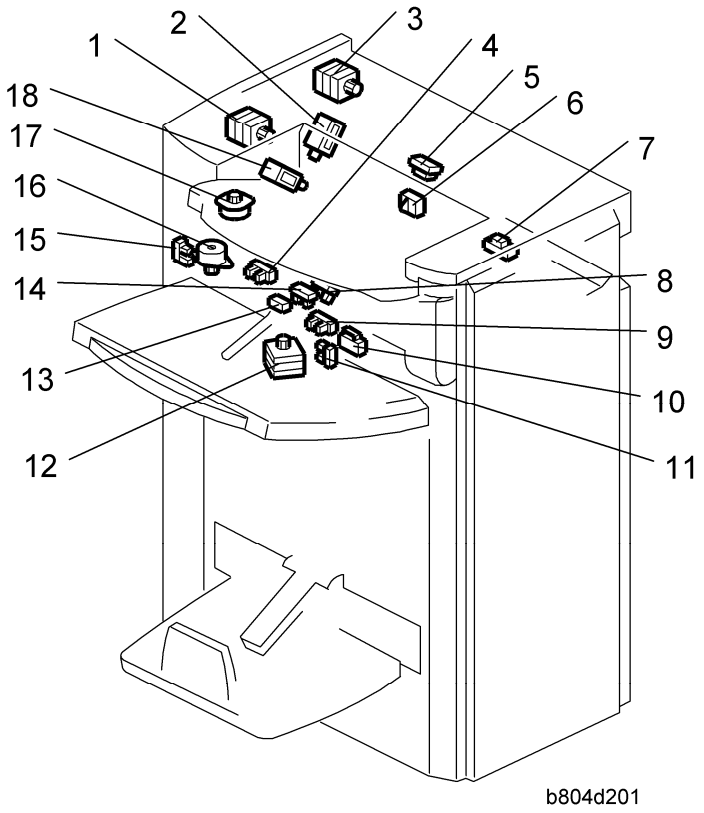
Lower tray

The lower tray (7) receives copies that have been center folded and stapled (booklet stapling). Booklet stapling is not provided on the B805.

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

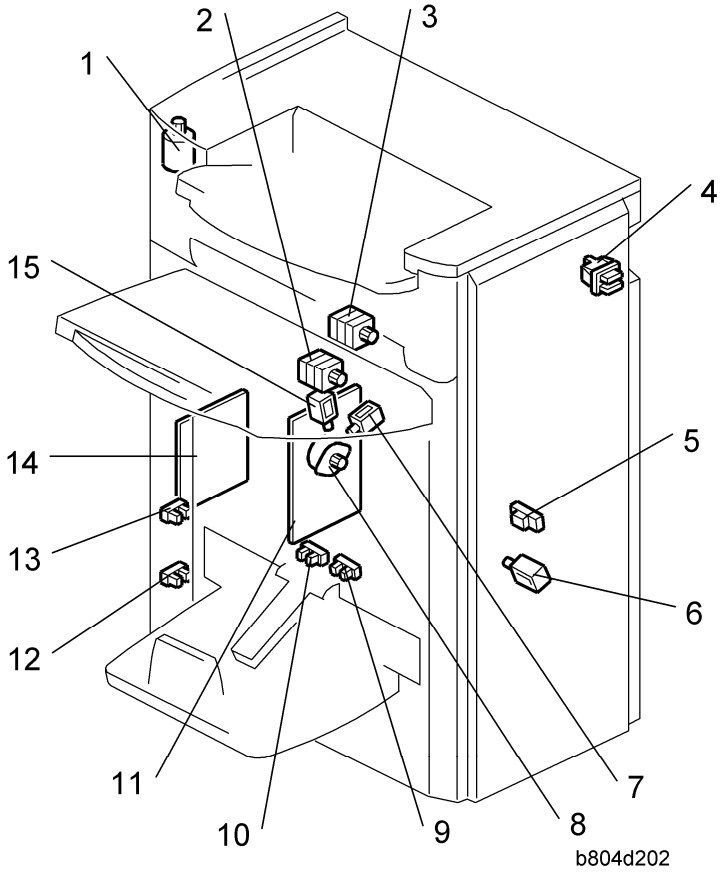
Upper Area B804/B805



1. Upper/Proof Exit Motor (M4) 2. Stapling Tray Junction Gate Solenoid (SOL2) 3. Upper Transport Motor (M2) 4. Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor (S7) 5. Proof Tray Exit Sensor (S10) 6. Proof Tray Full Sensor (S11) 7. Finisher Entrance Sensor (S1) 8. Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor (S9) (Non-Staple Mode) 9. Upper Tray Limit Sensor (S12)	10. Upper Tray Limit Switch (SW2) 11. Stacking Roller HP Sensor (S13) 12. Stacking Sponge Roller Motor (M10) 13. Upper Tray Exit Sensor (S6) 14. Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor (S8) (Staple Mode) 15. Shift Roller HP Sensor (S5) 16. Shift Roller Motor (M18) 17. Exit Guide Plate Motor (M19) 18. Proof Junction Gate Solenoid (SOL1)

Component Layout

Lower Area B804/B805

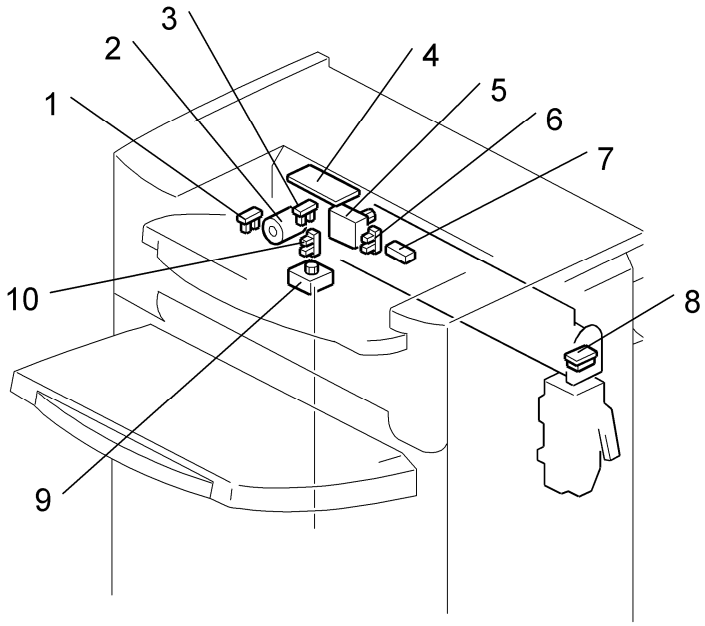


1. Upper Tray Lift Motor (M21) 2. Lower Transport Motor (M3) 3. Entrance Motor (M1) 4. Front Door Safety Switch (SW1) 5. Pre-Stack Tray Exit Sensor (S2) 6. Stapling Edge Pressure Plate Solenoid (SOL4) 7. Positioning Roller Solenoid (SOL3)	8. Positioning Roller Motor (M14) 9. Lower Tray Full Sensor – Front (S34)*1 10. Lower Tray Full Sensor – Rear (S33)*1 11. Main Board (PCB1) 12. Upper Tray Full Sensor – (S20) *2 13. Upper Tray Full Sensor – (S19) 14. Booklet Stapler Board (PCB2)*1 15. Booklet Pressure Roller Solenoid – (SOL5) *1

*1: B804 Only, *2: B805 Only

http://www.manuals4you.com

Punch Unit B702

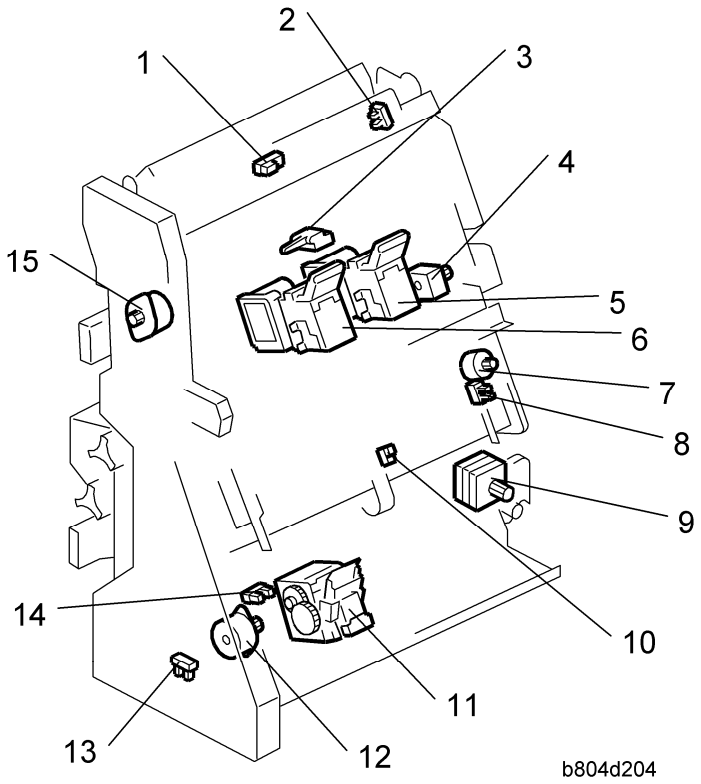


b804d203a

1. Punch Encoder Sensor (S24) 2. Punch Drive Motor (M24) 3. Punch HP Sensor (S24) 4. Punch Unit Board (PCB3) 5. Paper Position Sensor Slide Motor (M7)	6. Paper Position Slide HP Sensor (S22) 7. Paper Position Sensor (S3) 8. Punch Hopper Full Sensor (S4) 9. Punch Movement Motor (M9) 10. Punch Movement HP Sensor (S21)

Component Layout

Stacker/Stapler - B804/B805

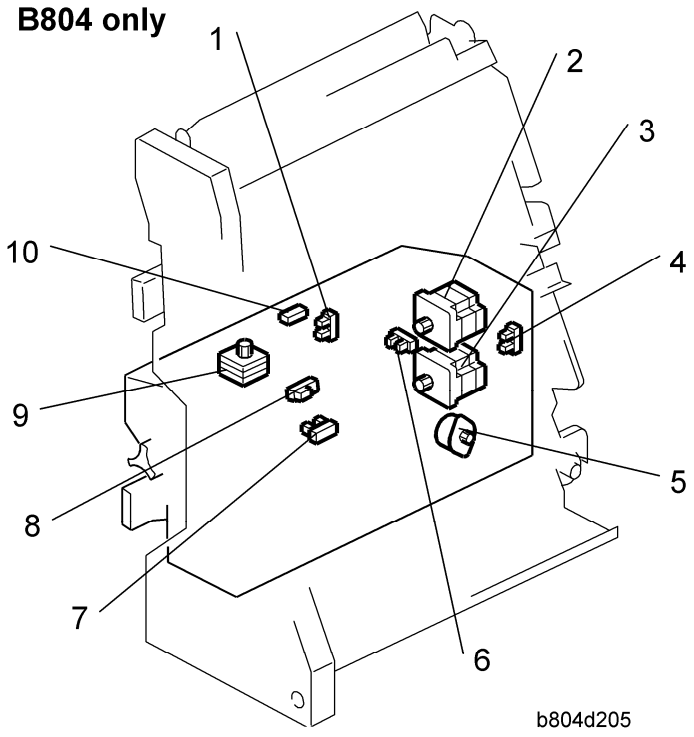


1. Stack Present Sensor (S32)*1	7. Jogger Fence Motor (M15)
2. Stack Junction Gate HP Sensor (S27)*1	8. Jogger Fence HP Sensor (S15)
3. Stack Feed Out Belt HP Sensor (S16)	9. Corner Stapler Movement Motor (M6)
4. Feed Out Belt Motor (M5)	10. Stapling Tray Paper Sensor (S14)
5. Booklet Stapler EH185R – Rear (M23)*1	11. Corner Stapler EH530 (M20)
6. Booklet Stapler EH185R – Front (M22)*1	12. Corner Stapler Rotation Motor (M13)
	13. Corner Stapler HP Sensor (S17)
	14. Stapler Rotation HP Sensor (S18)
	15. Stack Junction Gate Motor (M17) *1

*1: B804 Only

http://www.manuals4you.com

B804 Fold unit



1. Clamp Roller HP Sensor (S25)	6. Fold Cam HP Sensor (S30)
2. Fold Roller Motor (M12)	7. Fold Bottom Fence HP Sensor (S28)
3. Fold Plate Motor (M11)	8. Fold Unit Entrance Sensor (S26)
4. Fold Plate HP Sensor (S29)	9. Clamp Roller Retraction Motor (M8)
5. Fold Unit Bottom Fence Lift Motor (M16)	10. Fold Unit Exit Sensor (S31)

2.1.3 SUMMARY OF ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

Here is a general summary of all the electrical components of the B804/B805 finishers.

Note

- In the table below a number that appears in bold text (**M8**, etc.) denotes a component that is on the 2000/3000 Sheet Finisher B804 only.

Component Layout

No.	Component	Function
Boards (PCB)		
PCB1	Main Board	The main board that controls the finisher
PCB2	Booklet Stapler Board	A separate board that controls booklet finishing.
PCB3	Punch Unit Board	The board that controls the punch unit.
Motors		
M1	Finisher Entrance Motor	Drives 1) the finisher entrance rollers, 2) and the punch waste transport belt of the punch unit.
M2	Upper Transport Motor	Drives the paper feed rollers that feed paper 1) to the proof tray, 2) straight-through to the upper tray, 3) the pre-stack tray entrance roller.
M3	Lower Transport Motor	Drives paper feed rollers forward and reverse in the pre-stack tray for the switchback, and drives the other rollers in the lower transport area.
M4	Upper/Proof Tray Exit Motor	Drives 1) proof tray exit rollers, 2) extension and retraction of the stacking sponge roller, 3) upper tray exit rollers.
M5	Feed Out Belt Motor	Drives the feed out belt that moves the stapled stacks out of the stapling tray after stapling.
M6	Corner Stapler Movement Motor	Moves the corner stapler horizontally on a steel rod to position the stapler at the stapling position at 1) the front, 2) the rear (straight stapling), 3) the rear (diagonal stapling), or 4) the front and rear for double stapling.
M7	Paper Position Sensor Slide Motor	Drives the movement of the paper position slide that holds the paper position sensor (S3) that detects the position of the paper.
M8	Clamp Roller Retraction Motor	Drives a large cam that alternately clamps and unclamps the clamp retraction roller, the idle roller of the clamp roller pair. When these rollers are clamped, they

http://www.manuals4you.com

No.	Component	Function
		are part of the paper feed path and feed the stack toward the bottom fence of the fold unit. When the idle roller is retracted, the stacks falls a very short distance (3 mm) onto the fold unit bottom fence below. These rollers remain unclamped while the bottom fence positions the stack for folding and while the stack is folded by the fold rollers.
M9	Punch Movement Motor	Drives the front/back movement of the punch unit to position it correctly for stapling the paper below.
M10	Stacking Sponge Roller Motor	Rotates the stacking roller that drags each sheet back against the end fence to jog the bottom of each sheet after feed out to the upper tray.
M11	Fold Plate Motor	Drives the fold plate that pushes the center of the stack into the nip of the fold rollers to start the fold.
M12	Fold Roller Motor	Rotates forward and drives the fold rollers that fold the stack and feed it out of the fold unit, reverses to feed the fold once more into the fold unit, and then rotates forward again to feed the fold out of the fold unit.
M13	Corner Stapler Rotation Motor	Swivels the corner stapler and positions it so the staple fires at an oblique angle at the rear corner of the paper stack.
M14	Positioning Roller Motor	Drives the positioning roller in the stapling tray.
M15	Jogger Fence Motor	Drives the jogger fences in the stapling tray to jog both sides of the stack before stapling.
M16	Fold Unit Bottom Fence Lift Motor	Raises the bottom fence and stops when the center of the vertical stack is opposite the edge of the horizontal fold blade. The distance for raising the blade is prescribed as one-half the size of the paper selected for the job. For large paper, (A3, B4) the bottom fence first

Component Layout

No.	Component	Function
		lowers the stack 10 mm below the fold position, and then raises it to the fold position.
M17	Stack Junction Gate Motor	Drives the large cam that operates the stack junction gate at the top of the stapling tray. When this gate is open, it directs the ascending stack to the upper tray if it has been corner stapled, or if it is closed the gate turns the booklet stapled stack down so it falls onto the bottom fence of the folding unit.
M18	Shift Roller Motor	Drives the shift roller that operates in shift mode to stagger document sets as they feed out to the upper tray (making them easier to separate).
M19	Exit Guide Plate Motor	Drives the mechanism that raises and lowers the exit guide plate.
M20	Corner Stapler EH530	This is the roving corner stapler, mounted on a steel rail that staples 1) at the front, 2) at the rear (straight staple), 3) at the rear (diagonal staple), and 4) font and rear (two staples).
M21	Upper Tray Lift Motor	Raises and lowers the upper tray during feed out to keep the tray at the optimum height until it is full.
M22	Booklet Stapler EH185R: Front	Booklet stapler. Staples paper stacks in the center before they are folded.
M23	Booklet Stapler EH185R: Rear	Booklet stapler. Staples paper stacks in the center before they are folded.
M24	Punch Drive Motor	Fires the punches that punch the holes in the paper.
Sensors		
S1	Finisher Entrance Sensor	Provides two functions: (1) Detects paper entering the finisher from the copier, and (2) Signals a jam if it detects paper at the entrance when the copier is switched on.

http://www.manuals4you.com

No.	Component	Function
S2	Pre-stack Tray Exit Sensor	Detects 1) paper fed from the pre-stack tray to the stapling tray, and detects 2) paper in the pre-stack when the copier is switched on. (This sensor performs no timing function. The entire flow of paper through the pre-stacking mechanism is controlled by motor pulse counts.)
S3	Paper Position Sensor	The photosensor that detects the edge of the paper and sends this information to the punch unit board where it is used to position the punch for punching the holes in the paper.
S4	Punch Hopper Full Sensor	1) A photosensor that detects and signals that the punch hopper is filled with punch waste and needs emptying, and 2) confirms the presence of the punch hopper and signals an error if it is missing or not installed completely.
S5	Shift Roller HP Sensor	Located near the shift roller motor, controls the front-to-back movement of the shift roller as shifts paper during straight-through feed.
S6	Upper Tray Exit Sensor	A flat, photo sensor located inside the guide plate, detects the leading edge and trailing edge of the paper as it feeds out to the upper tray during straight-through jobs (with and without stapling). When paper is fed to the upper tray, at the paper output slot this sensor signals an error when it detects (1) paper has failed to leave the paper exit (lag error), (2) detects paper has failed to arrive at the paper exit (late error), (3) detects paper is in the exit slot when the machine is turned on.
S7	Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor	Controls the vertical movement of the control exit guide . The guide plate is in the home position when the guide plate is down and the actuator interrupts the sensor gap.

Component Layout

No.	Component	Function
S8	Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor (Staple Mode)	This is the upper sensor of the upper/lower paper height sensor pair that controls the lift of the upper tray. This sensor detects the paper height of the stack in the upper tray when the copier is operating in the staple mode.
S9	Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor (Non-Staple Mode)	This is the lower sensor of the upper/lower paper height sensor pair that controls the lift of the upper tray. When the machine is switched on, the upper tray rises until the actuator on the tray triggers this sensor to switch off the upper tray lift motor.
S10	Proof Tray Exit Sensor	This sensor detects and times the feeding of paper to the proof tray. It also detects whether paper is present at the proof tray exit when the copier is switched on.
S11	Proof Tray Full Sensor	The top of the stack in the proof tray increases until it nudges the feeler of this sensor. The sensor then signals that the proof tray is full and the job halts until some paper is removed from the proof tray.
S12	Upper Tray Limit Sensor	This sensor controls the position of the upper tray 1) during straight-through feed out, 2) during shift feed out, 3) when the machine is turned on. The machine obeys the signal of whichever sensor is actuated first. An actuator attached to an arm triggers this sensor. The tip of the same arm depresses the upper tray limit switch. If the sensor fails, the tip of the arm will activate the upper tray limit microswitch (SW2) and stop the lift of the upper tray. **Note**: When the machine is turned on, the upper tray position is controlled by either this sensor or the upper tray paper height sensor (S9).
S13	Stacking Roller HP Sensor	Controls the forward and back motion of the stacking roller (a sponge roller) located at the output slot of the upper tray. The sponge roller drags each ejected sheet

http://www.manuals4you.com

No.	Component	Function
		back against the end fence of the upper tray to keep the bottom of the stack aligned.
S14	Stapling Tray Paper Sensor	A photo sensor that detects whether paper is in the stapling tray. When this sensor detects paper, the bottom fence motor raises or lowers the bottom fence to position the selected paper size for booklet stapling.
S15	Jogger Fence HP Sensor	Detects the home position of the jogger fences. When the actuator on the jogger fence interrupts this sensor, the jogger fence is in its home position and the jogger fence motor (M15) stops.
S16	Stack Feed-Out Belt HP Sensor	Controls the position of the stack feed-out pawl on the stack feed-out belt. Once the actuator on the feed belt nudges the feeler of this sensor near the top of the stapling unit, the feed out belt motor (M5) remains on for the time prescribed to position the pawl at the home position to catch the next stack.
S17	Corner Stapler HP Sensor	Located at the front the stapling tray and mounted above the steel rod where the corner stapler travels, this sensor detects the home position of the corner stapler. The corner stapler is in its home position when the actuator on the corner stapler unit interrupts this sensor.
S18	Stapler Rotation HP Sensor	Controls the angle of the position of the corner stapler during oblique stapling.
S19	Upper Tray Full Sensor (B804/B805)	**B804**: When the actuator on the side of the upper fence enters the gap of this sensor, the sensor signals that the upper tray is at its lowest position (full) and stops the job. **B805**: One of two upper tray full sensors. This is the higher tray full sensor for A3 and other heavy paper. The other upper tray full sensor (20) is for lighter paper.

Component Layout

No.	Component	Function
S20	Upper Tray Full Sensor (B805 only)	**B804**: This sensor is not used on the booklet finisher. There is only one upper tray full sensor (S18). **B805**: One of two upper tray full sensors. This is the lower tray full sensor for A4 and smaller paper. The other upper tray full sensor (19) is for larger paper.
S21	Punch Unit HP Sensor	Switches off the punch movement motor when the punch unit returns to its home position. Pulse counts determine where the punch unit pauses for punching and reversing.
S22	Paper Position Side HP Sensor	Controls the movement of the paper position detection unit. Switches on when the horizontal detection unit is at the home position (HP is the reference point).
S23	Punch HP Sensor	Detects the home position of the punch unit and controls the vertical movement of the punches when they fire.
S24	Punch Encoder Sensor	When the punch mode is selected for the job (2-hole, 3-hole, etc.), the machine controls the operation of the punch drive (M24) motor which drives a small encoder shaped like a notched wheel. This wheel is rotated forward and reverse precisely to select which punches are moved up and down during the punch stroke.
S25	Clamp Roller HP Sensor	Controls the movement of the clamp retraction roller (the idle roller of the clamp roller pair).
S26	Fold Unit Entrance Sensor	Detects 1) the leading edge of the stack during booklet stapling, and 2) also used to signal an alarm if a paper is detected at the entrance of the fold unit when the copier is turned on.
S27	Stack Junction Gate HP Sensor	Controls the opening and closing of the stack junction gate. Switches on when the stack junction gate is open and at the home position.

http://www.manuals4you.com

No.	Component	Function
S28	Fold Bottom Fence HP Sensor	Controls the movement of the bottom fence in the folding unit using pulse counts based on the size of the paper selected for the job to position the stack correctly for feeding.
S29	Fold Plate HP Sensor	Along with the fold plate cam HP sensor (S30) this sensor controls the movement of the fold plate . The fold plate has arrived at the home position when the edge of the plate enters the gap of this sensor.
S30	Fold Plate Cam HP Sensor	Along with the fold plate HP sensor (S29), this sensor controls the movement of the fold plate. The actuator mounted on the end of the roller that drives the folder plate forward and back makes three full rotations, i.e. the actuator passes the sensor gap twice and stops on the 3rd rotation and reverses. This accounts for the left and right movement of fold plate.
S31	Fold Unit Exit Sensor	1) Detects the folded edge of the stack as it feeds out from the nip of the fold rollers, stops the rollers, and reverses them so the fold feeds back into the nip, 2) when the folded booklet finally emerges from the nip of the fold rollers, detects the leading and trailing edge of the booklet to make sure that it feeds out correctly.
S32	Stack Present Sensor	This sensor determines whether there is paper at the turn junction gate when the machine is turned on. If a stack is present, this triggers a jam alert. (This sensor performs no dynamic function such as pulse counting, etc. It only detects whether paper is at the top of the folding unit when power its turned on.)
S33	Lower Tray Full Sensor - Rear	This rear sensor is the lower sensor of the lower tray full sensor pair. Two actuators are attached to the actuator arm that touches the top of stapled and folded booklets as they feed out. The on/off combinations of the two

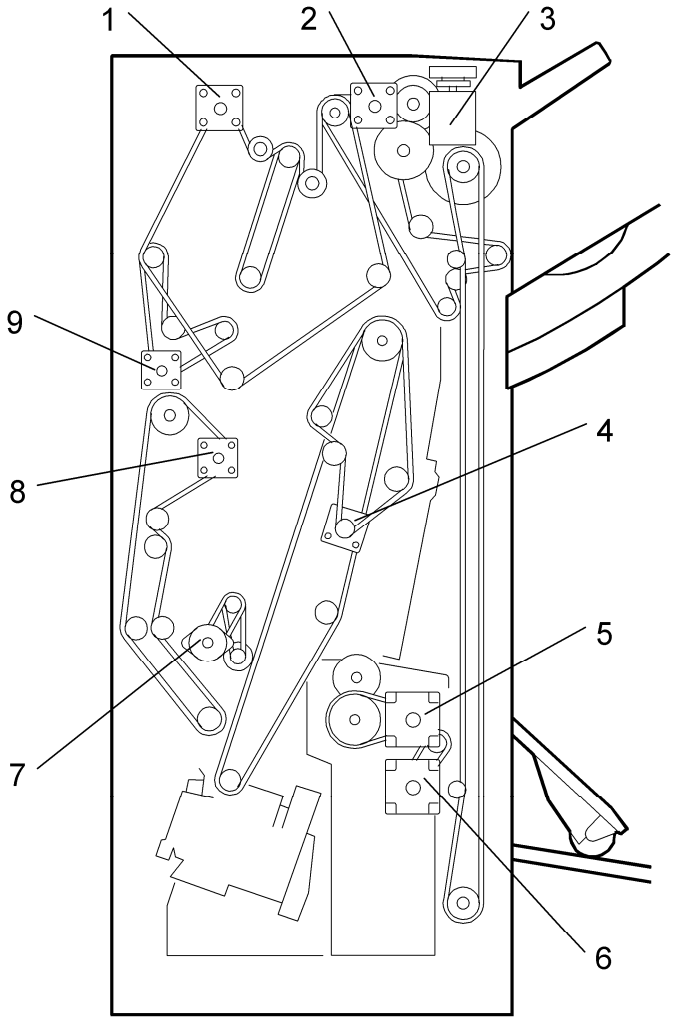
Component Layout

No.	Component	Function
		sensors are used to detect when the tray is full and stop the job. (The lower tray is stationary. At tray full, the job halts until booklets are removed from the lower tray.)
S34	Lower Tray Full Sensor - Front	This front sensor is the higher sensor of the lower tray full sensor pair. Two actuators are attached to the actuator arm that touches the top of stapled and folded booklets as they feed out. The on/off combinations of the two sensors are used to detect when the tray is full and stop the job. (The lower tray is stationary. At tray full, the job halts until booklets are removed from the lower tray.)
Solenoids		
SOL1	Proof Junction Gate Solenoid	Opens and closes the proof tray junction gate. When the solenoid switches on, it opens the gate and paper is diverted to the proof tray. When this gate is closed, the paper goes straight to the upper tray. I
SOL2	Stapling Tray Junction Gate Solenoid	Directs paper to the stapling tray. When this solenoid is on, paper feeds straight through. When this solenoid is off, paper feeds to the stapler tray below.
SOL3	Positioning Roller Solenoid	Engages the stapler transport motor and the positioning roller of the stapling tray. The positioning roller pushes each sheet down against the bottom fence to align the bottom the stack for stapling. (The jogger fences align the sides.)
SOL4	Stapling Edge Pressure Plate Solenoid	Operates the pressure plate of the stapling unit. The pressure plate presses down the edge of stack in the stapling tray so it is tight for stapling.
SOL5	Booklet Pressure Roller Solenoid	When the paper stack in the stapling tray feeds to the folding unit, this solenoid turns on and operates the roller that pushes on the surface of the stack to flatten it.

http://www.manuals4you.com

No.	Component	Function
Switches		
SW1	Front Door Safety Switch	The safety switch cuts the dc power when the front door is opened.
SW2	Upper Tray Limit SW	A micro-switch cuts the power to the upper tray lift motor when the upper tray reaches its upper limit. This switch duplicates the function of the upper tray limit sensor (S12) and stops the upper tray if S12 fails.

2.1.4 DRIVE LAYOUT



b804d206

Component Layout

1. Upper Transport Motor (M2) 2. Upper/Proof Exit Motor (M4) 3. Upper Tray Lift Motor (M21) 4. Feed-Out Belt Motor (M5) 5. Fold Roller Motor*1 (M12)	6. Folder Plate Motor*1 (M11) 7. Positioning Roller Motor (M14) 8. Lower Transport Motor (M3) 9. Entrance Motor (M1)

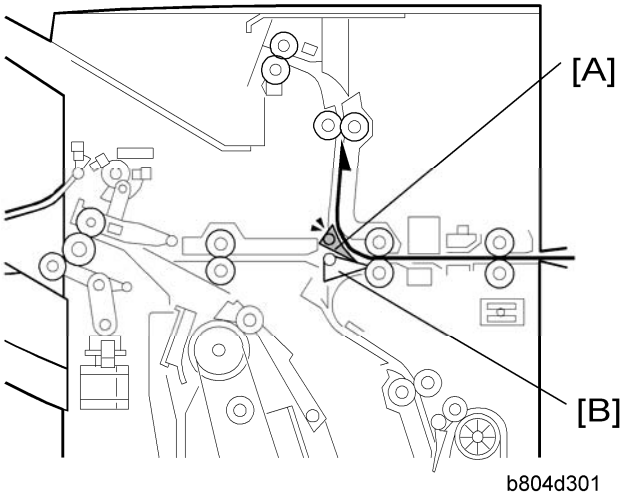
*1: B804 Only

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.2 JUNCTION GATES

The positions of the proof tray and staple tray junction gates determine the direction of paper feed after paper enters the finisher.

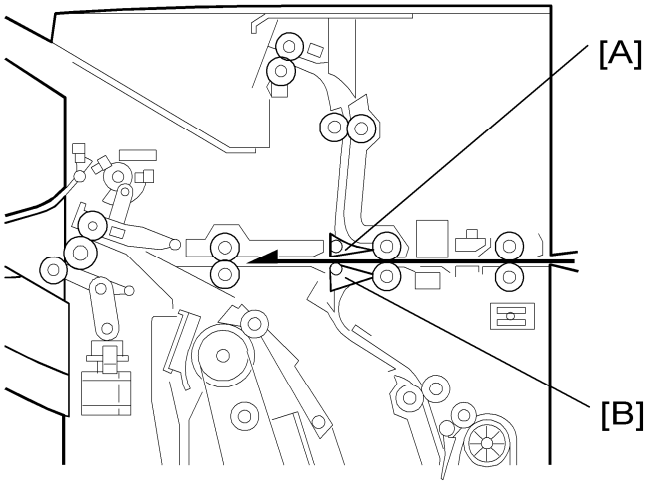
2.2.1 PROOF MODE



b804d301

Proof tray junction gate [A] opens. Staple tray junction gate [B] remains closed.
The proof tray junction gate directs paper to the proof tray above.

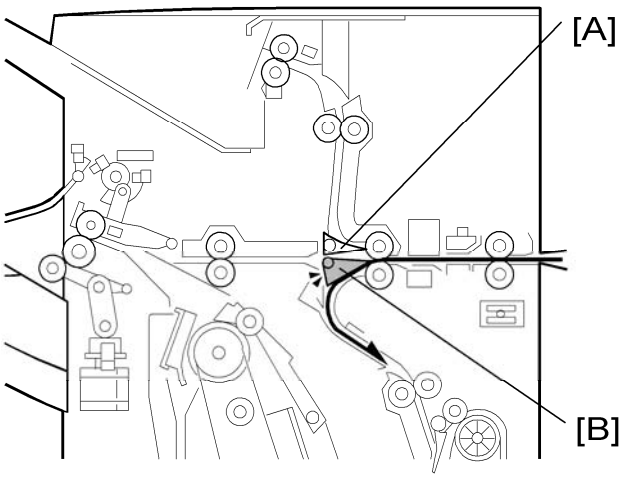
2.2.2 SHIFT MODE



b804d302

Proof tray junction gate [A] remains closed. Staple tray junction gate [B] remains closed.
With both junction gates closed, the paper goes to the upper tray.

2.2.3 STAPLE MODE



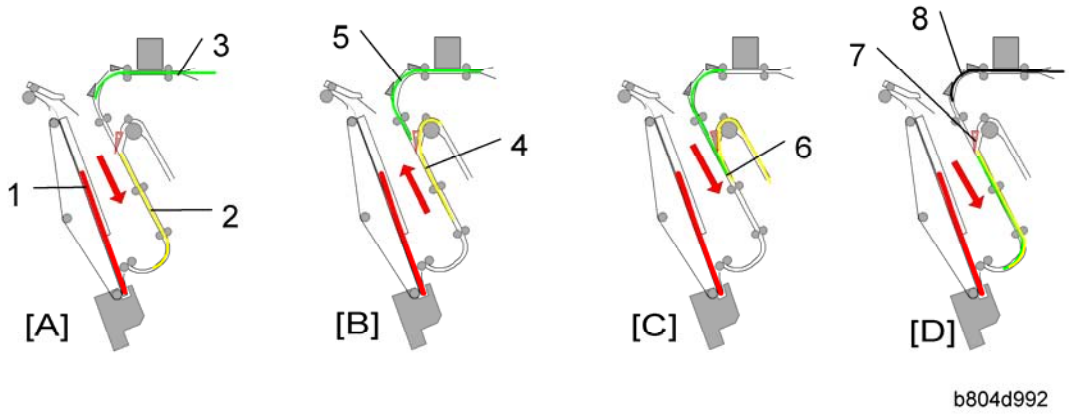
b804d303

Proof tray junction gate [A] remains closed. Staple tray junction gate [B] opens

The staple tray junction gate directs the paper to the staple tray below for jogging and stapling.

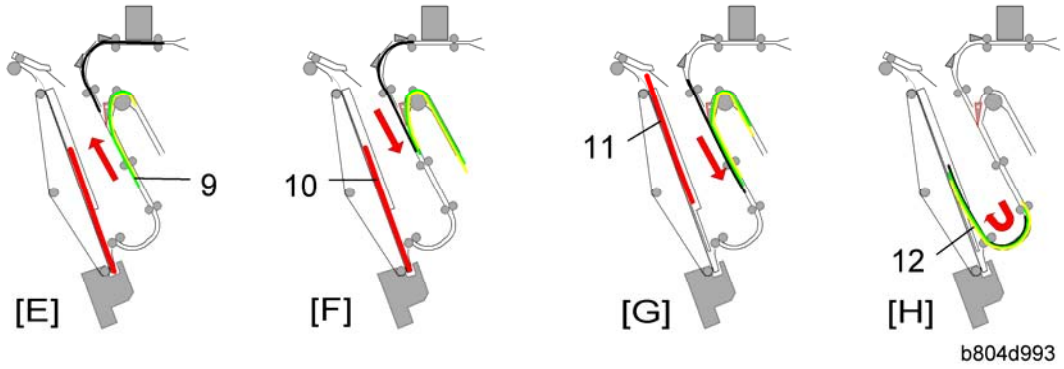
http://www.manuals4you.com

2.3 PRE-STACKING



This example describes what happens to Set 2 during the feed and stapling cycle of sets that contain three pages.

- [A]: While the Set 1 is being stapled in the staple tray [1], the 1st sheet of Set 2 [2] feeds to the pre-stack tray, and the 2nd sheet of Set 2 [3] enters the finisher.
- [B]: The pre-stack junction gate opens and the 1st sheet of Set 2 [4] switches back to the top of the pre-stack tray as the 2nd sheet of Set 2 [5] starts to descend.
- [C]: As the 2nd sheet of Set 2 continues to descend, the 1st sheet of Set 2 is fed from the pre-stack tray. At this time the leading edges [6] of both sheets are even.
- [D]: The trailing edges of the 1st and 2nd sheets of Set 2 pass the junction gate [7] as the 3rd sheet of Set 2 [8] enters the finisher.



- [E]: The 1st and 2nd sheets of Set 2 [9] switch back together into the top of the pre-stack and wait for the 3rd of Set 2 sheet to arrive.
- [F]: The stapling of Set 1 in the staple tray [10] is completed.
- [G]: Set 1 [11] exits the staple tray.
- [H]: The three sheets of Set 2 [12] feed together into the stapler tray for stapling.

Pre-stacking is only done for A4, B5, and LT paper.

Pre-Stacking

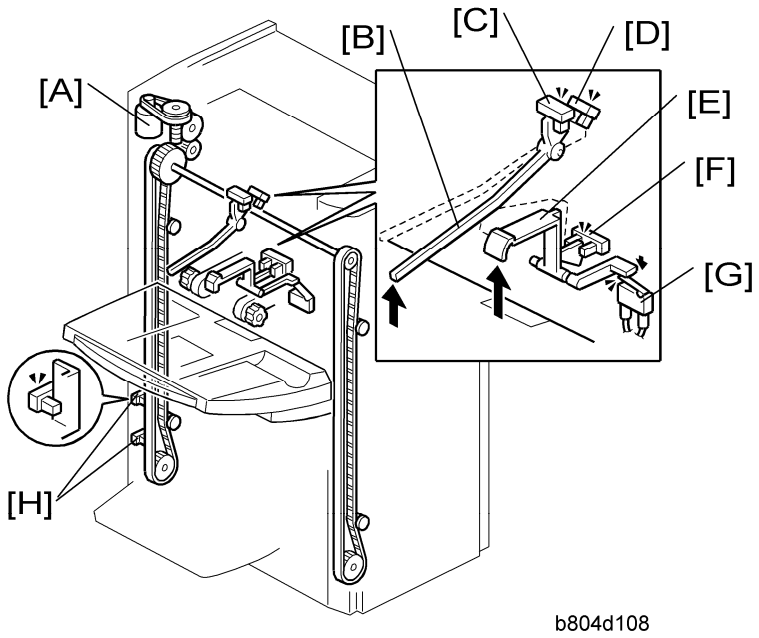
In one-staple mode, one sheet goes to the pre-stacking tray. Then two sheets go to the stapler tray at the same time.

In two-staple mode and booklet mode, three sheets go to the pre-stacking tray. Then four sheets go to the stapler tray at the same time.

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.4 TRAY MOVEMENT MECHANISM

2.4.1 UPPER TRAY



[A]: Upper Tray Lift Motor
[B]: Upper Feeler
[C]: Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor 1 (Staple Mode)
[D]: Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor 2 (Non-Staple Mode)
[E]: Lower Feeler
[F]: Upper Tray Limit Sensor
[G]: Upper Tray Limit Switch
[H]: Upper Tray Full Sensors

Important

- The B804 (shown above) has only one upper tray full sensor (the higher sensor at [H]).
- The B805 has two upper tray full sensors (the upper and lower sensor at [H]). On the B805 the upper sensor detects tray full for heavier paper (A3, DLT, B4, LG, 12 x 18”), and the lower sensor detects tray full for lighter paper (A4, LT, etc.).
- The tray full capacity is 2,000 sheets (B804) for A4, LT and 3,000 sheets (B805) for

Tray Movement Mechanism

A4, LT.

Five sensors and one switch control the operation of the upper tray lift motor [A].

Upper Tray Raising and Lowering

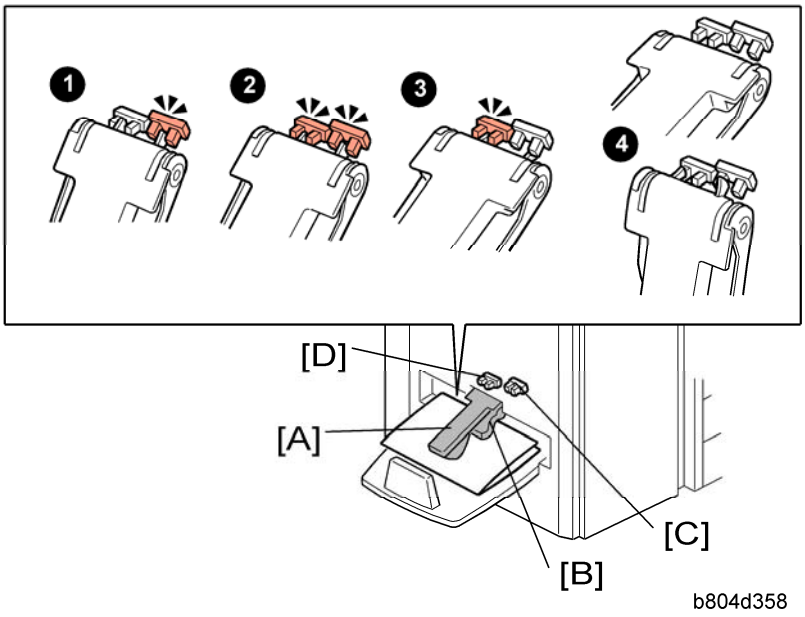
Operation Mode	Sensors, Switch				Action
	[C]	[D]	[F]	[G]	
Standby (Non-Staple Mode)	OFF	OFF			Stops the lift motor at the standby position when the actuator of the upper feeler deactivates sensor [C] (when it is between sensors [C] and [D]). **Note:** Sensor [F] and switch [G] are used as backup if sensor [C] fails or if the upper tray is not attached.
Straight Through			ON		**Non-staple mode operation:** During operation, tray lift is controlled only by sensor [F]. When the actuator leaves sensor [F], the tray lowers until the actuator reactivates sensor [F].
Shift			ON		
Standby (Staple Mode)	ON				**Standby:** The upper tray stops and waits for the paper output when the actuator activates sensor [C]. [D] is not used for staple mode **Staple Mode Operation:** ▪ The upper tray lowers the prescribed distance immediately after the stack exits. ▪ The upper tray rises until the actuator activates sensor [C] and stops the tray lift motor (and the tray) to wait for the next set. ▪ Sensor [F] and switch [G] are used as backup if sensor [C] fails.

Tray Full

http://www.manuals4you.com

B804	When the actuator on the tray activates the upper tray full sensor [H] the tray lift motor [A] switches off. Operation resumes after some copies are removed from the tray. Upper Tray Capacity: 2,000 sheets (A4, LT)
B805	The operation of the upper tray full sensor is the same as the B804. Capacity: 1,500 sheets for A3, B4 or other large paper. An additional upper tray full sensor (below sensor [H]) allows more sheets to stack on the upper tray. Capacity: 3,000 sheets (A4, LT)

2.4.2 LOWER TRAY (B804 ONLY)



The lower tray sensor actuator arm [A] rests on the top of the stack of stapled booklets as they are output to the lower tray. A flap depressor [B] keeps the open ends of the booklets down.

The front lower tray full sensor (S34) [C] and rear lower tray full sensor (S33) [D] detect when the lower tray is full of booklets.

Important

- The front lower tray full sensor is mounted higher than the rear lower tray full sensor.
- The lower tray is stationary. When it becomes full, the stapling and folding job stops until booklets are removed from the tray.

Tray Movement Mechanism

- If the lower tray is not installed (this is detected if the front and rear sensors remain OFF), the machine will not operate in the booklet staple and fold mode. When booklet mode is selected, the tray full message appears on the operation panel.

The combinations of the two actuators and two sensors as the actuator arm rises determines the number of booklets that the lower tray can hold before the job stops.
The tray full detection depends on the size of the paper and the number of sheets in one stapled and folded booklet.
In the table below, the conditions (❶ Ready ❷ Full 1, ❸ Full 2 ❹ Full 3: See the illustration on the previous page) refer to the states of the sensors described on the previous page.

Condition	Front Sensor	Rear Sensor
Ready	ON	OFF
Full 1	ON	ON
Full 2	OFF	ON
Full 3 (or lower tray not installed)	OFF	OFF

In the tables below:

- "Sht" denotes "sheets in a stack".
- "Cnt" denotes "Count" (see below for an explanation).

After a booklet is feed out, the fold roller motor stops the exit roller. The machine then monitors the tray full sensors every 100 ms. The machine checks for a certain condition, based on the size of the paper and the number of sheets in the booklet.
An example is shown below. Tell the operators that the number of sheets that the lower tray can hold will vary greatly.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Lower Tray Full Condition Table

A3 (DLT)

	1 Sht	2 Sht	3 Sht	4 Sht	5 Sht	6 Sht	7 Sth	8 Sht	9 Sht	…
Full 1	3 Cnt	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	…
Full 2	—	5 Cnt	15 Cnt	—	—	—	—	—	—	…
Full 3	—	—	—	7 Cnt	13 Cnt	4 Cnt	2 Cnt	2 Cnt	2 Cnt	…

A4 (LT)

	1 Sht	2 Sht	3 Sht	4 Sht	5 Sht	6 Sht	7 Sth	8 Sht	9 Sht	…
Full1	16 Cnt	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	…
Full 2	—	10 Cnt	10 Cnt	15 Cnt	20 Cnt	15 Cnt	10 Cnt	8 Cnt	8 Cnt	…
Full 3	—	—	—							…

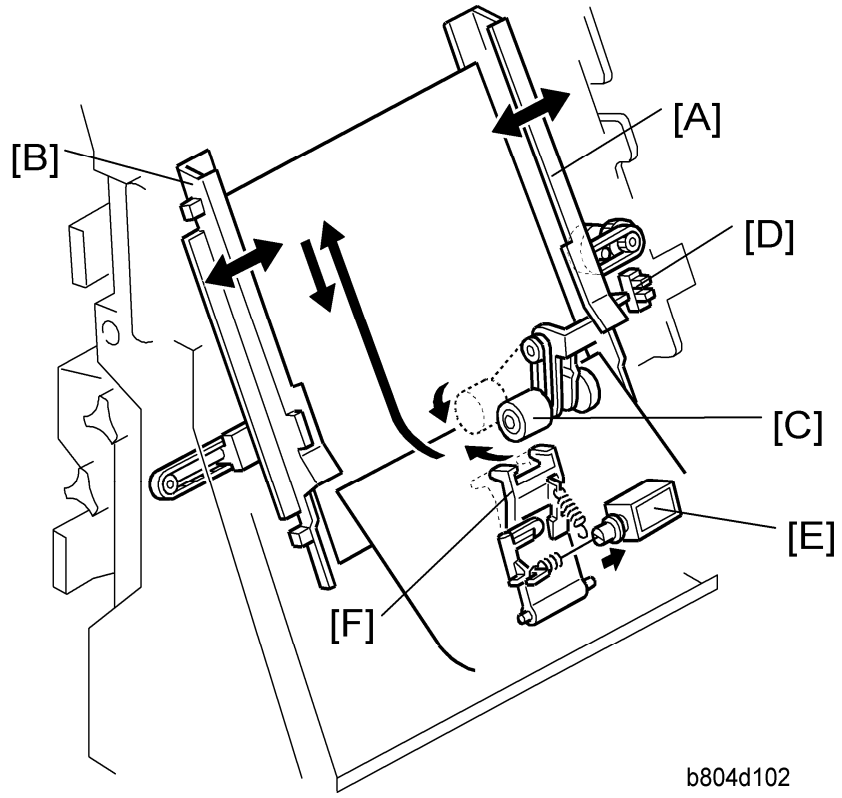
Examples:

After the copier makes a booklet with 1 sheet of A3/DLT paper, the machine checks every 100 ms for the ‘Full 1’ condition. If the Full 1 condition occurs 3 times, the machine detects that the tray is full.

After the copier makes a booklet with 5 sheets of A4/LT paper, the machine checks every 100 ms for the ‘Full 2’ condition. If the Full 2 condition occurs 20 times, the machine detects that the tray is full.

2.5 CORNER STAPLING

2.5.1 STACKING AND JOGGING



[A]: Jogger Fence Motor (M15)
[B]: Jogger Fences
[C]: Positioning Roller
[D]: Jogger Fence HP Sensor (S15)
[E]: Stapling Edge Pressure Plate Solenoid (SOL4)
[F]: Pressure Plate

At the beginning of the job, the jogger fence motor (M15) [A] switches on and moves the jogger fences [B] to the standby position (7.5 mm from the sides of the selected paper size). When each sheet passes the pre-stack tray exit sensor (S2) and enters the stapling tray:

- The jogger fence motor switches on and moves the jogger fences to within 5.5 mm of the sides of the selected paper size.
- The positioning roller solenoid (SOL3) switches on for the time prescribed for the paper

http://www.manuals4you.com

size. This pushes the positioning roller [C] onto the sheet and pushes it down onto bottom fence. This aligns the edge of the stack.

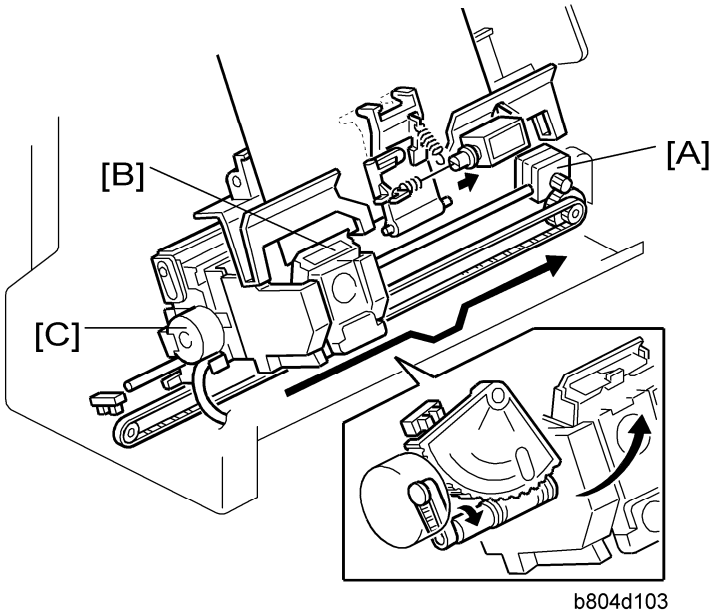
Next, the jogger fence motor:

- Switches on again and moves the jogger fences to within 2.6 mm of the sides of the stack to align the sides of the stack.
- Reverses and moves the fences to the standby position (7.5 mm away for the sides) and waits for the next sheet.
- The jogger fence HP sensor [D] switches off the jogger motor at the end of the job.

After the last sheet feeds:

- The stapling edge pressure plate solenoid [E] (SOL4) switches on and pushes the pressure plate [F] onto the stack to press down the edge for stapling.
- The corner stapler staples the stack.

2.5.2 STAPLER MOVEMENT



b804d103

[A]: Stapler Movement Motor
[B]: Stapler
[C]: Stapler Rotation Motor

Corner Stapling

The stapler performs horizontal and rotational movement in each of the four staple modes:

- Front 1 staple
- Rear 1 staple
- Rear diagonal staple
- Rear/Front 2 staples

The stapler movement motor [A] drives a timing belt that moves stapler [B] left and right on its stainless steel rail.

The stapler rotation motor [C] rotates the stapler into position for diagonal stapling at the rear.

- The stapler movement motor switches on and moves the stapler the standby stapling position. (This is the stapling position for the paper size selected for the job.)
- The stapler movement motor switches off and the stapler waits for the signal to fire (or swivel and for diagonal stapling).

If the stack is to be stapled at two positions:

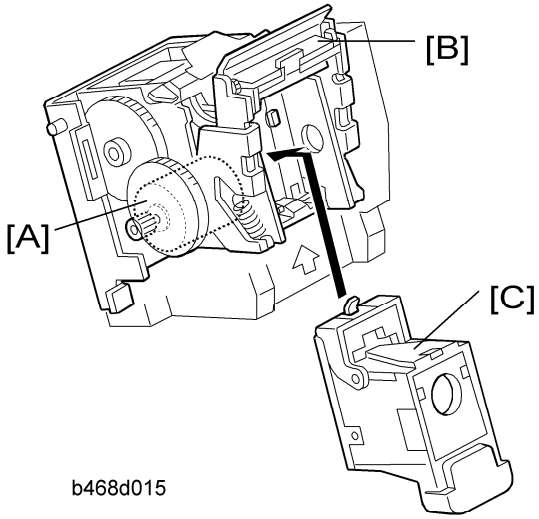
- The stapler movement motor moves the stapler to the front position and staples the front.
- The stapler movement motor moves the stapler to the rear and the stapler staples the rear.

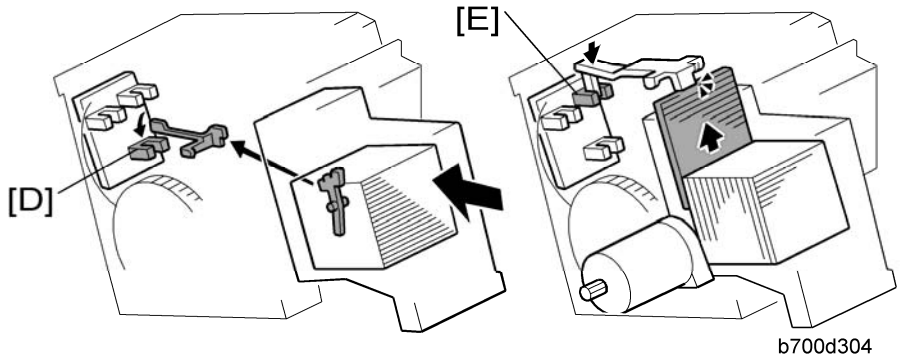
If the stack is stapled at the rear with a diagonal staple, the staple moves to the rear. When it is time for stapling, the rotation motor rotates the stapler to the correct angle and holds the stapler in that position while the stapler fires.

The stapling positions can be fine adjusted with **SP6-133-001**.

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.5.3 CORNER STAPLING





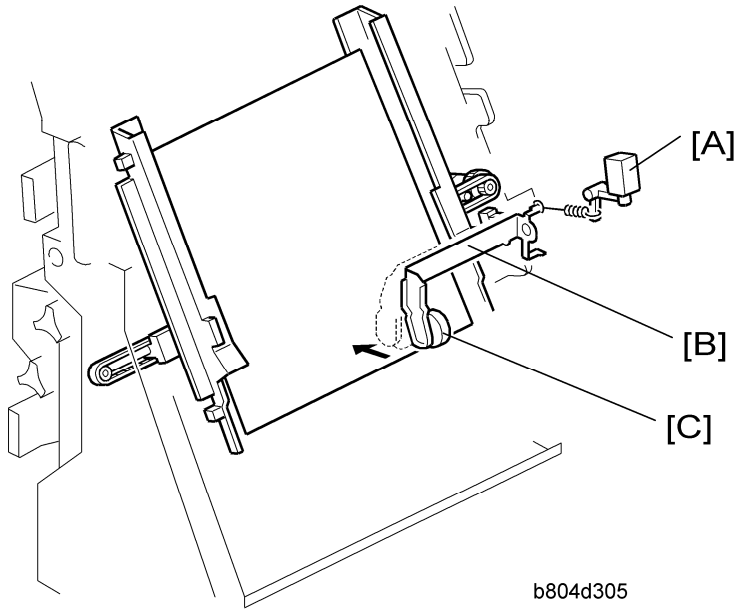
Staple firing is driven by the stapler motor [A] inside the stapler unit. The stapler hammer [B] fires the stapler [C].

The cartridge set sensor [D] detects the cartridge at the correct position.

The staple end sensor [E] detects the staple end condition.

2.6 BOOKLET STAPLING (B804 ONLY)

2.6.1 BOOKLET PRESSURE MECHANISM



[A]: Booklet Pressure Roller Solenoid (SOL5)
[B]: Booklet Pressure Roller Arm
[C]: Booklet Pressure Roller

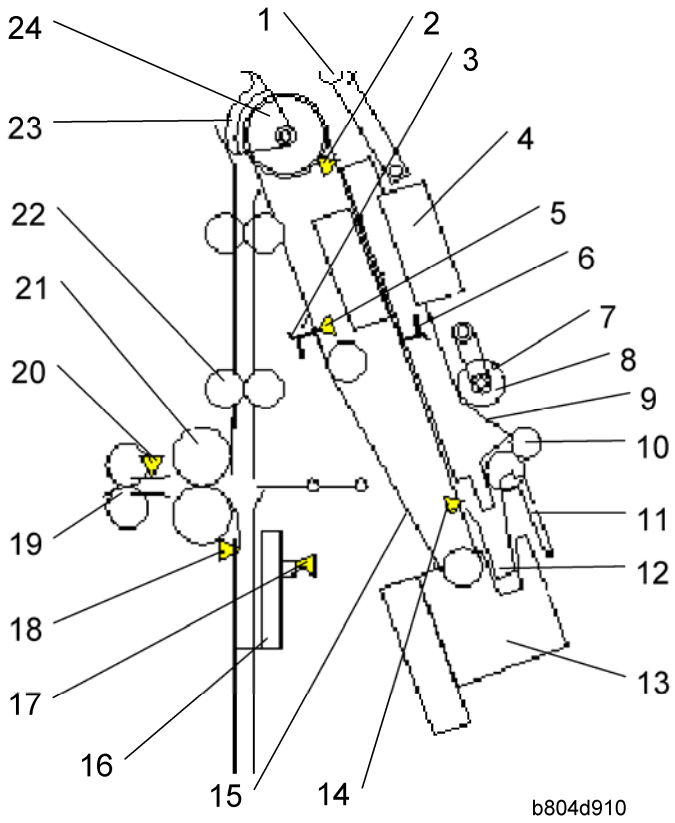
As soon as the edges are aligned by the positioning roller and the jogger fences, the stack feed out belt moves.

In booklet mode, immediately after the edges are aligned by the positioning roller and jogger fences, the booklet pressure solenoid switches on and the booklet pressure roller presses down on the stack until booklet stapling is finished. This prevents the stack from shifting during stapling.

http://www.manuals4you.com

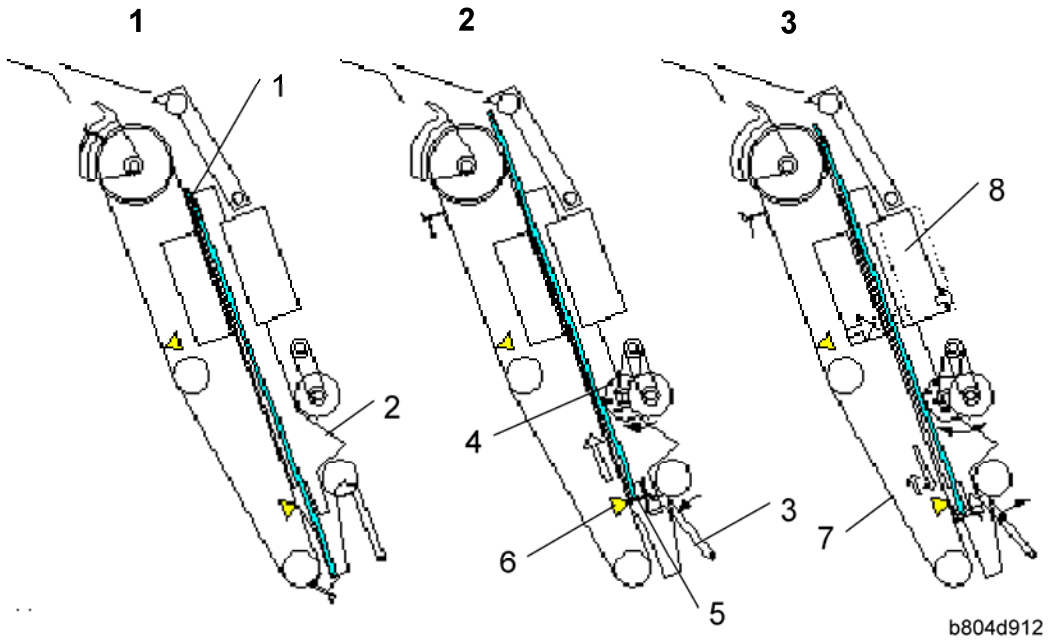
2.6.2 BOOKLET STAPLING AND FOLDING

Overview



1. Leading Edge Pressure Roller	13. Corner Stapler (M20)
2. Stack Present Sensor (S32)	14. Stapling Tray Paper Sensor (S14)
3. Feed Out Belt Pawl 1	15. Feed Out Belt
4. Booklet Staplers x2 (M22, M23)	16. Fold Unit Bottom Fence
5. Stack Feed Out Belt HP Sensor (S16)	17. Fold Bottom Fence HP Sensor (S28)
6. Feed Out Belt Pawl 2	18. Fold Unit Entrance Sensor (S26)
7. Positioning Roller	19. Fold Unit Exit Rollers x2
8. Booklet Pressure Roller (Rear)	20. Fold Unit Exit Sensor (S31)
9. Jogger Fences x2	21. Fold Rollers x2
10. Pre-Stack Exit Roller	22. Clamp Rollers x2
11. Pressure Plate	23. Stack Junction Gate
12. Stapling Tray Bottom Fence	24. Stack Transport Roller

Booklet Stapling (B804 Only)



1:

The last sheet of the stack [1] enters the stapling tray. The jogger fences [2] jog the last sheet into position (based on the width of the selected paper size) and then retract and stop 1 mm away from the sides of the stack.

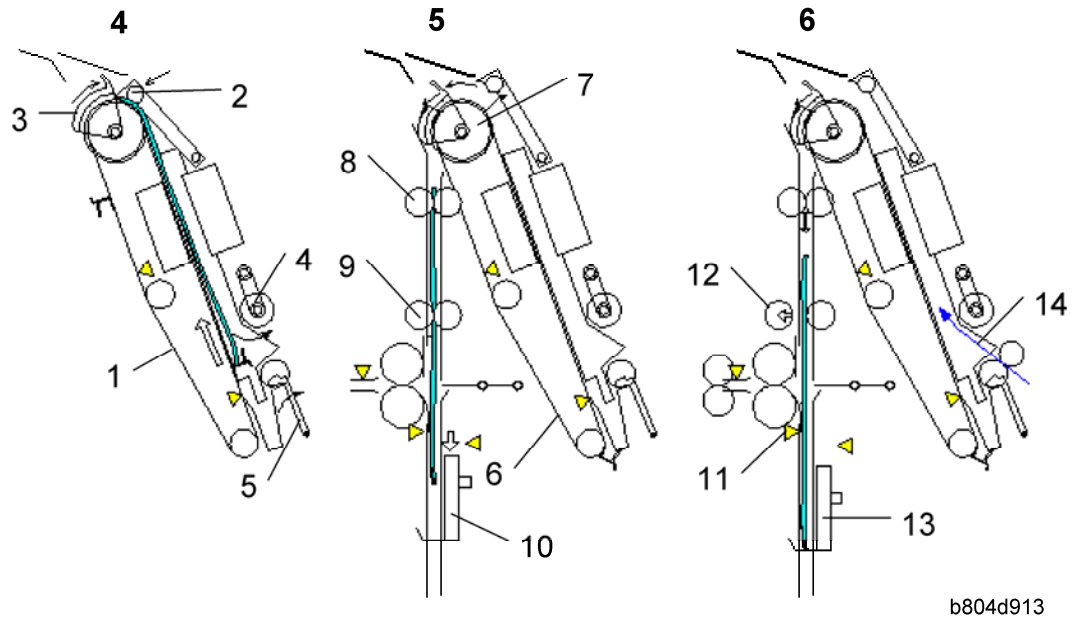
2:

The pressure plate [3] and booklet pressure roller [4] press down on the sheet. The stack feed out belt switches on and the pawl [5] on the feed out belt catches the bottom of the stack and raises it. The stapling tray sensor [6] detects the trailing edge of the paper stack.

3:

The feed out belt [7] raises the stack to the prescribed stapling position and stops. The jogger fences move to the sides of the stack and the booklet staplers [8] staple the stack.

http://www.manuals4you.com



4:

The jogger fences remain 1 mm away from the sides of the stack. The feed out belt [1] raises the stack until the top of the stack is 10 mm past the leading edge pressure roller [2] and stops. The leading edge pressure roller descends and applies pressure to the top of the stack. The stack junction gate [3] (normally open) closes. The pressure roller [4] and pressure plate [5] retract.

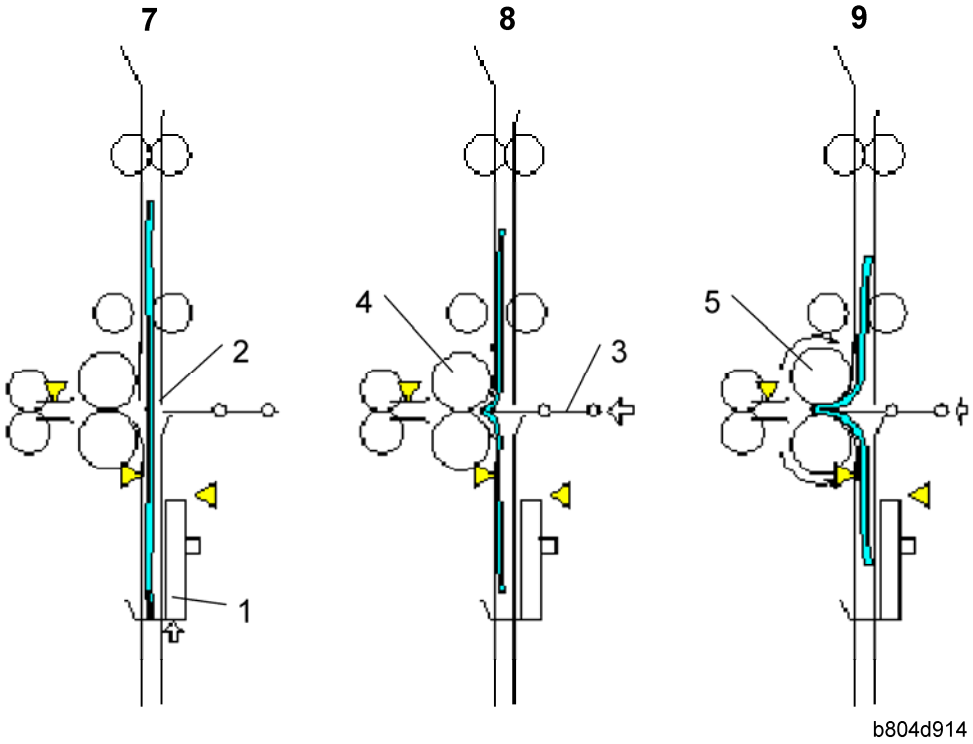
5:

The feed out belt [6], transport rollers [7], [8], and clamp rollers [9] rotate and feed the stack past the closed stack junction, over the top and down toward the bottom fence [10]. At the same time, the fold unit bottom fence descends from its home position and stops 10 mm below the fold position.

6:

The rollers feed the leading edge of the stack to within 3 mm of the stack stopper of the bottom fence [13]. The fold unit entrance sensor [11] detects the stack and opens the clamp rollers [12]. The stack drops 3 mm onto the fold unit bottom fence [13]. At this time, the first sheet [14] of the next stack feeds to the stapling tray.

Booklet Stapling (B804 Only)



7:

The bottom fence [1] raises the stack to the prescribed fold position [2].

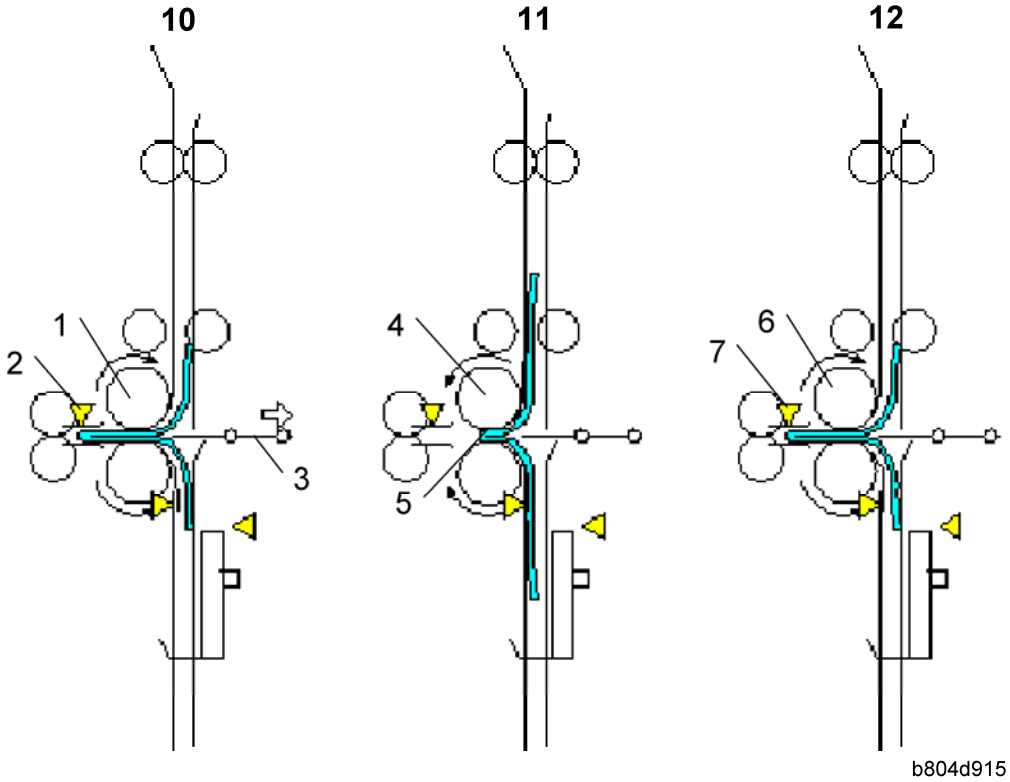
8:

The fold plate [3] moves to the left and advances 1/3 its maximum horizontal stroke and exerts 20 kg (44 lb.) of pressure at the fold rollers [4].

9:

With the fold plate pushing the stack into nip of the fold rollers [5], the fold rollers begin to rotate and fold the stack as it feeds out.

http://www.manuals4you.com



10:

When the fold rollers [1] feed the stack 10 mm past the nip, the fold plate retracts until it no longer touches the stack. The fold unit exit sensor [2] detects the folded edge of the stack and stops the fold rollers.

11:

The rotation of the fold rollers [4] reverses and feeds the folded edge back until only 3 mm of the fold [5] remains at the nip.

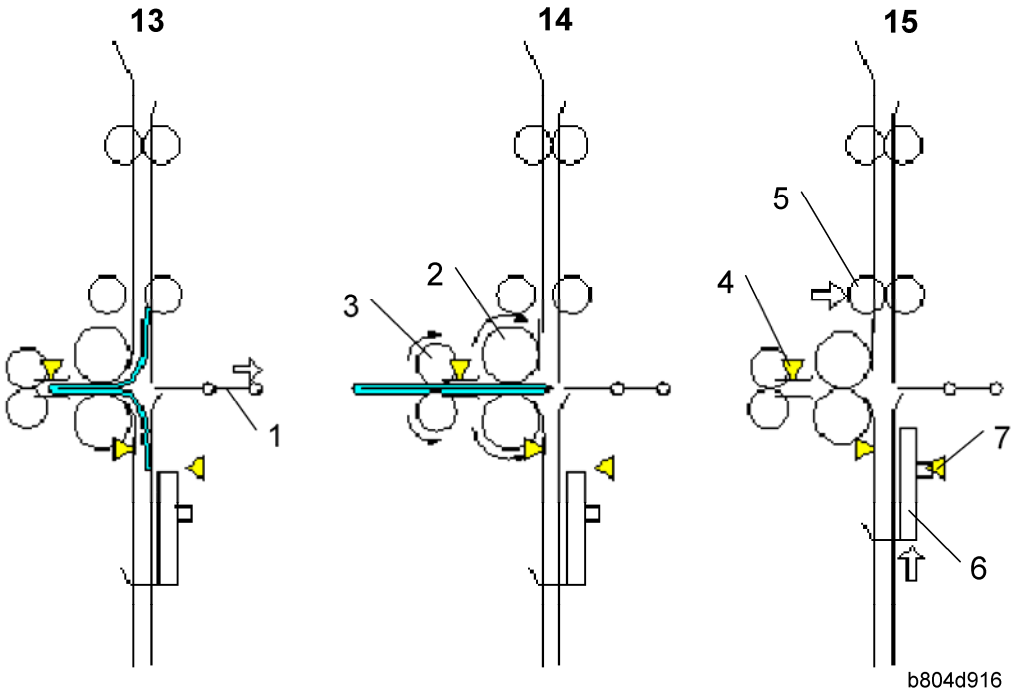
12:

The fold rollers [6] rotate forward once again feed out. The fold unit exit sensor [7] once again detects the edge of the fold.

Note

- You can do **SP6-136-001** to increase the sharpness of the fold. The number of forward and reverse feeds can be set in the range of 2 to 30. The machine repeats Steps 11 and 12. For more, please refer to Section "Service Tables".

Booklet Stapling (B804 Only)



13:

With the feed of the stack halted, the fold plate [1] retracts. The fold plate HP sensor (not shown) detects the fold plate and stops it at its home position.

14:

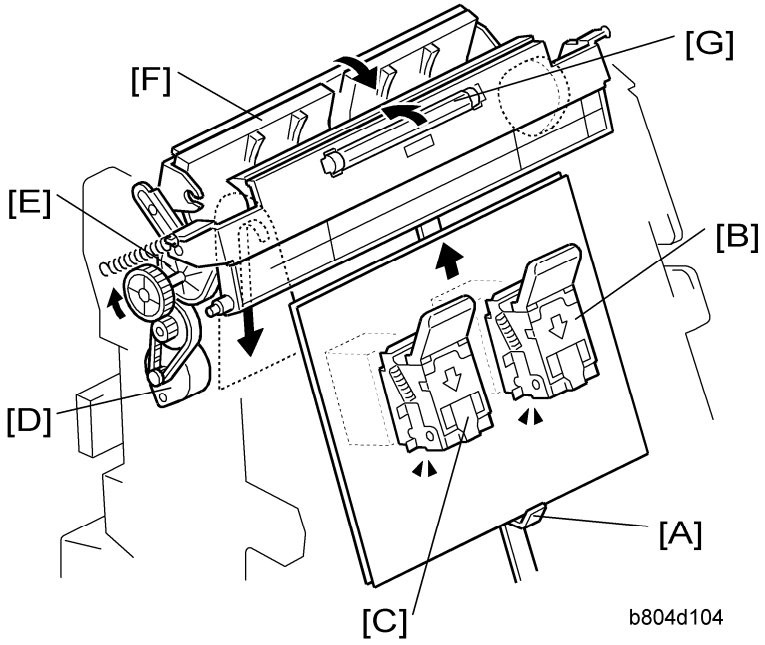
The fold rollers [2] and fold unit exit rollers [3] begin to rotate together and feed out the folded booklet to the lower tray.

15:

Once the trailing edge of the stack passes the fold unit exit sensor [4], the clamp rollers [5] close to be ready to feed the next stack. The fold unit bottom fence [6] descends. The bottom fence HP sensor [7] stops the bottom fence when it detects the actuator on the bottom fence.

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.6.3 BOOKLET STAPLING AND FOLDING MECHANISMS



Booklet Stapler

[A]: Feed Out Belt Pawl. Raises the stack to stapling position.

[B]: Booklet Stapler EH185R – Rear

[C]: Booklet Stapler EH185R – Front

Stack Junction Gate

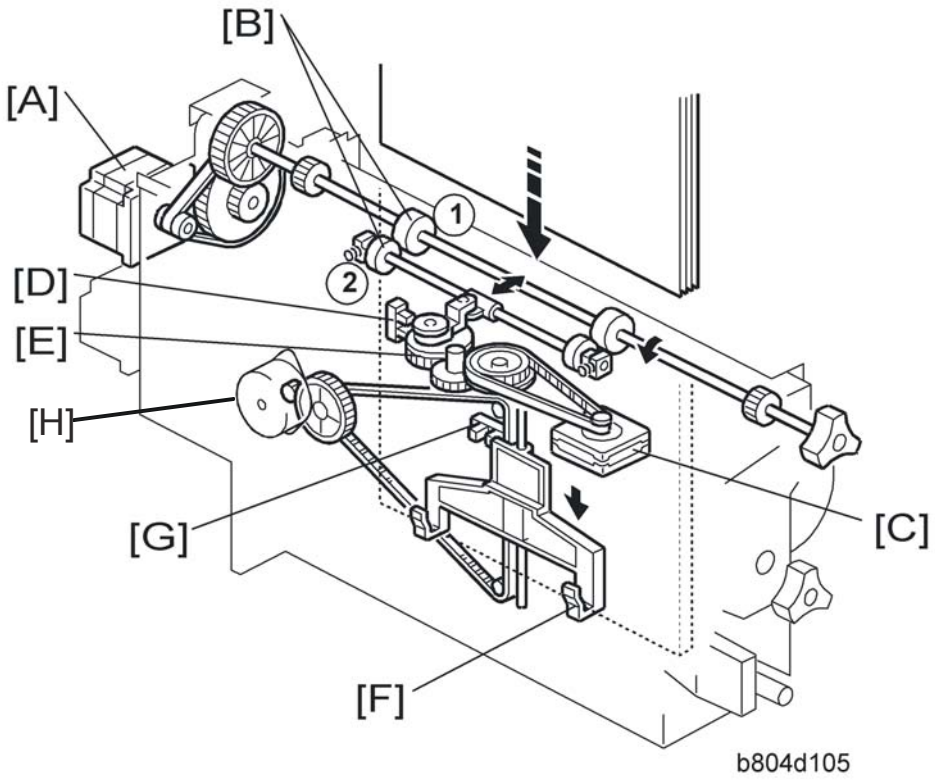
[D]: Stack Junction Gate Motor. Drives a timing belt and stack junction gate cam.

[E]: Stack Junction Gate Cam. Opens and closes the stack junction gate.

[F]: Stack Junction Gate. The stack junction gate motor and stack junction gate cam close the stack junction gate. The feed out belt pawl raises the stapled stack and sends it over the top and down to the fold unit.

[G]: Leading Edge Pressure Roller. Presses down on the leading edge of the stack after booklet stapling.

Booklet Stapling (B804 Only)



Clamp Roller

[A]: Fold Roller Motor. Drives the stationary clamp drive roller ① as well as the fold rollers (see next page).

[B]: Clamp Rollers.

① Clamp Roller – Drive. Rotated by the fold roller motor, this stationary roller feeds the stack down with the retracting roller closed.

② Clamp Roller – Retracting. Opened and closed by the retraction motor [C].

[C]: Clamp Roller Retraction Motor. Operates the clamp roller cam that retracts the retracting clamp roller. The clamp rollers feed the stack to within 3 mm of the bottom fence when closed and then open to drop the stack onto the bottom fence.

[D]: Clamp Roller HP Sensor. Controls the rotation of the clamp roller retraction motor and cam that open and close the retracting clamp roller.

[E]: Clamp Roller Cam. Forces open the spring loaded retracting clamp roller.

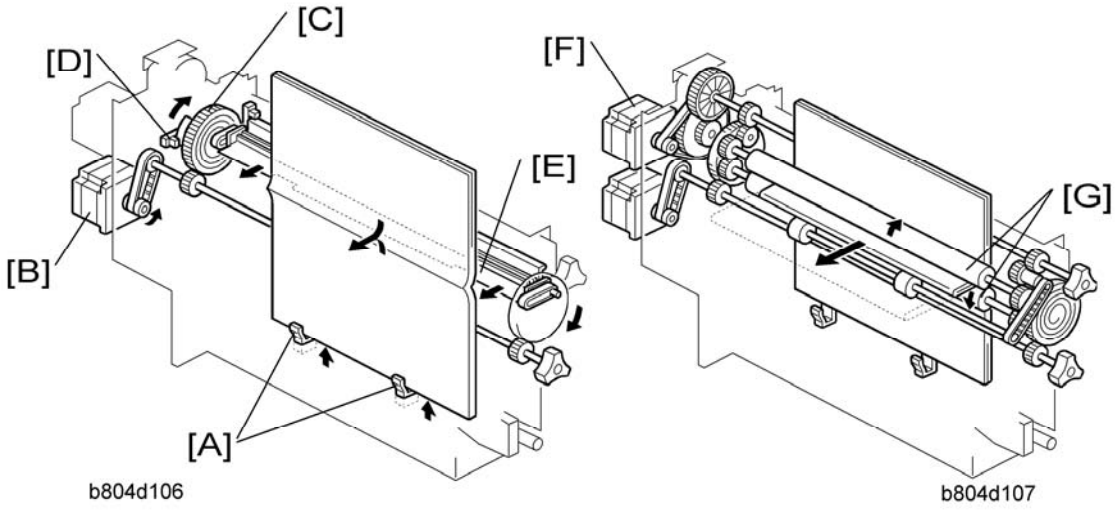
Bottom Fence

[F]: Bottom Fence. Raises the booklet stapled stack to the fold position.

[G]: Bottom Fence HP Sensor. Detects the actuator on the bottom fence and stops it at the home position after folding.

[H]: Bottom Fence Lift Motor. Raises the bottom fence and stapled stack to the fold position prescribed for the paper size.

http://www.manuals4you.com



Fold Plate

[A]: Bottom Fence Stack Stoppers. Catches the stack after it is released by the clamp rollers.

[B]: Fold Plate Motor. Drives the timing belt and gears that move the fold plate.

[C]: Fold Plate Cam. Controls the movement of the fold plate to the left (into the nip of the fold rollers) and right (toward the fold plate home position).

[D]: Fold Plate HP Sensor. Controls operation of the fold plate motor.

[E]: Fold Plate. Moves left and pushes the stack into the nip of the fold rollers and then moves right to retract.

Fold Rollers

[F]: Fold Roller Motor. Drives forward to feed out the stack at the fold and then reverses to feed the fold in to sharpen the crease, and then drives forward again to feed out the folded stack. This reverse/forward cycle is done once.

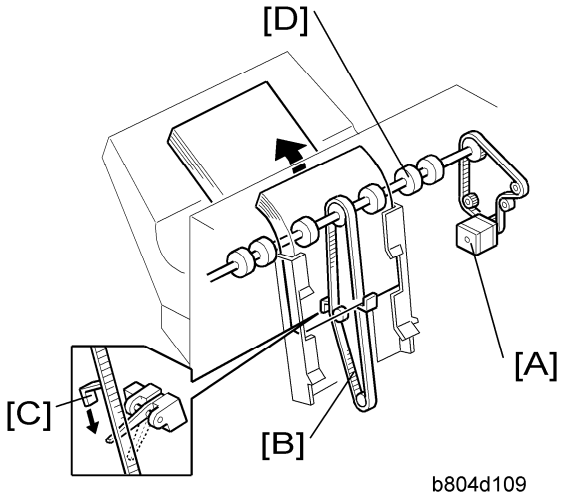
Note

- This cycle can be repeated by changing the setting of SP6114.

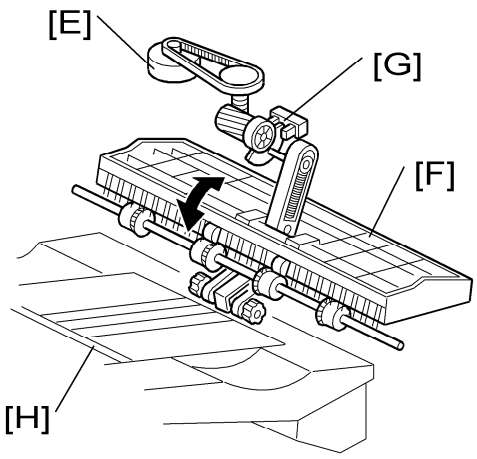
[G]: Fold Rollers. Driven by the fold roller motor, this roller pair feeds out the stack at its fold, reverses to feed in the stack to, and then feeds forward again (assisted by the fold unit exit rollers – not shown) to feed out the stack to the lower tray.

2.7 UPPER TRAY OUTPUT

2.7.1 FEED OUT



b804d109



b804d107

[A]: Feed Out Belt Motor
[B]: Stack Feed-Out Belt
[C]: Pawl
[D]: Exit Rollers
[E]: Exit Guide Plate Motor
[F]: Exit Guide Plate
[G]: Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor
[H]: Upper Tray

After the stack is stapled, the feed out belt motor [A] switches on and drives the feed out belt [B].

The pawl [C] attached to the feed out belt catches on the stack and lifts the stack toward the feed out slot.

The exit guide plate [F] remains open as the stack emerges at a prescribed distance away from the exit roller.

Next, the exit guide plate closes and the exit roller feeds the stack out.

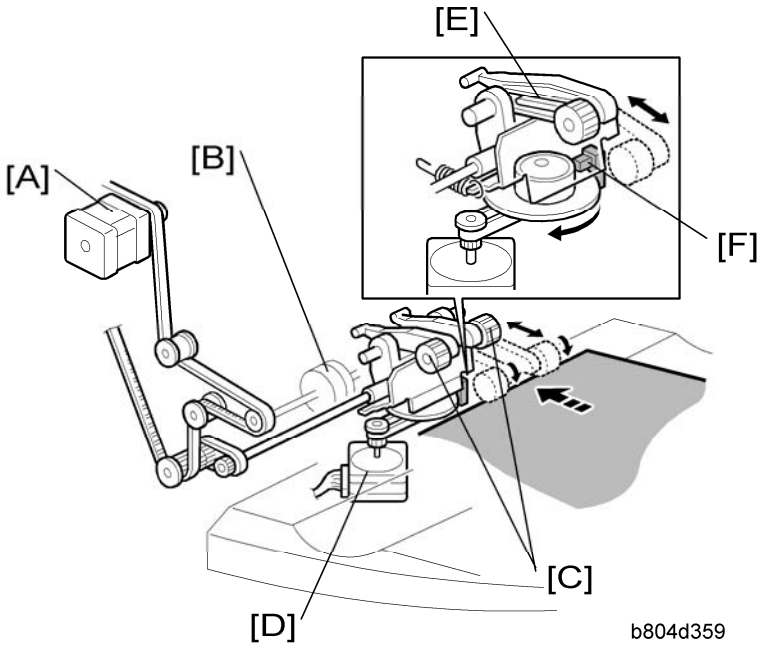
The opening and closing of the exit guide plate is controlled by the rising and falling of a link driven by a rotating cam attached to the shaft of the exit guide plate motor [E].

http://www.manuals4you.com

The feed out belt motor stops 300 ms to prevent the stapled stack from rising too high. Next, the feed out belt motor switches on again, then the pawl actuates its home position sensor and switches off the motor.

There are two output pawls on the feed out belt to improve the productivity of the feed out operation.

2.7.2 FEED OUT STACKING



Upper/proof exit motor [A] drives feed roller [B] and stacking sponge roller [C].

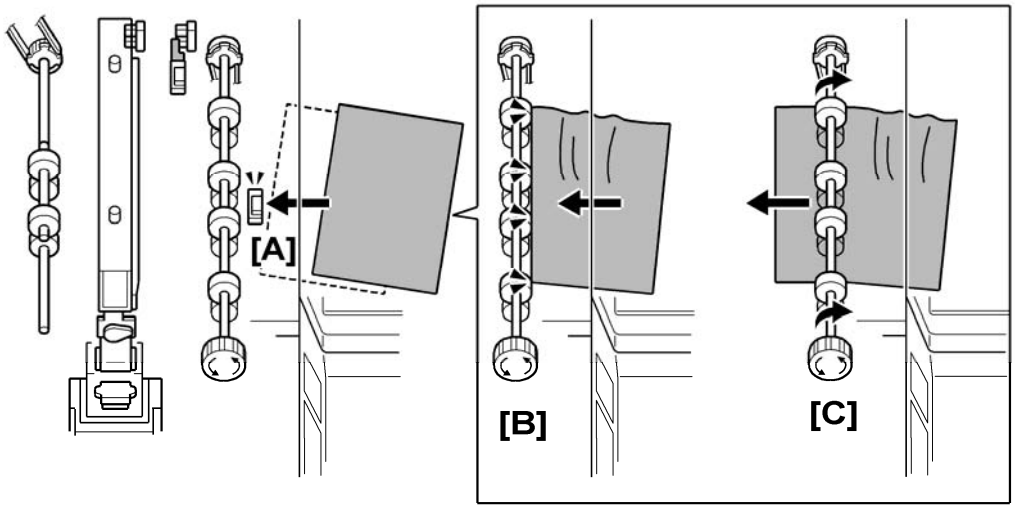
Stacking sponge roller motor [D] moves the sponge roller forward and back with link [E].

The position of the stacking sponge roller [C] is controlled by the stacking sponge roller motor which is switched on and off by the stacking roller HP sensor [F].

2.8 PUNCH UNIT B702 (FOR B804/B805)

2.8.1 OVERVIEW OF OPERATION

Skew Correction before Punching



b804d351

This punch unit corrects for paper skew and then positions the punch unit to punch holes at the correct position. Each sheet is punched one at a time.

Paper feeds out of the copier. The finisher entrance sensor [A] detects the leading edge of the sheet.

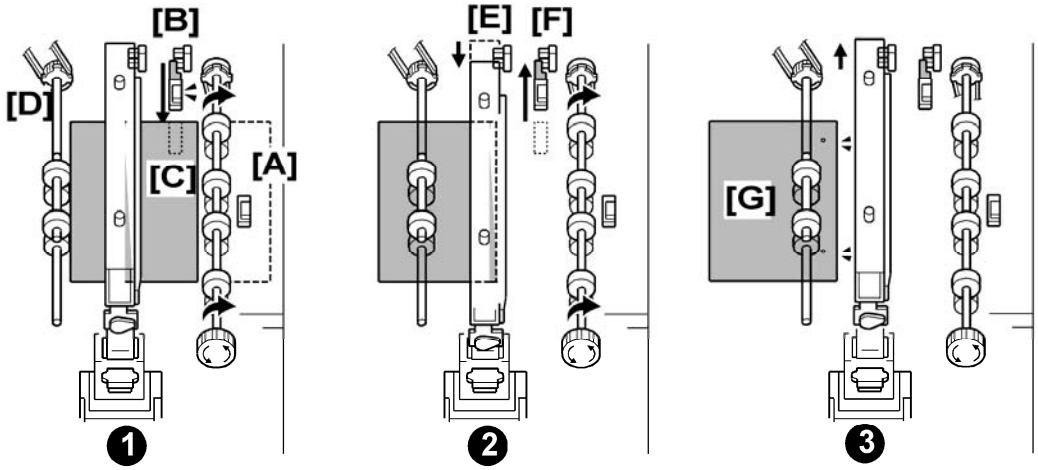
The finisher entrance roller [B] stops rotating briefly while the copier exit rollers continue to rotate. This buckles the paper against the finisher entrance roller to correct skew. The finisher entrance roller [C] starts to rotate again and feeds the sheet into the finisher.

These SP codes adjust the skew operation in the punch unit:

- **SP6130**. This SP corrects the punch hole alignment. To do this, it corrects the skew of each sheet by adjusting the amount of time the finisher entrance roller remains off while the exit roller of the machine remains on. For more, see Section "Service Tables".
- **SP6131**. This SP determines whether the finisher entrance roller stops to correct skew when paper enters the finisher. You can use this SP to disable the skew correction. For more, see Section "Service Tables".

http://www.manuals4you.com

Punch Unit Position Correction



b804d352

These operations (skew correction before punching, and punch unit position correction) increase the accuracy of the punch alignment.

❶:

The trailing edge of the sheet passes the finisher entrance sensor [A].

The paper position slide unit [B] moves the paper position sensor [C] forward to the edge of the paper.

The paper position sensor detects the position of the paper edge and sends this information to the punch unit board. The machine uses the detected position of the paper edge to calculate the correct position for punching.

The upper transport motor switches on and rotates the feed rollers [D] the prescribed distance to position the paper under the punch unit.

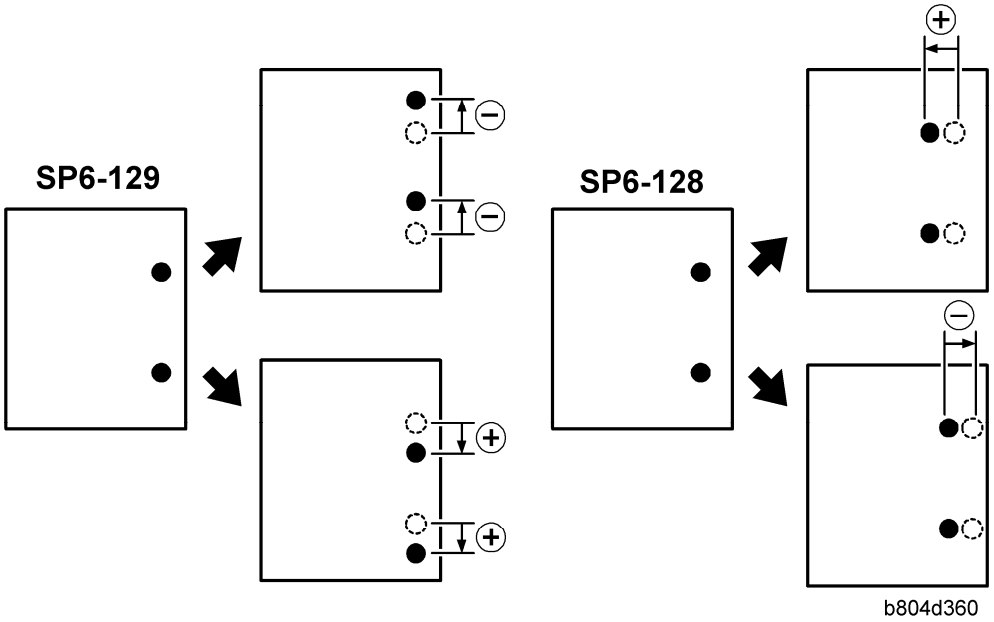
❷:

Using the result of the position calculation, the punch unit control board moves the punch unit [E] to the adjusted punch position.

The paper position slide unit and its paper sensor, move back to the paper position slide home position sensor [F], and the punch unit fires the punches to make the holes.

❸:

The feed rollers [G] feed the punched paper out of the punch unit and into the paper path.



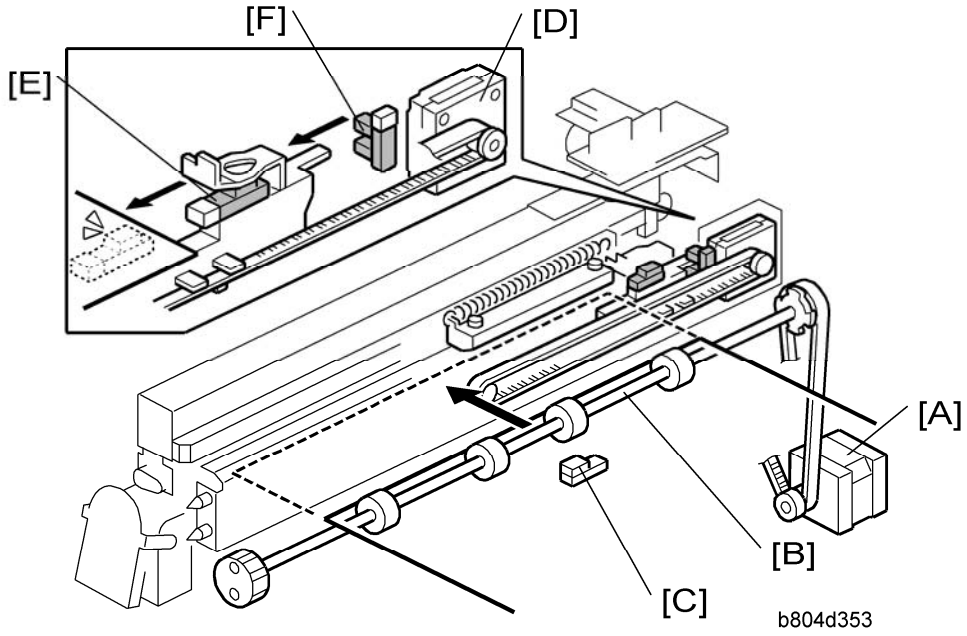
These SP codes adjust the punch hole alignment:

- **SP6-128** Adjusts the punch positions in the direction of paper feed.
- **SP6-129** Adjusts the punch position perpendicular to the direction of feed.

For more, see Section "Service Tables".

2.8.2 PUNCH MECHANISMS

Paper Position Detection

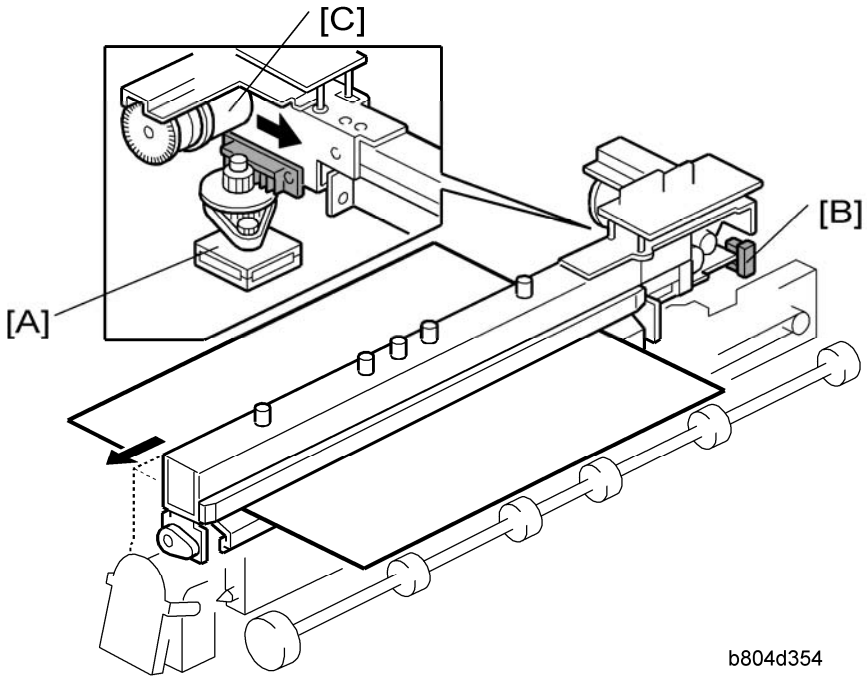


http://www.manuals4you.com

[A]: Finisher Entrance Motor (M1)
[B]: Finisher Entrance Roller
[C]: Finisher Entrance Sensor (S1)
[D]: Paper Position Sensor Slide Motor (M7)
[E]: Paper Position Sensor (S27)
[F]: Paper Position Sensor Slide HP Sensor (S22)

The finisher entrance motor (M1) [A] drives the finisher entrance rollers [B] that feed paper from the copier into the finisher. The finisher entrance sensor (S1) [C] detects paper when it enters the finisher, and detects paper jams.
The paper position slide sensor motor (M7) [D] extends and retracts the paper position slide that holds the paper position sensor (S27) [E]. The paper position sensor detects the position of the paper edge. The detected position of the paper is used to calculate and position the punch unit for punching.
The paper position slide HP sensor (S22) [F] detects the paper position slide when it retracts and stops the paper position slide motor so the slide stops at its home position.

Punch Unit Movement

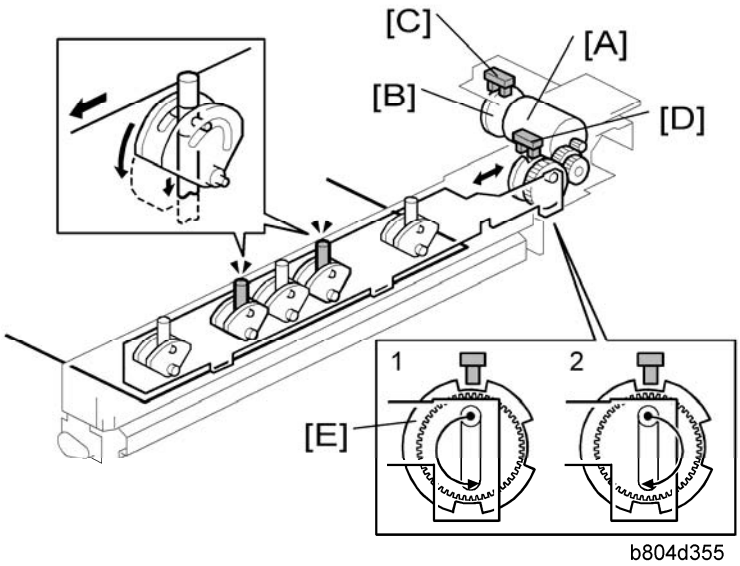


Punch Unit B702 (For B804/B805)

[A]: Punch Movement Motor (M9)
[B]: Punch Movement HP Sensor (S21)
[C]: Punch Drive Motor (M24)

The punch movement motor (M9) [A] extends and retracts the punch unit to position it at the correct position for punching.
The punch movement HP sensor (S21) [B] detects the position when it retracts, switches off the punch position movement motor, and stops the punch unit at its home position.
The punch drive motor (M24) [C] fires the punches that punch holes in the paper below.

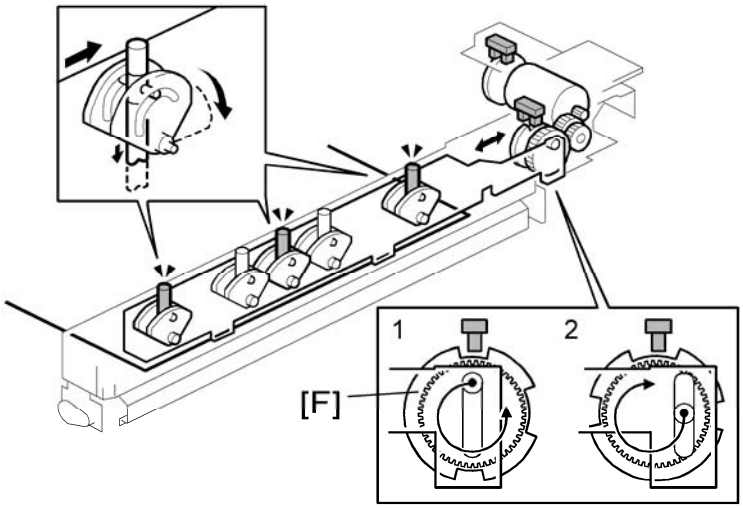
Punch Selection and Firing



[A]: Punch Drive Motor (M24)
[B]: Punch Encoder Wheel
[C]: Punch Encoder Sensor (S24)
[D]: Punch HP Sensor (S23)

The punch drive motor (M24) [A] turns the small, notched encoder wheel [B] through the gap in the punch encoder sensor [C] (S24). The sensor output is used to control the punch timing.

http://www.manuals4you.com



b804d356

The timing for 2-hole punching [E] is different from 3-hole punching [F].

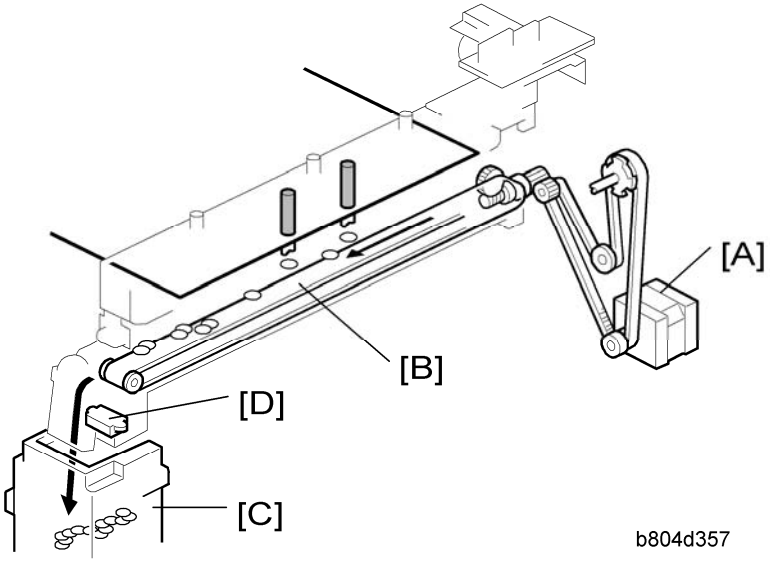
When the punch unit is at the punching position, the punch motor turns until the encoder detects the starting position for 2-hole or 3-hole punching.

- This is the '1' position in the diagrams (the top diagram is for 2-hole punching, and the bottom diagram is for 3-hole punching).

Then, the punch drive motor turns counter-clockwise to the '2' position. This movement punches the holes in the paper.

Then, the punch drive motor turns clockwise to the '1' position, to be ready for the next sheet of paper.

2.8.3 PUNCH HOPPER MECHANISM



b804d357

Punch Unit B702 (For B804/B805)

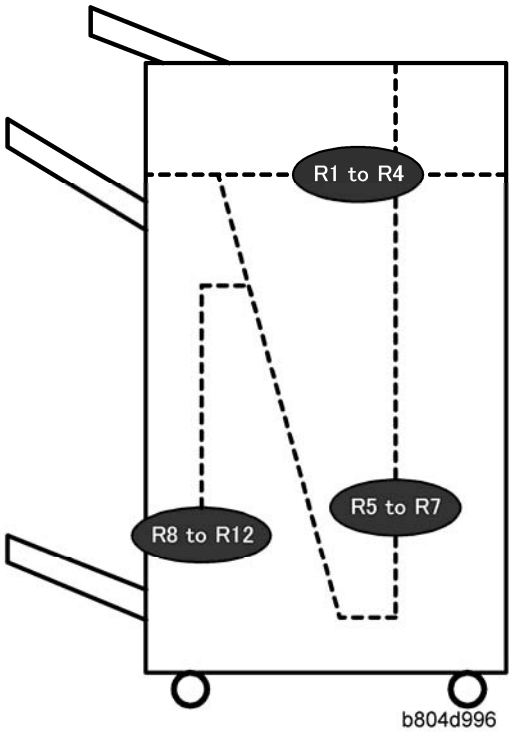
[A]: Finisher Entrance Motor (M1)
[B]: Punch Waste Belt
[C]: Punch Waste Hopper
[D]: Punch Hopper Full Sensor (S4)

The finisher entrance motor (M1) [A] drives the timing belt and gears that rotate the punch waste belt [B].
The punchouts fall from the punch unit onto the belt. The belt moves the punchouts to the front and dumps them in the punch waste hopper [C].
The punch hopper full sensor [D]:

- Signals that the hopper is full when it detects the top of the stack of punchouts that have collected in the hopper.
- It also detects when the punch hopper is set properly.

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.9 FINISHER JAM DETECTION



Display	Mode	Jam	What It Means
R1 to R3	Proof Shift Staple	Finisher entrance sensor late	After main machine exit sensor goes OFF, finisher entrance sensor does not go ON even after enough time to feed 450 mm.
		Finisher entrance sensor lag	After finisher entrance sensor goes ON, it does not go OFF after enough time to feed a sheet 1.5 times its length has elapsed.
R3	Proof	Proof exit sensor late	After finisher entrance sensor goes ON, proof exit sensor does not go ON even after enough time to feed 450 mm.
		Proof exit sensor lag	After finisher entrance sensor goes OFF, proof exit sensor does not go OFF even after enough time to feed 450 mm.

Finisher Jam Detection

Display	Mode	Jam	What It Means
R4	Shift	Upper tray exit sensor late	After finisher entrance sensor goes ON, upper tray exit sensor does not go ON even after enough time to feed 485 mm.
		Upper tray exit sensor lag	After finisher entrance sensor goes OFF, upper tray exit sensor does not go OFF even after enough time to feed 650 mm.
R5 to R7	Staple	Pre-stack tray exit sensor lag	After finisher entrance sensor goes ON, pre-stack tray exit sensor does not go ON even after enough time to feed 650 mm.
		Pre-stack tray exit sensor late	After finisher entrance sensor goes ON, pre-stack tray exit sensor does not go OFF even after enough time to feed 1650 mm.
R8 to R12	Booklet Staple (B700 Only)	Fold unit entrance sensor late (S26)	The fold unit entrance sensor goes not go ON after enough time has elapsed to feed 1.5 times the length of the stack after the leading edge of the stack reaches the stack present sensor (S32).
		Fold unit exit sensor late (S31)	The fold unit exit sensor does not go ON after enough time has elapsed for the stack to feed 1.5 times its length from the fold position.
		Fold unit exit sensor lag (S31)	After the fold unit exit sensor goes ON, it does not go OFF after enough time has elapsed to feed 442.9 mm.

http://www.manuals4you.com

PAPER FEED UNIT PB3040

D351

D351 PAPER FEED UNIT PB3040		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

PAPER FEED UNIT PB3040 (D351)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 1

1.1 REAR COVER 1
1.2 MOTORS AND CLUTCHES 2
1.2.1 LIFT MOTORS 2
1.2.2 UPPER AND LOWER PAPER FEED CLUTCHES 2
1.2.3 PAPER FEED MOTOR 3
1.3 MAIN BOARD 4
1.4 LIFT, PAPER END, AND RELAY SENSORS 5
1.5 PAPER FEED UNIT 6
1.6 PICK-UP, PAPER FEED AND SEPARATION ROLLERS 7

2. DETAILS 8

2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT 8
2.1.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 8
2.1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 9
2.2 PAPER FEED 10
2.3 PAPER SIZE DETECTION 11
2.4 REVERSE ROLLER AND PICK-UP ROLLER RELEASE 13
2.5 PAPER HEIGHT AND END DETECTION 14
2.5.1 PAPER HEIGHT DETECTION 14
2.5.2 PAPER END AND BOTTOM PLATE 15
2.6 PAPER LIFT 16

http://www.manuals4you.com

Read This First

Safety and Symbols

Replacement Procedure Safety

⚠CAUTION

- Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the replacement procedures in this manual.

Symbols Used in this Manual

This manual uses the following symbols.

☛: See or Refer to

: Screws

: Connector

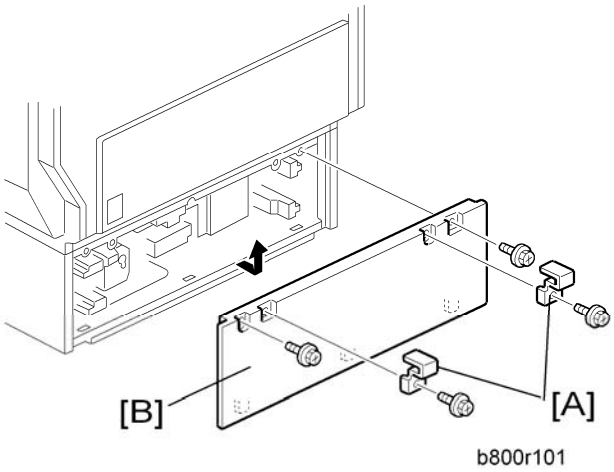
: Clip ring

: E-ring

http://www.manuals4you.com

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

1.1 REAR COVER

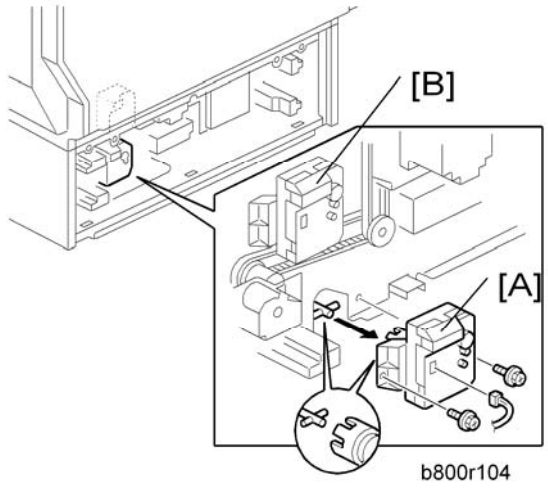


1. Securing brackets [A] (☞ x 1 each)
2. Rear cover [B] (☞ x 2)

http://www.manuals4you.com

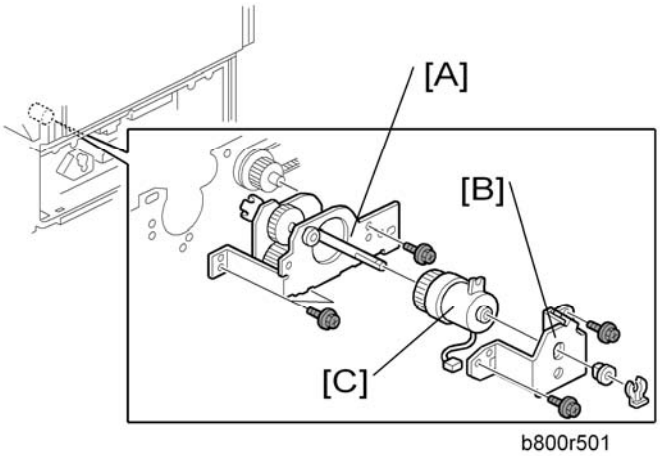
1.2 MOTORS AND CLUTCHES

1.2.1 LIFT MOTORS

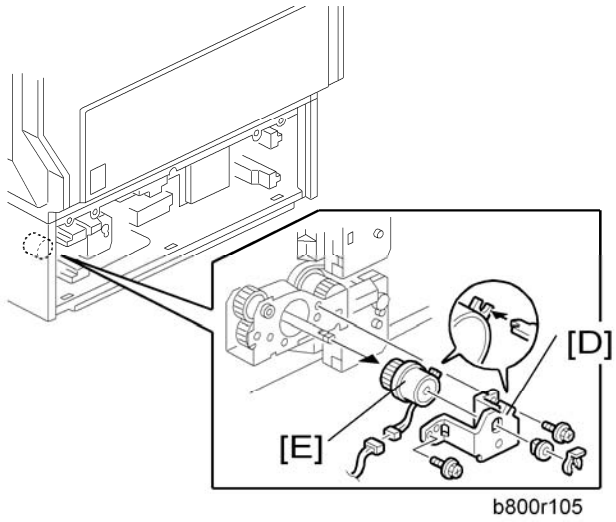


1. Rear cover (☛ "Rear Cover")
2. Lift motors [A][B] (🔩 x 2, 🖐 x 1 each)

1.2.2 UPPER AND LOWER PAPER FEED CLUTCHES

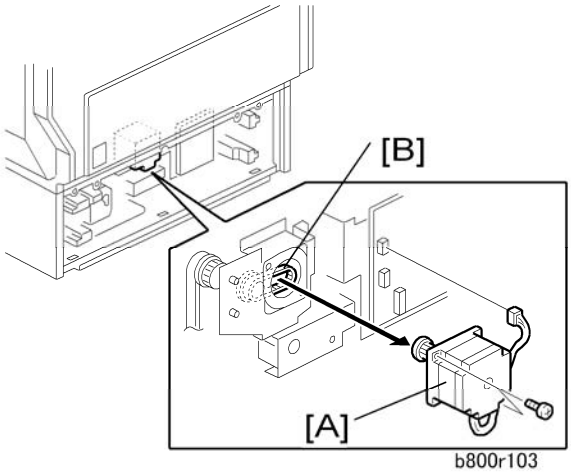


1. Rear cover (☛ "Rear Cover")
2. Upper paper feed gear unit [A] (🔩 x 3, 🖐 x 1)
3. Upper paper feed clutch bracket [B] (🔘 x 1, 🔩 x 2, bushing x 1)
4. Upper paper feed clutch [C]



5. Lower paper feed clutch bracket [D] (x 1, bushing x 1, x 2)
6. Lower paper feed clutch [E] (x 1)

1.2.3 PAPER FEED MOTOR



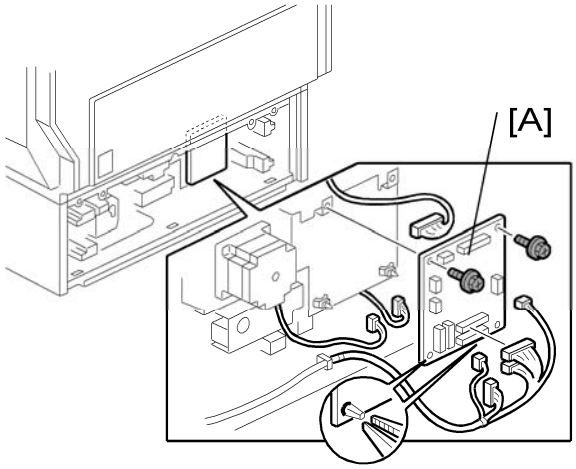
1. Rear cover (☛ "Rear Cover")
2. Paper feed motor [A] (x 1, x 2)

Note

- When installing the paper feed motor, make sure that the gear of the paper feed motor holds the timing belt [B].

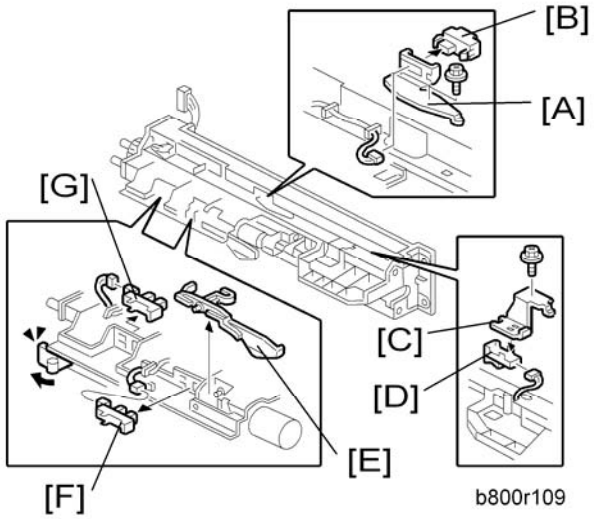
http://www.manuals4you.com

1.3 MAIN BOARD



1. Rear cover (☛ "Rear Cover")
2. Main board [A] (All ☞s, ☞ x 2, snap pin x 2)

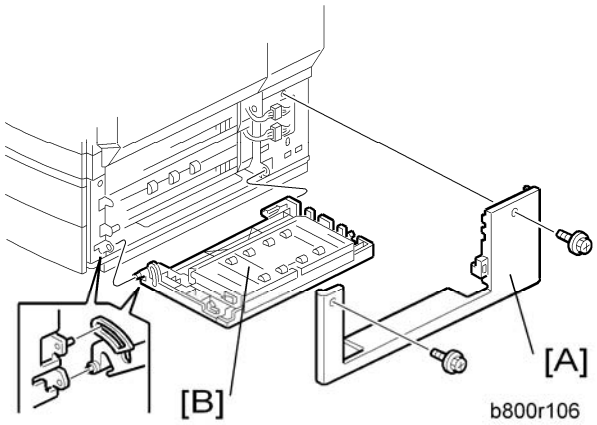
1.4 LIFT, PAPER END, AND RELAY SENSORS



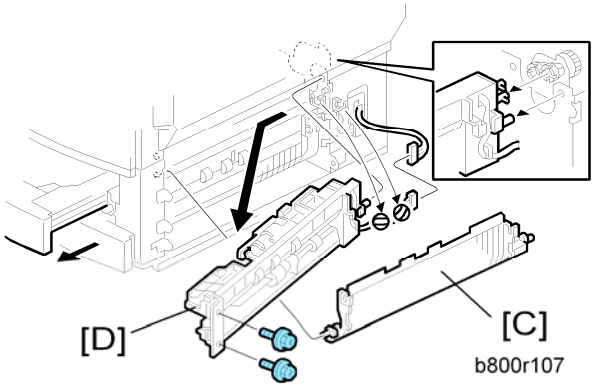
1. Paper feed unit (☛ "Paper Feed Unit")
2. Vertical transport sensor bracket [A] (☞ x 1)
3. Vertical transport sensor [B] (☞ x 1)
4. Paper feed sensor bracket [C] (☞ x 1)
5. Paper feed sensor [D] (☞ x 1)
6. Paper end sensor filler [E]
7. Paper end sensor [F] (☞ x 1)
8. Lift sensor [G] (☞ x 1)

http://www.manuals4you.com

1.5 PAPER FEED UNIT



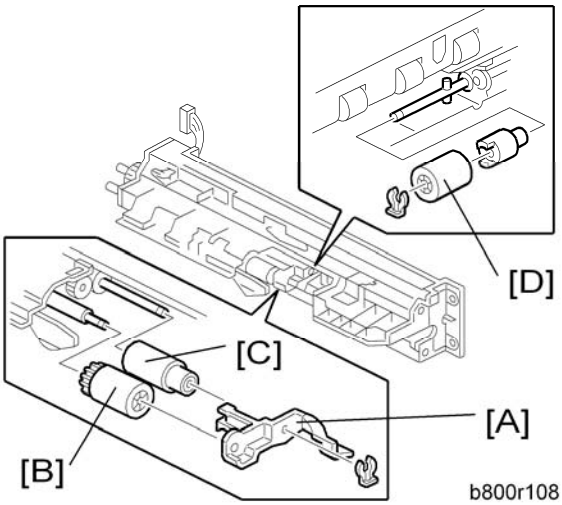
1. Right cover [A] (x 2)
2. Vertical transport guide [B] of the paper feed unit



1. Pull the tray 3 (or 4).
2. Paper guide [C]
3. Paper feed unit [D] (x 2, x 1, x 2)

When replacing the paper feed unit of tray 4, do the same.

1.6 PICK-UP, PAPER FEED AND SEPARATION ROLLERS



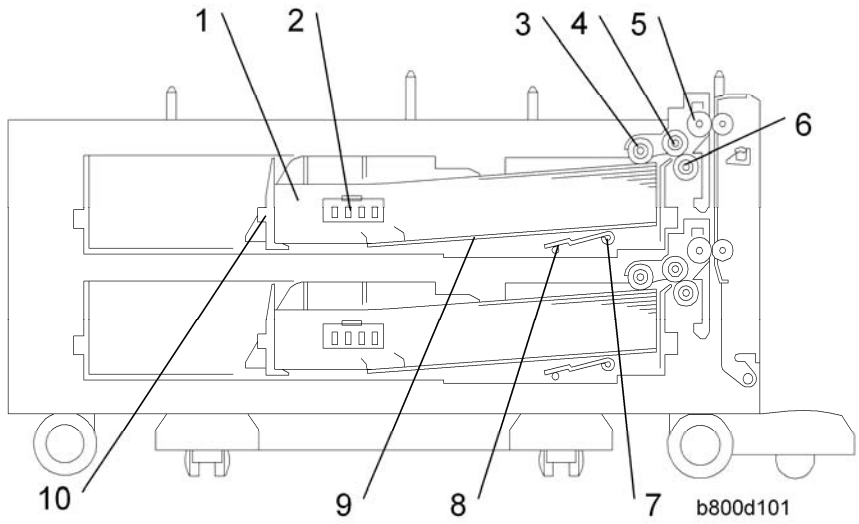
1. Paper feed unit (☛ "Paper Feed Unit)
2. Roller holder [A] (⟲ x 1)
3. Pick-up roller [B]
4. Paper feed roller [C]
5. Separation roller [D] (⟲ x 1)

http://www.manuals4you.com

2. DETAILS

2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT

2.1.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT

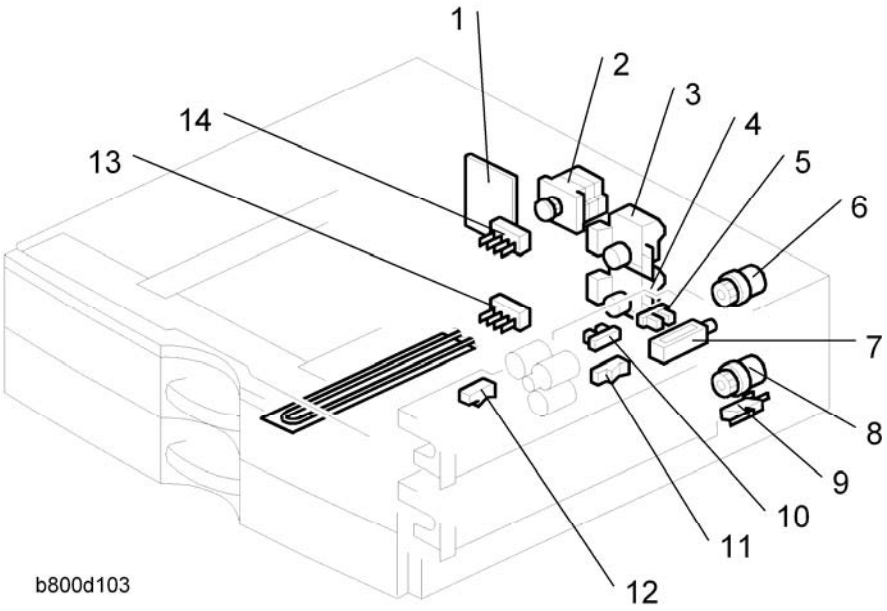


1. Upper tray	6. Separation roller
2. Paper size switch: Upper tray	7. Tray lift arm
3. Pick-up roller: Upper tray	8. Lift arm shaft
4. Paper feed roller	9. Bottom plate
5. Vertical transport roller	10. End plate

Note

- Listed above are the components of tray 1 (upper tray). Tray 2 (lower tray) has the same components as tray 1.

2.1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



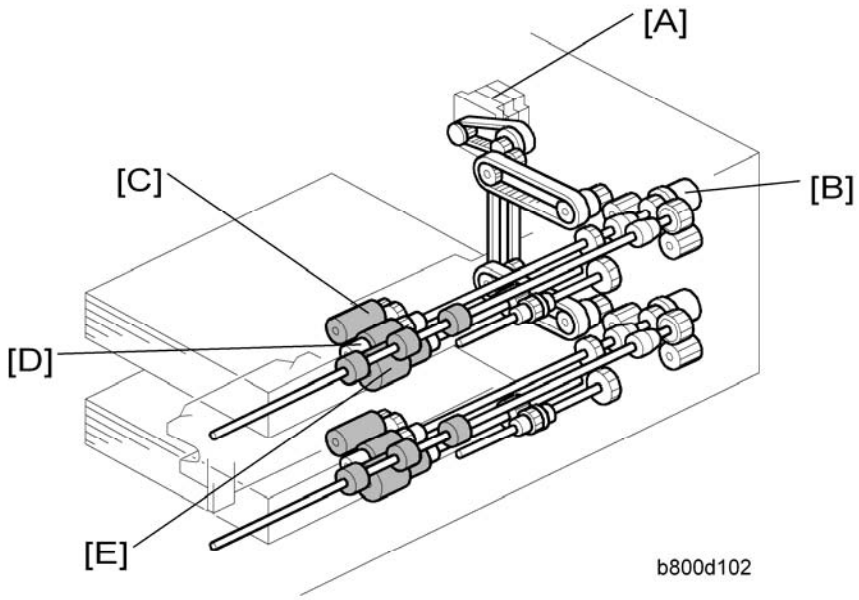
1. Main board	8. Lower paper feed clutch
2. Feed motor	9. Vertical transport guide switch
3. Upper tray lift motor	10. Paper end sensor
4. Lower tray lift motor	11. Vertical transport sensor 1
5. Upper lift sensor	12. Paper feed sensor
6. Upper paper feed clutch	13. Paper size switch: Lower tray
7. Pick-up solenoid	14. Paper size switch: Upper tray

Note

- Listed above are the components of tray 1 (upper tray), except for the right cover switch and anti-condensation heater (there is only one each of these for the entire unit). Tray 2 (lower tray) has the same components as tray 1.

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.2 PAPER FEED



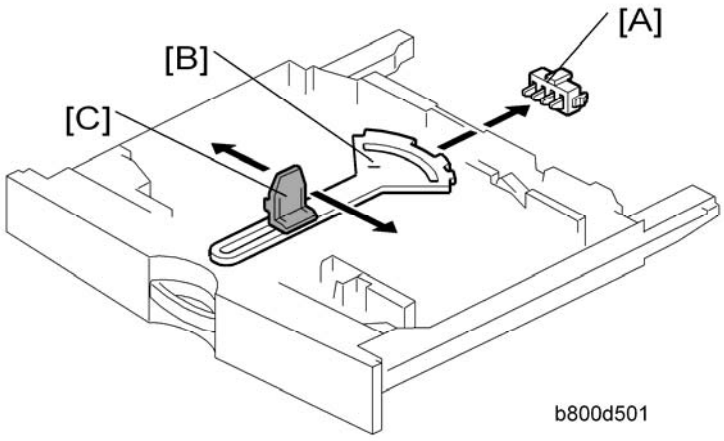
Paper Feed Mechanism:

An FRR (feed and reverse roller) feed mechanism is used (☛ "Paper Feed Methods" in the Core Technology Manual).

Drive Path:

Tray 3 (upper tray) and tray 4 (lower tray) have identical paper feed systems. The feed motor [A] drives all the rollers in the unit. The paper feed clutch [B] controls the pick-up roller [C], paper feed roller [D], and separation roller [E].

2.3 PAPER SIZE DETECTION



There are four paper size switches [A] working in combination. Switch 1 (right end) is for tray set detection. The other three switches detect the paper size as shown in the table below. The actuator [B] is moved by the end plate [C].

0: Not pushed, 1: Pushed

Models		Switch Location		
North America	**Europe/Asia**	**SW4**	**SW3**	**SW2**
DLT (A3) SEF*1	A3 (DLT) SEF*1	1	1	0
LG (B4) SEF*2	B4 (LG) SEF*2	1	1	1
A4 SEF	A4 SEF	0	0	1
B5 SEF	B5 SEF	0	0	0
LT (A4) LEF*3	A4 (LT) LEF*3	0	1	1
B5 (Exe) LEF*4	B5 (Exe) LEF*4	1	0	1
A5 LEF	A5 LEF	0	1	0

Note

- *1: Detects either DLT SEF or A3 SEF, depending on the setting of SP5-181-7 or 11.
- *2: Detects either LG SEF or B4 SEF, depending on the setting of SP5-181-8 or 12.

http://www.manuals4you.com

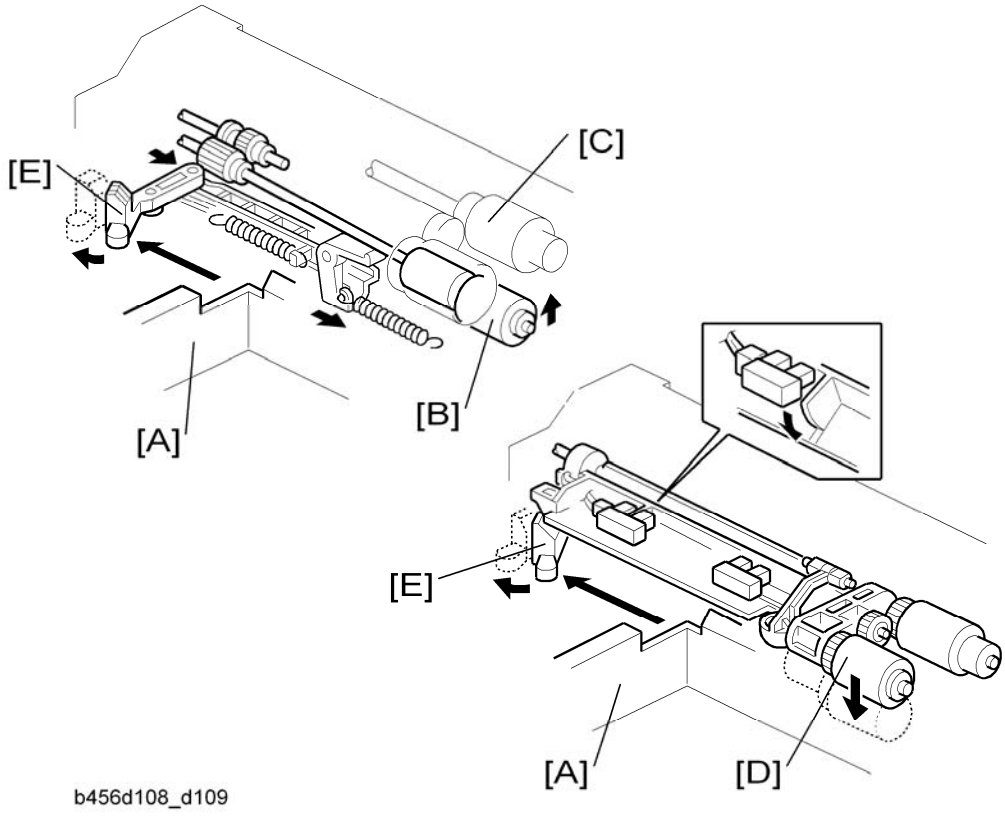
Paper Size Detection

- *3: Detects either LT LEF or A4 LEF, depending on the setting of SP5-181-6 or 10.
- *4: Detects either Exe LEF or B5 LEF, depending on the setting of SP5-181-9 or 13

The machine disables paper feed from a tray if the paper size cannot be detected (if the paper size actuator is broken or no tray is installed).

For non-standard paper sizes, if they are not visible on the user tool screen for selecting paper sizes, then set SP 5-112 to 1. If the user selects one of these sizes, auto paper size selection is disabled.

2.4 REVERSE ROLLER AND PICK-UP ROLLER RELEASE



The pick-up roller and separation roller release the paper when it is not being fed. This helps remove jammed paper easily.

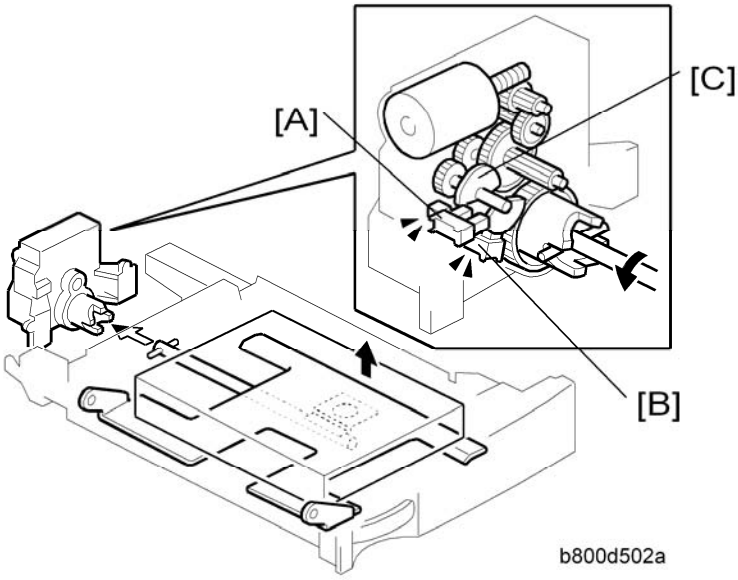
When the paper tray [A] is not in the machine, the separation roller [B] is away from the paper feed roller [C] and the pick-up roller stays in its upper position.

When the paper tray is pushed into the machine, it pushes the release lever [E]. This causes the pick-up roller [D] to go down into contact with the top sheet of paper, and causes the reverse roller [B] to move up and contact the paper feed roller.

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.5 PAPER HEIGHT AND END DETECTION

2.5.1 PAPER HEIGHT DETECTION

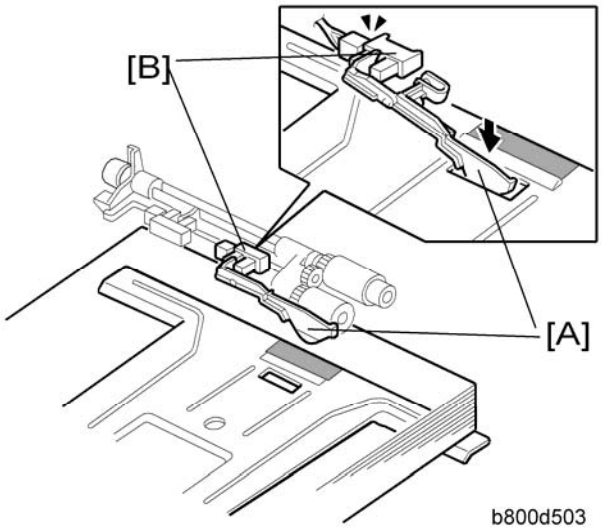


Two paper height sensors [A] [B] and actuator [C] are built into the paper tray lift motor. The paper height sensors, detect the amount of paper in the tray.
The actuator [C] has two semicircles, and it is engaged with the lift arm shaft via gears. The paper height sensors detect the paper size depending on the position of the two semicircles. The list shown below shows the detection combination of the two sensors.
The paper remaining status bar is displayed in the tray selection icon on the LCD.

Remaining paper	Paper height sensor 1 [A]	Paper height sensor 2 [B]
100% (Status bar x 4)	OFF	OFF
70% (Status bar x 3)	ON	OFF
30% (Status bar x 2)	ON	ON
10% (Status bar x 1)	OFF	ON

OFF: No actuator

2.5.2 PAPER END AND BOTTOM PLATE

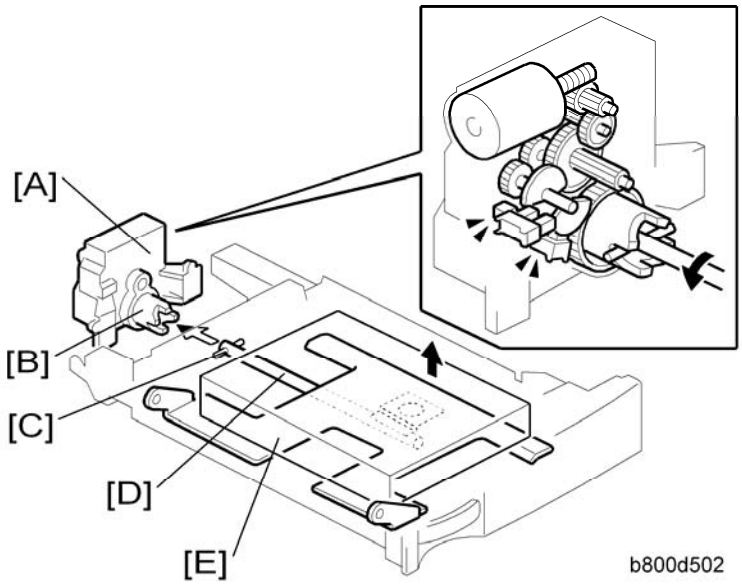


The paper stack raises the paper end feeler [A] and the paper end sensor [B] deactivates if there is some paper in the paper tray.

When the paper tray runs out of paper, the paper end feeler [A] drops into the cutout in the tray bottom plate. At this time the paper end sensor [B] activates

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.6 PAPER LIFT



When the machine detects that a tray has been placed in the machine, the tray lift motor [A] rotates and the coupling gear [B] on the tray lift motor engages the pin [C] on the lift arm shaft [D]. Then the tray lift arm lifts the tray bottom plate [E] until the paper lift sensor for the tray detects that the top of the stack is at the paper feed position.

When the tray is removed from the machine, the connection between the coupling gear and lift arm shaft is disengaged, and the tray bottom plate lowers.

LCIT PB3050

D352

D352 LCIT PB3050		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

LCIT PB3050 (D352)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 1

1.1 LEFT AND RIGHT TRAY 1
1.2 SENSORS 2
1.2.1 PAPER HEIGHT SENSORS ON THE PAPER STORAGE SIDE 2
1.2.2 END FENCE HP SENSOR/PAPER END SENSOR 2 2
1.3 CHANGING THE TRAY SIZE 3
1.4 MAIN BOARD 4
1.5 CLUTCHES 5
1.5.1 STACK TRANSPORT CLUTCH 5
1.5.2 PAPER FEED CLUTCH 5
1.6 PAPER FEED UNIT 6
1.7 MOTORS 7
1.7.1 TRAY LIFT MOTOR 7
1.7.2 TRAY MOTOR 8
1.8 PICK-UP, FEED AND SEPARATION ROLLERS 9
1.9 PAPER FEED, PAPER END, LIFT AND RELAY SENSORS 10
1.10 PAPER FEED 11

2. DETAILS 12

2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT 12
2.1.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 12
2.1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 13
2.1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTIONS 14
2.2 SEPARATION ROLLER AND PICK-UP ROLLER RELEASE 16
2.3 TRAY LIFT 17
2.4 PAPER AMOUNT DETECTION 18
2.5 PAPER END DETECTION (PAPER FEED SIDE) 19
2.6 PAPER STACK TRANSPORT 20

http://www.manuals4you.com

Read This First

Safety and Symbols

Replacement Procedure Safety

⚠CAUTION

- Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the replacement procedures in this manual.

Symbols Used in this Manual

This manual uses the following symbols.

☞: See or Refer to

: Screws

: Connector

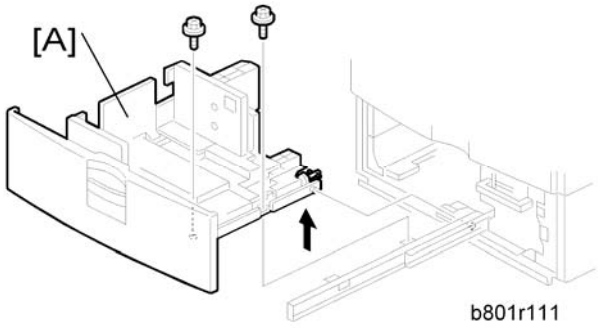
: Clip ring

: E-ring

http://www.manuals4you.com

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

1.1 LEFT AND RIGHT TRAY

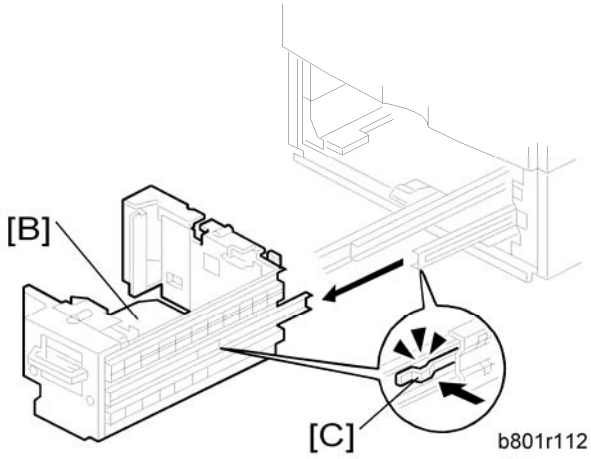


1. Pull the LCT drawer.

Note

- If the right tray comes up with the left tray, push the right tray into the LCT.

2. Left tray [A] (x 2)



3. Remove the right tray [B] while pressing down the stopper [C].

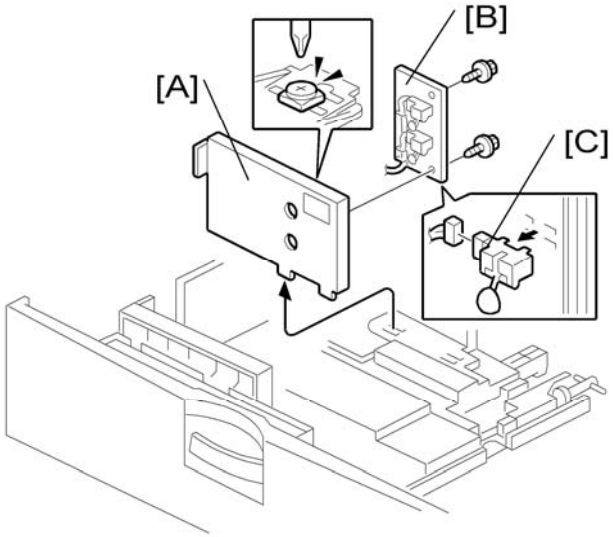
Note

- When reinstalling the tray, set the tray on the guide rail and carefully push the tray in, making sure to keep the tray level.

http://www.manuals4you.com

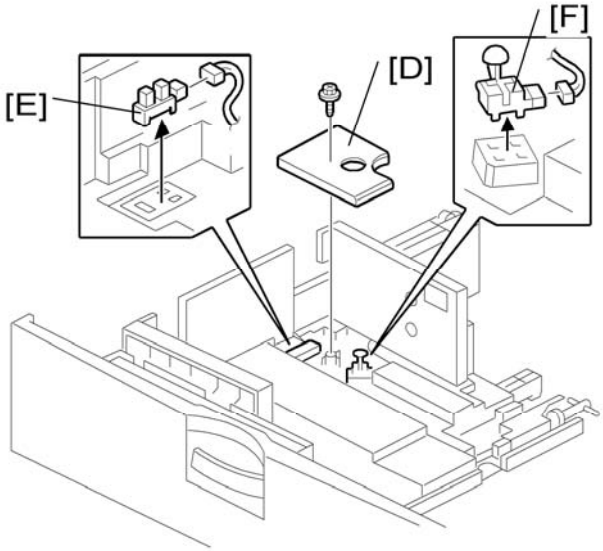
1.2 SENSORS

1.2.1 PAPER HEIGHT SENSORS ON THE PAPER STORAGE SIDE



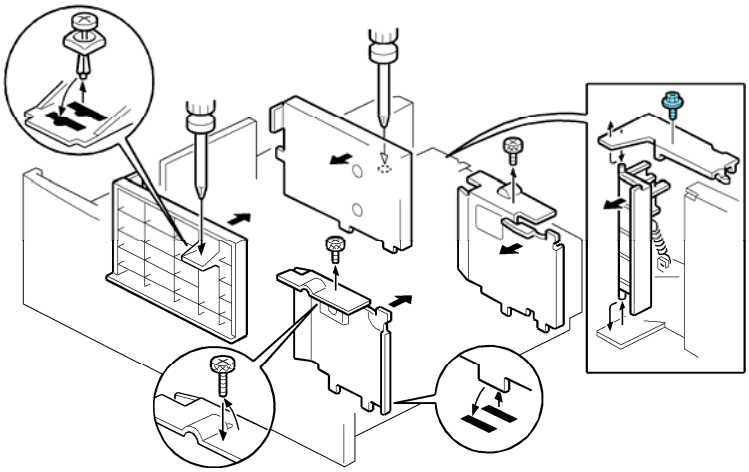
1. Tray (☛ "Left and Right Tray")
2. Rear fence [A] (☞ x 1)
3. Rear fence bracket [B] (☞ x 2)
4. Paper height sensors [C] (☜ x 1 each)

1.2.2 END FENCE HP SENSOR/PAPER END SENSOR 2



1. Bottom cover [D] (☞ x 1)
2. End fence HP sensor [E] (☜ x 1)
3. Paper end sensor 2 (paper storage side) [F] (☜ x 1)

1.3 CHANGING THE TRAY SIZE



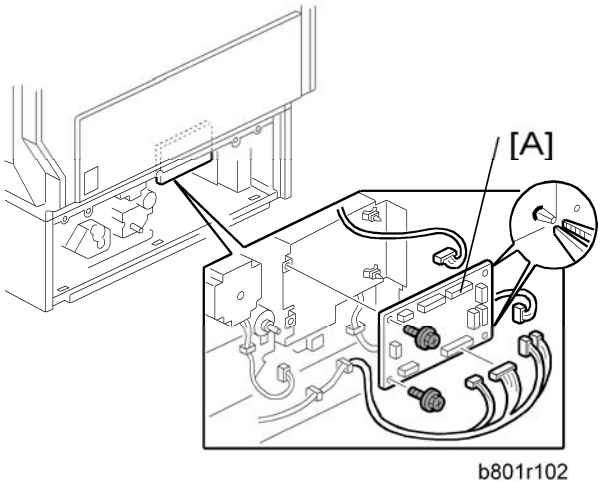
1. Remove the fence screws (x 5).
2. Change the position of the fences.

Note

- Before fastening the screws, set paper in the tray.

http://www.manuals4you.com

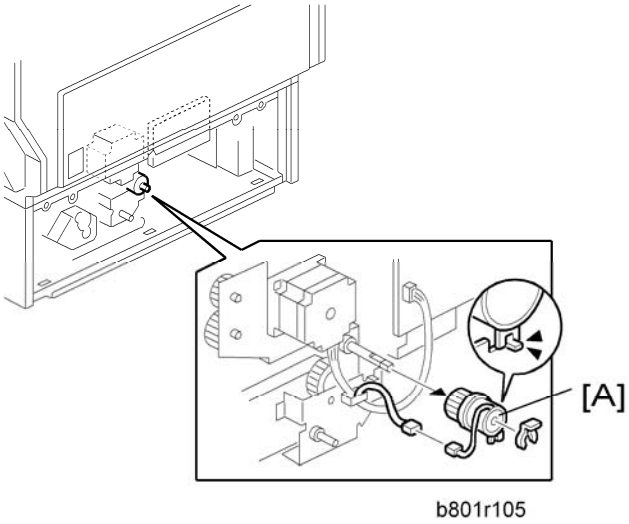
1.4 MAIN BOARD



1. Rear cover (☛ "Tray Lift Motor")
2. Main board [A] (All ☟s, 🔩 x 2, snap x 2)

1.5 CLUTCHES

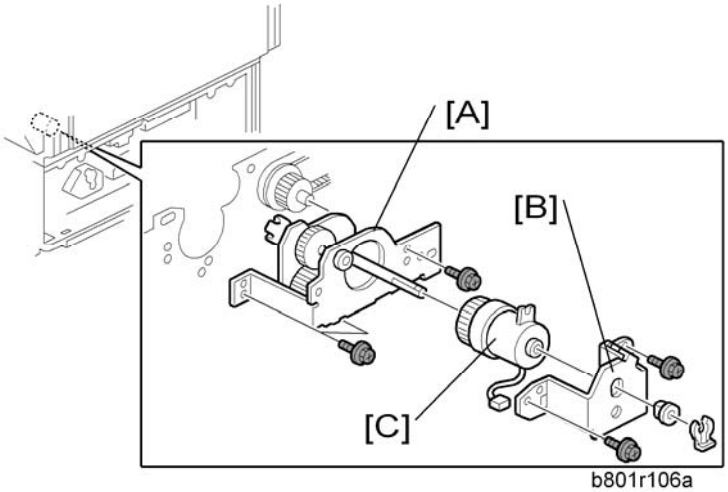
1.5.1 STACK TRANSPORT CLUTCH



b801r105

1. Rear cover (☛ "Tray Lift Motor")
2. Stack transport clutch [A] (x 1, x 1)

1.5.2 PAPER FEED CLUTCH

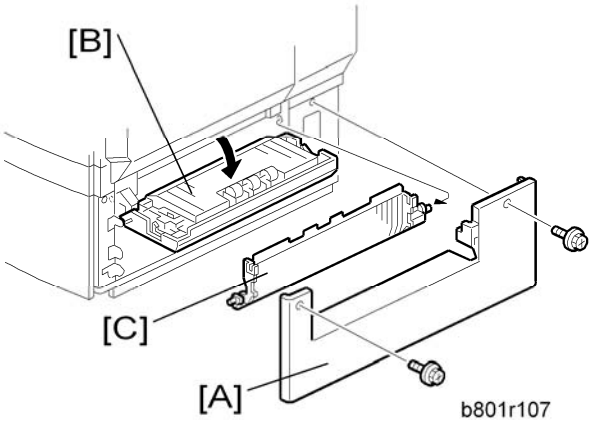


b801r106a

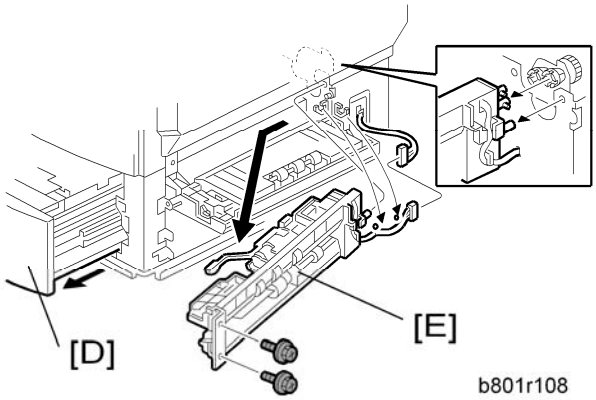
1. Rear cover (☛ "Tray Lift Motor")
2. Paper feed gear unit [A] (x 3, x 1)
3. Paper feed clutch bracket [B] (x 1, x 2, bushing x 1)
4. Paper feed clutch [C]

http://www.manuals4you.com

1.6 PAPER FEED UNIT



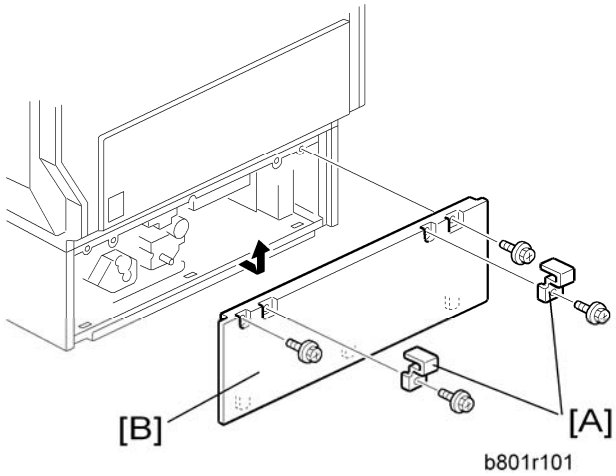
1. Right cover [A]
2. Open the vertical guide plate [B]
3. Guide plate [C]



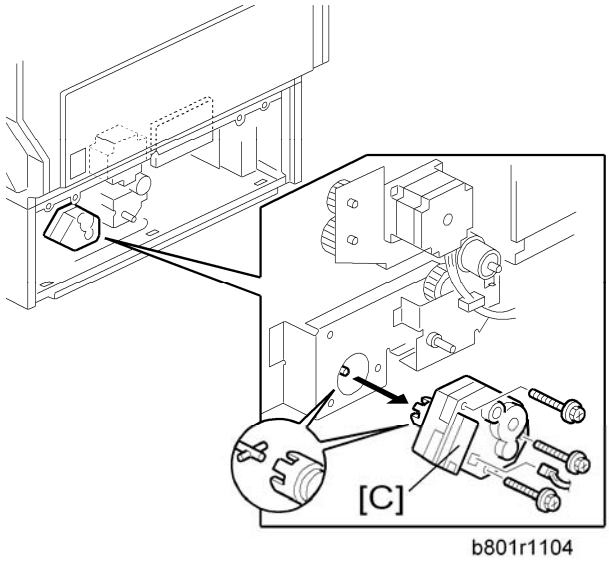
4. Pull the LCT drawer [D].
5. Paper feed unit [E] (x 2, x 1)

1.7 MOTORS

1.7.1 TRAY LIFT MOTOR



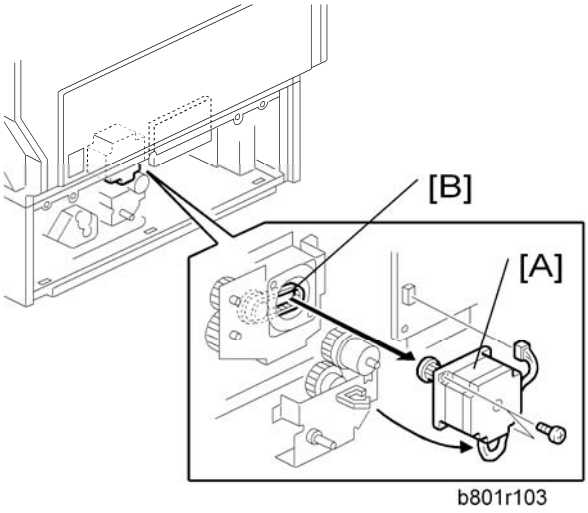
1. Securing brackets [A] (🔩 x 1 each)
2. Rear cover [B] (🔩 x 2)



3. Tray lift motor [C] (✋ x 1, 🔩 x 3)

http://www.manuals4you.com

1.7.2 TRAY MOTOR

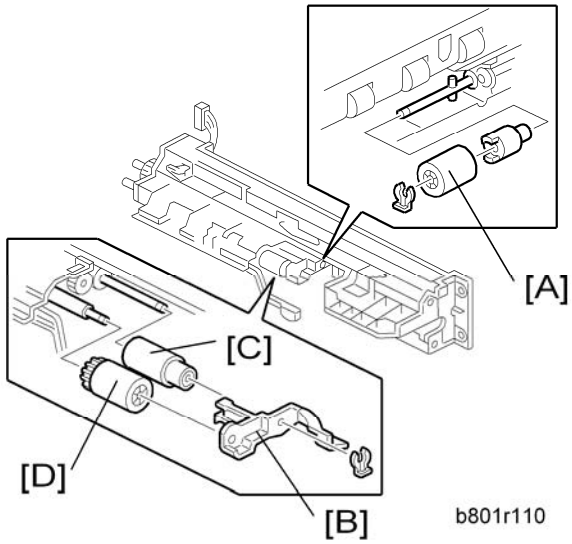


1. Rear cover (☛ "Tray Lift Motor")
2. Tray motor [A] (☞ x 1, 🔩 x 2)

Note

- When installing the tray motor, make sure that the gear of the tray motor holds the timing belt [B].

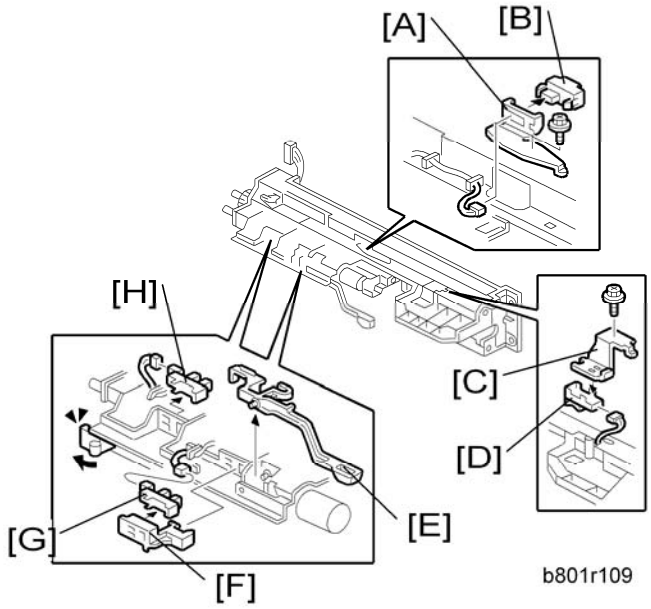
1.8 PICK-UP, FEED AND SEPARATION ROLLERS



1. Paper feed unit (☛ "Paper Feed Unit")
2. Separation roller [A] (🔩 x 1)
3. Roller holder [B] (🔩 x 1)
4. Feed roller [C] and pick-up roller [D]

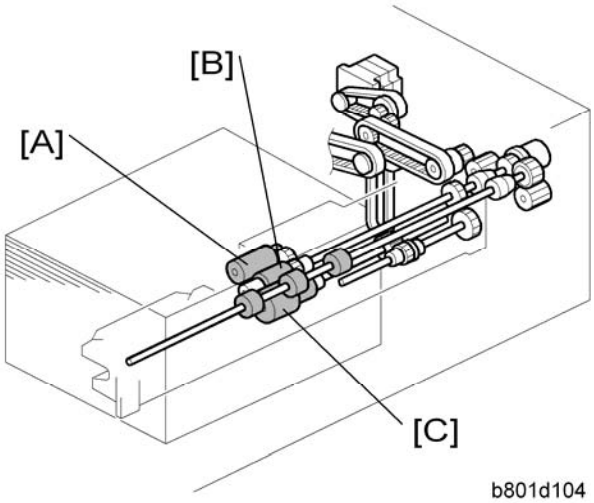
http://www.manuals4you.com

1.9 PAPER FEED, PAPER END, LIFT AND RELAY SENSORS



1. Paper feed unit (☛ "Paper Feed Unit")
2. Vertical transport sensor bracket [A] (🔩 x 1, 🖑 x 1)
3. Relay sensor [B]
4. Paper feed sensor bracket [C]
5. Paper feed sensor [D]
6. Paper end feeler [E]
7. Paper end sensor holder [F] (hook x 3)
8. Paper end sensor [G] (🖑 x 1, hook x 3)
9. Lift sensor [H] (🖑 x 1, hook x 3)

1.10 PAPER FEED



This products uses an FRR type paper feed mechanism.

The paper feed unit consists of the pick-up roller [A], paper feed roller [B], separation roller [C], and relay rollers.

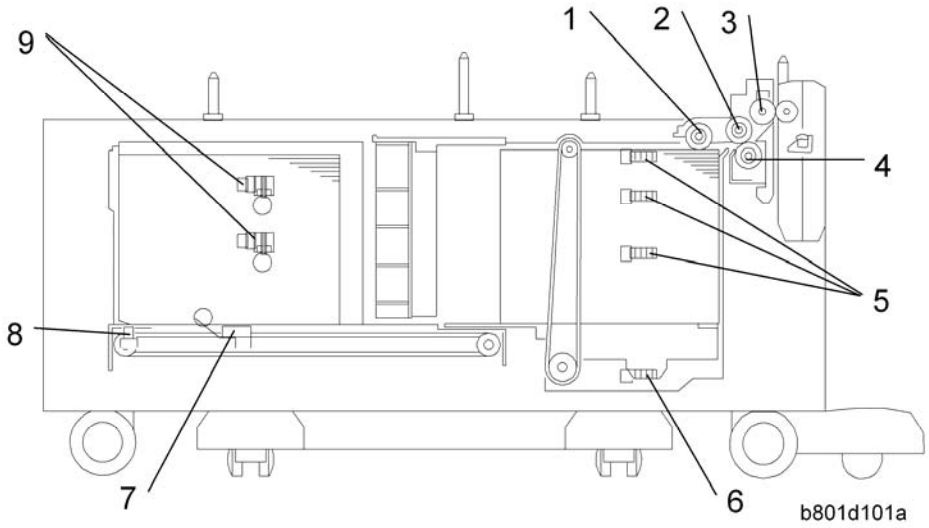
There is a torque limiter in the back of the separation roller (ferrite powder type).

http://www.manuals4you.com

2. DETAILS

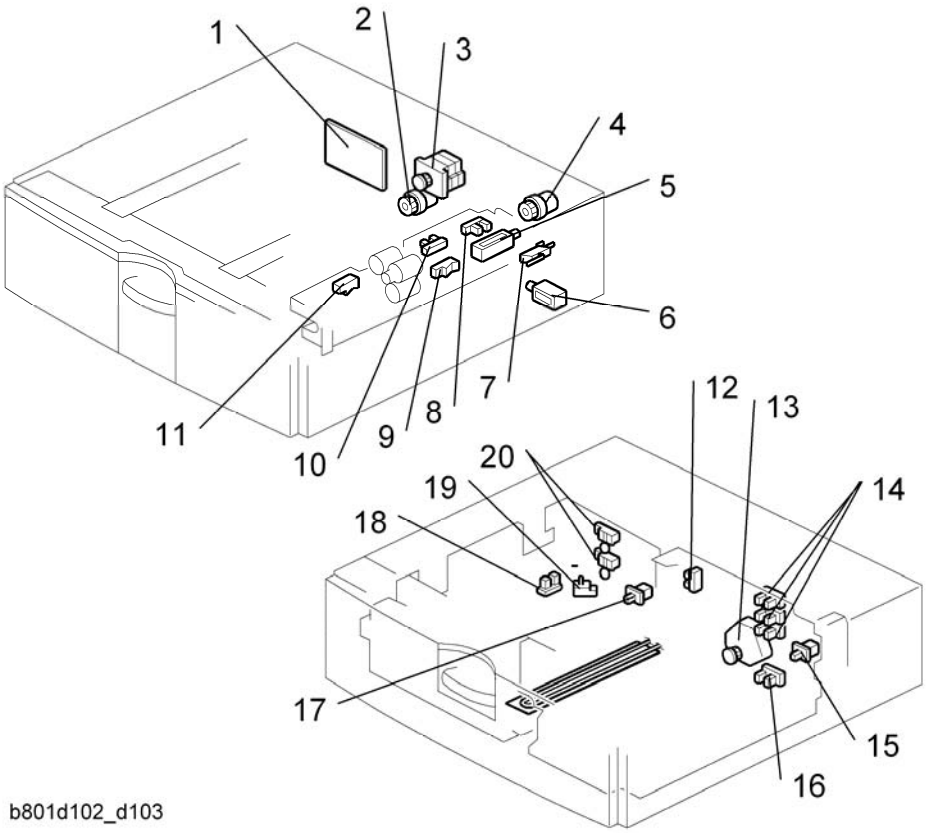
2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT

2.1.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Pick-up Roller 2. Paper Feed Roller 3. Relay Sensor 4. Separation Roller 5. Paper Height Sensors 1, 2, 3	6. Lower Limit Sensor 7. Paper End Sensor 2 8. End Fence HP Sensor 9. Paper Height Sensors 4, 5

2.1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Main board	11. Paper feed sensors
2. Stack transport clutch	12. Side fence sensor
3. Tray motor	13. Tray lift motor
4. Paper feed clutch	14. Paper height sensor 1, 2, 3
5. Pick-up solenoid	15. Tray set switch
6. Right tray lock solenoid	16. Lower limit sensor
7. Vertical guide switch	17. Left tray set switch
8. Lift sensor	18. End fence HP sensor
9. Relay sensor	19. Paper end sensor 2
10. Paper end sensor 1	20 Paper height sensors 4, 5

http://www.manuals4you.com

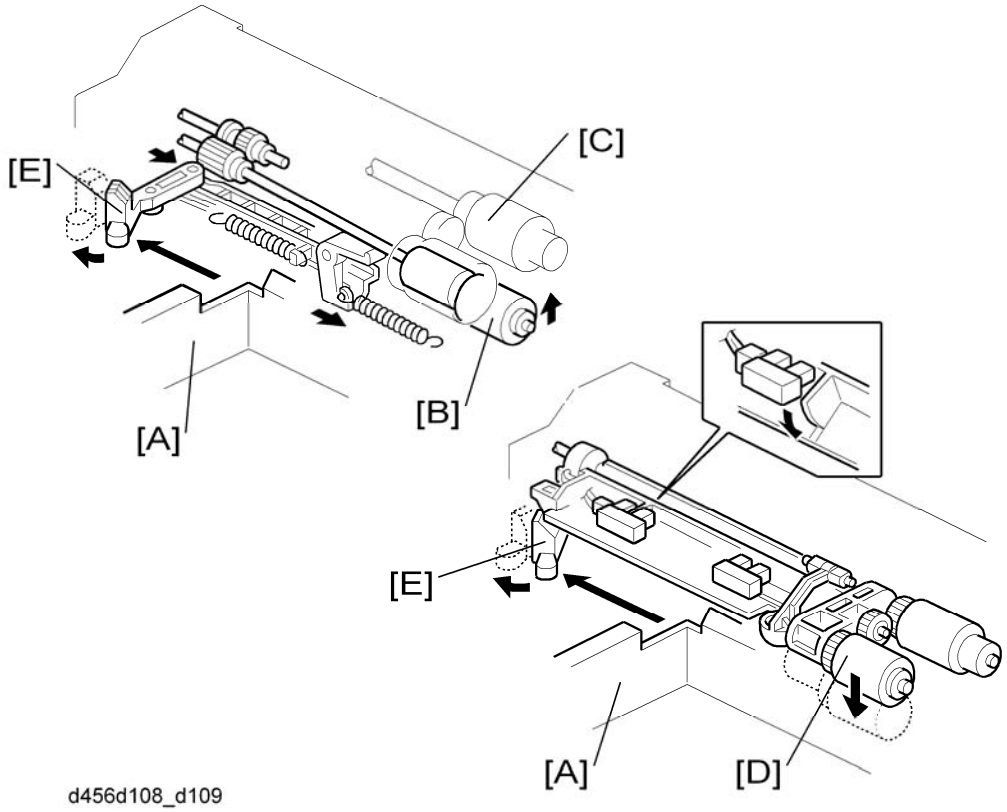
2.1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTIONS

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
Motors			
M1	Tray	Drives all rollers.	3
M2	Tray Lift	Drives the paper tray up or down.	13
Sensors			
S1	Paper Feed Sensor	Detects whether the paper is jammed at LCT.	11
S2	Relay	Detects the copy paper coming to the relay roller and checks for misfeeds.	9
S3	Paper End 1 (paper feed side)	Informs the copier/printer when the paper in the right side (paper feed side) of the tray has been used up. If there is a paper stack in the left side (paper storage side), this is moved into the paper feed side. If there is no paper stack in the left side, paper end is indicated.	10
S4	Lift	Detects when the paper is at the correct paper feed height.	8
S5-S7	Paper Height 1, 2, 3	Detects the amount of paper remaining in the right side of the tray.	14
S8	Lower Limit	Detects when the tray is completely lowered, to stop the LCT motor.	16
S9	End Fence HP	Detects when the left fence is at its home position	18
S10	Side Fence	Detects whether the side fence is open or closed. (The fence opens when the	12

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
		left-tray paper stack is moving to the paper feed side.)	
S11	Paper End 2 (paper storage side)	Informs the copier/printer when there is no paper in the left side (paper storage side) of the tray.	19
S12 S13	Paper Height 4, 5	Detects the amount of paper remaining in the left side of the tray.	20
Switches			
SW1	Vertical Guide	Detects whether the right cover is open.	7
SW2	Tray Set Switch	Detects whether the tray is correctly set.	15
SW3	Left Tray Set Switch	Detects whether the left tray is correctly set.	17
Magnetic Clutches			
MC1	Paper Feed	Drives the paper feed roller.	4
MC2	Stack Transport	Drives the rear fence of the paper storage side.	2
Solenoids			
SOL1	Pick-up	Pushes the pick-up roller up or down.	5
SOL2	Tray Lock	Locks or unlocks the right tray.	6
PCBs			
PCB1	Main	Controls the LCT and communicates with the copier/printer.	1

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.2 SEPARATION ROLLER AND PICK-UP ROLLER RELEASE

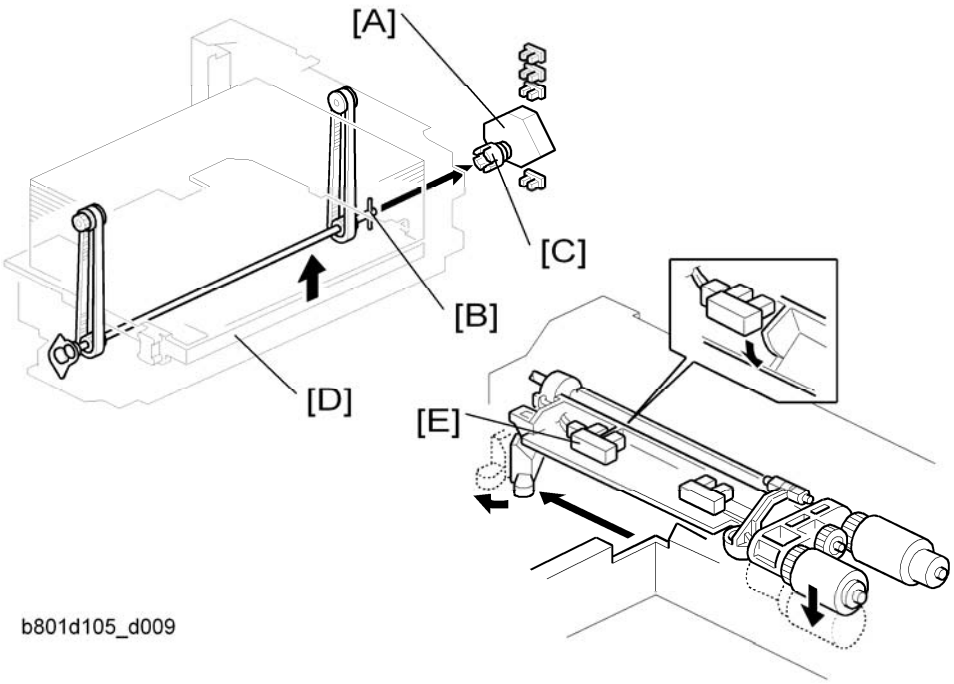


To prevent the paper from being torn when pulling out the paper feed tray, the separation and pick-up rollers release automatically.

When the paper tray [A] is not inside the machine, the separation roller [B] is away from the paper feed roller [C], and the pick-up roller [D] stays in the upper position.

When the paper tray is set into the machine, it pushes the release lever [E]. This causes the pick-up roller [D] to go down into contact with the top sheet of paper and the separation roller [B] to move up and contact the paper feed roller.

2.3 TRAY LIFT



When the paper feed tray is put in the machine, the tray switch on the back turns on and the tray lift motor [A] starts. The base plate lift shaft [B] is coupled to the lift motor at the shaft [C], so the base plate [D] of the tray is lifted. After a short while, the top of the paper stack contacts the pick-up roller and lifts it up. Then the motor stops lifting the plate when the upper limit sensor actuator enters the sensor (☛ "Electrical Component Layout").
When paper in the tray is used up, the pick-up roller is gradually lowered, and the actuator leaves the lift sensor [E]. When this happens, the lift motor begins turning again. The tray will then be lifted until the actuator enters the upper limit sensor again).
When the tray is removed from the copier, the coupling between the lift motor [A] and base plate lift shaft [B] is broken and the base plate goes into a controlled free fall (using a damper to slow the fall and prevent damage).

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.4 PAPER AMOUNT DETECTION

The table lists the sensors that are used to detect the amount of remaining paper.

Right Tray (Paper feed side)

- Paper end sensor 1
- Paper height sensor 1 to 3

Left Tray (Paper storage side)

- Paper height sensor 4 and 5
- Paper end sensor 2

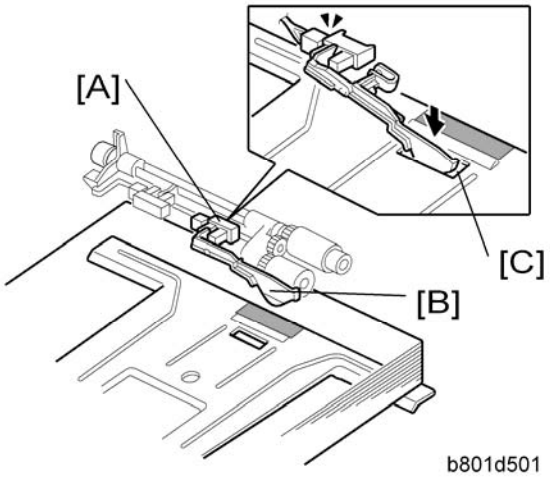
Right Tray

Amount of paper	Paper Height Sensor			Paper End Sensor	Display No. of Line
	1	2	3		
100%	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	4
70%	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	3
30%	OFF	ON	-	ON	2
10%	ON	-	-	ON	1
Paper End	-	-	-	OFF	0

Left Tray

Amount of paper	Paper Height Sensor		Paper End Sensor	Display No. of Line
	4	5		
100%	OFF	OFF	OFF	4
70%	ON	OFF	OFF	3
30%	ON	ON	OFF	2
Paper End	ON	ON	ON	0

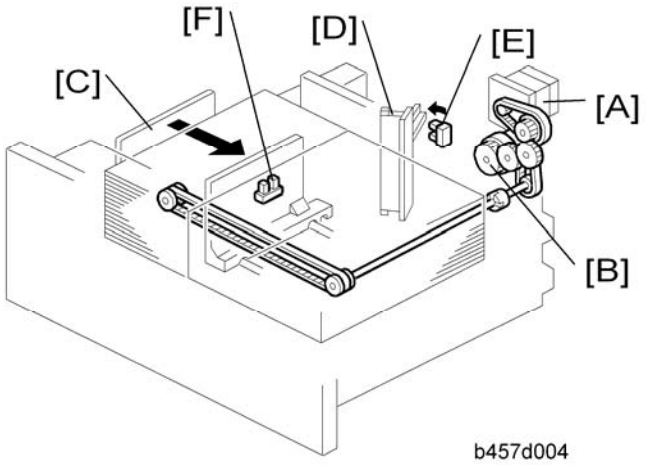
2.5 PAPER END DETECTION (PAPER FEED SIDE)



The paper end sensor 1 [A] detects when copy paper in the paper feed side runs out. When there is paper in the tray, the paper pushes up the feeler [B] and the actuator enters the sensor. When paper runs out, the feeler drops in to cutout [C] and the actuator leaves the sensor, and the machine detects that there is no paper in the tray.

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.6 PAPER STACK TRANSPORT



When the paper in the paper feed side is used up, the tray motor [A] and stack transport clutch [B] turn on. Then the end fence [C] moves the stack of paper from the paper storage side to the paper feed side.

Note

- During paper feed, the stack transport clutch (☞ "Electrical Component Layout") does not switch on, so drive from the tray motor only transfers to the relay roller and not to the fence mechanism.

While the stack is in motion, it pushes the side fence [D] aside, and the side fence sensor [E] detects that the fence is open.

After the stack has been moved all the way across, a spring in the side fence moves the side fence back, and the side fence sensor detects that the fence is closed. Then, the tray motor reverses until end fence home position sensor [F] is deactivated.

BRIDGE UNIT BU3030

D386

D386 BRIDGE UNIT BU3030		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

BRIDGE UNIT BU3030 (D386)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 1

1.1 BRIDGE UNIT CONTROL BOARD 1
1.2 BRIDGE UNIT DRIVE MOTOR 2
1.3 TRAY EXIT SENSOR 3
1.4 RELAY SENSOR 4

2. DETAILS 5

2.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 5
2.2 DRIVE LAYOUT 6
2.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 7
2.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION 8
2.5 JUNCTION GATE MECHANISM 9

http://www.manuals4you.com

Read This First

Safety and Symbols

Replacement Procedure Safety

⚠CAUTION

- Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the replacement procedures in this manual.

When taking apart the bridge unit, first take the unit out of the copier.

Symbols Used in this Manual

This manual uses the following symbols.

☛: See or Refer to

: Screws

: Connector

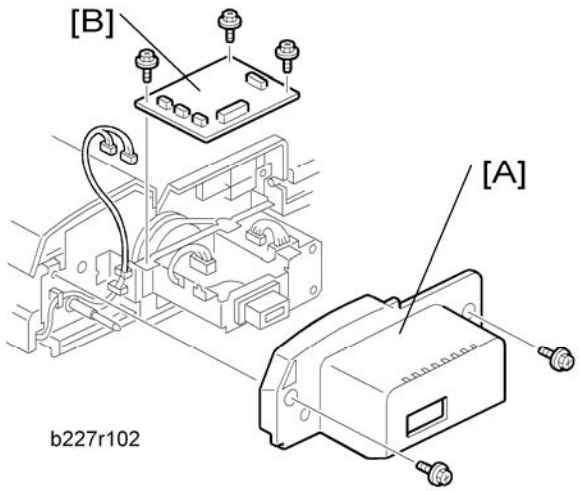
: Clip ring

: E-ring

http://www.manuals4you.com

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

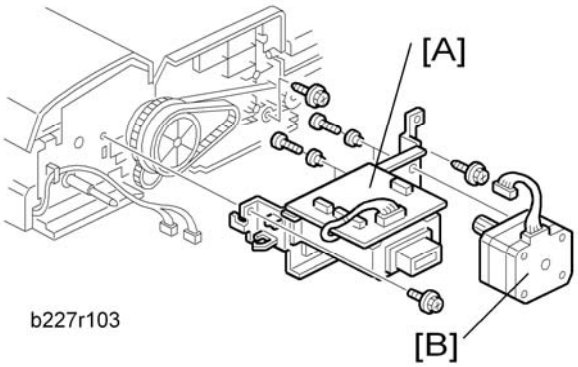
1.1 BRIDGE UNIT CONTROL BOARD



1. Bridge unit (☛ "Installation Procedure" in the base copier manual)
2. Rear cover [A] (☞ x 2)
3. Bridge unit control board [B] (☞ x 3, ☞ x 4)

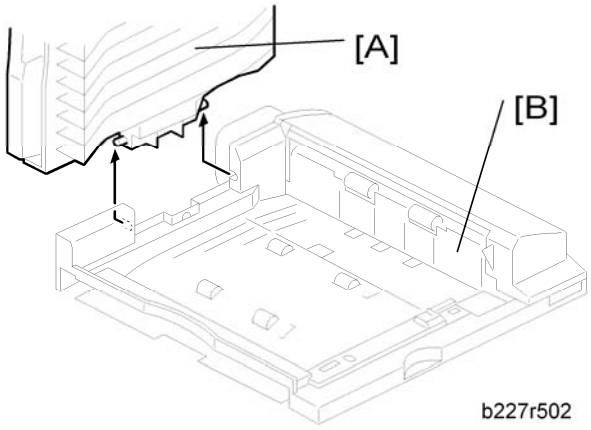
http://www.manuals4you.com

1.2 BRIDGE UNIT DRIVE MOTOR

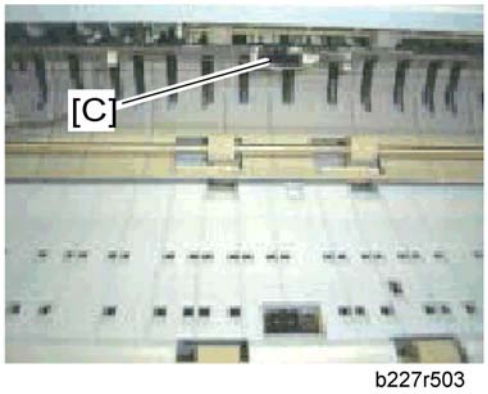


1. Bridge unit (☛ "Installation Procedure" in the base copier manual)
2. Rear cover (☛ "Bridge Unit Control Board")
3. Bracket [A] (x 3, x 2)
4. Bridge unit drive motor [B] (x 4, x 1)

1.3 TRAY EXIT SENSOR



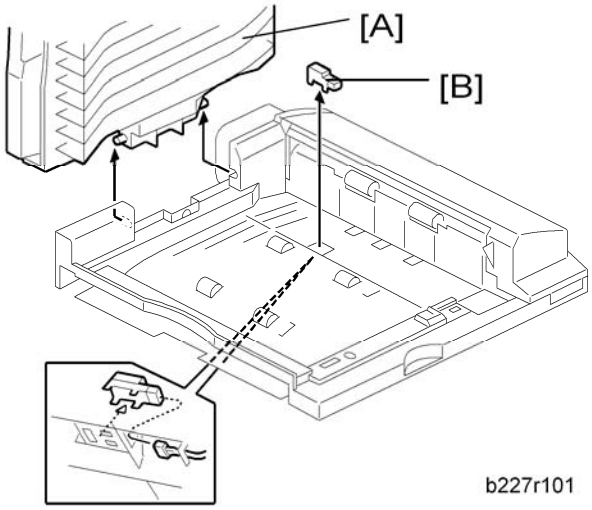
1. Bridge unit (☛ "Installation Procedure" in the base copier manual)
2. Rear cover (☛ "Bridge Unit Control Board")
3. Paper tray [A]
4. Exit guide [B] (☞ x 1)



5. Tray exit sensor [C] (✋ x 1)

http://www.manuals4you.com

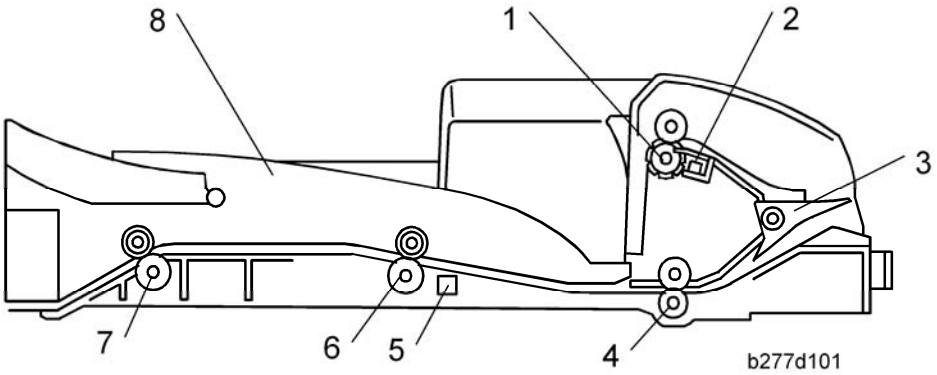
1.4 RELAY SENSOR



1. Bridge unit (☛ "Installation Procedure" in the base copier manual)
2. Paper tray [A]
3. Relay sensor [B] (☞ x 1)

2. DETAILS

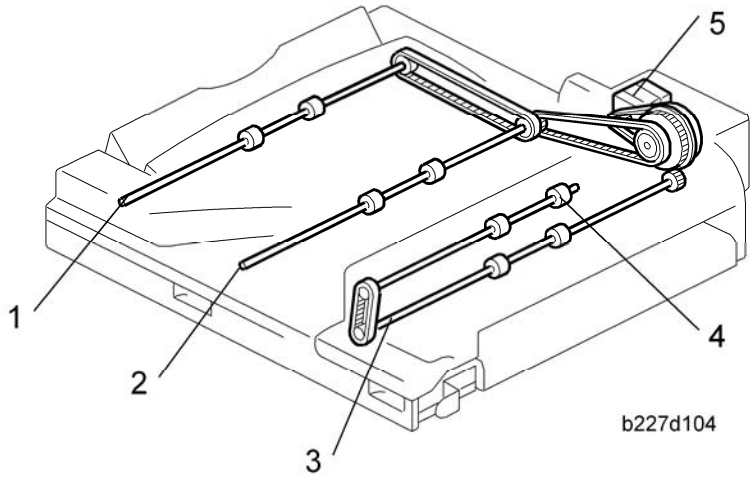
2.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Upper Exit Roller	5. Relay Sensor
2. Tray Exit Sensor	6. 2nd Transport Roller
3. Junction Gate	7. Left Exit Roller
4. 1st Transport Roller	8. Paper Tray

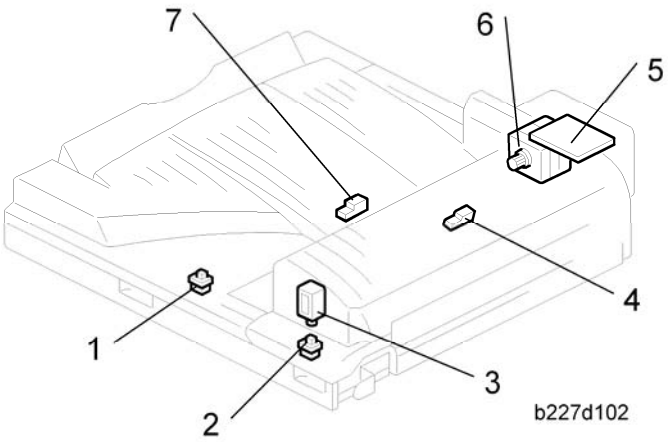
http://www.manuals4you.com

2.2 DRIVE LAYOUT



1. Left Exit Roller
2. 2nd Transport Roller
3. 1st Transport Roller
4. Upper Exit Roller
5. Bridge Unit Drive Motor

2.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



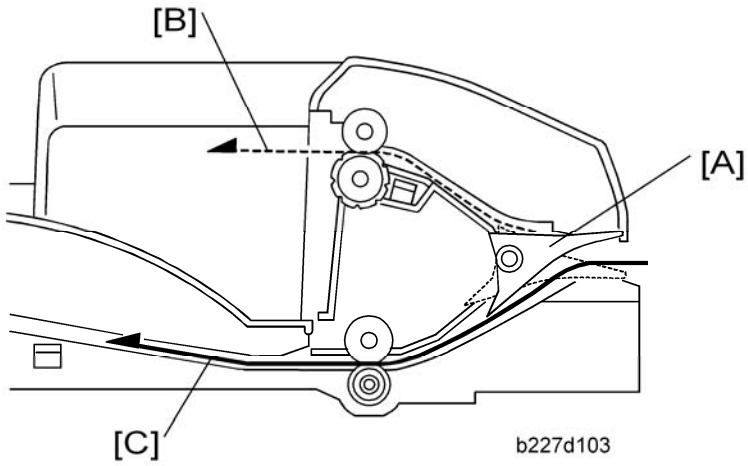
1. Left Guide Switch
2. Right Guide Switch
3. Junction Gate Solenoid
4. Tray Exit Sensor
5. Bridge Unit Control Board
6. Bridge Unit Drive Motor
7. Relay Sensor

http://www.manuals4you.com

2.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
Motors			
M1	Drive Motor	Drives the bridge unit.	6
Sensors			
S1	Tray Exit	Checks for misfeeds.	4
S2	Relay	Checks for misfeeds.	7
Switches			
SW2	Right Guide	Detects when the right guide is opened.	2
SW3	Left Guide	Detects when the left guide is opened.	1
Solenoids			
SOL1	Junction Gate	Moves the junction gate to direct the paper to the upper tray (on top of the bridge unit) or to the finisher.	3
PCBs			
PCB1	Bridge Unit Control Board	Controls the bridge unit.	5

2.5 JUNCTION GATE MECHANISM



The junction gate [A] directs any paper reaching the bridge unit to either the upper tray (on top of the bridge unit) or to the finisher, depending on which has been selected.

If the junction gate solenoid has been activated, the junction gate [A] points downward and directs the paper to the upper tray [B] (dotted line path in illustration). When the solenoid is off, the junction gate points upward and the paper is fed out to the finisher [C] by the transport and left exit rollers (solid line).

http://www.manuals4you.com

Internal Shift Tray SH3040

(D388)

D388 INTERNAL SHIFT TRAY SH3040		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

Internal Shift Tray SH3040 (D388)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 1
1.1 TRAY COVER 1
– When Attaching the Tray Cover – 1
1.2 TRAY MOTOR AND HALF TURN SENSOR BOARD 2

http://www.manuals4you.com

Read This First

Safety and Symbols

Replacement Procedure Safety

⚠CAUTION

- Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the replacement procedures in this manual.

Symbols Used in this Manual

This manual uses the following symbols.

☛: See or Refer to

: Screws

: Connector

: Clip ring

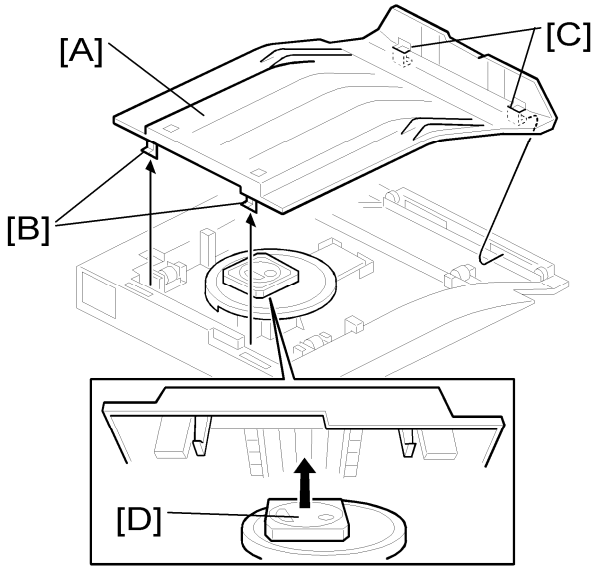
: Clamp

: E-ring

http://www.manuals4you.com

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

1.1 TRAY COVER



1. Remove the tray cover [A] by pressing on the two pawls [B] on the left side of the cover.

– When Attaching the Tray Cover –

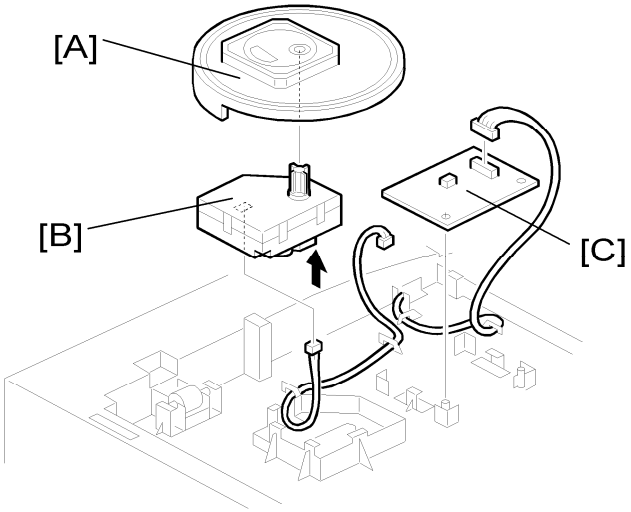
Note

- The right side of the tray cover should be attached first.

1. Fit the pawls [C] on the shift tray.
2. Align the square [D] so that it fits into the groove in the underside of the tray cover and does not interfere with the attachment of the cover.
3. Complete the attachment by inserting the left side pawls [B] into place.

http://www.manuals4you.com

1.2 TRAY MOTOR AND HALF TURN SENSOR BOARD



1. Top cover (☛ p.1 "Tray Cover")
2. Slip disc [A]
3. Tray motor [B] (☞ x 1)
4. Half turn sensor board [C] (☞ x 1).

Fax Option Type C5000

(D393)

D393 FAX OPTION TYPE C5000		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
159	02/02/2009	Service Ram Address
158 ~ 160	12/11/2009	Service Ram Address
158 ~ 160	05/14/2009	Service Ram Addresses

http://www.manuals4you.com

Fax Option Type C5000 (D393)

Table of Contents

1. INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 1

1.1 FAX UNIT (D393) 1

1.1.1 COMPONENT CHECK 1

1.1.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 3

1.2 FAX UNIT OPTIONS 9

1.2.1 MEMORY UNIT (G578) 9

1.2.2 HANDSET (B433) 9

For D023/D025 9

For D027/ D029 11

1.3 G3 INTERFACE UNIT (D393) 14

1.3.1 COMPONENT CHECK 14

1.3.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 16

For Installing the single G3 Board 16

For Installing the Double G3 Boards 19

2. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 22

2.1 FCU 22

3. TROUBLESHOOTING 23

3.1 ERROR CODES 23

3.2 IFAX TROUBLESHOOTING 44

3.3 IP-FAX TROUBLESHOOTING 47

3.3.1 IP-FAX TRANSMISSION 47

Cannot send by IP Address/Host Name 47

Cannot send via VoIP Gateway 48

Cannot send by Alias Fax number. 49

3.3.2 IP-FAX RECEPTION 51

Cannot receive via IP Address/Host Name. 51

Cannot receive by VoIP Gateway 51

http://www.manuals4you.com

Cannot receive by Alias Fax number 52

4. SERVICE TABLE 55

4.1 BEFOREHAND 55
4.2 SERVICE TABLES 56
4.2.1 SP1-XXX (BIT SWITCHES) 56
4.2.2 SP2-XXX (RAM DATA) 58
4.2.3 SP3-XXX (TEL LINE SETTINGS) 59
4.2.4 SP4-XXX (ROM VERSIONS) 61
4.2.5 SP5-XXX (INITIALIZING) 62
4.2.6 SP6-XXX (REPORTS) 63
4.2.7 SP7-XXX (TEST MODES) 66
4.3 BIT SWITCHES 68
4.3.1 SYSTEM SWITCHES 68
4.3.2 I-FAX SWITCHES 81
4.3.3 PRINTER SWITCHES 88
4.3.4 COMMUNICATION SWITCHES 95
4.3.5 G3 SWITCHES 104
4.3.6 G3-2/3 SWITCHES 114
4.3.7 IP FAX SWITCHES 123
4.4 NCU PARAMETERS 131
4.5 DEDICATED TRANSMISSION PARAMETERS 147
4.5.1 PROGRAMMING PROCEDURE 147
4.5.2 PARAMETERS 147
Fax Parameters 147
E-mail Parameters 151
4.6 SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES 155

5. SPECIFICATIONS 165

5.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS 165
5.1.1 FCU 165
5.1.2 CAPABILITIES OF PROGRAMMABLE ITEMS 167
5.2 IFAX SPECIFICATIONS 169
5.3 IP-FAX SPECIFICATIONS 171
5.4 FAX UNIT CONFIGURATION 172

Read This First

Important Safety Notices

⚠WARNING

- Never install telephone wiring during a lightning storm.
- Never install telephone jacks in wet locations unless the jack is specifically designed for wet locations.
- Never touch uninsulated telephone wires or terminals unless the telephone line has been disconnected at the network interface.
- Use caution when installing or modifying telephone lines.
- Avoid using a telephone (other than a cordless type) during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Do not use a telephone or cellular phone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.

⚠CAUTION

- Before installing the fax unit, switch off the main switch, and disconnect the power cord.
- The fax unit contains a lithium battery. The danger of explosion exists if a battery of this type is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or an equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Discard batteries in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

Note

- **Note for Australia**:
- Unit must be connected to Telecommunication Network through a line cord that meets the requirements of ACA Technical Standard TS008.

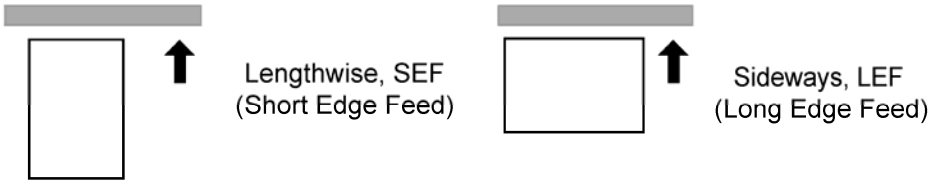
http://www.manuals4you.com

Symbols and Abbreviations

Conventions Used in this Manual

This manual uses several symbols.

Symbol	What it means
☛	Refer to section number
	Screw
	Connector
	E-ring
	Clip ring
	Clamp



Cautions, Notes, etc.

The following headings provide special information:

⚠WARNING

- Failure to obey warning information could result in serious injury or death.

⚠CAUTION

- Obey these guidelines to ensure safe operation and prevent minor injuries.

Important

- Obey these guidelines to avoid problems such as misfeeds, damage to originals, loss of valuable data and to prevent damage to the machine.
- Always obey these guidelines to avoid serious problems such as misfeeds, damage to originals, loss of valuable data and to prevent damage to the machine. bold is added for emphasis.

Note

- This document provides tips and advice about how to best service the machine.

http://www.manuals4you.com

1. INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

1.1 FAX UNIT (D393)

1.1.1 COMPONENT CHECK

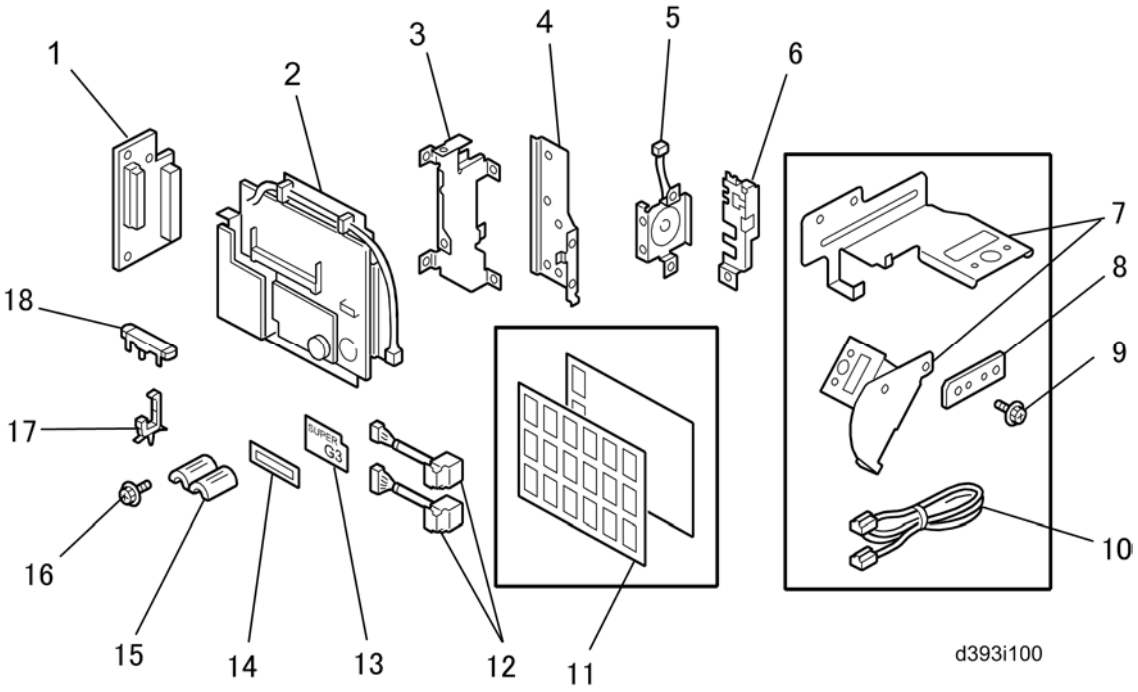
Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	FCU I/F Board	1
2	FCU	1
3	FCU I/F Board Bracket	1
4	Support Bracket	1
5	Speaker	1
6	Modular Bracket	1
7	Handset Bracket (NA only)	2
8	Handset Support Bracket (NA only)	1
9	Screw: M3x6 (NA only)	2
10	Telephone Cable (NA only)	1
11	Multi-Language Decals	1 (Excluding NA)/ 2 (EU)
12	Harness: TEL and LINE	2
13	G3 Decal	1
14	Serial Number Decal	1
15	FCC Decal (NA only)	1
16	Ferrite Core	1 (EU) or 2 (NA)

http://www.manuals4you.com

Fax Unit (D393)

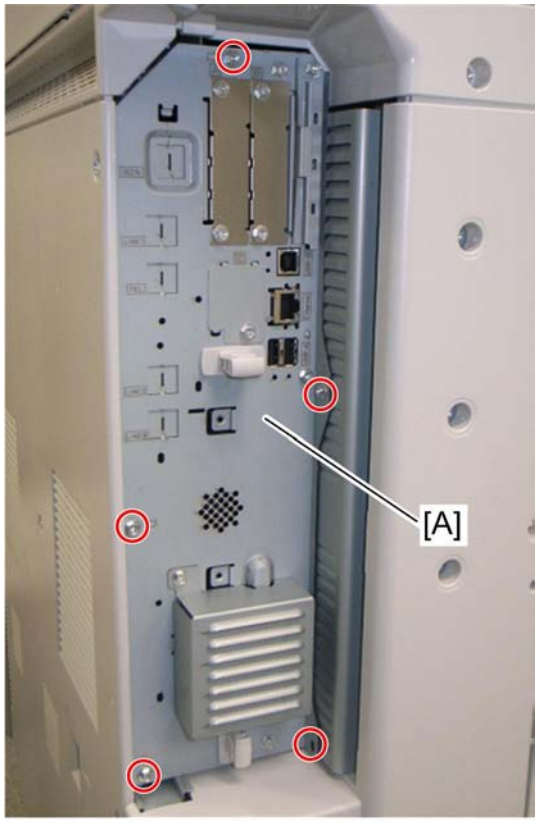
No.	Description	Q'ty
17	Screw: M3x6	13
18	Clamp	3
19	Fax Key top	2
20	EMC Address Decal	1 (EU Only)
21	Quick Reference Fax Guide	1 (Excluding EU)



1.1.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

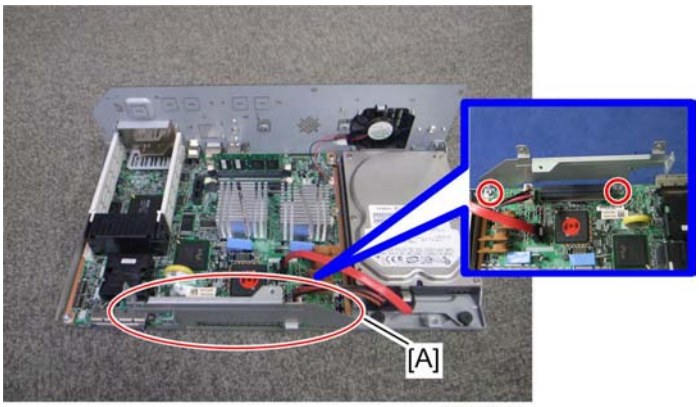
⚠CAUTION

- **Before installing this fax unit:**
  - Print out all data in the printer buffer.
  - Turn off the main power switch and disconnect the power cord and the network cable.



D393i075

1. Remove the controller board [A] (🔩 x 5).

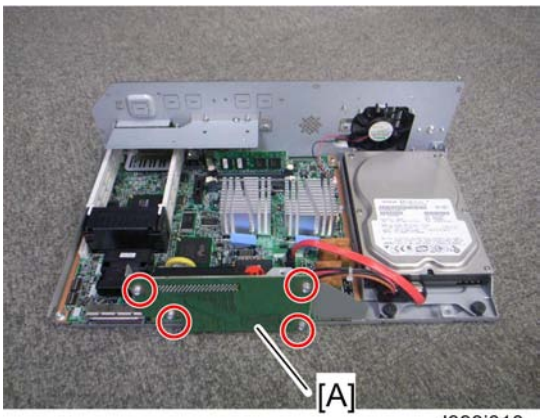


d393i008

2. Attach the FCU I/F board bracket [A] to the controller board (🔩 x 2).

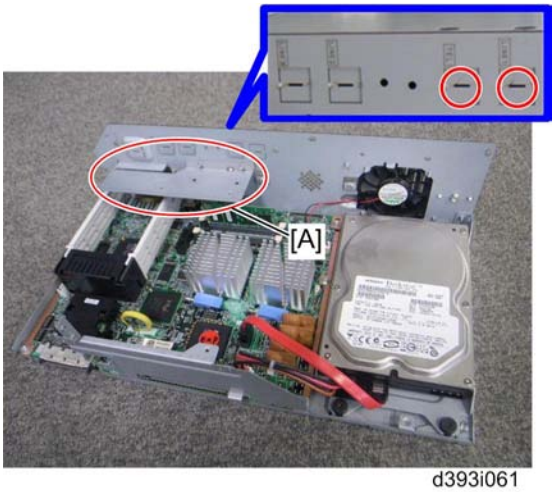
http://www.manuals4you.com

Fax Unit (D393)



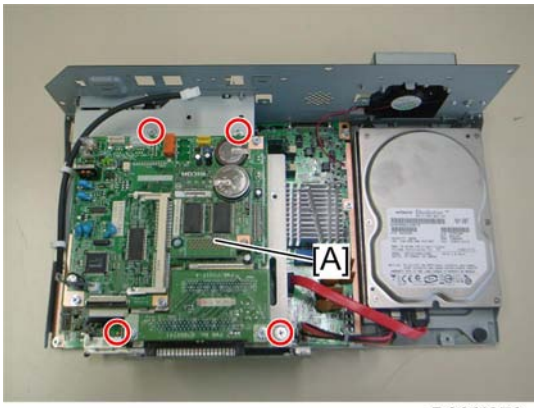
d393i010

3. Attach the FCU I/F board [A] to the FCU I/F board bracket (🔩 x 4).



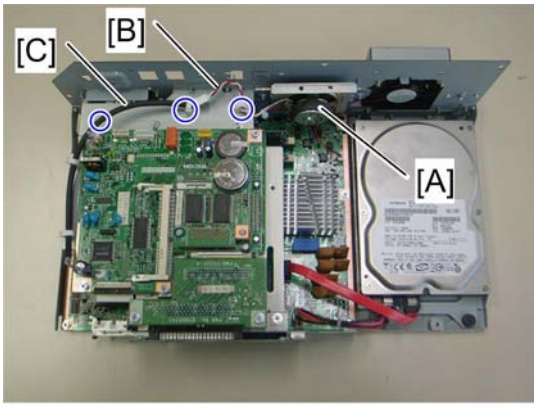
d393i061

4. Attach the support bracket [A] to the controller box (🔩 x 2).
5. Remove the "TEL" and "LINE1" covers with a screw driver.



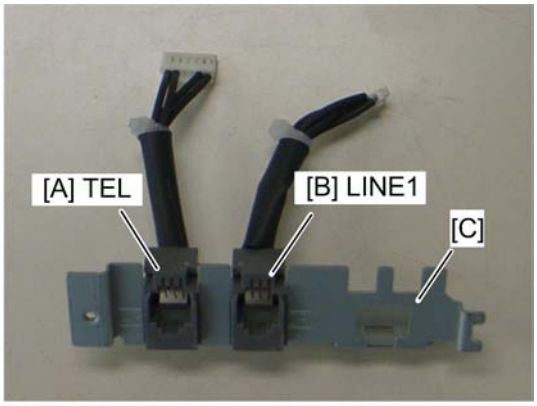
D393i076

6. Install the FCU [A] to the controller board (🔩 x 4).



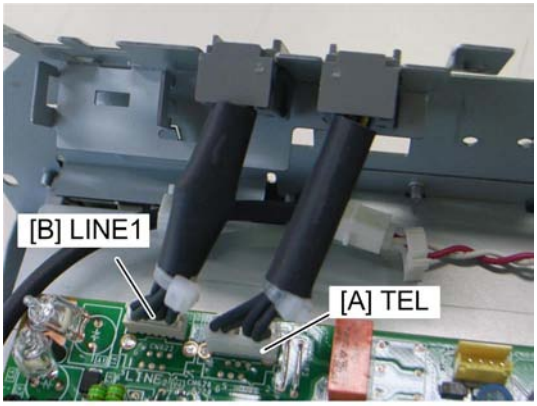
d393i077

7. Install the speaker [A] to the controller box (x 2) and connect the speaker cable [B] with the speaker relay cable [C] (x 3).



d393i094

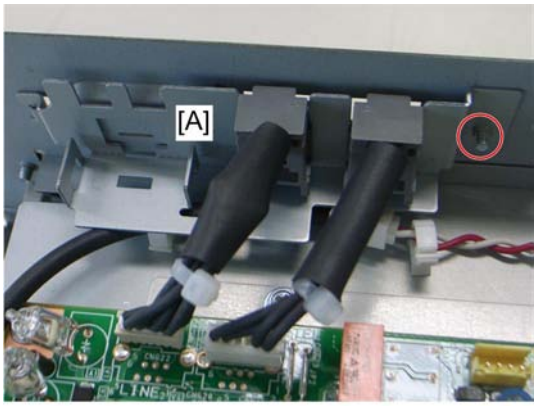
8. Connect the two modular harnesses [A] [B] to the modular bracket [C].



d393i095

9. Connect the two modular harnesses [A] [B] to the FCU.

http://www.manuals4you.com



d393i096

10. Attach the modular bracket [A] to the controller box (x 1).



d393i068

11. Switch the MBU battery jumper switch [A] to "ON" position.

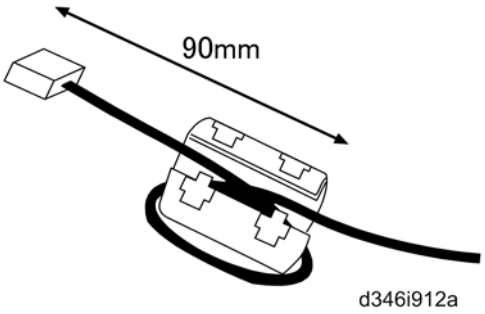
Note

- Make sure that the MBU board is firmly connected to the FCU.

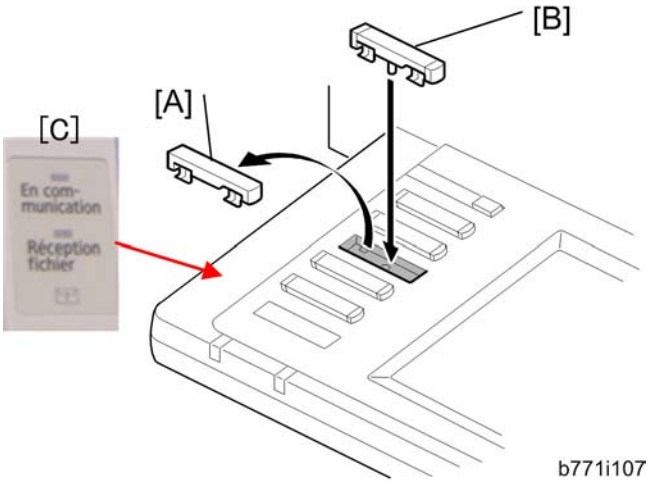
12. Reinstall the controller box.
13. Attach the handset support bracket and handset bracket to the copier, and then connect the handset cord with the ferrite core to the "TEL" jack if you install the handset to the machine.

Note

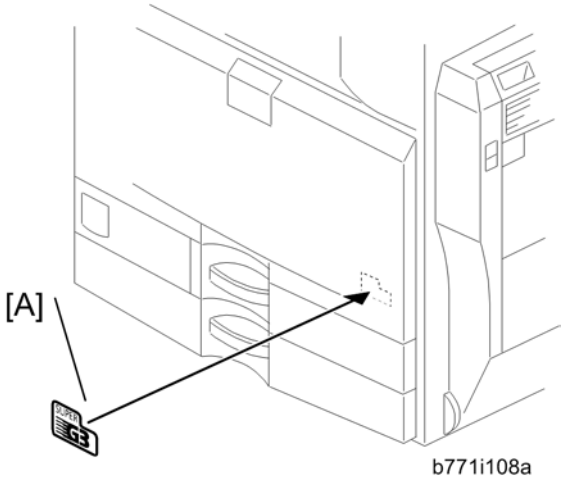
- For details, refer to the "Hand Set Installation" in the Service Manual for the Fax Unit (D393).



14. Attach the ferrite core to the telephone cord.
15. Connect the telephone cord to the "LINE 1" jack.



16. Replace bottom from the third key-slot cover [A] to the fax key [B].
17. Attach the Multi-Language Decals [C] (EU only).



18. Attach the decal [A] (SUPER G3) to the front door.
19. Attach the serial number decal under the copier serial number decal on the rear cover of the machine.
20. Attach FCC decal on the rear cover of the machine (NA only).

http://www.manuals4you.com

21. Put the power plug into the outlet and turn on the main power of the machine.

Note

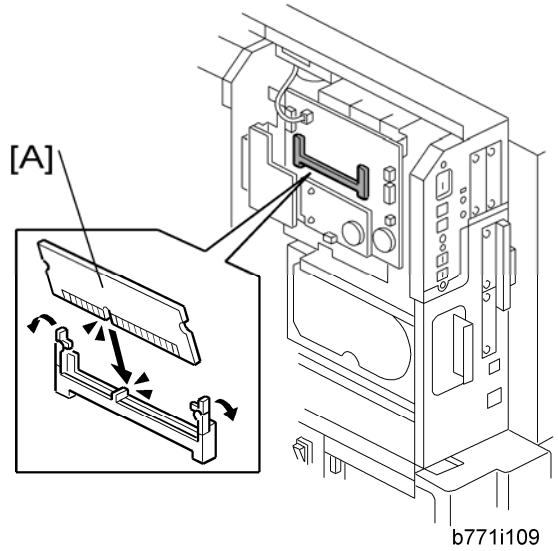
- Make sure that the outlet is grounded.
- "SRAM formatted" shows on the operation panel after you have turned the main switch on. Turn the main switch off and on again for normal use.

22. Make sure that the date and time are correctly set.

1.2 FAX UNIT OPTIONS

1.2.1 MEMORY UNIT (G578)

1. Rear cover (☛ "Installation Procedure" in the "Fax Unit (D393)")
2. Controller box left cover (☛ "Installation Procedure" in the "Fax Unit (D393)")



3. Install the memory option [A] on the FCU.
4. Re-aasemble the machine

1.2.2 HANDSET (B433)

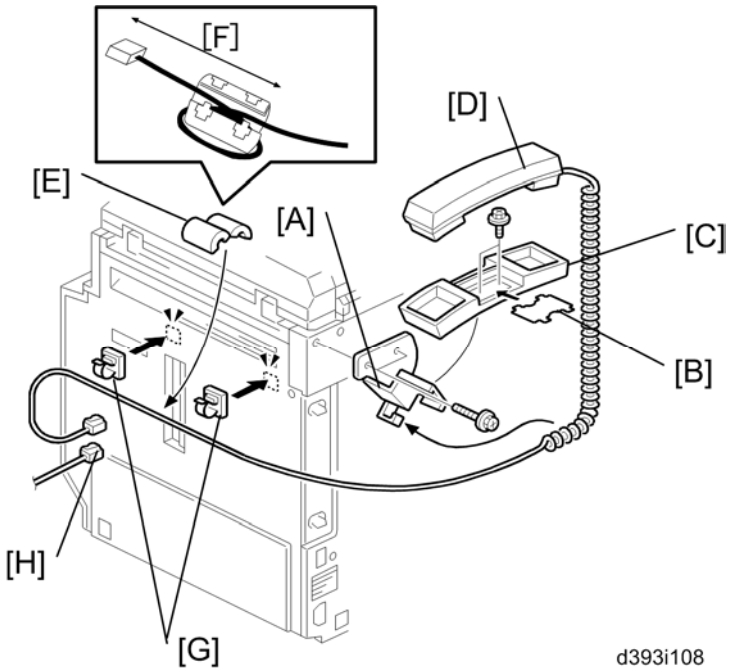
For D023/D025

Note

- The optional handset is available for the U.S. version only.

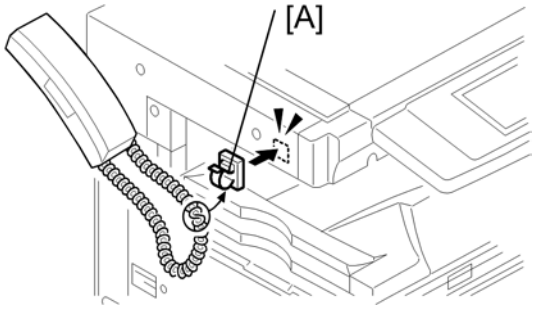
For the copier without any finisher

http://www.manuals4you.com



1. Make two holes in the scanner left cover.
2. Attach the bracket [A] enclosed with the fax unit (🔩 x 2: M3 x 12) as shown.
3. Remove the label [B] from the handset cradle [C]. Attach the cradle [C] to the bracket [A] (🔩 x 2: M3 x 8), and then replace the label [B].
4. Install the handset [D] on the cradle [C].
5. Attach the ferrite core [E] to the cable. The length [F] must be 90 mm.
6. Attach the two clamps [G] as shown.
7. Line the cable [H] as shown (🖒 x 2).
8. Connect the cable [H] to the "TEL" jack at the rear of the machine.

For the copier with a finisher

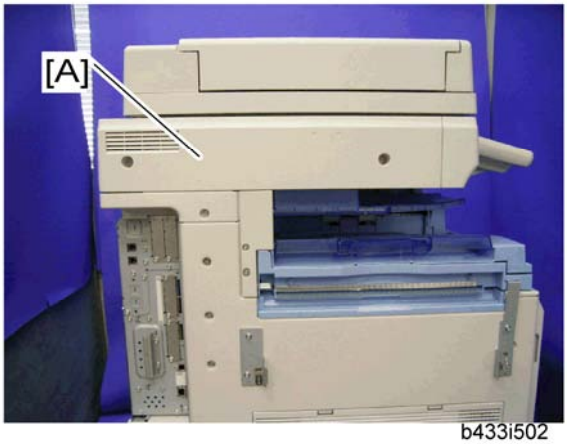


1. Do the handset installation procedure "for the copier without any finisher".
2. Attach the clamp [A] to the scanner left cover.
3. Clamp the handset cord with clamp [A].

For D027/ D029

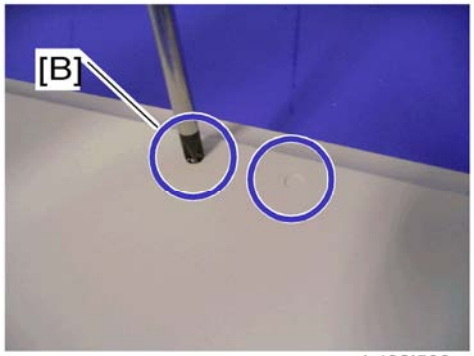
Note

- The optional handset is available for the U.S. version only.



b433i502

1. Remove the scanner left cover [A] (🔩 x 2).

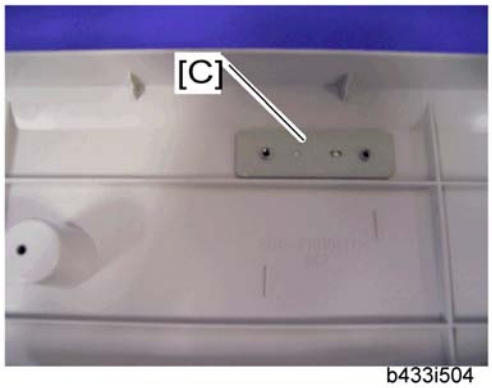


b433i503

2. Make two holes in the scanner left cover.

Note

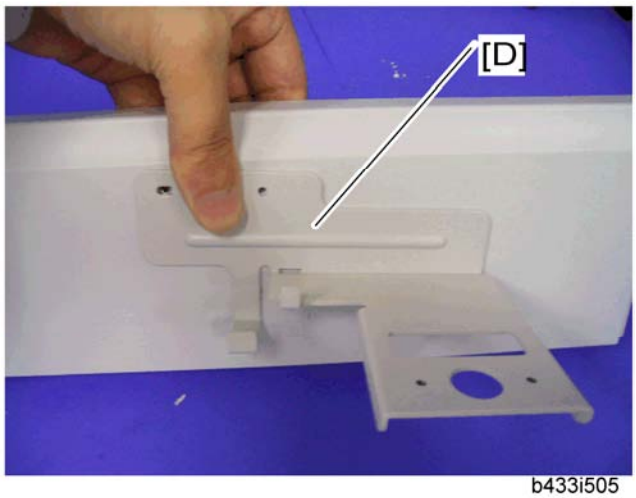
- Drill a hole from the outside of the cover with a screwdriver.



b433i504

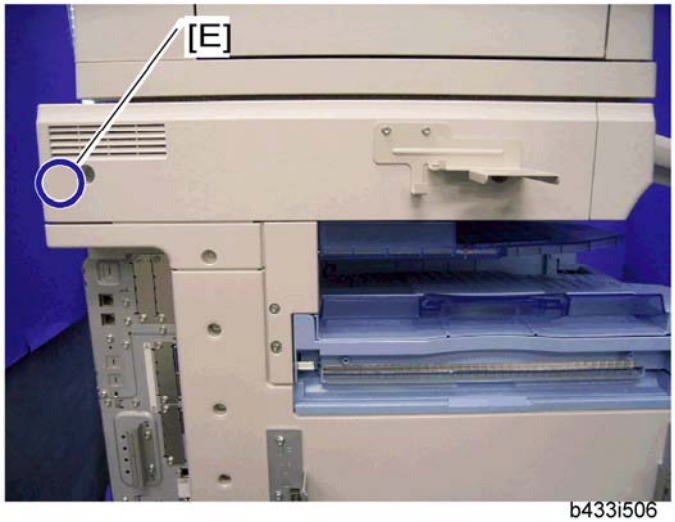
3. Attach the hand set support bracket [C] inside the scanner left cover.

http://www.manuals4you.com



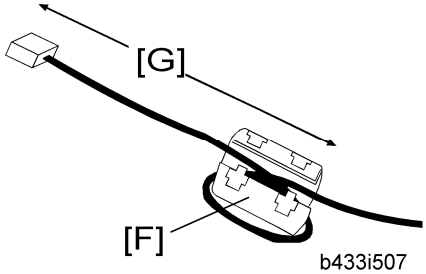
b433i505

4. Hold the handset bracket [D] and handset support bracket (set inside the scanner left cover).
5. Secure the handset bracket [D] (🔩 x 2).



b433i506

6. Install the scanner left cover on the machine.
7. Attach the clamp to the location [E].
8. Set the handset on the handset bracket.



b433i507

9. Put the ferrite core [F] on the handset cord as shown. The length [G] must be 90 mm.

10. Clamp the hand set cord.
11. Connect the handset cable to the "TEL" jack at the rear of the machine.

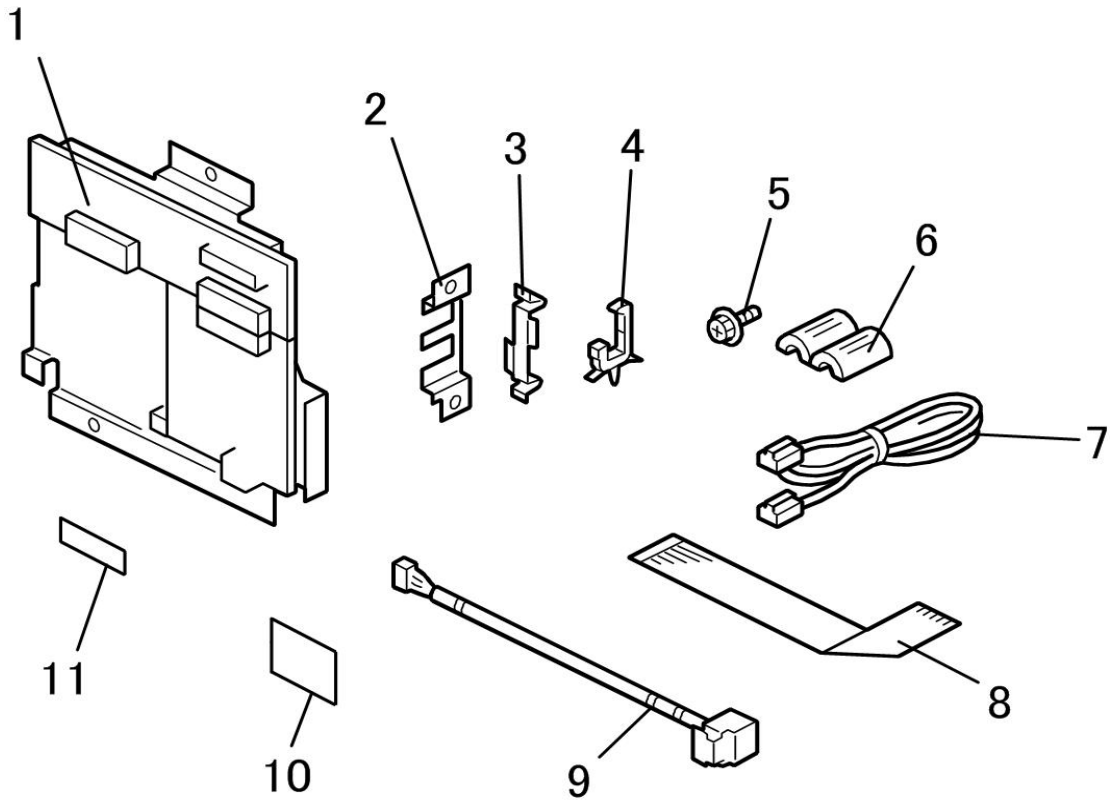
http://www.manuals4you.com

1.3 G3 INTERFACE UNIT (D393)

1.3.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	SG3 Interface Unit	1
2	Modular Bracket for SG3	1
3	Clamp	2
4	Clamp	4
5	Screw: M3x6	6
6	Ferrite Core	1
7	Telephone Cable (NA only)	1
8	Flat Cable	1
9	Harness	1
10	EMC Address Decal (EU only)	1
11	FCC Decal (NA only)	1



http://www.manuals4you.com

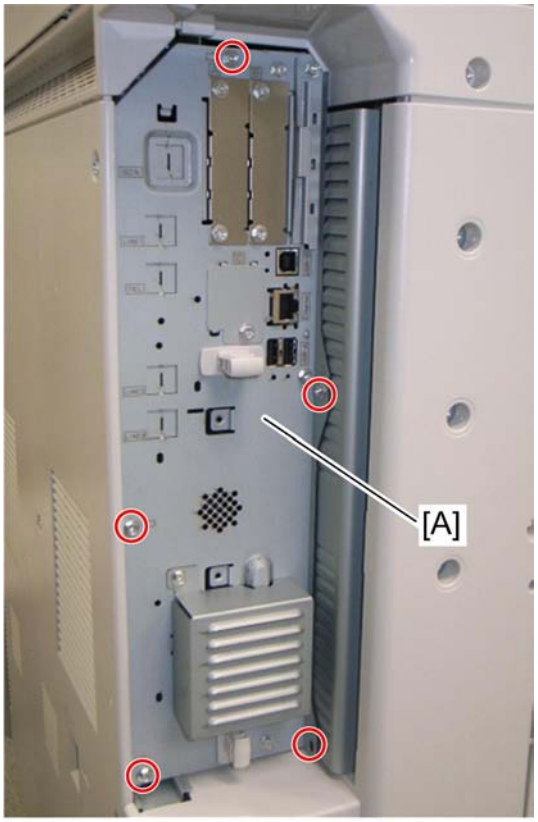
1.3.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

- **Before installing this optional unit:**
- Print out all data in the printer buffer.
- Turn off the main switch and disconnect the power cord and the network cable.

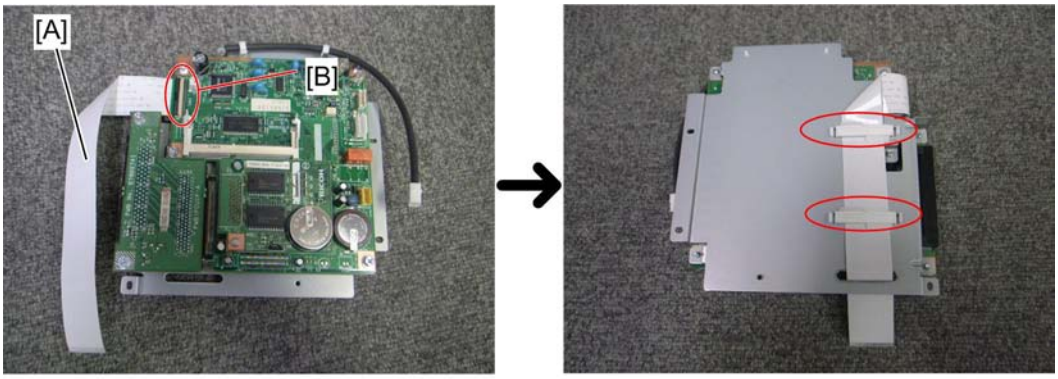
You can add two more SG3 boards to this model. Follow the procedures for adding the single SG3 board installation or double SG3 boards installation as a customer needs.

For Installing the single G3 Board



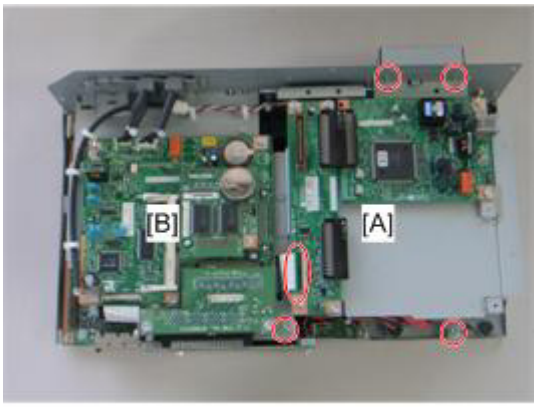
D393i075

1. Remove the controller box [A] (🔩 x 5).



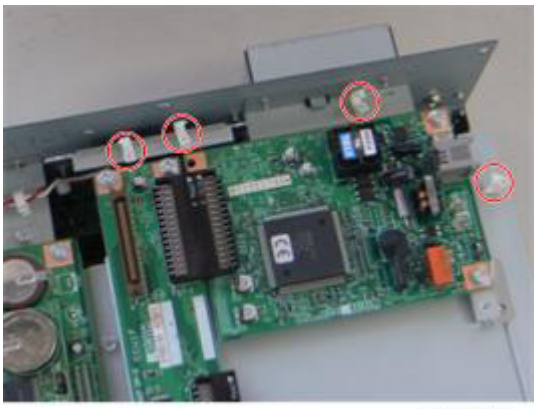
d393i011 d393i012

2. Attach one end (short length) of the flat cable [A] to the connector [B] of the FCU board.
3. Hold the flat cable with two clamps and pass the other end of the flat cable through the cutout as shown above.



d393i081

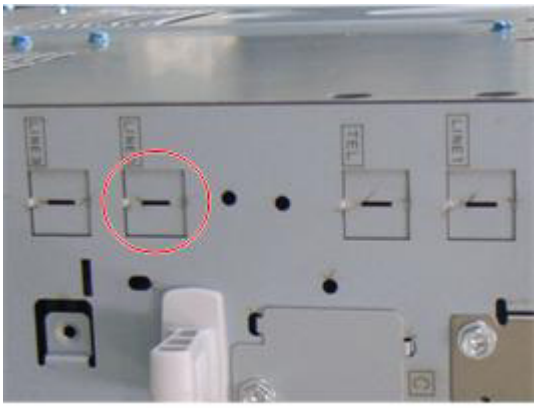
4. Connect the SG3 interface unit [A] to the controller board [B] with the flat cable (x 4).



d393i048

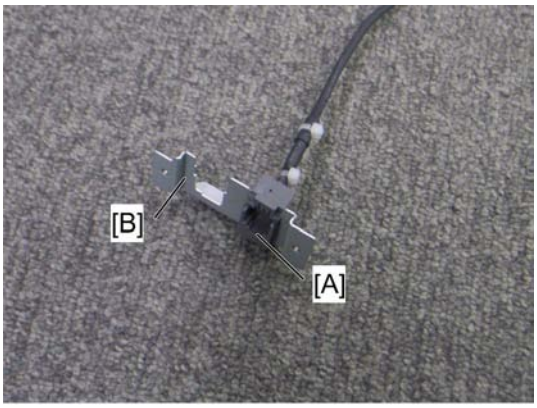
5. Attach four clamps to the brackets.

http://www.manuals4you.com



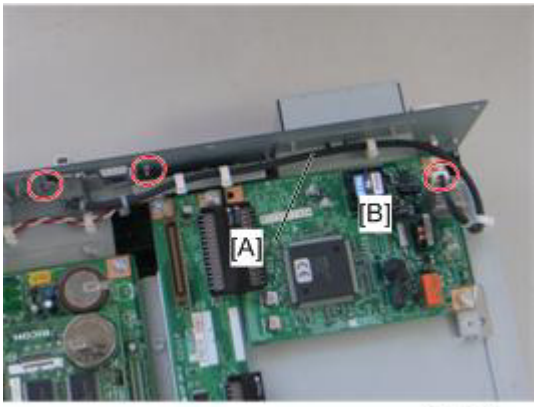
d393i088C

6. Remove the "LINE2" cover with a screwdriver.



d393i047

7. Attach the socket of harness [A] (LINE2) to the modular bracket [B] for SG3.



d393i091

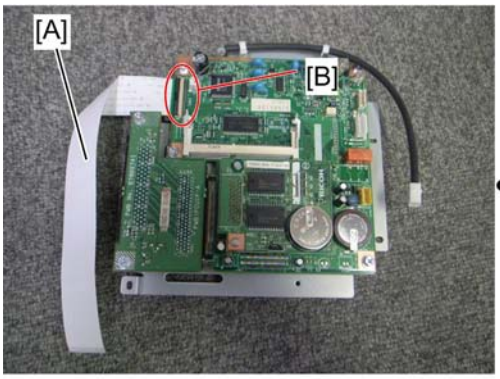
8. Connect the harness [A] to the SG3 interface unit [B] (x 4).
9. Attach the modular bracket for SG3 to the controller box (x 2).
10. Reinstall the controller box.

For Installing the Double G3 Boards



d393i090

1. Remove one of SG3 boards from the SG3 interface units and then attach the SG3 board to the other SG3 interface unit (🔩 x 2).
2. Remove the controller box.



d393i011

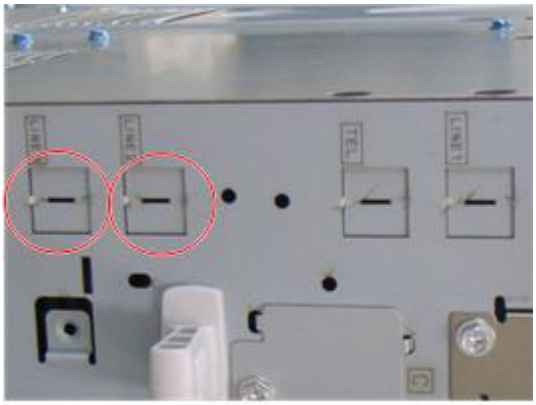


d393i012

3. Attach one end (short length) of the flat cable [A] to the connector [B] of the FCU board.
4. Hold the flat cable with two clamps and pass the other end of the flat cable through the cutout as shown above.

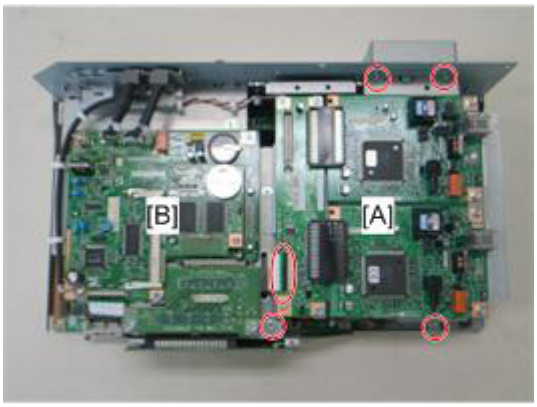
http://www.manuals4you.com

G3 Interface Unit (D393)



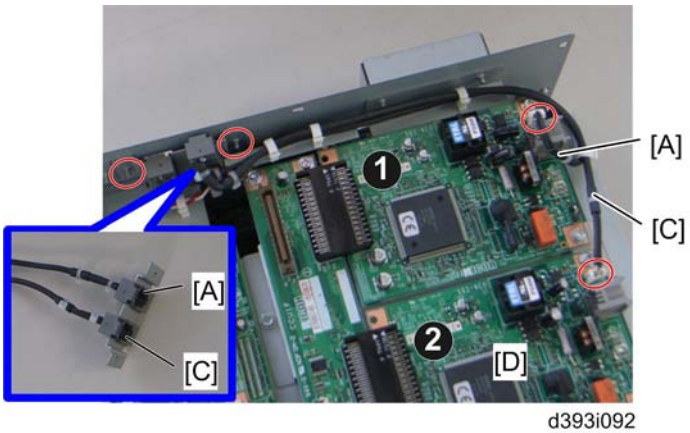
d393i088D

5. Remove the "LINE2" cover and "LINE3" cover with a screwdriver.



d393i081

6. Connect the SG3 interface unit [A] to the controller board [B] with the flat cable (🔩 x 4).



d393i092

7. Attach the socket of harness [A] (LINE2) and the socket of harness [C] (LINE3) to the modular bracket for SG3.
8. Connect the harness [A] (LINE2) to the first SG3 board ❶ and the harness [C] (LINE3) to the second SG3 board ❷ (🖧 x 4).
9. Attach the modular bracket for SG3 to the controller box (🔩 x 2).

10. Reinstall the controller box.
11. Attach the ferrite core to the telephone cord for single SG3 board installation, or the two ferrite cores to the telephone cords for double-SG3 board installation.
12. Connect the telephone cord to the "LINE 2" jack for single SG3 board installation, or connect the telephone cords to the "LINE2" and "LINE3" jacks for double-SG3 board installation.
13. Connect the power plug to a power outlet and turn on the main power switch.
14. Enter the service mode. Set bit 1 of communication switch 16 to "1" (SP1-104-023).
15. Set bit 3 of communication switch 16 to "1" (SP1-104-023) if you have installed two SG3 boards.
16. Exit the service mode.
17. Turn the main power switch off and on.
18. Print out the system parameter list. Then check that "G3" shows as an option.
19. Set up and program the items required for PSTN-2 communications.

http://www.manuals4you.com

2. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

2.1 FCU

1. When you replace the FCU board, remove the MBU board from the old FCU board and install it on the new FCU board.
2. Set the correct date and time with the User Tools: User Tools > System Settings > Timer Setting > Set Date/Time.

Note

- Do not turn off the battery switch (SW1).
- Do SP6101 to print the system parameters, and check the settings.

3. TROUBLESHOOTING

3.1 ERROR CODES

If an error code occurs, retry the communication. If the same problem occurs, try to fix the problem as suggested below. Note that some error codes appear only in the error code display and on the service report.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
0-00	DIS/NSF not detected within 40 s of Start being pressed	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ The machine at the other end may be incompatible. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ Check for DIS/NSF with an oscilloscope. ▪ If the rx signal is weak, there may be a bad line.
0-01	DCN received unexpectedly	▪ The other party is out of paper or has a jammed printer. ▪ The other party pressed Stop during communication.
0-03	Incompatible modem at the other end	The other terminal is incompatible.
0-04	CFR or FTT not received after modem training	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Try changing the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ The other terminal may be faulty; try sending to another machine. ▪ If the rx signal is weak or defective, there may be a bad line. **Cross reference** Tx level - NCU Parameter 01 (PSTN)

http://www.manuals4you.com

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		Cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN) Dedicated Tx parameters in Service Program Mode
0-05	Modem training fails even G3 shifts down to 2400 bps.	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ Check for line problems. **Cross reference** See error code 0-04.
0-06	The other terminal did not reply to DCS	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ The other end may be defective or incompatible; try sending to another machine. ▪ Check for line problems. **Cross reference** See error code 0-04.
0-07	No post-message response from the other end after a page was sent	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ The other end may have jammed or run out of paper. ▪ The other end user may have disconnected the call. ▪ Check for a bad line. ▪ The other end may be defective; try sending to another machine.
0-08	The other end sent RTN or PIN after receiving a page, because there were too many errors	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ The other end may have jammed, or run out of paper or memory space.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. ▪ The other end may have a defective modem/FCU; try sending to another machine. ▪ Check for line problems and noise. **Cross reference** ▪ Tx level - NCU Parameter 01 (PSTN) ▪ Cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN) ▪ Dedicated Tx parameters in Service Program Mode
0-14	Non-standard post message response code received	▪ Incompatible or defective remote terminal; try sending to another machine. ▪ Noisy line: resend. ▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. ▪ Replace the FCU. **Cross reference** See error code 0-08.
0-15	The other terminal is not capable of specific functions.	The other terminal is not capable of accepting the following functions, or the other terminal's memory is full. ▪ Confidential rx ▪ Transfer function ▪ SEP/SUB/PWD/SID
0-16	CFR or FTT not detected after modem training in confidential or transfer mode	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. ▪ The other end may have disconnected, or it may be defective; try calling another machine. ▪ If the rx signal level is too low, there may be a line problem.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		Cross reference See error code 0-08.
0-20	Facsimile data not received within 6 s of retraining	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ Check for line problems. ▪ Try calling another fax machine. ▪ Try adjusting the reconstruction time for the first line and/or rx cable equalizer setting. **Cross reference** Reconstruction time - G3 Switch 0A, bit 6 Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)
0-21	EOL signal (end-of-line) from the other end not received within 5 s of the previous EOL signal	▪ Check the connections between the FCU and line. ▪ Check for line noise or other line problems. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ The remote machine may be defective or may have disconnected. **Cross reference** Maximum interval between EOLs and between ECM frames - G3 Bit Switch 0A, bit 4
0-22	The signal from the other end was interrupted for more than the acceptable modem carrier drop time (default: 200 ms)	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ Defective remote terminal. ▪ Check for line noise or other line problems. ▪ Try adjusting the acceptable modem carrier drop time. **Cross reference** Acceptable modem carrier drop time - G3 Switch 0A, bits 0 and 1
0-23	Too many errors during reception	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ Defective remote terminal

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		▪ Check for line noise or other line problems. ▪ Try asking the other end to adjust their tx level. ▪ Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer setting and/or rx error criteria. **Cross reference** Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN) Rx error criteria - Communication Switch 02, bits 0 and 1
0-30	The other terminal did not reply to NSS(A) in AI short protocol mode	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. ▪ The other terminal may not be compatible. **Cross reference** Dedicated tx parameters - Section 4
0-32	The other terminal sent a DCS, which contained functions that the receiving machine cannot handle.	▪ Check the protocol dump list. ▪ Ask the other party to contact the manufacturer.
0-33	The data reception (not ECM) is not completed within 10 minutes.	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ The other terminal may have a defective modem/FCU.
0-52	Polarity changed during communication	▪ Check the line connection. Retry communication.
0-55	FCU does not detect the SG3.	▪ FCU firmware or board defective. ▪ SG3 firmware or board defective.
0-56	The stored message data exceeds the capacity of the mailbox in the SG3.	▪ SG3 firmware or board defective.
0-70	The communication mode specified in CM/JM was	▪ The other terminal did not have a compatible communication mode (e.g., the other terminal

http://www.manuals4you.com

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
	not available (V.8 calling and called terminal)	was a V.34 data modem and not a fax modem.) ▪ A polling tx file was not ready at the other terminal when polling rx was initiated from the calling terminal.
0-74	The calling terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect ANSam after sending CI.	▪ The calling terminal could not detect ANSam due to noise, etc. ▪ ANSam was too short to detect. ▪ Check the line connection and condition. ▪ Try making a call to another V.8/V.34 fax.
0-75	The called terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a CM in response to ANSam (ANSam timeout).	▪ The terminal could not detect ANSam. ▪ Check the line connection and condition. ▪ Try receiving a call from another V.8/V.34 fax.
0-76	The calling terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a JM in response to CM (CM timeout).	▪ The called terminal could not detect a CM due to noise, etc. ▪ Check the line connection and condition. ▪ Try making a call to another V.8/V.34 fax.
0-77	The called terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a CJ in response to JM (JM timeout).	▪ The calling terminal could not detect a JM due to noise, etc. ▪ A network that has narrow bandwidth cannot pass JM to the other end. ▪ Check the line connection and condition. ▪ Try receiving a call from another V.8/V.34 fax.
0-79	The called terminal detected CI while waiting for a V.21 signal.	▪ Check for line noise or other line problems. ▪ If this error occurs, the called terminal falls back to T.30 mode.
0-80	The line was disconnected due to a timeout in V.34	▪ The guard timer expired while starting these phases. Serious noise, narrow bandwidth, or

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
	phase 2 – line probing.	low signal level can cause these errors. If these errors happen at the transmitting terminal: ▪ Try making a call at a later time. ▪ Try using V.17 or a slower modem using dedicated tx parameters. ▪ Try increasing the tx level. ▪ Try adjusting the tx cable equalizer setting. If these errors happen at the receiving terminal: ▪ Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer setting. ▪ Try increasing the tx level. ▪ Try using V.17 or a slower modem if the same error is frequent when receiving from multiple senders.
0-81	The line was disconnected due to a timeout in V.34 phase 3 – equalizer training.	
0-82	The line was disconnected due to a timeout in the V.34 phase 4 – control channel start-up.	
0-83	The line was disconnected due to a timeout in the V.34 control channel restart sequence.	
0-84	The line was disconnected due to abnormal signaling in V.34 phase 4 – control channel start-up.	▪ The signal did not stop within 10 s. ▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on. ▪ If the same error is frequent, replace the FCU.
0-85	The line was disconnected due to abnormal signaling in V.34 control channel restart.	▪ The signal did not stop within 10 s. ▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on. ▪ If the same error is frequent, replace the FCU.
0-86	The line was disconnected because the other terminal requested a data rate using MPh that was not available in the currently selected symbol rate.	▪ The other terminal was incompatible. ▪ Ask the other party to contact the manufacturer.
0-87	The control channel started after an unsuccessful primary channel.	▪ The receiving terminal restarted the control channel because data reception in the primary channel was not successful.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		▪ This does not result in an error communication.
0-88	The line was disconnected because PPR was transmitted/received 9 (default) times within the same ECM frame.	▪ Try using a lower data rate at the start. ▪ Try adjusting the cable equalizer setting.
2-11	Only one V.21 connection flag was received	▪ Replace the FCU.
2-12	Modem clock irregularity	▪ Replace the FCU.
2-13	Modem initialization error	▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on. ▪ Update the modem ROM. ▪ Replace the FCU.
2-23	JBIG compression or reconstruction error	▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on.
2-24	JBIG ASIC error	▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on.
2-25	JBIG data reconstruction error (BIH error)	▪ JBIG data error ▪ Check the sender's JBIG function. ▪ Update the MBU ROM.
2-26	JBIG data reconstruction error (Float marker error)	
2-27	JBIG data reconstruction error (End marker error)	
2-28	JBIG data reconstruction error (Timeout)	
2-29	JBIG trailing edge maker error	▪ FCU defective ▪ Check the destination device.
2-50	The machine resets itself for a fatal FCU system	▪ If this is frequent, update the ROM, or replace the FCU.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
	error	
2-51	The machine resets itself because of a fatal communication error	▪ If this is frequent, update the ROM, or replace the FCU.
2-53	Snd msg() in the manual task is an error because the mailbox for the operation task is full.	▪ The user did the same operation many times, and this gave too much load to the machine.
4-01	Line current was cut	▪ Check the line connector. ▪ Check for line problems. ▪ Replace the FCU.
4-10	Communication failed because of an ID Code mismatch (Closed Network) or Tel. No./CSI mismatch (Protection against Wrong Connections)	▪ Get the ID Codes the same and/or the CSIs programmed correctly, then resend. ▪ The machine at the other end may be defective.
5-10	DCR timer expired	▪ Replace the FCU.
5-20	Storage impossible because of a lack of memory	▪ Temporary memory shortage. ▪ Test the SAF memory.
5-21	Memory overflow	
5-23	Print data error when printing a substitute rx or confidential rx message	▪ Test the SAF memory. ▪ Ask the other end to resend the message.
5-25	SAF file access error	▪ Replace an SD card or HDD. ▪ Replace the FCU.
6-00	G3 ECM - T1 time out	▪ Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
	during reception of facsimile data	▪ Replace the FCU.
6-01	G3 ECM - no V.21 signal was received	
6-02	G3 ECM - EOR was received	
6-04	G3 ECM - RTC not detected	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Check for a bad line or defective remote terminal. ▪ Replace the FCU.
6-05	G3 ECM - facsimile data frame not received within 18 s of CFR, but there was no line fail	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Check for a bad line or defective remote terminal. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer **Cross reference** ▪ Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)
6-06	G3 ECM - coding/decoding error	▪ Defective FCU. ▪ The other terminal may be defective.
6-08	G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL	▪ The other end pressed Stop during communication. ▪ The other terminal may be defective.
6-09	G3 ECM - ERR received	▪ Check for a noisy line. ▪ Adjust the tx levels of the communicating machines. ▪ See code 6-05.
6-10	G3 ECM - error frames still received at the other end after all communication attempts at 2400 bps	▪ Check for line noise. ▪ Adjust the tx level (use NCU parameter 01 or the dedicated tx parameter for that address). ▪ Check the line connection.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		▪ Defective remote terminal.
6-21	V.21 flag detected during high speed modem communication	▪ The other terminal may be defective or incompatible.
6-22	The machine resets the sequence because of an abnormal handshake in the V.34 control channel	▪ Check for line noise. ▪ If the same error occurs frequently, replace the FCU. ▪ Defective remote terminal.
6-99	V.21 signal not stopped within 6 s	▪ Replace the FCU.
13-17	SIP user name registration error	▪ Double registration of the SIP user name. ▪ Capacity for user-name registration in the SIP server is not sufficient.
13-18	SIP server access error	▪ Incorrect initial setting for the SIP server. ▪ Defective SIP server.
13-24	SIP authentication error	▪ Registered password in the device does not match the password in the SIP server.
13-25	Network I/F setting error	▪ IPV4 is not active in the active protocol setting. ▪ IP address of the device is not registered.
13-26	Network I/F setting error at power on	▪ Active protocol setting does not match the I/F setting for SIP server. ▪ IP address of the device is not registered.
13-27	IP address setting error	▪ IP address of the device is not registered.
14-00	SMTP Send Error	▪ Error occurred during sending to the SMTP server. Occurs for any error other than 14-01 to 16. For example, the mail address of the system administrator is not registered.
14-01	SMTP Connection Failed	▪ Failed to connect to the SMTP server (timeout)

http://www.manuals4you.com

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		because the server could not be found. ▪ The PC is not ready to transfer files. ▪ SMTP server not functioning correctly. ▪ The DNS IP address is not registered. ▪ Network not operating correctly. ▪ Destination folder selection not correct.
14-02	No Service by SMTP Service (421)	▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly, or the destination for direct SMTP sending is not correct. ▪ Contact the system administrator and check that the SMTP server has the correct settings and operates correctly. ▪ Contact the system administrator for direct SMTP sending and check the sending destination.
14-03	Access to SMTP Server Denied (450)	▪ Failed to access the SMTP server because the access is denied. ▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly. Contact the system administrator to determine if there is a problem with the SMTP server and to check that the SMTP server settings are correct. ▪ Folder send destination is incorrect. Contact the system administrator to determine that the SMTP server settings and path to the server are correct. ▪ Device settings incorrect. Confirm that the user name and password settings are correct. ▪ Direct SMTP destination incorrect. Contact the system administrator to determine if there is a problem at the destination at that the settings at the destination are correct.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
14-04	Access to SMTP Server Denied (550)	▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly ▪ Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly
14-05	SMTP Server HDD Full (452)	▪ Failed to access the SMTP server because the HDD on the server is full. ▪ Insufficient free space on the HDD of the SMTP server. Contact the system administrator and check the amount of space remaining on the SMTP server HDD. ▪ Insufficient free space on the HDD where the destination folder is located. Contact the system administrator and check the amount of space remaining on the HDD where the target folder is located. ▪ Insufficient free space on the HDD at the target destination for SMTP direct sending. Contact the system administrator and check the amount of space remaining on the target HDD.
14-06	User Not Found on SMTP Server (551)	▪ The designated user does not exist. ▪ The designated user does not exist on the SMTP server. ▪ The designated address is not for use with direct SMTP sending.
14-07	Data Send to SMTP Server Failed (4XX)	▪ Failed to access the SMTP server because the transmission failed. ▪ PC not operating correctly. ▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly ▪ Network not operating correctly. ▪ Destination folder setting incorrect. ▪ Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly.
14-08	Data Send to SMTP Server Failed (5XX)	▪ Failed to access the SMTP server because the transmission failed.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly ▪ Destination folder setting incorrect. ▪ Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly. ▪ Software application error.
14-09	Authorization Failed for Sending to SMTP Server	▪ POP-Before-SMTP or SMTP authorization failed. ▪ Incorrect setting for file transfer
14-10	Addresses Exceeded	▪ Number of broadcast addresses exceeded the limit for the SMTP server.
14-11	Buffer Full	▪ The send buffer is full so the transmission could not be completed. Buffer is full due to using Scan-to-Email while the buffer is being used send mail at the same time.
14-12	Data Size Too Large	▪ Transmission was cancelled because the detected size of the file was too large.
14-13	Send Cancelled	▪ Processing is interrupted because the user pressed Stop.
14-14	Security Locked File Error	▪ Update the software because of the defective software.
14-15	Mail Data Error	▪ The transmitting a mail is interrupted via DCS due to the incorrect data. ▪ Update the software because of the defective software.
14-16	Maximum Division Number Error	▪ When a mail is divided for the mail transmission and the division number of a mail are more than the specified number, the mail transmission is interrupted. ▪ Update the software because of the defective software.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
14-17	Incorrect Ticket	▪ Update the software because of the defective software.
14-18	Access to MCS File Error	▪ The access to MCS file is denied due to the no permission of access. ▪ Update the software because of the defective software.
14-30	MCS File Creation Failed	Failed to create the MCS file because: ▪ The number of files created with other applications on the Document Server has exceeded the limit. ▪ HDD is full or not operating correctly. ▪ Software error.
14-31	UFS File Creation Failed	UFS file could not be created: ▪ Not enough space in UFS area to handle both Scan-to-Email and IFAX transmission. ▪ HDD full or not operating correctly. ▪ Software error.
14-32	Cancelled the Mail Due to Error Detected by NFAX	▪ Error detected with NFAX and send was cancelled due to a software error.
14-33	No Mail Address For the Machine	▪ Neither the mail address of the machine nor the mail address of the network administrator is registered.
14-34	Address designated in the domain for SMTP sending does not exist	▪ Operational error in normal mail sending or direct SMTP sending. ▪ Check the address selected in the address book for SMTP sending. ▪ Check the domain selection.
14-50	Mail Job Task Error	Due to an FCU mail job task error, the send was cancelled: ▪ Address book was being edited during

http://www.manuals4you.com

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		creation of the notification mail. ▪ Software error.
14-51	UCS Destination Download Error	Not even one return notification can be downloaded: ▪ The address book was being edited. ▪ The number for the specified destination does not exist (it was deleted or edited after the job was created).
14-60	Send Cancel Failed	▪ The cancel operation by the user failed to cancel the send operation.
14-61	Notification Mail Send Failed for All Destinations	▪ All addresses for return notification mail failed.
14-62	Transmission Error due to the existence of zero line page	▪ When the 0 line page exists in received pages with G3 communication, the transmission is interrupted.
15-01	POP3/IMAP4 Server Not Registered	▪ At startup, the system detected that the IP address of the POP3/IMAP4 server has not been registered in the machine.
15-02	POP3/IMAP4 Mail Account Information Not Registered	▪ The POP3/IMAP4 mail account has not been registered.
15-03	Mail Address Not Registered	▪ The mail address has not been registered.
15-10	DCS Mail Receive Error	▪ Error other than 15-11 to 15-18.
15-11	Connection Error	The DNS or POP3/IMAP4 server could not be found: ▪ The IP address for DNS or POP3/IMAP4 server is not stored in the machine. ▪ The DNS IP address is not registered. ▪ Network not operating correctly.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
15-12	Authorization Error	POP3/IMAP4 send authorization failed: ▪ Incorrect IFAX user name or password. ▪ Access was attempted by another device, such as the PC. ▪ POP3/IMAP4 settings incorrect.
15-13	Receive Buffer Full	▪ Occurs only during manual reception. Transmission cannot be received due to insufficient buffer space. The buffer is being used for mail send or Scan-to-Email.
15-14	Mail Header Format Error	▪ The mail header is not standard format. For example, the Date line description is incorrect.
15-15	Mail Divide Error	▪ The e-mail is not in standard format. There is no boundary between parts of the e-mail, including the header.
15-16	Mail Size Receive Error	▪ The mail cannot be received because it is too large.
15-17	Receive Timeout	▪ May occur during manual receiving only because the network is not operating correctly.
15-18	Incomplete Mail Received	▪ Only one portion of the mail was received.
15-31	Final Destination for Transfer Request Reception Format Error	▪ The format of the final destination for the transfer request was incorrect.
15-39	Send/Delivery Destination Error	The transmission cannot be delivered to the final destination: ▪ Destination file format is incorrect. ▪ Could not create the destination for the file transmission.
15-41	SMTP Receive Error	▪ Reception rejected because the transaction exceeded the limit for the “Auth. E-mail RX”

http://www.manuals4you.com

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		setting.
15-42	Off Ramp Gateway Error	▪ The delivery destination address was specified with Off Ramp Gateway OFF.
15-43	Address Format Error	▪ Format error in the address of the Off Ramp Gateway.
15-44	Addresses Over	▪ The number of addresses for the Off Ramp Gateway exceeded the limit of 30.
15-61	Attachment File Format Error	▪ The attached file is not TIFF format.
15-62	TIFF File Compatibility Error	Could not receive transmission due to: ▪ Resolution error ▪ Image of resolution greater than 200 dpi without extended memory. ▪ Resolution is not supported. ▪ Page size error ▪ The page size was larger than A3. ▪ Compression error ▪ File was compressed with other than MH, MR, or MMR.
15-63	TIFF Parameter Error	The TIFF file sent as the attachment could not be received because the TIFF header is incorrect: ▪ The TIFF file attachment is a type not supported. ▪ The TIFF file attachment is corrupted. ▪ Software error.
15-64	TIFF Decompression Error	The file received as an attachment caused the TIFF decompression error: ▪ The TIFF format of the attachment is corrupted. ▪ Software error.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
15-71	Not Binary Image Data	▪ The file could not be received because the attachment was not binary image data.
15-73	MDN Status Error	▪ Could not find the Disposition line in the header of the Return Receipt, or there is a problem with the firmware.
15-74	MDN Message ID Error	▪ Could not find the Original Message ID line in the header of the Return Receipt, or there is a problem with the firmware.
15-80	Mail Job Task Read Error	▪ Could not receive the transmission because the destination buffer is full and the destination could not be created (this error may occur when receiving a transfer request or a request for notification of reception).
15-81	Repeated Destination Registration Error	▪ Could not repeat receive the transmission because the destination buffer is full and the destination could not be created (this error may occur when receiving a transfer request or a request for notification of reception).
15-91	Send Registration Error	Could not receive the file for transfer to the final destination: ▪ The format of the final destination or the transfer destination is incorrect. ▪ Destinations are full so the final and transfer destinations could not be created.
15-92	Memory Overflow	▪ Transmission could not be received because memory overflowed during the transaction.
15-93	Memory Access Error	▪ Transaction could not complete due to a malfunction of SAF memory.
15-94	Incorrect ID Code	▪ The machine rejected an incoming e-mail for transfer request, because the ID code in the

http://www.manuals4you.com

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		incoming e-mail did not match the ID code registered in the machine.
15-95	Transfer Station Function	▪ The machine rejected an incoming e-mail for transfer because the transfer function was unavailable.
22-00	Original length exceeded the maximum scan length	▪ Divide the original into more than one page. ▪ Check the resolution used for scanning. Lower the scan resolution if possible. ▪ Add optional page memory.
22-01	Memory overflow while receiving	▪ Wait for the files in the queue to be sent. ▪ Delete unnecessary files from memory. ▪ Transfer the substitute reception files to an another fax machine, if the machine's printer is busy or out of order. ▪ Add an optional SAF memory card or hard disk.
22-02	Tx or rx job stalled due to line disconnection at the other end	▪ The job started normally but did not finish normally; data may or may not have been received fully. ▪ Restart the machine.
22-04	The machine cannot store received data in the SAF	▪ Update the ROM ▪ Replace the FCU.
22-05	No G3 parameter confirmation answer	▪ Defective FCU board or firmware.
23-00	Data read timeout during construction	▪ Restart the machine. ▪ Replace the FCU.
25-00	The machine software resets itself after a fatal transmission error occurred	▪ Update the ROM ▪ Replace the FCU.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
F0-xx	V.34 modem error	▪ Replace the FCU.
F6-xx	SG3 modem error	▪ Update the SG3 modem ROM. ▪ Replace the SG3 board. ▪ Check for line noise or other line problems. ▪ Try communicating another V.8/V.34 fax.

http://www.manuals4you.com

3.2 IFAX TROUBLESHOOTING

Use the following procedures to determine whether the machine or another part of the network is causing the problem.

Communication Route	Item	Action [Remarks]
General LAN	1. Connection with the LAN	▪ Check that the LAN cable is connected to the machine. ▪ Check that the LEDs on the hub are lit.
	2. LAN activity	Check that other devices connected to the LAN can communicate through the LAN.
Between IFAX and PC	1. Network settings on the PC	▪ Check the network settings on the PC. [Is the IP address registered in the TCP/IP properties in the network setup correct? Check the IP address with the administrator of the network.]
	2. Check that PC can connect with the machine	▪ Use the “ping” command on the PC to contact the machine. [At the MS-DOS prompt, type ping then the IP address of the machine, then press Enter.]
	3. LAN settings in the machine	▪ Check the LAN parameters ▪ Check if there is an IP address conflict with other PCs. [Use the “Network” function in the User Tools. If there is an IP address conflict, inform the administrator.]
Between machine and e-mail server	1. LAN settings in the machine	▪ Check the LAN parameters ▪ Check if there is an IP address conflict with other PCs. [Use the “Network” function in the User Tools.

Communication Route	Item	Action [Remarks]
		If there is an IP address conflict, inform the administrator.]
	2. E-mail account on the server	▪ Make sure that the machine can log into the e-mail server. ▪ Check that the account and password stored in the server are the same as in the machine. [Ask the administrator to check.]
	3. E-mail server	▪ Make sure that the client devices which have an account in the server can send/receive e-mail. [Ask the administrator to check. Send a test e-mail with the machine's own number as the destination. The machine receives the returned e-mail if the communication is performed successfully.]
Between e-mail server and internet	1. E-mail account on the Server	▪ Make sure that the PC can log into the e-mail server. ▪ Check that the account and password stored in the server are the same as in the machine. [Ask the administrator to check.]
	2. E-mail server	▪ Make sure that the client devices which have an account in the server can send/receive e-mail. [Ask the administrator to check. Send a test e-mail with the machine's own number as the destination. The machine receives the returned e-mail if the communication is performed successfully.]

http://www.manuals4you.com

IFAX Troubleshooting

Communication Route	Item	Action [Remarks]
	3. Destination e-mail address	▪ Make sure that the e-mail address is actually used. ▪ Check that the e-mail address contains no incorrect characters such as spaces.
	4. Router settings	▪ Use the “ping” command to contact the router. ▪ Check that other devices connected to the router can sent data over the router. [Ask the administrator of the server to check.]
	5. Error message by e-mail from the network of the destination.	▪ Check whether e-mail can be sent to another address on the same network, using the application e-mail software. ▪ Check the error e-mail message. [Inform the administrator of the LAN.]

3.3 IP-FAX TROUBLESHOOTING

3.3.1 IP-FAX TRANSMISSION

Cannot send by IP Address/Host Name

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Specified IP address/host name correct?	Check the IP address/host name.
3	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
4	Transmission sent manually?	Manual sending not supported.
5	IP address of local machine registered?	Register the IP address.
6	Remote terminal port number setting other than 1720?	Send by specifying the port number.
7	Specified port number correct?	Confirm the port number of the remote fax.
8	DNS server registered when host name specified?	Contact the network administrator.
9	Remote fax a T.38 terminal?	Check whether the remote fax is a T38 terminal.
10	Remote fax switched off or busy?	Check that the remote fax is switched on.
11	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the network administrator to increase the bandwidth.
		Raise the delay level. IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3

http://www.manuals4you.com

		IP-Fax bandwidth is the same as the DCS speed. Set IP-Fax SW00 Bit 6 to 1.
12	Remote fax cancelled transmission?	Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission.

Cannot send via VoIP Gateway

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	VoIP Gateway T.38 standard?	Contact the network administrator.
3	VoIP Gateway installed correctly?	Contact the network administrator.
4	VoIP Gateway power switched on?	Contact the network administrator.
5	Is the IP address/host name of the specified Gateway correct?	Check the IP address/host name.
6	Number of the specified fax correct?	Check the remote fax number.
7	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
8	Transmission sent manually?	Manual sending not supported.
9	IP address of local fax registered?	Register the IP address.
10	DNS registered when host name specified?	Contact the network administrator.
11	Remote fax a G3 fax?	Check that the remote fax is a G3 fax.
12	G3 fax is connected to VoIP gateway?	Check that G3 fax is connected.
13	Remote G3 fax turned on?	Check that G3 fax is switched on.

14	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the network administrator to increase the bandwidth.
		Raise the network delay level. IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3
		IP-Fax bandwidth is the same as the DCS speed. Set IP-Fax SW00 Bit 6 to 1.

Cannot send by Alias Fax number.

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Number of specified Alias fax correct?	Confirm the Alias of the remote fax. Error Code: 13-14
3	Firewall/NAT installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
4	Transmission sent manually?	Manual sending not supported.
5	Gatekeeper installed correctly?	Contact the network administrator.
6	Gatekeeper power switched on?	Contact the network administrator.
7	IP address/host name of Gatekeeper correct?	Check the IP address/host name.
8	DNS server registered when Gatekeeper host name specified?	Contact the network administrator.
9	Enable H.323 SW is set to on?	Check the settings. See User Parameter SW 34 Bit 0
10	IP address of local fax registered?	Register the IP address of the local fax.

http://www.manuals4you.com

11	Alias number of local fax registered?	Register the Alias number of the local fax.
12	Remote fax registered in Gatekeeper?	Contact the network administrator.
13	Remote fax a T.38 terminal?	Check whether the remote fax is a T38 terminal.
14	Remote fax switched off or busy?	Contact the network administrator.
15	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the system administrator to increase the bandwidth.
		Raise the delay level. IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3
		Lower the modem transmission baud rate. IPFAX SW 05
16	Remote fax cancelled transmission?	Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission.

3.3.2 IP-FAX RECEPTION

Cannot receive via IP Address/Host Name.

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
3	IP address of local fax registered?	Register the IP address.
4	Port number specified at remote sender fax (if required)?	Request the sender to specify the port number.
5	Specified port number correct (if required)?	Request the sender to check the port number.
6	DNS server registered when host name specified on sender side?	Contact the network administrator. Note ▪ The sender machine displays this error code if the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
7	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the system administrator to increase the bandwidth.
		Lower the start modem reception baud rate on the receiving side. IPFAX SW06
8	Remote fax cancelled transmission?	Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission.

Cannot receive by VoIP Gateway.

http://www.manuals4you.com

IP-Fax Troubleshooting

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Request the remote fax to send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
3	VoIP Gateway installed correctly?	Contact the network administrator.
4	VoIP Gateway power switched on?	Contact the network administrator.
5	IP address/host name of specified VoIP Gateway correct on sender's side?	Request the remote fax to check the IP address/host name.
6	DNS server registered when host name specified on sender side?	Contact the network administrator.
7	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the network administrator to increase the bandwidth.
8	G3 fax connected?	Check that G3 fax is connected.
9	G3 fax power switched on?	Check that G3 fax is switched on.

Cannot receive by Alias Fax number.

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot the breach firewall. Request the remote fax to send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
3	Gatekeeper installed correctly?	Contact the network administrator. Note ▪ The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.

4	Power to Gatekeeper switched on?	Contact the network administrator. Note ▪ The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
5	IP address/host name of Gatekeeper correct on the sender's side?	Request the sender to check the IP address/host name. Note ▪ The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
6	DNS server registered when Gatekeeper host name specified on sender's side?	Contact the network administrator. Note ▪ The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
7	Enable H.323 SW is set to on?	Request the sender to check the settings. User Parameter SW 34 Bit 0 Note ▪ Only if the remote sender fax is a Ricoh fax.
8	Local fax IP address registered?	Register the IP address.
9	Local fax Alias number registered?	Register the Alias number.
10	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the system administrator to increase the bandwidth.
		Lower the start modem reception baud rate on the receiving side. IPFAX SW06
11	Remote fax cancelled transmission?	Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission.
12	Local fax registered in Gatekeeper?	Contact the network administrator.

http://www.manuals4you.com

		Note ▪ The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.

4. SERVICE TABLE

4.1 BEFOREHAND

⚠CAUTION

- Never turn off the main power switch when the power LED is lit or flashing. To avoid damaging the hard disk or memory, press the operation power switch to switch the power off, wait for the power LED to go off, and then switch the main power switch off.

Note

- The main power LED (⏻) lights or flashes while the platen cover or ARDF is open, while the main machine is communicating with a facsimile or the network server, or while the machine is accessing the hard disk or memory for reading or writing data.

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.2 SERVICE TABLES

4.2.1 SP1-XXX (BIT SWITCHES)

☛ Bit Switches

1	Mode No.		Function
101	System Switch		
	001 – 032	00 – 1F	Change the bit switches for system settings for the fax option ☛ "Bit Switches"
102	Ifax Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for internet fax settings for the fax option ☛ "Bit Switches"
103	Printer Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for printer settings for the fax option ☛ "Bit Switches"
104	Communication Switch		
	001 – 032	00 – 1F	Change the bit switches for communication settings for the fax option ☛ "Bit Switches"
105	G3-1 Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for the protocol settings of the standard G3 board ☛ "Bit Switches"

106	G3-2 Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for the protocol settings of the optional G3 board ☛ "Bit Switches"
107	G3-3 Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for the protocol settings of the optional G3 board ☛ "Bit Switches"
108	G4 Internal Switch		
	001 – 032	00 – 1F	**Not used** (Do not change the bit switches)
109	G4 Parameter Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	**Not used** (Do not change the bit switches)
111	IP fax Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for optional IP fax parameters ☛ "Bit Switches"

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.2.2 SP2-XXX (RAM DATA)

2	Mode No.		Function
101	RAM Read/Write		
	001		Change RAM data for the fax board directly. ☛ "Service RAM Addresses"
102	Memory Dump		
	001	G3-1 Memory Dump	Print out RAM data for the fax board. ☛ "Service RAM Addresses"
	002	G3-2 Memory Dump	Print out RAM data for the optional SG3 board.
	003	G3-3 Memory Dump	Print out RAM data for the optional SG3 board.
	004	G4 Memory Dump	Not used
103	G3-1 NCU Parameters		
	001 – 023	CC, 01 – 22	NCU parameter settings for the standard G3 board. ☛ "NCU Parameters"
104	G3-2 NCU Parameters		
	001 – 023	CC, 01 – 22	NCU parameter settings for the optional G3 board. ☛ "NCU Parameters"
105	G3-3 NCU Parameters		
	001 – 023	CC, 01 – 22	NCU parameter settings for the optional G3 board. ☛ "NCU Parameters"

4.2.3 SP3-XXX (TEL LINE SETTINGS)

3	Mode No.		Function
101	Service Station		
	001	Fax Number	Enter the fax number of the service station.
	002	Select Line	Select the line type.
102	Serial Number		
	000		Enter the fax unit's serial number.
103	PSTN-1 Port Settings		
	001	Select Line	Select the line type setting for the G3-1 line. If the machine is installed on a PABX line, select "PABX", "PABX(GND)" or "PABX(FLASH)".
	002	PSTN Access Number	Enter the PSTN access number for the G3-1 line.
	003	Memory Lock Disabled	Not used
104	PSTN-2 Port Settings		
	001	Select Line	Select the line setting for the G3-2 line. If the machine is installed on a PABX line, select "PABX", "PABX(GND)" or "PABX(FLASH)".
	002	PSTN Access Number	Enter the PSTN access number for the G3-2 line.
	003	Memory Lock Disabled	Not used
	004	Transmission Disabled	If you turn this SP on, the machine does not send any fax messages on the G3-2 line.

http://www.manuals4you.com

105	PSTN-3 Port Settings		
	001	Select Line	Select the line setting for the G3-3 line. If the machine is installed on a PABX line, select “PABX”, “PABX(GND)” or “PABX(FLASH)”.
	002	PSTN Access Number	Enter the PSTN access number for the G3-3 line.
	003	Memory Lock Disabled	Not used
	004	Transmission Disabled	If you turn this SP on, the machine does not send any fax messages on the G3-3 line.
106	ISDN Port Settings		
	001	Select Line	**Not used** (Do not change the settings.)
	002	PSTN Access Number	
	003	Memory Lock Disabled	
106	004	Transmission Disabled	
107	IPFAX Port Settings		
	001	H323 Port	Sets the H323 port number.
	002	SIP Port	Sets the SIP port number.
	003	RAS Port	Sets the RAS port number.
	004	Gatekeeper port	Sets the Gatekeeper port number.
	005	T.38 Port	Sets the T.38 port number.
	006	SIP Server Port	Sets the SIP port number.
	007	IPFAX Protocol	Select "H323" or "SIP".

		Priority	
201	FAX SW		
	001 – 032	00 – 1F	

4.2.4 SP4-XXX (ROM VERSIONS)

4	Mode No.		Function
101	001	FCU ROM Version	Displays the FCU ROM version.
102	001	Error Codes	Displays the latest 64 fax error codes.
103	001	G3-1 ROM Version	Displays the G3-1 modem version.
104	001	G3-2 ROM Version	Displays the G3-2 modem version.
105	001	G3-3 ROM Version	Displays the G3-3 modem version.
106	001	G4 ROM Version	**Not used** (Do not change the settings.)
107	001	Charge ROM Version	**Not used** (Do not change the settings.)

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.2.5 SP5-XXX (INITIALIZING)

5	Mode No.	Function
101	Initialize SRAM	
	000	Initializes the bit switches and user parameters, user data in the SRAM, files in the SAF memory, and clock.
102	Erase All Files	
	000	Erases all files stored in the SAF memory.
103	Reset Bit Switches	
	000	Resets the bit switches and user parameters.
104	Factory setting	
	000	Resets the bit switches and user parameters, user data in the SRAM and files in the SAF memory.
105	Initialize All Bit Switches	
	000	Initializes all the current bit switch settings.
106	Initialize Security Bit Switches	
	000	Initializes only the security bit switches. If you select automatic output/display for the user parameter switches, the security settings are initialized.

4.2.6 SP6-XXX (REPORTS)

6	Mode No.		Function
101	System Parameter List		
	000	-	Touch the “ON” button to print the system parameter list.
102	Service Monitor Report		
	000	-	Touch the “ON” button to print the service monitor report.
103	G3 Protocol Dump List		
	001	G3 All Communications	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for all G3 lines.
	002	G3-1 (All Communications)	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the G3-1 line.
	003	G3-1 (1 Communication)	Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the G3-1 line.
	004	G3-2 (All Communications)	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the G3-2 line.
	005	G3-2 (1 Communication)	Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the G3-2 line.
	006	G3-3 (All Communications)	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the G3-3 line.
	007	G3-3 (1 Communication)	Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the G3-3 line.
104	G4 Protocol Dump List		
	001	Dch + Bch 1	**Not used** (Do not change the settings.)

http://www.manuals4you.com

	002	Dch	
	003	Bch 1 Link Layer	
	004	Dch Link Layer	
	005	Dch +Bch 2	
	006	Bch 2 Link Layer	
105	All Files print out		
	000	-	Prints out all the user files in the SAF memory, including confidential messages. Note ▪ Do not use this function, unless the customer is having trouble printing confidential messages or recovering files stored using the memory lock feature.
106	Journal Print out		
	001	All Journals	The machine prints all the communication records on the report.
	002	Specified Date	The machine prints all communication records after the specified date.
107	Log List Print out		
	001	All log files	These log print out functions are for designer use only.
	002	Printer	
	003	SC/TRAP Stored	
	004	Decompression	
	005	Scanner	
	006	JOB/SAF	

	007	Reconstruction	
	008	JBIG	
	009	Fax Driver	
	010	G3CCU	
	011	Fax Job	
	012	CCU	
	013	Scanner Condition	
108	IP Protocol Dump List		
	001	All Communications	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the IP fax line.
	002	1 Communication	Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the IP fax line.

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.2.7 SP7-XXX (TEST MODES)

These are the test modes for PTT approval.

7	Function
101	G3-1 Modem Tests
102	G3-1 DTMF Tests
103	Ringer Test
104	G3-1 V34 (S2400baud)
105	G3-1 V34 (S2800baud)
106	G3-1 V34 (S3000baud)
107	G3-1 V34 (S3200baud)
108	G3-1 V34 (S3429baud)
109	Recorded Message Test
110	G3-2 Modem Tests
111	G3-2 DTMF Tests
112	G3-2 V34 (S2400baud)
113	G3-2 V34 (S2800baud)
114	G3-2 V34 (S3000baud)
115	G3-2 V34 (S3200baud)
116	G3-2 V34 (S3429baud)
117	G3-3 Modem Tests
118	G3-3 DTMF Tests
119	G3-3 V34 (S2400baud)
120	G3-3 V34 (S2800baud)

121	G3-3 V34 (S3000baud)
122	G3-3 V34 (S3200baud)
123	G3-3 V34 (S3429baud)
124	IG3-1 Modem Tests - **Not used**
125	IG3-1 DTMF Tests - **Not used**
126	IG3-1 V34 (S2400baud) - **Not used**
127	IG3-1 V34 (S2800baud) - **Not used**
128	IG3-1 V34 (S3000baud) - **Not used**
129	IG3-1 V34 (S3200baud) - **Not used**
130	IG3-1 V34 (S3429baud) - **Not used**
131	IG3-2 Modem Tests - **Not used**
132	IG3-2 DTMF Tests - **Not used**
133	IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - **Not used**
134	IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - **Not used**
135	IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - **Not used**
136	IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - **Not used**
137	IG3-2 V34 (S3429baud) - **Not used**

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.3 BIT SWITCHES

⚠WARNING

- Do not adjust a bit switch or use a setting that is described as “Not used”, as this may cause the machine to malfunction or to operate in a manner that is not accepted by local regulations. Such bits are for use only in other areas, such as Japan.

Note

- Default settings for bit switches are not listed in this manual. Refer to the System Parameter List printed by the machine.

4.3.1 SYSTEM SWITCHES

System Switch 00 [SP No. 1-101-001]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Dedicated transmission parameter programming 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	Set this bit to 1 before changing any dedicated transmission parameters. Reset this bit to 0 after programming dedicated transmission parameters.
1	**Not used**	Do not change
2	Technical data printout on the Journal 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: Instead of the personal name, the following data are listed on the Journal for each G3 communication.
	e.g. 0000 (1) // 32 (2) V34 (3) // 288 (4) // 264 (5) // L0100 (6) 03 (7) 04 (8) (1): EQM value (Line quality data). A larger number means more errors. (2): Symbol rate (V.34 only) (3): Final modem type used (4): Starting data rate (for example, 288 means 28.8 kbps) (5): Final data rate (6): Rx revel (refer to the note after this table for how to read the rx level) (7): Total number of error lines that occurred during non-ECM reception.	

	(8): Total number of burst error lines that occurred during non-ECM reception. Note ▪ EQM and rx level are fixed at “FFFF” in tx mode. ▪ The seventh and eighth numbers are fixed at “00” for transmission records and ECM reception records.	
	Rx level calculation Example: 0000 // 32 V34 // 288/264 // L 01 00 03 04 The four-digit hexadecimal value (N) after “L” indicates the rx level. The high byte is given first, followed by the low byte. Divide the decimal value of N by -16 to get the rx level. In the above example, the decimal value of N (= 0100 [H]) is 256. So, the actual rx level is 256/-16 = -16 dB	
3	**Not used**	Do not change this setting.
4	Line error mark print 0: OFF, 1: ON (print)	When "1" is selected, a line error mark is printed on the printout if a line error occurs during reception.
5	G3/G4 communication parameter display 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	This is a fault-finding aid. The LCD shows the key parameters (see below). This is normally disabled because it cancels the CSI display for the user. Be sure to reset this bit to 0 after testing.
6	Protocol dump list output after each communication 0: Off 1: On	This is only used for communication troubleshooting. It shows the content of the transmitted facsimile protocol signals. Always reset this bit to 0 after finishing testing. If system switch 09 bit 6 is at “1”, the list is only printed if there was an error during the communication.
7	Not used	Do not change the setting.

System Switch 01 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

System Switch 02 [SP No. 1-101-003]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-1	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.
2	Force after transmission stall 0: Off 1: On	With this setting on, the machine resets itself automatically if a transmission stalls and fails to complete the job.
3	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.
4	File retention time 0: Depends on User Parameter 24 [18(H)] 1: No limit (until the year 2126)	1: A file that had a communication error will not be erased unless the communication is successful.
5	**Not used**	Do not change this setting.
6-7	Memory read/write by RDS Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0 Always disabled Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1 User selectable Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 0 User selectable Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1 Always enabled	(0,0): All RDS systems are always locked out. (0,1), (1,0): Normally, RDS systems are locked out, but the user can temporarily switch RDS on to allow RDS operations to take place. RDS will automatically be locked out again after a certain time, which is stored in System Switch 03. Note that if an RDS operation takes place, RDS will not switch off until this time limit has expired. (1,1): At any time, an RDS system can access the machine.

System Switch 03 [SP No. 1-101-004]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-7	Length of time that RDS is temporarily switched on when bits 6 and 7 of System Switch	00 - 99 hours (BCD). This setting is only valid if bits 6 and 7 of System Switch 02 are set to “User selectable”.

	02 are set to “User selectable”	The default setting is 24 hours.

System Switch 04 [SP No. 1-101-005]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-2	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.
3	Printing dedicated tx parameters on Quick/Speed Dial Lists 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: Each Quick/Speed dial number on the list is printed with the dedicated tx parameters.
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

System Switch 05 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)
System Switch 06 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)
System Switch 07 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)
System Switch 08 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

System Switch 09 [SP No. 1-101-010]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Addition of image data from confidential transmissions on the transmission result report 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	If this feature is enabled, the top half of the first page of confidential messages will be printed on transmission result reports.
1	Inclusion of communications on the Journal when no image data was exchanged. 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Communications that reached phase C (message tx/rx) of the T.30 protocol are listed on the Journal. 1: Communications that reached phase A (call setup) of T.30 protocol are listed on the Journal.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

		This will include telephone calls.
2	Automatic error report printout 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Error reports will not be printed. 1: Error reports will be printed automatically after failed communications.
3	Printing of the error code on the error report 0: No 1: Yes	1: Error codes are printed on the error reports.
4	**Not used**	Do not change this setting.
5	Power failure report 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: A power failure report will be automatically printed after the power is switched on if a fax message disappeared from the memory when the power was turned off last.
6	Conditions for printing the protocol dump list 0: Print for all communications 1: Print only when there is a communication error	This switch becomes effective only when system switch 00 bit 6 is set to 1. 1: Set this bit to 1 when you wish to print a protocol dump list only for communications with errors.
7	Priority given to various types of remote terminal ID when printing reports 0: RTI > CSI > Dial label > Tel. Number 1: Dial label > Tel. number > RTI > CSI	This bit determines which set of priorities the machine uses when listing remote terminal names on reports. Dial Label: The name stored, by the user, for the Quick/Speed Dial number.

System Switch 0A [SP No. 1-101-011]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Automatic port selection 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	When "1" is selected, a suitable port is automatically selected if the selected port is not used.

1-3	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.
4	Dialing on the ten-key pad when the external telephone is off-hook 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Prevents dialing from the ten-key pad while the external telephone is off-hook. Use this setting when the external telephone is not by the machine, or if a wireless telephone is connected as an external telephone. 1: The user can dial on the machine's ten-key pad when the handset is off-hook.
5	On hook dial 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: On hook dial is disabled.
6-7	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings

System Switch 0B - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)
System Switch 0C - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)
System Switch 0D - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

System Switch 0E [SP No. 1-101-015]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
2	Enable/disable for direct sending selection 0: Direct sending off 1: Direct sending on	Direct sending cannot operate when the capture function is on during sending. Setting this switch to "1" enables direct sending without capture. Setting this switch to "0" masks the direct sending function on the operation panel so it cannot be selected.
3	Action when the external handset goes off-hook 0: Manual tx and rx operation 1: Memory tx and rx operation (the display remains the same)	0: Manual tx and rx are possible while the external handset is off-hook. However, memory tx is not possible. 1: The display stays in standby mode even when the external handset is used, so that other people can use the machine for memory tx operation.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

		Note that manual tx and rx are not possible with this setting.
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

System Switch 0F [SP No. 1-101-016]

No	FUNCTION		COMMENTS
0-7	Country/area code for functional settings (Hex)		This country/area code determines the factory settings of bit switches and RAM addresses. However, it has no effect on the NCU parameter settings and communication parameter RAM addresses. **Cross reference** NCU country code: SP No. 2-103-001 for G3-1 SP No. 2-104-001 for G3-2 SP No. 2-105-001 for G3-3
	00: France	11: USA	
	01: Germany	12: Asia	
	02: UK	12: Asia	
	03: Italy	13: Japan	
	04: Austria	14: Hong Kong	
	05: Belgium	15: South Africa	
	06: Denmark	16: Australia	
	07: Finland	17: New Zealand	
	08: Ireland	18: Singapore	
	09: Norway	19: Malaysia	
	0A: Sweden	1A: China	
	0B: Switzerland	1B: Formosa	

	0C: Portugal	1C: Korea	
	0D: Netherland	20: Turkey	
	0E: Spain	21: Greece	
	0F: Israel	22: Hungary	
	10: ---	23: Czech	
	11: USA	24: Poland	

System Switch 10 [SP No. 1-101-017]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	Threshold memory level for parallel memory transmission	Threshold = N x 128 KB + 256 KB N can be between 00 - FF(H) Default setting: 02(H) = 512 KB

System Switch 11 [SP No. 1-101-018]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	TTI printing position 0: Superimposed on the page data 1: Printed before the data leading edge	Change this bit to 1 if the TTI overprints information that the customer considers to be important (G3 transmissions).
1	**Not used**	Japan Only
2	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.
3	TTI printing type 0: Address unit 1: File unit	TTI printing unit can be selected.
4-6	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.
7	**Not used**	Japan Only

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

System Switch 12 [SP No. 1-101-019]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	TTI printing position in the main scan direction	TTI: 08 to 92 (BCD) mm Input even numbers only. This setting determines the print start position for the TTI from the left edge of the paper. If the TTI is moved too far to the right, it may overwrite the file number which is on the top right of the page. On an A4 page, if the TTI is moved over by more than 50 mm, it may overwrite the page number.

System Switch 13 - Not used (do not change these settings)
System Switch 14 - Not used (do not change these settings)

System Switch 15 [SP No. 1-101-022]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
1	Going into the Energy Saver mode automatically 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	1: The machine will restart from the Energy Saver mode quickly, because the +5V power supply is active even in the Energy Saver mode.
2-3	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.
4-5	Interval for preventing the machine from entering Energy Saver mode if there is a pending transmission file. Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 0 1 min Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 1	If there is a file waiting for transmission, the machine does not go to Energy Saver mode during the selected period. After transmitting the file, if there is no file waiting for transmission, the machine goes to the Energy Saver mode.

	30 min1 Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 0 1 hour Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 1 24 hours	
6-7	**Not used**	Do not change

System Switch 16 [SP No. 1-101-023]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Parallel Broadcasting 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: The machine sends messages simultaneously using all available ports during broadcasting.
1	Priority setting for the G3 line. 0: PSTN-1 > PSTN-2 or 3 1: PSTN-2 or 3 > PSTN-1	This function allows the user to select the default G3 line type. The optional SG3 unit(s) are required to use the PSTN-2 or 3 setting.
2-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

System Switch 17 - Not used (do not change these settings)
System Switch 18 - Not used (do not change these settings)

System Switch 19 [SP No. 1-101-026]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-5	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
6	Extended scanner page memory after memory option is installed 0: Disabled	0: After installing the memory expansion option, the scanner page memory is extended to 4 MB from 2 MB. 1: If this bit is set to 1 after installing the memory

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

	1: Enabled	expansion option, the scanner page memory is extended to 12 MB. But the SAF memory decreases to 18 MB.
7	Special Original mode 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: If the customer frequently wishes to transmit a form or letterhead which has a colored or printed background, change this bit to “1”. “Original 1” and “Original 2” can be selected in addition to the “Text”, “Text/Photo” and “Photo” modes.

System Switch 1A [SP No. 1-101-027]			
No.	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**	
0-7	LS RX memory remaining refresh value setting	Sets a value of 4K. If the amount of memory remaining falls below 4K, documents received in memory are printed to create more space in memory. Initial value: 0x80 (512K) 00-FF (0-1020 KB: Hex)	

System Switch 1B - Not used (do not change these settings)
System Switch 1C - Not used (do not change these settings)

System Switch 1D [SP No. 1-101-030]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	RTI/CSI/CPS code display 0: ON 1: OFF	0: RTI, CSI, CPS codes are displayed on the top line of the LCD panel during communication. 1: Codes are switched off (no display)
1-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

System Switch 1E [SP No. 1-101-031]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Communication after the Journal data storage area has become full 0: Impossible 1: Possible	0: When this switch is on and the journal history becomes full, the next report prints. If the journal history is not deleted, the next transmission cannot be received. This prevents overwriting communication records before the machine can print them. 1: If the buffer memory of the communication records for the Journal is full, fax communications are still possible. But the machine will overwrite the oldest communication records. Note: This setting is effective only when Automatic Journal printout is enabled but the machine cannot print the report (e.g., no paper).
1	Action when the SAF memory has become full during scanning 0: The current page is erased. 1: The entire file is erased.	0: If the SAF memory becomes full during scanning, the successfully scanned pages are transmitted. 1: If the SAF memory becomes full during scanning, the file is erased and no pages are transmitted. This bit switch is ignored for parallel memory transmission.
2	RTI/CSI display priority 0: RTI 1: CSI	This bit determines which identifier, RTI or CSI, is displayed on the LCD while the machine is communicating in G3 non-standard mode.
3	File No. printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	1: File numbers are not printed on any reports.
4	Action when authorized reception is enabled but authorized RTIs/CSIs are not yet programmed 0: All fax reception is disabled	If authorized reception is enabled but the user has stored no acceptable sender RTIs or CSIs, the machine will not be able to receive any fax messages. If the customer wishes to receive messages from

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

	1: Faxes can be received if the sender has an RTI or CSI	any sender that includes an RTI or CSI, and to block messages from senders that do not include an RTI or CSI, change this bit to “1”, then enable Authorized Reception. Otherwise, keep this bit at “0 (default setting)”.
5-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings

System Switch 1F [SP No. 1-101-032]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
1	Report printout after an original jam during SAF storage or if the SAF memory fills up 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	0: When an original jams, or the SAF memory overflows during scanning, a report will be printed. Change this bit to “1” if the customer does not want to have a report in these cases. Memory tx – Memory storage report Parallel memory tx – Transmission result report
2	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
3	Received fax print start timing (G3 reception) 0: After receiving each page 1: After receiving all pages	0: The machine prints each page immediately after the machine receives it. 1: The machine prints the complete message after the machine receives all the pages in the memory.
4-6	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.
7	Action when a fax SC has occurred 0: Automatic reset 1: Fax unit stops	0: When the fax unit detects a fax SC code other than SC1201 and SC1207, the fax unit automatically resets itself. 1: When the fax unit detects any fax SC code, the fax unit stops. Cross Reference Fax SC codes - See “Troubleshooting”

4.3.2 I-FAX SWITCHES

I-fax Switch 00 [SP No. 1-102-001]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
	Original Width of TX Attachment File	This setting sets the maximum size of the original that the destination can receive. (Bits 3~7 are reserved for future use or not used.)
0	A4	0: Off (not selected), 1: On (selected) If more than one of these three bits is set to "1", the larger size has priority. For example, if both Bit 2 and Bit 1 are set to "1" then the maximum size is "A3" (Bit 2). When mail is sent, there is no negotiation with the receiving machine at the destination, so the sending machine cannot make a selection for the receiving capabilities (original width setting) of the receiving machine. The original width selected with this switch is used as the RX machine's original width setting, and the original is reduced to this size before sending. The default is A4. If the width selected with this switch is higher than the receiving machine can accept, the machine detects this and this causes an error.
1	B4	
2	A3	
3-6	Reserved	
7	**Not used**	

I-fax Switch 01 [SP No. 1-102-002]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
	Original Line Resolution of TX Attachment File	These settings set the maximum resolution of the original that the destination can receive.
0	200x100 Standard	0: Not selected 1: Selected
1	200x200 Detail	

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

2	200x400 Fine	If more than one of these three bits is set to “1”, the higher resolution has priority. For example, if both Bit 0 and Bit 2 are set to “1” then the resolution is set for "Bit 2 200 x 400.
3	300 x 300 Reserve	
4	400 x 400 Super Fine	
5	600 x 600 Reserve	
6	Reserve	
7	mm/inch	
	This setting selects mm/inch conversion for mail transmission. 0: Off (No conversion), 1: On (Conversion) When on (set to “1”), the machine converts millimeters to inches for sending mail. There is no switch for converting inches to millimeters. Unlike G3 fax transmissions which can negotiate between sender and receiver to determine the setting, mail cannot negotiate between terminals; the mm/inch selection is determined by the sender fax. When this switch is Off (0): Images scanned in inches are sent in inches. Images scanned in mm are sent in mm. Images received in inches are transmitted in inches. Images received in mm are transmitted in mm. When this switch is On (1): Images scanned in inches are sent in inches. Images scanned in mm are converted to inches. Images received in inches are transmitted in inches. Images received in mm are converted to inches.	

I-fax Switch 02 [SP No. 1-102-003]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	RX Text Mail Header Processing	
	This setting determines whether the header information is printed with text e-mails when they are received. 0: Prints only text mail.	

	1: Prints mail header information attached to text mail. When a text mail is received with this switch On (1), the “From” address and “Subject” address are printed as header information. When a mail with only binary data is received (a TIFF-F file, for example), this setting is ignored and no header is printed.
1	Output from Attached Document at E-mail TX Error
	This setting determines whether only the first page or all pages of an e-mail attachment are printed at the sending station when a transmission error occurs. This allows the customer to see which documents have not reached their intended destinations if sent to the wrong e-mail addresses, for example. 0: Prints 1st page only. 1: Prints all pages.
2-3	Text String for Return Receipt
	This setting determines the text string output for the Return Receipt that confirms the transmission was received normally at the destination.
	00: “Dispatched” Sends from PC mail a request for a Return Receipt. Receives the Return Receipt with “dispatched” in the 2nd part: Disposition: Automatic-action/MDN-send automatically; dispatched The “dispatched” string is included in the Subject string. 01: “Displayed” Sends from PC mail a request for a Return Receipt. Receives the Return Receipt with “displayed” in the 2nd part: Disposition: Automatic-action/MDN-send automatically; displayed The “displayed” string is included in the Subject string. 10: Reserved 11: Reserved A mail requesting a Return Receipt sent from an IFAX with this switch set to “00” (for “dispatched”) received by Microsoft Outlook 2000 may cause an error. If any setting other than “displayed” (01) causes a problem, change the setting to “01” to enable normal sending of the Return Receipt.
4	Media accept feature

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

	This setting adds or does not add the media accept feature to the answer mail to confirm a reception. 0: Does not add the media accept feature to the answer mail 1: Adds the media accept feature to the answer mail. Use this bit switch if a problem occurs when the machine receives an answer mail, which contains the media accept feature field.
5-6	**Not Used**
7	Image Resolution of RX Text Mail
	This setting determines the image resolution of the received mail. 0: 200 x 200 1: 400 x 400 The “1” setting requires installation of the Function Upgrade Card in order to have enough SAF (Store and Forward) memory to receive images at 400 x 400 resolution.

I-fax Switch 03 - Not used (do not change the settings) [SP No. 1-102-004]

I-fax Switch 04 [SP No. 1-102-005]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Subject for Delivery TX/Memory Transfer	
	This setting determines whether the RTI/CSI registered on this machine or the RTI/CSI of the originator is used in the subject lines of transferred documents. 0: Puts the RTI/CSI of the originator in the Subject line. If this is used, either the RTI or CSI is used. Only one of these can be received for use in the subject line. 1: Puts the RTI/CSI registered on this machine in the Subject line. When this switch is used to transfer and deliver mail to a PC, the information in the Subject line that indicates where the transmission originated can be used to determine automatically the destination folder for each e-mail.	
1	Subject corresponding to mail post database 0: Standard subject 1: Mail post database subject	

	The standard subject is replaced by the mail post database subject in the following three cases: 1) When the service technician sets the service (software) switch. 2) When memory sending, delivery specified by F code or SMTP reception is done. 3) With relay broadcasting (1st stage without the Schmidt 4 function). Note ▪ This switch does not apply for condition 3) when the RX system is set up for memory sending, delivery by F-code, sending with SMTP RX and when operators are using FOL (to prevent problems when receiving transmissions).
2-7	**Not Used**

I-fax Switch 05 [SP No. 1-102-006]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Mail Addresses of SMTP Broadcast Recipients	
	Determines whether the e-mail addresses of the destinations that receive transmissions broadcasted using SMTP protocol are recorded in the Journal. For example: "1st destination + Total number of destinations: 9" in the Journal indicates a broadcast to 9 destinations. 0: Not recorded 1: Recorded	
1	I-Fax Automatic Re-dial Setting 0: OFF 1: ON	Determines whether the I-fax automatically redials when an error occurs.
2-7	**Not Used**	

I-fax Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings) [SP No. 1-102-007]
I-fax Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings) [SP No. 1-102-008]

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

I-fax Switch 08 [SP No. 1-102-009]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	Memory Threshold for POP Mail Reception	This setting determines the amount of SAF (Store and Forward) memory. (SAF stores fax messages to send later for transmission to more than one location, and also holds incoming messages if they cannot be printed.) When the amount of SAF memory available falls below this setting, mail can no longer be received; received mail is then stored on the mail server. 00-FF (0 to 1024 KB: HEX) Note ▪ The hexadecimal number you enter is multiplied by 4 KB to determine the amount of memory.

I-fax Switch 09 [SP No. 1-102-010]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-3	**Not used**	Do not change the settings
4-7	Restrict TX Retries	This setting determines the number of retries when connection and transmission fails due to errors. 01-F (1-15 Hex)

I-fax Switch 0A - Not used (do not change the settings) **[SP No. 1-102-011]**
I-fax Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings) **[SP No. 1-102-012]**
I-fax Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings) **[SP No. 1-102-013]**
I-fax Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings) **[SP No. 1-102-014]**
I-fax Switch 0E - Not used (do not change the settings) **[SP No. 1-102-015]**

I-fax Switch 0F [SP No. 1-102-016]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Delivery Method for SMTP RX Files	
	This setting determines whether files received with SMTP protocol are delivered or output immediately. 0: Off. Files received via SMTP are output immediately without delivery. 1: On. Files received via SMTP are delivered immediately to their destinations.	
1	Signature for the SMTP	
	This setting determines whether a signature is put on an e-mail via SMTP. 0: No signature 1: Signature	
2	This setting determines whether an e-mail via SMTP is encrypted. 0: Not encrypted 1: Encrypted	
3-7	**Not used**	

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.3.3 PRINTER SWITCHES

Printer Switch 00 [SP No. 1-103-001]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Select page separation marks 0: Off 1: On	0: If a 2 page RX transmission is split, [*] is printed in the bottom right corner of the 1st page and only a [2] is printed in the upper right corner of the 2nd page. 1: If a 2 page RX transmission is split into two pages, for example, [*] [2] is printed in the bottom right corner of the 1st page and only a [2] is printed in the upper right corner of the 2nd page. Note ▪ This helps the user to identify pages that have been split because the size of the paper is smaller than the size of the document received. (When A5 is used to print an A4 size document, for example.)
1	Repetition of data when the received page is longer than the printer paper 0: Off 1: On	1: Default. 10 mm of the trailing edge of the previous page are repeated at the top of the next page. 0: The next page continues from where the previous page stopped without any repeated text.
2	Prints the date and time on received fax messages 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	This switch is only effective when user parameter 02 - bit 2 (printing the received date and time on received fax messages) is enabled. 1: The machine prints the received and printed date and time at the bottom of each received page.
3-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

Printer Switch 01 [SP No. 1-103-002]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-2	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
3-4	Maximum print width used in the setup protocol Bit 4: 0, Bit 3: 0 = Not used Bit 4: 0, Bit 3: 1 = A3 Bit 4: 1, Bit 3: 0 = B4 Bit 4: 1, Bit 3: 1 = A4	These bits are only effective when bit 7 of printer switch 01 is “1”.
5-6	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
7	Received message width restriction in the protocol signal to the sender 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: The machine informs the transmitting machine of the print width depending on the paper size available from the paper feed stations. Refer to the table on the next page for how the machine chooses the paper width used in the setup protocol (NSF/DIS). 1: The machine informs the transmitting machine of the fixed paper width which is specified by bits 3 and 4 above.

Printer Switch 02 [SP No. 1-103-003]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	1st paper feed station usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	0: The paper feed station can be used to print fax messages and reports. 1: The specified paper feed station will not be used for printing fax messages and reports. Note ▪ Do not disable usage for a paper feed station which has been specified by User Parameter Switch 0F (15), or which is
1	2nd paper feed station usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

2	3rd paper feed station usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	used for the Specified Cassette Selection feature.
3	4th paper feed station usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	
4	LCT usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	
5-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

Printer Switch 03 [SP No. 1-103-004]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Length reduction of received data 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Incoming pages are printed without length reduction. (Page separation threshold: Printer Switch 03, bits 4 to 7) 1: Incoming page length is reduced when printing. (Maximum reducible length: Printer Switches 04, bits 0 to 4)
1-3	Not used	Do not change the settings
4-7	Page separation setting when sub scan compression is forbidden 00-0F (0-15 mm: Hex) Default: 6 mm	Page separation threshold (with reduction disabled with switch 03-0 above). For example, if this setting is set to "10", and A4 is the selected paper size: If the received document is 10 mm or less longer than A4, then the 10 mm are cut and only 1 page prints. If the received document is 10 mm longer than A4,

		then the document is split into 2 pages.

Printer Switch 04
SP No. 1-103-005

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-4	Maximum reducible length when length reduction is enabled with switch 03-0 above. <Maximum reducible length> = <Paper length> + (N x 5mm) "N" is the decimal value of the binary setting of bits 0 to 4.	

Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Setting
0	0	0	0	0	0 mm
0	0	0	0	1	5 mm
0	0	1	0	0	20 mm
1	1	1	1	1	155 mm

	For A5 sideways and B5 sideways paper <Maximum reducible length> = <Paper length> + 0.75 x (N x 5mm)	
5-6	Length of the duplicated image on the next page, when page separation has taken place. Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 0 = 4 mm Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 0 = 10 mm Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 1 = 15 mm Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 1 = **Not used**	
7	**Not used.**	Do not change the setting.

Printer Switch 05 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Printer Switch 06 [SP No. 1-103-007]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

0	Printing while a paper cassette is pulled out, when the Just Size Printing feature is enabled. 0: Printing will not start 1: Printing will start if another cassette has a suitable size of paper, based on the paper size selection priority tables.	Cross reference Just size printing on/off – User switch 05, bit 5
1-7	**Not used.**	Do not change the settings.

Printer Switch 07 [SP No. 1-103-008]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-3	**Not used.**	Do not change the settings.
4	List of destinations in the Communication Failure Report for broadcasting 0: All destinations 1: Only destinations where communication failure occurred	1: Only destinations where communication failure occurred are printed on the Communication Failure Report.
5-7	**Not used.**	Do not change the settings.

Printer Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Printer Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Printer Switch 0A - Not used (do not change the settings)

Printer Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings)
Printer Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings)

Printer Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings)

Printer Switch 0E [SP No. 1-103-015]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Paper size selection priority 0: Width 1: Length	0: A paper size that has the same width as the received data is selected first. 1: A paper size which has enough length to print all the received lines without reduction is selected first.
1	Paper size selected for printing A4 width fax data 0: 8.5" x 11" size 1: A4 size	This switch determines which paper size is selected for printing A4 width fax data, when the machine has both A4 and 8.5" x 11" size paper.
2	Page separation 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	1: If all paper sizes in the machine require page separation to print a received fax message, the machine does not print the message (Substitute Reception is used). After a larger size of paper is set in a cassette, the machine automatically prints the fax message.
3-4	Printing the sample image on reports Bit 4: 0, Bit 3: 0 = The upper half only Bit 4: 0, Bit 3: 1 = 50% reduction in sub-scan only Bit 4: 1, Bit 3: 0 = Same size Bit 4: 1, Bit 3: 1 = **Not used**	“Same size” means the sample image is printed at 100%, even if page separation occurs. User Parameter Switch 19 (13H) bit 4 must be set to “0” to enable this switch. Refer to Detailed Section Descriptions for more on this feature.
5-6	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
7	Equalizing the reduction ratio	0: When page separation has taken place, all the

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

	among separated pages (Page Separation) 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	pages are reduced with the same reduction ratio. 1: Only the last page is reduced to fit the selected paper size when page separation has taken place. Other pages are printed without reduction.

Printer Switch 0F [SP No. 1-103-016]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	Smoothing feature Bit 1: 0 Bit 0: 0 = Disabled Bit 1: 0 Bit 0: 1 = Disabled Bit 1: 1 Bit 0: 0 = Enabled Bit 1: 1 Bit 0: 1 = **Not used**	(0, 0) (0, 1): Disable smoothing if the machine receives halftone images from other manufacturers fax machines frequently.
2	Duplex printing 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: The machine always prints received fax messages in duplex printing mode:
3	Binding direction for Duplex printing 0: Left binding 1: Top binding	0: Sets the binding for the left edge of the stack. 1: Sets the binding for the top of the stack.
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

4.3.4 COMMUNICATION SWITCHES

Communication Switch 00 [SP No. 1-104-001]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	Compression modes available in receive mode Bit 1: 0 Bit 0: 0 = MH only Bit 1: 0 Bit 0: 1 = MH/MR Bit 1: 1 Bit 0: 0 = MH/MR/MMR Bit 1: 1 Bit 0: 1 = MH/MR/MMR/JBIG	These bits determine the compression capabilities to be declared in phase B (handshaking) of the T.30 protocol.
2-3	Compression modes available in transmit mode Bit 3: 0 Bit 2: 0 = MH only Bit 3: 0 Bit 2: 1 = MH/MR Bit 3: 1 Bit 2: 0 = MH/MR/MMR Bit 3: 1 Bit 2: 1 = MH/MR/MMR/JBIG	These bits determine the compression capabilities to be used in the transmission and to be declared in phase B (handshaking) of the T.30 protocol.
4	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
5	JBIG compression method: Reception 0: Only basic supported 1: Basic and optional both supported	Change the setting when communication problems occur using JBIG compression.
6	JBIG compression method: Transmission 0: Basic mode priority 1: Optional mode priority	Change the setting when communication problems occur using JBIG compression.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

Communication Switch 01 [SP No. 1-104-002]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	ECM 0: Off 1: On	If this bit is set to 0, ECM is switched off for all communications. In addition, V.8 protocol and JBIG compression are switched off automatically.
1	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
2-3	Wrong connection prevention method Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = None Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = 8 digit CSI Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 0 = 4 digit CSI Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 1 = CSI/RTI	(0,1) - The machine will disconnect the line without sending a fax message, if the last 8 digits of the received CSI do not match the last 8 digits of the dialed telephone number. This does not work when manually dialed. (1,0) - The same as above, except that only the last 4 digits are compared. (1,1) - The machine will disconnect the line without sending a fax message, if the other end does not identify itself with an RTI or CSI. (0,0) - Nothing is checked; transmission will always go ahead. Note ▪ This function does not work when dialing is done from the external telephone.
4-5	**Not used**	Do not change the setting.
6-7	Maximum printable page length available Bit 7: 0 Bit 6: 0 = No limit Bit 7: 0 Bit 6: 1 = B4 (364 mm) Bit 7: 1 Bit 6: 0 = A4 (297 mm) Bit 7: 1 Bit 6: 1 = **Not used**	The setting determined by these bits is informed to the transmitting terminal in the pre-message protocol exchange (in the DIS/NSF frames).

Communication Switch 02 [SP No. 1-104-003]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0	G3 Burst error threshold 0: Low 1: High	If there are more consecutive error lines in the received page than the threshold, the machine will send a negative response. The Low and High threshold values depend on the sub-scan resolution, and are as follows.	
		100 dpi	6(L) ➞ 12(H)
		200 dpi	12(L) ➞ 24(H)
		300 dpi	18(L) ➞ 36(H)
		400 dpi	24(L) ➞ 48(H)
1	Acceptable total error line ratio 0: 5% 1: 10%	If the error line ratio for a page exceeds the acceptable ratio, RTN will be sent to the other end.	
2	Treatment of pages received with errors during G3 reception 0: Deleted from memory without printing 1: Printed	0: Pages received with errors are not printed.	
3	Hang-up decision when a negative code (RTN or PIN) is received during G3 immediate transmission 0: No hang-up, 1: Hang-up	0: The next page will be sent even if RTN or PIN is received. 1: The machine will send DCN and hang up if it receives RTN or PIN. This bit is ignored for memory transmissions or if ECM is being used.	
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.	

Communication Switch 03 [SP No. 1-104-004]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	Maximum number of page	00 - FF (Hex) times.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

	retransmissions in a G3 memory transmission	This setting is not used if ECM is switched on. Default setting - 03(H)

Communication Switch 04 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 05 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Communication Switch 09 [SP No. 1-104-010]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	IP-Fax dial interval setting	Adjusts the interval of the I-fax dialing. The interval of I-fax dialing is calculated by following formula. [Interval time = specified value with this switch x 0.2 msec]

Communication Switch 0A [SP No. 1-104-011]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Point of resumption of memory transmission upon redialing 0: From the error page 1: From page 1	0: The transmission begins from the page where transmission failed the previous time. 1: Transmission begins from the first page, using normal memory transmission.
1-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

Communication Switch 0B [SP No. 1-104-012]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**

0-3	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
4	Print setting when receiving a request to forward a fax	0: The machine does not print fax data. 1: The machine prints fax data.
5-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

Communication Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings)

Communication Switch 0D [SP No. 1-104-014]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-7	The available memory threshold, below which ringing detection (and therefore reception into memory) is disabled	00 to FF (Hex), unit = 4 kbytes (e.g., 06(H) = 24 kbytes) One page is about 24 kbytes. The machine refers to this setting before each fax reception. If the amount of remaining memory is below this threshold, the machine cannot receive any fax messages. If this setting is kept at 0, the machine will detect ringing signals and go into receive mode even if there is no memory available. This will result in communication failure.

Communication Switch 0E [SP No. 1-104-015]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-7	Minimum interval between automatic dialing attempts	06 to FF (Hex), unit = 2 s (e.g., 06(H) = 12 s) This value is the minimum time that the machine waits before it dials the next destination.

Communication Switch 0F – Not used (do not change the settings.)

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

Communication Switch 10 [SP No. 1-104-017]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	Memory transmission: Maximum number of dialing attempts to the same destination	01 – FE (Hex) times

Communication Switch 11 – Not used (do not change the settings.)

Communication Switch 12 [SP No. 1-104-019]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	Memory transmission: Interval between dialing attempts to the same destination	01 – FF (Hex) minutes

Communication Switch 13 – Not used (do not change the settings.)

Communication Switch 14 [SP No. 1-104-021]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Inch-to-mm conversion during transmission 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: In immediate transmission, data scanned in inch format are transmitted without conversion. In memory transmission, data stored in the SAF memory in mm format are transmitted without conversion. Note: When storing the scanned data into SAF memory, the fax unit always converts the data into mm format. 1: The machine converts the scanned data or stored data in the SAF memory to the format which was specified in the set-up protocol

		(DIS/NSF) before transmission.
1-5	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.
6-7	Available unit of resolution in which fax messages are received Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0 = mm Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1 = inch Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 0 = mm and inch (default) Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1 = **Not used**	For the best performance, do not change the factory settings. The setting determined by these bits is informed to the transmitting terminal in the pre-message protocol exchange (in the DIS/NSF frames).

Communication Switch 15 – Not used (do not change the settings)

Communication Switch 16 [SP No. 1-104-023]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.
1	Optional G3 unit (G3-2) 0: Off 1: On	Change this bit to "1" when installing the first optional G3 unit (G3-2).
2	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.
3	Optional G3 unit (G3-3) 0: Off 1: On	Change this bit to "1" when installing the second optional G3 unit (G3-3).
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.

Communication Switch 17 [SP No. 1-104-024]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	SEP reception	0: Polling transmission to another maker's

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

	0: Disabled 1: Enabled	machine using the SEP (Selective Polling) signal is disabled.
1	SUB reception 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Confidential reception to another maker's machine using the SUB (Sub-address) signal is disabled.
2	PWD reception 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Disables features that require PWD (Password) signal reception.
3-6	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.
7	Action when there is no box with an F-code that matches the received SUB code 0: Disconnect the line 1: Receive the message (using normal reception mode)	Change this setting when the customer requires.

Communication Switch 18 [SP No. 1-104-025]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-4	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.
5	IP-Fax dial-in routing selection 0: Off 1: On	1: Transfers receiving data to each IP-Fax dial-in number. IP-Fax dial-in number is 4 digit-number.
6-7	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.

Communication Switch 19 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1A - Not used (do not change the settings)

Communication Switch 1B [SP No. 1-104-028]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-7	Extension access code (0 to 7) to turn V.8 protocol On/Off 0: On 1: Off	If the PABX does not support V.8/V.34 protocol procedure, set this bit to “1” to disable V.8. Example: If “0” is the PSTN access code, set bit 0 to 1. When the machine detects “0” as the first dialed number, it automatically disables V.8 protocol. (Alternatively, if “3” is the PSTN access code, set bit 3 to 1.)

Communication Switch 1C [SP No. 1-104-029]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	Extension access code (8 and 9) to turn V.8 protocol On/Off 0: On 1: Off	Refer to communication switch 1B. Example: If “8” is the PSTN access code, set bit 0 to 1. When the machine detects “8” as the first dialed number, it automatically disables V.8 protocol. (If “9” is the PSTN access code, use bit 1.)
2-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

Communication Switch 1D - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1E - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1F - Not used (do not change the settings)

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.3.5 G3 SWITCHES

G3 Switch 00 [SP No. 1-105-001]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0 1	Monitor speaker during communication (tx and rx) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = Disabled Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = Up to Phase B Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = All the time Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = **Not used**	(0, 0): The monitor speaker is disabled all through the communication. (0, 1): The monitor speaker is on up to phase B in the T.30 protocol. (1, 0): Used for testing. The monitor speaker is on all through the communication. Make sure that you reset these bits after testing.
2	Monitor speaker during memory transmission 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: The monitor speaker is enabled during memory transmission.
3-5	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
6	G3 mode selection for direct line 0: Off 1:On	1: G3 communication through the direct line is enabled.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 01 [SP No. 1-105-002]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
2-3	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
4	DIS frame length 0: 10 bytes 1: 4 bytes	1: The bytes in the DIS frame after the 4th byte will not be transmitted (set to 1 if there are communication problems with PC-based faxes

		which cannot receive the extended DIS frames).
5	**Not used**	Do not change the setting.
6	Forbid CED/AMsam output 0: Off 1: On (Forbid output)	Do not change this setting (Default: 0: Off), unless communication problem is caused by a CED or ANSam transmission.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the setting.

G3 Switch 02 [SP No. 1-105-003]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	G3 protocol mode used 0: Standard and non-standard 1: Standard only	Change this bit to 1 only when the other end can only communicate with machines that send T.30-standard frames only. 1: Disables NSF/NSS signals (these are used in non-standard mode communication)
1-6	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
7	Short preamble 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Refer to Appendix B in the Group 3 Facsimile Manual for details about Short Preamble.

G3 Switch 03 [SP No. 1-105-004]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	DIS detection number (Echo countermeasure) 0: 1 1: 2	0: The machine will hang up if it receives the same DIS frame twice. 1: Before sending DCS, the machine will wait for the second DIS which is caused by echo on the line.
1	**Not Used**	Do not change the settings.
2	V.8 protocol 0: Disabled	0: V.8/V.34 communications will not be possible. Note:

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

	1: Enabled	Do not set to 0 unless the line condition is always bad enough to slow down the data rate to 14.4 kbps or lower.
3	ECM frame size 0: 256 bytes 1: 64 bytes	Keep this bit at “0” in most cases.
4	CTC transmission conditions 0: After one PPR signal received 1: After four PPR signals received (ITU-T standard)	0: When using ECM in non-standard (NSF/NSS) mode, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving a PPR, if the following condition is met in communications at 14.4, 12.0, 9.6, and 7.2 kbps. $\sqrt{\text{NTransmit} \leq \text{NResend}}$ NTransmit- Number of transmitted frames NResend- Number of frames to be retransmitted 1: When using ECM, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving four PPRs. PPR, CTC: These are ECM protocol signals. This bit is not effective in V.34 communications.
5	Modem rate used for the next page after receiving a negative code (RTN or PIN) 0: No change 1: Fallback	1: The machine’s tx modem rate will fall back before sending the next page if a negative code is received. This bit is ignored if ECM is being used.
6	**Not Used**	Do not change the settings
7	Select detection of reverse polarity in ringing 0: Off 1: On	This switch is used to prevent reverse polarity in ringing on the phone line (applied to PSTN-G3 ringing). Do not change this setting 0: No detection ⇒ Outside Japan 1: Detection ⇒ Inside Japan only

G3 Switch 04 [SP No. 1-105-005]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-3	Training error detection threshold	0 - F (Hex); 0 - 15 bits If the number of error bits in the received TCF is below this threshold, the machine informs the sender that training has succeeded.
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 05 [SP No. 1-105-006]						
No	**FUNCTION**					**COMMENTS**
0-3	Initial Tx modem rate					These bits set the initial starting modem rate for transmission. Use the dedicated transmission parameters if you need to change this for specific receivers. If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually. Cross reference V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2
	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	bps	
	0	0	0	1	2.4k	
	0	0	1	0	4.8k	
	0	0	1	1	7.2k	
	0	1	0	0	9.6k	
	0	1	0	1	12.0k	
	0	1	1	0	14.4k	
	0	1	1	1	16.8k	
	1	0	0	0	19.2k	
	1	0	0	1	21.6k	
	1	0	1	0	24.0k	
	1	0	1	1	26.4k	
	1	1	0	0	28.8k	
	1	1	0	1	31.2k	

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

	1	1	1	0	33.6k	
	Other settings - **Not used**					
4-5	Initial modem type for 9.6 k or 7.2 kbps. Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 0 = V.29 Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 1 = V.17 Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 0 = V.34 Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 1 = **Not used**					These bits set the initial modem type for 9.6 and 7.2 kbps, if the initial modem rate is set at these speeds.
6-7	**Not used**					Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 06 [SP No. 1-105-007]

No	FUNCTION					COMMENTS
0-3	Initial Rx modem rate					▪ These bits set the initial starting modem rate for reception. ▪ Use a lower setting if high speeds pose problems during reception. ▪ If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually. Cross reference: V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2
	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	bps	
	0	0	0	1	2.4k	
	0	0	1	0	4.8k	
	0	0	1	1	7.2k	
	0	1	0	0	9.6k	
	0	1	0	1	12.0k	
	0	1	1	0	14.4k	
	0	1	1	1	16.8k	
	1	0	0	0	19.2k	
	1	0	0	1	21.6k	
	1	0	1	0	24.0k	
	1	0	1	1	26.4k	

<table>
<tr><td></td><td><table>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>28.8k</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>31.2k</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>33.6k</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Other settings - Not used</td></tr>
</table></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4-7</td><td><table>
<tr><td colspan="5">Modem types available for reception</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 7</td><td>Bit 6</td><td>Bit 5</td><td>Bit 4</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>V.27ter</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>V.27ter,V.29</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>V.27ter, V.29, V.33</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V.33</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V33, V.34</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Other settings - Not used</td></tr>
</table></td><td>▪ The setting of these bits is used to inform the transmitting terminal of the available modem type for the machine in receive mode.
▪ If V.34 is not selected, V.8 protocol must be disabled manually.
Cross reference:
V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2</td></tr>
</table>

G3 Switch 07 [SP No. 1-105-008]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	PSTN cable equalizer (tx mode: Internal) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = None Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = Low Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = Medium Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = High	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Use the dedicated transmission parameters for specific receivers. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

		Communication error Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. Note ▪ This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.
2-3	PSTN cable equalizer (rx mode: Internal) Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = None Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = Low Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 0 = Medium Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 1 = High	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc. Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. Note ▪ This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.
4	PSTN cable equalizer (V.8/V.17 rx mode: External) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Keep this bit at “1”.
5	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
6	Parameter selection for dial tone detection 0: Normal parameter 1: Specific parameter	0: This uses the fixed table in the ROM for dial tone detection. 1: This uses the specific parameter adjusted with SRAM (69ECBEH - 69ECDEH). Select this if the dial tone cannot be detected when the "Normal parameter: 0" is selected.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)

G3 Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

G3 Switch 0A [SP No. 1-105-011]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	Maximum allowable carrier drop during image data reception Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 200 (ms) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = 400 (ms) Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = 800 (ms) Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = **Not used**	These bits set the acceptable modem carrier drop time. Try using a longer setting if error code 0-22 is frequent.
2	Select cancellation of high-speed RX if carrier signal lost while receiving 0: Off 1: On	This switch setting determines if high-speed receiving ends if the carrier signal is lost when receiving during non-ECM mode
3	**Not used**	Do not change the settings
4	Maximum allowable frame interval during image data reception. 0: 5 s 1: 13 s	This bit set the maximum interval between EOL (end-of-line) signals and the maximum interval between ECM frames from the other end. Try using a longer setting if error code 0-21 is frequent.
5	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
6	Reconstruction time for the first line in receive mode 0: 6 s 1: 12 s	When the sending terminal is controlled by a computer, there may be a delay in receiving page data after the local machine accepts set-up data and sends CFR. This is outside the T.30 recommendation. But, if this delay occurs, set this bit to 1 to give the sending machine more time to send data. Refer to error code 0-20.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

		ITU-T T.30 recommendation: The first line should come within 5 s of CFR.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings).
G3 Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings)
G3 Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings).

G3 Switch 0E [SP No 1-105-015]		
0-7	Set CNG send time interval Some machines on the receiving side may not be able to automatically switch the 3-second CNG interval.	
	High order bit	3000-2250ms: 3000-50xNms 3000 – 50 x Nms 0F (3000 ms) ≤ N ≤ FF (2250 ms)
	Low order bit	00-0E(3000-3700ms: 3000+50xNms 3000 – 50 x Nms 0F (3000 ms) ≤ N ≤ 0F (3700 ms)

G3 Switch 0F [SP No. 1-105-016]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Alarm when an error occurred in Phase C or later 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	If the customer wants to hear an alarm after each error communication, change this bit to “1”.
1	Alarm when the handset is off-hook at the end of communication 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	If the customer wants to hear an alarm if the handset is off-hook at the end of fax communication, change this bit to “1”.

2	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
4	Sidaa manual calibration setting 0: Off 1: On	1: manually calibrates for communication with a line, whose current change occurs such as an optical fiber line.
5-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

http://www.manuals4you.com

4.3.6 G3-2/3 SWITCHES

These switches require an optional G3 interface unit.

G3-3 switches are the same as for G3-2 switches.

G3-2 Switch 00 [SP No. 1-106-001]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	Monitor speaker during communication (tx and rx) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = Disabled Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = Up to Phase B Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = All the time Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = Not used	(0, 0): The monitor speaker is disabled all through the communication. (0, 1): The monitor speaker is on up to phase B in the T.30 protocol. (1, 0): Used for testing. The monitor speaker is on all through the communication. Make sure that you reset these bits after testing.
2	Monitor speaker during memory transmission 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: The monitor speaker is enabled during memory transmission.
3-6	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3-2 Switch 01 [SP No. 1-106-002]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-3	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
4	DIS frame length 0: 10 bytes, 1: 4 bytes	1: The bytes in the DIS frame after the 4th byte will not be transmitted (set to 1 if there are communication problems with PC-based faxes which cannot receive the extended DIS frames).
5	**Not used**	Do not change the setting.
6	CED/ANSam transmission 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Do not change this setting, unless the communication problem is caused by the CED/ANSam transmission.

7	**Not used**	Do not change the setting.

G3-2 Switch 02 [SP No. 1-106-003]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	G3 protocol mode used 0: Standard and non-standard 1: Standard only	Change this bit to 1 only when the other end can only communicate with machines that send T.30-standard frames only. 1: Disables NSF/NSS signals (these are used in non-standard mode communication)
1-4	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
5	Use of modem rate history for transmission using Quick/Speed Dials 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Communications using Quick/Speed Dials always start from the highest modem rate. 1: The machine refers to the modem rate history for communications with the same machine when determining the most suitable rate for the current communication.
6	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
7	Short preamble 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	Refer to Appendix B in the Group 3 Facsimile Manual for details about Short Preamble.

G3-2 Switch 03 [SP No. 1-106-004]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	DIS detection number (Echo countermeasure) 0: 1 1: 2	0: The machine will hang up if it receives the same DIS frame twice. 1: Before sending DCS, the machine will wait for the second DIS which is caused by echo on the line.
1	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
2	V.8 protocol	0: V.8/V.34 communications will not be possible.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

	0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Note ▪ Do not set to 0 unless the line condition is always bad enough to slow down the data rate to 14.4 kbps or lower.
3	ECM frame size 0: 256 bytes 1: 64 bytes	Keep this bit at “0” in most cases.
4	CTC transmission conditions 0: After one PPR signal received 1: After four PPR signals received (ITU-T standard)	0: When using ECM in non-standard (NSF/NSS) mode, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving a PPR, if the following condition is met in communications at 14.4, 12.0, 9.6, and 7.2 kbps. $\sqrt{\text{NTransmit} \leq \text{NResend}}$ NTransmit- Number of transmitted frames NResend- Number of frames to be retransmitted 1: When using ECM, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving four PPRs. PPR, CTC: These are ECM protocol signals. This bit is not effective in V.34 communications.
5	Modem rate used for the next page after receiving a negative code (RTN or PIN) 0: No change, 1: Fallback	1: The machine’s tx modem rate will fall back before sending the next page if a negative code is received. This bit is ignored if ECM is being used.
6	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3-2 Switch 04 [SP No. 1-106-005]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**

0-3	Training error detection threshold	0 - F (Hex); 0 - 15 bits If the number of error bits in the received TCF is below this threshold, the machine informs the sender that training has succeeded.
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3-2 Switch 05 [SP No. 1-106-006]

No	FUNCTION					COMMENTS
0-3	Initial Tx modem rate					These bits set the initial starting modem rate for transmission. Use the dedicated transmission parameters if you need to change this for specific receivers. If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually. **Cross reference** V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2
	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	bps	
	0	0	0	1	2.4k	
	0	0	1	0	4.8k	
	0	0	1	1	7.2k	
	0	1	0	0	9.6k	
	0	1	0	1	12.0k	
	0	1	1	0	14.4k	
	0	1	1	1	16.8k	
	1	0	0	0	19.2k	
	1	0	0	1	21.6k	
	1	0	1	0	24.0k	
	1	0	1	1	26.4k	
	1	1	0	0	28.8k	
	1	1	0	1	31.2k	
	1	1	1	0	33.6k	
	Other settings - **Not used**					

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

4-5	Initial modem type for 9.6 k or 7.2 kbps. Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 0 = V.29 Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 1 = V.17 Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 0 = V.34 Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 1 = **Not used**	These bits set the initial modem type for 9.6 and 7.2 kbps, if the initial modem rate is set at these speeds.
6-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3-2 Switch 06 [SP No. 1-106-007]

No	FUNCTION					COMMENTS
0-3	Initial Rx modem rate					▪ These bits set the initial starting modem rate for reception. ▪ Use a lower setting if high speeds pose problems during reception. ▪ If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually. **Cross reference**: V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2
	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	bps	
	0	0	0	1	2.4k	
	0	0	1	0	4.8k	
	0	0	1	1	7.2k	
	0	1	0	0	9.6k	
	0	1	0	1	12.0k	
	0	1	1	0	14.4k	
	0	1	1	1	16.8k	
	1	0	0	0	19.2k	
	1	0	0	1	21.6k	
	1	0	1	0	24.0k	
	1	0	1	1	26.4k	
	1	1	0	0	28.8k	
	1	1	0	1	31.2k	

<table>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="5"><table>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>33.6k</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Other settings - Not used</td></tr>
</table></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4-7</td><td colspan="5"><table>
<tr><td colspan="5">Modem types available for reception</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 7</td><td>Bit 6</td><td>Bit 5</td><td>Bit 4</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>V.27ter</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>V.27ter,V.29</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>V.27ter, V.29, V.33</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V.33</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V33, V.34</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Other settings - Not used</td></tr>
</table></td><td>▪ The setting of these bits is used to inform the transmitting terminal of the available modem type for the machine in receive mode.
▪ If V.34 is not selected, V.8 protocol must be disabled manually.
Cross reference:
V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2</td></tr>
</table>

G3-2 Switch 07 [SP No. 1-106-008]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	PSTN cable equalizer (tx mode: Internal) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = None Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = Low Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = Medium Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = High	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Use the dedicated transmission parameters for specific receivers. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. Communication error Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. Note

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

		▪ This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.
2-3	PSTN cable equalizer (rx mode: Internal) Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = None Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = Low Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 0 = Medium Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 1 = High	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc. Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. Note ▪ This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.
4	PSTN cable equalizer (V.8/V.17 rx mode: External) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Keep this bit at “1”.
5	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
6	Parameter selection for dial tone detection 0: Normal parameter 1: Specific parameter	0: This uses the fixed table in the ROM for dial tone detection. 1: This uses the specific parameter adjusted with SRAM (69ECBEH - 69ECDEH). Select this if the dial tone cannot be detected when the "Normal parameter: 0" is selected.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3-2 Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)
G3-2 Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

G3-2 Switch 0A [SP No. 1-106-011]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**

0-1	Maximum allowable carrier drop during image data reception Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 200 (ms) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = 400 (ms) Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = 800 (ms) Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = **Not used**	These bits set the acceptable modem carrier drop time. Try using a longer setting if error code 0-22 is frequent.
2	Select cancellation of high-speed RX if carrier signal lost while receiving 0: Off 1: On	This switch setting determines if high-speed receiving ends if the carrier signal is lost when receiving during non-ECM mode
3	**Not used**	Do not change the settings
4	Maximum allowable frame interval during image data reception. 0: 5 s 1: 13 s	This bit set the maximum interval between EOL (end-of-line) signals and the maximum interval between ECM frames from the other end. Try using a longer setting if error code 0-21 is frequent.
5	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
6	Reconstruction time for the first line in receive mode 0: 6 s 1: 12 s	When the sending terminal is controlled by a computer, there may be a delay in receiving page data after the local machine accepts set-up data and sends CFR. This is outside the T.30 recommendation. But, if this delay occurs, set this bit to 1 to give the sending machine more time to send data. Refer to error code 0-20. ITU-T T.30 recommendation: The first line should come within 5 s of CFR.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3-2 Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings.)

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

G3-2 Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings.)
G3-2 Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings)
G3-2 Switch 0E - Not used (do not change the settings)
G3-2 Switch 0F - Not used (do not change the settings)

4.3.7 IP FAX SWITCHES

IP Fax Switch 00 [SP No. 1-111-001]		
No.	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	**Not used**	Do not change this setting.
1	IP Fax Transport 0: TCP, 1: UDP	Selects TCP or UDP protocol for IP-Fax
2	IP Fax single port selection 0: OFF, 1: ON (enable)	Selects single data port.
3	IP Fax double ports (single data port) selection 0: OFF, 1: ON (enable)	Selects whether IP-Fax uses a double port.
4	IP Fax Gatekeeper 0: OFF, 1: ON (enable)	Enables/disables the communication via the gatekeeper for IP-Fax.
5	IP Fax T30 bit signal reverse 0: LSB first, 1: MSB first	Reverses the T30 bit signal.
6	IP Fax max bit rate setting 0: Not affected, 1: Affected	When "0" is selected, the max bit rate does not affect the value of the DIS/DCS. When "1" is selected, the max bit rate affects the value of the DIS/DCS.
7	IP Fax received telephone number confirmation 0: No confirmation, 1: Confirmation	When "0" is selected, fax data is received without checking the telephone number. When "1" is selected, fax data is received only when confirming that the telephone number from the sender matches the registered telephone number in this machine. If this confirmation fails, the line is disconnected.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

<table>
<tr><th colspan="8">IP-Fax Switch 01</th></tr>
<tr><th>No.</th><th colspan="6">FUNCTION</th><th>COMMENTS</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">0-3</td><td colspan="6">Select IP FAX Delay Level</td><td rowspan="8">Raise the level by selecting a higher setting if too many transmission errors are occurring on the network.
If TCP/UDP is enabled on the network, raise this setting on the T.30 machine. Increasing the delay time allows the recovery of more lost packets.
If only UDP is enabled, increase the number of redundant packets.
Level 1~2: 3 Redundant packets
Level 3: 4 Redundant packets</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit3</td><td>Bit2</td><td>Bit1</td><td>Bit0</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Level 0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Level 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Level 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Level 3</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4-7</td><td colspan="5">IP Fax preamble wait time setting</td><td>Selects the preamble wait time.
[00 to 0f]
There are 16 values in this 4-bit binary switch combination.
Waiting time: set value level x 100 ms
Max: 0f (1500 ms) Min: 00 (No wait time)
The default is "0000" (00H).</td></tr>
</table>

IP Fax Switch 02 [SP No. 1-111-003]		
No.	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	IP Fax bit signal reverse setting 0: Maker code setting 1: Internal bit switch setting	When "0" is selected, the bit signal reverse method is decided by the maker code. When "1" is selected, the bit signal reverse method is decided by the internal bit switch. When communicating between IP Fax devices, LSB first is selected.)
1	IP Fax transmission speed setting 0: Modem speed 1: No limitation	Selects the transmit speed for IP Fax communication.

2	SIP transport setting 0: TCP 1: UDP	This bit switch sets the transport that has priority for receiving IP Fax data. This function is activated only when the sender has both TCP and UDP.
3	CCM connection 0: No CCM connection 1: CCM connection	When "1" is selected, only the connection call message with H.323 or no tunneled H.245 is transmitted via CCM.
4	Message reception selection from non-registered SIP server 0: Answer 1: Not answer	0: This answers the INVITE message from the SIP server not registered for the machine. 1: This does not receive the INVITE message from the SIP server not registered for the machine and send a refusal message.
5	ECM communication setting 0: No limit for image compression 1: Limit for image compression	0: This does not limit the type of the image compression with ECM communication. 1: When the other end machine is Ciscco, this permits the image compression other than JBIG or MMR with ECM communication.
6-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

IP Fax Switch 03 [SP No. 1-111-004]		
No.	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Effective field limitation for G3 standard function information 0: OFF, 1: 4byte (DIS)	Limits the effective field for standard G3 function information.
1	Switching between G3 standard and G3 non standard 0: Enable switching 1: G3 standard only	Enables/disables switching between G3 standard and G3 non-standard.
2	Not used.	Do not change this setting.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

3	ECM frame size selection at transmitting 0: 256byte, 1: 64byte	Selects the ECM frame size for sending.
4	DIS detection times for echo prevention 0: 1 time, 1: 2 times	Sets the number of times for DIS to detect echoes.
5	CTC transmission selection 0: PPRx1 1: PPRx4	When "0" is selected, the transmission condition is decided by error frame numbers. When "1" is selected, the transmission condition is based on the ITU-T method.
6	Shift down setting at receiving negative code 0: OFF, 1: ON	Selects whether to shift down when negative codes are received.
7	**Not used**	Do not change this setting.

IP Fax Switch 04 [SP No. 1-111-005]		
No.	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	TCF error threshold	Sets the TCF error threshold level. [00 to 0f] The default is "1111" (0fH).
1		
2		
3		
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

IP Fax Switch 05 [SP No. 1-111-006]		
No.	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-3	Modem bit rate setting for transmission Sets the modem bit rate for transmission. The default is "0110" (14.4K bps).	

	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
	0	0	0	1	2400 bps
	0	0	1	1	4800 bps
	0	0	1	1	7200 bps
	0	1	0	0	9600 bps
	0	1	0	1	12.0 Kbps
	0	1	1	0	14.4 Kbps
4-5	Modem setting for transmission Sets the modem for transmission. The default is "00" (V29). Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 0 = V29 Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 1 = V17 Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 0 = V34* Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 1 = **Not used** *V34 is not supported for IP-Fax communication.				
6-7	**Not used**		Do not change these settings.		

IP Fax Switch 06 [SP No. 1-111-007]					
No.	**FUNCTION**		**COMMENTS**		
0-3	Modem bit rate setting for reception Sets the modem bit rate for reception. The default is "0110" (14.4K bps).				
	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
	0	0	0	1	2400 bps
	0	0	1	0	4800 bps
	0	0	1	1	7200 bps
	0	1	0	0	9600 bps

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

	0	1	0		1	12.0 Kbps
	0	1	1		0	14.4 Kbps
4-7	Modem setting for reception Sets the modem type for reception. The default is "0100" (V27ter, V29, V17).					
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5		Bit 4	
	0	0	0		1	V27ter
	0	0	1		0	V27ter, V29
	0	0	1		1	V27ter, V29, V33 (invalid)
	0	1	0		0	V27ter, V29, V17
	0	1	0		1	V27ter, V29, V17, V34*
	*V34 is not supported for IP-Fax communication.					

IP Fax Switch 07 [SP No. 1-111-008]		
No.	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	TSI information 0: Not added, 1: Added	Adds or does not add TSI information to NSS(S).
1	DCN transmission setting at T1 timeout 0: Not transmitted, 1: Transmitted	Transmits or does not transmit DCN at T1 timeout.
2	**Not used**	Do not change this setting.
3	Hang up setting at DIS reception disabled 0: No hang up 1: Hang up after transmitting DCN	Sets whether the machine disconnects after DIS reception.

4	Number of times for training 0: 1 time, 1: 2 times	Selects the number of times training is done at the same bit rate.
5	Space CSI transmission setting at no CSI registration 0: Not transmitted, 1: Transmitted	When "0" is selected, frame data is enabled. When "1" is selected, the transmitted data is all spaces.
6-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

IP Fax Switch 08 [SP No. 1-111-009]		
No.	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	T1 timer adjustment Adjusts the T1 timer. The default is "00" (35 seconds). Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 35 sec Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = 40 sec Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = 50 sec Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = 60 sec	-
2-3	T4 timer adjustment Adjust the T4 timer. The default is "00" (3 seconds). Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = 3 sec Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = 3.5 sec Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 0 = 4 sec Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 1 = 5 sec	-
4-5	T0 timer adjustment Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 0 = 75 sec Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 1 = 120 sec Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 0 = 180 sec Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 1 = 240 sec	Adjusts the fail safe timer. This timer sets the interval between "setup" data transmission and T.38 phase decision. If your destination return is late on the network or G3 fax return is late, adjust the longer interval timer. The default is "00" (75 seconds).
6-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit Switches

IP Fax Switch 09 [SP No. 1-111-010]		
No.	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Network I/F setting for SIP connection 0: IPv4 1: IPv6.	Selects the connection type (IPV4 or IPV6) to connect to the SIP server.
1	Network I/F setting for Fax communication 0: Same setting as SIP server connection 1: Automatic setting	0: The I/F setting for fax communication follows the setting for SIP server connection. 1: The negotiation between the SIP server and the device decides whether IPv4 or IPv6 is used for the I/F setting for fax communication.
2	Record-route setting 0: Disable 1: Enable	0: Disables the record-route function of the SIP server. 1: Enables the record-route function of the SIP server.
3-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

4.4 NCU PARAMETERS

The following tables give the RAM addresses and the parameter calculation units that the machine uses for ringing signal detection and automatic dialing. The factory settings for each country are also given. Most of these must be changed by RAM read/write (SP2-102), but some can be changed using NCU Parameter programming (SP2-103, 104 and 105); if SP2-103, 104 and 105 can be used, this will be indicated in the Remarks column. The RAM is programmed in hex code unless (BCD) is included in the Unit column.

Note

- The following addresses describe settings for the standard NCU.
- Change the fourth digit from “5” to “6” (e.g. 680500 to 680600) for the settings for the first optional G3 interface unit and from “5” to “7” (e.g. 680700) for the settings for the second optional G3 interface unit.

Address	Function					
680500	Country/Area code for NCU parameters					
	Use the Hex value to program the country/area code directly into this address, or use the decimal value to program it using SP2-103-001					
	Country /Area	**Decimal**	**Hex**	**Country /Area**	**Decimal**	**Hex**
	France	00	00	USA	17	11
	Germany	01	01	Asia	18	12
	UK	02	02	Hong Kong	20	14
	Italy	03	03	South Africa	21	15
	Austria	04	04	Australia	22	16
	Belgium	05	05	New Zealand	26	17
	Denmark	06	06	Singapore	24	18
	Finland	07	07	Malaysia	25	19

http://www.manuals4you.com

NCU Parameters

Address	Function					
	Ireland	08	08	China	26	1A
	Norway	09	09	Taiwan	27	1B
	Sweden	10	0A	Korea	28	1C
	Switzerland	11	0B	Turkey	32	20
	Portugal	12	0C	Greece	33	21
	Holland	13	0D	Hungary	34	22
	Spain	14	0E	Czech	35	23
	Israel	15	0F	Poland	36	24

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680501	Line current detection time	20 ms	Line current detection is disabled. Line current is not detected if 680501 contains FF.
680502	Line current wait time		
680503	Line current drop detect time		
680504	PSTN dial tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680505	PSTN dial tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		
680506	PSTN dial tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680507	PSTN dial tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		
680508	PSTN dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 680508 contains FF(H), the machine
680509	PSTN dial tone reset time (LOW)		

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
68050A	PSTN dial tone reset time (HIGH)		pauses for the pause time (address 68050D / 68050E). Italy: See Note 2.
68050B	PSTN dial tone continuous tone time		
68050C	PSTN dial tone permissible drop time		
68050D	PSTN wait interval (LOW)		-
68050E	PSTN wait interval (HIGH)		
68050F	PSTN ring-back tone detection time	20 ms	Detection is disabled if this contains FF.
680510	PSTN ring-back tone off detection time	20 ms	-
680511	PSTN detection time for silent period after ring-back tone detected (LOW)	20 ms	-
680512	PSTN detection time for silent period after ring-back tone detected (HIGH)	20 ms	-
680513	PSTN busy tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680514	PSTN busy tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		
680515	PSTN busy tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680516	PSTN busy tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		
680517	PABX dial tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone

http://www.manuals4you.com

NCU Parameters

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680518	PABX dial tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		detection is disabled.
680519	PABX dial tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
68051A	PABX dial tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		
68051B	PABX dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 68051B contains FF, the machine pauses for the pause time (680520 / 680521).
68051C	PABX dial tone reset time (LOW)		
68051D	PABX dial tone reset time (HIGH)		
68051E	PABX dial tone continuous tone time		
68051F	PABX dial tone permissible drop time		
680520	PABX wait interval (LOW)		-
680521	PABX wait interval (HIGH)		
680522	PABX ringback tone detection time	20 ms	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680523	PABX ringback tone off detection time	20 ms	
680524	PABX detection time for silent period after ringback tone detected (LOW)	20 ms	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680525	PABX detection time for silent period after ringback tone detected (HIGH)	20 ms	
680526	PABX busy tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680527	PABX busy tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		detection is disabled.
680528	PABX busy tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680529	PABX busy tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		
68052A	Busy tone ON time: range 1	20 ms	-
68052B	Busy tone OFF time: range 1		
68052C	Busy tone ON time: range 2		
68052D	Busy tone OFF time: range 2		
68052E	Busy tone ON time: range 3		
68052F	Busy tone OFF time: range 3	20 ms	
680530	Busy tone ON time: range 4		
680531	Busy tone OFF time: range 4		
680532	Busy tone continuous tone detection time		
680533	Busy tone signal state time tolerance for all ranges, and number of cycles required for detection (a setting of 4 cycles means that ON-OFF-ON or OFF-ON-OFF must be detected twice). Tolerance (±) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 75% Bits 2 and 3 must always be kept at 0. Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 50% Bits 2 and 3 must always be kept at 0. Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 25% Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 12.5% Bits 7, 6, 5, 4 - number of cycles required for cadence detection		
680534	International dial tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone

http://www.manuals4you.com

NCU Parameters

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680535	International dial tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		detection is disabled.
680536	International dial tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680537	International dial tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		
680538	International dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 680538 contains FF, the machine pauses for the pause time (68053D / 68053E). Belgium: See Note 2.
680539	International dial tone reset time (LOW)		
68053A	International dial tone reset time (HIGH)		
68053B	International dial tone continuous tone time		
68053C	International dial tone permissible drop time		
68053D	International dial wait interval (LOW)		-
68053E	International dial wait interval (HIGH)		
68053F	Country dial tone upper frequency limit (HIGH)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680540	Country dial tone upper frequency limit (LOW)		
680541	Country dial tone lower frequency limit (HIGH)		If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680542	Country dial tone lower frequency		

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
	limit (LOW)		
680543	Country dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 680543 contains FF, the machine pauses for the pause time (680548 / 680549).
680544	Country dial tone reset time (LOW)		
680545	Country dial tone reset time (HIGH)		
680546	Country dial tone continuous tone time	-	-
680547	Country dial tone permissible drop time	20 ms	-
680548	Country dial wait interval (LOW)		
680549	Country dial wait interval (HIGH)		
68054A	Time between opening or closing the DO relay and opening the OHDI relay	1 ms	See Notes 3, 6 and 8. SP2-103-012 (parameter 11).
68054B	Break time for pulse dialing	1 ms	See Note 3. SP2-103-013 (parameter 12).
68054C	Make time for pulse dialing	1 ms	See Note 3. SP2-103-014 (parameter 13).
68054D	Time between final OHDI relay closure and DO relay opening or closing	1 ms	See Notes 3, 6 and 8. SP2-103-015 (parameter 14). This parameter is only valid in Europe.
68054E	Minimum pause between dialed digits (pulse dial mode)	20 ms	See Note 3 and 8. SP2-103-016

http://www.manuals4you.com

NCU Parameters

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
			(parameter 15).
68054F	Time waited when a pause is entered at the operation panel		SP2-103-017 (parameter 16). See Note 3.
680550	DTMF tone on time	1 ms	SP2-103-018 (parameter 17).
680551	DTMF tone off time		SP2-103-019 (parameter 18).
680552	Tone attenuation level of DTMF signals while dialing	-N x 0.5 –3.5 dBm	SP2-103-020 (parameter 19). See Note 5.
680553	Tone attenuation value difference between high frequency tone and low frequency tone in DTMF signals	-dBm x 0.5	SP2-103-021 (parameter 20). The setting must be less than –5dBm, and should not exceed the setting at 680552h above. See Note 5.
680554	PSTN: DTMF tone attenuation level after dialling	-N x 0.5 –3.5 dBm	SP2-103-022 (parameter 21). See Note 5.
680555	ISDN: DTMF tone attenuation level after dialling	-dBm x 0.5	See Note 5
680556	Not used	-	Do not change the settings.
680557	Time between 68054Dh (NCU parameter 14) and 68054Eh (NCU parameter 15)	1 ms	This parameter takes effect when the country code is set to France.
680558	Not used	-	Do not change the

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
			setting.
680559	Grounding time (ground start mode)	20 ms	The Gs relay is closed for this interval.
68055A	Break time (flash start mode)	1 ms	The OHDI relay is open for this interval.
68055B	International dial access code (High)	BCD	For a code of 100: 68055B - F1 68055C - 00
68055C	International dial access code (Low)		
68055D	PSTN access pause time	20 ms	This time is waited for each pause input after the PSTN access code. If this address contains FF[H], the pause time stored in address 68054F is used. Do not set a number more than 7 in the UK.
68055E	Progress tone detection level, and cadence detection enable flags	Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 0 = -25.0 dBm Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 1 = -35.0 dBm Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 0 = -30.0 dBm Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 0 = -40.0 dBm Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 0 = -49.0 dBm Bits 2, 0 - See Note 2.	
68055F To 680564	**Not used**	-	Do not change the settings.
680565	Long distance call prefix (HIGH)	BCD	For a code of 0: 680565 – FF 680566 - FF
680566	Long distance call prefix (LOW)	BCD	

http://www.manuals4you.com

NCU Parameters

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680567 to 680571	**Not used**	-	Do not change the settings.
680572	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 1, upper limit	1000/ N (Hz).	SP2-103-003 (parameter 02).
680573	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 1, lower limit		SP2-103-004 (parameter 03).
680574	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 2, upper limit		SP2-103-005 (parameter 04).
680575	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 2, lower limit		SP2-103-006 (parameter 05).
680576	Number of rings until a call is detected	1	SP2-103-007 (parameter 06). The setting must not be zero.
680577	Minimum required length of the first ring	20 ms	See Note 4. SP2-103-008 (parameter 07).
680578	Minimum required length of the second and subsequent rings	20 ms	SP2-103-009 (parameter 08).
680579	Ringing signal detection reset time (LOW)	20 ms	SP2-103-010 (parameter 09).
68057A	Ringing signal detection reset time (HIGH)		SP2-103-011 (parameter 10).
68057B to 680580	**Not used**	-	Do not change the settings.
680581	Interval between dialing the last	20 ms	Factory setting: 500 ms

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
	digit and switching the Oh relay over to the external telephone when dialing from the operation panel in handset mode.		
680582	Bits 0 and 1 - Handset off-hook detection time Bit 1:0, Bit 0: 0 = 200 ms Bit 1:0, Bit 0: 1 = 800 ms Other Not used Bits 2 and 3 - Handset on-hook detection time Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = 200 ms Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = 800 ms Other Not used Bits 4 to 7 - **Not used**		-
680583 To 6805A0	**Not used**	-	Do not change the settings.
6805A1	Acceptable CED detection frequency upper limit (high byte)	BCD (Hz)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805A2	Acceptable CED detection frequency upper limit (low byte)		
6805A3	Acceptable CED detection frequency lower limit (high byte)	BCD (Hz)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805A4	Acceptable CED detection frequency lower limit (low byte)		
6805A5	CED detection time	20 ms ± 20 ms	Factory setting: 200 ms
6805A6	Acceptable CNG detection frequency upper limit (high byte)	BCD (Hz)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805A7	Acceptable CNG detection		

http://www.manuals4you.com

NCU Parameters

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
	frequency upper limit (low byte)		
6805A8	Acceptable CNG detection frequency lower limit (high byte)	BCD (Hz)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805A9	Acceptable CNG detection frequency lower limit (low byte)		
6805AA	**Not used**	-	Do not change the setting.
6805AB	CNG on time	20 ms	Factory setting: 500 ms
6805AC	CNG off time	20 ms	Factory setting: 3000 ms
6805AD	Number of CNG cycles required for detection	-	The data is coded in the same way as address 680533.
6805AE	**Not used**	-	Do not change the settings.
6805AF	Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805B0	Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency upper limit (low byte)		
6805B1	Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz(BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805B2	Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency lower limit (low byte)		
6805B3	Detection time for 800 Hz AI short protocol tone	20 ms	Factory setting: 360 ms

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
6805B4	PSTN: Tx level from the modem	-N – 3 dBm	SP2-103-002 (parameter 01).
6805B5	PSTN: 1100 Hz tone transmission level	- N 6805B4 - 0.5N 6805B5 –3.5 (dB) See Note 7.	
6805B6	PSTN: 2100 Hz tone transmission level	- N6805B4 - 0.5N 6805B6 –3 (dB) See Note 7.	
6805B7	PABX: Tx level from the modem	- dBm	
6805B8	PABX: 1100 Hz tone transmission level	- N 6805B7 - 0.5N 6805B8 (dB)	
6805B9	PABX: 2100 Hz tone transmission level	- N 6805B7 - 0.5N 6805B9 (dB)	
6805BD	Modem turn-on level (incoming signal detection level)	-37-0.5N (dBm)	
6805BE to 6805C6	**Not used**	-	Do not change the settings.
6805C7	Bits 0 to 3 – **Not used** Bit 4 = V.34 protocol dump 0: Simple, 1: Detailed (default) Bits 5 to 7 – **Not used.**		
6805C8 to 6805D9	**Not used**	-	Do not change the settings.
6805DA	T.30 T1 timer	1 s	
6805E0 bit 3	Maximum wait time for post message	0: 12 s 1: 30 s	1: Maximum wait time for post message (EOP/EOM/MPS) can be changed to 30 s. Change this bit to “1” if

http://www.manuals4you.com

NCU Parameters

<table>
<tr><th>Address</th><th colspan="8">Function</th><th>Unit</th><th>Remarks</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="8"></td><td></td><td>communication errors occur frequently during V.17 reception.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">6805E3</td><td colspan="8">Voltage setting to detect off-hook for voltage/DP detection for an externally connected line.</td><td>0: Auto
1: Fixed V</td><td rowspan="8">Do not change these settings</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="8">Here is a summary of the fixed voltage settings (1: Fixed) for an externally connected line.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 7</td><td>Bit 6</td><td>Bit 5</td><td>Bit 4</td><td colspan="4">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td colspan="4">Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td colspan="4">2.75 V</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td colspan="4">5.5 V</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td colspan="4">22 V</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td colspan="4">41.25 V</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">6805E4</td><td colspan="3" rowspan="4">Bit 1 sets the level of the call signal, Bit 3 sets the call signal impedance</td><td rowspan="2">Bit 1</td><td>0</td><td>RT=0 (Low)</td><td rowspan="4">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>RT=1 (High)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Bit 3</td><td>0</td><td>RZ=0 (High)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>RZ=1 (Composite)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">6805E5</td><td colspan="3" rowspan="3">Bit 0 sets the ring detection method, Bit 1 sets the ring detection method when fixed.</td><td rowspan="2">Bit 0</td><td>0</td><td>Auto</td><td rowspan="5">If any setting is changed, select a setting that is higher than the default setting.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Fixed</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Bit 1</td><td>0</td><td>Use RDTP</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Use RDTN</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Here is a summary of the voltages for the detection of off-hook for DP detection.</td></tr>
</table>

Address	Function				Unit	Remarks
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	-	
	0	0	0	0	**Not used**	
	0	0	0	1	2.75 V	
	0	0	1	0	5.5 V	
	1	0	0	0	22 V	
	1	1	1	1	41.25 V	

NOTES

1. If a setting is not required, store FF in the address.
2. Italy and Belgium only

   RAM address 68055E: the lower four bits have the following meaning.

   Bit 2 - 1: International dial tone cadence detection enabled (Belgium)

   Bit 1 - Not used

   Bit 0 - 1: PSTN dial tone cadence detection enabled (Italy)

   If bit 0 or bit 2 is set to 1, the functions of the following RAM addresses are changed.

   680508 (if bit 0 = 1) or 680538 (if bit 2 = 1): tolerance for on or off state duration (%), and number of cycles required for detection, coded as in address 680533.

   68050B (if bit 0 = 1) or 68053B (if bit 2 = 1): on time, hex code (unit = 20 ms)

   68050C (if bit 0 = 1) or 68053C (if bit 2 = 1): off time, hex code (unit = 20 ms)
3. Pulse dial parameters (addresses 68054A to 68054F) are the values for 10 pps. If 20 pps is used, the machine automatically compensates.
4. The first ring may not be detected until 1 to 2.5 wavelengths after the time specified by this parameter.
5. The calculated level must be between 0 and 10.

   The attenuation levels calculated from RAM data are:

   High frequency tone:

   - $-0.5 \times N_{680552}/_{680554} - 3.5$ dBm
   - $-0.5 \times N_{680555}$ dBm

   Low frequency tone:

http://www.manuals4you.com

- – 0.5 x ($N_{680552}/_{680554}$ + N_{680553}) –3.5 dBm
- – 0.5 x (N_{680555} + N_{680553}) dBm

  Note

  - N_{680552}, for example, means the value stored in address 680552(H)

6. 68054A: Europe - Between Ds opening and Di opening, France - Between Ds closing and Di opening

   68054D: Europe - Between Ds closing and Di closing, France - Between Ds opening and Di closing
7. Tone signals which frequency is lower than 1500Hz (e.g., 800Hz tone for AI short protocol) refer to the setting at 6805B5h. Tones which frequency is higher than 1500Hz refer to the setting at 6805B6h.
8. 68054A, 68054D, 68054E: The actual inter-digit pause (pulse dial mode) is the sum of the period specified by the RAM addresses 68054A, 68054D, and 68054E.

4.5 DEDICATED TRANSMISSION PARAMETERS

There are two sets of transmission parameters: Fax and E-mail

Each Quick Dial Key and Speed Dial Code has eight bytes of programmable parameters allocated to it. If transmissions to a particular machine often experience problems, store that terminal's fax number as a Quick Dial or Speed Dial, and adjust the parameters allocated to that number.

The programming procedure will be explained first. Then, the eight bytes will be described.

4.5.1 PROGRAMMING PROCEDURE

1. Set the bit 0 of System Bit Switch 00 to 1.
2. Enter Address Book Management mode ([User Tools]> System Settings> Key Operator> Address Book Management).
3. Select the address book that you want to program.
4. For the fax parameter, select "Fax Dest.", for the E-mail parameter, select "E-mail", then press "Start". Make sure that the LED of the Start button lights green.
5. The settings for the switch 00 are now displayed. Press the bit number that you wish to change.
6. To scroll through the parameter switches, either:
7. Select the next switch: press "Next" or Select the previous switch: "Prev." until the correct switch is displayed. Then go back to step 6.
8. After the setting is changed, press "OK".
9. After finishing, reset bit 0 of System Bit Switch 00 to 0.

4.5.2 PARAMETERS

Fax Parameters

The initial settings of the following fax parameters are all FF(H) - all the parameters are disabled.

Switch 00
FUNCTION AND COMMENTS
ITU-T T1 time (for PSTN G3 mode) If the connection time to a particular terminal is longer than the NCU parameter setting,

http://www.manuals4you.com

adjust this byte. The T1 time is the value stored in this byte (in hex code), multiplied by 1 second.

Range:

0 to 120 s (00h to 78h)

FFh - The local NCU parameter factory setting is used.

Do not program a value between 79h and FEh.

Switch 01

No	FUNCTION						COMMENTS
0-4	Tx level						If communication with a particular remote terminal often contains errors, the signal level may be inappropriate. Adjust the Tx level for communications with that terminal until the results are better. If the setting is “Disabled”, the NCU parameter 01 setting is used. Note ▪ Do not use settings other than listed on the left.
	Bit4	Bit3	Bit2	Bit1	Bit0		
	0	0	0	0	0	0	
	0	0	0	0	1	–1	
	0	0	0	1	0	–2	
	0	0	0	1	1	–3	
	0	0	1	0	0	–4	
	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	
	0	1	1	1	1	–15	
	1	1	1	1	1	Disabled	
5-7	Cable equalizer Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 0 = None Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 1 = Low Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 0 = Medium Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 1 = High Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 1 = Disabled						Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange when calling the number stored in this Quick/Speed Dial. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. Communication error with error

		codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc. Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. Note ▪ Do not use settings other than listed on the left. If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.

Switch 02

No	FUNCTION					COMMENTS
0-3	Initial Tx modem rate					If training with a particular remote terminal always takes too long, the initial modem rate may be too high. Reduce the initial Tx modem rate using these bits. For the settings 14.4 or kbps slower, Switch 04 bit 4 must be changed to 0. Note ▪ Do not use settings other than listed on the left. If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.
	Bit3	Bit2	Bit1	Bit0	bps	
	0	0	0	0	Not used	
	0	0	0	1	2400	
	0	0	1	0	4800	
	0	0	1	1	7200	
	0	1	0	0	9600	
	0	1	0	1	12000	
	0	1	1	0	14400	
	0	1	1	1	16800	
	1	0	0	0	19200	
	1	0	0	1	21600	
	1	0	1	0	24000	
	1	0	1	1	26400	
	1	1	0	0	28800	

http://www.manuals4you.com

Dedicated Transmission Parameters

	1	1	0	1	31200	
	1	1	1	0	33600	
	1	1	1	1	Disabled	
	Other settings: **Not used**					
4-7	**Not used**					Do not change the settings.

Switch 03		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	Inch-mm conversion before tx Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = Inch-mm conversion available Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = Inch only Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = Not used Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = Disabled	The machine uses inch-based resolutions for scanning. If “inch only” is selected, the printed copy may be slightly distorted at the other end if that machine uses mm-based resolutions. If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.
2-3	DIS/NSF detection method Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = First DIS or NSF Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = Second DIS or NSF Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 0 = Not used Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 1 = Disabled	(0, 1): Use this setting if echoes on the line are interfering with the set-up protocol at the start of transmission. The machine will then wait for the second DIS or NSF before sending DCS or NSS. If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.
4	V.8 protocol 0: Off 1: Disabled	If transmissions to a specific destination always end at a lower modem rate (14,400 bps or lower), disable V.8 protocol so as not to use V.34 protocol. 0: V.34 communication will not be possible. If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.
5	Compression modes available in transmit mode	This bit determines the capabilities that are informed to the other terminal during transmission.

	0: MH only 1: Disabled	If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.
6-7	ECM during transmission Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0 = Off Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1 = On Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 0 = Not used Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1 = Disabled	For example, if ECM is switched on but is not wanted when sending to a particular terminal, use the (0, 0) setting. Note ▪ V.8/V.34 protocol and JBIG compression are automatically disabled if ECM is disabled. ▪ If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.

Switch 04 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 05 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

E-mail Parameters

The initial settings of the following e-mail parameters are all "0" (all parameters disabled).

Switch 00		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	MH Compression mode for e-mail attachments **0**: Off 1: On	Switches MH compression on and off for files attached to e-mails for sending.
1	MR Compression mode	Switches MR compression on and off for files

http://www.manuals4you.com

	for e-mail attachments **0**: Off 1: On	attached to e-mails for sending.
2	MMR Compression mode for e-mail attachments **0**: Off 1: On	Switches MMR compression on and off for files attached to e-mails for sending.
3-6	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.
7	Designates the bits to reference for compression method of e-mail attachments **0**: Registered (Bit 0 to 6) 1: No registration.	The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits 00, 01, 02 above. The "1" selection ignores the selections of Bits 00, 01, 02.

Switch 01		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Original width of e-mail attachment: A4 **0**: Off 1: On	Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as A4.
1	Original width of e-mail attachment: B4 **0**: Off 1: On	Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as B4.
2	Original width of e-mail attachment: A3 **0**: Off 1: On	Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as A3.
3-6	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

7	Designates the bits to reference for original size of e-mail attachments **0**: Registered (Bit 0 to 6) 1: No registration.	The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits 00, 01, 02 above. The "1" selection ignores the selections of Bits 00, 01, 02.

Switch 02		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 200 x 100 **0**: Off 1: On	Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x100.
1	Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 200 x 200 **0**: Off 1: On	Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x 200.
2	Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 200 x 400 **0**: Off 1: On	Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x 400.
3	Not used	Do not change these settings.
4	Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 400 x 400 **0**: Off 1: On	Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 400 x 400.
5-6	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.
7	Designates the bits to reference for original size of e-mail attachments **0**: Registered (Bit 0 to 6) 1: No registration.	The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits 00, 01, 02, 04 above. The "1" selection ignores the selections of Bits 00, 01, 02, 04.

http://www.manuals4you.com

Switch 03 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Switch 04		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Full mode address selection 0: Full mode address 1: No full mode (simple mode)	If the other ends have the addresses, which have the full mode function flag ("0"), this machine determines them as full mode standard machines. ▪ This machine attaches the "demand of reception confirmation" to a message when transmitting. ▪ This machine updates the reception capability to the address book when receiving.
1-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

Switch 05		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Directr transmission selection to SMTP server 0: ON 1: OFF	Allows or does not allow the direct transmission to SMTP server.
1-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

4.6 SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES

⚠CAUTION

- Do not change the settings which are marked as “Not used” or “Read only.”

680001 to 680004(H) - ROM version (Read only)

680001(H) - Revision number (BCD)

680002(H) - Year (BCD)

680003(H) - Month (BCD)

680004(H) - Day (BCD)

680006 to 680015(H) - Machine’s serial number (16 digits - ASCII)

680018(H) - Total program checksum (low)

680019(H) - Total program checksum (high)

680020 to 68003F(H) - System bit switches

680050 to 68005F(H) - Printer bit switches

680060 to 68007F(H) - Communication bit switches

680080 to 68008F(H) - G3 bit switches

680090 to 68009F(H) - G3-2 bit switches: Not used

6800A0 to 6800AF(H) - G3-3 bit switches: Not used

6800D0(H) - User parameter switch 00 (SWUER_00) : Not used

6800D1(H) - User parameter switch 01 (SWUSR_01) : Not used

6800D2(H) - User parameter switch 02 (SWUSR_02)

Bit 0: Forwarding mark printing on forwarded messages 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 1: Center mark printing on received copies

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 2: Reception time printing

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 3: TSI print on received messages 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 4: Checkered mark printing

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 5: Not used

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Not used

http://www.manuals4you.com

6800D3(H) - User parameter switch 03 (SWUSR_03: Automatic report printout)

Bit 0: Transmission result report (memory transmissions) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: Not used

Bit 2: Memory storage report 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 3: Polling reserve report (polling reception) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 4: Polling result report (polling reception) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 5: Transmission result report (immediate transmissions) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Journal 0: Off, 1: On

6800D4(H) - User parameter switch 04 (SWUSR_04: Automatic report printout)

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Automatic communication failure report and transfer result report output 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 2 to 3: Not used

Bit 4: Indicates the parties 0: Not indicated, 1: Indicated

Bit 5: Include sender's name on reports 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Inclusion of a sample image on reports 0: Off, 1: On

6800D5(H) - User parameter switch 05 (SWUSR_05)

Bit 0: Substitute reception when the base copier is in an SC condition

0: Enabled, 1: Disabled

Bits 1 and 2: Condition for substitute rx when the machine cannot print messages (Paper end, toner end, jam, and during night mode)

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 0 = The machine receives all the fax messages.

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 1 = The machine receives the fax messages with RTI or CSI.

Bit 2: 1, Bit 1: 0 = The machine receives the fax messages with the same ID code.

Bit 2: 1, Bit 1: 1 = The machine does not receive anything.

Bit 3: Not used

Bit 4: Not used

Bit 5: Just size printing 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Add paper display when a cassette is empty 0: Off, 1: On

6800D6(H) - User parameter switch 06 (SWUSR_06): Not used

6800D7(H) - User parameter switch 07 (SWUSR_07)

Bit 0 Ringing 0: Off, 1: On

Bit1: Automatic answering message 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 2: Parallel memory transmission 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 3 and 4: Not used

Bit 5: Remote control 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 6 and 7: Not used

6800D8(H) - User parameter switch 08 (SWUSR_08)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used.

Bit 2: Authorized reception

0: Only faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are specified for this feature are accepted.

1: Only faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are not specified for this feature are accepted.

Bits 3 to 7: Not used.

6800D9(H) - User parameter switch 09 (SWUSR_09): Not used

6800DA(H) - User parameter switch 10 (SWUSR_0A)

Bits 0 to 2: Not used

Bit 3: Page reduction 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 4 and 5: Not used

Bit 6: Use both e-mail notification and printed reports to confirm the transmission results 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 7: Not used

6800DB(H) - User parameter switch 11 (SWUSR_0B)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used

Bit 2: White original detection 0: Off, 1: On (alarm and alert message on the LCD)

Bit 3: Receive rejection for 1300 Hz transmission 0: Off (receive), 1: On (not receive)

Bit 5: Not used

Bit 6: Printout of messages received while acting as a forwarding station 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 7: Not used

6800DC(H) - User parameter switch 12 (SWUSR_0C): Not used

6800DD(H) - User parameter switch 13 (SWUSR_0D): Not used

6800DE(H) - User parameter switch 14 (SWUSR_0E)

Bit 0: Message printout while the machine is in Night Printing mode 0: On, 1: Off

Bit 1: Maximum document length detection 0: Double letter, 1: Longer than double-letter (well log) – up to 1,200 mm

Bit 2: Not used

Bit 3: Fax mode settings, such as resolution, before a mode key (Copy/Fax/Printer/Scanner) is pressed 0: Not cleared, 1: Cleared

Bits 4 to 6: Not used

Bit 7: Not used

http://www.manuals4you.com

6800DF(H) - User parameter switch 15 (SWUSR_0F)

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

Bits 0, 1 and 2: Cassette for fax printout

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = 1st paper feed station

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = 2nd paper feed station

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = 3rd paper feed station

Bit 2: 1, Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 4th paper feed station

Bit 2: 1, Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = LCT

Other settings Not used

Bits 3 and 4: Not used

Bit 5: Using the cassette specified by bits 0, 1 and 2 above only 0: On, 1: Off

Bits 6 and 7: Not used

6800E0(H) – User parameter switch 16 (SWUSR_10)

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used

Bit 2: Paper size selection priority for an A4 size fax message when A4/LT size paper is not available. 0: A3 has priority, 1: B4 has priority

Bits 3 to 7: Not used

6800E1(H) – User parameter switch 17 (SWUSR_11)

Bit 0: Not used

⇒ Bit 1: Disable Broadcasting: To avoid accidentally specifying multiple destinations, users can disable broadcasting. They cannot specify group destinations if they disable broadcasting. They can specify only one address at a time. 1: On, 0: Off

Bit 2: Inclusion of the “Add” button when a sequence of Quick/Speed dials is selected for broadcasting 0:Not needed, 1: Needed

Bits 3, 5 and 6: Not used

⇒ Bit 4: Display Destination Prior to transmission: To prevent documents being sent to the wrong destination, users can configure the machine to display the destination again after it has been entered and before the file is sent. 1: On, 0: Off

Bit 7: Press “Start” key without an original when using the on hook dial or external phone, 0: displays “Cannot detect original size”. 1: Receives fax messages.

6800E2(H) - User parameter switch 18 (SWUSR_12)

Bit 0: TTI date 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: TTI sender 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 2: TTI file number 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 3: TTI page number 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 4 to 6: Not used

Bit 7: Japan only

6800E3(H) - User parameter switch 19 (SWUSR_13):

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Journal format

0: The Journal is separated into transmissions and receptions

1: The Journal is separated into G3-1, G3-2, and G3-3 communications

Bit 2: Not used

Bit 3: 90° image rotation during B5 portrait Tx (This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 4: Reduction of sample images on reports to 50% in the main scan and sub-scan directions. (This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.) 0: Technician adjustment (printer switch 0E bits 3 and 4), 1: 50% reduction

Bit 5: Use of A5 size paper for reports (This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.) 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 6 and 7: Not used

6800E4(H) - User parameter switch 20 (SWUSR_14)

Bit 0: Automatic printing of the LAN fax result report 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: Not used.

Bits 2 to 5: Store documents in memory which could not be printed from PC fax (LAN fax) driver

Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Setting
0	0	0	0	0 min.
0	0	0	1	1 min.
↓	↓	↓	↓	↓
1	1	1	0	14 min.
1	1	1	1	15 min.

Bits 6 and 7: Not used.

6800E5(H) - User parameter switch 21 (SWUSR_15)

Bit 0: Print results of sending reception notice request message 0: Disabled (print only when error occurs), 1: Enabled

Bit 1: Respond to e-mail reception acknowledgment request 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 2: Not used

Bit 3: File format for forwarded folders and E-Mail 0: TIFF, 1:PDF

Bit 4: Transmit Journal by E-mail 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

http://www.manuals4you.com

Bit 5: Not used

Bit 6: Network error display 0: Displayed, 1: Not displayed

Bit 7: Transmit error mail notification 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled

6800E6(H) - User parameter switch 22 (SWUSR_16)
(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

Bit 0: Dial tone detection (PSTN 1) 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 1 to 3: Not used

Reentered Count				
7	6	5	4	Count
0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	1	1
0	0	1	0	2
				⋮
1	1	1	1	15

⇒ Bits 4 to 7: Re-enter Fax number to confirm destination (0 -15) (Default: 0000) (See ***Reentered Count*** chart) Enter the fax number again to confirm the destination is correct. Tx is disabled if the confirmation fax number does not match the first fax number. This function prevents faxes from being sent to the incorrect destination.

6800E7(H) – User parameter switch 23 (SWUSR_17): Not used

6800E8(H) - User parameter switch 24 (SWUSR_18): Not used

6800E9(H) - User parameter switch 25 (SWUSR_19)

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Reception mode switch timer 0: Off, 1: On (switching Fax or Fax/Tel)

Bit 2: Mode priority switch 0: Fax first, 1: Tel first

Bit 3: Dial in function (Japan Only)

Bit 4: RDS operation 0: Not acceptable, 1: Acceptable for the limit specified by system switch 03

Note

- This bit is only effective when RDS operation can be selected by the user (see system switch 02).

Bits 5 to 7: Not used

6800EA(H) - 6800EB(H) - User parameter switches 26 - 27 (SWUSR_1A - 1B): Not used

6800EC(H) - User parameter switch 28(SWUSR_1C)

Xxxxx

6800ED(H) - User parameter switch 29(SWUSR_1D)

xxxxxx

6800EE(H) and 6800EF(H) - User parameter switches 30 and 31 (SWUSR_1E and 1F): Not used

6800F0(H) - User parameter switch 32 (SWUSR_20)

Bit 0: Quotation priority for a destination when there is no destination of the specified type

0: Paper output priority = Priority order: 1. IP-fax destination, 2. Fax Number, 3. E-mail address, 4. Folder

1: Electric putout order = Priority order: 1. E-mail address, 2. Folder, 3. IP-fax destination, 4. Fax number

Bits 1 to 7: Not used

6800F1(H) - User parameter switch 33 (SWUSR_21): Not used

6800F2(H) - User parameter switch 34 (SWUSR_22)

Bit 0: Gatekeeper server used with IP-Fax 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 1: SIP server used with IP-Fax 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 2 to 7: Not used

680100 to 68010F(H) - G4 Parameter Switches – Not used

680110 to 68012F(H) - G4 Internal Switches – Not used

680130 to 68016F(H) - Service Switches

680170 to 68017F(H) - IFAX Switches

680180 to 68018F(H) - IP-FAX Switches

680190 to 6801AF(H) - Service station's fax number (SP3-101)

6801B0 to 6801B9(H) - Own fax PABX extension number

6801BA to 6801C3(H) - Own fax number (PSTN) – Not used

6801C4 to 6801D7(H) - Own fax number (ISDN G4) – Not used

6801D8 to 6801E3(H) - The first subscriber number (ISDN G3) – Not used

6801E4 to 6801EF(H) - The second subscriber number (ISDN G3) – Not used

6801F0 to 6801FB(H) - The first subscriber number (ISDN G4) – Not used

6801FC to 680207(H) - The second subscriber number (ISDN G4) – Not used

680208 to 68021B(H) - PSTN-1 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.

68021C to 68022F(H) - PSTN-2 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - Not used

680230 to 680246(H) - PSTN-3 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - Not used

680247 to 680286(H) - TTI 1 (Max. 64 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.

680287 to 6802C6(H) - TTI 2 (Max. 64 characters - ASCII) - Not used

6802C7 to 680306(H) - TTI 3 (Max. 64 characters - ASCII) - Not used

680307 to 68031A(H) - PSTN-1 CSI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII)

68031B to 68032E(H) - PSTN-2 CSI (Max.20 characters - ASCII) - Not used

68032F to 680342(H) - PSTN-3 CSI (Max.20 characters - ASCII) - Not used

680343(H) - Number of PSTN-1 CSI characters (Hex)

680344(H) - Number of PSTN-2 CSI characters (Hex) - Not used

680345(H) Number of PSTN-3 CSI characters (Hex) - Not used

Note

- If the number of characters is less than the maximum (20 for RTI, 32 for TTI), add a stop code (00[H]) after the last character.

680380 to 680387(H) - Last power off time (Read only)

680380(H) - 01(H) - 24-hour clock, 00(H) - 12-hour clock (AM), 02(H) - 12-hour clock (PM)

680381(H) - Year (BCD)

680382(H) - Month (BCD)

http://www.manuals4you.com

Service RAM Addresses

680383(H) - Day (BCD)

680384(H) – Hour

680385(H) – Minute

680386(H) – Second

680387(H) - 00: Monday, 01: Tuesday, 02: Wednesday, /// , 06: Sunday

680394(H) - Optional equipment (Read only – Do not change the settings)

Bit 0: Page Memory 0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bit 1: SAF Memory 0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bits 2 to 7; Not used

680395(H) - Optional equipment (Read only – Do not change the settings)

Bits 0 to 3: Not used

Bit 4: G3-2 0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bit 5: G3-3 0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bit 6 and 7: Not used

680406 to 68040A – Option G3 board (G3-2) ROM information (Read only)

680406(H) - Suffix (BCD)

680407(H) - Version (BCD)

680408(H) - Year (BCD)

680409(H) - Month (BCD)

68040A(H) - Day (BCD)

68040B to 68040F – Option G3 board (G3-3) ROM information (Read only)

68040B(H) - Suffix (BCD)

68040C(H) - Version (BCD)

68040D(H) - Year (BCD)

68040E(H) - Month (BCD)

68040F(H) - Day (BCD)

680410(H) - G3-1 Modem ROM version (Read only)

680412(H) - G3-2 Modem ROM version (Read only)

680414(H) - G3-3 Modem ROM version (Read only)

680420(H) - Number of multiple sets print (Read only)

680476(H) - Time for economy transmission (hour in 24h clock format - BCD)

680477(H) - Time for economy transmission (minute - BCD)

680492(H) - Transmission monitor volume 00 - 07(H)

680493(H) - Reception monitor volume 00 - 07(H)

680494(H) - On-hook monitor volume 00 - 07(H)

680495(H) - Dialing monitor volume 00 - 07(H)

680496(H) - Buzzer volume 00 - 07(H)

680497(H) - Beeper volume 00 - 07(H)

6804A8(H) - Machine code (Check ram 4)

68918E(H) - Gatekeeper server address - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68920E(H) - Gatekeeper server address - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68928E(H) - Arias Number (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68930E(H) - SIP user name (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68938E(H) - SIP digest authentication password (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68940E(H) - Gateway address information (Max. 7100 characters - ASCII)

68AFCA(H) - Stand-by port number for H.232 connection

68AFCCH) - Stand-by port number for SIP connection

68AFCE(H) - RAS port number

68AFD0(H) - Gatekeeper port number

68AFD2(H) - Port number of data waiting for T.38

68AFD4(H) - Port number of SIP server

68AFD6(H) - Priority for SIP and H.323 0: H.323, 1: SIP

68AFD7(H) - SIP function 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

68AFD8(H) - H.323 function 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

68AFD9(H) - SIP digest authentication function 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

68AFDA(H) - IP-Fax backup data 00 - 600 (H) - Not used

69ED6A(H) to 69ED92(H) - SIP server address (Read only)

69ED6A(H) - Proxy server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

69ED72(H) - Proxy server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

69ED7A(H) - Redirect server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

69ED82(H) - Redirect server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

69ED8A(H) - Registrar server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

69ED92(H) - Registrar server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

6BEBFE(H) - 6BEC1E (H) - Dial tone detection parameter (Max. 11 x 3 lines)

This initializes following order. [0x04, 0x40, 0x03, 0x60, 0x64, 0xf4, 0x01,0x64, 0x04, 0xc8, 0x00]

6BEBFE(H) – Dial tone detection frequency – Upper limit (High)

Defaults: NA: 06, EU: 06, ASIA: 06

6BEBFF(H) – Dial tone detection frequency – Upper Limit (Low)

Defaults: NA: 50, EU: 50, ASIA: 50

6BEC00(H) – Dial tone detection frequency – Lower Limit (High)

Defaults: NA: 03, EU: 02, ASIA: 02

http://www.manuals4you.com

Service RAM Addresses

6BEC01(H) – Dial tone detection frequency – Lower Limit (Low)

Defaults: NA: 60, EU: 90, ASIA: 90

6BEC02(H) –Dial tone detection waiting time (20 ms)

Defaults: NA: 64, EU 64, ASIA: 64

6BEC03 to 6BEC04 – Dial tone detection monitoring time (20 ms)

Defaults

Area	6BEC03	6BEC04
NA	F4	01
EU	F4	01
ASIA	F4	01

6BEC05(H) – Dial tone detect judge time (20 ms)

Defaults: NA: 64, EU: 1B, ASIA: 32

6BEC06(H) – Dial tone disconnect permission time (20 ms)

Defaults: NA: 11, EU: 0F, ASIA: 11

5. SPECIFICATIONS

5.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

5.1.1 FCU

Type:	Desktop type transceiver
Circuit:	PSTN (max. 3ch.) PABX
Connection:	Direct couple
Original Size:	Book (Face down) Maximum Length: 432 mm [17 ins] Maximum Width: 297 mm [11.7 ins] ARDF (Face up) (Single-sided document) Length: 128 - 1200 mm [5.0 - 47.2 ins] Width: 105 - 297 mm [4.1 - 11.7 inch] (Double-sided document) Length: 128 - 432 mm [5.0 - 17 inch] Width: 105 - 297 mm [4.1 - 11.7 inch]
Scanning Method:	Flat bed, with CCD
Resolution:	G3 8 x 3.85 lines/mm (Standard) 8 x 7.7 lines/mm (Detail) 8 x 15.4 line/mm (Fine) See Note1 16 x15.4 line/mm (Super Fine) See Note 1 200 x 100 dpi (Standard) 200 x 200 dpi (Detail) 400 x 400 dpi (Super Fine) See Note 1 Note ▪ Optional Expansion Memory required

http://www.manuals4you.com

General Specifications

Transmission Time:	G3: 3 s at 28800 bps; Measured with G3 ECM using memory for an ITU-T #1 test document (Slerexe letter) at standard resolution
Data Compression:	MH, MR, MMR, JBIG
Protocol:	Group 3 with ECM
Modulation:	V.34, V.33, V.17 (TCM), V.29 (QAM), V.27ter (PHM), V.8, V.21 (FM)
Data Rate:	G3: 33600/31200/28800/26400/24000/21600/ 19200/16800/14400/12000/9600/7200/4800/2400 bps Automatic fallback
I/O Rate:	With ECM: 0 ms/line Without ECM: 2.5, 5, 10, 20, or 40 ms/line
Memory Capacity:	ECM: 128 KB SAF Standard: 4 MB With optional Expansion Memory: 28 MB (4 MB+ 24 MB) Page Memory Standard: 4 MB (Print: 2 MB + Scanner: 2 MB) With optional Expansion Memory: 12 MB (4 MB + 8 MB) (Print 8 MB + Scanner: 4 MB)

5.1.2 CAPABILITIES OF PROGRAMMABLE ITEMS

The following table shows the capabilities of each programmable items.

Item	Standard
Quick Dial	2000
Groups	100
Destination per Group	500
Destinations dialed from the ten-key pad overall	500
Programs	100
Auto Document	6
Communication records for Journal stored in the memory	200
Specific Senders	30

The following table shows how the capabilities of the document memory will change after the Expansion Memory are installed.

http://www.manuals4you.com

	Without the Expansion Memory	With the Expansion Memory
Memory Transmission file	400	400
Maximum number of page for memory transmission	1000	1000
Memory capacity for memory transmission (Note1)	320	2240

Note

- Measured using an ITU-T #1 test document (Slerexe letter) at the standard resolution, the auto image density mode and the Text mode.

5.2 IFAX SPECIFICATIONS

Connectivity:	Local area network Ethernet 100base-Tx/10base-T IEEE802.11a/g, g (wireless LAN), 1000 Base-T
Resolution:	Main scan: 400 dpi, 200 dpi Sub scan: 400 dpi, 200 dpi, 100 dpi Note ▪ To use 400 dpi, IFAX SW01 Bit 4 must be set to “1”.
Transmission Time:	1 s (through a LAN to the server) Condition: ITU-T #1 test document (Selerexe Letter) MTF correction: OFF TTI: None Resolution: 200 x 100 dpi Communication speed: 10 Mbps Correspondent device: E-mail server Line conditions: No terminal access
Document Size:	Maximum message width is A4/LT. Note ▪ To use B4 and A3 width, IFAX SW00 Bit 1 (B4) and/or Bit 2 (A3) must be set to “1”.
E-mail File Format:	Single/multi-part MIME conversion Image: TIFF-F (MH, MR, MMR)
Protocol:	**Transmission:** SMTP, TCP/IP **Reception:** POP3, SMTP, IMAP4, TCP/IP
Data Rate:	100 Mbps(100base-Tx) 10 Mbps (10base-T)

http://www.manuals4you.com

IFAX Specifications

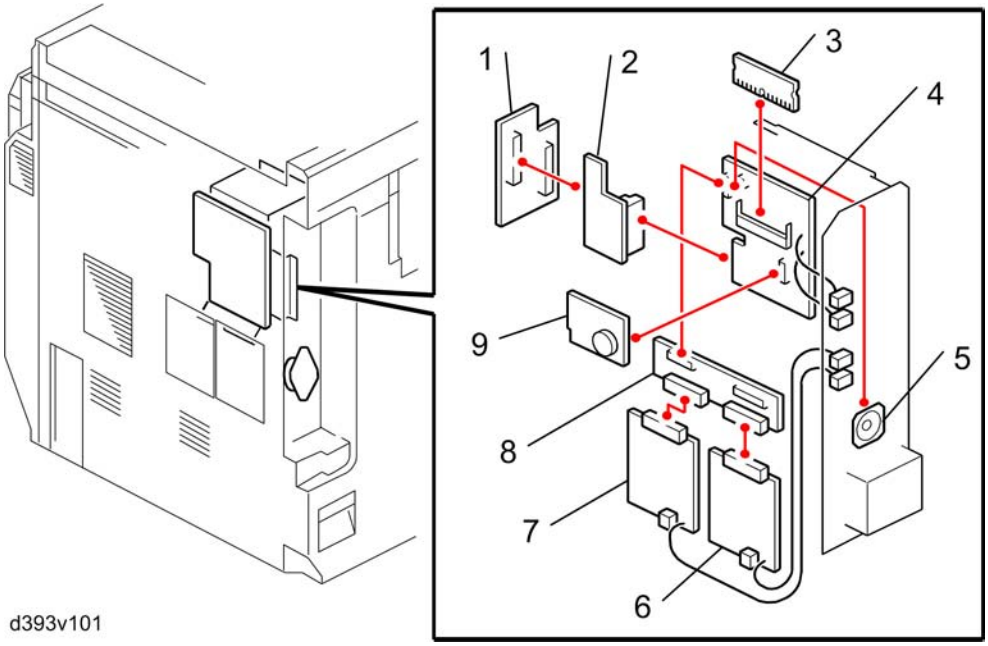
Authentication Method:	SMTP-AUTH POP before SMTP A-POP
Remark:	The machine must be set up as an e-mail client before installation. Any client PCs connected to the machine through a LAN must also be e-mail clients, or some features will not work (e.g. Autorouting).

5.3 IP-FAX SPECIFICATIONS

Network:	Local Area Network Ethernet/10base-T, 100base-TX IEEE802.11a/g, g (wireless LAN), 1000 Base-T
Scan line density:	8 x 3.85 lines/mm, 200x100dpi (standard character), 8 x 7.7lines/mm, 200x200dpi (detail character), 8 x 15.4lines/mm (fine character: optional expansion memory required), 16 x 15.4lines/mm, 400x400dpi (super fine character: optional expansion memory required)
Original size:	Maximum A3 or 11"x 17" (DLT)
Maximum scanning size:	Standard: A3, 297mm x 432mm Irregular: 297mm x 1200mm
Transmission protocol:	Recommended: T.38 Annex protocol, TCP, UDP/IP communication
Compatible machines:	IP-Fax compatible machines
IP-Fax transmission function:	Specify IP address and send fax to an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network. Also capable of sending fax from a G3 fax connected to the public telephone lines via a VoIP gateway.
IP-Fax reception function:	Receive a fax sent from an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network. Also capable of receiving fax from a G3 fax connected the public telephone lines via a VoIP gateway.

http://www.manuals4you.com

5.4 FAX UNIT CONFIGURATION



Component	Code	No.	Remarks
MBU	D393	9	Included with the fax unit
FCU		4	
FCU I/F		2	
GWFCU I/F		1	
Speaker		5	
Expansion Memory	G578	3	Optional
CCU I/F Board	D393	8	Optional
SG3 Board		6	
SG3 Board (2nd)	D393	7	Optional
Handset Type 1018	B433	-	NA only. Also used with J-C2

1 Bin Tray BN3070

(D414)

D414 1 BIN TRAY BN3070		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

http://www.manuals4you.com

1 Bin Tray BN3070 (D414)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 1
1.1 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS 1
1.1.1 PAPER SENSOR..... 1
1.1.2 1-BIN CONTROL BOARD..... 3

Read This First

Safety and Symbols

Replacement Procedure Safety

⚠CAUTION

- Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the replacement procedures in this manual.

Symbols Used in this Manual

This manual uses the following symbols.

☛: See or Refer to

: Screws

: Connector

: Clip ring

: E-ring

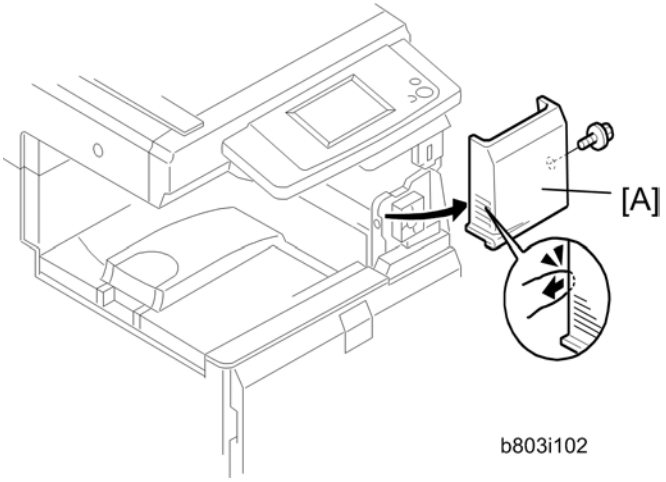
http://www.manuals4you.com

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

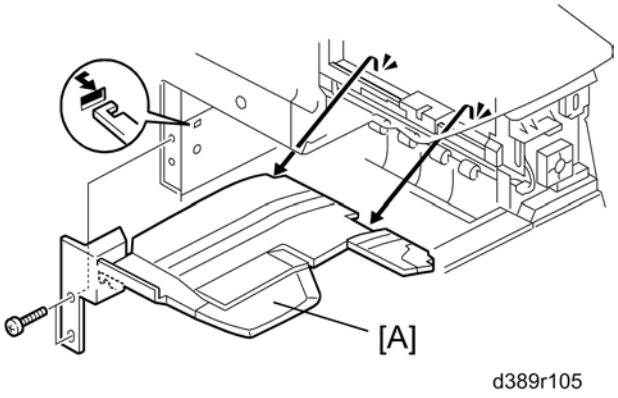
1.1 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

1.1.1 PAPER SENSOR

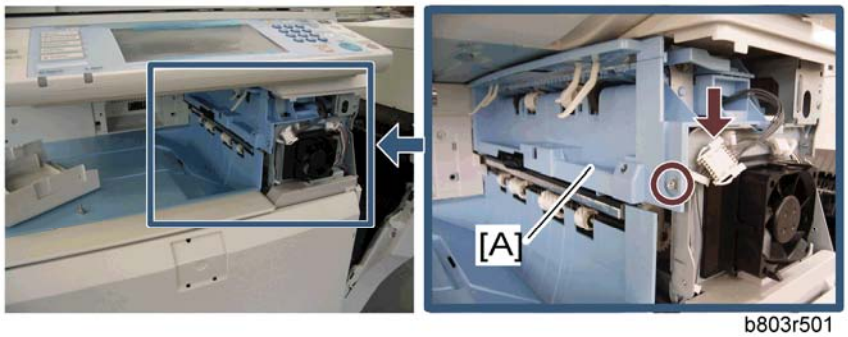
1. Open the right door of the machine.



2. Remove the front right cover [A] (🔩 x 1).

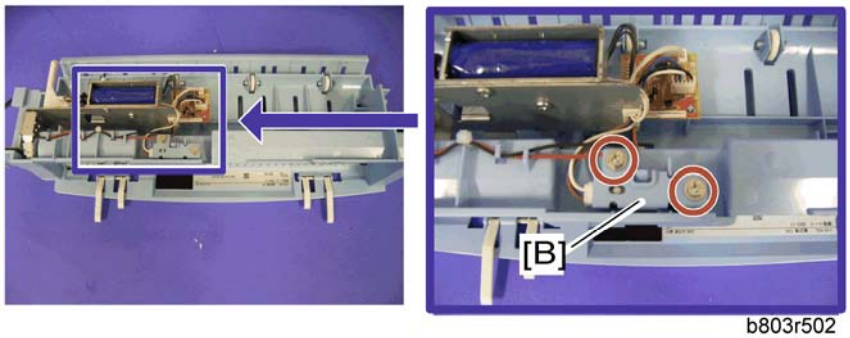


3. 1-bin-tray [B] (🔩 x 2; M3 x 16)



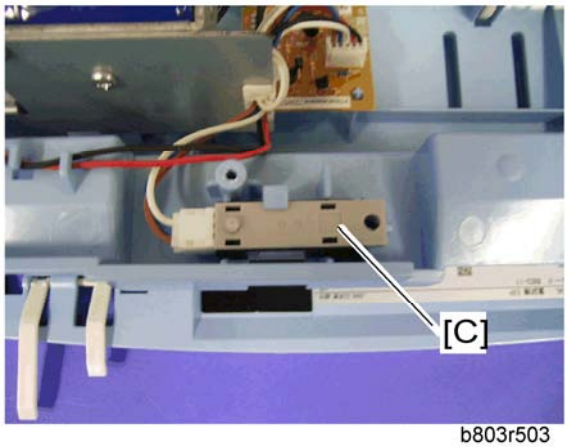
b803r501

4. 1-bin sorter unit [C]



b803r502

5. Paper sensor cover [D] (x 2)



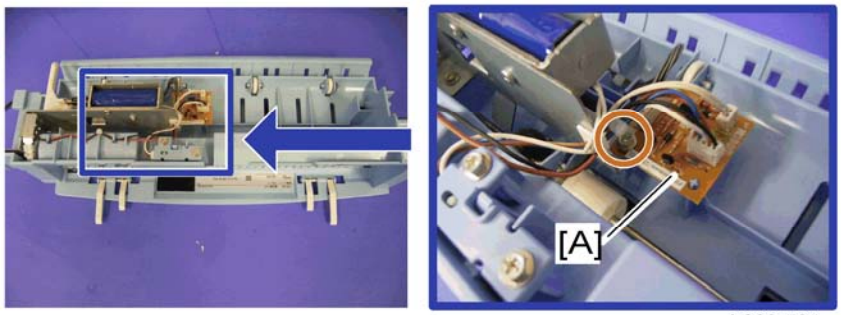
b803r503

6. Paper sensor [E] (x 1, hook)

http://www.manuals4you.com

1.1.2 1-BIN CONTROL BOARD

1. 1-bin tray
2. 1-bin sorter unit (☛ "Paper Sensor")



b803r504

3. 1-bin control board [A] (☞ x 1, ☞ x 3)

Digital Color Copiers

(D027/D029-NA)

Parts Catalog

Parts change information sample



Add



Update



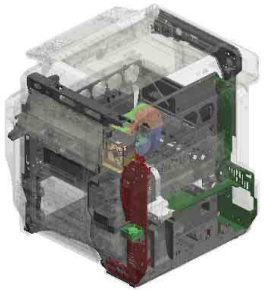
Delete

Model	Product Code	PC Style
Digital Copier	D027/D029	3D
ARDF DF3010	B802	Traditional
Paper Feed Unit PB3080	D387	3D
Paper Feed Unit PB3040	D351	Traditional
LCIT PB3050	D352	Traditional
LCIT RT3000	D353	Traditional
Bridge Unit BU3030	D386	Traditional
Internal Shift Tray SH3040	D388	3D
Caster Table Type A	D446	Traditional
ADF Handle Type B	D366-10	Traditional
Platen Cover Type 3800C	G329	Traditional
1 Bin Tray BN3070	D414	3D
Booklet Finisher SR3020	B804	Traditional
Punch Unit Type 3260 NA 3/2	B702	Traditional
Punch Unit Type 3260 EU 2/4	B702	Traditional
Punch Unit Type 3260 SC	B702	Traditional
Finisher SR3030	B805	Traditional
SR790	B408	Traditional
Hand Set Type 1018	B433	Traditional
Memory Unit Type B	G578	Traditional
Fax Option Type C5000	D393	Traditional
G3 Interface Unit Type C5000	D393	Traditional
IEEE 802.11a/g Interface Unit Type J	D377-01	Traditional
IEEE 802.11g Interface Unit Type K	D377-19	Traditional
IEEE 1284 Interface Board Type A	B679	Traditional
PostScript3 Unit Type C3300	D413	Traditional
VM Card Type I	D430	Traditional

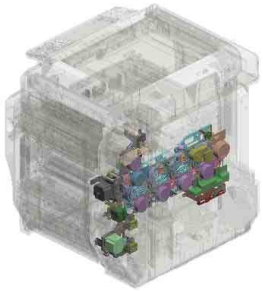
Model	Product Code	PC Style
Browser Unit Type E	D430	Traditional
Bluetooth Interface Unit Type 3245	B826	Traditional
Gigabit Ethernet Type B	D377-21	Traditional
File Format Converter Type E	D377-14	Traditional
Camera Direct Print Card Type G	D413	Traditional
DataOverwriteSecurity Unit Type H	D377-16	Traditional
Copy Data Security Unit Type F	B829	Traditional
HDD Encryption Unit Type A	D377	Traditional
Key Counter Bracket Type H	A674	Traditional
USB2.0/SD Slot Type A	D422	Traditional

http://www.manuals4you.com

Unit All



U001
Main Frame



U002
Main Drive



U003
Exterior



U004
Operation



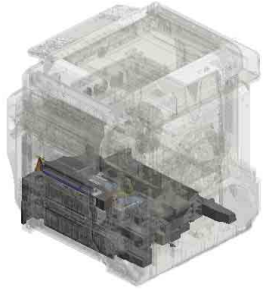
U005
Scanner



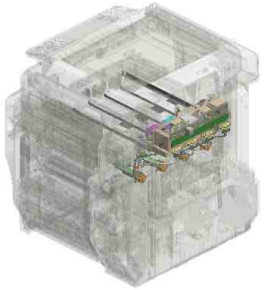
U006
Laser Unit



U007
PCU



U008
Paper Feed



U009
Toner Supply



U010
Fusing

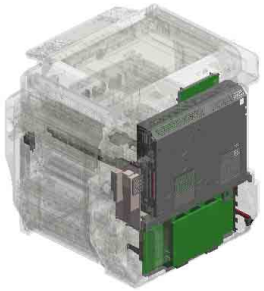


U011
Paper Exit



U012
Duplex

Unit All



U013
Electrical



U014
Controller



U015
Image Transfer



U016
ITB Cleaning

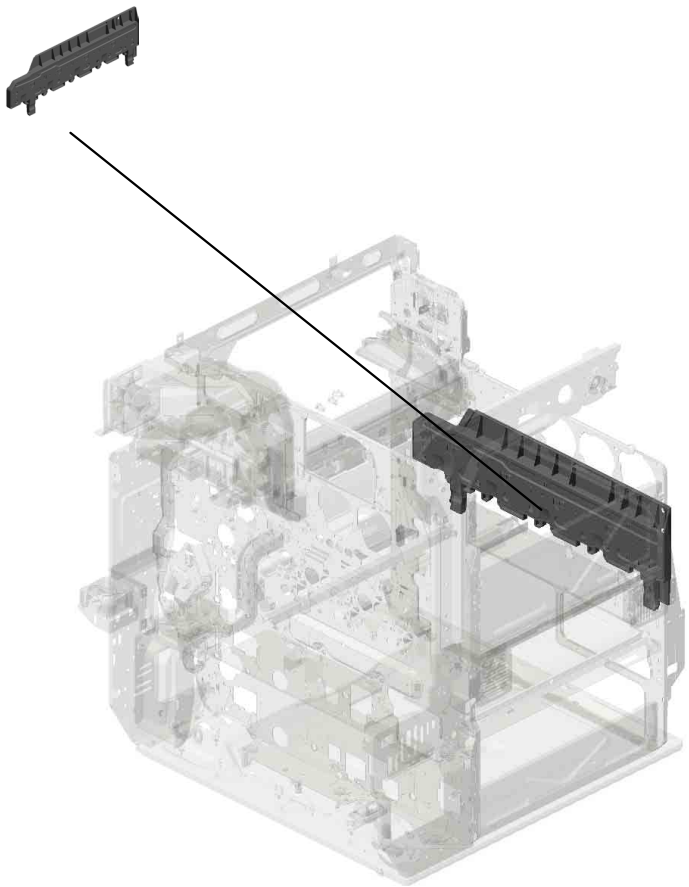


U017
Toner Collection

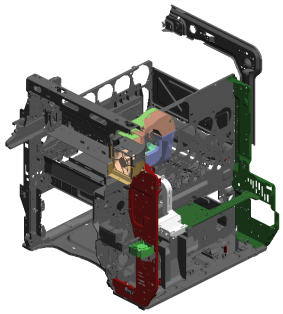
http://www.manuals4you.com

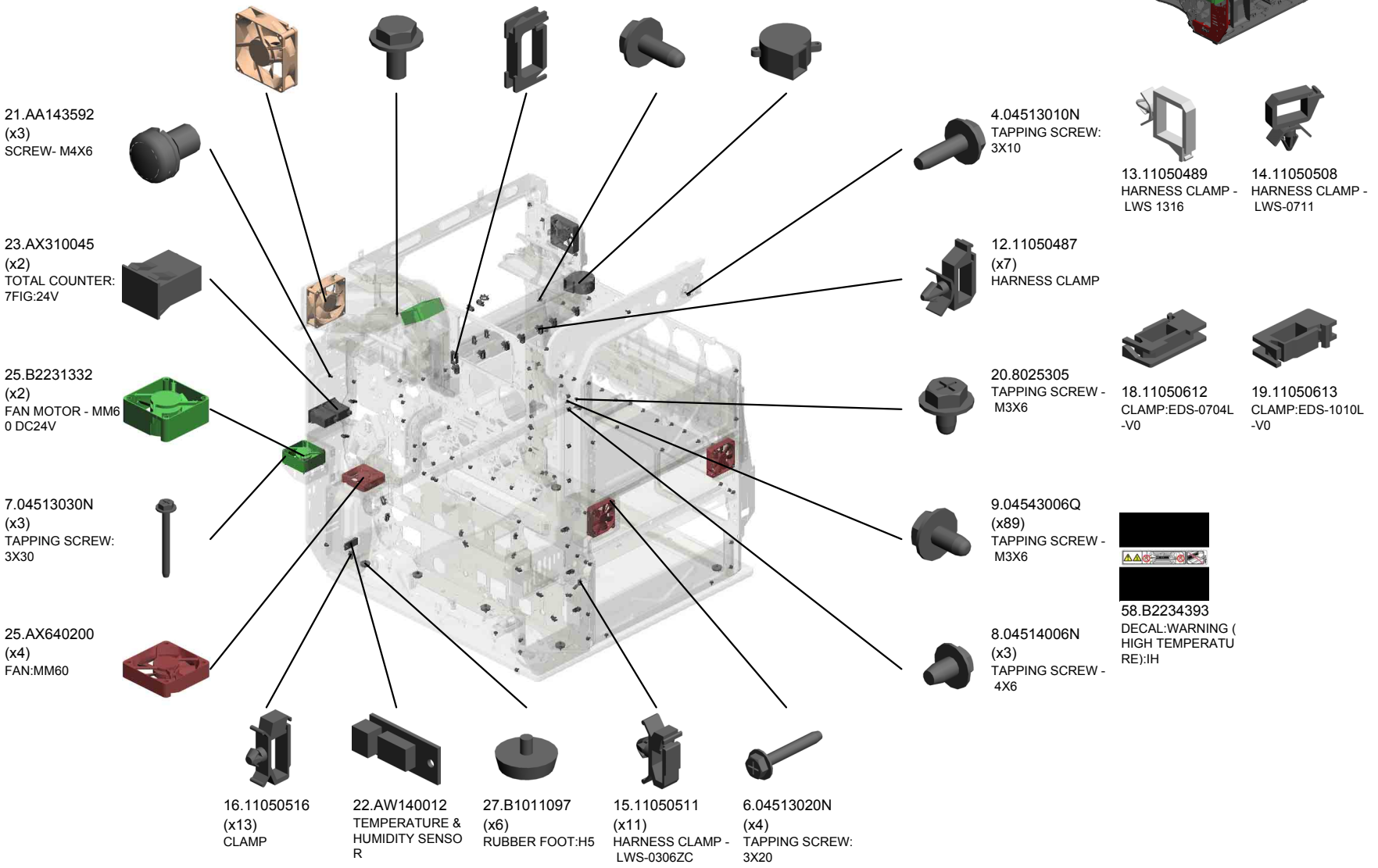
U001.Main Frame

U001 S001
B2231300
DRUM STAY PCU ASS'Y



U001
Main Frame





24.AX640199
FAN:AXIAL:MM80:25MM

1.03603006N
SCREW - M3X6

17.11050521
CLAMP - LES-1017

2.03603008N
SCREW:M3X8

26.AX650045
SIROCCO FAN:DC 24V 2.6W

21.AA143592
(x3)
SCREW- M4X6

23.AX310045
(x2)
TOTAL COUNTER: 7FIG:24V

25.B2231332
(x2)
FAN MOTOR - MM60 DC24V

7.04513030N
(x3)
TAPPING SCREW: 3X30

25.AX640200
(x4)
FAN:MM60

4.04513010N
TAPPING SCREW: 3X10

12.11050487
(x7)
HARNESS CLAMP

20.8025305
TAPPING SCREW - M3X6

9.04543006Q
(x89)
TAPPING SCREW - M3X6

8.04514006N
(x3)
TAPPING SCREW - 4X6

13.11050489
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS 1316

14.11050508
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS-0711

18.11050612
CLAMP:EDS-0704L -V0

19.11050613
CLAMP:EDS-1010L -V0

58.B2234393
DECAL:WARNING (HIGH TEMPERATURE):IH

16.11050516
(x13)
CLAMP

22.AW140012
TEMPERATURE & HUMIDITY SENSOR

27.B1011097
(x6)
RUBBER FOOT:H5

15.11050511
(x11)
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS-0306ZC

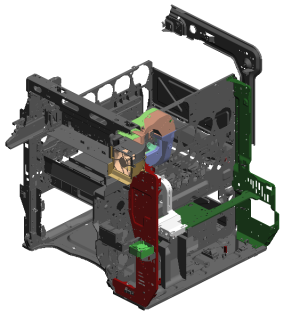
6.04513020N
(x4)
TAPPING SCREW: 3X20

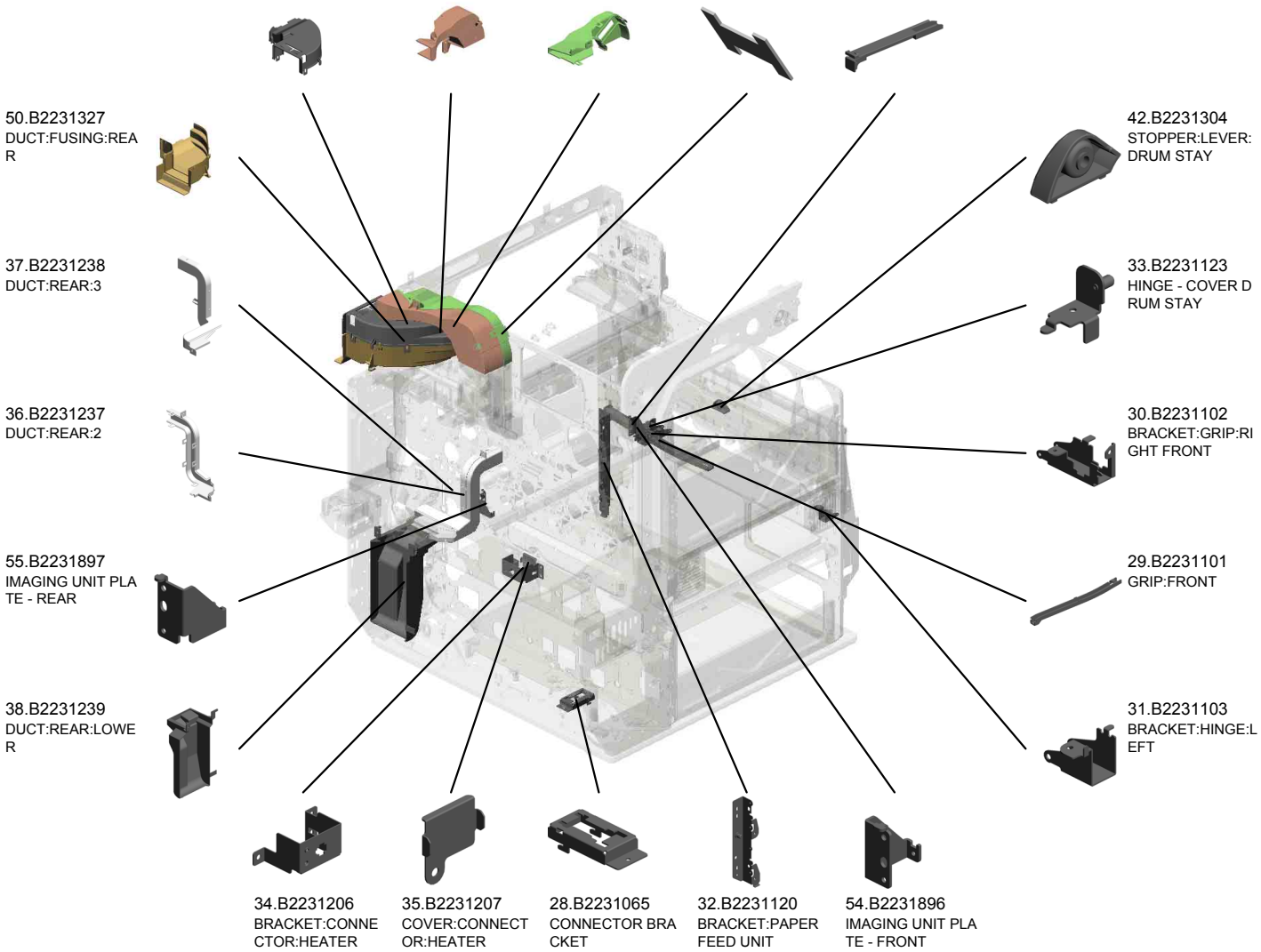
D0291336
[A]
DUCT:EXIT
081128 X/O

5.04513012N (x 1)
TAPPING SCREW:3X12
10.04543008Q (x 1)
TAPPING SCREW:3X8
11.04563010N (x 1)
TAPPING SCREW - M3X10

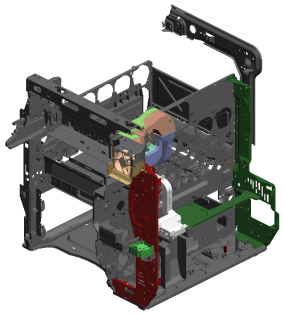
http://www.manuals4you.com

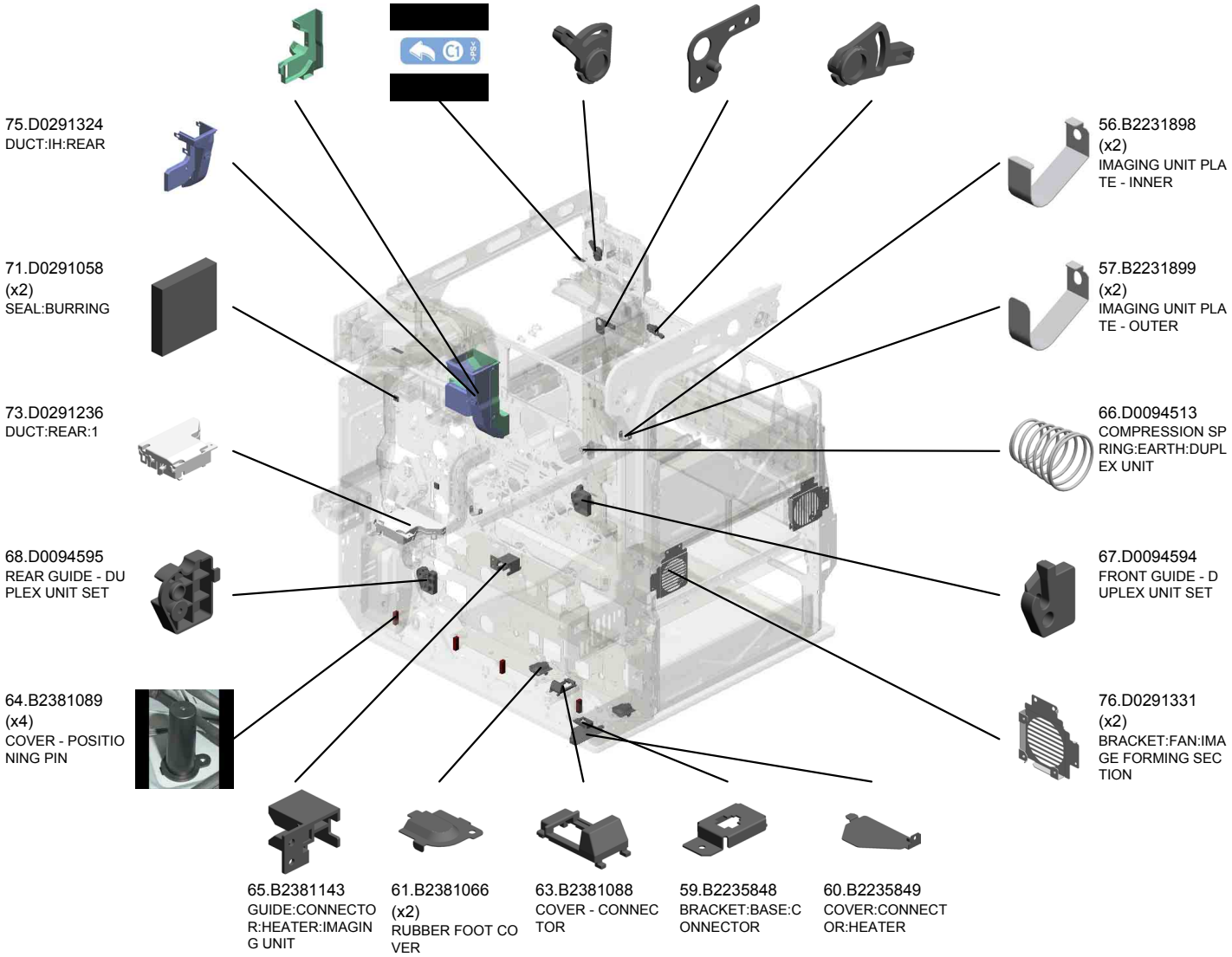
U001
Main Frame





U001
Main Frame





74.D0291323
DUCT:IH:FRONT

72.D0291061
(x2)
DECAL:LEVER:LOCK:FUSING

70.D0291054
CAM:GUIDE:FUSING

62.B2381072
POSITIONING PLATE:GUIDE PLATE:FUSING:FRONT LOWER:PEEN

69.D0291053
CAM:GUIDE:FUSING:LEFT

75.D0291324
DUCT:IH:REAR

71.D0291058
(x2)
SEAL:BURRING

73.D0291236
DUCT:REAR:1

68.D0094595
REAR GUIDE - DUPLEX UNIT SET

64.B2381089
(x4)
COVER - POSITIONING PIN

56.B2231898
(x2)
IMAGING UNIT PLATE - INNER

57.B2231899
(x2)
IMAGING UNIT PLATE - OUTER

66.D0094513
COMPRESSION SPRING:EARTH:DUPLEX UNIT

67.D0094594
FRONT GUIDE - DUPLEX UNIT SET

76.D0291331
(x2)
BRACKET:FAN:IMAGE FORMING SECTION

65.B2381143
GUIDE:CONNECTOR:HEATER:IMAGING UNIT

61.B2381066
(x2)
RUBBER FOOT COVER

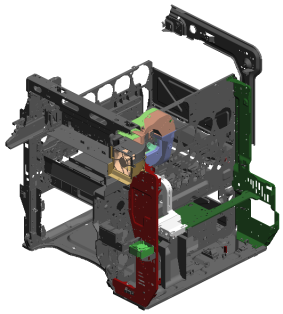
63.B2381088
COVER - CONNECTOR

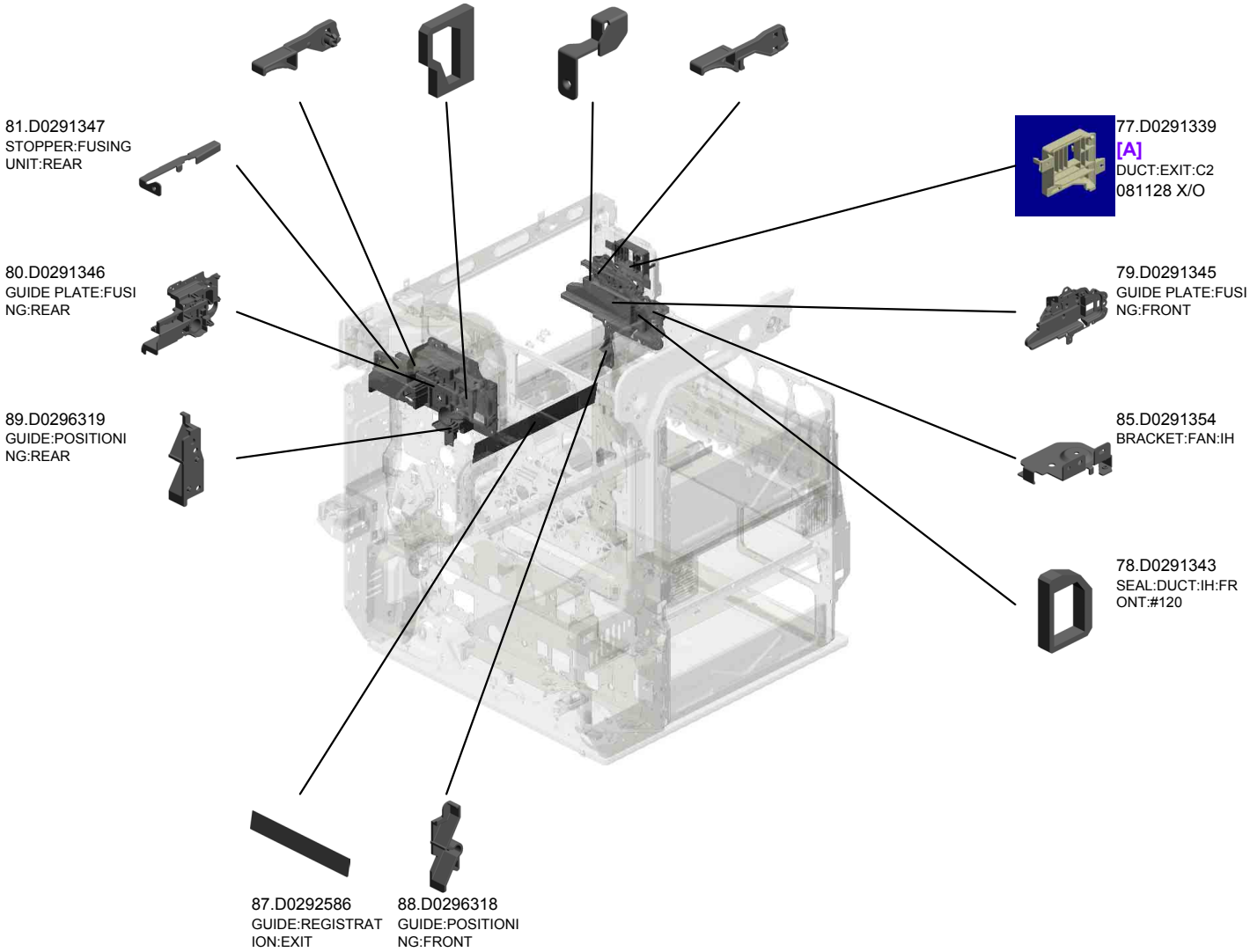
59.B2235848
BRACKET:BASE:CONNECTOR

60.B2235849
COVER:CONNECTOR:HEATER

http://www.manuals4you.com

U001
Main Frame





86.D0291355
LEVER:LOCK:FUSING UNIT:REAR

82.D0291348
SEAL:DUCT:IH:REAR

83.D0291350
STOPPER:FUSING UNIT:FRONT

84.D0291351
LEVER:LOCK:FUSING UNIT:FRONT

81.D0291347
STOPPER:FUSING UNIT:REAR

77.D0291339
[A]
DUCT:EXIT:C2
081128 X/O

80.D0291346
GUIDE PLATE:FUSING:REAR

79.D0291345
GUIDE PLATE:FUSING:FRONT

89.D0296319
GUIDE:POSITIONING:REAR

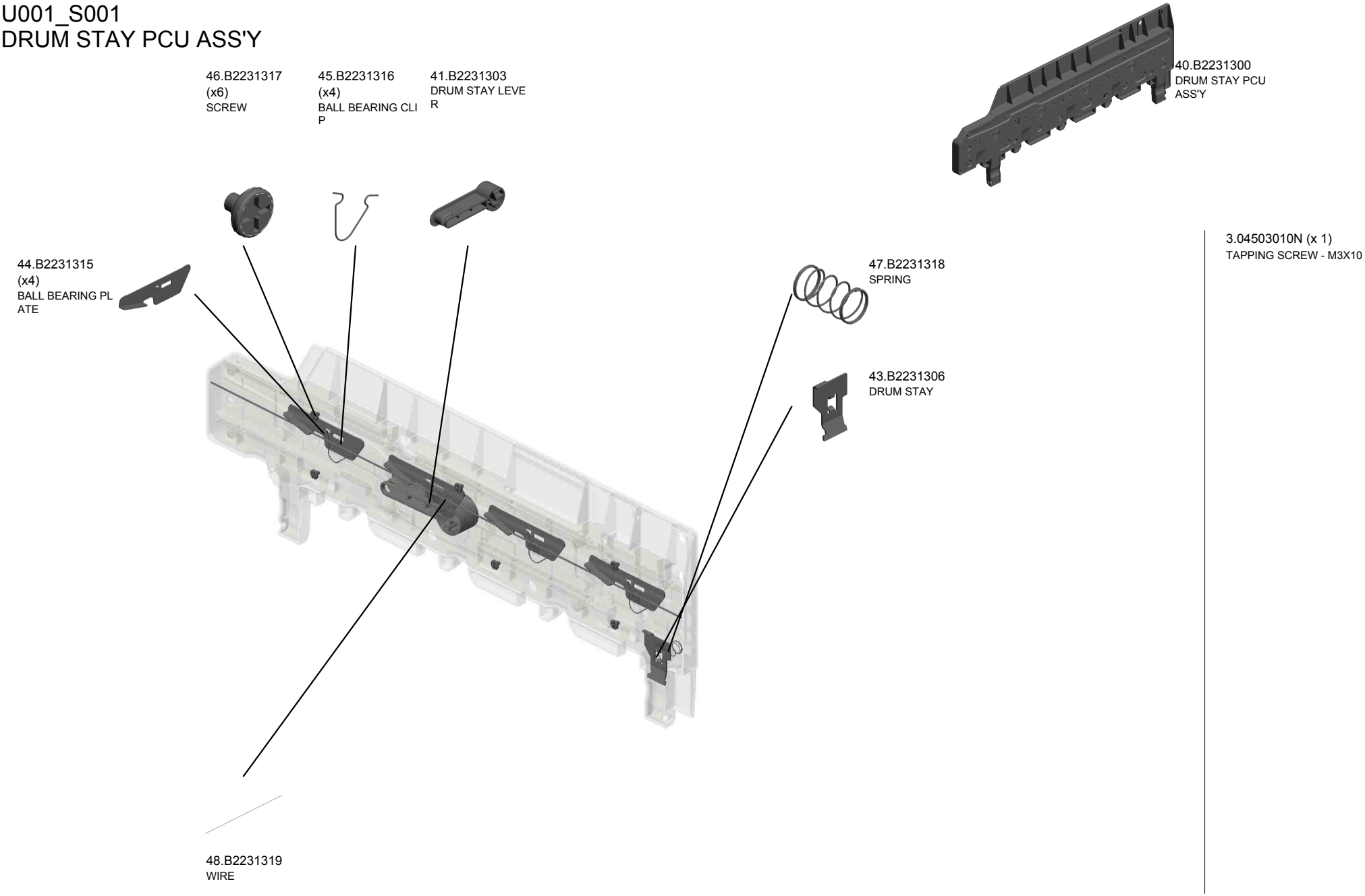
85.D0291354
BRACKET:FAN:IH

78.D0291343
SEAL:DUCT:IH:FRONT:#120

87.D0292586
GUIDE:REGISTRATION:EXIT

88.D0296318
GUIDE:POSITIONING:FRONT

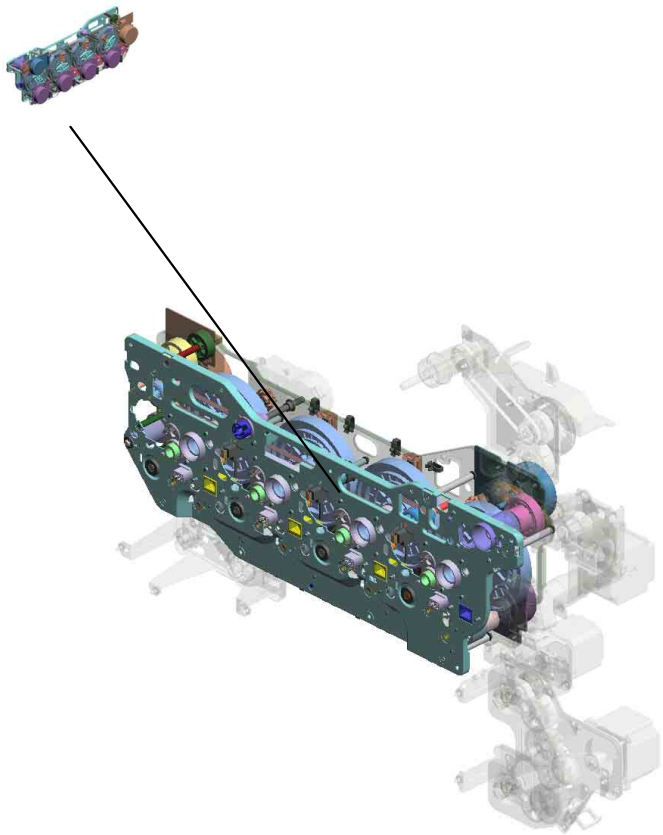
U001_S001
DRUM STAY PCU ASS'Y



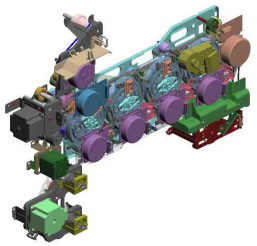
http://www.manuals4you.com

U002.Main Drive

U002 S001
D0291100
DRIVE UNIT:ENGINE:APOLL
ON-C2:ASS'Y



U002
Main Drive



13.11050489
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS 1316

12.07200060E
(x4)
RETAINING RING - M6

22.AA043336
TIMING BELT:40S3 M267

1.03603006N
(x13)
SCREW - M3X6

5.04503012N
(x2)
TAPPING SCREW: 3X12

2.03603016N
(x2)
SCREW - M3X16

23.AA043583
TIMING BELT - S2 M460

19.8010231
HEXAGONAL HEA D BOLT W/WASHE R:M3X6

9.04543020Q
(x2)
TAPPING SCREW:: 3X20

17.11050522
EDGE SADDLE - L ES0510

10.07200030E
RETAINING RING - M3

8.04543008Q
(x3)
TAPPING SCREW: 3X8

21.A2324666
CUSHION - STEPP ER MOTOR

18.54472681
SNAP RING

4.04340100N
(x2)
TAPPING SCREW - 4X10

11.07200040E
(x4)
RETAINING RING - M4

24.AA043585
TIMING BELT:40S3 M162

21.AA161164
CUSHION:STEPPE R MOTOR

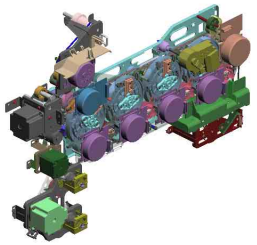
7.04543006Q
(x8)
TAPPING SCREW - M3X6

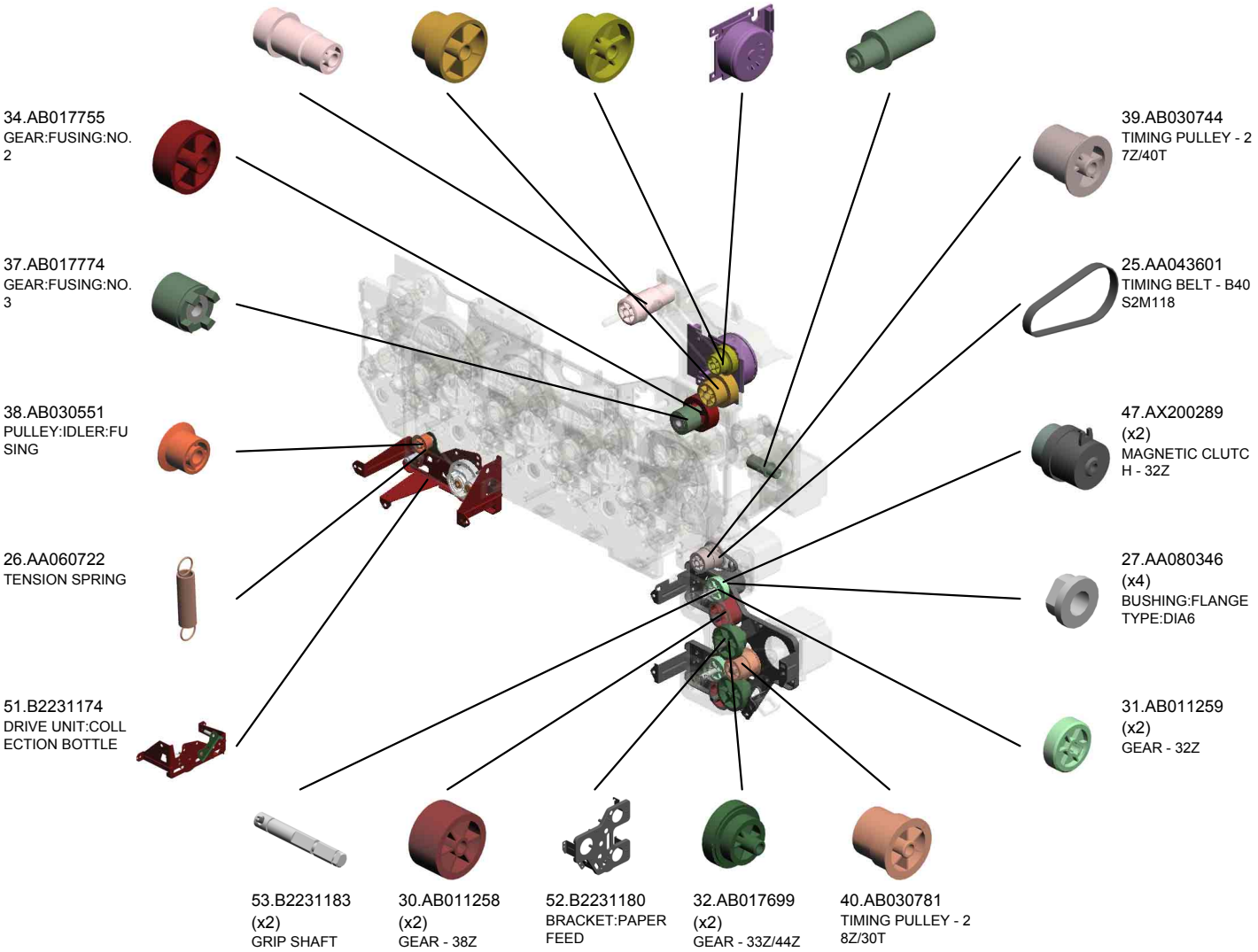
6.04514008N
(x2)
TAPPING SCREW: 4X8

3.03604010N (x 1)
SCREW:M4X10

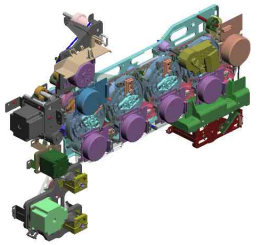
http://www.manuals4you.com

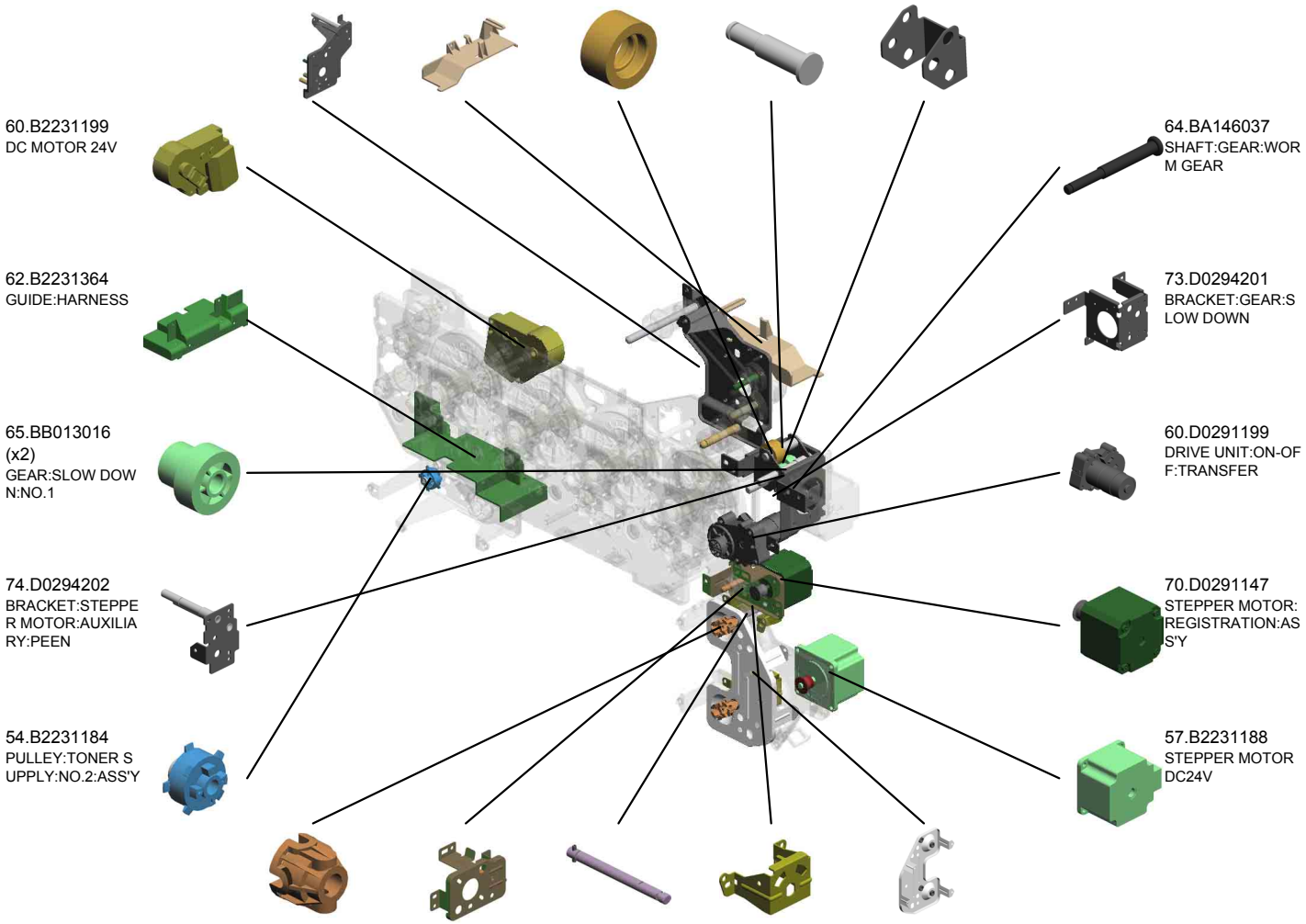
U002
Main Drive





U002
Main Drive





71.D0291163
BRACKET:FUSING/ PAPER EXIT UNIT: ASS'Y

72.D0291191
GUIDE:FUSING DR IVE SUB-UNIT

66.BB013017
GEAR:SLOW DOW N:NO.2

63.BA146036
SHAFT:GEAR:SWI VEL

75.D0294204
HOLDER:GEAR

60.B2231199
DC MOTOR 24V

62.B2231364
GUIDE:HARNESS

65.BB013016
(x2)
GEAR:SLOW DOW N:NO.1

74.D0294202
BRACKET:STEPPE R MOTOR:AUXILIA RY:PEEN

54.B2231184
PULLEY:TONER S UPPLY:NO.2:ASS'Y

64.BA146037
SHAFT:GEAR:WOR M GEAR

73.D0294201
BRACKET:GEAR:S LOW DOWN

60.D0291199
DRIVE UNIT:ON-OF F:TRANSFER

70.D0291147
STEPPER MOTOR: REGISTRATION:AS S'Y

57.B2231188
STEPPER MOTOR DC24V

55.B2231186
(x4)
DRIVE JOINT

59.B2231191
BRACKET:DRIVE U NIT:REGISTRATIO N

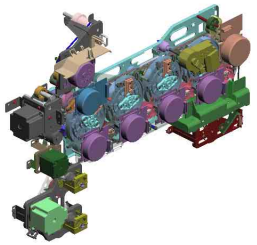
58.B2231189
(x2)
FEED DRIVE SHAF T

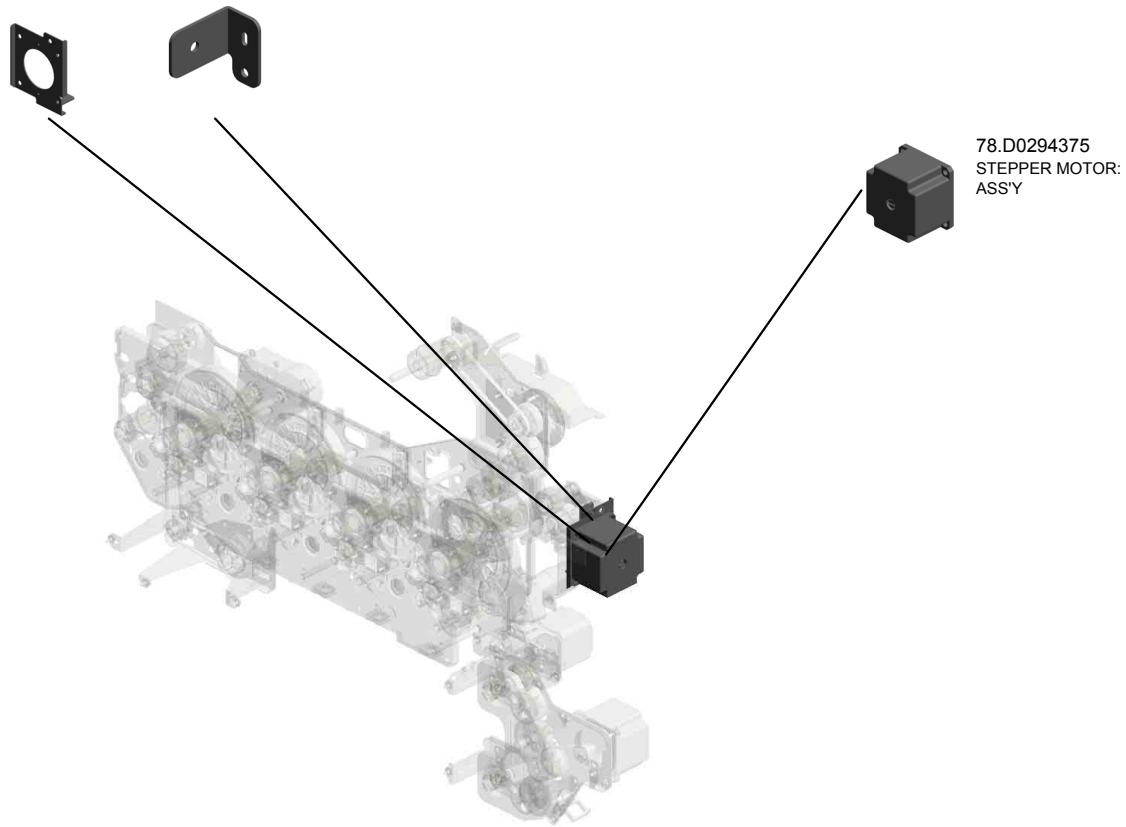
56.B2231187
(x2)
MAGNETIC CLUTC H BRACKET

61.B2231354
DRUM STAY:DRIV E UNIT

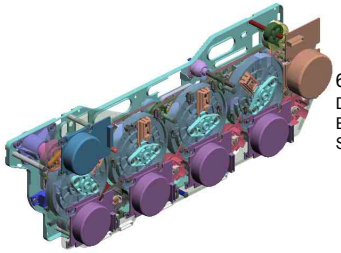
http://www.manuals4you.com

U002
Main Drive





U002_S001
DRIVE UNIT:ENGINE:APOLLON-C2:ASS'Y



67.D0291100
DRIVE UNIT:ENGINE:APOLLON-C2:ASS'Y

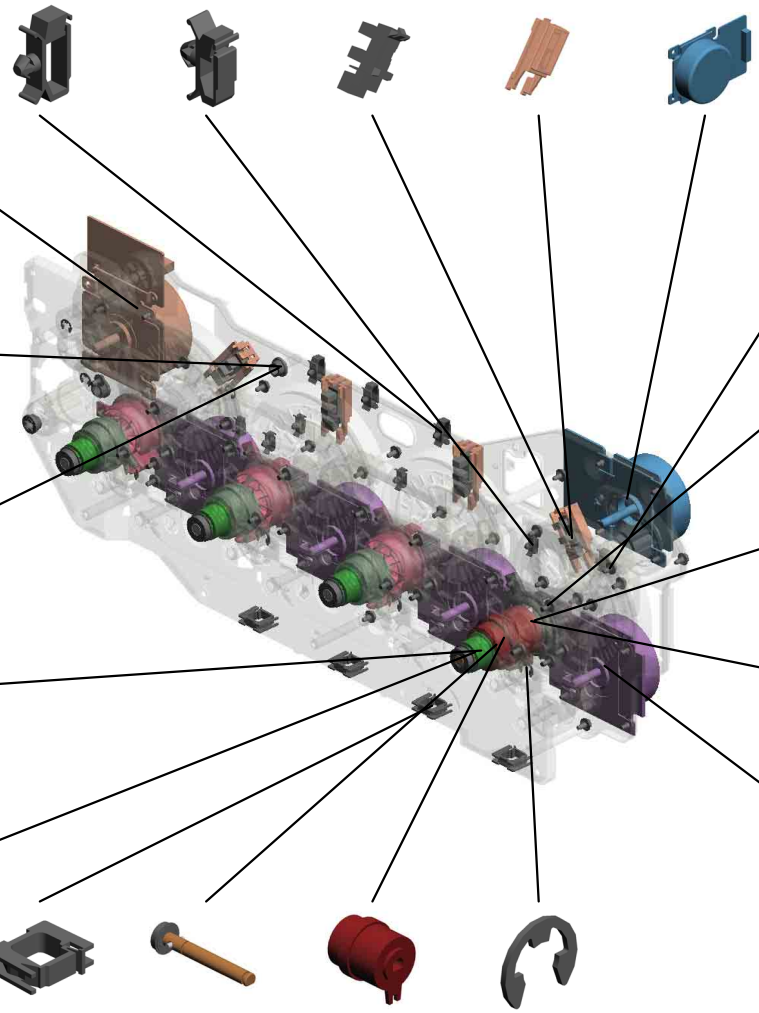
15.11050516
(x3)
CLAMP

14.11050511
(x6)
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS-0306ZC

42.AW020145
(x4)
PHOTOINTERRUPTOR:FLAT

50.B2231144
(x4)
HOLDER:POSITIONING SENSOR

43.AX050333
BRUSHLESS MOTOR:DRIVE:INTERMEDIATE TRANSFER:9W



44.AX060356
BRUSHLESS MOTOR:DC24V 18W

11.07200040E
(x5)
RETAINING RING - M4

28.AA082101
(x3)
BUSHING - 6X10X6

20.8050088
(x4)
RETAINING RING - M6

41.AB030888
(x4)
TIMING PULLEY:DEVELOPMENT:NO.1

7.04543006Q
(x4)
TAPPING SCREW - M3X6

1.03603006N
(x64)
SCREW - M3X6

29.AA100015
(x4)
SNAP RING - M6

69.D0291137
(x4)
HOLDER:MAGNETIC CLUTCH:DEVELOPMENT

45.AX060368
(x4)
BRUSHLESS MOTOR:DRIVE:DRUM:28W

16.11050518
(x4)
EDGE SADDLE - LES-1010

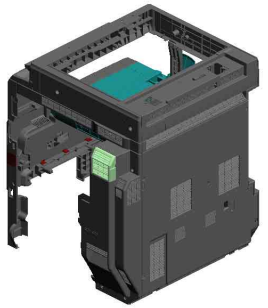
68.D0291136
(x4)
SHAFT:DEVELOPMENT:ASS'Y

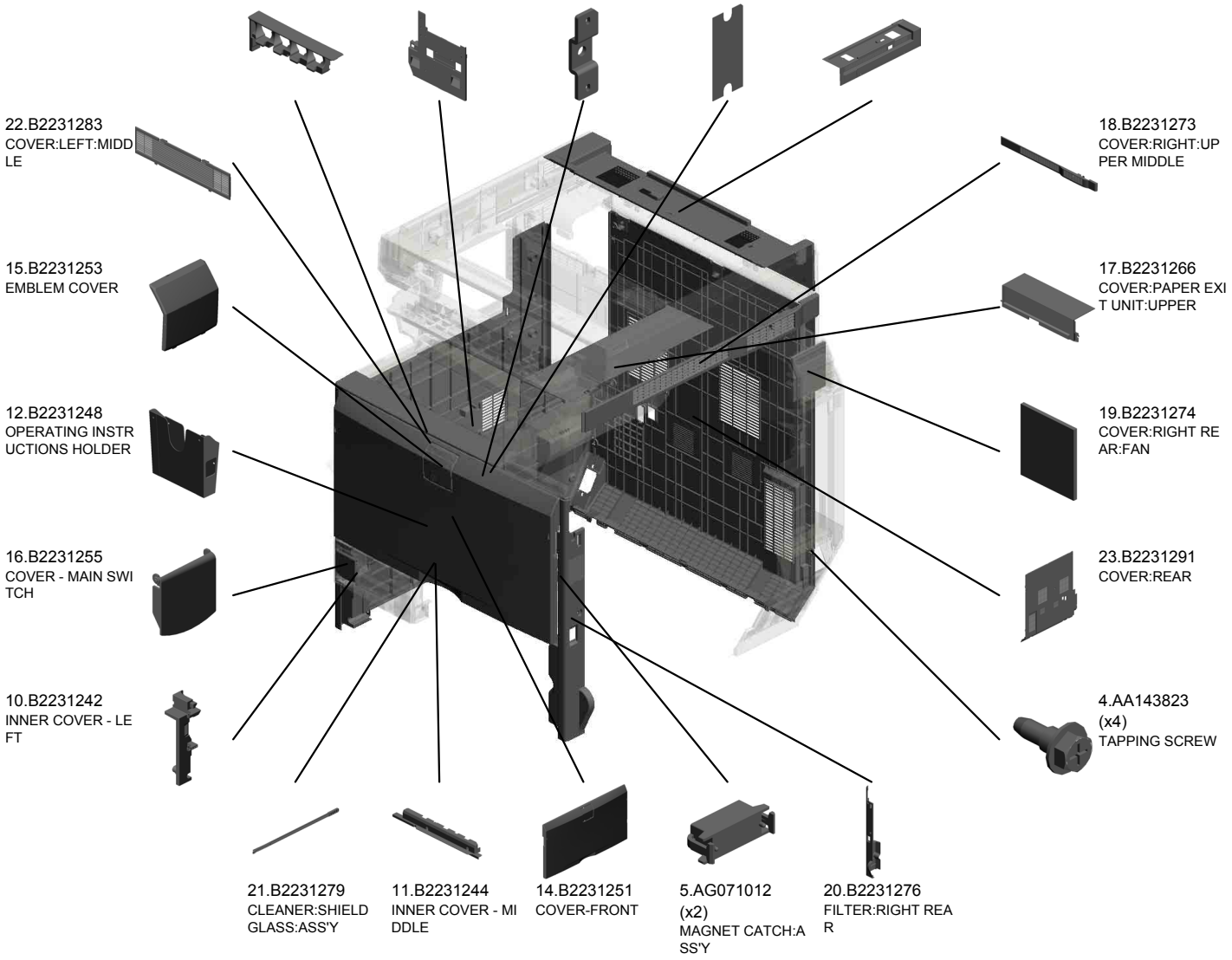
48.AX200314
(x4)
MAGNETIC CLUTCH:DEVELOPMENT:0.5N

12.07200060E
(x4)
RETAINING RING - M6

http://www.manuals4you.com

U003
Exterior



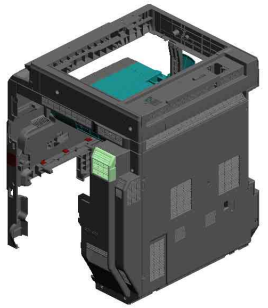


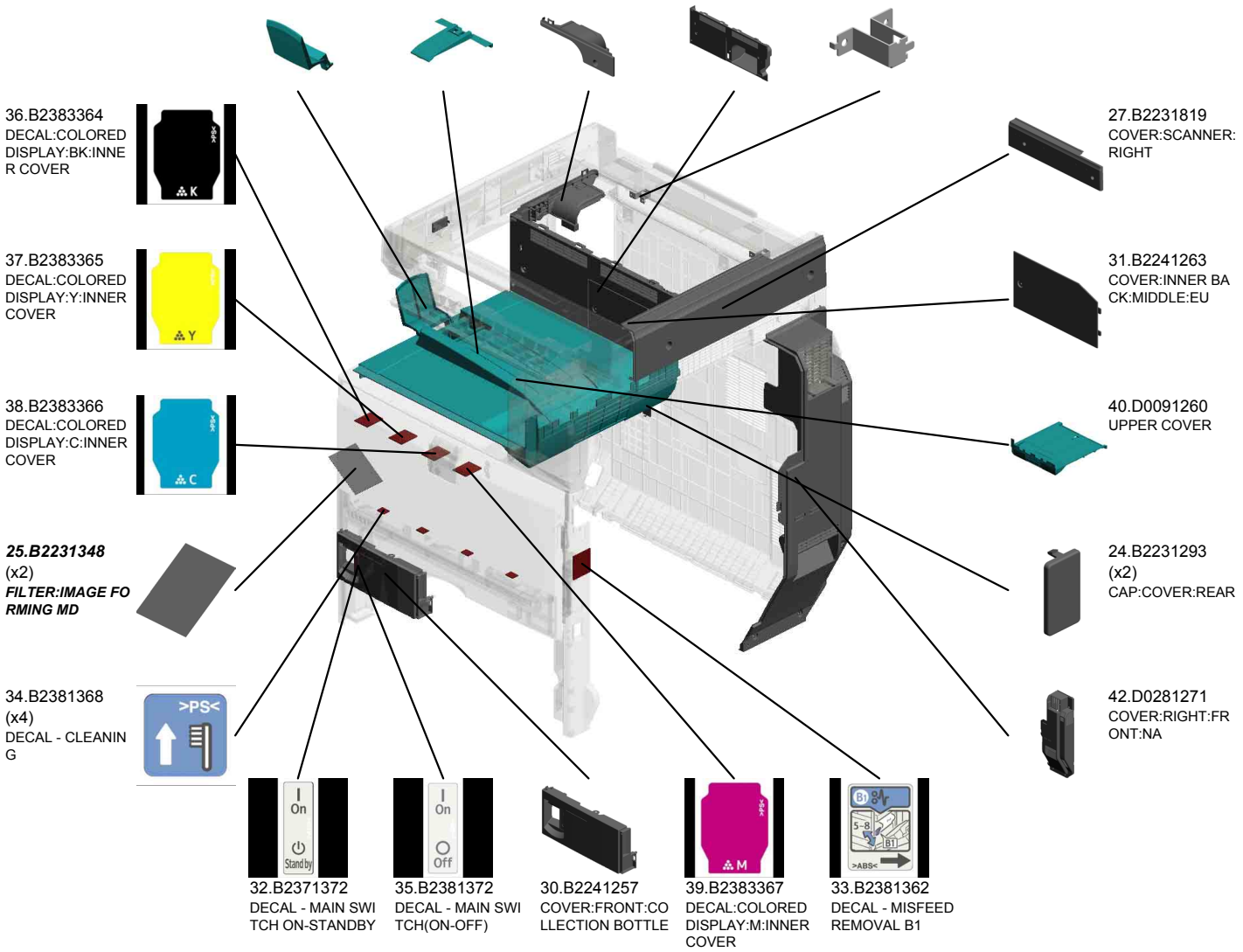


3.11050516
CLAMP

1.04503010N (x 1)
TAPPING SCREW - M3X10
2.04543008Q (x 1)
TAPPING SCREW:3X8

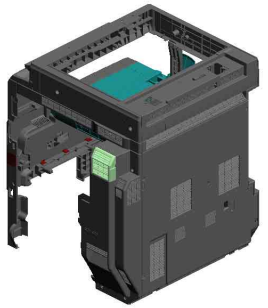
U003
Exterior

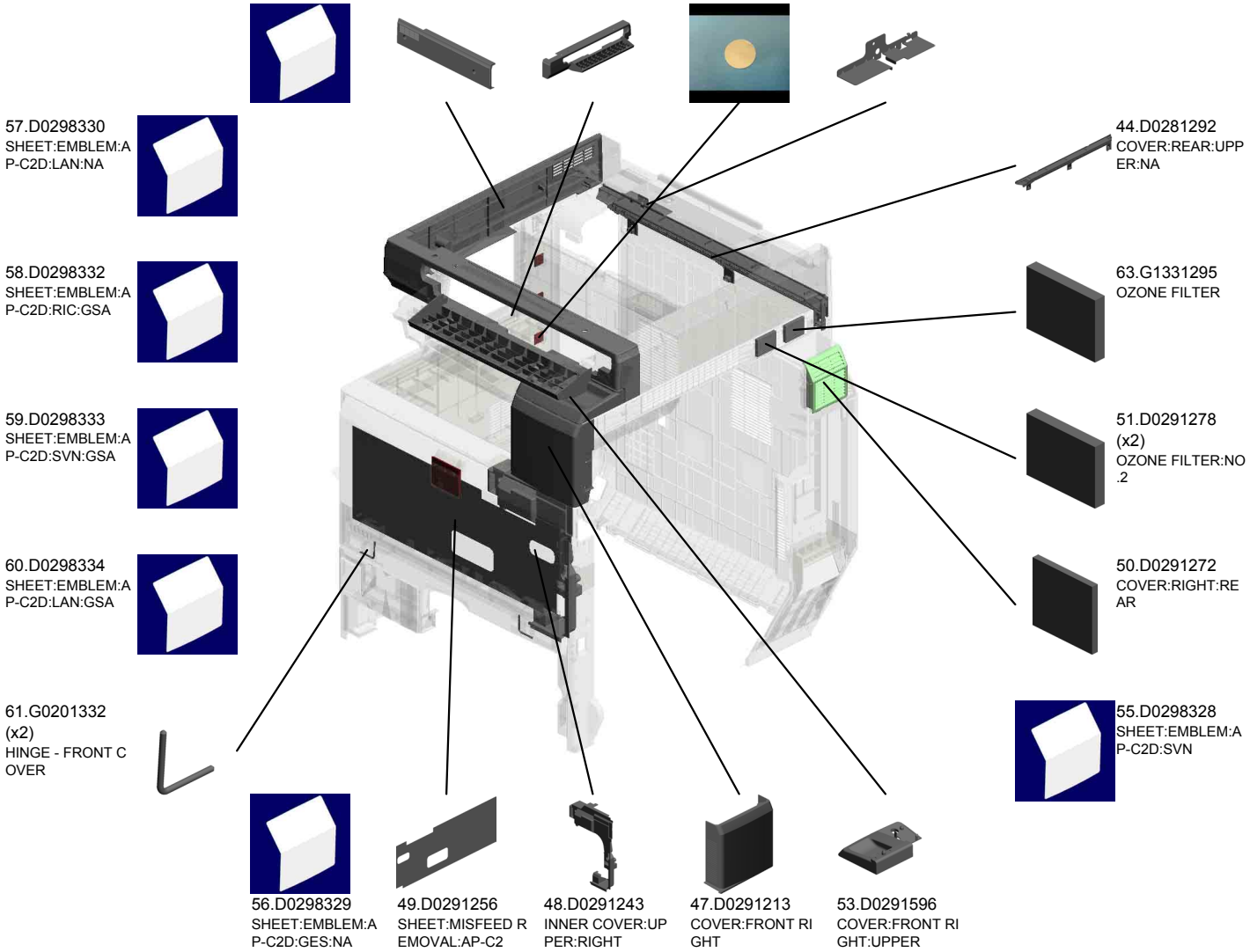




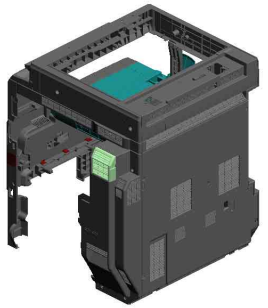
http://www.manuals4you.com

U003
Exterior





U003
Exterior



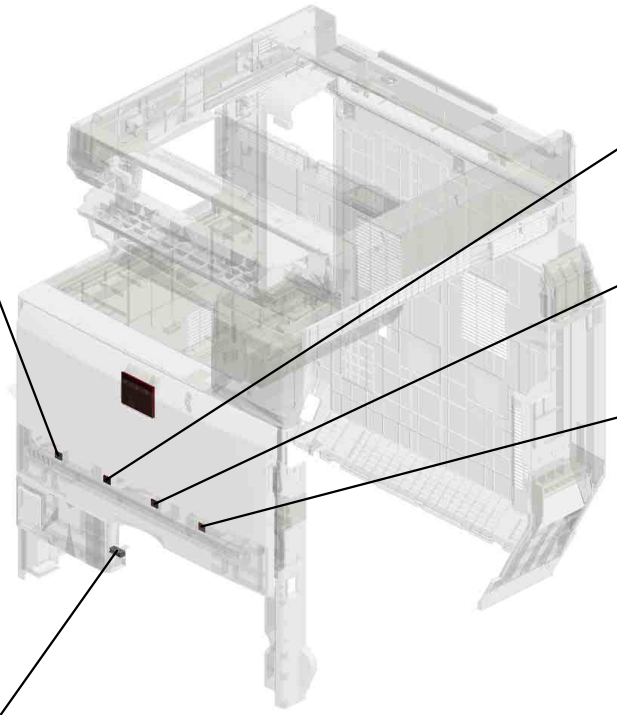
69.D0278322
SHEET:EMBLEM:RIC:EXP For D027
200906

70.D0278328
SHEET:EMBLEM:SVN For D027
200906

71.D0278329
SHEET:EMBLEM:GES:NA For D027
200906

72.D0278330
SHEET:EMBLEM:LAN:NA For D027
200906

65.GA003030
DECAL - SHIELDING PLATE Y



67.GA003032
DECAL - SHIELDING PLATE C

66.GA003031
DECAL - SHIELDING PLATE M

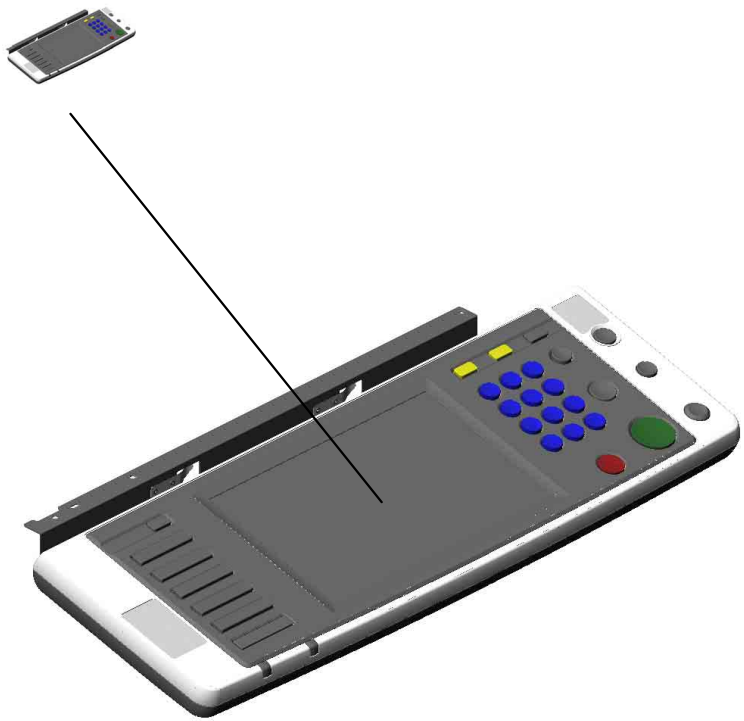
68.GA003033
DECAL - SHIELDING PLATE K

64.G1336537
MAGNET CATCH

http://www.manuals4you.com

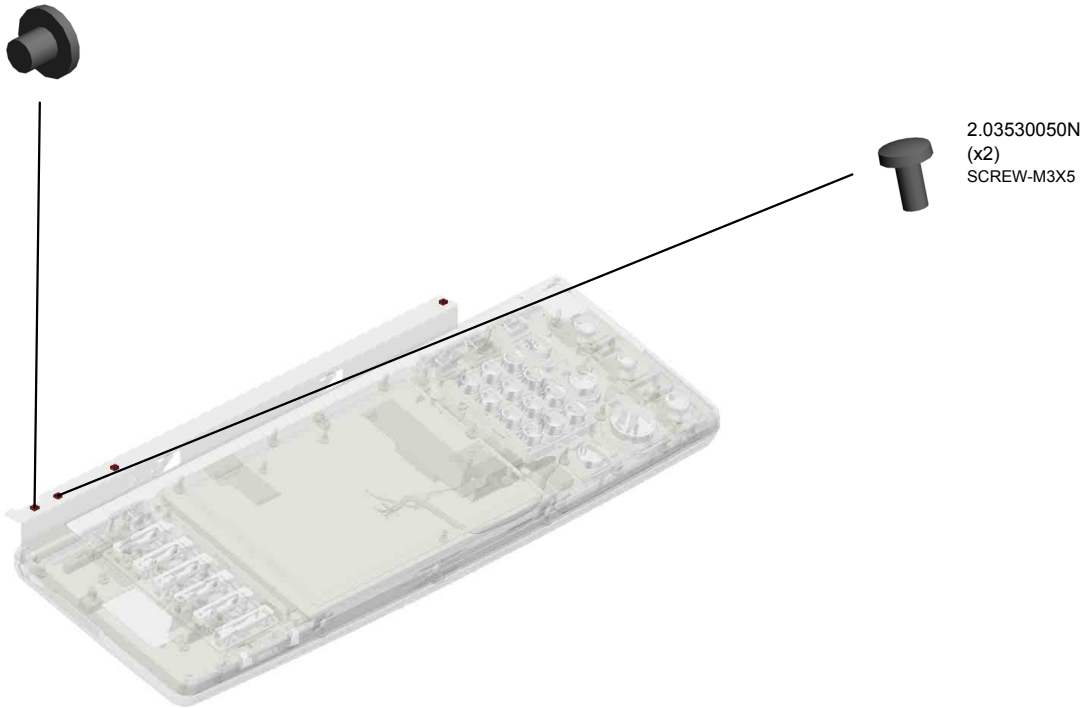
U004.Operation

U004 S001
D0291421
OPERATION SUB-UNIT:AP-C
2:NA:ASS'Y



1.03530030N
(x2)
SCREW:M3X3





2.03530050N
(x2)
SCREW-M3X5

http://www.manuals4you.com

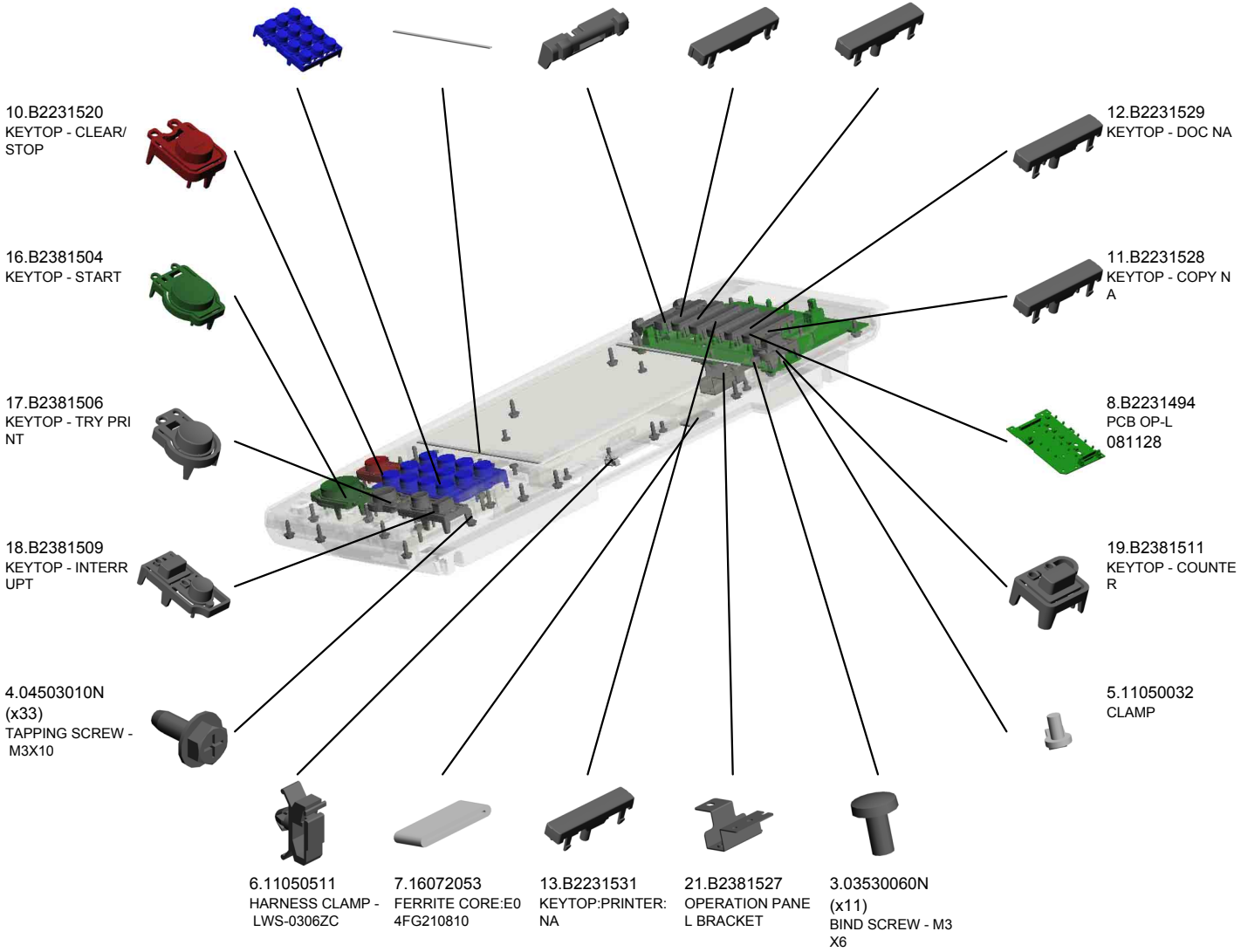
U004_S001
OPERATION SUB-UNIT:AP-C2:NA:ASS'Y



38.D0291421
[A]
OPERATION SUB-UNIT:AP-C2:NA:ASS'Y
081128 X/O



D0291411
[A]
OPERATION SUB-UNIT:AP-C2:NA:ASS'Y
081128 X/O



15.B2231540
KEYTOP:10KEY:NA

22.B2381534
(x2)
LCD SPACER A

20.B2381519
LENS - FRONT

9.B2231518
(x2)
KEYTOP - BLANK F B

14.B2231532
KEYTOP:SCANNER:NA

10.B2231520
KEYTOP - CLEAR/ STOP

16.B2381504
KEYTOP - START

17.B2381506
KEYTOP - TRY PRINT

18.B2381509
KEYTOP - INTERRUPT

4.04503010N
(x33)
TAPPING SCREW - M3X10

12.B2231529
KEYTOP - DOC NA

11.B2231528
KEYTOP - COPY NA

8.B2231494
PCB OP-L
081128

19.B2381511
KEYTOP - COUNTER

5.11050032
CLAMP

6.11050511
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS-0306ZC

7.16072053
FERRITE CORE:E04FG210810

13.B2231531
KEYTOP:PRINTER:NA

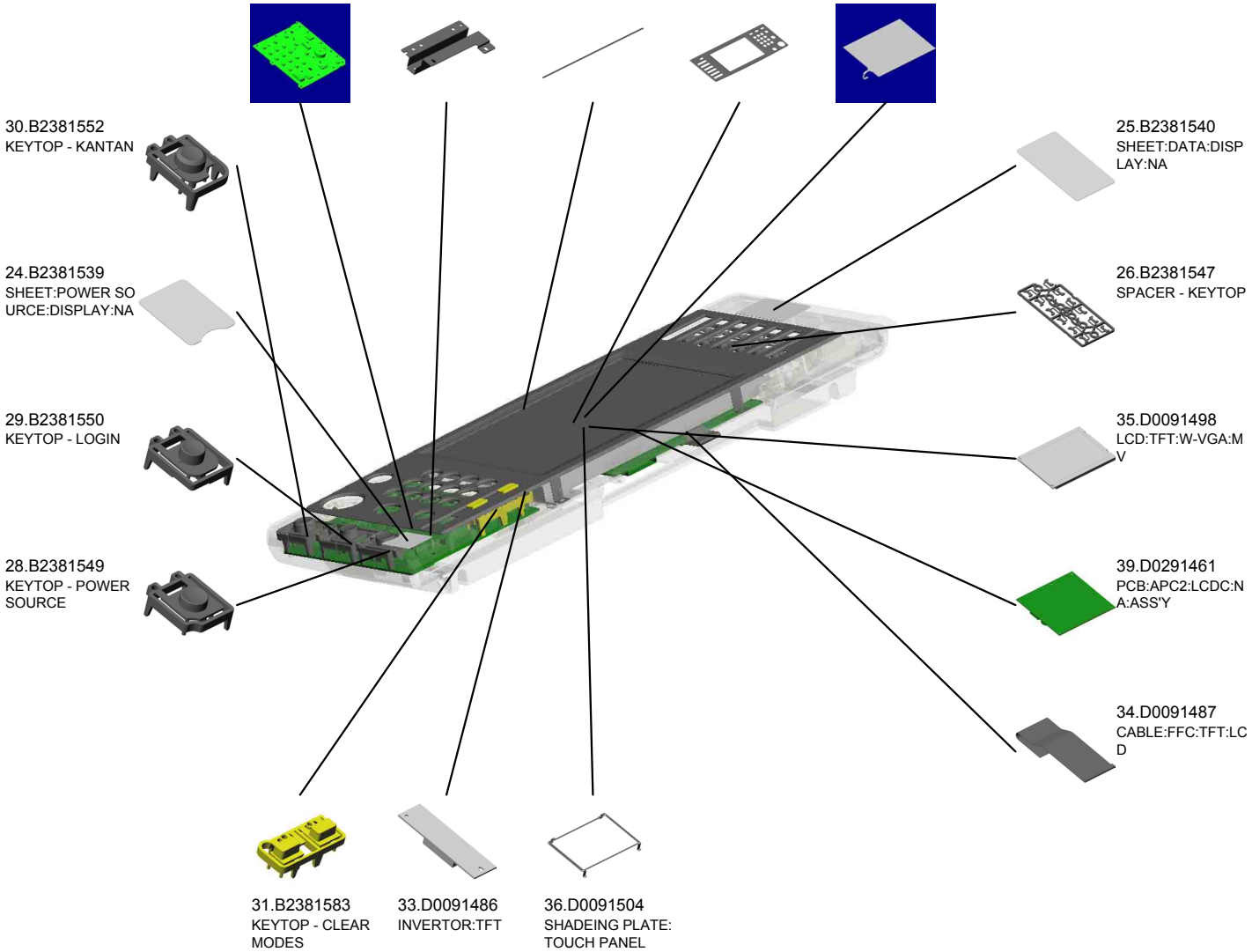
21.B2381527
OPERATION PANEL BRACKET

3.03530060N
(x11)
BIND SCREW - M3X6

U004_S001
OPERATION SUB-UNIT:AP-C2:NA:ASS'Y



38.D0291421
[A]
OPERATION SUB-UNIT:AP-C2:NA:ASS'Y
081128 X/O

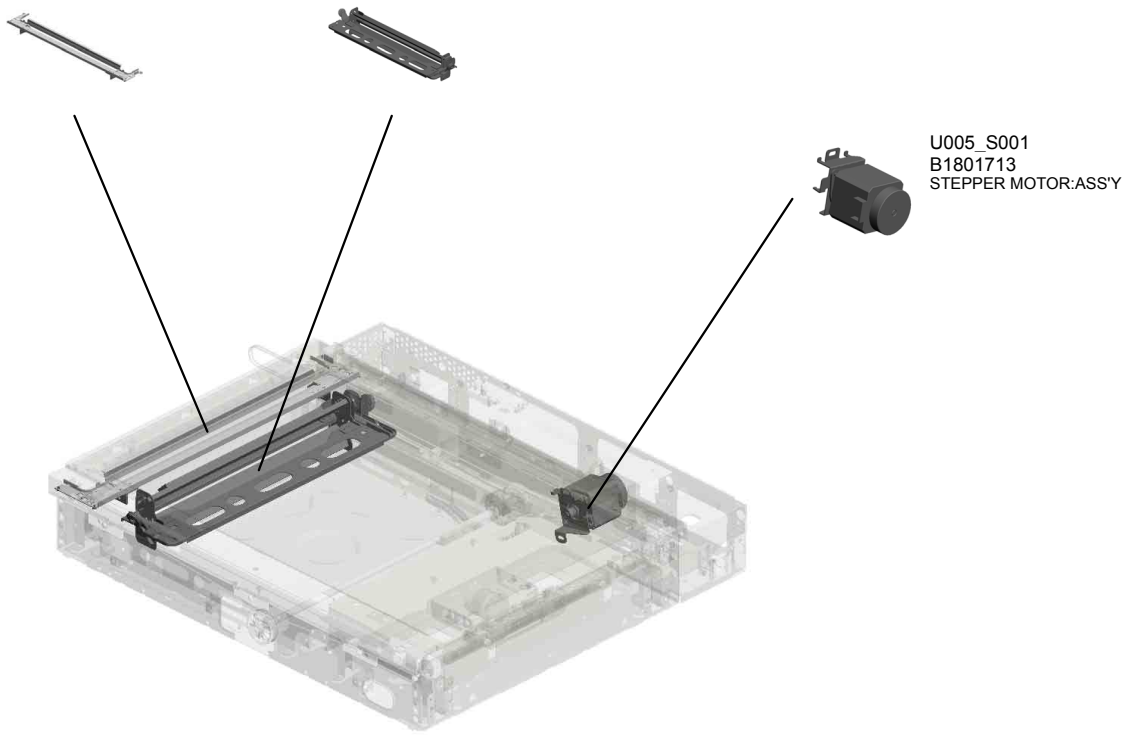


http://www.manuals4you.com

U005.Scanner

U005 S002
D0291715
CARRIAGE:NO.1:ASS'Y

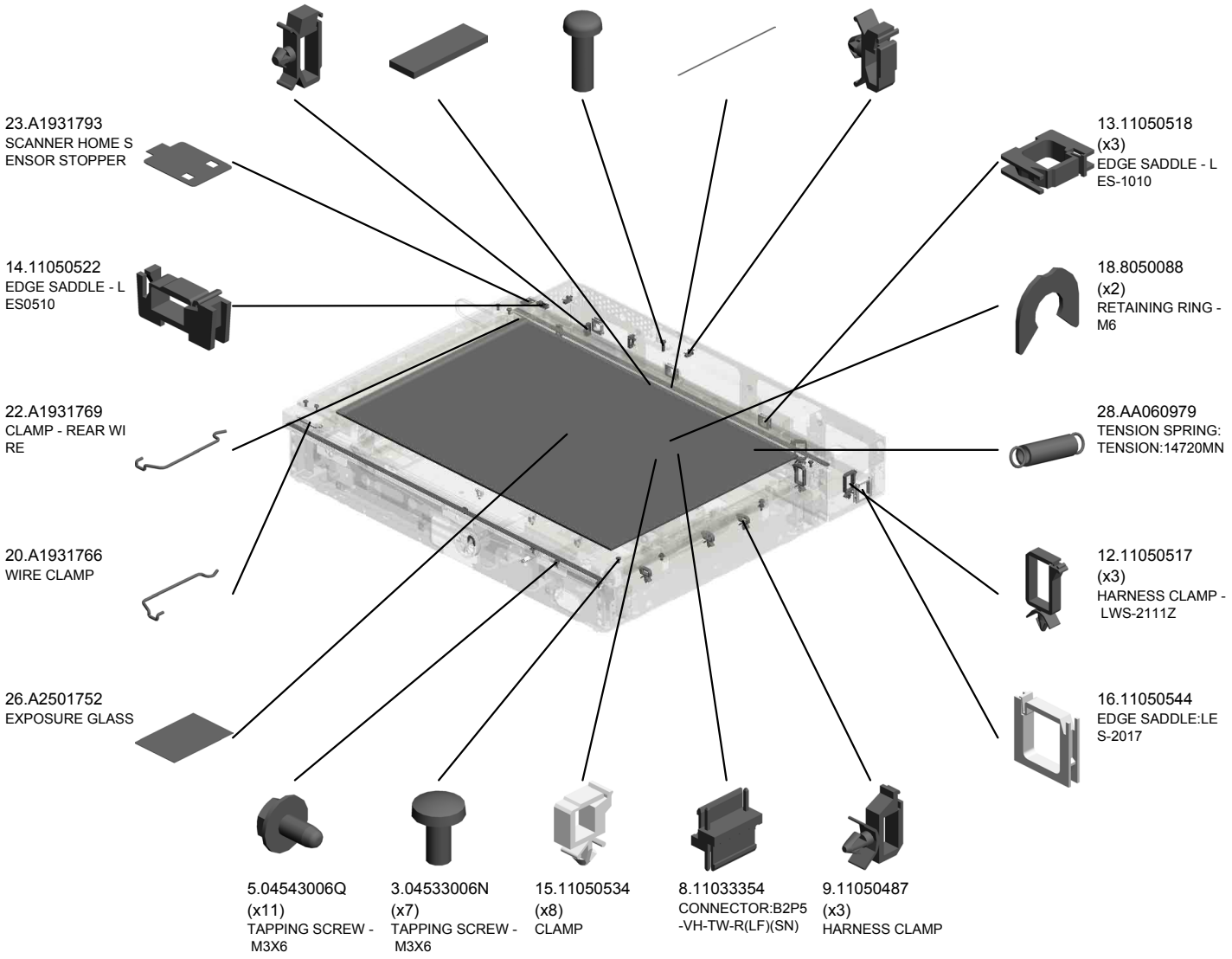
U005 S003
D0291731
CARRIAGE:NO.2:ASS'Y



U005_S001
B1801713
STEPPER MOTOR:ASS'Y

U005
Scanner





4.04533008N (x 1)
BINDING SELF TAPPING SCREW:3X8

7.09543010N (x 1)
SCREW:POLISHED ROUND/SPRING:M3X10

http://www.manuals4you.com

U005
Scanner



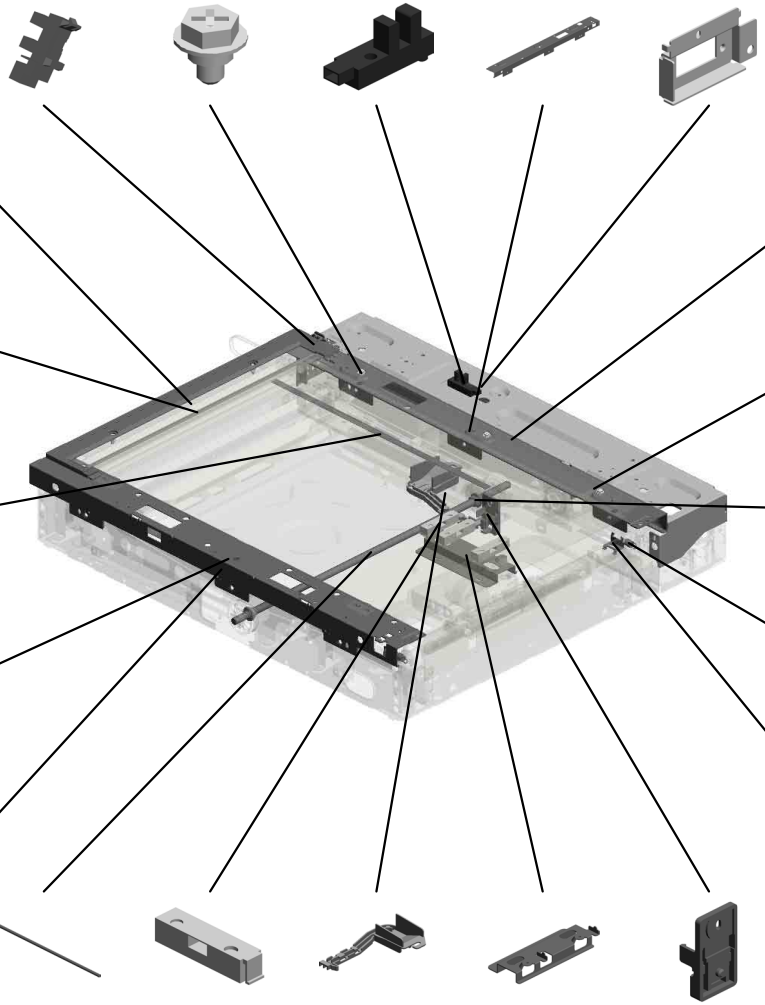
35.AW020145
PHOTOINTERRUPTOR:FLAT

31.AA143520
(x5)
SHOULDER SCREW - M3

36.AW020146
PHOTOINTERRUPTOR:FLAT:PICH2MM:M4

48.B2231788
FRAME:SCANNER:REAR

50.B2231808
DOCUMENT FEEDER:CONNECTOR:BRACKET



44.B2231773
SCALE:MACHINE OR COPIER

45.B2231774
SEAL:SHEET THROUGH

41.B1801734
(x2)
SLIDE RAIL:NO.2

37.B0511727
FRAME:SCANNER:FRONT

34.AW010140
(x2)
ORIGINAL SENSOR - 76MM

49.B2231806
BRACKET:DOCUMENT FEEDER:HOLDER

46.B2231779
COVER:STEPPER MOTOR:REAR

30.AA082144
(x2)
BUSHING - 8X12X7

29.AA060980
(x2)
TENSION SPRING:TENSION:11300MN

39.B1801704
(x2)
BRACKET:TENSION

43.B1801814
SHAFT:SCANNER:DRIVE

33.AW010133
(x3)
ORIGINAL SENSOR - 66MM

42.B1801803
GUIDE:HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY CORD:BASE

38.B0511814
BRACKET:ORIGINAL SENSOR

47.B2231786
HOLDER:CONNECTOR

U005
Scanner



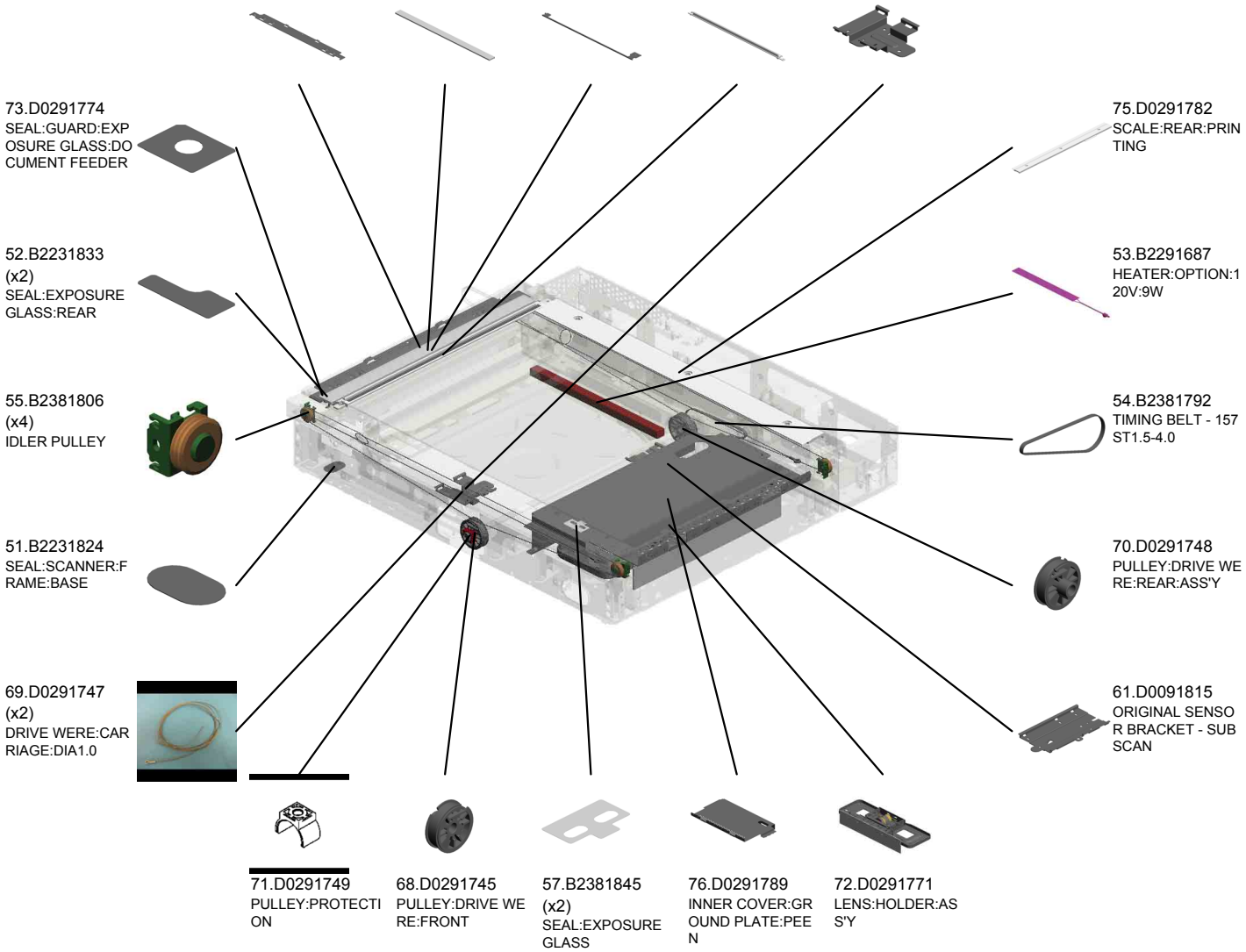
59.D0091731
BRACKET A - LEFT SCALE

58.BC012002
EXPOSURE GLASS :SHEET THROUGH :344X20

60.D0091732
BRACKET B - LEFT SCALE

74.D0291778
SCALE:LEFT:NA:ASS'Y

62.D0091816
ORIGINAL SENSOR BRACKET



73.D0291774
SEAL:GUARD:EXPOSURE GLASS:DOCUMENT FEEDER

52.B2231833
(x2)
SEAL:EXPOSURE GLASS:REAR

55.B2381806
(x4)
IDLER PULLEY

51.B2231824
SEAL:SCANNER:FRAME:BASE

69.D0291747
(x2)
DRIVE WERE:CARRIAGE:DIA1.0

75.D0291782
SCALE:REAR:PRINTING

53.B2291687
HEATER:OPTION:120V:9W

54.B2381792
TIMING BELT - 157 ST1.5-4.0

70.D0291748
PULLEY:DRIVE WERE:REAR:ASS'Y

61.D0091815
ORIGINAL SENSOR BRACKET - SUB SCAN

71.D0291749
PULLEY:PROTECTION

68.D0291745
PULLEY:DRIVE WERE:FRONT

57.B2381845
(x2)
SEAL:EXPOSURE GLASS

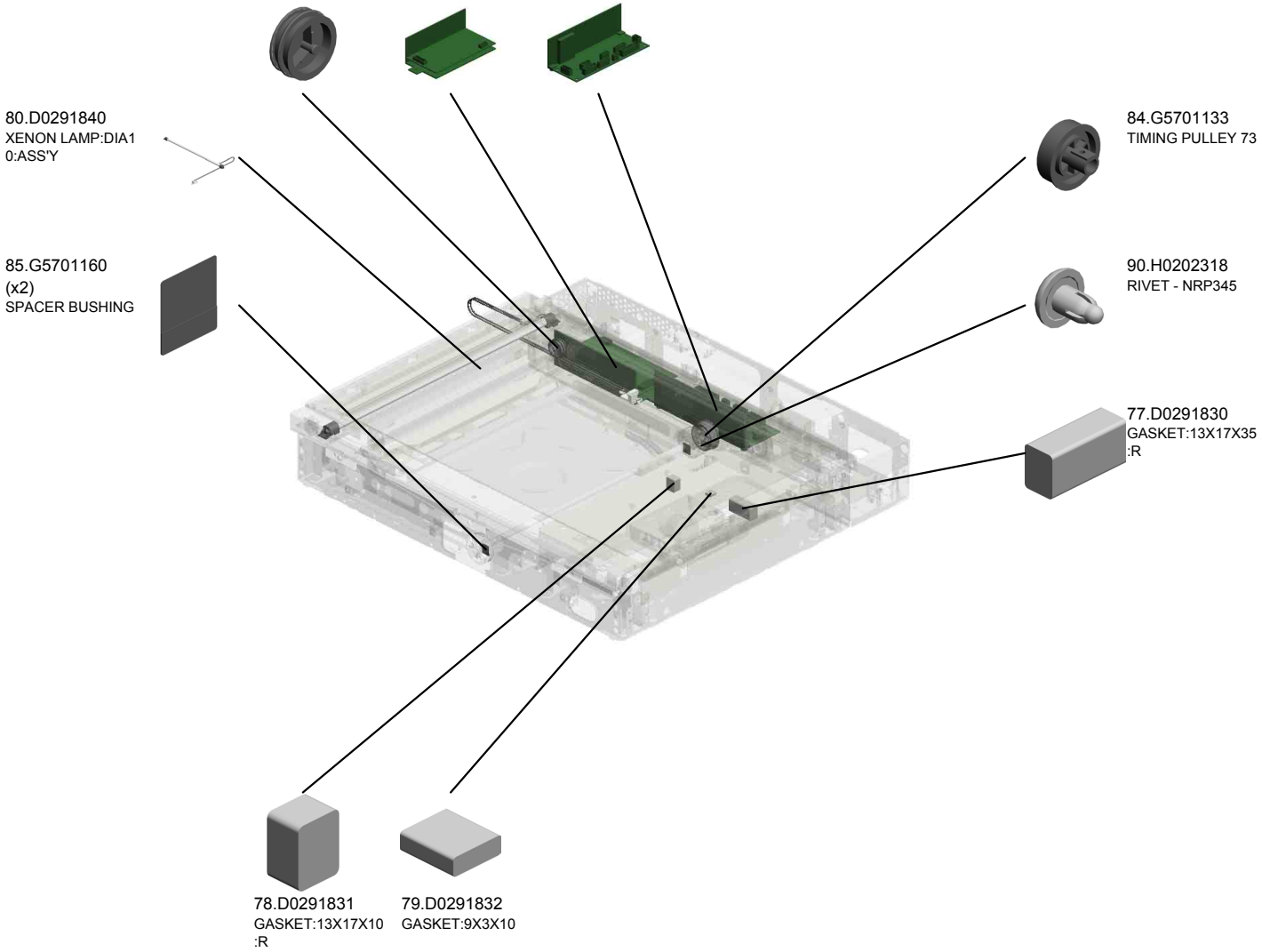
76.D0291789
INNER COVER:GROUND PLATE:PEEN

72.D0291771
LENS:HOLDER:ASS'Y

http://www.manuals4you.com

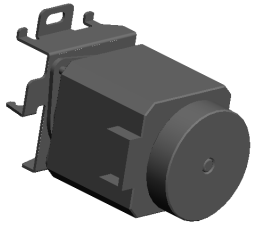
U005
Scanner





U005_S001
STEPPER MOTOR:ASS'Y

25.A2324666
CUSHION - STEPP
ER MOTOR

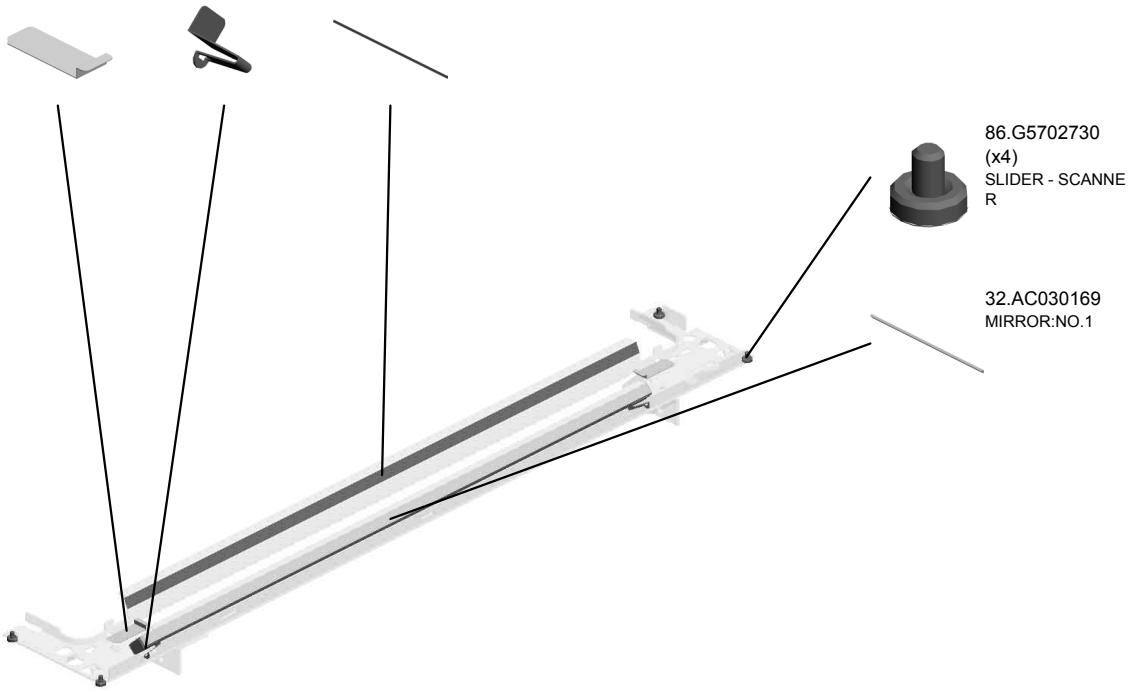


40.B1801713
STEPPER MOTOR:
ASS'Y



http://www.manuals4you.com

U005_S002
CARRIAGE:NO.1:ASS'Y



64.D0291719
(x2)
SHEET:CARRIAGE:NO.1

21.A1931767
(x2)
1ST MIRROR HOLDER

19.A1001714
REFLECTOR



63.D0291715
CARRIAGE:NO.1:ASS'Y

86.G5702730
(x4)
SLIDER - SCANNER

32.AC030169
MIRROR:NO.1

U005_S003
CARRIAGE:NO.2:ASS'Y



65.D0291731
CARRIAGE:NO.2:ASS'Y

83.G4042810
(x4)
SPRING PLATE - 2ND MIRROR

27.A2501791
(x4)
2ND SCANNER SHOE

88.G5702833
PULLEY HOLDER

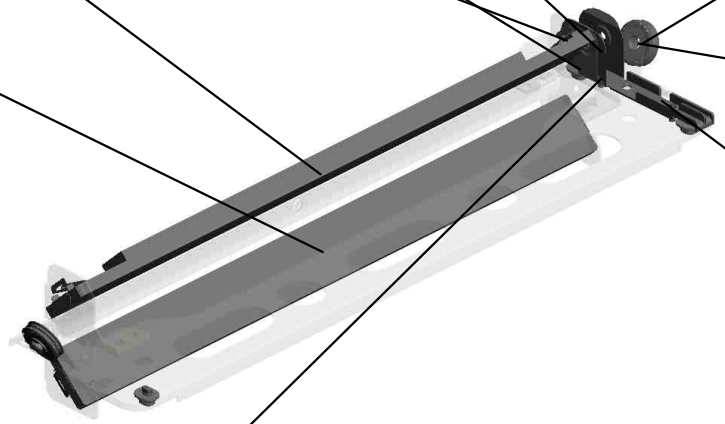


66.D0291736
MIRROR:NO.2:CONCAVE:ASS'Y



67.D0291737
MIRROR:NO.2:CONVAX:ASS'Y





6.07200040E
(x2)
RETAINING RING - M4



56.B2381807
(x2)
PULLEY



87.G5702832
GUIDE - HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY CORD



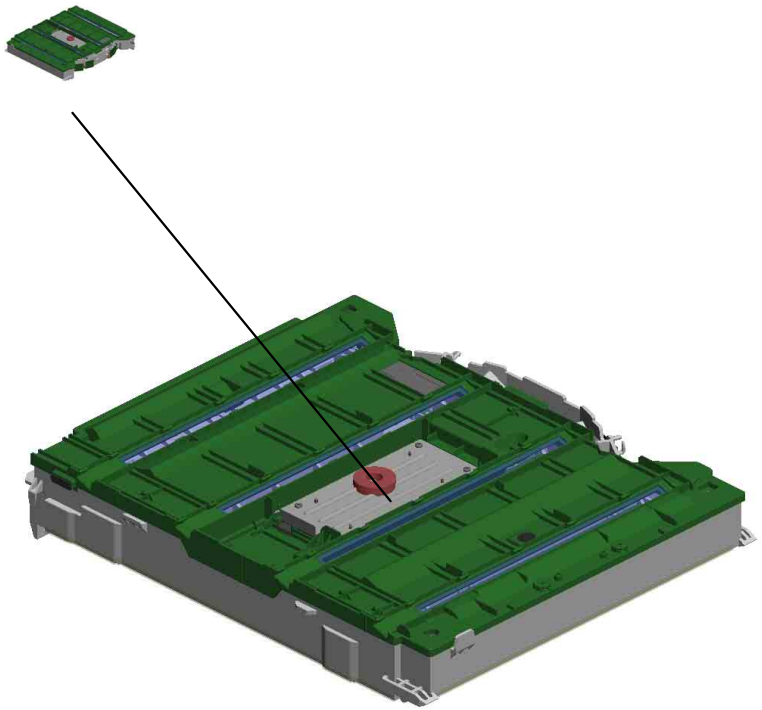


2.03530050N
(x2)
SCREW-M3X5

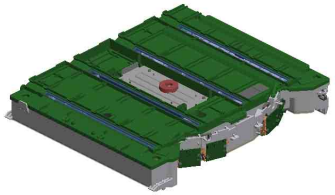
http://www.manuals4you.com

U006.Laser Unit

U006 S001
D0291851
IMAGE FORMING SECTION:
SERVICE PARTS:2LD:ASS'Y

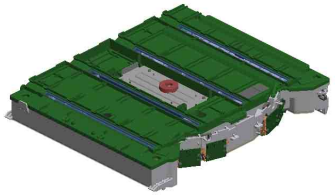


U006
Laser Unit



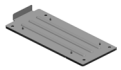
http://www.manuals4you.com

U006_S001
IMAGE FORMING SECTION:SERVICE PARTS:2LD:ASS'Y



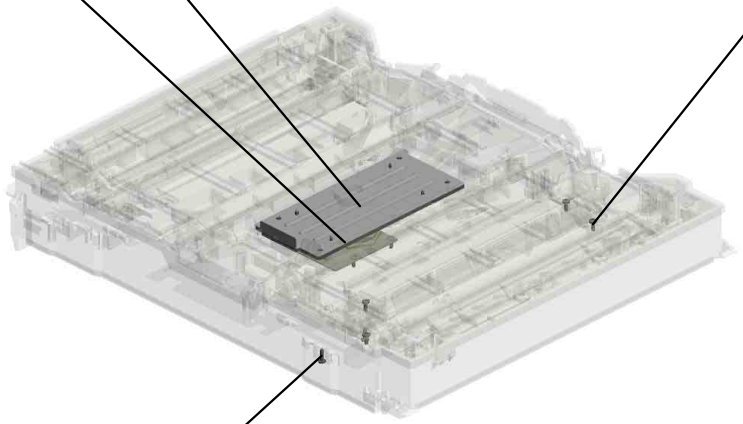
5.D0291851
IMAGE FORMING S
ECTION:SERVICE
PARTS:2LD:ASS'Y

4.B2231882
COVER - POLYGO
N MOTOR



3.AX060318
POLYGON MIRRO
R MOTOR DC24V





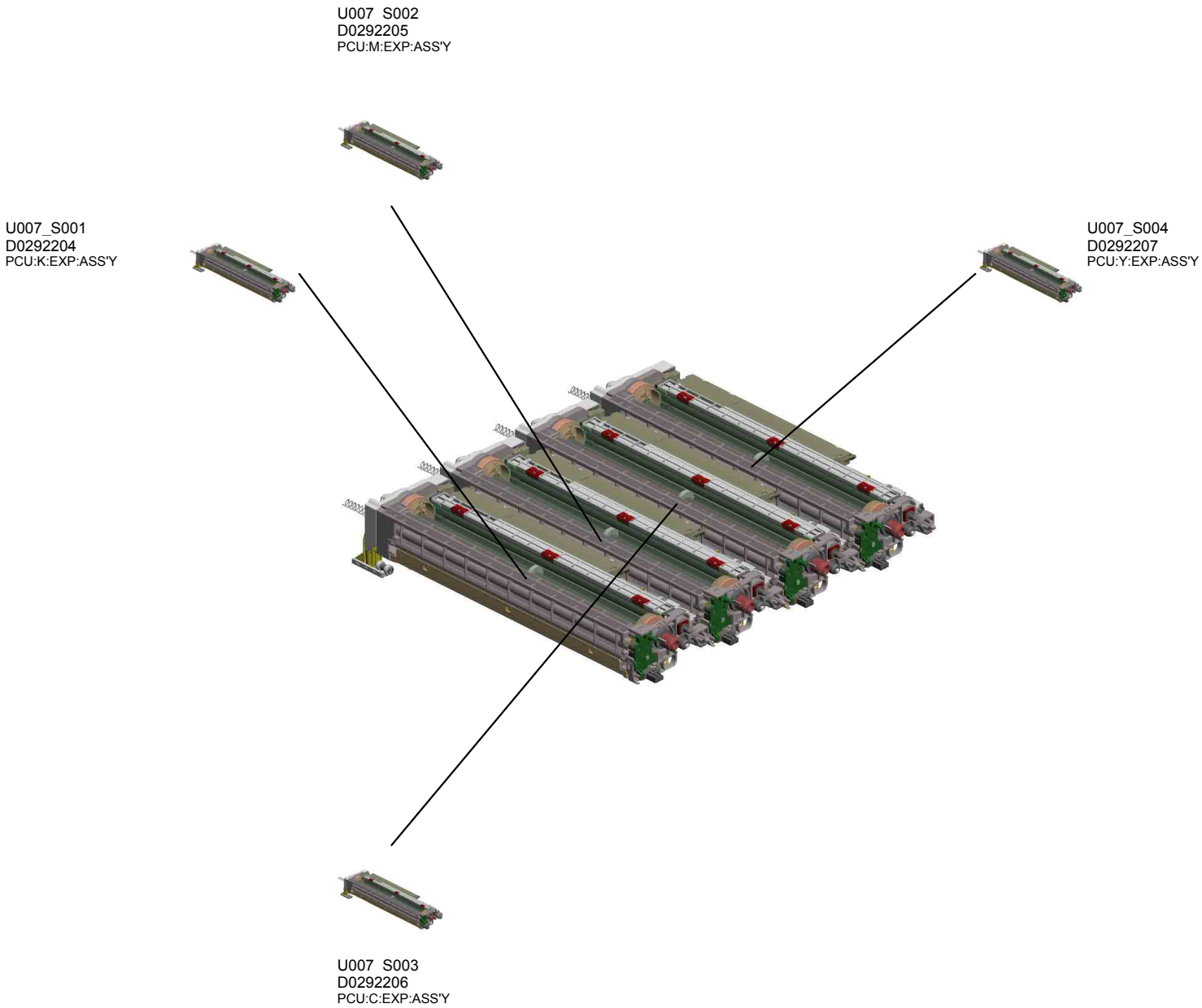
2.8025310
(x8)
BINDING SELF-TA
PPING SCREW:3X
8





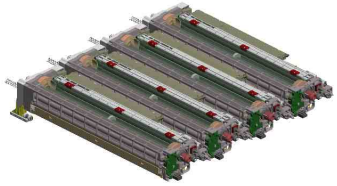
1.8025309
(x2)
BINDING SELF-TA
PPING SCREW:3X
10

U007.PCU



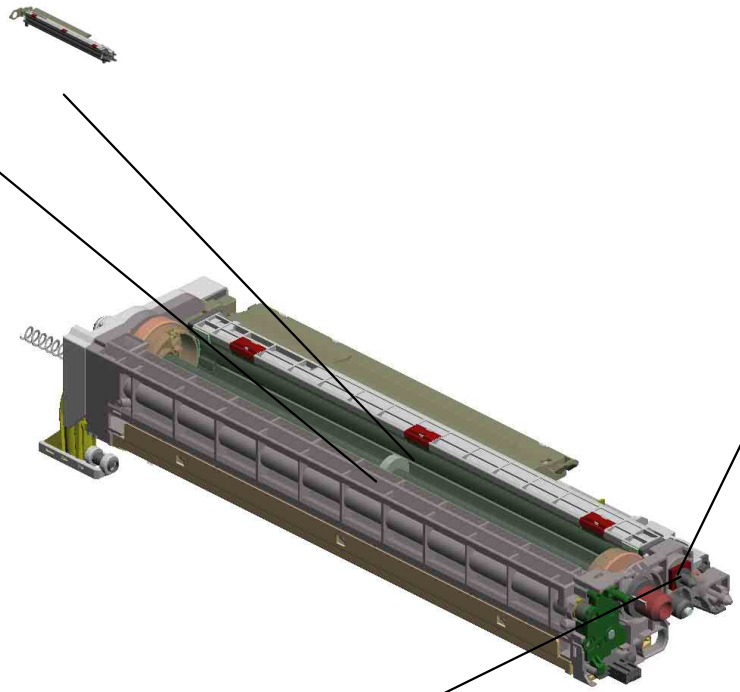
http://www.manuals4you.com

U007
PCU



U001	U002	U003	U004	U005	U006	U007	U008	U009	U010	U011	U012	U013	U014	U015	U016	U017

U007_S001
PCU:K:EXP:ASS'Y



9.D0293015
DEVELOPMENT UNIT:BK:C2:EXP:ASS'Y



3.D0292204
PCU:K:EXP:ASS'Y

16.D0292252
[A]
PCU:BK:UV:ASS'Y
200906 O/O





1.07200040E
RETAINING RING - M4



2.AA084000
BUSHING:DIA6



D0292250
[A]
Drum unit for BK
200906 O/O

http://www.manuals4you.com

U007_S002
PCU:M:EXP:ASS'Y



4.D0292205
PCU:M:EXP:ASS'Y

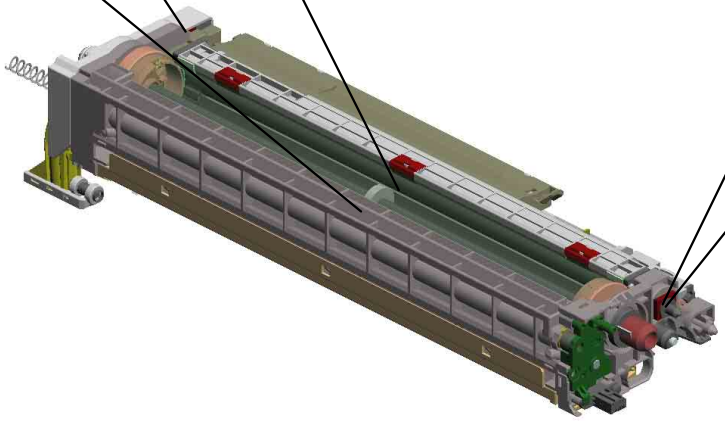
14.GA003031
DECAL - SHIELDING PLATE M

10.D0293025
DEVELOPMENT UNIT:M:C2:EXP:ASS'Y



8.D0292251
Drum unit for Color







1.07200040E
RETAINING RING - M4



2.AA084000
BUSHING:DIA6

U007_S003
PCU:C:EXP:ASS'Y



5.D0292206
PCU:C:EXP:ASS'Y

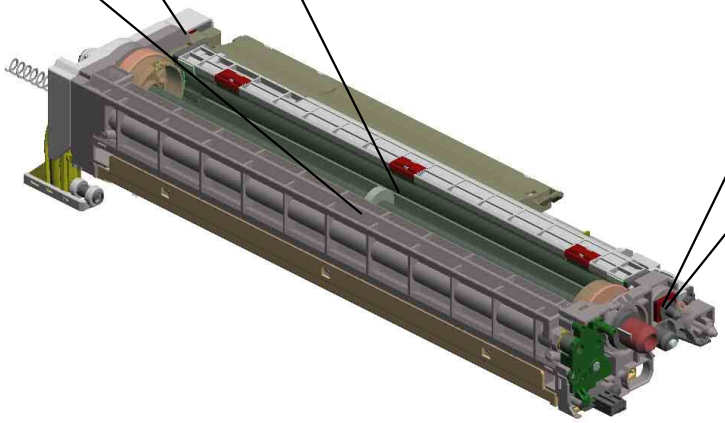
15.GA003032
DECAL - SHIELDING PLATE C

11.D0293035
DEVELOPMENT UNIT:C:C2:EXP:ASS'Y



8.D0292251
Drum unit for Color







1.07200040E
RETAINING RING - M4



2.AA084000
BUSHING:DIA6

http://www.manuals4you.com

U007_S004
PCU:Y:EXP:ASS'Y



6.D0292207
PCU:Y:EXP:ASS'Y

13.GA003030
DECAL - SHIELDING PLATE Y

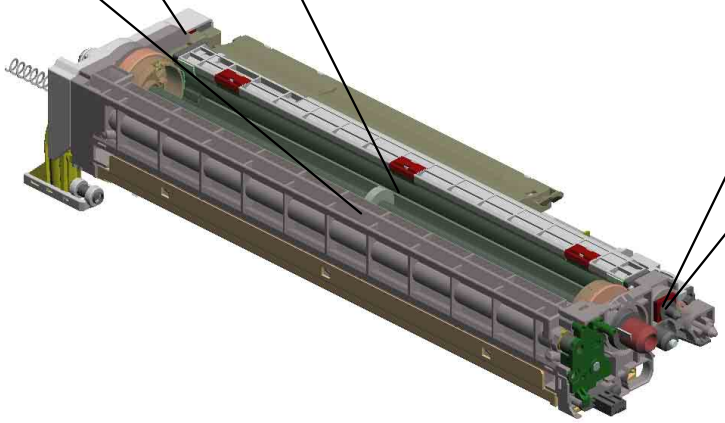
12.D0293045
DEVELOPMENT UNIT:Y:C2:EXP:ASS'Y





8.D0292251
Drum unit for Color







1.07200040E
RETAINING RING - M4



2.AA084000
BUSHING:DIA6

U008.Paper Feed

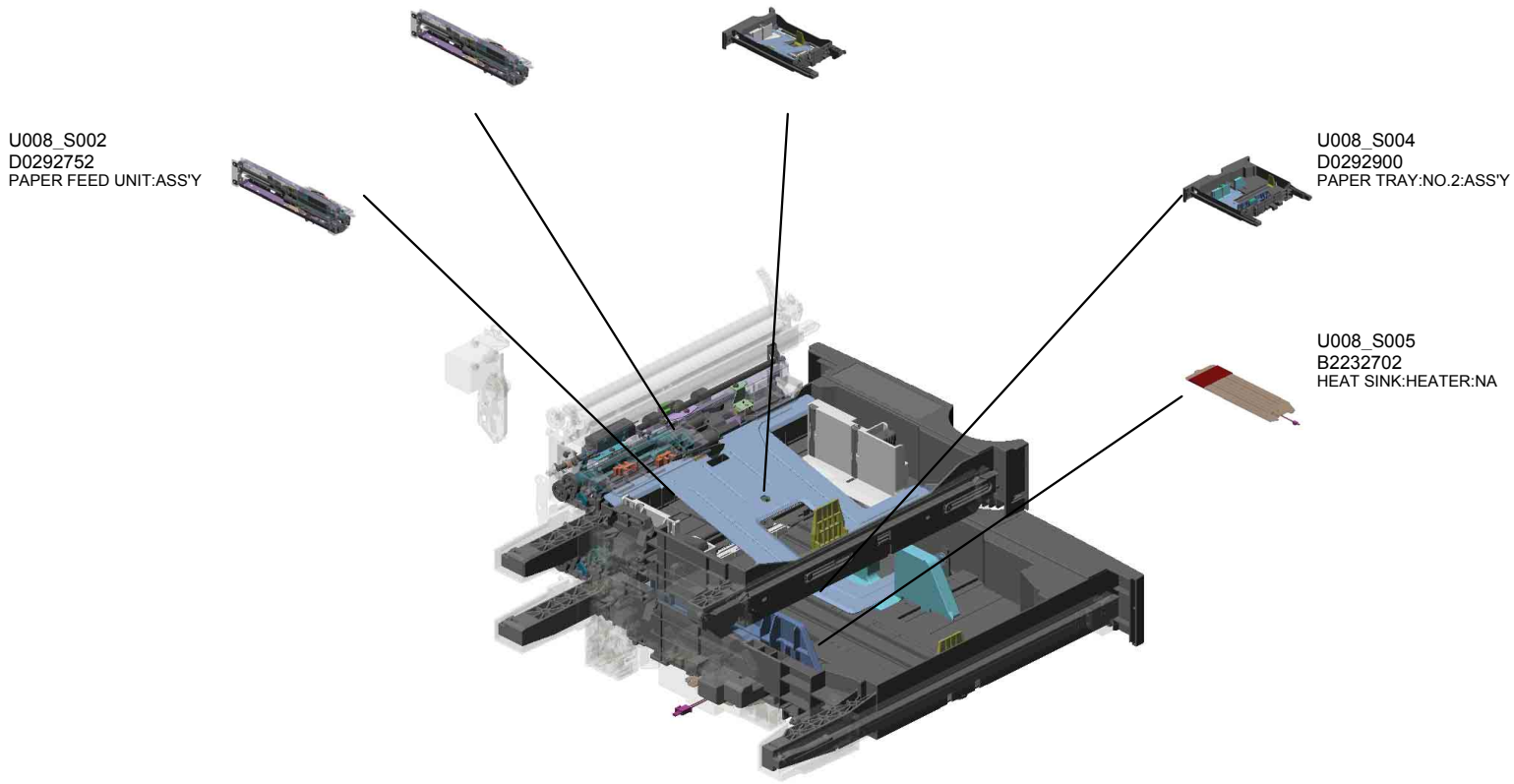
U008_S001
D0292752
PAPER FEED UNIT:ASS'Y

U008_S003
D0292850
PAPER TRAY:NO.1:ASS'Y

U008_S002
D0292752
PAPER FEED UNIT:ASS'Y

U008_S004
D0292900
PAPER TRAY:NO.2:ASS'Y

U008_S005
B2232702
HEAT SINK:HEATER:NA

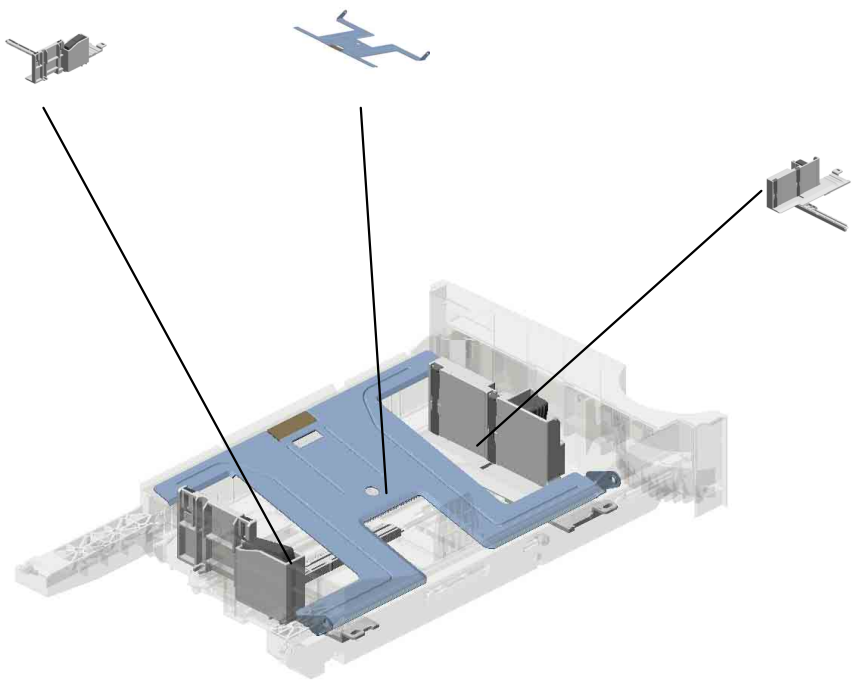


http://www.manuals4you.com

U008_S003.PAPER TRAY:NO.1:ASS'Y

U008 S003 S002
B2232880
SIDE FENCE - REAR

U008 S003 S003
B2232940
TRAY BOTTOM PLATE

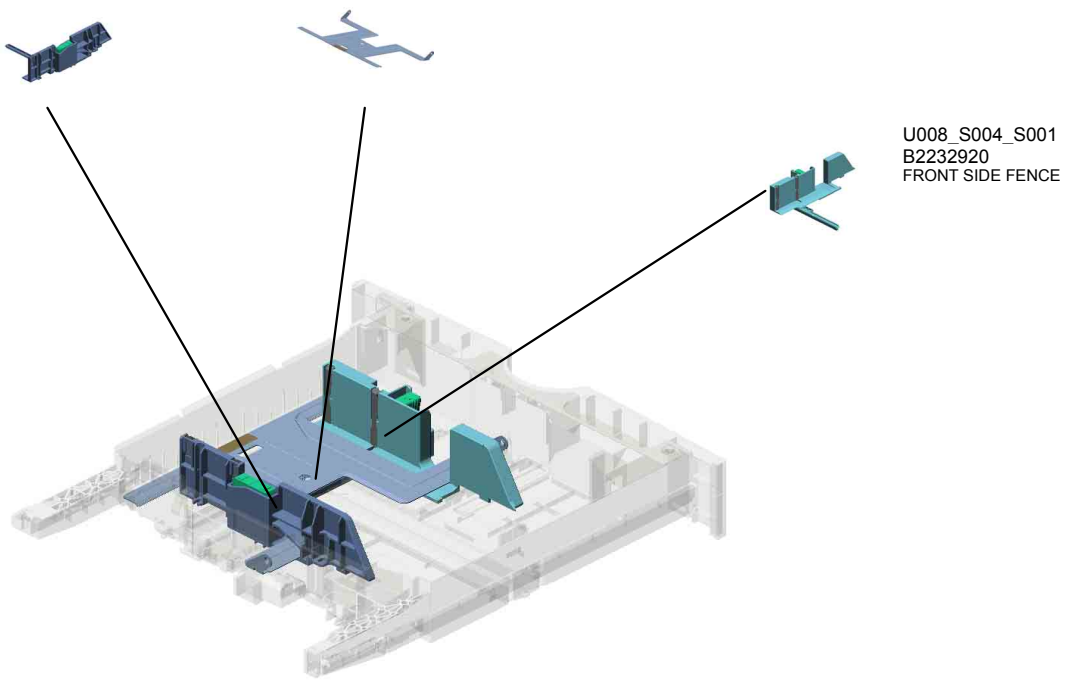


U008_S003_S001
B2232870
SIDE FENCE - FRONT

U008_S004.PAPER TRAY:NO.2:ASS'Y

U008 S004 S002
B2232930
REAR SIDE FENCE

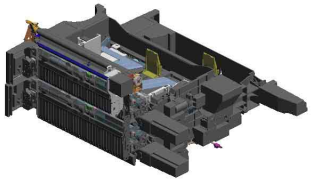
U008 S004 S003
B2232940
TRAY BOTTOM PLATE



U008_S004_S001
B2232920
FRONT SIDE FENCE

http://www.manuals4you.com

U008
Paper Feed



51.B0441825
(x4)
COLLAR

1.03530080N
(x4)
SCREW:M3X8

5.04543006Q
(x10)
TAPPING SCREW - M3X6

25.AA082101
(x2)
BUSHING - 6X10X6

13.11050643
CLAMP - RFC-14V0

28.AA101021
(x4)
RUBBER BUSHING - 6 45HS

54.B2232685
STEPPER MOTOR: DC24V 26.4W

55.B2232691
BRACKET:STEPPER MOTOR

36.AB017493
GEAR PULLEY

56.B2232694
GUIDE:GEAR

53.B2232558
REGISTRATION ROLLER KNOB

15.8050088
RETAINING RING - M6

6.04543008Q
(x4)
TAPPING SCREW: 3X8

41.AW010107
PAPER FEED SENSOR

59.B2232705
SUPPORTER - LEFT NO.1

11.11050522
EDGE SADDLE - LES0510

12.11050551
CLAMP:LES-0505

29.AA143577
SCREW:TP:M4

10.11050511
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS-0306ZC

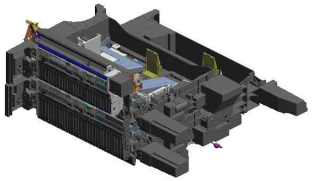
47.AX040154
(x2)
DC MOTOR 24V

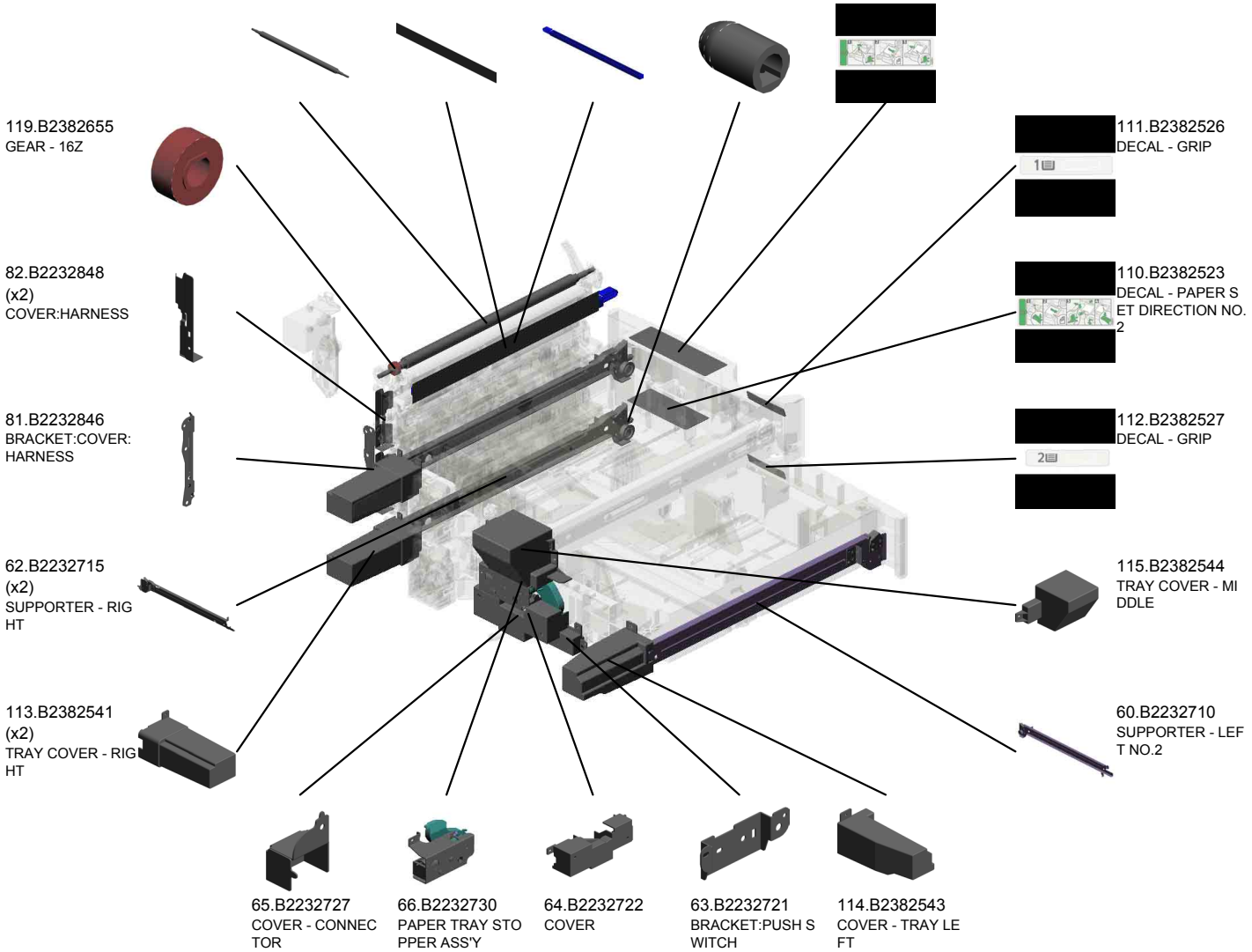
45.AW500023
PUSH SWITCH

31.AA161163
(x2)
CUSHION

46.AW500038
PUSH SWITCH:PAPER SIZE SENSOR

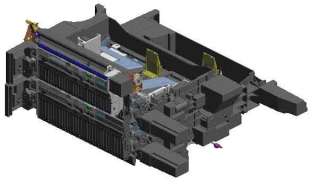
U008
Paper Feed

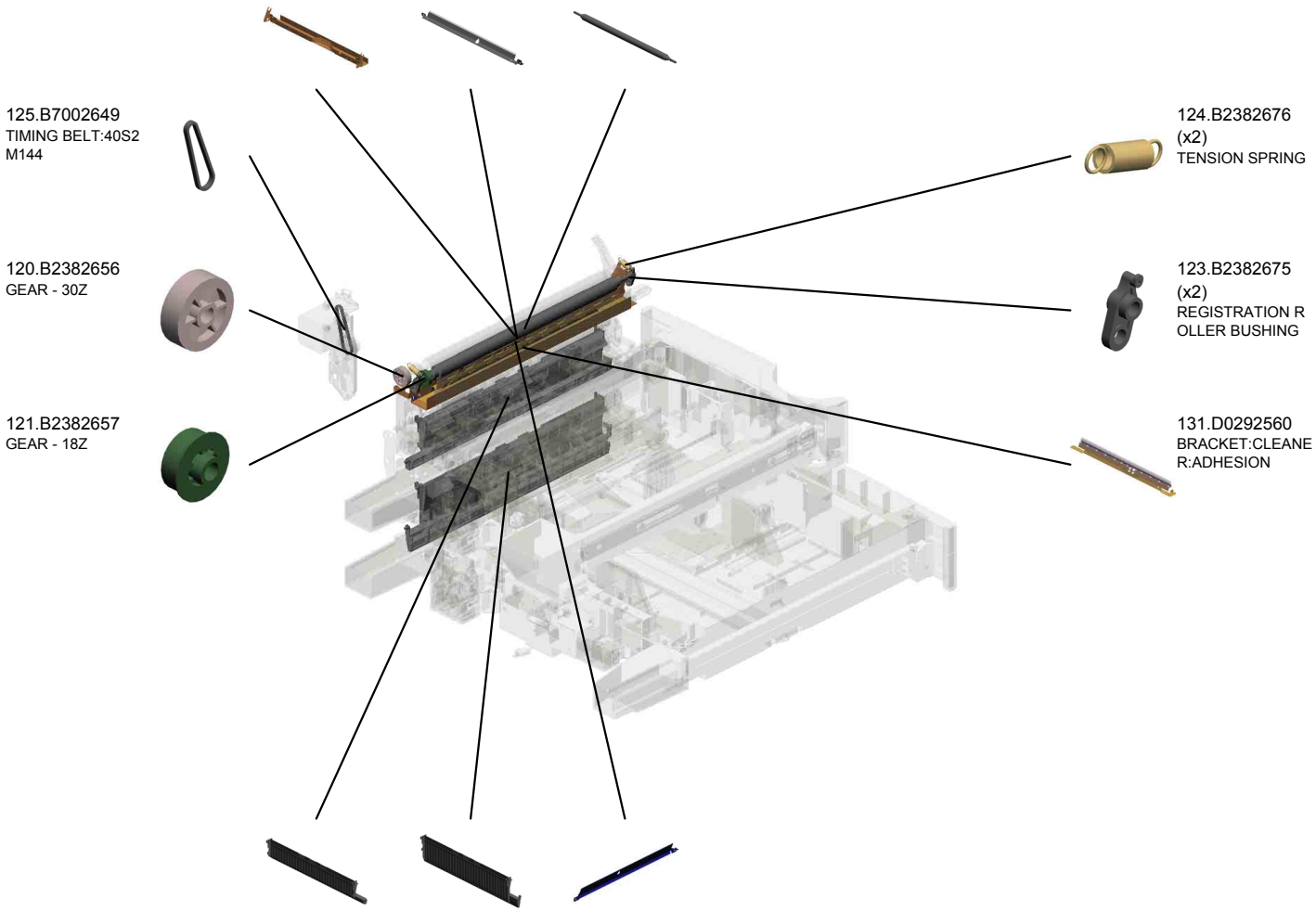




http://www.manuals4you.com

U008
Paper Feed





130.D0292556
STAY:REGISTRATION

132.D0292570
GUIDE PLATE:REGISTRATION:RIGHT:ADHESION

122.B2382661
REGISTRATION ROLLER - DRIVEN

125.B7002649
TIMING BELT:40S2M144

120.B2382656
GEAR - 30Z

121.B2382657
GEAR - 18Z

124.B2382676
(x2)
TENSION SPRING

123.B2382675
(x2)
REGISTRATION ROLLER BUSHING

131.D0292560
BRACKET:CLEANER:ADHESION

127.D0092836
GUIDE PLATE

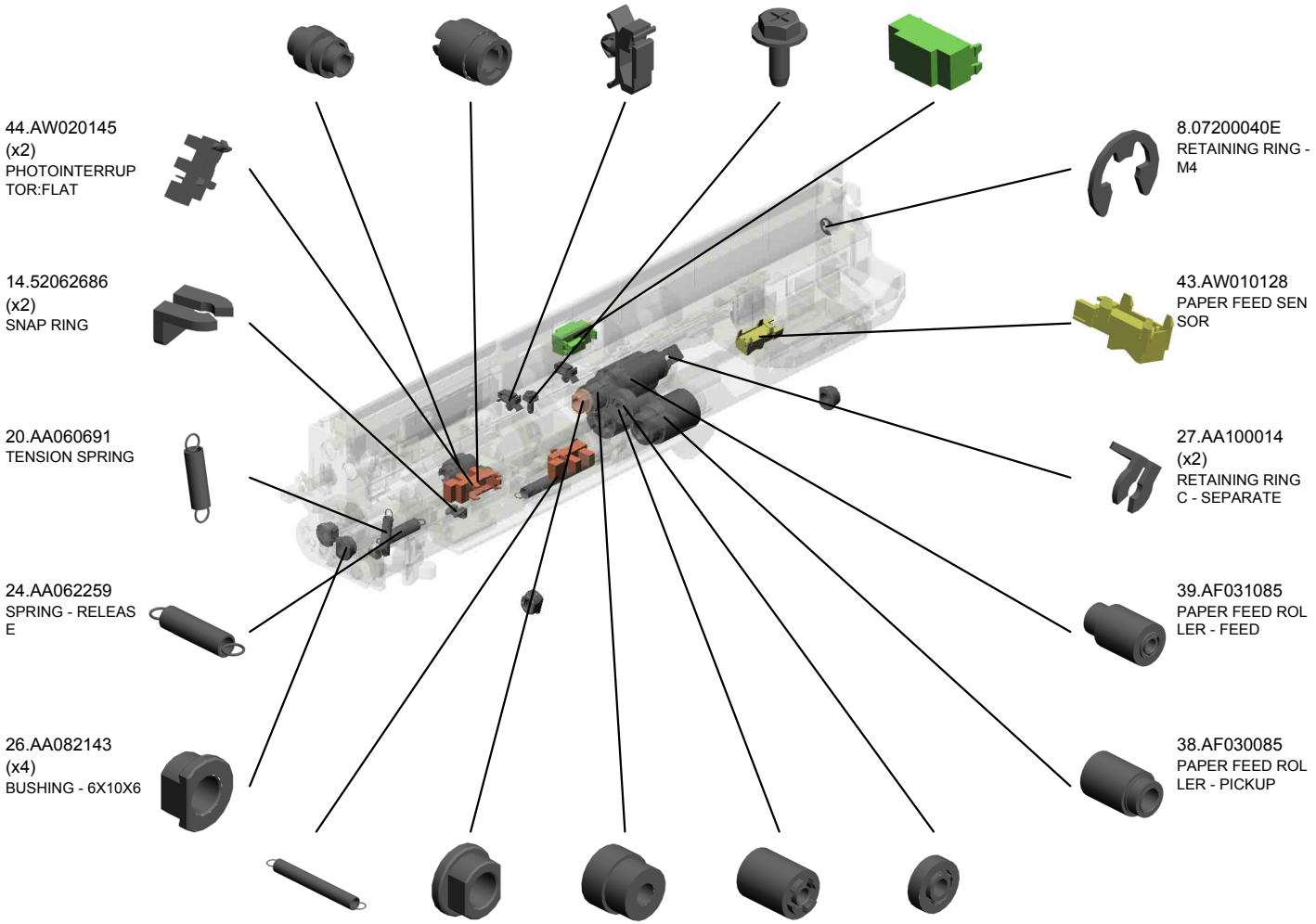
128.D0092841
GUIDE PLATE - NO.2

129.D0292555
GUIDE PLATE:REGISTRATION:LEFT

U008_S001
PAPER FEED UNIT:ASS'Y



133.D0292752
PAPER FEED UNIT
:ASS'Y



32.AB010156
GEAR:SEPARATE:
DRIVE

33.AB010157
GEAR:SEPARATE:
DRIVEN

10.11050511
(x2)
HARNESS CLAMP -
LWS-0306ZC

7.04563008N
TAPPING SCREW -
M3X8

42.AW010122
PAPER FEED SEN
SOR

44.AW020145
(x2)
PHOTOINTERRUP
TOR:FLAT

14.52062686
(x2)
SNAP RING

20.AA060691
TENSION SPRING

24.AA062259
SPRING - RELEAS
E

26.AA082143
(x4)
BUSHING - 6X10X6

8.07200040E
RETAINING RING -
M4

43.AW010128
PAPER FEED SEN
SOR

27.AA100014
(x2)
RETAINING RING
C - SEPARATE

39.AF031085
PAPER FEED ROL
LER - FEED

38.AF030085
PAPER FEED ROL
LER - PICKUP

21.AA060693
TENSION SPRING

25.AA082101
BUSHING - 6X10X6

34.AB011218
GEAR - ROLLER C
LUTCH

40.AF032085
PAPER FEED ROL
LER - SEPARATE

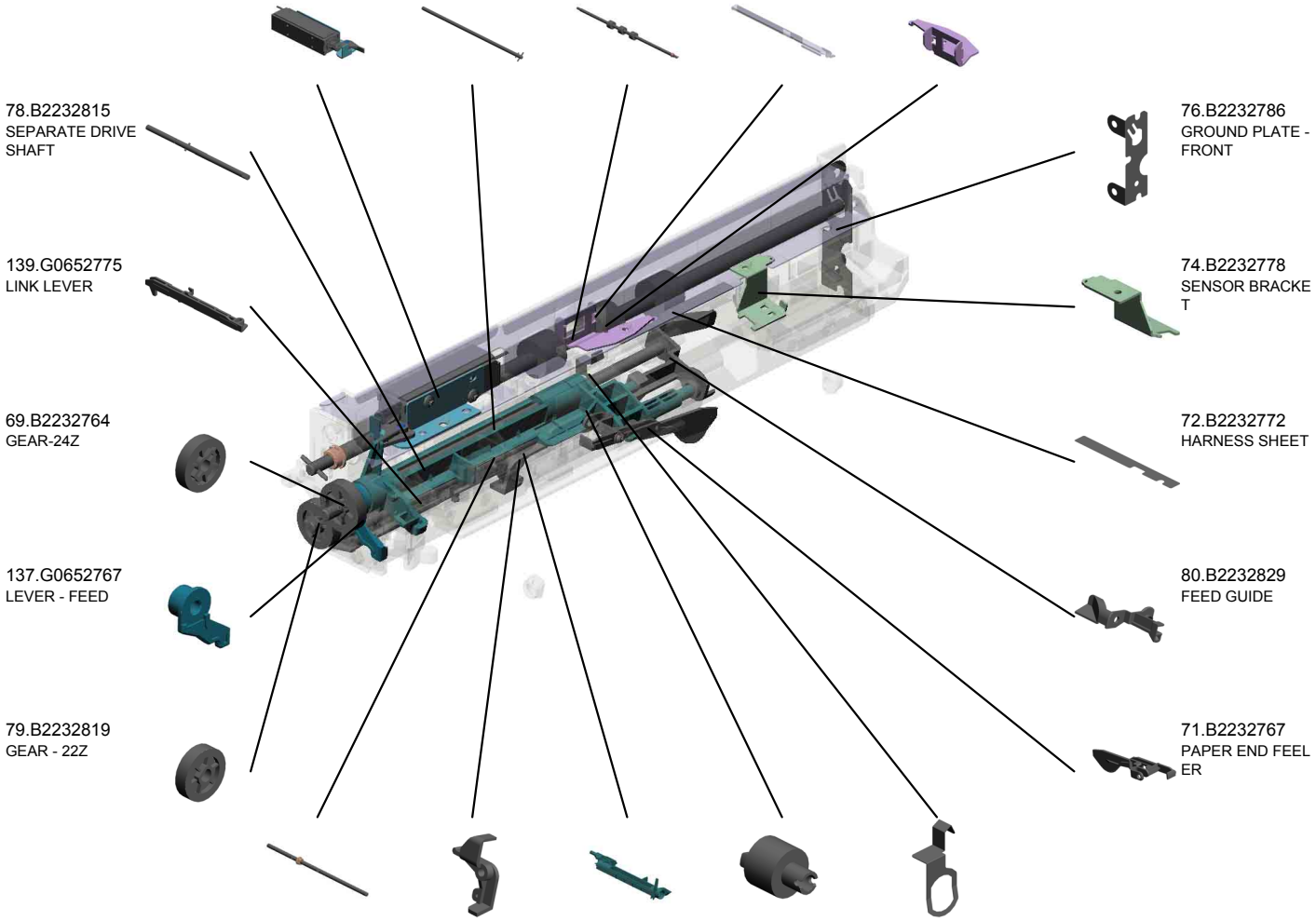
35.AB011252
GEAR - 20Z

http://www.manuals4you.com

U008_S001
PAPER FEED UNIT:ASS'Y



133.D0292752
PAPER FEED UNIT :ASS'Y



75.B2232780
DC SOLENOID 24V

68.B2232762
FEED SHAFT

126.D0092757
TRANSPORT ROLLER:DRIVE:ASS'Y

73.B2232776
STAY

52.B0822781
BRACKET:SENSOR

78.B2232815
SEPARATE DRIVE SHAFT

139.G0652775
LINK LEVER

69.B2232764
GEAR-24Z

137.G0652767
LEVER - FEED

79.B2232819
GEAR - 22Z

76.B2232786
GROUND PLATE - FRONT

74.B2232778
SENSOR BRACKET

72.B2232772
HARNESS SHEET

80.B2232829
FEED GUIDE

71.B2232767
PAPER END FEELER

77.B2232810
SEPARATE DRIVEN SHAFT

138.G0652774
PRESSURE LEVER

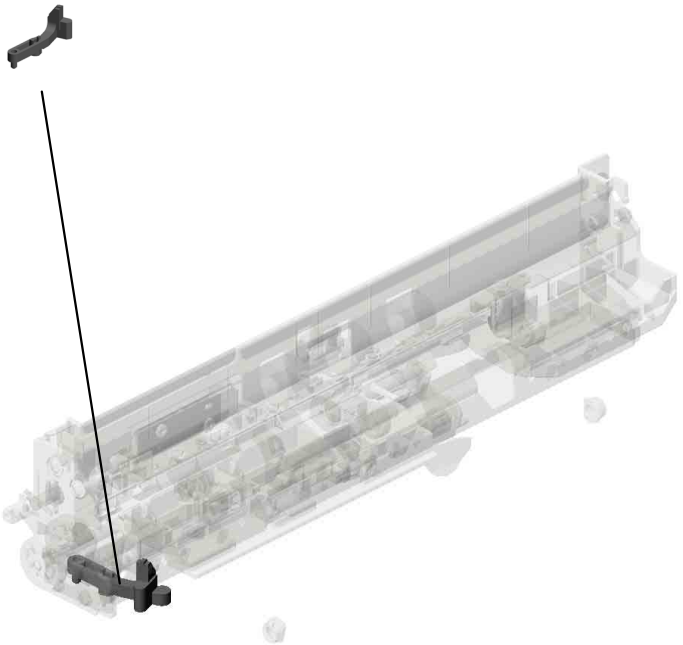
67.B2232761
PICKUP ARM

49.B0042783
TORQUE LIMITER

70.B2232765
GROUND PLATE - FEED

U008_S001
PAPER FEED UNIT:ASS'Y

140.G0652776
RELEASE LEVER





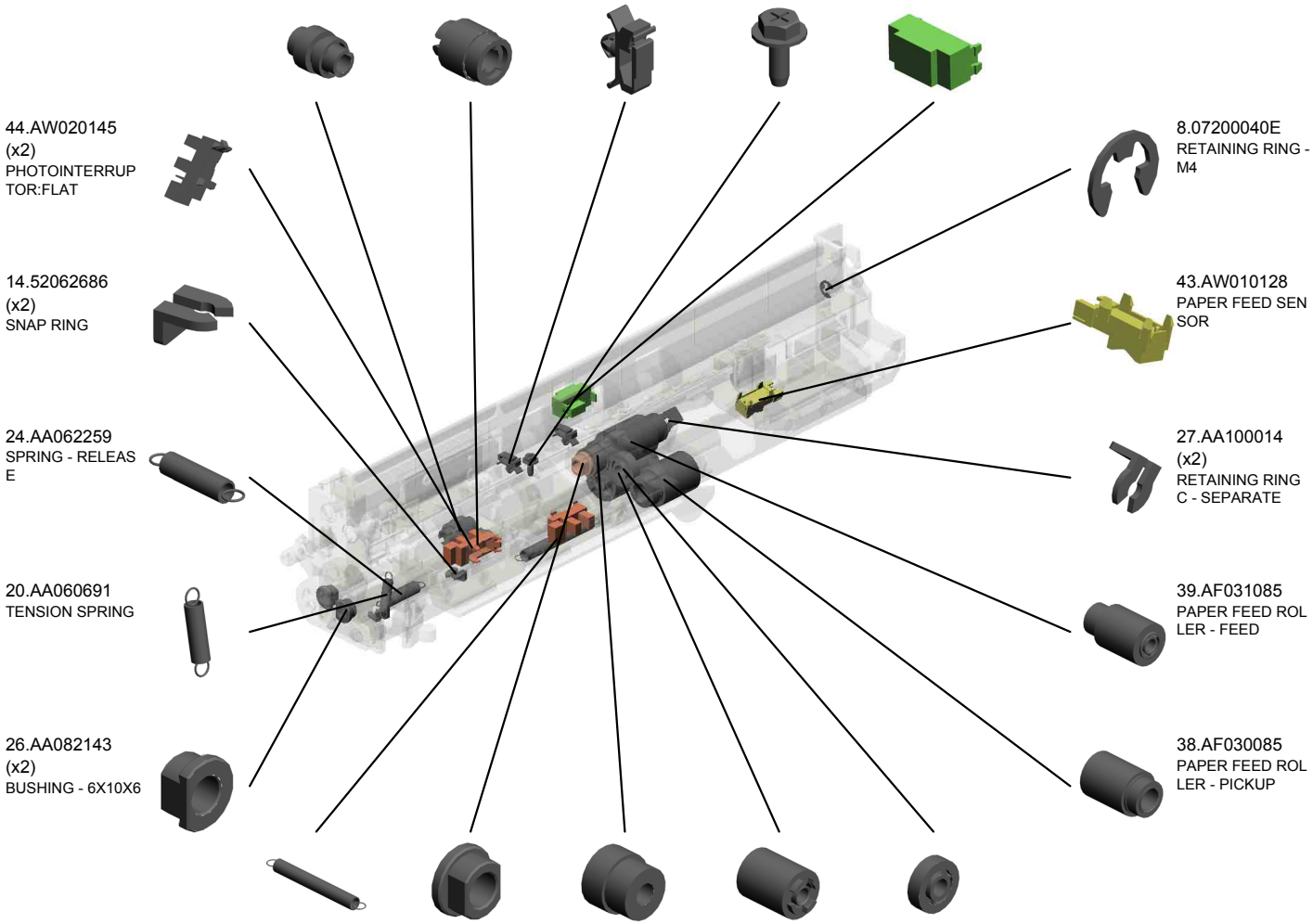
133.D0292752
PAPER FEED UNIT
:ASS'Y

http://www.manuals4you.com

U008_S002
PAPER FEED UNIT:ASS'Y



133.D0292752
PAPER FEED UNIT
:ASS'Y



32.AB010156
GEAR:SEPARATE:
DRIVE

33.AB010157
GEAR:SEPARATE:
DRIVEN

10.11050511
(x2)
HARNESS CLAMP -
LWS-0306ZC

7.04563008N
TAPPING SCREW -
M3X8

42.AW010122
PAPER FEED SEN
SOR

44.AW020145
(x2)
PHOTOINTERRUP
TOR:FLAT

14.52062686
(x2)
SNAP RING

24.AA062259
SPRING - RELEAS
E

20.AA060691
TENSION SPRING

26.AA082143
(x2)
BUSHING - 6X10X6

8.07200040E
RETAINING RING -
M4

43.AW010128
PAPER FEED SEN
SOR

27.AA100014
(x2)
RETAINING RING
C - SEPARATE

39.AF031085
PAPER FEED ROL
LER - FEED

38.AF030085
PAPER FEED ROL
LER - PICKUP

21.AA060693
TENSION SPRING

25.AA082101
BUSHING - 6X10X6

34.AB011218
GEAR - ROLLER C
LUTCH

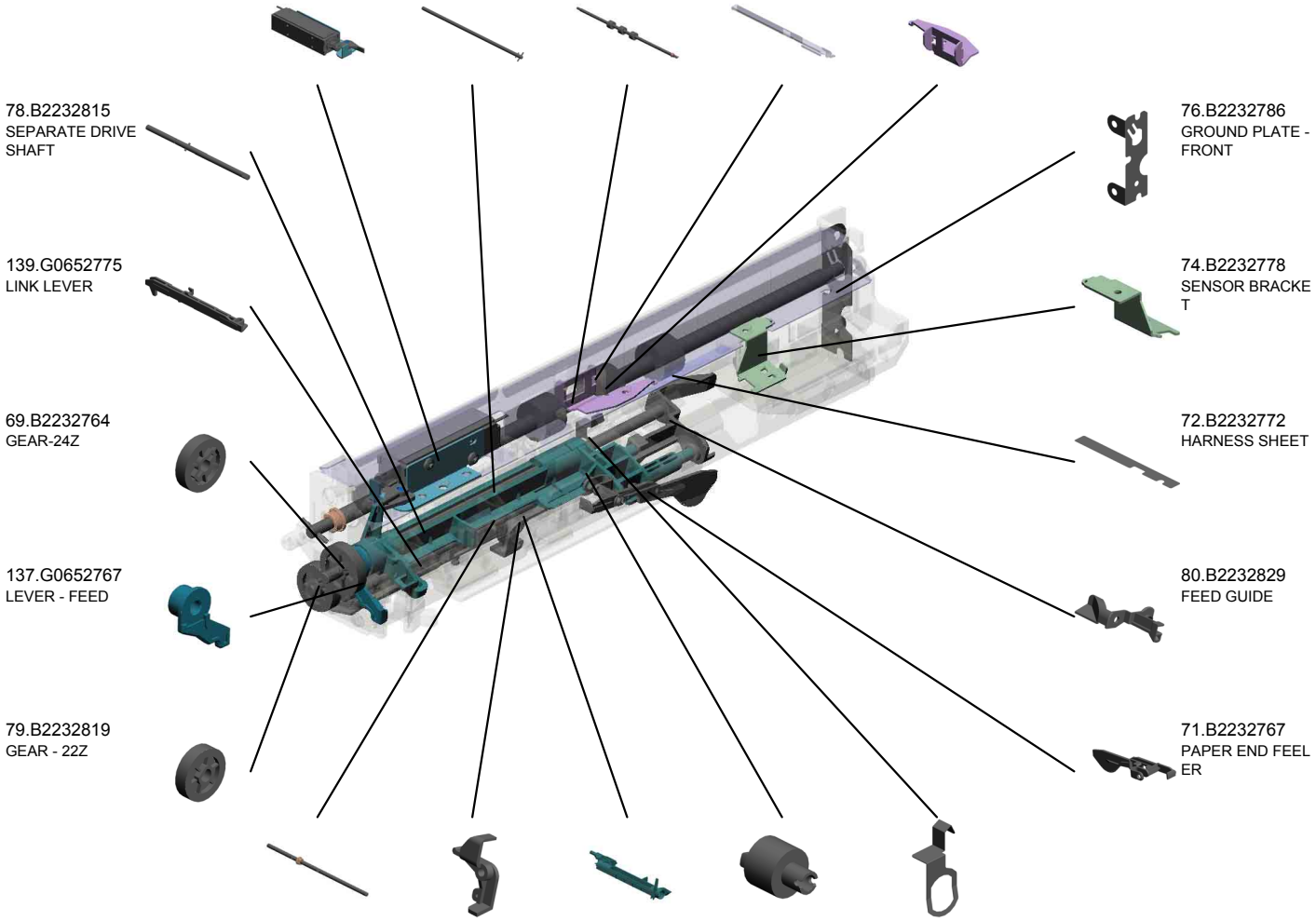
40.AF032085
PAPER FEED ROL
LER - SEPARATE

35.AB011252
GEAR - 20Z

U008_S002
PAPER FEED UNIT:ASS'Y



133.D0292752
PAPER FEED UNIT :ASS'Y



75.B2232780
DC SOLENOID 24V

68.B2232762
FEED SHAFT

126.D0092757
TRANSPORT ROLLER:DRIVE:ASS'Y

73.B2232776
STAY

52.B0822781
BRACKET:SENSOR

78.B2232815
SEPARATE DRIVE SHAFT

139.G0652775
LINK LEVER

69.B2232764
GEAR-24Z

137.G0652767
LEVER - FEED

79.B2232819
GEAR - 22Z

76.B2232786
GROUND PLATE - FRONT

74.B2232778
SENSOR BRACKET

72.B2232772
HARNESS SHEET

80.B2232829
FEED GUIDE

71.B2232767
PAPER END FEELER

77.B2232810
SEPARATE DRIVEN SHAFT

138.G0652774
PRESSURE LEVER

67.B2232761
PICKUP ARM

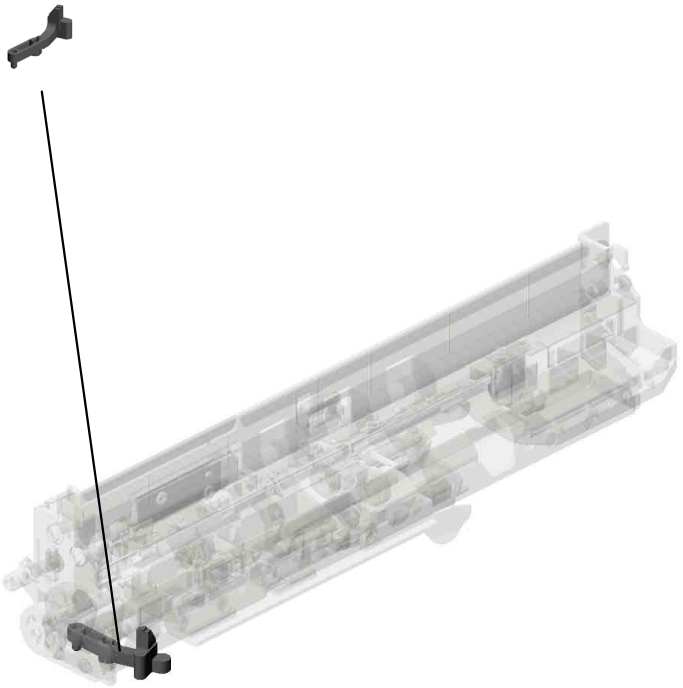
49.B0042783
TORQUE LIMITER

70.B2232765
GROUND PLATE - FEED

http://www.manuals4you.com

U008_S002
PAPER FEED UNIT:ASS'Y

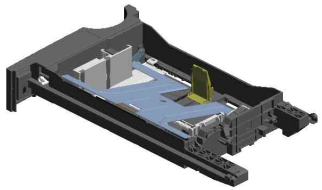
140.G0652776
RELEASE LEVER





133.D0292752
PAPER FEED UNIT
:ASS'Y

U008_S003
PAPER TRAY:NO.1:ASS'Y



134.D0292850
PAPER TRAY:NO.1
:ASS'Y

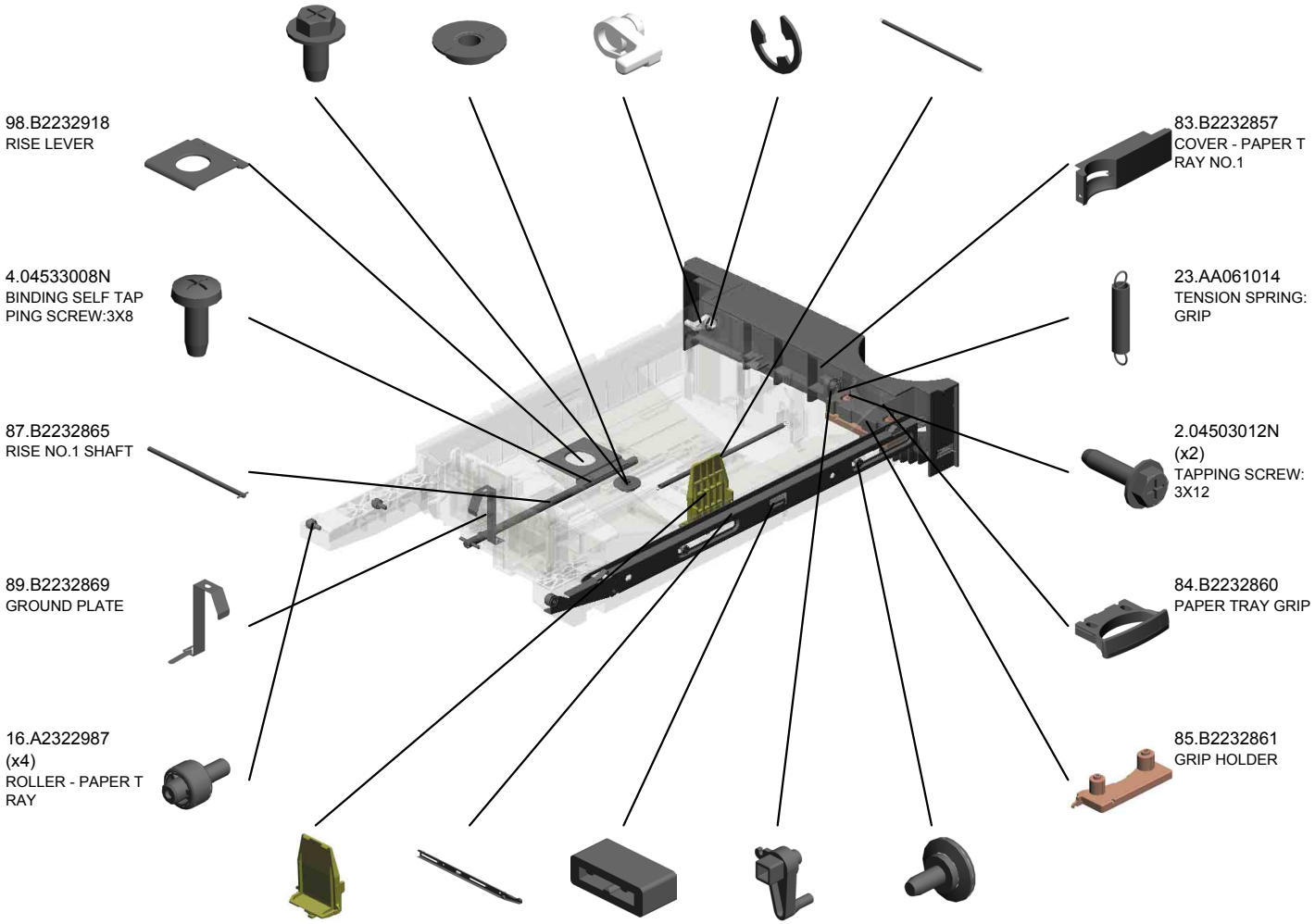
3.04504008N
TAPPING SCREW -
M4X8

106.B2232936
GEAR - 16Z

88.B2232868
LEVER:RELEASE:P
APER TRAY:OUTE
R

9.07200080E
RETAINING RING -
M8

22.AA061003
TENSION SPRING:
SIDE FENCE:REAR



98.B2232918
RISE LEVER

4.04533008N
BINDING SELF TAP
PING SCREW:3X8

87.B2232865
RISE NO.1 SHAFT

89.B2232869
GROUND PLATE

16.A2322987
(x4)
ROLLER - PAPER T
RAY

83.B2232857
COVER - PAPER T
RAY NO.1

23.AA061014
TENSION SPRING:
GRIP

2.04503012N
(x2)
TAPPING SCREW:
3X12

84.B2232860
PAPER TRAY GRIP

85.B2232861
GRIP HOLDER

97.B2232912
END FENCE

93.B2232890
SLIDE RAIL - LEFT

94.B2232894
SLIDE RAIL STOPP
ER - LEFT

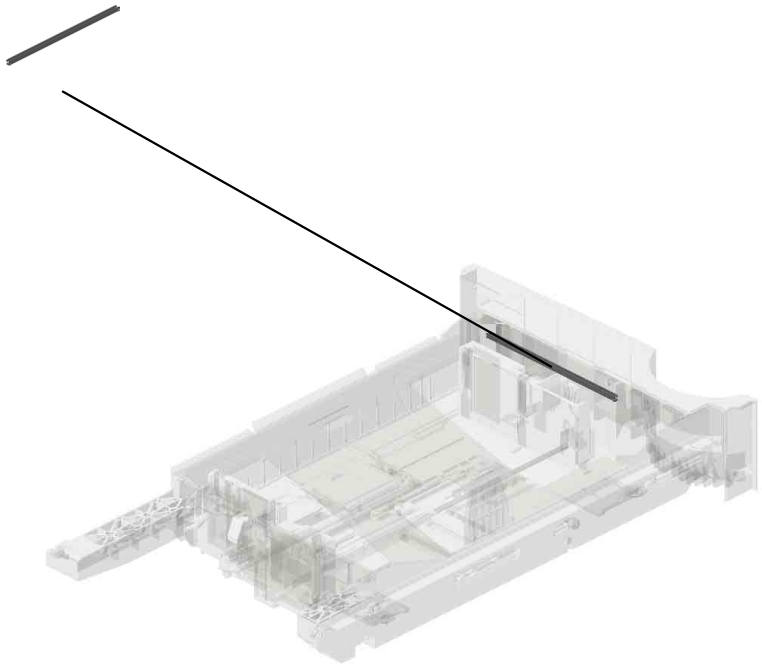
86.B2232862
LEVER - RELEASE
INNER

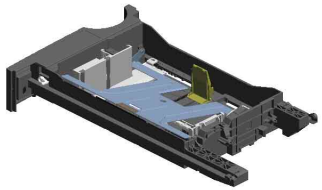
30.AA143843
(x2)
SCREW:DIA6

http://www.manuals4you.com

U008_S003
PAPER TRAY:NO.1:ASS'Y

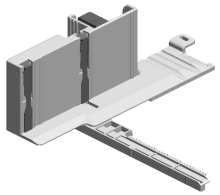
135.D0292863
SHAFT:RELEASE:P
APER TRAY





134.D0292850
PAPER TRAY:NO.1
:ASS'Y

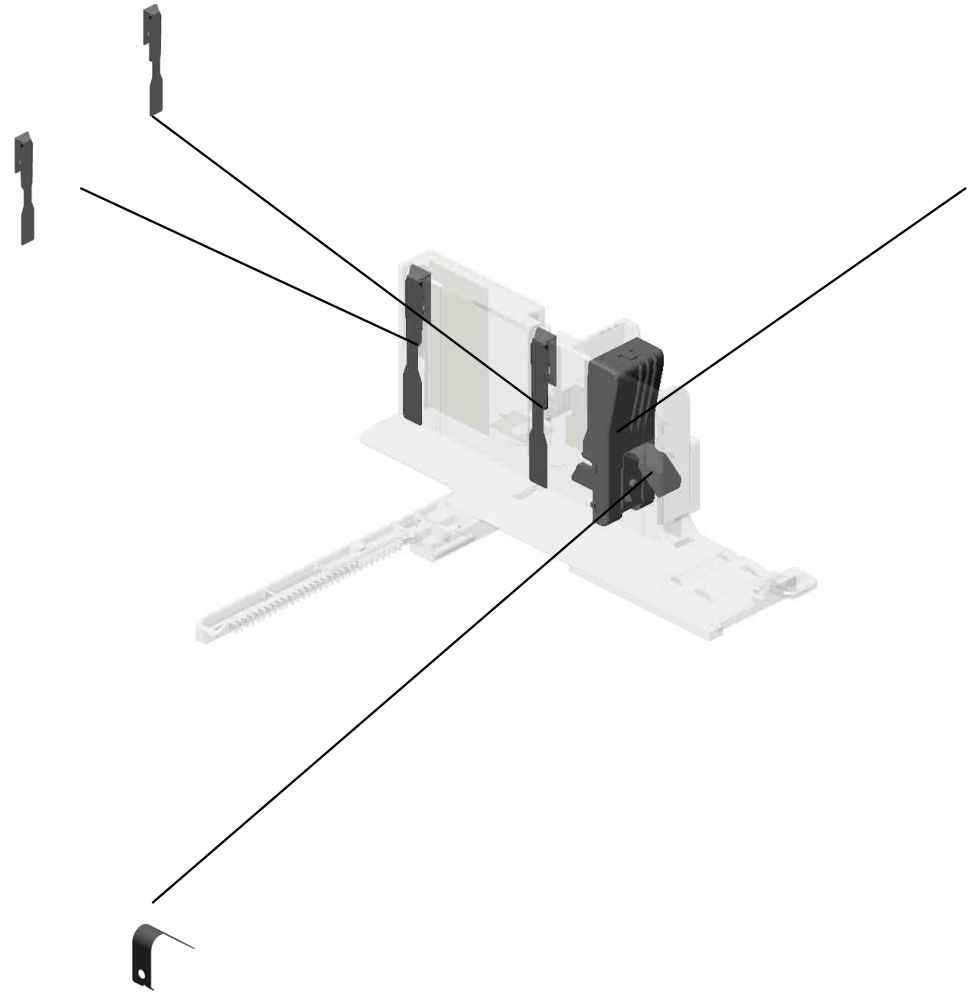
U008_S003_S001
SIDE FENCE - FRONT



90.B2232870
SIDE FENCE - FRONT

104.B2232934
PLATE - SIDE FENCE

105.B2232935
PLATE - SIDE FENCE RIGHT

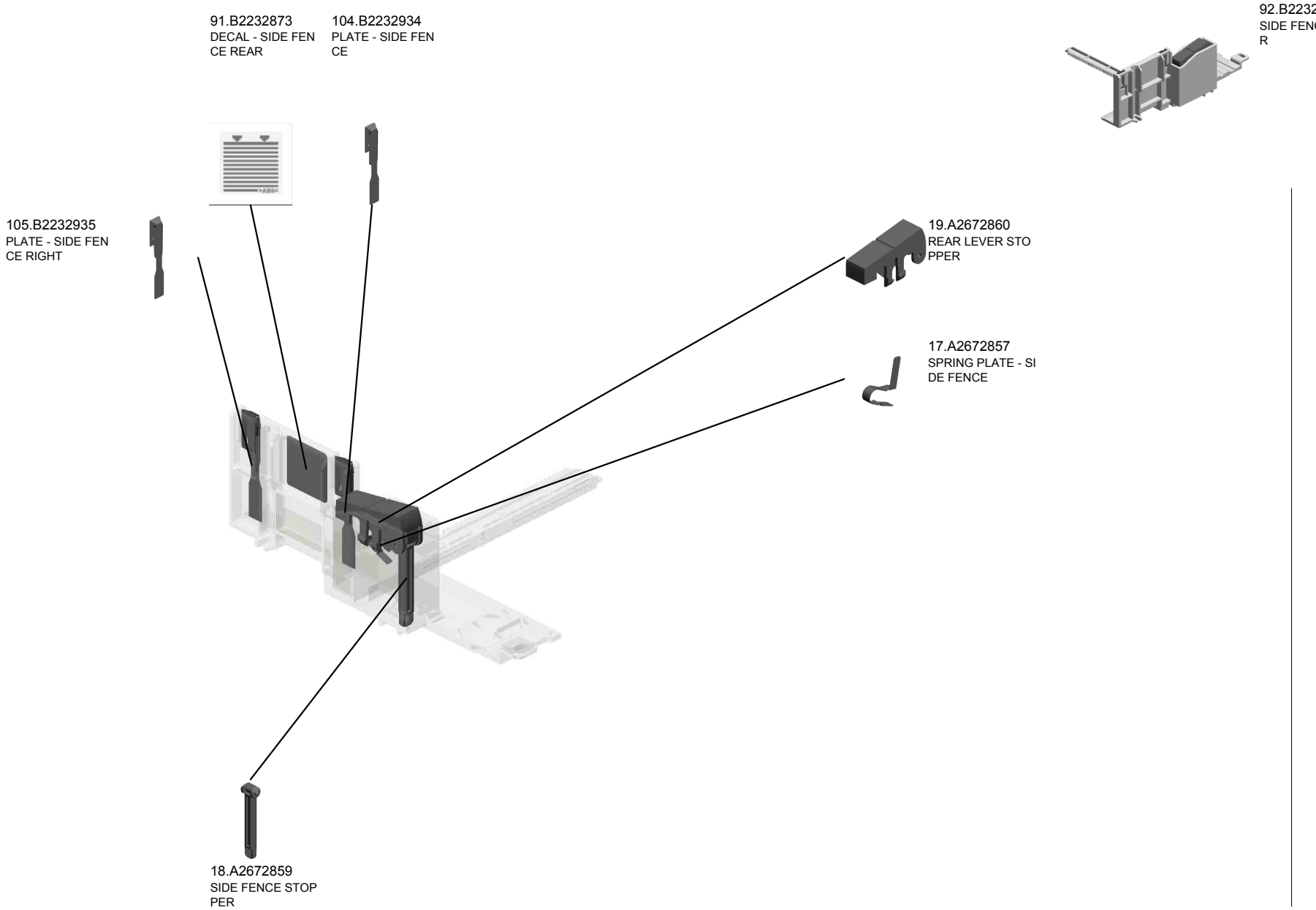


101.B2232923
STOPPER LEVER - FRONT

50.B0042923
SPRING PLATE - RELEASE LEVER

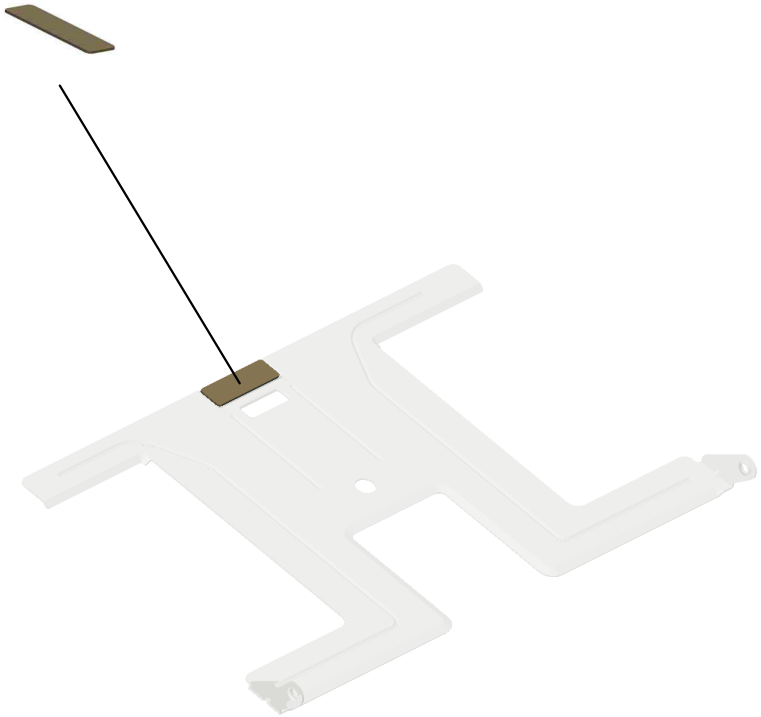
http://www.manuals4you.com

U008_S003_S002
SIDE FENCE - REAR



U008_S003_S003
TRAY BOTTOM PLATE

37.AF013006
BOTTOM PLATE P
AD

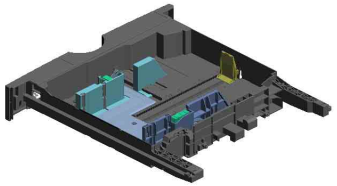




107.B2232940
TRAY BOTTOM PL
ATE

http://www.manuals4you.com

U008_S004
PAPER TRAY:NO.2:ASS'Y



136.D0292900
PAPER TRAY:NO.2
:ASS'Y

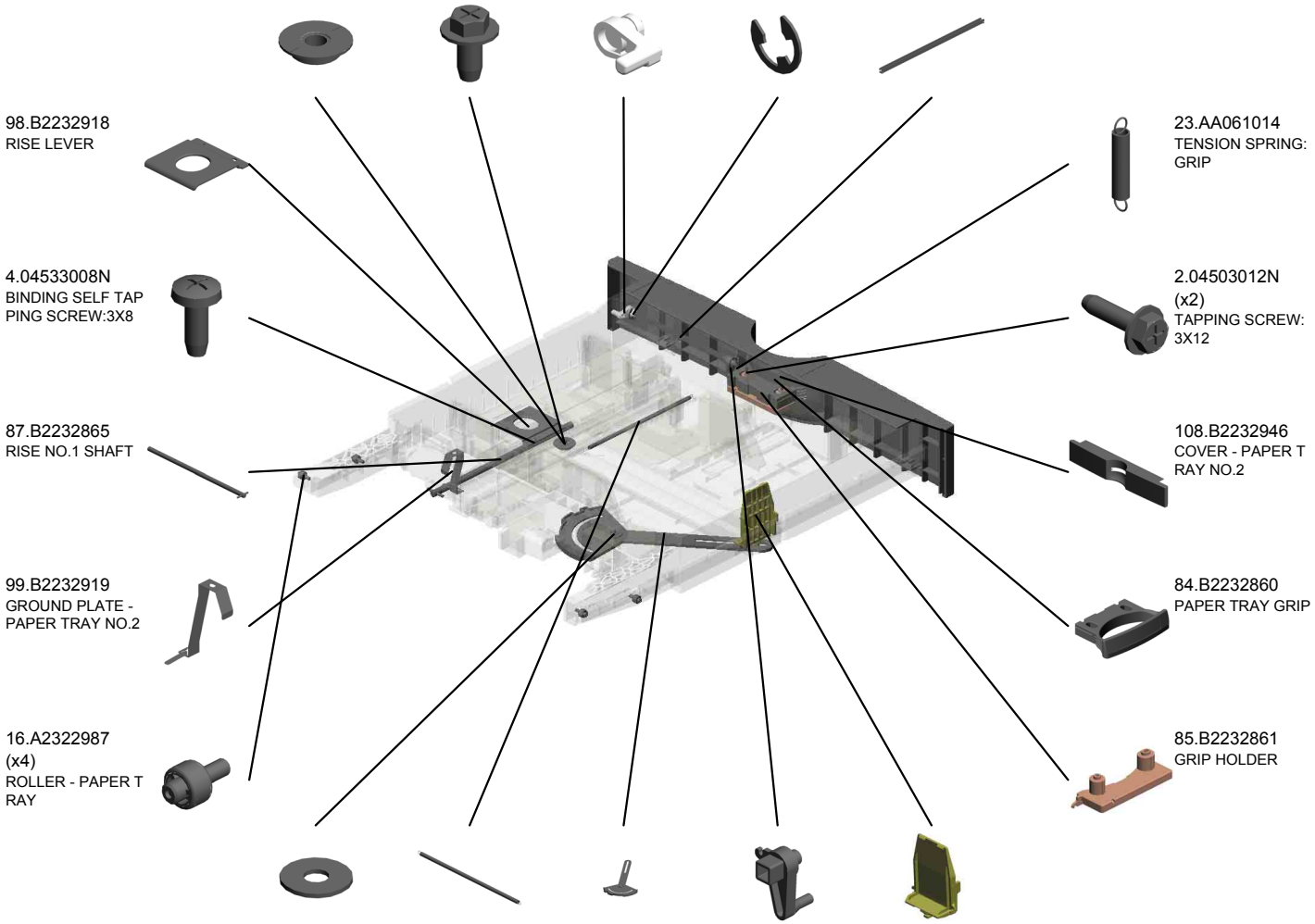
106.B2232936
GEAR - 16Z

3.04504008N
(x2)
TAPPING SCREW -
M4X8

88.B2232868
LEVER:RELEASE:P
APER TRAY:OUTE
R

9.07200080E
RETAINING RING -
M8

135.D0292863
SHAFT:RELEASE:P
APER TRAY



98.B2232918
RISE LEVER

4.04533008N
BINDING SELF TAP
PING SCREW:3X8

87.B2232865
RISE NO.1 SHAFT

99.B2232919
GROUND PLATE -
PAPER TRAY NO.2

16.A2322987
(x4)
ROLLER - PAPER T
RAY

23.AA061014
TENSION SPRING:
GRIP

2.04503012N
(x2)
TAPPING SCREW:
3X12

108.B2232946
COVER - PAPER T
RAY NO.2

84.B2232860
PAPER TRAY GRIP

85.B2232861
GRIP HOLDER

96.B2232911
SPACER

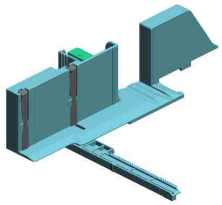
22.AA061003
TENSION SPRING:
SIDE FENCE:REAR

95.B2232910
LINK - PAPER SIZE
SENSOR

86.B2232862
LEVER - RELEASE
INNER

97.B2232912
END FENCE

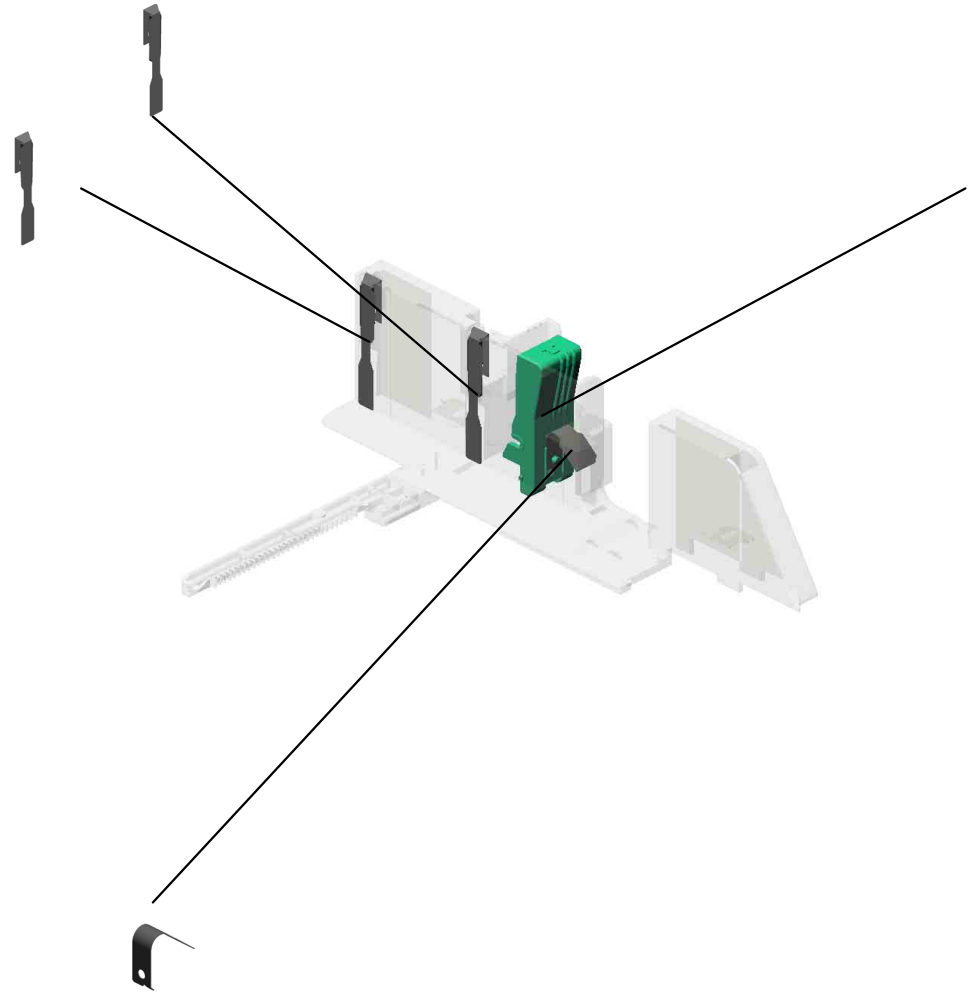
U008_S004_S001
FRONT SIDE FENCE



100.B2232920
FRONT SIDE FENC
E

104.B2232934
PLATE - SIDE FEN
CE

105.B2232935
PLATE - SIDE FEN
CE RIGHT

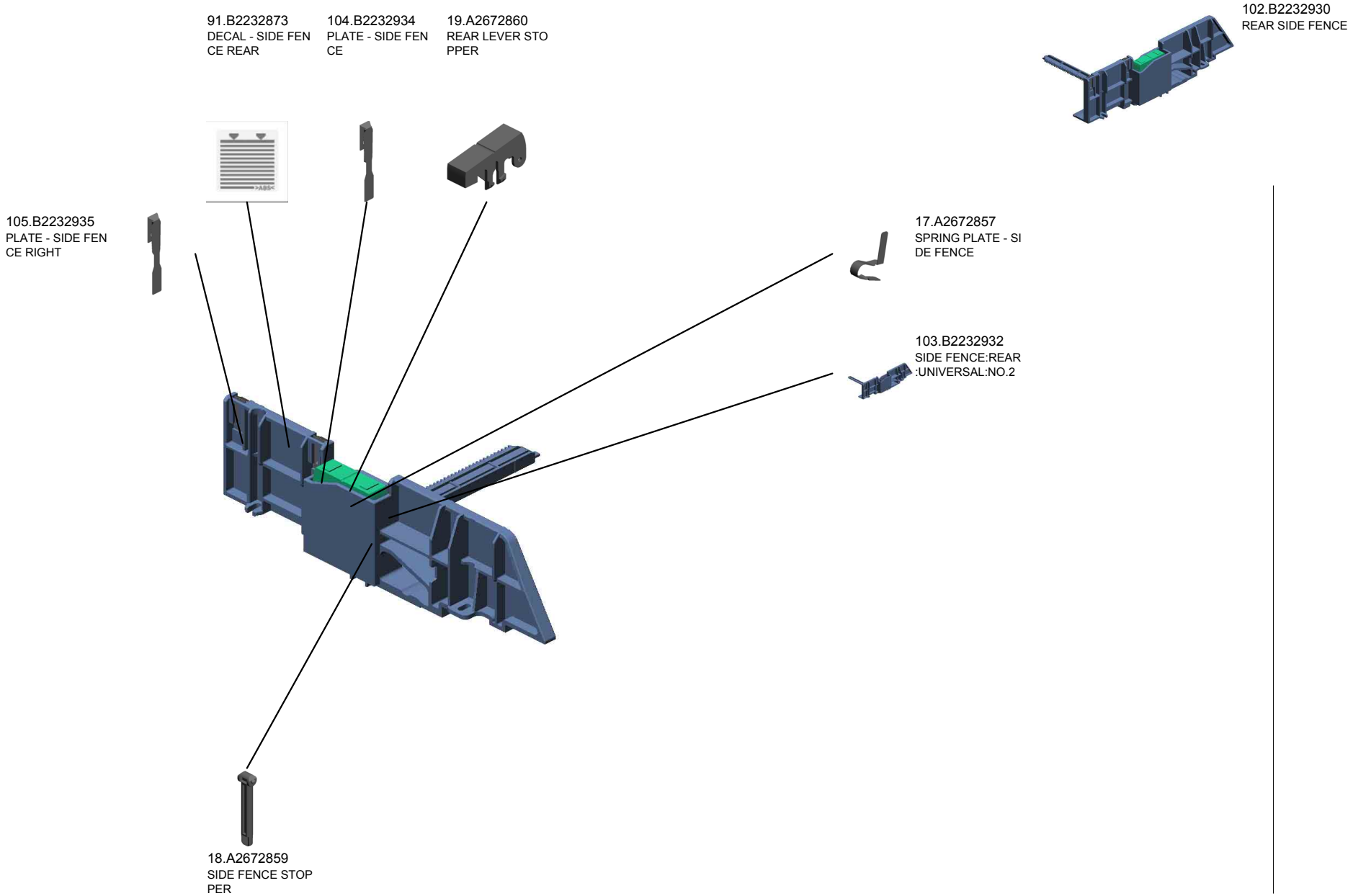


101.B2232923
STOPPER LEVER -
FRONT

50.B0042923
SPRING PLATE - R
ELEASE LEVER

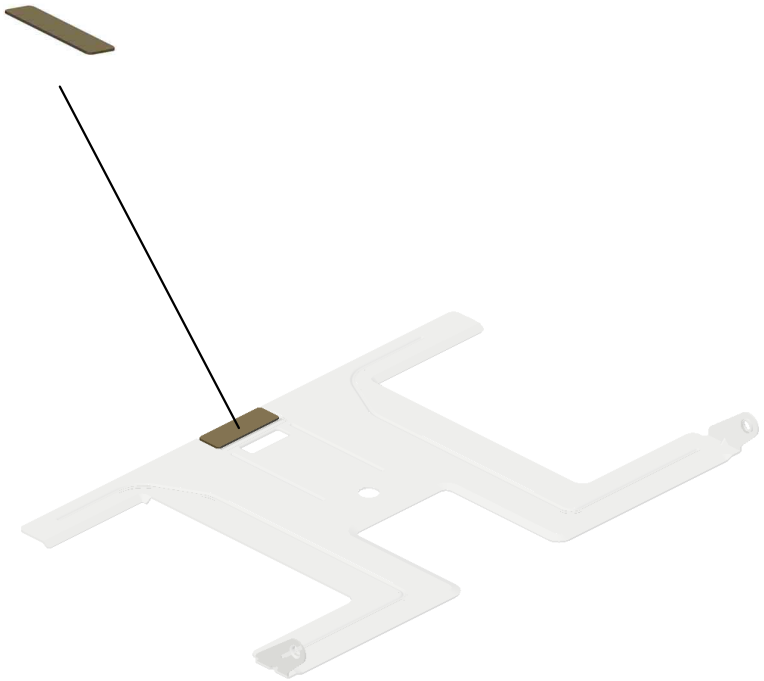
http://www.manuals4you.com

U008_S004_S002
REAR SIDE FENCE



U008_S004_S003
TRAY BOTTOM PLATE

37.AF013006
BOTTOM PLATE P
AD





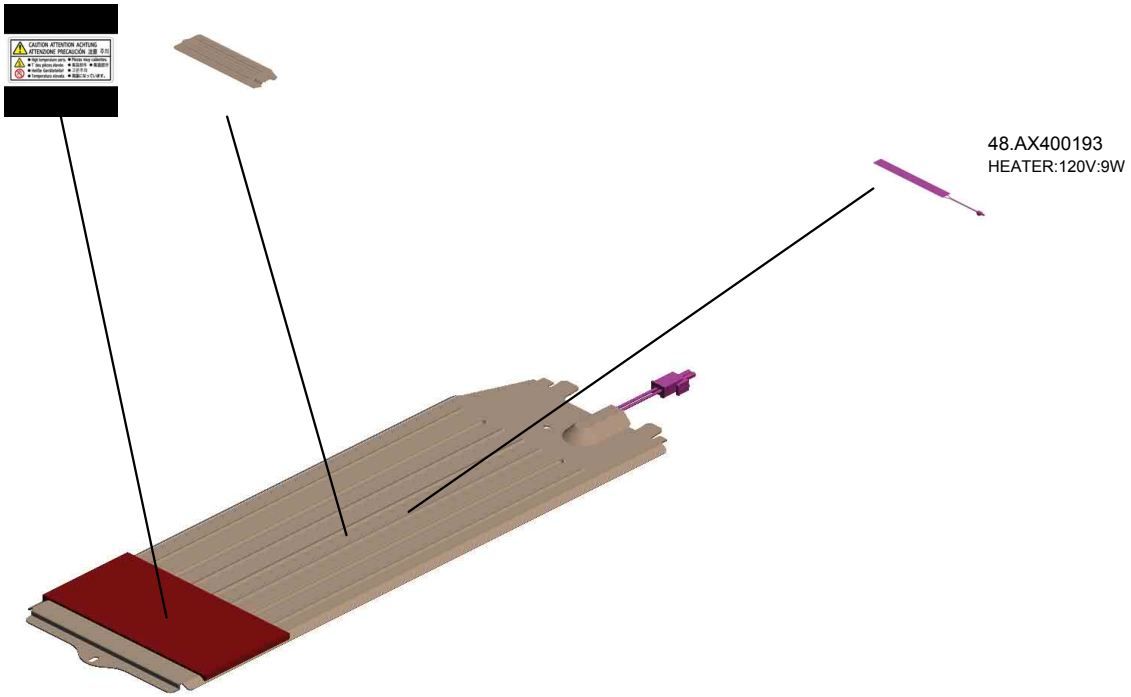
107.B2232940
TRAY BOTTOM PL
ATE

http://www.manuals4you.com

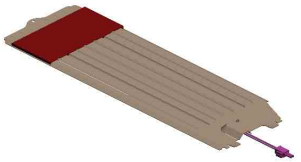
U008_S005
HEAT SINK:HEATER:NA

141.GA000036
DECAL - (HIGH TEMPERATURE) LEFT

58.B2232704
HEATER HEAT SINK

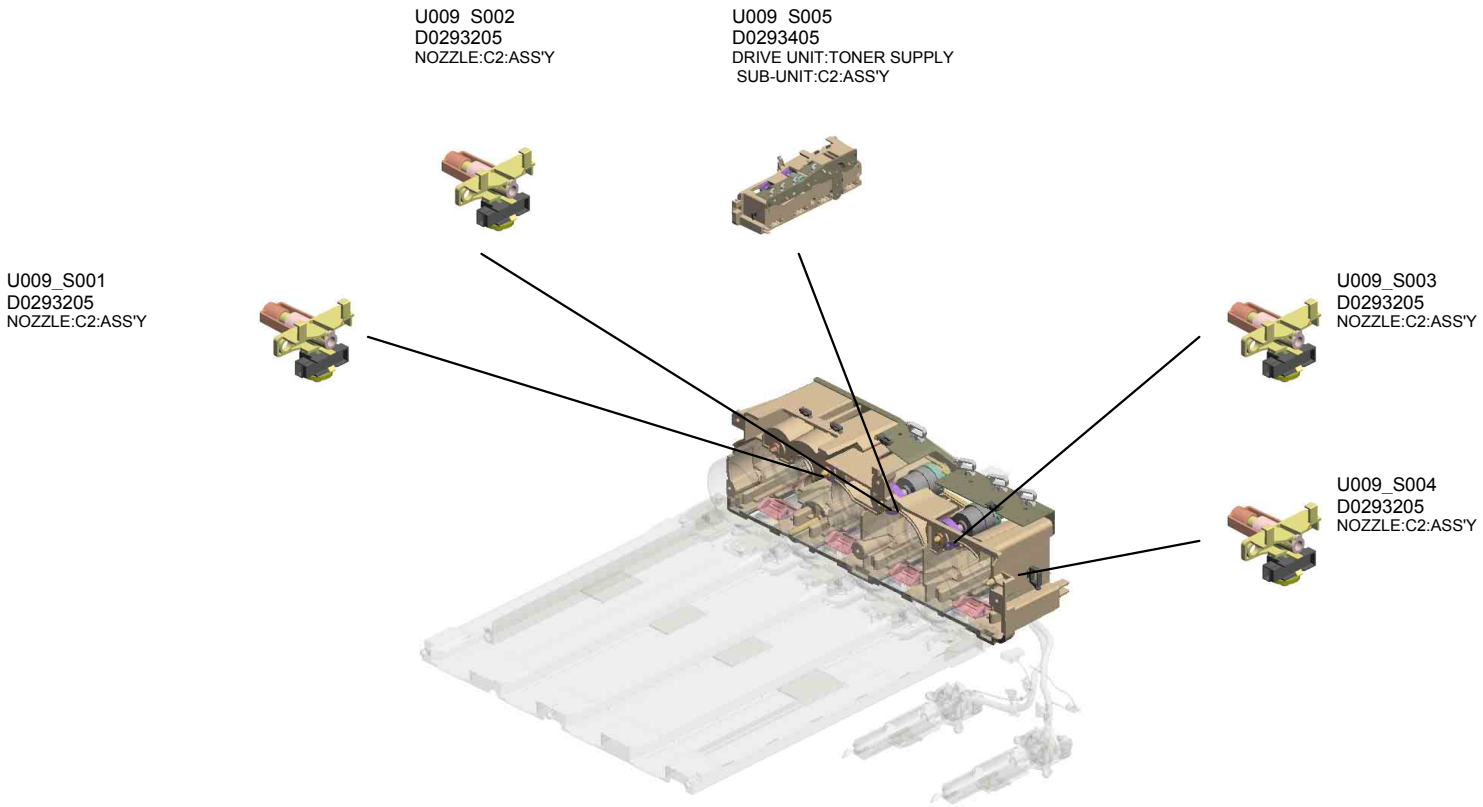


48.AX400193
HEATER:120V:9W



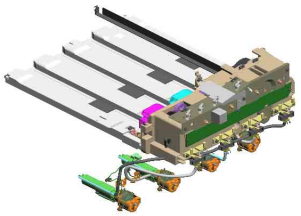
57.B2232702
HEAT SINK:HEATER:NA

U009.Toner Supply



http://www.manuals4you.com

U009
Toner Supply



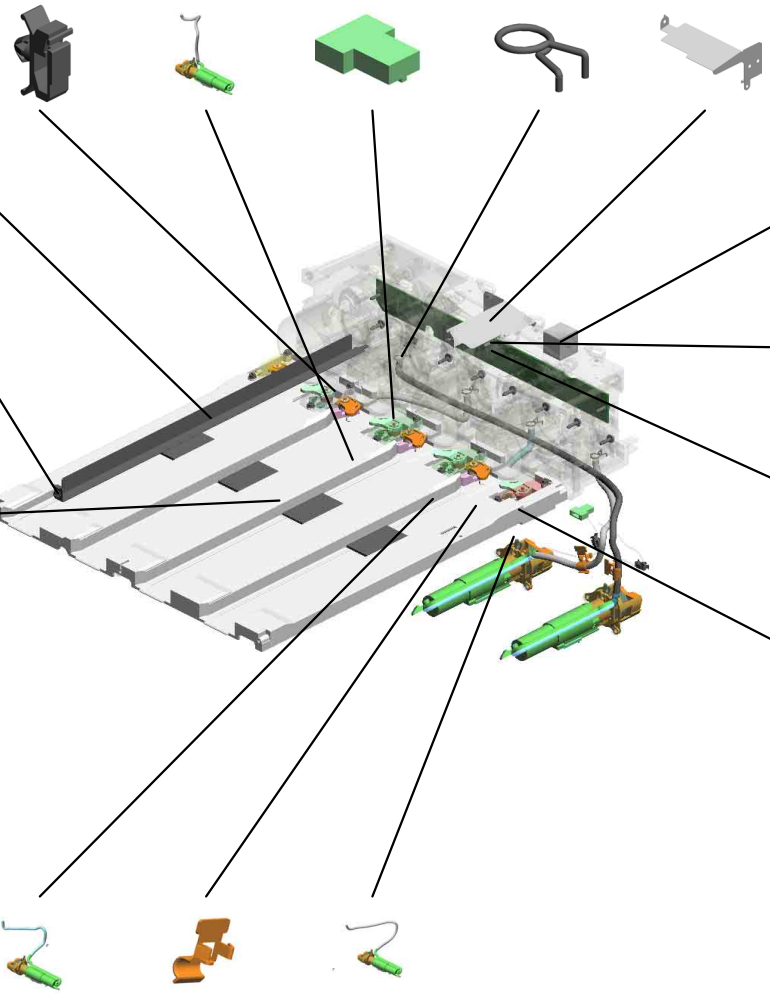
8.11050511
(x4)
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS-0306ZC

31.D0293202
PUMP UNIT:Y:C2:ASS'Y

5.11026245
(x3)
RELAY CONNECTOR - 2P

15.B2233209
(x4)
TUBE CLIP

29.B2233470
RFID GROUND PLATE



17.B2233328
TONER CARTRIDGE GUIDE

2.04543006Q
TAPPING SCREW - M3X6

16.B2233305
TONER CARTRIDGE UNIT

36.D0293471
GASKET:RFID

1.04503012N
(x12)
TAPPING SCREW: 3X12

37.D0295176
PCB:RFID:RW:AP-C2/P2

30.D0293201
PUMP UNIT:BK:C2:ASS'Y

32.D0293203
PUMP UNIT:C:C2:ASS'Y

12.B2233206
(x4)
TUBE CLAMP

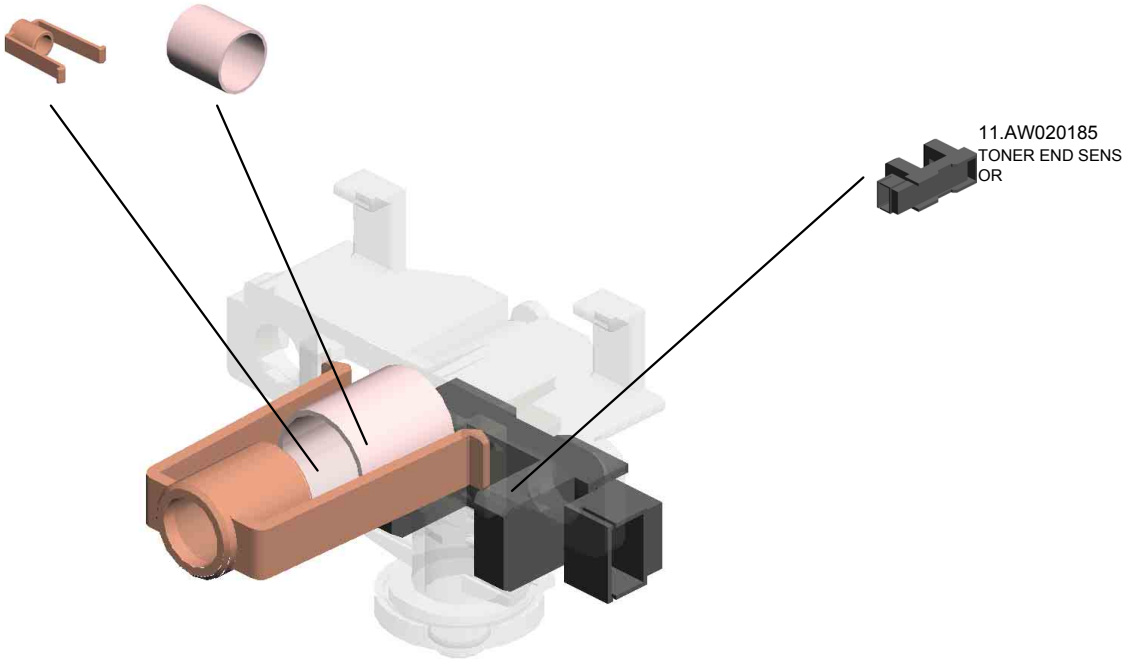
33.D0293204
PUMP UNIT:M:C2:ASS'Y

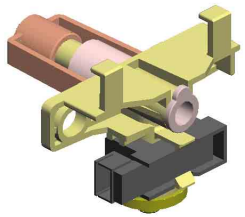
6.11026259 (x 1)
CONNECTOR - 2P

U009_S001
NOZZLE:C2:ASS'Y

13.B2233207
SHUTTER:NOZZLE

14.B2233208
SPRING:SHUTTER:
NOZZLE

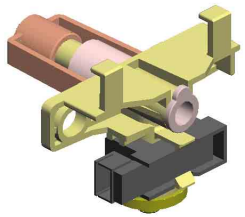




34.D0293205
NOZZLE:C2:ASS'Y

http://www.manuals4you.com

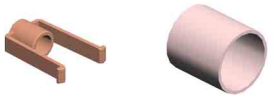
U009_S002
NOZZLE:C2:ASS'Y

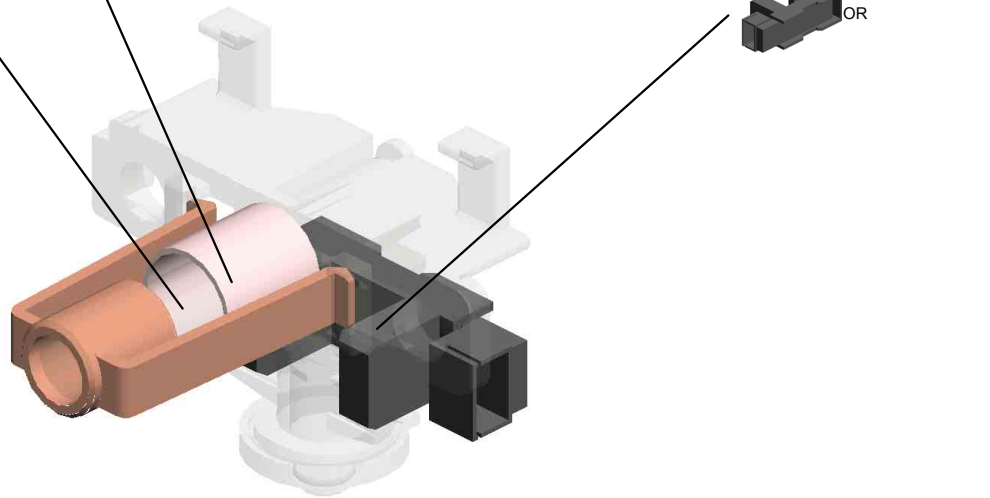


34.D0293205
NOZZLE:C2:ASS'Y

13.B2233207
SHUTTER:NOZZLE

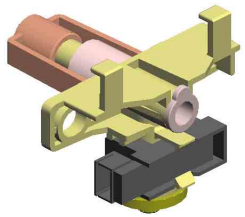
14.B2233208
SPRING:SHUTTER:
NOZZLE





11.AW020185
TONER END SENS
OR

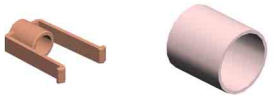
U009_S003
NOZZLE:C2:ASS'Y

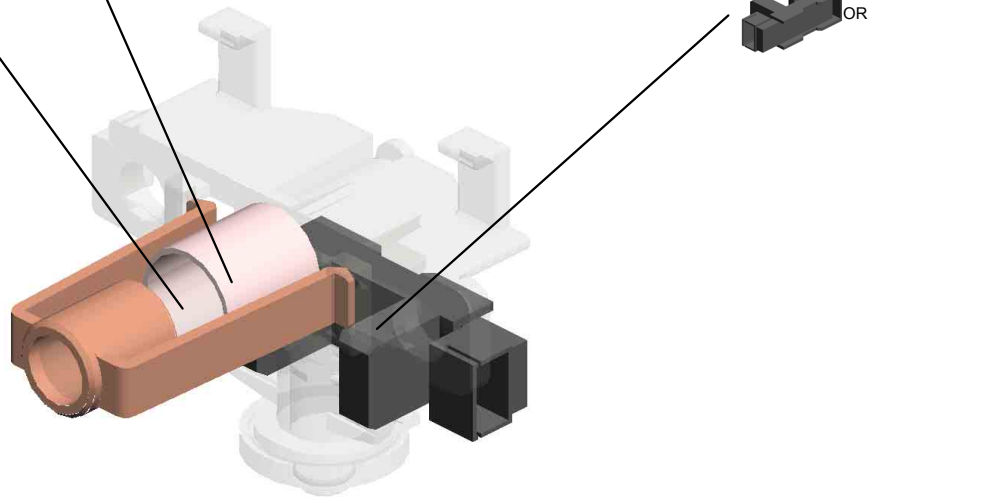


34.D0293205
NOZZLE:C2:ASS'Y

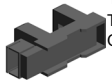
13.B2233207
SHUTTER:NOZZLE

14.B2233208
SPRING:SHUTTER:
NOZZLE





11.AW020185
TONER END SENS
OR

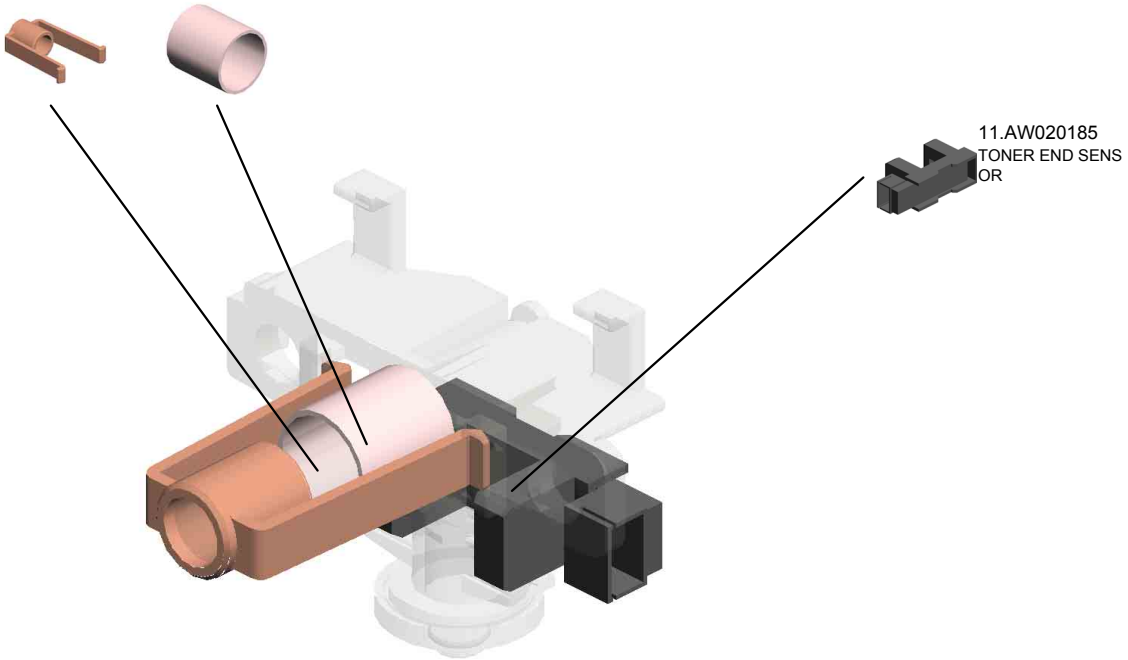


http://www.manuals4you.com

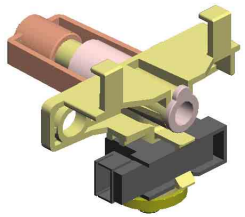
U009_S004
NOZZLE:C2:ASS'Y

13.B2233207
SHUTTER:NOZZLE

14.B2233208
SPRING:SHUTTER:
NOZZLE

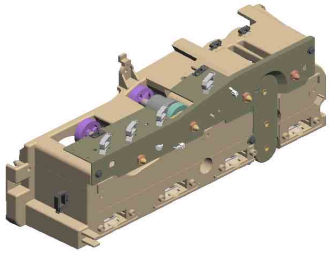


11.AW020185
TONER END SENS
OR



34.D0293205
NOZZLE:C2:ASS'Y

U009_S005
DRIVE UNIT:TONER SUPPLY SUB-UNIT:C2:ASS'Y



35.D0293405
DRIVE UNIT:TONER SUPPLY SUB-UNIT:C2:ASS'Y

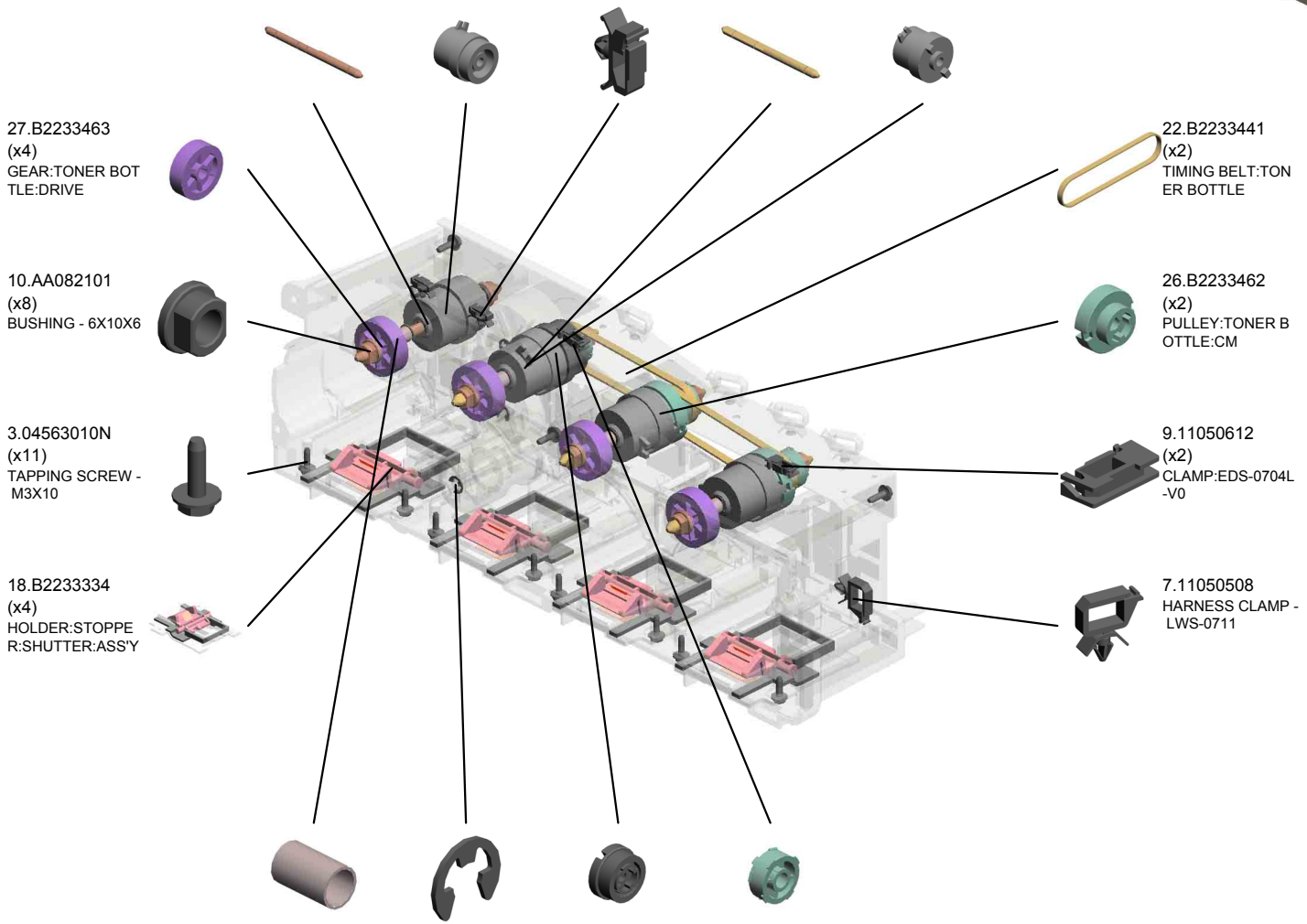
19.B2233424
SHAFT:DRIVE:DRIVE UNIT:BKY

23.B2233455
MAGNETIC CLUTCH - 0.25N.M BK

8.11050511
(x2)
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS-0306ZC

20.B2233426
(x3)
SHAFT:DRIVE:DRIVE UNIT:CM

24.B2233457
(x3)
MAGNETIC CLUTCH - 0.25N.M YCM



27.B2233463
(x4)
GEAR:TONER BOTTLE:DRIVE

10.AA082101
(x8)
BUSHING - 6X10X6

3.04563010N
(x11)
TAPPING SCREW - M3X10

18.B2233334
(x4)
HOLDER:STOPPER:SHUTTER:ASS'Y

22.B2233441
(x2)
TIMING BELT:TONER BOTTLE

26.B2233462
(x2)
PULLEY:TONER BOTTLE:CM

9.11050612
(x2)
CLAMP:EDS-0704L-V0

7.11050508
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS-0711

21.B2233428
(x4)
SPRING:DRIVE UNIT:TONER BOTTLE

4.07200040E
(x16)
RETAINING RING - M4

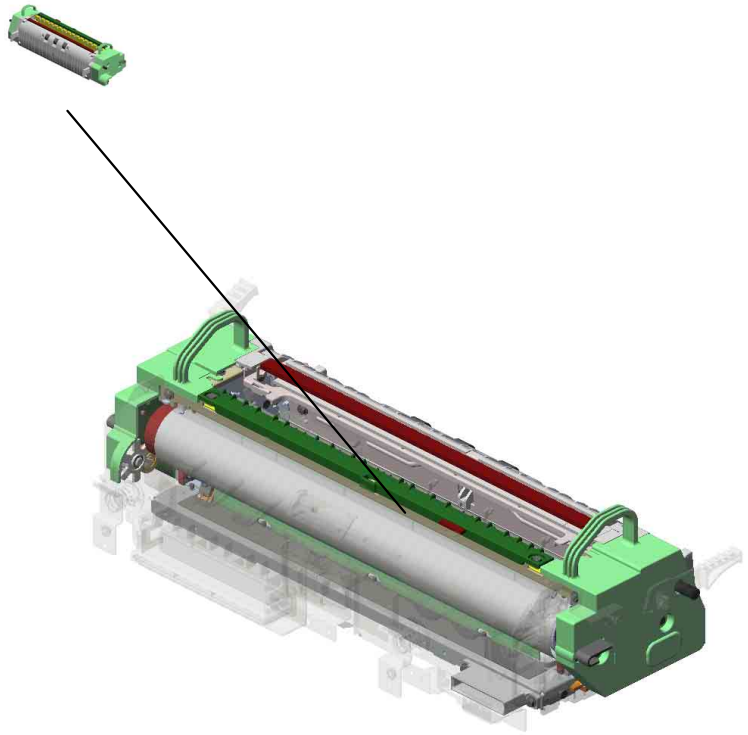
28.B2233464
GEAR:MAGNETIC CLUTCH:Y

25.B2233461
(x3)
PULLEY:TONER BOTTLE:YC

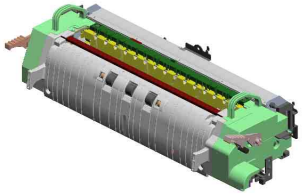
http://www.manuals4you.com

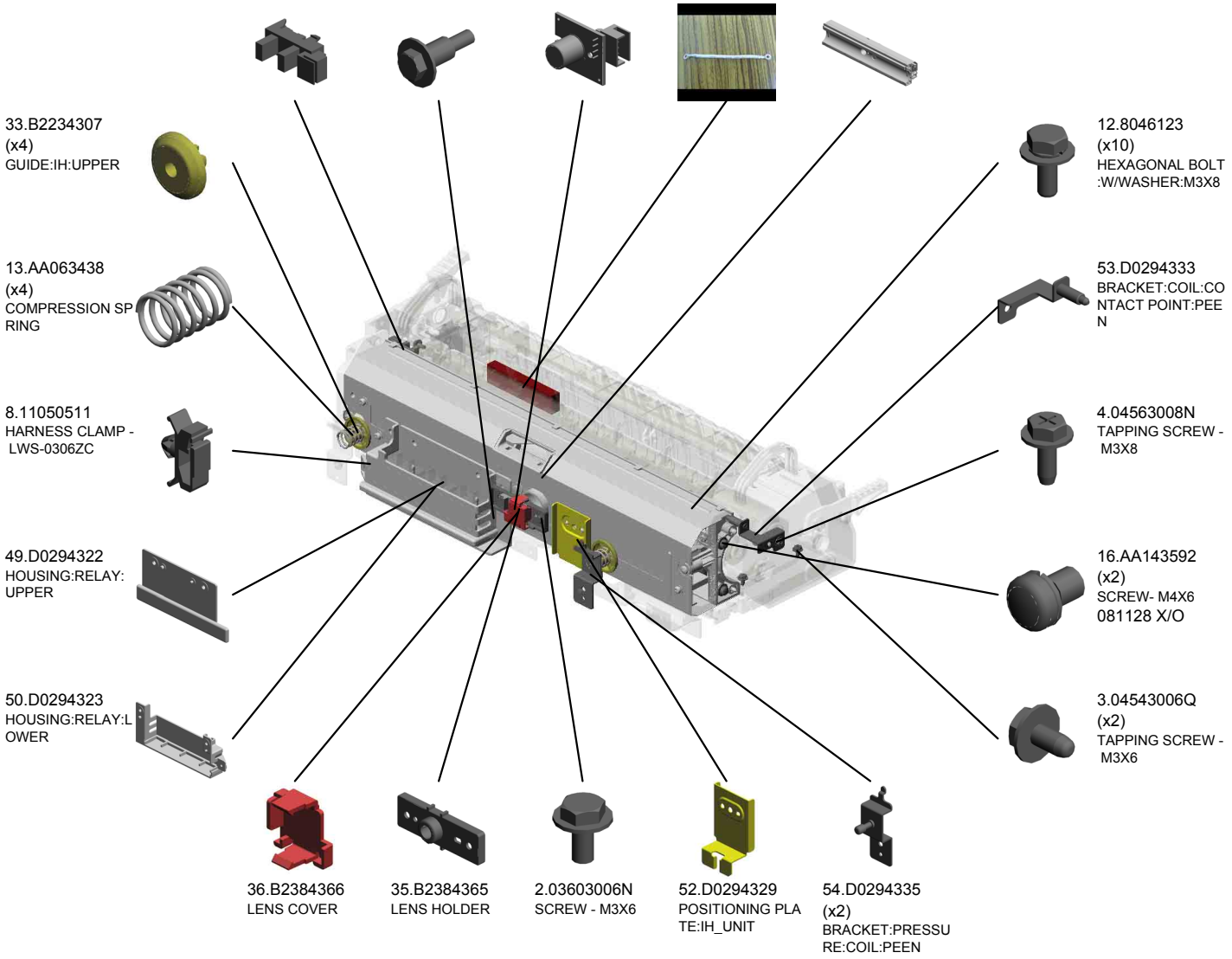
U010.Fusing

U010 S001
D0294019
FUSING UNIT:NA:ASS'Y



U010
Fusing





28.AW020190
(x2)
PHOTOINTERRUPTOR

37.B5457506
SCREW:BUSHING

29.AW100106
THERMOPILE

34.B2234382
GROUND WIRE:COIL

51.D0294325
COIL:IH:DOM:NA:SUB-ASS'Y

33.B2234307
(x4)
GUIDE:IH:UPPER

13.AA063438
(x4)
COMPRESSION SPRING

8.11050511
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS-0306ZC

49.D0294322
HOUSING:RELAY:UPPER

50.D0294323
HOUSING:RELAY:LOWER

12.8046123
(x10)
HEXAGONAL BOLT :W/WASHER:M3X8

53.D0294333
BRACKET:COIL:CONTACT POINT:PEEN

4.04563008N
TAPPING SCREW - M3X8

16.AA143592
(x2)
SCREW- M4X6
081128 X/O

3.04543006Q
(x2)
TAPPING SCREW - M3X6

36.B2384366
LENS COVER

35.B2384365
LENS HOLDER

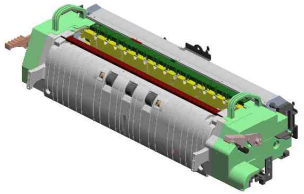
2.03603006N
SCREW - M3X6

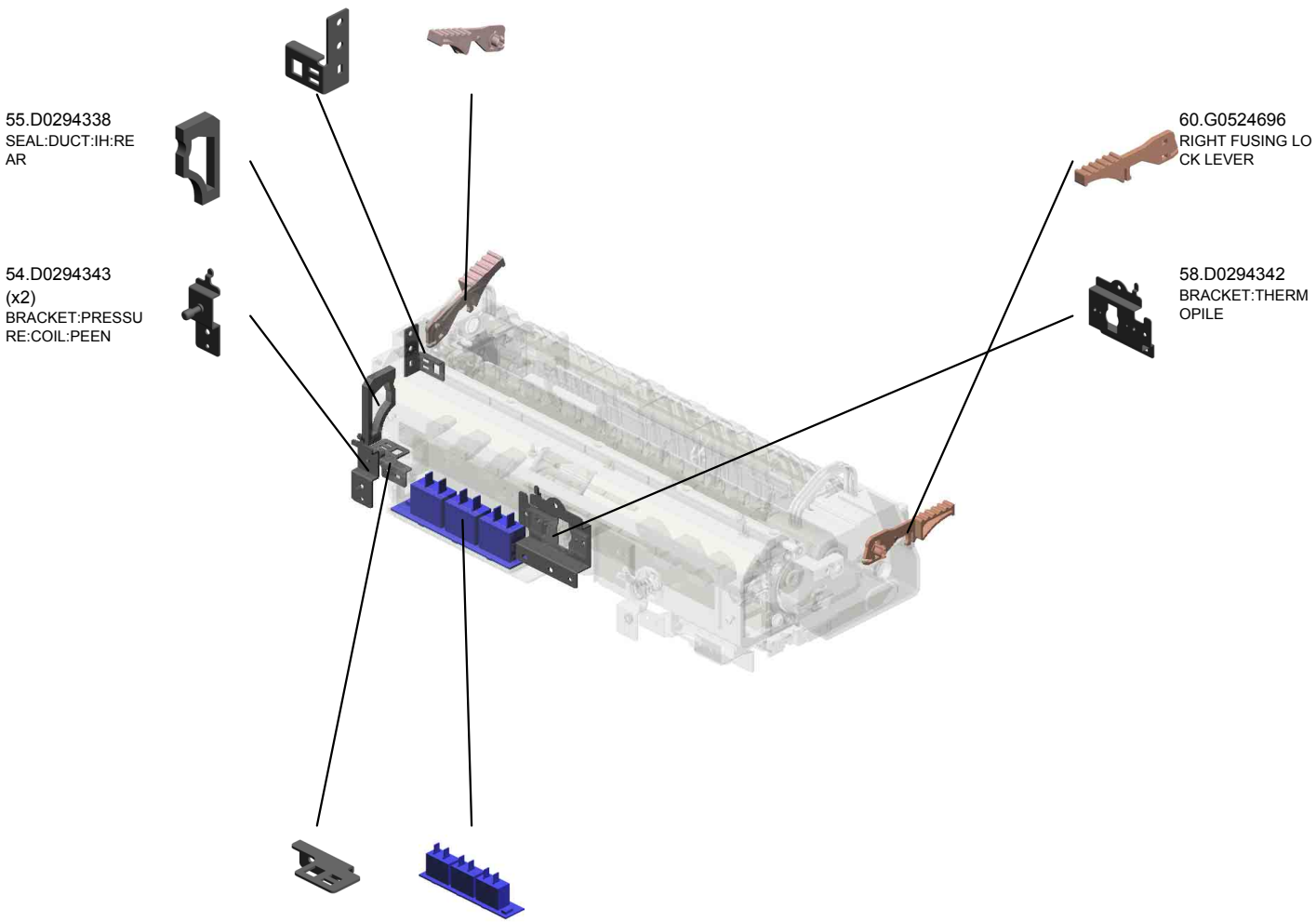
52.D0294329
POSITIONING PLATE:IH_UNIT

54.D0294335
(x2)
BRACKET:PRESSURE:COIL:PEEN

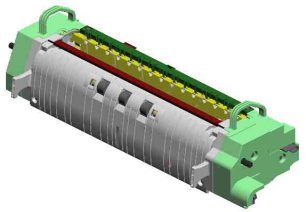
http://www.manuals4you.com

U010
Fusing




56.D0294339
BRACKET:SENSOR:ON-OFF
61.G0524697
LEFT FUSING LOCK LEVER
55.D0294338
SEAL:DUCT:IH:REAR
60.G0524696
RIGHT FUSING LOCK LEVER
54.D0294343
(x2)
BRACKET:PRESSURE:COIL:PEEN
58.D0294342
BRACKET:THERMOPILE
57.D0294340
BRACKET:SENSOR:TURN
59.D0295160
PCB:RLB:AP-C2

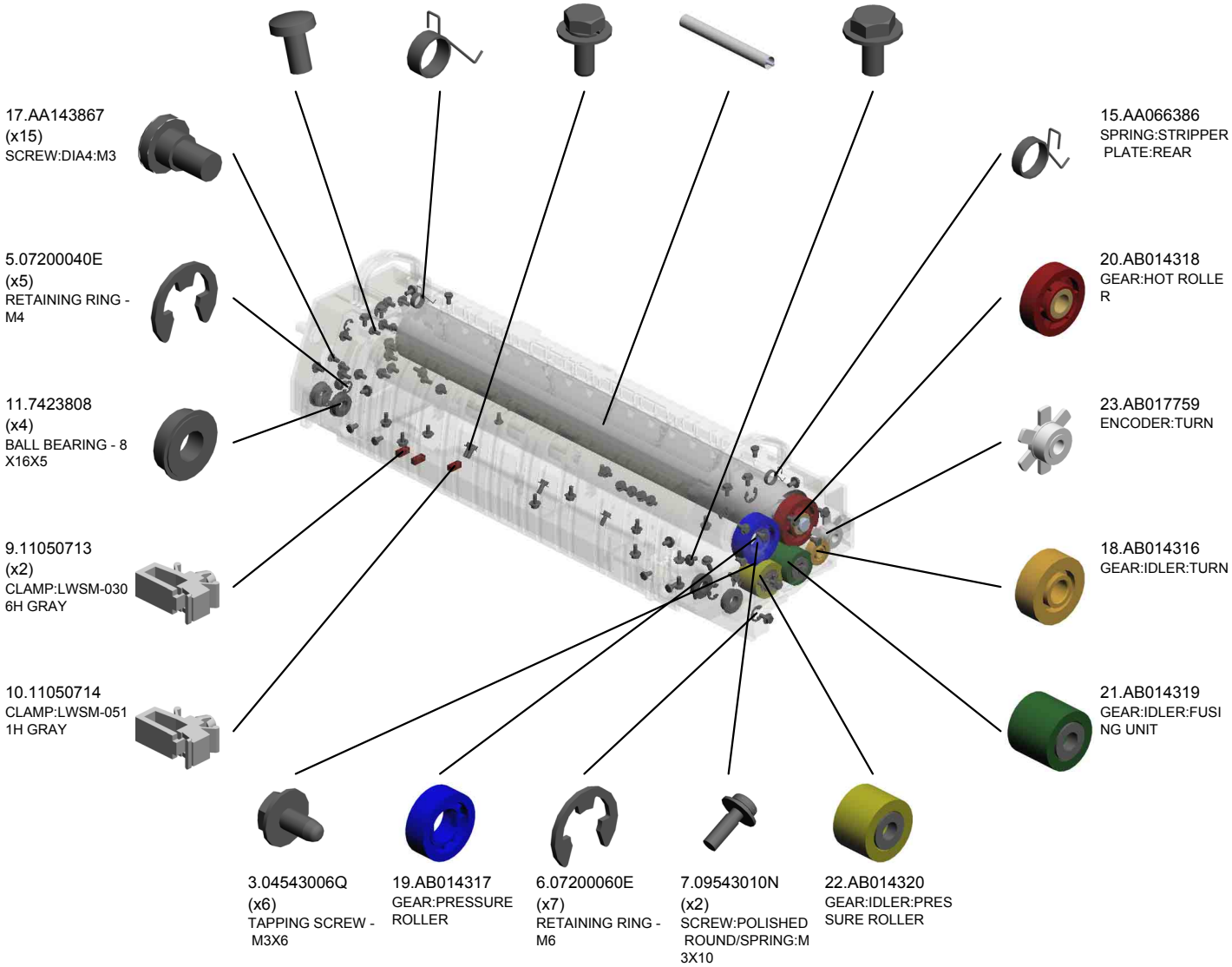
U010_S001
FUSING UNIT:NA:ASS'Y



39.D0294019
[A]
FUSING UNIT:NA:A SS'Y
090219 X/O

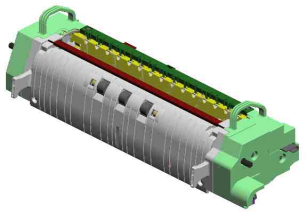


D0294018
[A]
FUSING UNIT:NA:A SS'Y
090219 X/O



http://www.manuals4you.com

U010_S001
FUSING UNIT:NA:ASS'Y



39.D0294019
[A]
FUSING UNIT:NA:ASS'Y
090219 X/O

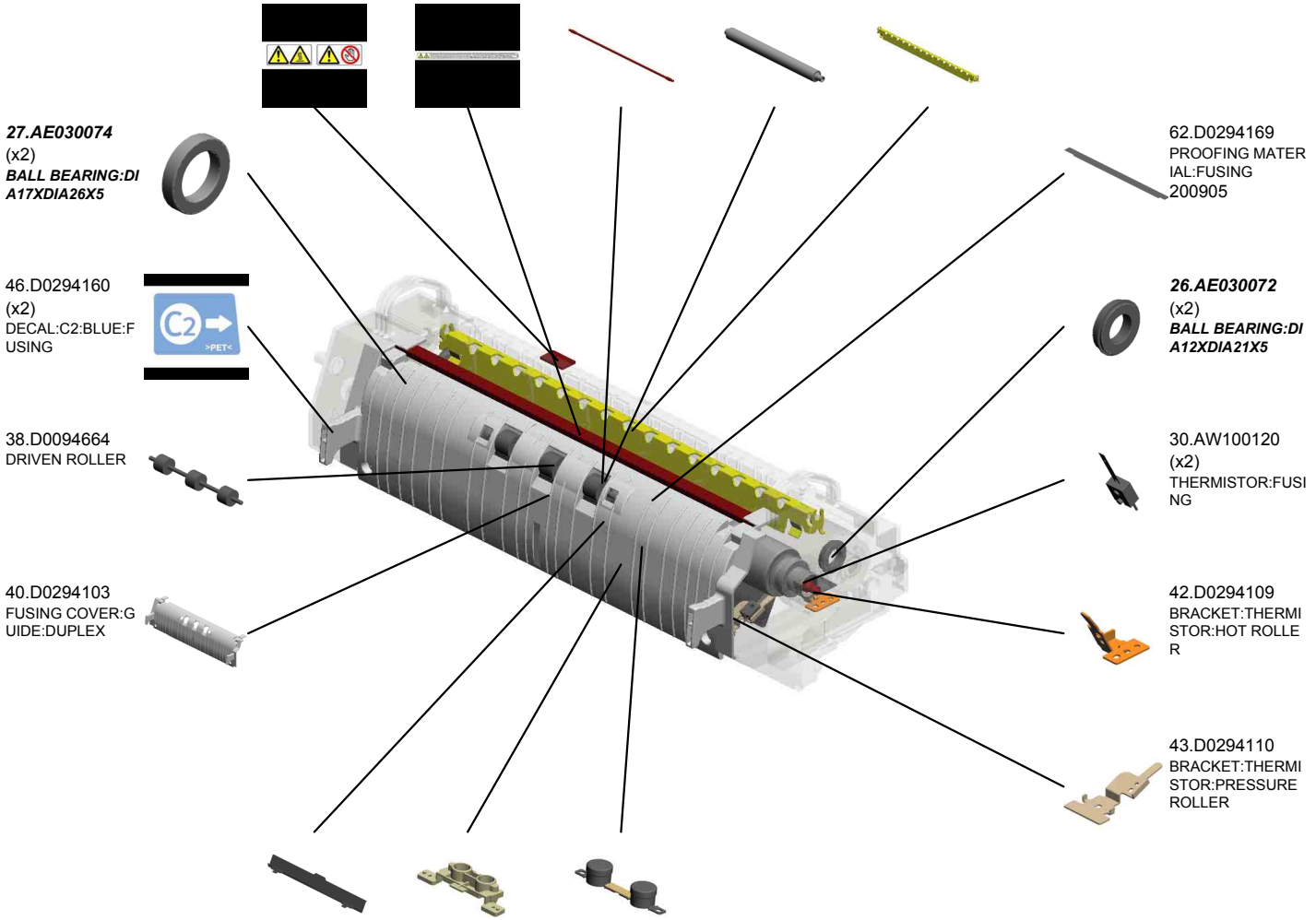
48.D0294164
DECAL:H-TEMP WARNING:FUSING:2

47.D0294163
DECAL:WARNING (HIGH TEMPERATURE):FUSING:1

32.AX430118
HEATER:120V:500W

25.AE020171
PRESSURE ROLLER:DIA40

45.D0294137
STRIPPER PLATE:COAT



27.AE030074
(x2)
BALL BEARING:DIA17XDIA26X5

46.D0294160
(x2)
DECAL:C2:BLUE:FUSING

38.D0094664
DRIVEN ROLLER

40.D0294103
FUSING COVER:GUIDE:DUPLEX

62.D0294169
PROOFING MATERIAL:FUSING
200905

26.AE030072
(x2)
BALL BEARING:DIA12XDIA21X5

30.AW100120
(x2)
THERMISTOR:FUSING

42.D0294109
BRACKET:THERMISTOR:HOT ROLLER

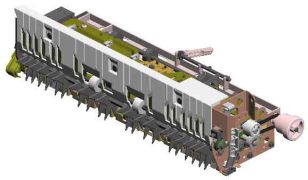
43.D0294110
BRACKET:THERMISTOR:PRESSURE ROLLER

44.D0294132
FUSING ENTRANCE GUIDE PLATE:COAT

41.D0294108
HOUSING:THERMOSTAT:PRESSURE

31.AW110072
THERMOSTAT:ASS'Y

U011
Paper Exit





7.52062684
(x7)
SHOULDER SCREW - M3

13.AW010127
PAPER FEED SENSOR

1.03530100N
SCREW-M3X10

14.AW020145
PHOTOINTERRUPTOR:FLAT

5.11050516
CLAMP

15.AW500023
PUSH SWITCH

16.B2234428
(x3)
ROLLER:GUIDE:PFA

19.B2384436
(x2)
SPRING PLATE - EXIT ROLLER OUTER

9.AA082102
(x9)
BUSHING - 6X10X6

6.11050522
EDGE SADDLE - LES0510

2.04543006Q
TAPPING SCREW - M3X6

4.11050511
(x9)
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS-0306ZC

8.8050092
RETAINING RING - 3M

3.04563010N
(x8)
TAPPING SCREW - M3X10

10.AF040566
(x2)
TENSION ROLLER

11.AF040567
(x2)
TENSION ROLLER

18.B2234497
SHAFT:FEELER:OVERFLOW

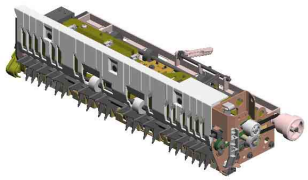
12.AW010107
(x2)
PAPER FEED SENSOR

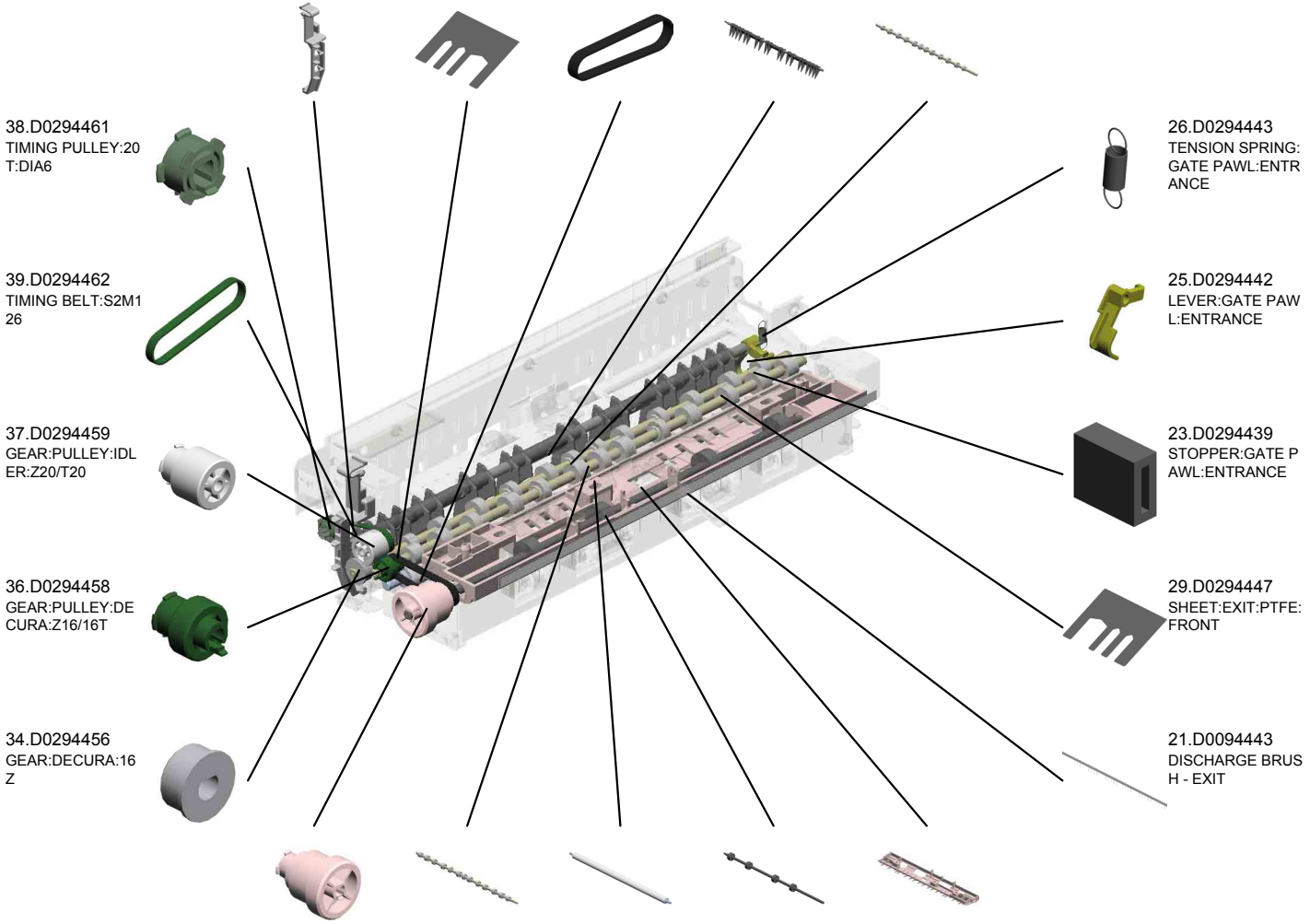
17.B2234436
(x2)
SPRING PLATE - EXIT ROLLER

20.D0094407
FEELER - OVERFLOW

http://www.manuals4you.com

U011
Paper Exit





27.D0294444
COVER:HARNESS

28.D0294446
SHEET:EXIT:PTFE:
REAR

40.D0294463
TIMING BELT:S2M:
122

24.D0294440
GATE PAWL:ENTR
ANCE:ASS'Y

31.D0294452
ROLLER:DECURA:
DRIVE:ENTRANCE

38.D0294461
TIMING PULLEY:20
T:DIA6

39.D0294462
TIMING BELT:S2M1
26

37.D0294459
GEAR:PULLEY:IDL
ER:Z20/T20

36.D0294458
GEAR:PULLEY:DE
CURA:Z16/16T

34.D0294456
GEAR:DECURA:16
Z

26.D0294443
TENSION SPRING:
GATE PAWL:ENTR
ANCE

25.D0294442
LEVER:GATE PAW
L:ENTRANCE

23.D0294439
STOPPER:GATE P
AWL:ENTRANCE

29.D0294447
SHEET:EXIT:PTFE:
FRONT

21.D0094443
DISCHARGE BRUS
H - EXIT

35.D0294457
GEAR:PULLEY:INP
UT:27Z

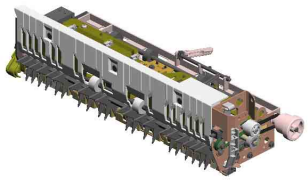
32.D0294453
ROLLER:DECURA:
DRIVE:EXIT

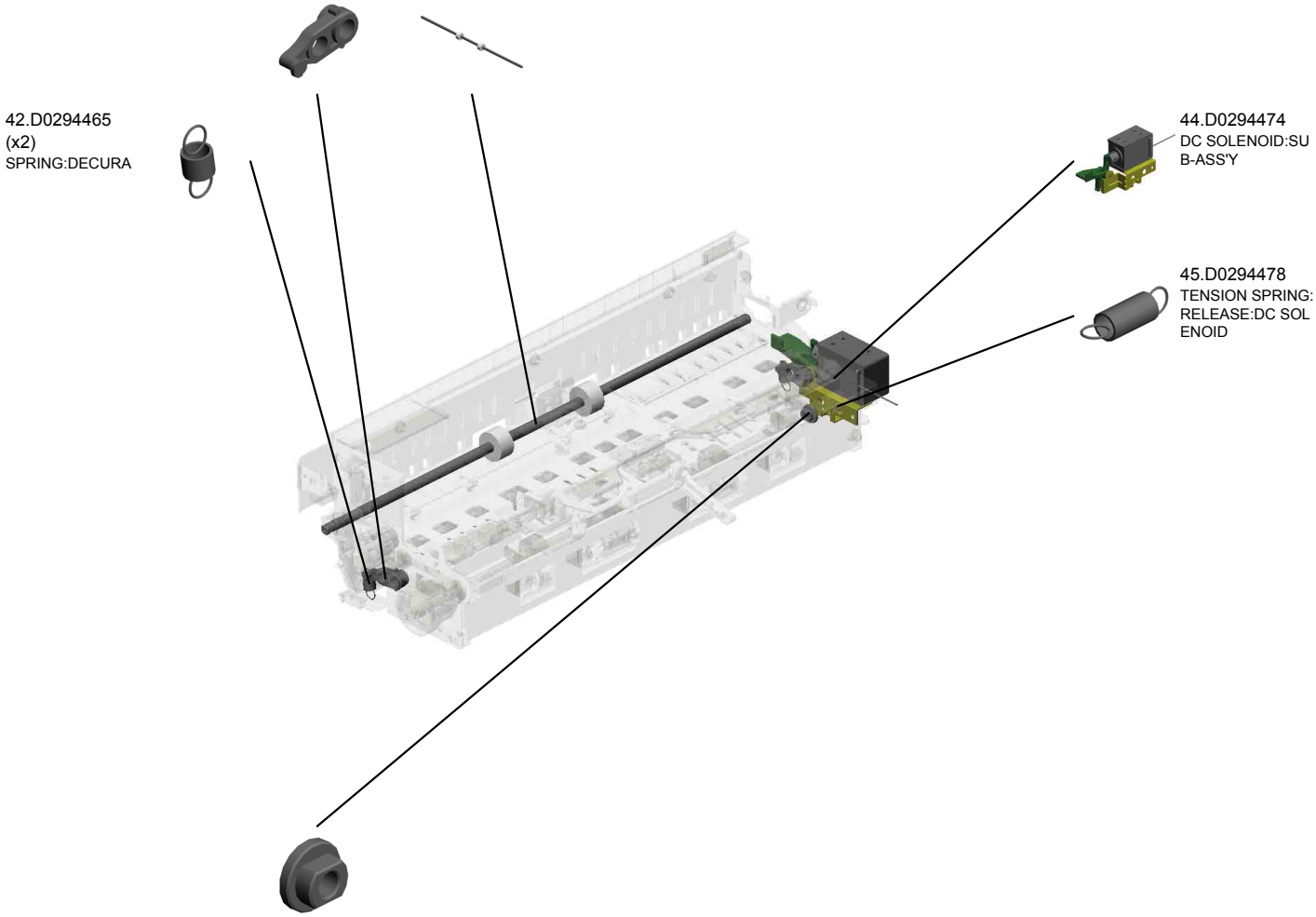
30.D0294450
ROLLER:DECURA:
DRIVEN:ASS'Y

33.D0294454
EXIT ROLLER

22.D0294421
GUIDE PLATE:UPP
ER LEFT

U011
Paper Exit





41.D0294464
(x2)
BUSHING:DECURA
:DRIVEN

43.D0294466
TRANSPORT ROLL
ER:DIA18

42.D0294465
(x2)
SPRING:DECURA

44.D0294474
DC SOLENOID:SU
B-ASS'Y

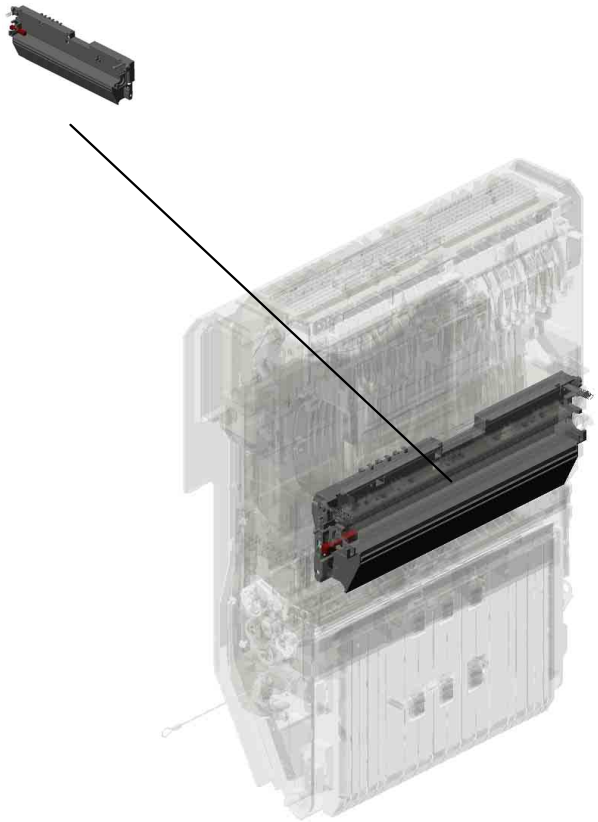
45.D0294478
TENSION SPRING:
RELEASE:DC SOL
ENOID

46.H0532208
BUSHING - M4

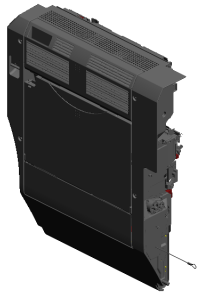
http://www.manuals4you.com

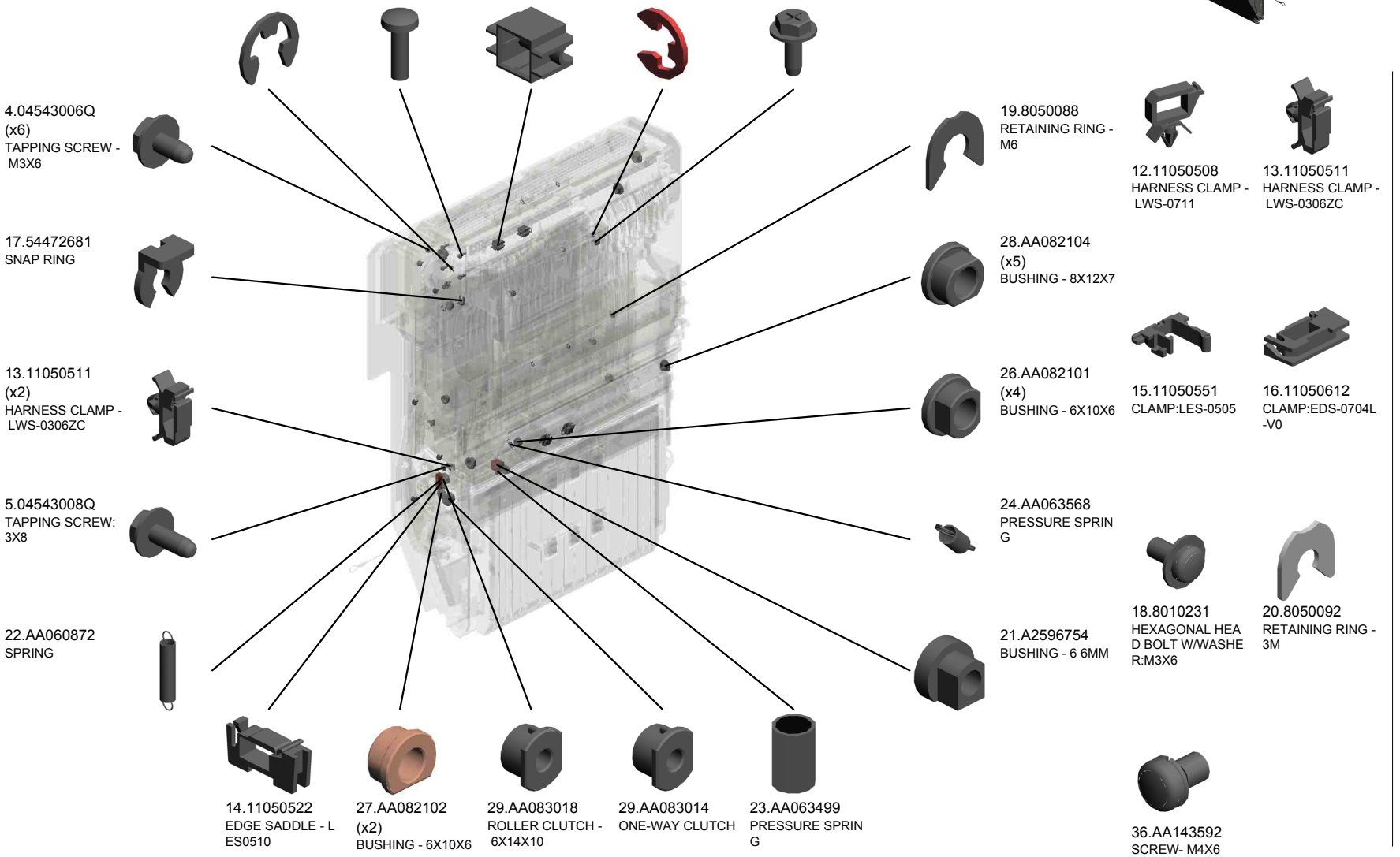
U012.Duplex

U012 S001
D0256280
CASE:AT:ASS'Y



U012
Duplex





10.07200040E (x2)
RETAINING RING - M4

2.03530100N (x4)
SCREW-M3X10

25.AA080254 (x4)
BUSHING - M4

9.07200030E (x10)
RETAINING RING - M3

6.04563008N (x4)
TAPPING SCREW - M3X8

4.04543006Q (x6)
TAPPING SCREW - M3X6

17.54472681
SNAP RING

13.11050511 (x2)
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS-0306ZC

5.04543008Q
TAPPING SCREW: 3X8

22.AA060872
SPRING

14.11050522
EDGE SADDLE - LES0510

27.AA082102 (x2)
BUSHING - 6X10X6

29.AA083018
ROLLER CLUTCH - 6X14X10

29.AA083014
ONE-WAY CLUTCH

23.AA063499
PRESSURE SPRING

19.8050088
RETAINING RING - M6

28.AA082104 (x5)
BUSHING - 8X12X7

26.AA082101 (x4)
BUSHING - 6X10X6

24.AA063568
PRESSURE SPRING

21.A2596754
BUSHING - 6 6MM

12.11050508
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS-0711

13.11050511
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS-0306ZC

15.11050551
CLAMP:LES-0505

16.11050612
CLAMP:EDS-0704L-V0

18.8010231
HEXAGONAL HEAD BOLT W/WASHER:M3X6

20.8050092
RETAINING RING - 3M

36.AA143592
SCREW- M4X6

1.03530040N (x 1)
SCREW - M3X4

3.03603006N (x 1)
SCREW - M3X6

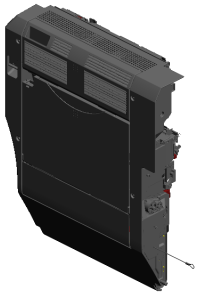
7.04563010N (x 1)
TAPPING SCREW - M3X10

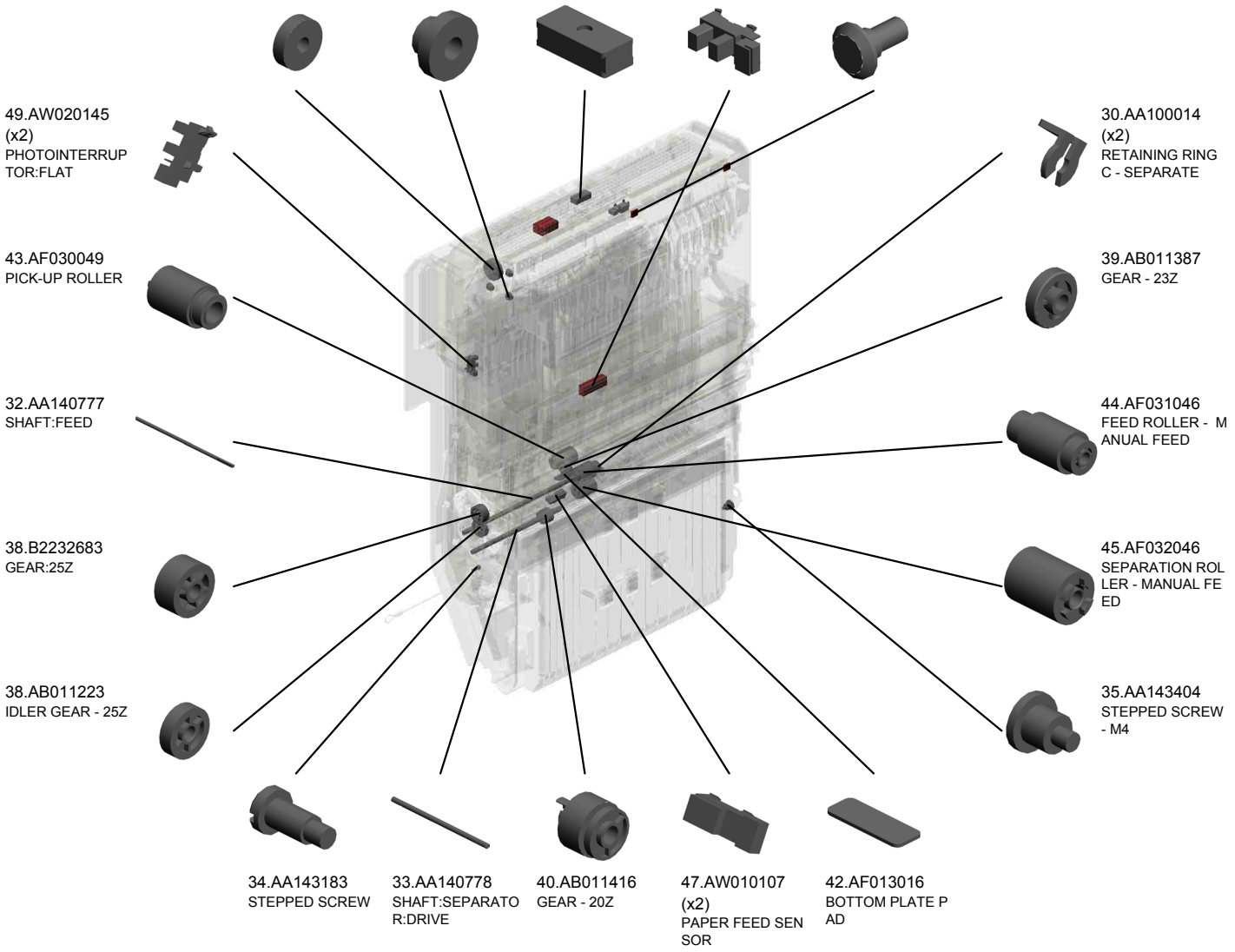
8.04573008N (x 1)
TAPPING SCREW - M3X8

11.11026248 (x 1)
CONNECTOR - 5P

http://www.manuals4you.com

U012
Duplex





41.AB014161
REVERSE ROLLER GEAR

31.AA101021
(x4)
RUBBER BUSHING - 6 45HS

46.AG070514
MAGNET CATCH

48.AW010118
PAPER FEED SENSOR

37.AA143807
(x2)
SCREW:A

49.AW020145
(x2)
PHOTOINTERRUPTOR:FLAT

43.AF030049
PICK-UP ROLLER

32.AA140777
SHAFT:FEED

38.B2232683
GEAR:25Z

38.AB011223
IDLER GEAR - 25Z

30.AA100014
(x2)
RETAINING RING C - SEPARATE

39.AB011387
GEAR - 23Z

44.AF031046
FEED ROLLER - MANUAL FEED

45.AF032046
SEPARATION ROLLER - MANUAL FEED

35.AA143404
STEPPED SCREW - M4

34.AA143183
STEPPED SCREW

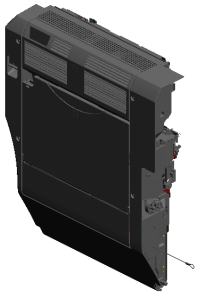
33.AA140778
SHAFT:SEPARATOR:DRIVE

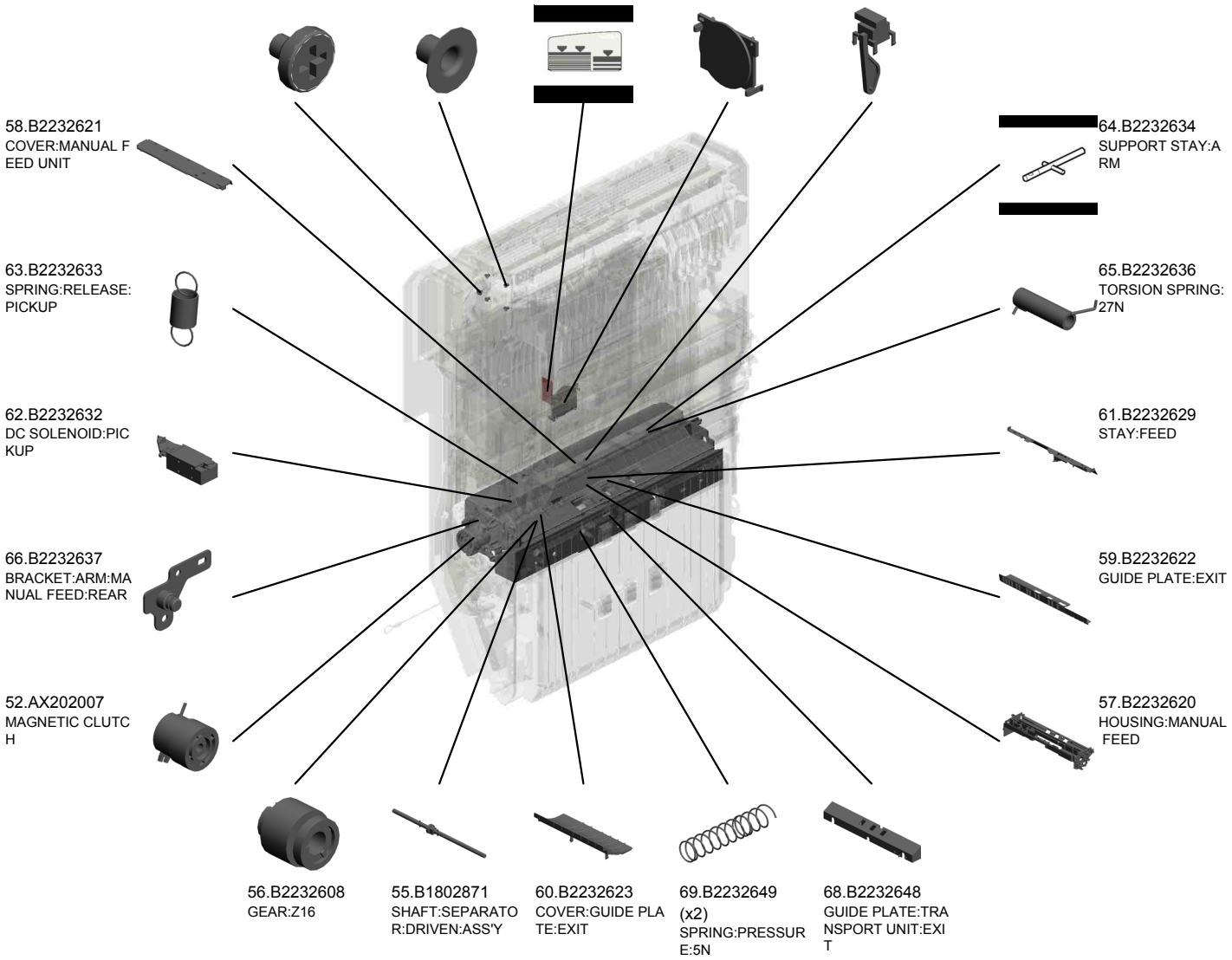
40.AB011416
GEAR - 20Z

47.AW010107
(x2)
PAPER FEED SENSOR

42.AF013016
BOTTOM PLATE PAD

U012
Duplex





54.B0441847
SHOULDER SCREW

53.B0441825
(x4)
COLLAR

67.B2232645
DECAL:SIDE FENCE

50.AW500031
PAPER SIZE SENSOR

51.AW500035
PAPER END SENSOR

58.B2232621
COVER:MANUAL FEED UNIT

63.B2232633
SPRING:RELEASE:PICKUP

62.B2232632
DC SOLENOID:PICKUP

66.B2232637
BRACKET:ARM:MANUAL FEED:REAR

52.AX202007
MAGNETIC CLUTCH

64.B2232634
SUPPORT STAY:ARM

65.B2232636
TORSION SPRING:27N

61.B2232629
STAY:FEED

59.B2232622
GUIDE PLATE:EXIT

57.B2232620
HOUSING:MANUAL FEED

56.B2232608
GEAR:Z16

55.B1802871
SHAFT:SEPARATOR:DRIVEN:ASS'Y

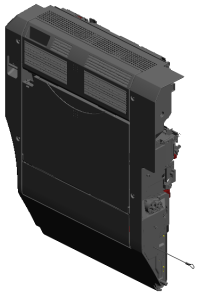
60.B2232623
COVER:GUIDE PLATE:EXIT

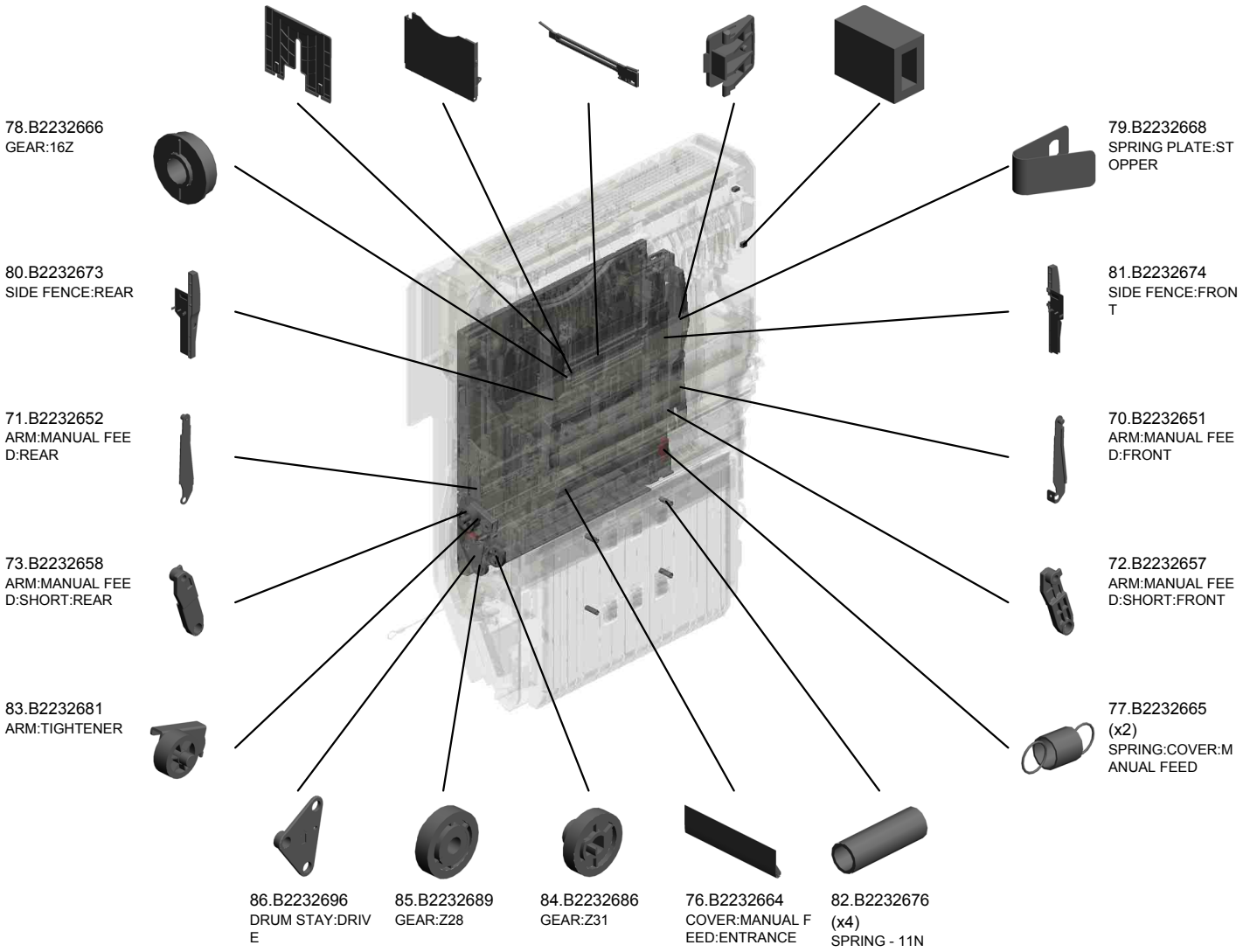
69.B2232649
(x2)
SPRING:PRESSURE:5N

68.B2232648
GUIDE PLATE:TRANSPORT UNIT:EXIT

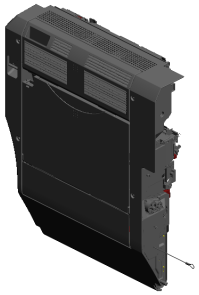
http://www.manuals4you.com

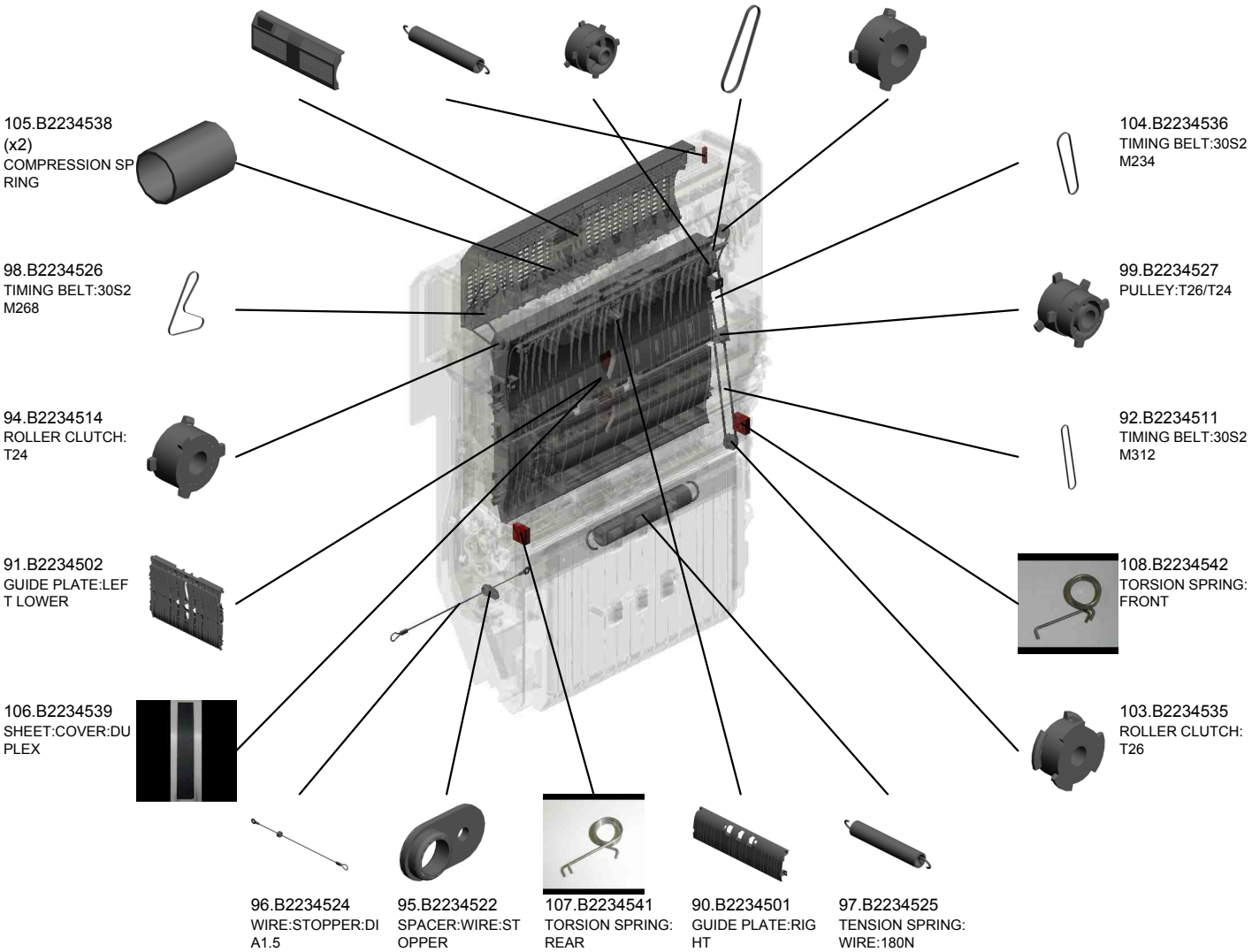
U012
Duplex




75.B2232663
EXTENSION TRAY
74.B2232661
COVER:MANUAL FEED
87.B2232713
(x2)
RACK:MANUAL FEED
88.B2232726
GRIP:SIDE FENCE:MANUAL FEED
89.B2234494
(x2)
STOPPER- UPPER GATE PAWL
78.B2232666
GEAR:16Z
79.B2232668
SPRING PLATE:STOPPER
80.B2232673
SIDE FENCE:REAR
81.B2232674
SIDE FENCE:FRONT
71.B2232652
ARM:MANUAL FEED:REAR
70.B2232651
ARM:MANUAL FEED:FRONT
73.B2232658
ARM:MANUAL FEED:SHORT:REAR
72.B2232657
ARM:MANUAL FEED:SHORT:FRONT
83.B2232681
ARM:TIGHTENER
77.B2232665
(x2)
SPRING:COVER:MANUAL FEED
86.B2232696
DRUM STAY:DRIVE
85.B2232689
GEAR:Z28
84.B2232686
GEAR:Z31
76.B2232664
COVER:MANUAL FEED:ENTRANCE
82.B2232676
(x4)
SPRING - 11N

U012
Duplex





101.B2234531
GUIDE PLATE:COVER

102.B2234532
TENSION SPRING:HOOK:STOPPER

109.B2234544
PULLEY:T35/T33

93.B2234512
TIMING BELT:30S2M182

100.B2234529
ROLLER CLUTCH:T24

105.B2234538
(x2)
COMPRESSION SPRING

98.B2234526
TIMING BELT:30S2M268

94.B2234514
ROLLER CLUTCH:T24

91.B2234502
GUIDE PLATE:LEFT LOWER

106.B2234539
SHEET:COVER:DUPLEX

104.B2234536
TIMING BELT:30S2M234

99.B2234527
PULLEY:T26/T24

92.B2234511
TIMING BELT:30S2M312

108.B2234542
TORSION SPRING:FRONT

103.B2234535
ROLLER CLUTCH:T26

96.B2234524
WIRE:STOPPER:DIA1.5

95.B2234522
SPACER:WIRE:STOPPER

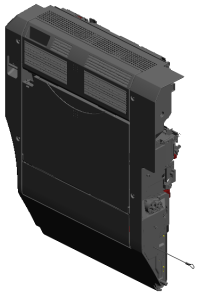
107.B2234541
TORSION SPRING:REAR

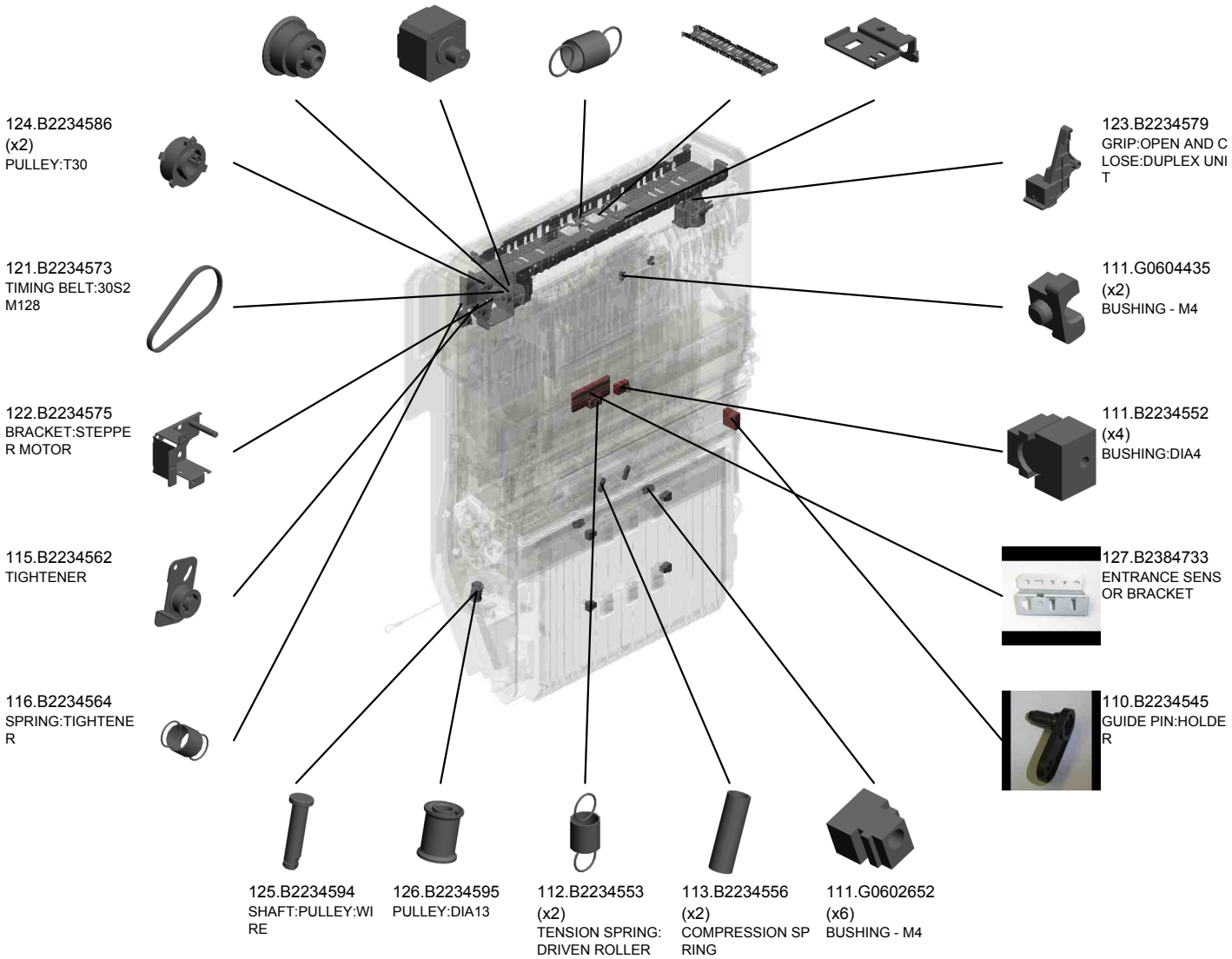
90.B2234501
GUIDE PLATE:RIGHT

97.B2234525
TENSION SPRING:WIRE:180N

http://www.manuals4you.com

U012
Duplex





119.B2234571
GEAR:PULLEY:Z24 /T40

120.B2234572
STEPPER MOTOR: DC4.29V 1.7W

114.B2234560
(x2)
TENSION SPRING: DRIVEN ROLLER

118.B2234567
STAY:TRANSPORT :UPPER:PEEN

117.B2234566
BRACKET:SENSOR:ENTRANCE

124.B2234586
(x2)
PULLEY:T30

121.B2234573
TIMING BELT:30S2 M128

122.B2234575
BRACKET:STEPPER MOTOR

115.B2234562
TIGHTENER

116.B2234564
SPRING:TIGHTENER

123.B2234579
GRIP:OPEN AND CLOSE:DUPLEX UNIT

111.G0604435
(x2)
BUSHING - M4

111.B2234552
(x4)
BUSHING:DIA4

127.B2384733
ENTRANCE SENSOR BRACKET

110.B2234545
GUIDE PIN:HOLDER

125.B2234594
SHAFT:PULLEY:WIRE

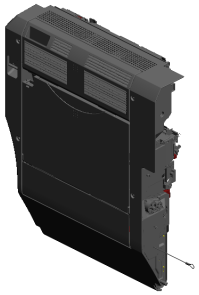
126.B2234595
PULLEY:DIA13

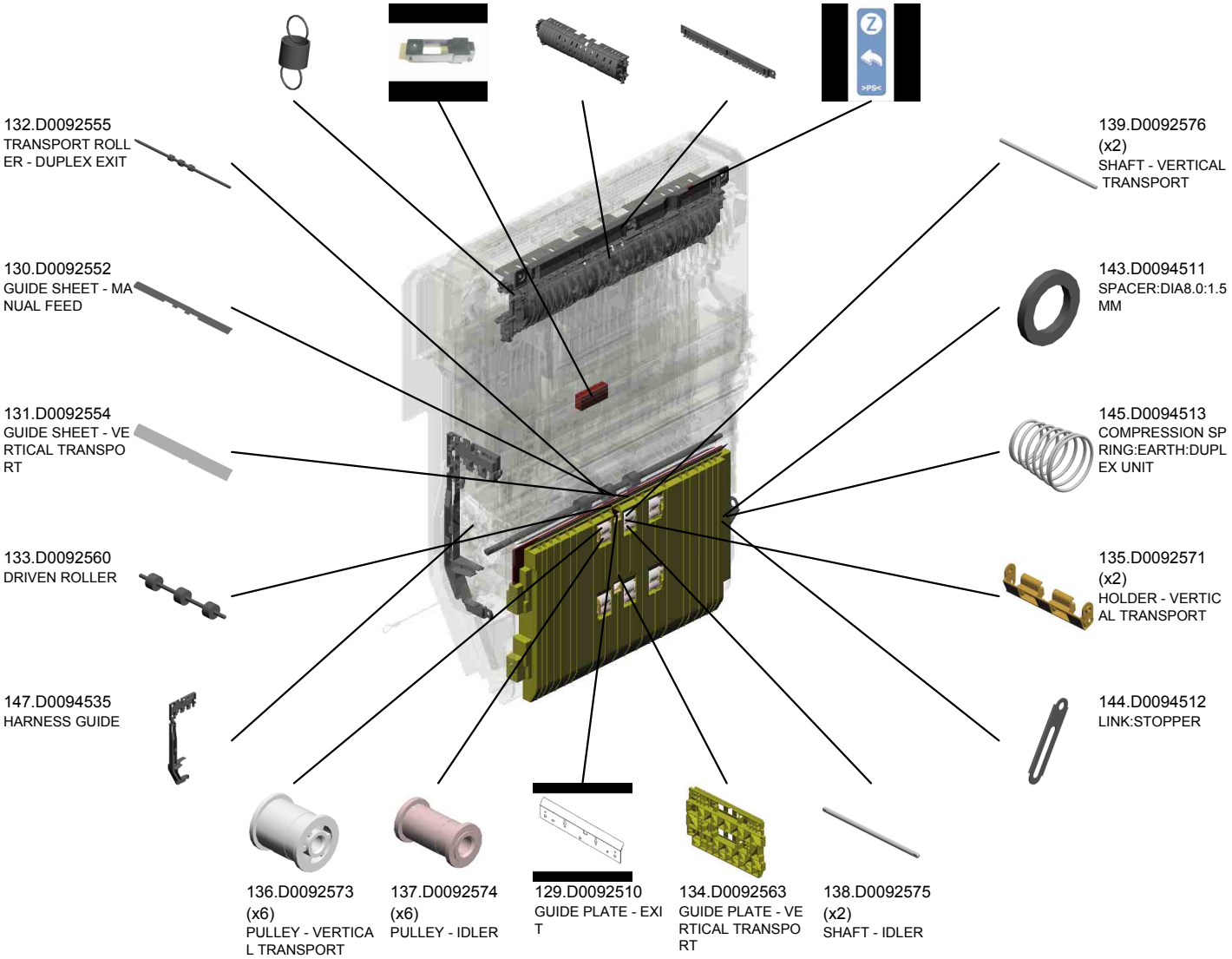
112.B2234553
(x2)
TENSION SPRING: DRIVEN ROLLER

113.B2234556
(x2)
COMPRESSION SPRING

111.G0602652
(x6)
BUSHING - M4

U012
Duplex





146.D0094522
TENSION SPRING: GATE PAWL:DUPLEX:0.08N

128.B2384739
COVER - ENTRANCE SENSOR

141.D0094503
GUIDE PLATE - LEFT UPPER

142.D0094504
UPPER GUIDE PLATE - GATE

140.D0094497
DECAL - RIGHT GUIDE

132.D0092555
TRANSPORT ROLLER - DUPLEX EXIT

130.D0092552
GUIDE SHEET - MANUAL FEED

131.D0092554
GUIDE SHEET - VERTICAL TRANSPORT

133.D0092560
DRIVEN ROLLER

147.D0094535
HARNESS GUIDE

139.D0092576
(x2)
SHAFT - VERTICAL TRANSPORT

143.D0094511
SPACER:DIA8.0:1.5MM

145.D0094513
COMPRESSION SPRING:EARTH:DUPLEX UNIT

135.D0092571
(x2)
HOLDER - VERTICAL TRANSPORT

144.D0094512
LINK:STOPPER

136.D0092573
(x6)
PULLEY - VERTICAL TRANSPORT

137.D0092574
(x6)
PULLEY - IDLER

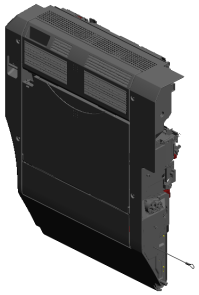
129.D0092510
GUIDE PLATE - EXIT

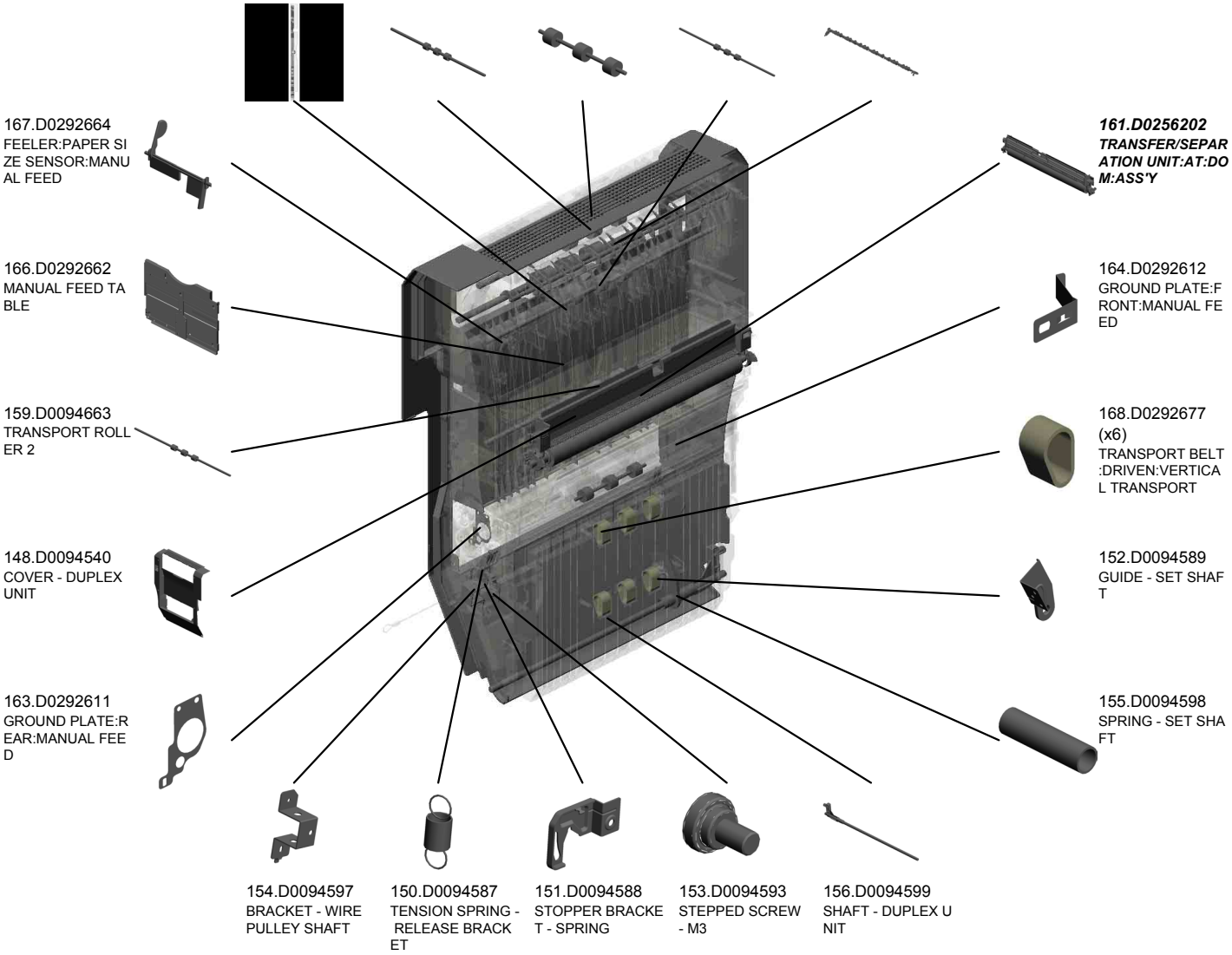
134.D0092563
GUIDE PLATE - VERTICAL TRANSPORT

138.D0092575
(x2)
SHAFT - IDLER

http://www.manuals4you.com

U012
Duplex





165.D0292644
DECAL:SCALE:MANUAL FEED

157.D0094661
(x2)
REVERSE ROLLER - FEED

160.D0094664
(x4)
DRIVEN ROLLER

158.D0094662
TRANSPORT ROLLER 1

149.D0094577
DUPLEX GATE

167.D0292664
FEELER:PAPER SIZE SENSOR:MANUAL FEED

166.D0292662
MANUAL FEED TABLE

159.D0094663
TRANSPORT ROLLER 2

148.D0094540
COVER - DUPLEX UNIT

163.D0292611
GROUND PLATE:REAR:MANUAL FEED

161.D0256202
TRANSFER/SEPARATION UNIT:AT:DOM:ASS'Y

164.D0292612
GROUND PLATE:FRONT:MANUAL FEED

168.D0292677
(x6)
TRANSPORT BELT:DRIVEN:VERTICAL TRANSPORT

152.D0094589
GUIDE - SET SHAFT

155.D0094598
SPRING - SET SHAFT

154.D0094597
BRACKET - WIRE PULLEY SHAFT

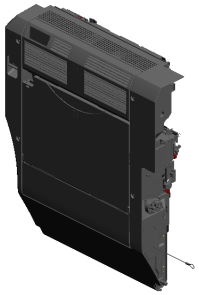
150.D0094587
TENSION SPRING - RELEASE BRACKET

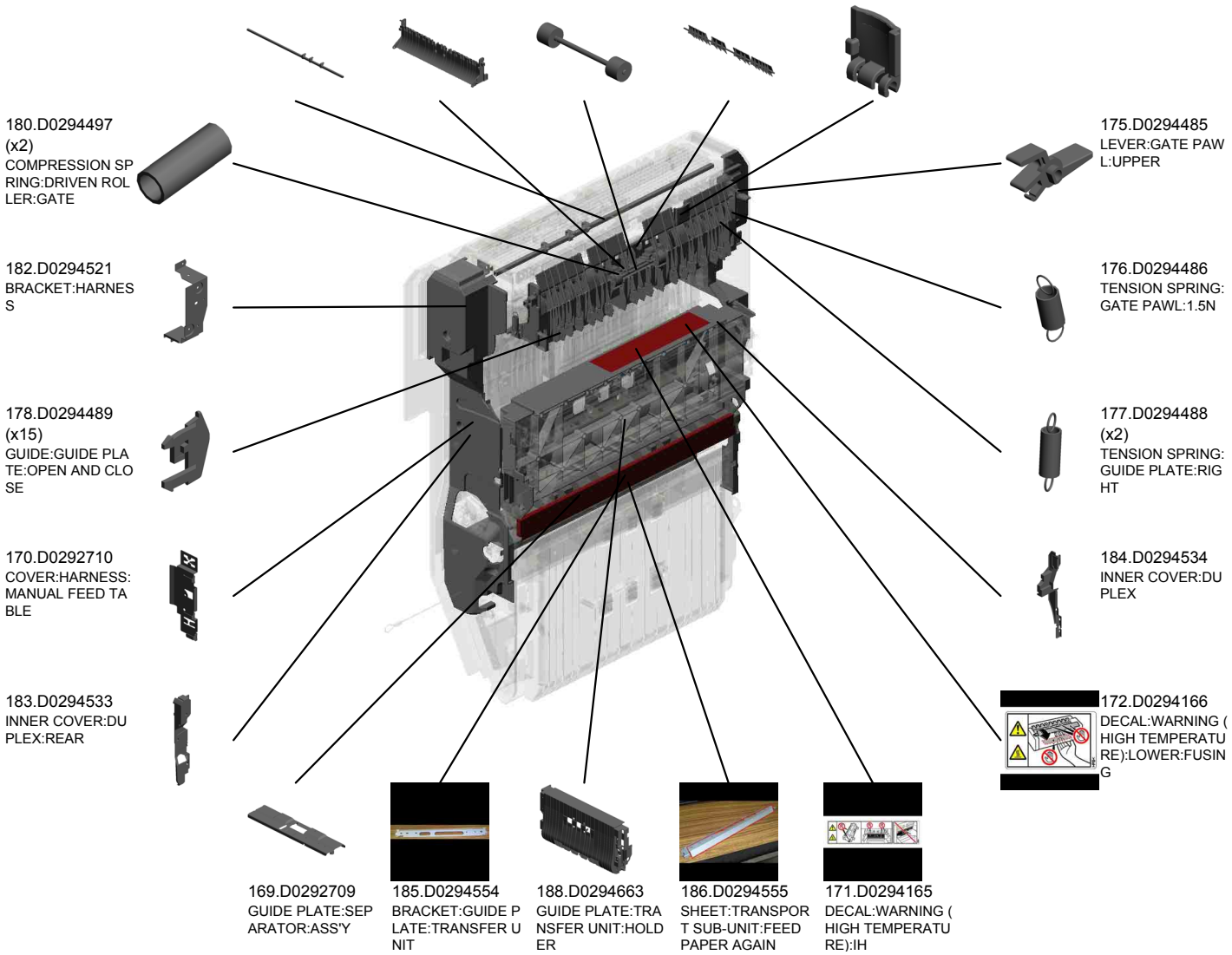
151.D0094588
STOPPER BRACKET - SPRING

153.D0094593
STEPPED SCREW - M3

156.D0094599
SHAFT - DUPLEX UNIT

U012
Duplex





187.D0294590
HOOK:STOPPER:DUPLEX UNIT:ASS'Y

179.D0294491
GUIDE PLATE:OPEN AND CLOSE

181.D0294499
DRIVEN ROLLER:DIA18:PAPER EXIT UNIT:VERTICAL TRANSPORT

173.D0294482
GATE PAWL:UPPER:ASS'Y

174.D0294484
GRIP:GATE PAWL:UPPER

180.D0294497
(x2)
COMPRESSION SPRING:DRIVEN ROLLER:GATE

182.D0294521
BRACKET:HARNESS

178.D0294489
(x15)
GUIDE:GUIDE PLATE:OPEN AND CLOSE

170.D0292710
COVER:HARNESS:MANUAL FEED TABLE

183.D0294533
INNER COVER:DUPLEX:REAR

175.D0294485
LEVER:GATE PAWL:UPPER

176.D0294486
TENSION SPRING:GATE PAWL:1.5N

177.D0294488
(x2)
TENSION SPRING:GUIDE PLATE:RIGHT

184.D0294534
INNER COVER:DUPLEX

172.D0294166
DECAL:WARNING (HIGH TEMPERATURE):LOWER:FUSING

169.D0292709
GUIDE PLATE:SEPARATOR:ASS'Y

185.D0294554
BRACKET:GUIDE PLATE:TRANSFER UNIT

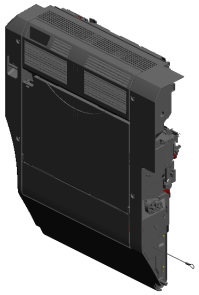
188.D0294663
GUIDE PLATE:TRANSFER UNIT:HOLDER

186.D0294555
SHEET:TRANSPORT SUB-UNIT:FEED PAPER AGAIN

171.D0294165
DECAL:WARNING (HIGH TEMPERATURE):IH

http://www.manuals4you.com

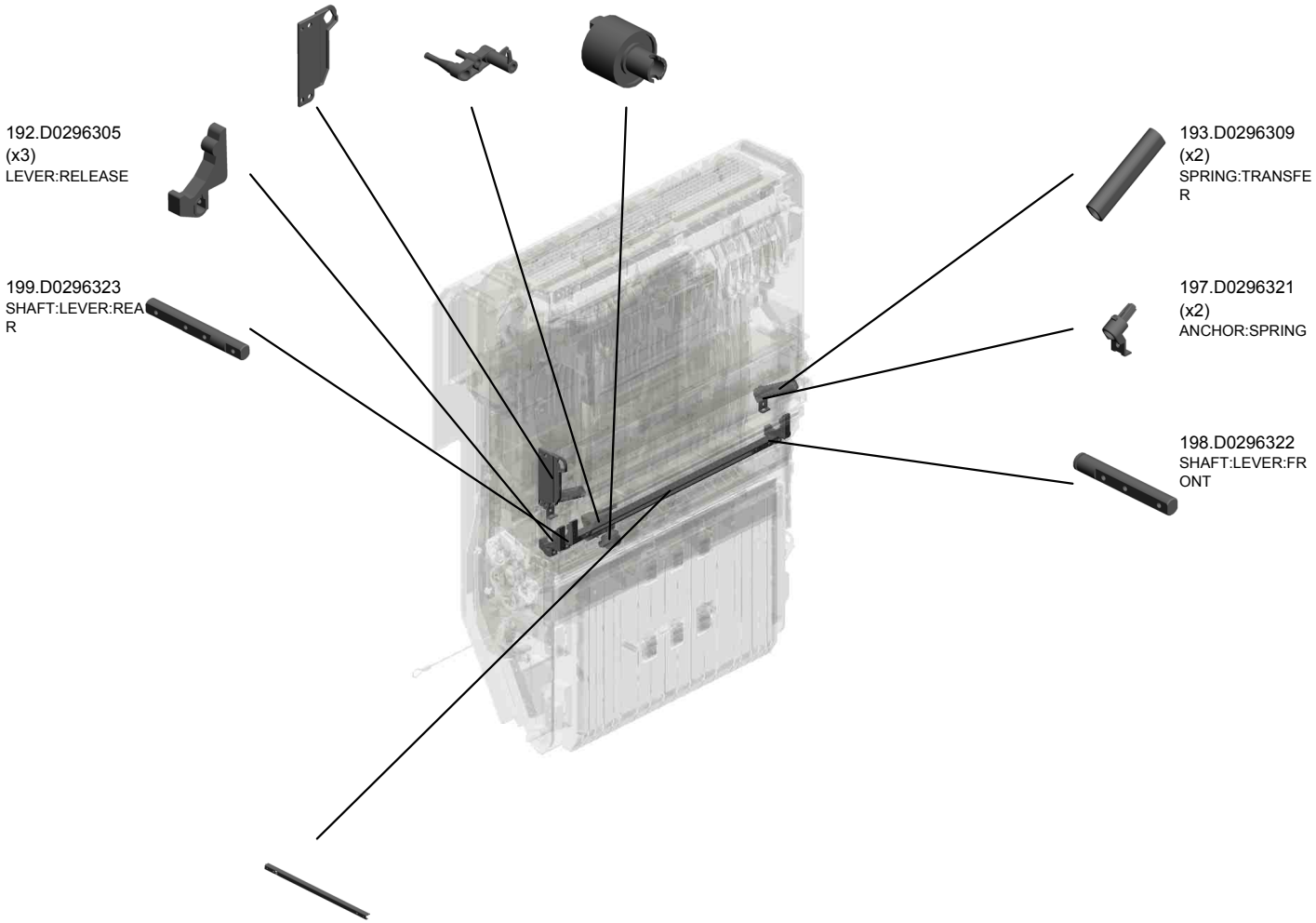
U012
Duplex



191.D0296293
DRUM STAY:REAR

202.G0602932
PICK-UP ARM - MANUAL FEED

203.G0802900
TORQUE LIMITER



192.D0296305
(x3)
LEVER:RELEASE

193.D0296309
(x2)
SPRING:TRANSFER

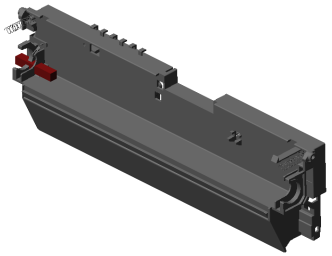
199.D0296323
SHAFT:LEVER:REAR

197.D0296321
(x2)
ANCHOR:SPRING

198.D0296322
SHAFT:LEVER:FRONT

196.D0296320
BRACKET:LEVER:MIDDLE

U012_S001
CASE:AT:ASS'Y

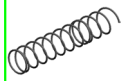


162.D0256280
CASE:AT:ASS'Y

189.D0296285
TERMINAL:TRANS
FER ROLLER

204.D0296307
(x2)
[A]
COMPRESSION SP
RING:GUIDE PLAT
E:EXIT:3.5N
200906 X/O



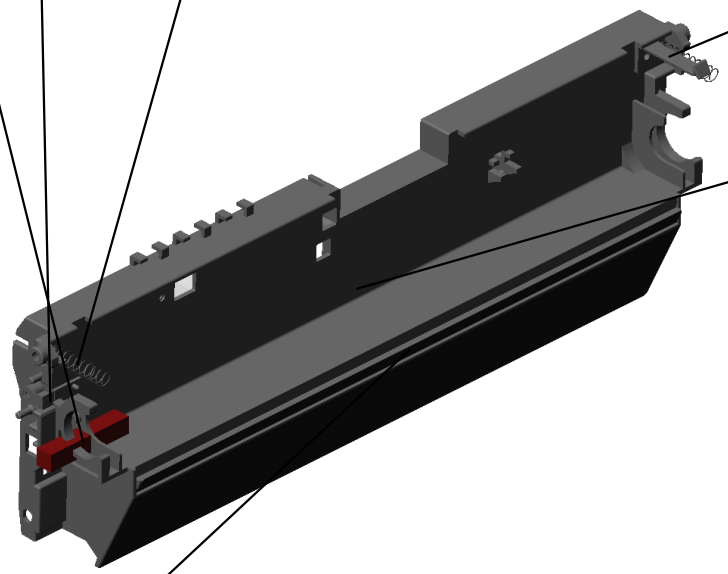


195.D0296317
GROUND WIRE:PO
WER PACK



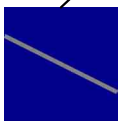
194.D0296316
STOPPER:HOLDE
R:SEPARATION:UP
PER





190.D0296286
CASE:TRANSFER
ROLLER

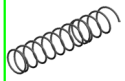




201.D0296335
SHEET:CASE:LOW
ER
081128 X/O



AZ300060
POWER PACK:D:A
T/AP-C2
081121

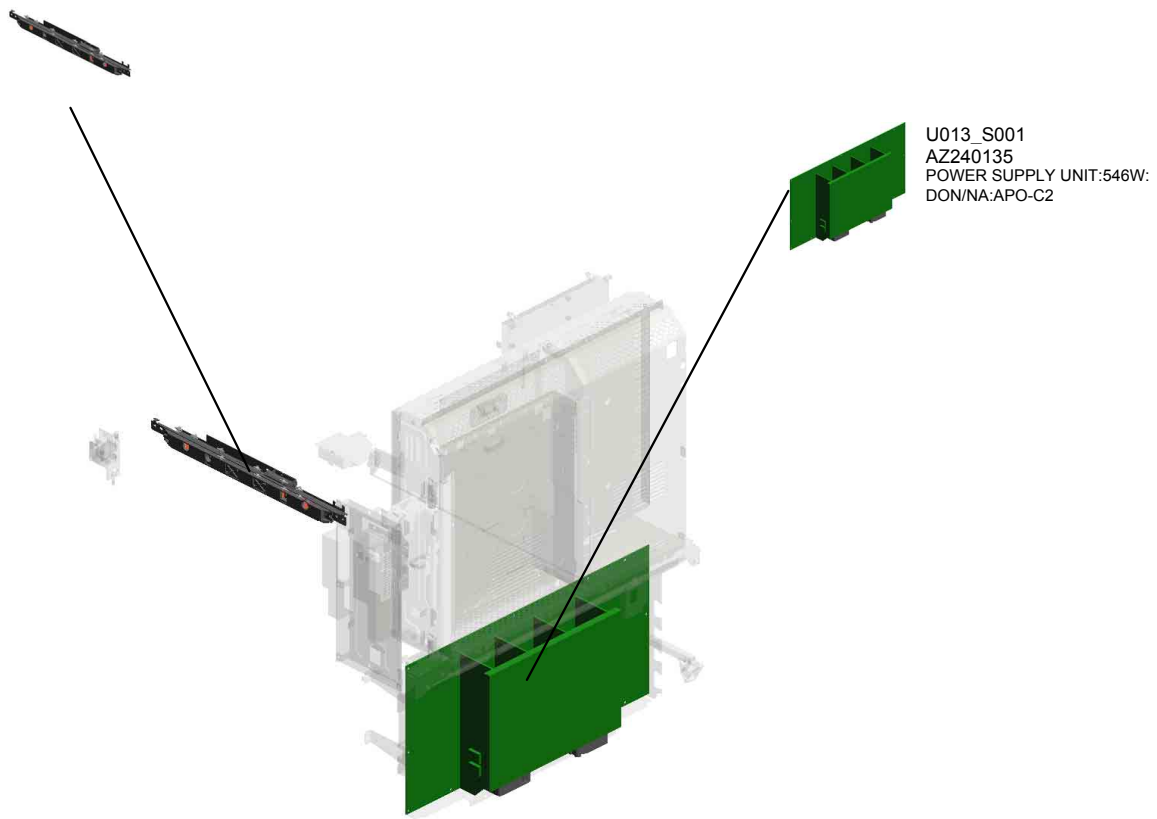


D0296325
[A]
COMPRESSION SP
RING:GUIDE PLAT
E:EXIT:3.5N
200906 X/O

http://www.manuals4you.com

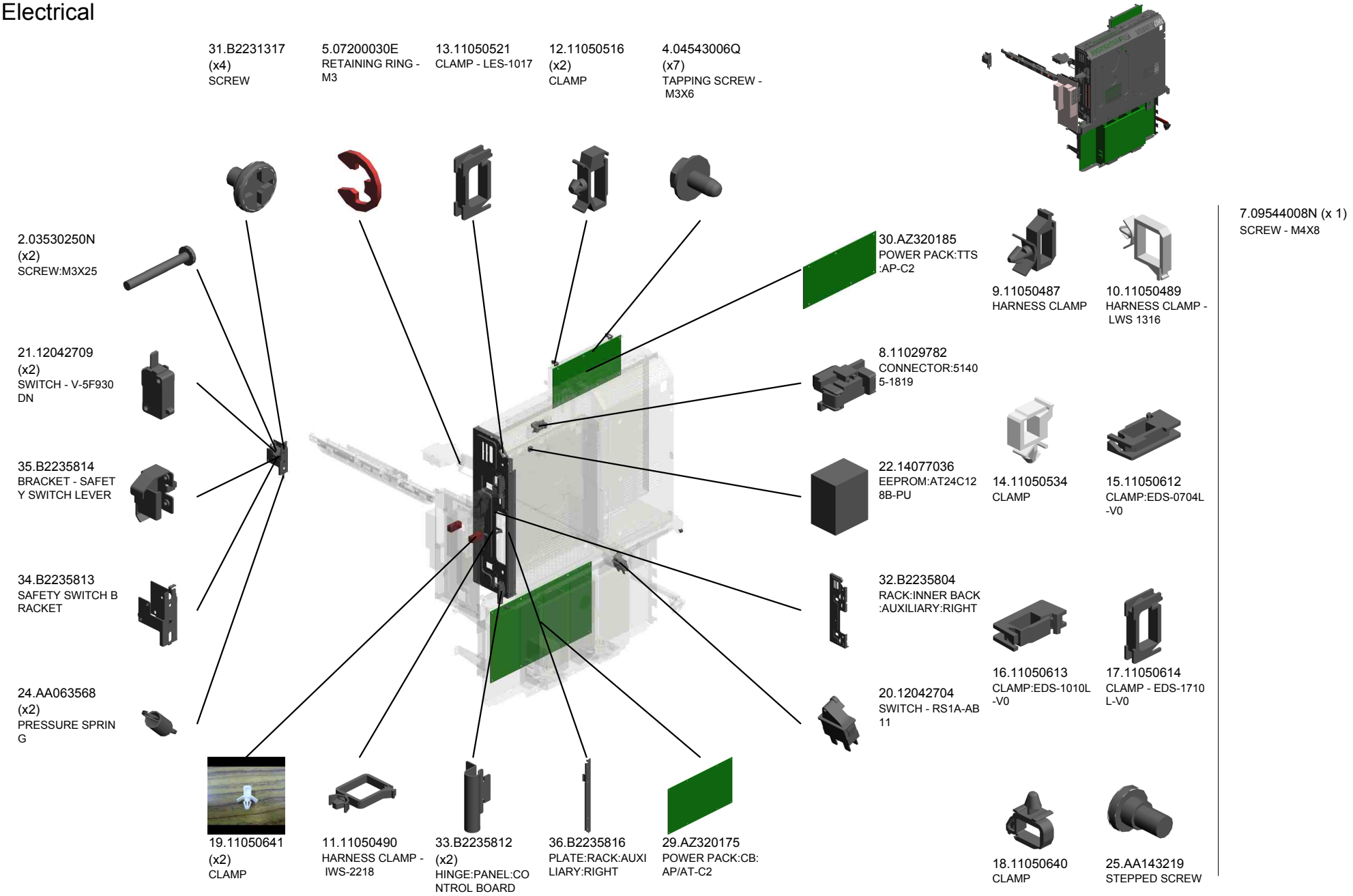
U013.Electrical

U013 S002
D0295876
DENSITY SENSOR:ASS'Y



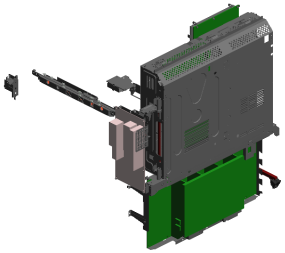
U013_S001
AZ240135
POWER SUPPLY UNIT:546W:
DON/NA:APO-C2

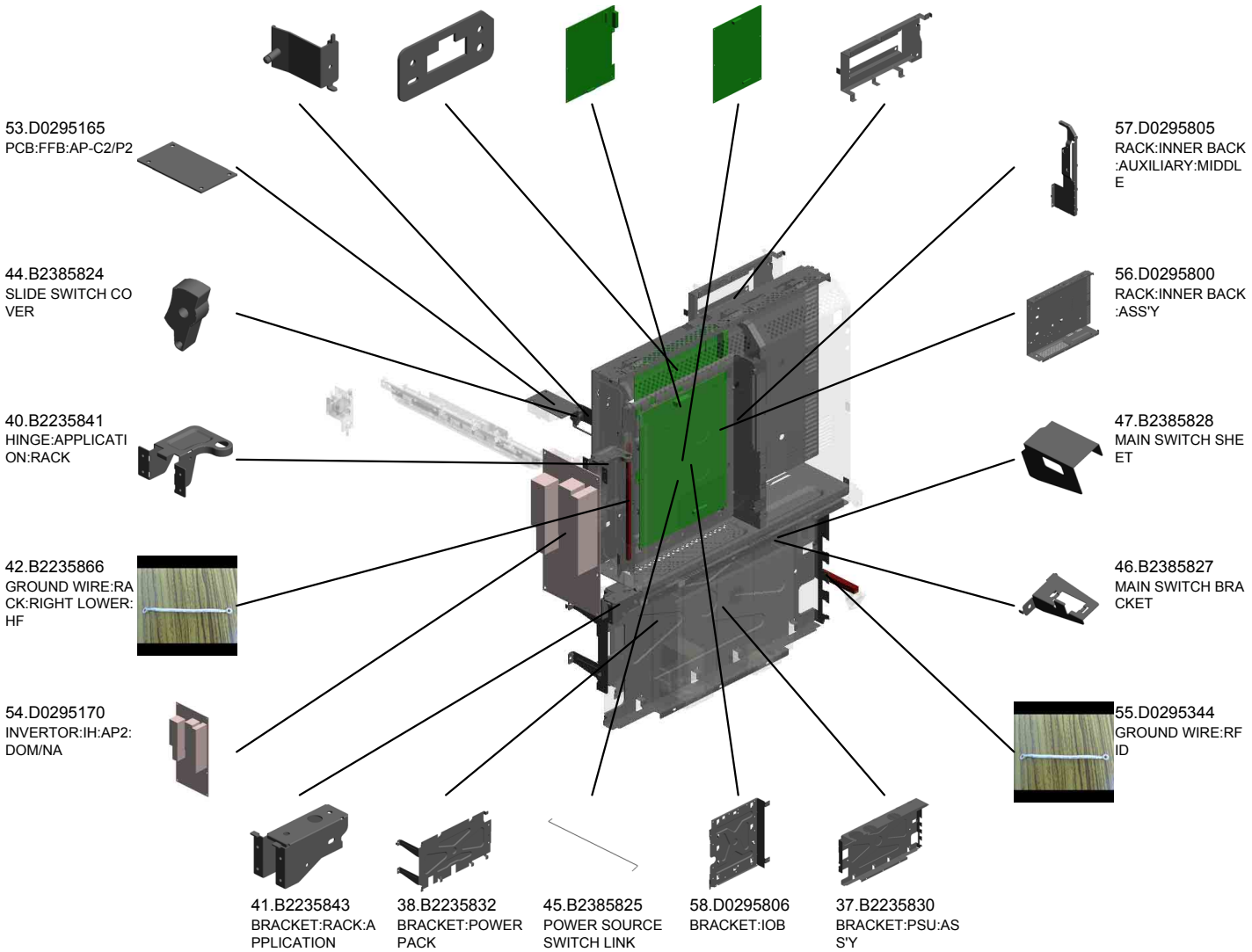
U013
Electrical



http://www.manuals4you.com

U013
Electrical





43.B2385821
BRACKET - MAIN SWITCH HANDLE

50.B2385891
DRAWER BRACKET

51.D0295113
PCB:BICU:AP-C2:GW:ASS'Y

52.D0295120
PCB:IOB:AP-C2/P2

39.B2235834
BRACKET:POWER PACK:TRANSFER

53.D0295165
PCB:FFB:AP-C2/P2

44.B2385824
SLIDE SWITCH COVER

40.B2235841
HINGE:APPLICATION:RACK

42.B2235866
GROUND WIRE:RACK:RIGHT LOWER:HF

54.D0295170
INVERTOR:IH:AP2:DOM/NA

57.D0295805
RACK:INNER BACK:AUXILIARY:MIDDLE

56.D0295800
RACK:INNER BACK:ASS'Y

47.B2385828
MAIN SWITCH SHEET

46.B2385827
MAIN SWITCH BRACKET

55.D0295344
GROUND WIRE:RFID

41.B2235843
BRACKET:RACK:APPLICATION

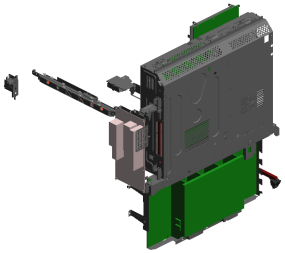
38.B2235832
BRACKET:POWER PACK

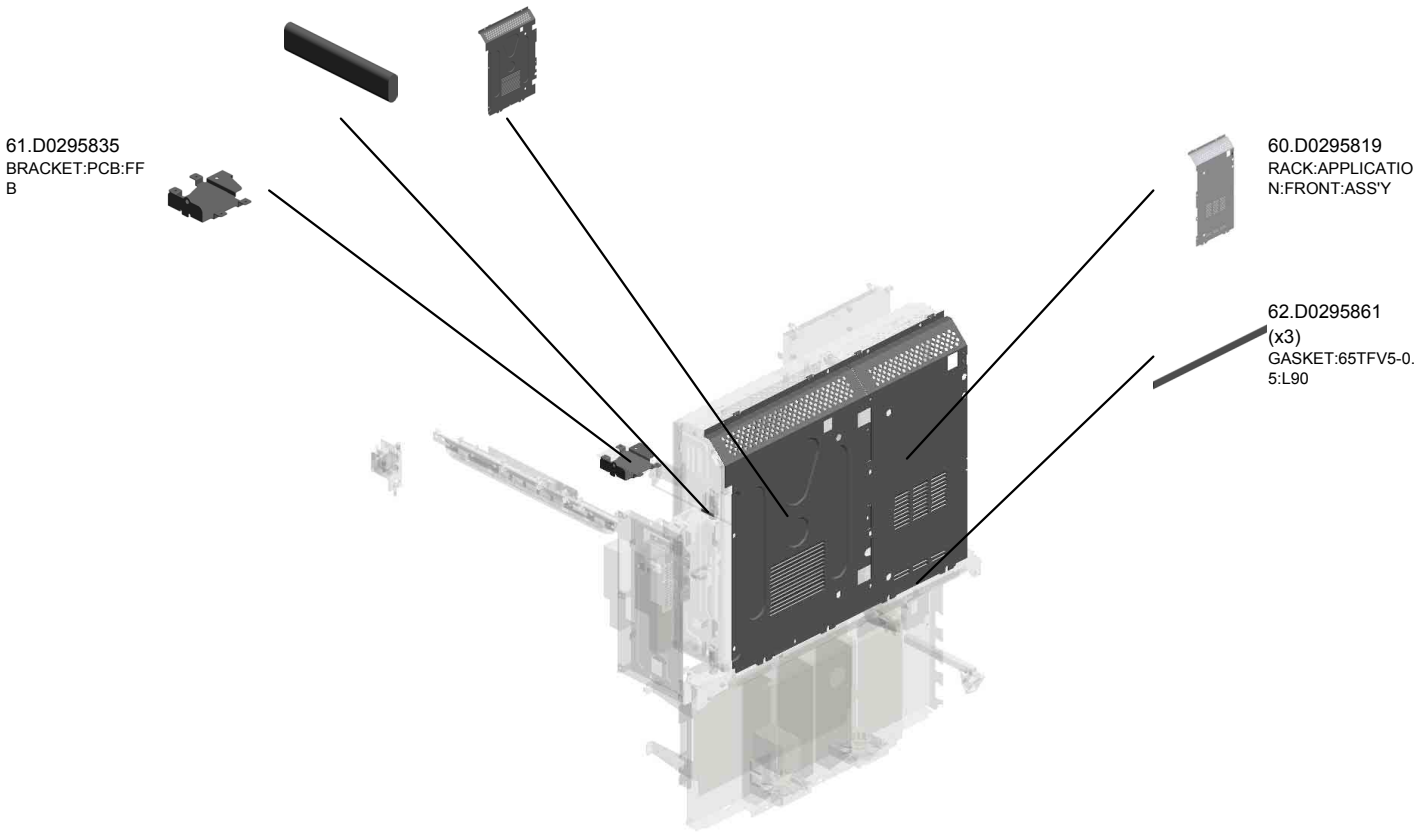
45.B2385825
POWER SOURCE SWITCH LINK

58.D0295806
BRACKET:IOB

37.B2235830
BRACKET:PSU:ASS'Y

U013
Electrical

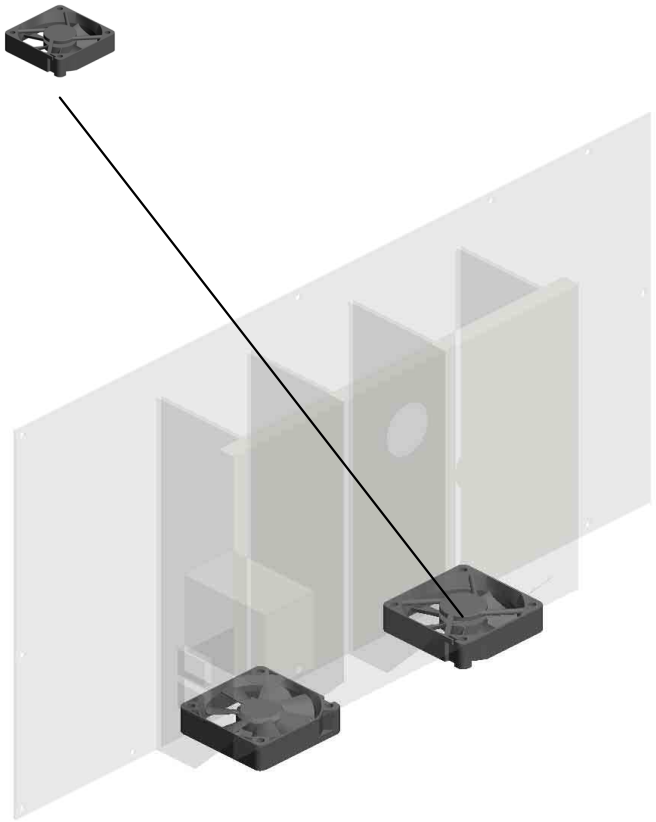


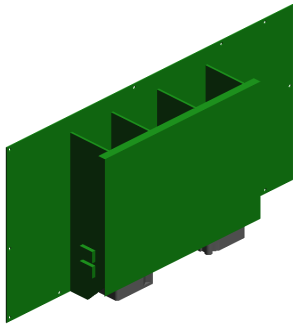


http://www.manuals4you.com

U013_S001
POWER SUPPLY UNIT:546W:DON/NA:APO-C2

27.AX640201
(x2)
FAN:MM60



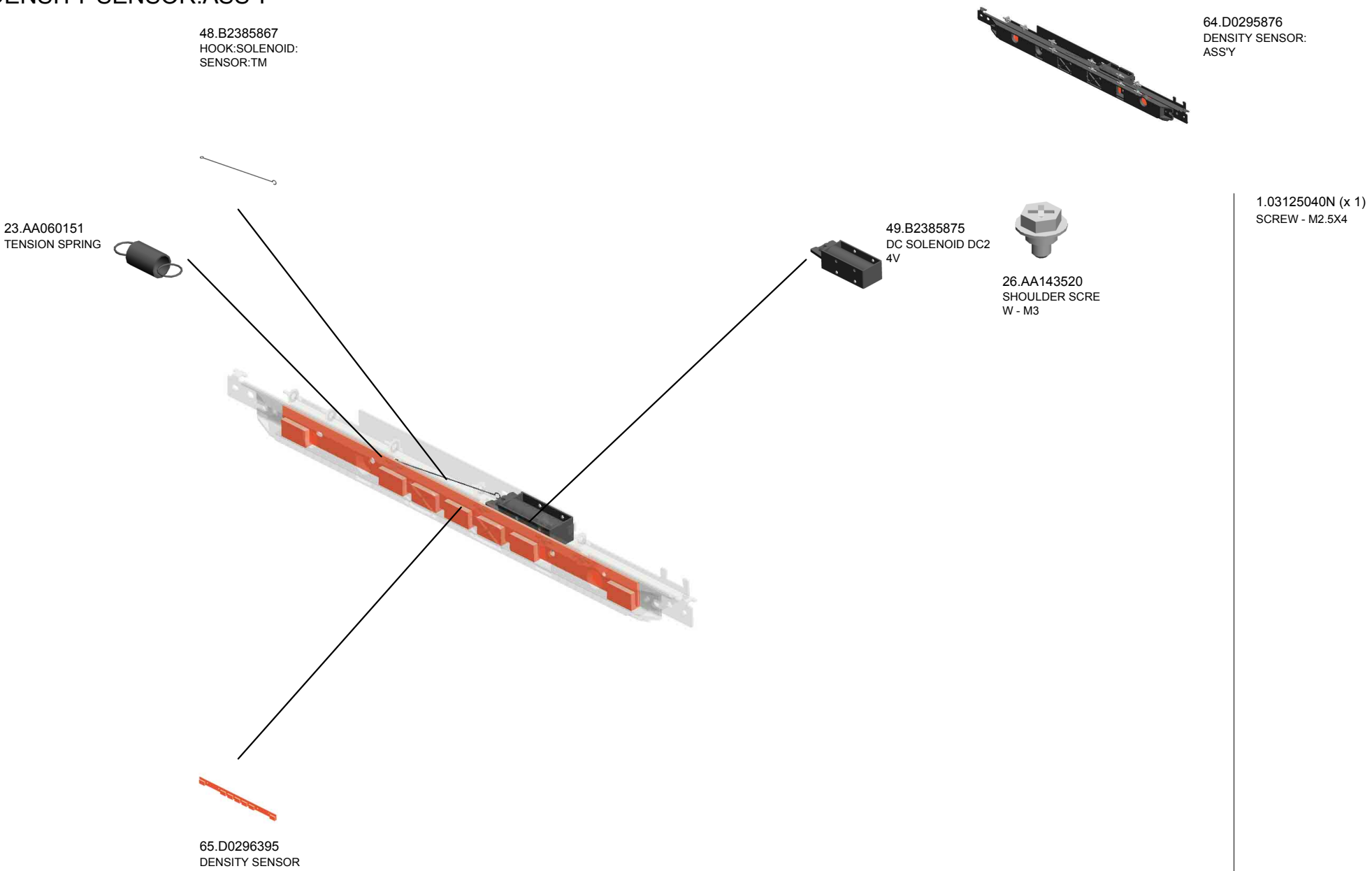


28.AZ240135
POWER SUPPLY U
NIT:546W:DON/NA:
APO-C2

3.04523006N (x 1)
BINDING SELF-TAPPING SCREW:3X6

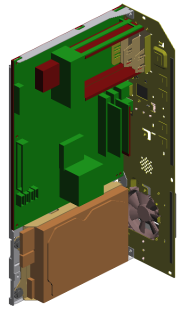
6.09543018N (x 1)
SCREW:POLIHED ROUND/SPRING:M3
X18

U013_S002
DENSITY SENSOR:ASS'Y



http://www.manuals4you.com

U014
Controller



1.04513020N (x 1)
TAPPING SCREW:3X20

9.D0239590
NV-RAM



20.G1335795
RAIL:RIGHT



21.G1335796
RAIL:LEFT



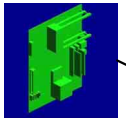
7.B2385887
(x2)
INTERFACE PANEL



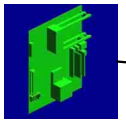
12.D0295824
COVER:SD-CARD



19.D4435722
PCB for D029
081128 X/O



18.D4425722
PCB for D027
081128 X/O

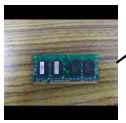


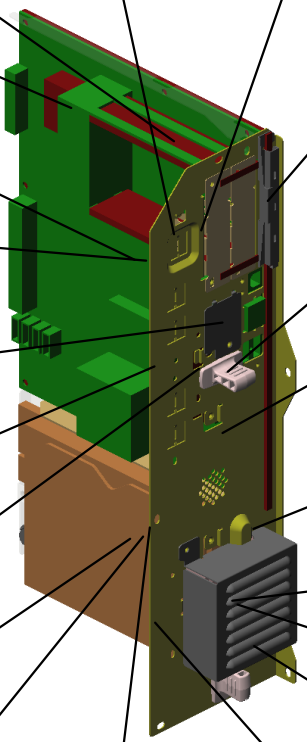
8.D0145974
COVER:CONNECTOR:EFI



14.D0295887
GASKET:65TSV5-1:L150

22.G1786072
PCB:PC4200:RAW CARD-A:1GB





6.B2385885
(x2)
CONTROL BOARD PANEL GRIP



3.AA143551
HEXAGONAL HEAD BOLT:#6-32UNC X4



11.D0295820
RACK:INNER BACK :AUXILIARY:LEFT:ASS'Y



2.AA143548
(x4)
SCREW:M3X4.2



5.AX640197
FAN:MM60



17.D0295898
COVER:FAN:MM60:CONTROL BOARD



10.D0295790
HDD:WD:160G



13.D0295882
BRACKET:HDD



16.D0295889
GASKET:65TSV10-5:L65



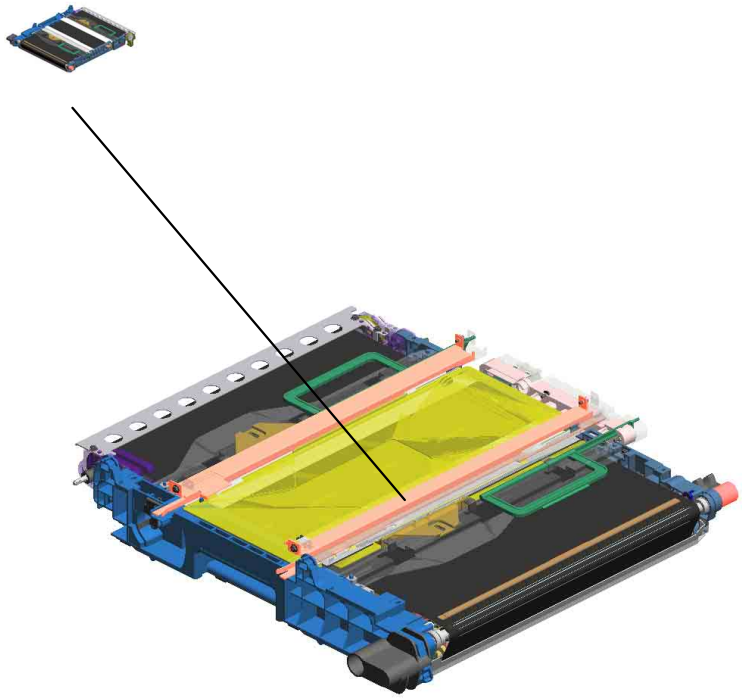
15.D0295888
GASKET:65TSV5-1:L100

4.AA161167
(x4)
BUSHING:HDD



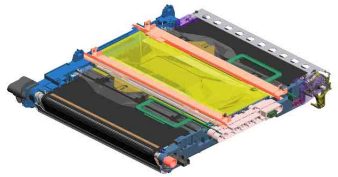
U015.Image Transfer

U015 S001
D0296010
TRANSFER UNIT:INTERMEDI
ATE TRANSFER:C2:DOM:AS
S'Y



http://www.manuals4you.com

U015
Image Transfer



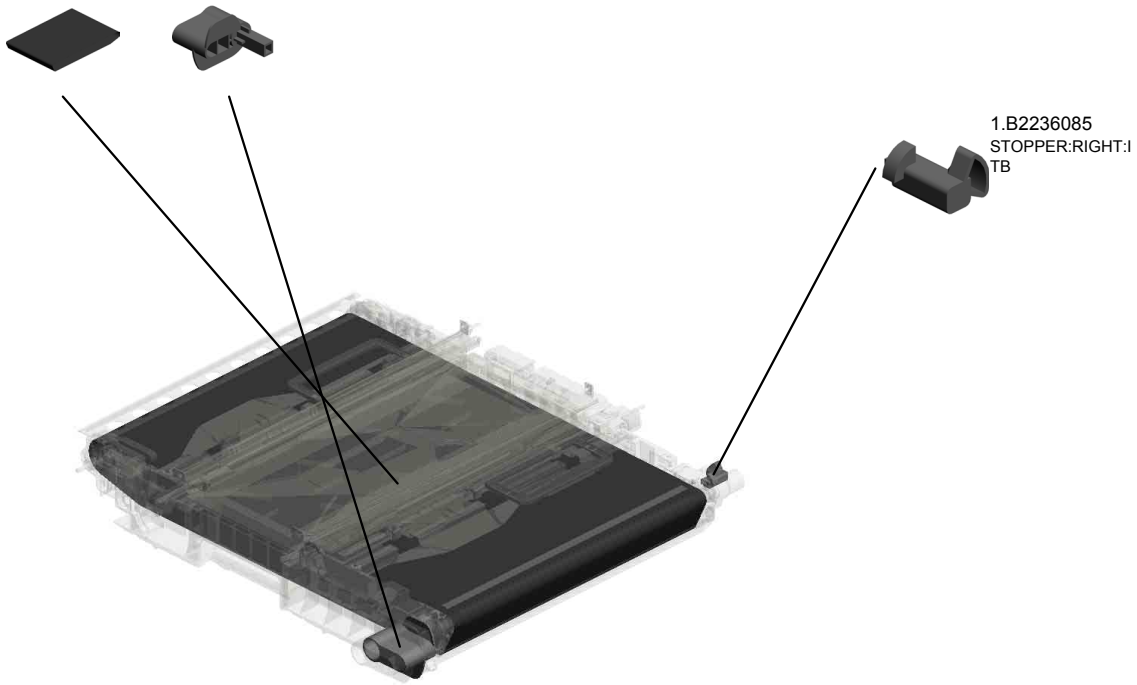
U015_S001
TRANSFER UNIT:INTERMEDIATE TRANSFER:C2:DOM:ASS'Y



3.D0296010
TRANSFER UNIT:INTERMEDIATE TRANSFER:C2:DOM:ASS'Y

4.D0296090
TRANSFER BELT:N:ASS'Y

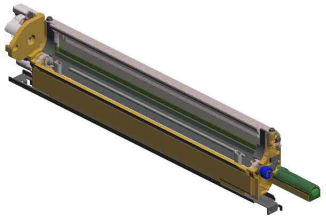
2.B2236109
LEVER:RIGHT:ITB



1.B2236085
STOPPER:RIGHT:ITB

http://www.manuals4you.com

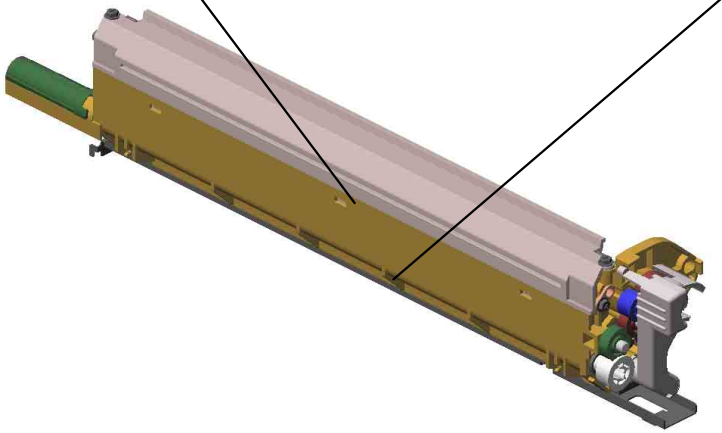
U016
ITB Cleaning



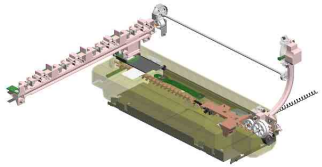
2.D0296027
CLEANING UNIT:IN
TERMEDIATE TRA
NSFER:ASS'Y

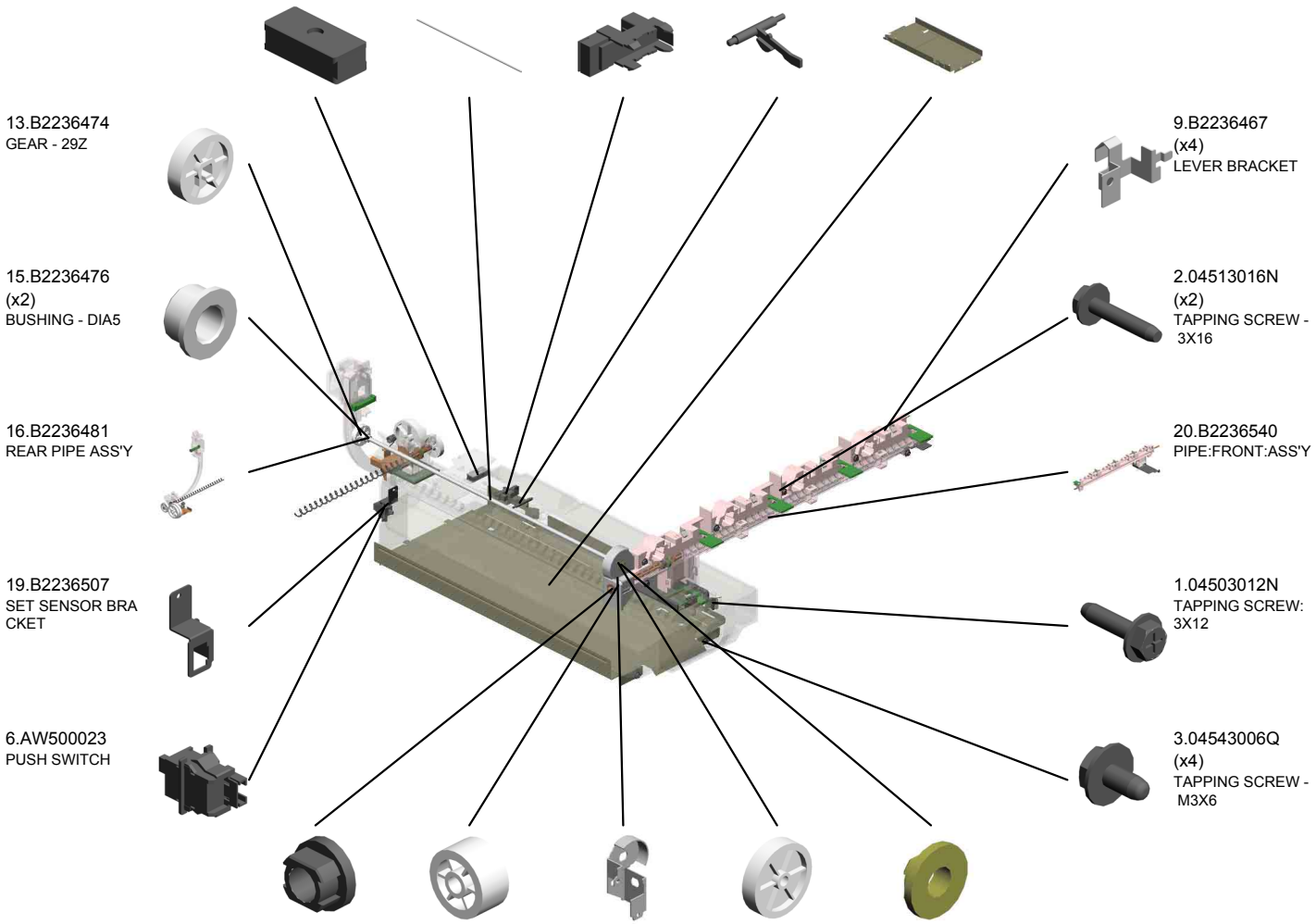


1.B2236198
CLEANING UNIT R
AIL



U017
Toner Collection





4.AG070514
MAGNET CATCH

12.B2236473
TRANSPORT SCR EW SHAFT

5.AW020160
PAPER FEED SEN SOR

18.B2236503
USED TONER SEN SOR FEELER

17.B2236496
COLLECTION BOT TLE RAIL

13.B2236474
GEAR - 29Z

15.B2236476
(x2)
BUSHING - DIA5

16.B2236481
REAR PIPE ASS'Y

19.B2236507
SET SENSOR BRA CKET

6.AW500023
PUSH SWITCH

9.B2236467
(x4)
LEVER BRACKET

2.04513016N
(x2)
TAPPING SCREW - 3X16

20.B2236540
PIPE:FRONT:ASS'Y

1.04503012N
TAPPING SCREW: 3X12

3.04543006Q
(x4)
TAPPING SCREW - M3X6

8.B2236464
BUSHING - 6X10X6

7.B2236463
GEAR - 20Z

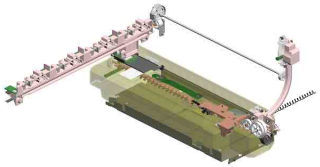
10.B2236471
TRANSPORT SCR EW BRACKET

11.B2236472
GEAR - 21Z

14.B2236475
BUSHING - 5X 10X 2.5

http://www.manuals4you.com

U017
Toner Collection

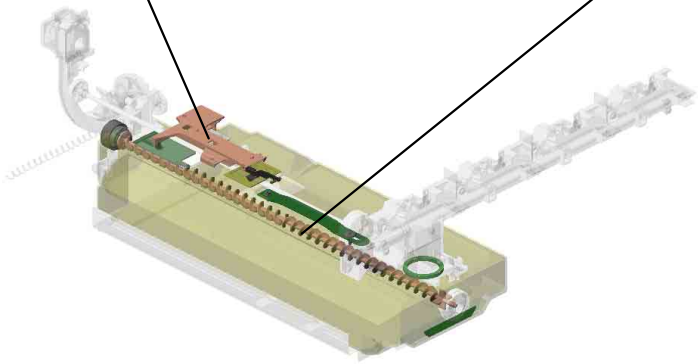


21.D0296502
BRACKET:USED T
ONER SENSOR:C2



22.D0296509
COLLECTION BOT
TLE:EXP:ASS'Y





Accessories



1.11500373
POWER SUPPLY CODE:125V 15A NA



2.11500415
POWER SUPPLY CODE:125V 15A NA



3.16071859
FERRITE CORE:E04SR241336A



4.AA000239
DECAL:COLOR:MFP



5.AA001477
DECAL:ENERGY-STAR



6.B0651371
CLOTH HOLDER



7.B0651374
CLOTH - DF EXPOSURE GLASS



8.B1321573
DECAL - POWER SOURCE:OFF



9.B1986407
DECAL:VERMONT:2



10.B2227707
MANUAL:TROUBLESHOOTING:NA



11.B2227737
MANUAL:ABOUTTHISMACHINE:NA



12.B2227907
MANUAL:SECURITY:NA



13.B2371595
DECAL - CAUTION ORIGINAL



14.B2382524
DECAL - PAPER SIZE



15.B6522379
DECAL:CAUTION:ORIGINAL:5-LANG



16.G0381299
RIVET - 5

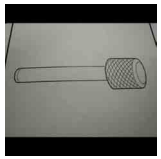


17.GA003167
DECAL:CAUTION:INKJET:NA

Special Tools



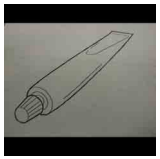
1.52039502
Silicon Grease G-501



2.A0069104
Scanner Positioning Pin (4pcs/set)



3.A0929503
C4 Color Test Chart (3 pcs/set)



4.A2579300
Grease - Barrierta S552R



5.AB033000
JOINT:DEVELOPMENT



6.B1329700
Lubricant Powder



7.B6455010
SD Card

http://www.manuals4you.com

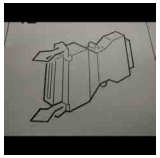
Special Tools



8.B6456705
PCMCIA Card Adapter



9.B6456820
USB Reader/Writer



10.B6795100
Plug - IEEE1284 Type C



11.C4019503
20X Magnification Scope



12.D0239640
COLOR DEVELOPER K



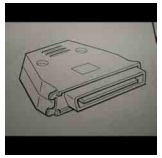
13.D0239660
COLOR DEVELOPER C



14.D0239670
COLOR DEVELOPER M



15.D0239680
COLOR DEVELOPER Y



16.G0219350
Loopback Connector - Parallel



17.VSSM9000
Digital Multimeter-FLUKE189/FVF

Exclusive Parts

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
52039502	Silicon Grease G-501		
52062684	SHOULDER SCREW - M3	U011	7
52062686	SNAP RING	U008_S001	14
		U008_S002	14
54421924	EXPOSURE GLASS CUSHION	U005	17
54472681	SNAP RING	U002	18
		U012	17
7423808	BALL BEARING - 8X16X5	U010_S001	11
8010231	HEXAGONAL HEAD BOLT W/WASHER:M3X6	U002	19
		U012	18
8025305	TAPPING SCREW - M3X6	U001	20
8025309	BINDING SELF-TAPPING SCREW:3X10	U006_S001	1
8025310	BINDING SELF-TAPPING SCREW:3X8	U006_S001	2
8046123	HEXAGONAL BOLT:W/WASHER:M3X8	U010	12
		U010_S001	12
8050088	RETAINING RING - M6	U002_S001	20
		U005	18
		U008	15
		U012	19
8050092	RETAINING RING - 3M	U011	8
		U012	20
A0069104	Scanner Positioning Pin (4pcs/set)		
A0929503	C4 Color Test Chart (3 pcs/set)		
A1001714	REFLECTOR	U005_S002	19
A1931766	WIRE CLAMP	U005	20
A1931767	1ST MIRROR HOLDER	U005_S002	21
A1931769	CLAMP - REAR WIRE	U005	22
A1931793	SCANNER HOME SENSOR STOPPER	U005	23
A1931816	1ST SLIDE RAIL	U005	24
A2322987	ROLLER - PAPER TRAY	U008_S003	16
		U008_S004	16
A2324666	CUSHION - STEPPER MOTOR	U002	21
		U005_S001	25
A2501752	EXPOSURE GLASS	U005	26
A2501791	2ND SCANNER SHOE	U005_S003	27

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
A2579300	Grease - Barrierta S552R		
A2596754	BUSHING - 6 6MM	U012	21
A2672857	SPRING PLATE - SIDE FENCE	U008_S003_S002	17
		U008_S004_S002	17
A2672859	SIDE FENCE STOPPER	U008_S003_S002	18
		U008_S004_S002	18
A2672860	REAR LEVER STOPPER	U008_S003_S002	19
		U008_S004_S002	19
AA000239	DECAL:COLOR:MFP		
AA001477	DECAL:ENERGY-STAR		
AA043336	TIMING BELT:40S3M267	U002	22
AA043583	TIMING BELT - S2M460	U002	23
AA043585	TIMING BELT:40S3M162	U002	24
AA043601	TIMING BELT - B40S2M118	U002	25
AA060151	TENSION SPRING	U013_S002	23
AA060691	TENSION SPRING	U008_S001	20
		U008_S002	20
AA060693	TENSION SPRING	U008_S001	21
		U008_S002	21
AA060722	TENSION SPRING	U002	26
AA060872	SPRING	U012	22
AA060979	TENSION SPRING:TENSION:14720MN	U005	28
AA060980	TENSION SPRING:TENSION:11300MN	U005	29
AA061003	TENSION SPRING:SIDE FENCE:REAR	U008_S003	22
		U008_S004	22
AA061014	TENSION SPRING:GRIP	U008_S003	23
		U008_S004	23
AA062259	SPRING - RELEASE	U008_S001	24
		U008_S002	24
AA063438	COMPRESSION SPRING	U010	13
AA063499	PRESSURE SPRING	U012	23
AA063568	PRESSURE SPRING	U012	24
		U013	24
AA066385	SPRING:STRIPPER PLATE:FRONT	U010_S001	14
AA066386	SPRING:STRIPPER PLATE:REAR	U010_S001	15
AA080254	BUSHING - M4	U012	25

http://www.manuals4you.com

Exclusive Parts

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
AA080346	BUSHING:FLANGE TYPE:DIA6	U002	27
AA082101	BUSHING - 6X10X6	U002_S001	28
		U008	25
		U008_S001	25
		U008_S002	25
		U009_S005	10
		U012	26
AA082102	BUSHING - 6X10X6	U011	9
		U012	27
AA082104	BUSHING - 8X12X7	U012	28
AA082143	BUSHING - 6X10X6	U008_S001	26
		U008_S002	26
AA082144	BUSHING - 8X12X7	U005	30
AA083014	ONE-WAY CLUTCH	U012	29
AA083018	ROLLER CLUTCH - 6X14X10	U012	29
AA084000	BUSHING:DIA6	U007_S001	2
		U007_S002	2
		U007_S003	2
		U007_S004	2
AA100014	RETAINING RING C - SEPARATE	U008_S001	27
		U008_S002	27
		U012	30
AA100015	SNAP RING - M6	U002_S001	29
AA101021	RUBBER BUSHING - 6 45HS	U008	28
		U012	31
AA140777	SHAFT:FEED	U012	32
AA140778	SHAFT:SEPARATOR:DRIVE	U012	33
AA143183	STEPPED SCREW	U012	34
AA143219	STEPPED SCREW	U013	25
AA143404	STEPPED SCREW - M4	U012	35
AA143520	SHOULDER SCREW - M3	U005	31
		U013_S002	26
AA143548	SCREW:M3X4.2	U014	2
AA143551	HEXAGONAL HEAD BOLT:#6-32UNCX4	U014	3
AA143577	SCREW:TP:M4	U008	29
AA143592	SCREW- M4X6	U001	21
		U010	16

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
		U012	36
AA143807	SCREW:A	U012	37
AA143823	TAPPING SCREW	U003	4
AA143843	SCREW:DIA6	U008_S003	30
AA143867	SCREW:DIA4:M3	U010_S001	17
AA161163	CUSHION	U008	31
AA161164	CUSHION:STEPPER MOTOR	U002	21
AA161167	BUSHING:HDD	U014	4
AB010156	GEAR:SEPARATE:DRIVE	U008_S001	32
		U008_S002	32
AB010157	GEAR:SEPARATE:DRIVEN	U008_S001	33
		U008_S002	33
AB011218	GEAR - ROLLER CLUTCH	U008_S001	34
		U008_S002	34
AB011223	IDLER GEAR - 25Z	U012	38
AB011252	GEAR - 20Z	U008_S001	35
		U008_S002	35
AB011258	GEAR - 38Z	U002	30
AB011259	GEAR - 32Z	U002	31
AB011387	GEAR - 23Z	U012	39
AB011416	GEAR - 20Z	U012	40
AB014161	REVERSE ROLLER GEAR	U012	41
AB014316	GEAR:IDLER:TURN	U010_S001	18
AB014317	GEAR:PRESSURE ROLLER	U010_S001	19
AB014318	GEAR:HOT ROLLER	U010_S001	20
AB014319	GEAR:IDLER:FUSING UNIT	U010_S001	21
AB014320	GEAR:IDLER:PRESSURE ROLLER	U010_S001	22
AB017493	GEAR PULLEY	U008	36
AB017699	GEAR - 33Z/44Z	U002	32
AB017754	GEAR:FUSING:NO.1	U002	33
AB017755	GEAR:FUSING:NO.2	U002	34
AB017757	GEAR:EXIT:NO.1	U002	35
AB017758	GEAR:EXIT:NO.2	U002	36
AB017759	ENCODER:TURN	U010_S001	23
AB017774	GEAR:FUSING:NO.3	U002	37
AB030551	PULLEY:IDLER:FUSING	U002	38
AB030744	TIMING PULLEY - 27Z/40T	U002	39
AB030781	TIMING PULLEY - 28Z/30T	U002	40

Exclusive Parts

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
AB030888	TIMING PULLEY:DEVELOPMENT:NO.1	U002_S001	41
AB033000	JOINT:DEVELOPMENT		
AC030169	MIRROR:NO.1	U005_S002	32
AE010068	HOT ROLLER:DIA40:ADHESION	U010_S001	24
AE020171	PRESSURE ROLLER:DIA40	U010_S001	25
AE030072	BALL BEARING:DIA12XDIA21X5	U010_S001	26
AE030074	BALL BEARING:DIA17XDIA26X5	U010_S001	27
AF013006	BOTTOM PLATE PAD	U008_S003_S003	37
		U008_S004_S003	37
AF013016	BOTTOM PLATE PAD	U012	42
AF030049	PICK-UP ROLLER	U012	43
AF030085	PAPER FEED ROLLER - PICKUP	U008_S001	38
		U008_S002	38
AF031046	FEED ROLLER - MANUAL FEED	U012	44
AF031085	PAPER FEED ROLLER - FEED	U008_S001	39
		U008_S002	39
AF032046	SEPARATION ROLLER - MANUAL FEED	U012	45
AF032085	PAPER FEED ROLLER - SEPARATE	U008_S001	40
		U008_S002	40
AF040566	TENSION ROLLER	U011	10
AF040567	TENSION ROLLER	U011	11
AG070514	MAGNET CATCH	U012	46
		U017	4
AG071012	MAGNET CATCH:ASS'Y	U003	5
AW010107	PAPER FEED SENSOR	U008	41
		U011	12
		U012	47
AW010118	PAPER FEED SENSOR	U012	48
AW010122	PAPER FEED SENSOR	U008_S001	42
		U008_S002	42
AW010127	PAPER FEED SENSOR	U011	13
AW010128	PAPER FEED SENSOR	U008_S001	43
		U008_S002	43
AW010133	ORIGINAL SENSOR - 66MM	U005	33
AW010140	ORIGINAL SENSOR - 76MM	U005	34
AW020145	PHOTOINTERRUPTOR:FLAT	U002_S001	42

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
		U005	35
		U008_S001	44
		U008_S002	44
		U011	14
		U012	49
AW020146	PHOTOINTERRUPTOR:FLAT:PICH 2MM:M4	U005	36
AW020160	PAPER FEED SENSOR	U017	5
AW020185	TONER END SENSOR	U009_S001	11
		U009_S002	11
		U009_S003	11
		U009_S004	11
AW020190	PHOTOINTERRUPTOR	U010	28
AW100106	THERMOPILE	U010	29
AW100120	THERMISTOR:FUSING	U010_S001	30
AW110072	THERMOSTAT:ASS'Y	U010_S001	31
AW140012	TEMPERATURE & HUMIDITY SENSOR	U001	22
AW500023	PUSH SWITCH	U008	45
		U011	15
		U017	6
AW500031	PAPER SIZE SENSOR	U012	50
AW500035	PAPER END SENSOR	U012	51
AW500038	PUSH SWITCH:PAPER SIZE SENSOR	U008	46
AX040154	DC MOTOR 24V	U008	47
AX050333	BRUSHLESS MOTOR:DRIVE:INTERMEDIATE TRANSFER:9W	U002_S001	43
AX060318	POLYGON MIRROR MOTOR DC24V	U006_S001	3
AX060356	BRUSHLESS MOTOR:DC24V 18W	U002_S001	44
AX060368	BRUSHLESS MOTOR:DRIVE:DRUM:28W	U002_S001	45
AX060369	BRUSHLESS MOTOR:DRIVE:FUSING:27W	U002	46
AX200289	MAGNETIC CLUTCH - 32Z	U002	47
AX200314	MAGNETIC CLUTCH:DEVELOPMENT:0.5N	U002_S001	48

http://www.manuals4you.com

Exclusive Parts

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
AX202007	MAGNETIC CLUTCH	U012	52
AX310045	TOTAL COUNTER:7FIG:24V	U001	23
AX400193	HEATER:120V:9W	U008_S005	48
AX430118	HEATER:120V:500W	U010_S001	32
AX640197	FAN:MM60	U014	5
AX640199	FAN:AXIAL:MM80:25MM	U001	24
AX640200	FAN:MM60	U001	25
AX640201	FAN:MM60	U013_S001	27
AX650045	SIROCCO FAN:DC24V 2.6W	U001	26
AZ240135	POWER SUPPLY UNIT:546W:DON/NA:APO-C2	U013_S001	28
AZ320175	POWER PACK:CB:AP/AT-C2	U013	29
AZ320185	POWER PACK:TTS:AP-C2	U013	30
B0042783	TORQUE LIMITER	U008_S001	49
		U008_S002	49
B0042923	SPRING PLATE - RELEASE LEVER	U008_S003_S001	50
		U008_S004_S001	50
B0241264	MAGNET CATCH	U003	6
B0441825	COLLAR	U008	51
		U012	53
B0441847	SHOULDER SCREW	U012	54
B0511727	FRAME:SCANNER:FRONT	U005	37
B0511814	BRACKET:ORIGINAL SENSOR	U005	38
B0651371	CLOTH HOLDER		
B0651374	CLOTH - DF EXPOSURE GLASS		
B0822781	BRACKET:SENSOR	U008_S001	52
		U008_S002	52
B1011097	RUBBER FOOT:H5	U001	27
B1321573	DECAL - POWER SOURCE:OFF		
B1329700	Lubricant Powder		
B1404336	GEAR - IDLER WORM GEAR	U002	49
B1801704	BRACKET:TENSION	U005	39
B1801713	STEPPER MOTOR:ASS'Y	U005_S001	40
B1801734	SLIDE RAIL:NO.2	U005	41
B1801803	GUIDE:HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY CORD:BASE	U005	42
B1801814	SHAFT:SCANNER:DRIVE	U005	43
B1802871	SHAFT:SEPARATOR:DRIVEN:ASS'Y	U012	55
B1986407	DECAL:VERMONT:2		
B2221281	COVER:LEFT:EU	U003	7
B2221820	COVER:SCANNER:REAR:EU	U003	8
B2227707	MANUAL:TROUBLESHOOTING:NA		
B2227737	MANUAL:ABOUTTHISMACHINE:NA		
B2227907	MANUAL:SECURITY:NA		
B2231065	CONNECTOR BRACKET	U001	28
B2231101	GRIP:FRONT	U001	29
B2231102	BRACKET:GRIP:RIGHT FRONT	U001	30
B2231103	BRACKET:HINGE:LEFT	U001	31
B2231120	BRACKET:PAPER FEED UNIT	U001	32
B2231123	HINGE - COVER DRUM STAY	U001	33
B2231144	HOLDER:POSITIONING SENSOR	U002_S001	50
B2231174	DRIVE UNIT:COLLECTION BOTTLE	U002	51
B2231180	BRACKET:PAPER FEED	U002	52
B2231183	GRIP SHAFT	U002	53
B2231184	PULLEY:TONER SUPPLY:NO.2:ASS'Y	U002	54
B2231186	DRIVE JOINT	U002	55
B2231187	MAGNETIC CLUTCH BRACKET	U002	56
B2231188	STEPPER MOTOR DC24V	U002	57
B2231189	FEED DRIVE SHAFT	U002	58
B2231191	BRACKET:DRIVE UNIT:REGISTRATION	U002	59
B2231199	DC MOTOR 24V	U002	60
B2231206	BRACKET:CONNECTOR:HEATER	U001	34
B2231207	COVER:CONNECTOR:HEATER	U001	35
B2231237	DUCT:REAR:2	U001	36
B2231238	DUCT:REAR:3	U001	37
B2231239	DUCT:REAR:LOWER	U001	38
B2231241	INNER COVER:UPPER:LEFT	U003	9
B2231242	INNER COVER - LEFT	U003	10
B2231244	INNER COVER - MIDDLE	U003	11
B2231245	CAP:GRIP	U001	39
B2231248	OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS HOLDER	U003	12
B2231249	STOPPER:MAGNET CATCH	U003	13

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
B2231251	COVER-FRONT	U003	14
B2231253	EMBLEM COVER	U003	15
B2231255	COVER - MAIN SWITCH	U003	16
B2231266	COVER:PAPER EXIT UNIT:UPPER	U003	17
B2231273	COVER:RIGHT:UPPER MIDDLE	U003	18
B2231274	COVER:RIGHT REAR:FAN	U003	19
B2231276	FILTER:RIGHT REAR	U003	20
B2231279	CLEANER:SHIELD GLASS:ASS'Y	U003	21
B2231283	COVER:LEFT:MIDDLE	U003	22
B2231291	COVER:REAR	U003	23
B2231293	CAP:COVER:REAR	U003	24
B2231300	DRUM STAY PCU ASS'Y	U001_S001	40
B2231303	DRUM STAY LEVER	U001_S001	41
B2231304	STOPPER:LEVER:DRUM STAY	U001	42
B2231306	DRUM STAY	U001_S001	43
B2231315	BALL BEARING PLATE	U001_S001	44
B2231316	BALL BEARING CLIP	U001_S001	45
B2231317	SCREW	U001_S001	46
		U013	31
B2231318	SPRING	U001_S001	47
B2231319	WIRE	U001_S001	48
B2231326	DUCT:FUSING	U001	49
B2231327	DUCT:FUSING:REAR	U001	50
B2231329	SOUND PROOFING MATERIAL:DUCT	U001	51
B2231332	FAN MOTOR - MM60 DC24V	U001	25
B2231341	DUCT:SUPPLY:FRONT	U001	52
B2231342	DUCT:SUPPLY:REAR	U001	53
B2231348	FILTER:IMAGE FORMING MD	U003	25
B2231354	DRUM STAY:DRIVE UNIT	U002	61
B2231364	GUIDE:HARNESS	U002	62
B2231494	PCB OP-L	U004_S001	8
B2231518	KEYTOP - BLANK FB	U004_S001	9
B2231520	KEYTOP - CLEAR/STOP	U004_S001	10
B2231528	KEYTOP - COPY NA	U004_S001	11
B2231529	KEYTOP - DOC NA	U004_S001	12
B2231531	KEYTOP:PRINTER:NA	U004_S001	13
B2231532	KEYTOP:SCANNER:NA	U004_S001	14

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
B2231540	KEYTOP:10KEY:NA	U004_S001	15
B2231773	SCALE:MACHINE OR COPIER	U005	44
B2231774	SEAL:SHEET THROUGH	U005	45
B2231779	COVER:STEPPER MOTOR:REAR	U005	46
B2231786	HOLDER:CONNECTOR	U005	47
B2231788	FRAME:SCANNER:REAR	U005	48
B2231806	BRACKET:DOCUMENT FEEDER:HOLDER	U005	49
B2231807	BRACKET:EXTERIOR:REAR	U003	26
B2231808	DOCUMENT FEEDER:CONNECTOR:BRACKET	U005	50
B2231819	COVER:SCANNER:RIGHT	U003	27
B2231824	SEAL:SCANNER:FRAME:BASE	U005	51
B2231833	SEAL:EXPOSURE GLASS:REAR	U005	52
B2231882	COVER - POLYGON MOTOR	U006_S001	4
B2231896	IMAGING UNIT PLATE - FRONT	U001	54
B2231897	IMAGING UNIT PLATE - REAR	U001	55
B2231898	IMAGING UNIT PLATE - INNER	U001	56
B2231899	IMAGING UNIT PLATE - OUTER	U001	57
B2232558	REGISTRATION ROLLER KNOB	U008	53
B2232608	GEAR:Z16	U012	56
B2232620	HOUSING:MANUAL FEED	U012	57
B2232621	COVER:MANUAL FEED UNIT	U012	58
B2232622	GUIDE PLATE:EXIT	U012	59
B2232623	COVER:GUIDE PLATE:EXIT	U012	60
B2232629	STAY:FEED	U012	61
B2232632	DC SOLENOID:PICKUP	U012	62
B2232633	SPRING:RELEASE:PICKUP	U012	63
B2232634	SUPPORT STAY:ARM	U012	64
B2232636	TORSION SPRING:27N	U012	65
B2232637	BRACKET:ARM:MANUAL FEED:REAR	U012	66
B2232645	DECAL:SIDE FENCE	U012	67
B2232648	GUIDE PLATE:TRANSPORT UNIT:EXIT	U012	68
B2232649	SPRING:PRESSURE:5N	U012	69
B2232651	ARM:MANUAL FEED:FRONT	U012	70
B2232652	ARM:MANUAL FEED:REAR	U012	71

http://www.manuals4you.com

Exclusive Parts

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
B2232657	ARM:MANUAL FEED:SHORT:FRONT	U012	72
B2232658	ARM:MANUAL FEED:SHORT:REAR	U012	73
B2232661	COVER:MANUAL FEED	U012	74
B2232663	EXTENSION TRAY	U012	75
B2232664	COVER:MANUAL FEED:ENTRANCE	U012	76
B2232665	SPRING:COVER:MANUAL FEED	U012	77
B2232666	GEAR:16Z	U012	78
B2232668	SPRING PLATE:STOPPER	U012	79
B2232673	SIDE FENCE:REAR	U012	80
B2232674	SIDE FENCE:FRONT	U012	81
B2232676	SPRING - 11N	U012	82
B2232681	ARM:TIGHTENER	U012	83
B2232683	GEAR:25Z	U012	38
B2232685	STEPPER MOTOR:DC24V 26.4W	U008	54
B2232686	GEAR:Z31	U012	84
B2232689	GEAR:Z28	U012	85
B2232691	BRACKET:STEPPER MOTOR	U008	55
B2232694	GUIDE:GEAR	U008	56
B2232696	DRUM STAY:DRIVE	U012	86
B2232702	HEAT SINK:HEATER:NA	U008_S005	57
B2232704	HEATER HEAT SINK	U008_S005	58
B2232705	SUPPORTER - LEFT NO.1	U008	59
B2232710	SUPPORTER - LEFT NO.2	U008	60
B2232713	RACK:MANUAL FEED	U012	87
B2232714	POSITIONING CAP - SHORT	U008	61
B2232715	SUPPORTER - RIGHT	U008	62
B2232721	BRACKET:PUSH SWITCH	U008	63
B2232722	COVER	U008	64
B2232726	GRIP:SIDE FENCE:MANUAL FEED	U012	88
B2232727	COVER - CONNECTOR	U008	65
B2232730	PAPER TRAY STOPPER ASS'Y	U008	66
B2232761	PICKUP ARM	U008_S001	67
		U008_S002	67
B2232762	FEED SHAFT	U008_S001	68
		U008_S002	68
B2232764	GEAR-24Z	U008_S001	69
		U008_S002	69
B2232765	GROUND PLATE - FEED	U008_S001	70
		U008_S002	70
B2232767	PAPER END FEELER	U008_S001	71
		U008_S002	71
B2232772	HARNESS SHEET	U008_S001	72
		U008_S002	72
B2232776	STAY	U008_S001	73
		U008_S002	73
B2232778	SENSOR BRACKET	U008_S001	74
		U008_S002	74
B2232780	DC SOLENOID 24V	U008_S001	75
		U008_S002	75
B2232786	GROUND PLATE - FRONT	U008_S001	76
		U008_S002	76
B2232810	SEPARATE DRIVEN SHAFT	U008_S001	77
		U008_S002	77
B2232815	SEPARATE DRIVE SHAFT	U008_S001	78
		U008_S002	78
B2232819	GEAR - 22Z	U008_S001	79
		U008_S002	79
B2232829	FEED GUIDE	U008_S001	80
		U008_S002	80
B2232846	BRACKET:COVER:HARNESS	U008	81
B2232848	COVER:HARNESS	U008	82
B2232857	COVER - PAPER TRAY NO.1	U008_S003	83
B2232860	PAPER TRAY GRIP	U008_S003	84
		U008_S004	84
B2232861	GRIP HOLDER	U008_S003	85
		U008_S004	85
B2232862	LEVER - RELEASE INNER	U008_S003	86
		U008_S004	86
B2232865	RISE NO.1 SHAFT	U008_S003	87
		U008_S004	87
B2232868	LEVER:RELEASE:PAPER TRAY:OUTER	U008_S003	88
		U008_S004	88
B2232869	GROUND PLATE	U008_S003	89
B2232870	SIDE FENCE - FRONT	U008_S003_S001	90

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
B2232873	DECAL - SIDE FENCE REAR	U008_S003_S002	91
		U008_S004_S002	91
B2232880	SIDE FENCE - REAR	U008_S003_S002	92
B2232890	SLIDE RAIL - LEFT	U008_S003	93
B2232894	SLIDE RAIL STOPPER - LEFT	U008_S003	94
B2232910	LINK - PAPER SIZE SENSOR	U008_S004	95
B2232911	SPACER	U008_S004	96
B2232912	END FENCE	U008_S003	97
		U008_S004	97
B2232918	RISE LEVER	U008_S003	98
		U008_S004	98
B2232919	GROUND PLATE - PAPER TRAY NO.2	U008_S004	99
B2232920	FRONT SIDE FENCE	U008_S004_S001	100
B2232923	STOPPER LEVER - FRONT	U008_S003_S001	101
		U008_S004_S001	101
B2232930	REAR SIDE FENCE	U008_S004_S002	102
B2232932	SIDE FENCE:REAR:UNIVERSAL:NO.2	U008_S004_S002	103
B2232934	PLATE - SIDE FENCE	U008_S003_S001	104
		U008_S003_S002	104
		U008_S004_S001	104
		U008_S004_S002	104
B2232935	PLATE - SIDE FENCE RIGHT	U008_S003_S001	105
		U008_S003_S002	105
		U008_S004_S001	105
		U008_S004_S002	105
B2232936	GEAR - 16Z	U008_S003	106
		U008_S004	106
B2232940	TRAY BOTTOM PLATE	U008_S003_S003	107
		U008_S004_S003	107
B2232946	COVER - PAPER TRAY NO.2	U008_S004	108
B2233206	TUBE CLAMP	U009	12
B2233207	SHUTTER:NOZZLE	U009_S001	13
		U009_S002	13
		U009_S003	13
		U009_S004	13
B2233208	SPRING:SHUTTER:NOZZLE	U009_S001	14

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
		U009_S002	14
		U009_S003	14
		U009_S004	14
B2233209	TUBE CLIP	U009	15
B2233305	TONER CARTRIDGE UNIT	U009	16
B2233328	TONER CARTRIDGE GUIDE	U009	17
B2233334	HOLDER:STOPPER:SHUTTER:ASS'Y	U009_S005	18
B2233424	SHAFT:DRIVE:DRIVE UNIT:BKY	U009_S005	19
B2233426	SHAFT:DRIVE:DRIVE UNIT:CM	U009_S005	20
B2233428	SPRING:DRIVE UNIT:TONER BOTTLE	U009_S005	21
B2233441	TIMING BELT:TONER BOTTLE	U009_S005	22
B2233455	MAGNETIC CLUTCH - 0.25N.M BK	U009_S005	23
B2233457	MAGNETIC CLUTCH - 0.25N.M YCM	U009_S005	24
B2233461	PULLEY:TONER BOTTLE:YC	U009_S005	25
B2233462	PULLEY:TONER BOTTLE:CM	U009_S005	26
B2233463	GEAR:TONER BOTTLE:DRIVE	U009_S005	27
B2233464	GEAR:MAGNETIC CLUTCH:Y	U009_S005	28
B2233470	RFID GROUND PLATE	U009	29
B2234307	GUIDE:IH:UPPER	U010	33
B2234382	GROUND WIRE:COIL	U010	34
B2234393	DECAL:WARNING (HIGH TEMPERATURE):IH	U001	58
B2234428	ROLLER:GUIDE:PFA	U011	16
B2234436	SPRING PLATE - EXIT ROLLER	U011	17
B2234486	EXIT TRAY	U003	28
B2234487	EXIT END FENCE	U003	29
B2234494	STOPPER- UPPERGATE PAWL	U012	89
B2234497	SHAFT:FEELER:OVERFLOW	U011	18
B2234501	GUIDE PLATE:RIGHT	U012	90
B2234502	GUIDE PLATE:LEFT LOWER	U012	91
B2234511	TIMING BELT:30S2M312	U012	92
B2234512	TIMING BELT:30S2M182	U012	93
B2234514	ROLLER CLUTCH:T24	U012	94
B2234522	SPACER:WIRE:STOPPER	U012	95
B2234524	WIRE:STOPPER:DIA1.5	U012	96

http://www.manuals4you.com

Exclusive Parts

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
B2234525	TENSION SPRING:WIRE:180N	U012	97
B2234526	TIMING BELT:30S2M268	U012	98
B2234527	PULLEY:T26/T24	U012	99
B2234529	ROLLER CLUTCH:T24	U012	100
B2234531	GUIDE PLATE:COVER	U012	101
B2234532	TENSION SPRING:HOOK:STOPPER	U012	102
B2234535	ROLLER CLUTCH:T26	U012	103
B2234536	TIMING BELT:30S2M234	U012	104
B2234538	COMPRESSION SPRING	U012	105
B2234539	SHEET:COVER:DUPLEX	U012	106
B2234541	TORSION SPRING:REAR	U012	107
B2234542	TORSION SPRING:FRONT	U012	108
B2234544	PULLEY:T35/T33	U012	109
B2234545	GUIDE PIN:HOLDER	U012	110
B2234552	BUSHING:DIA4	U012	111
B2234553	TENSION SPRING:DRIVEN ROLLER	U012	112
B2234556	COMPRESSION SPRING	U012	113
B2234560	TENSION SPRING:DRIVEN ROLLER	U012	114
B2234562	TIGHTENER	U012	115
B2234564	SPRING:TIGHTENER	U012	116
B2234566	BRACKET:SENSOR:ENTRANCE	U012	117
B2234567	STAY:TRANSPORT:UPPER:PEEN	U012	118
B2234571	GEAR:PULLEY:Z24/T40	U012	119
B2234572	STEPPER MOTOR:DC4.29V 1.7W	U012	120
B2234573	TIMING BELT:30S2M128	U012	121
B2234575	BRACKET:STEPPER MOTOR	U012	122
B2234579	GRIP:OPEN AND CLOSE:DUPLEX UNIT	U012	123
B2234586	PULLEY:T30	U012	124
B2234594	SHAFT:PULLEY:WIRE	U012	125
B2234595	PULLEY:DIA13	U012	126
B2235804	RACK:INNER BACK:AUXILIARY:RIGHT	U013	32
B2235812	HINGE:PANEL:CONTROL BOARD	U013	33
B2235813	SAFETY SWITCH BRACKET	U013	34
B2235814	BRACKET - SAFETY SWITCH LEVER	U013	35
B2235816	PLATE:RACK:AUXILIARY:RIGHT	U013	36
B2235830	BRACKET:PSU:ASS'Y	U013	37
B2235832	BRACKET:POWER PACK	U013	38
B2235834	BRACKET:POWER PACK:TRANSFER	U013	39
B2235841	HINGE:APPLICATION:RACK	U013	40
B2235843	BRACKET:RACK:APPLICATION	U013	41
B2235848	BRACKET:BASE:CONNECTOR	U001	59
B2235849	COVER:CONNECTOR:HEATER	U001	60
B2235866	GROUND WIRE:RACK:RIGHT LOWER:HF	U013	42
B2236085	STOPPER:RIGHT:ITB	U015_S001	1
B2236109	LEVER:RIGHT:ITB	U015_S001	2
B2236198	CLEANING UNIT RAIL	U016	1
B2236463	GEAR - 20Z	U017	7
B2236464	BUSHING - 6X10X6	U017	8
B2236467	LEVER BRACKET	U017	9
B2236471	TRANSPORT SCREW BRACKET	U017	10
B2236472	GEAR - 21Z	U017	11
B2236473	TRANSPORT SCREW SHAFT	U017	12
B2236474	GEAR - 29Z	U017	13
B2236475	BUSHING - 5X 10X2.5	U017	14
B2236476	BUSHING - DIA5	U017	15
B2236481	REAR PIPE ASS'Y	U017	16
B2236496	COLLECTION BOTTLE RAIL	U017	17
B2236503	USED TONER SENSOR FEELER	U017	18
B2236507	SET SENSOR BRACKET	U017	19
B2236540	PIPE:FRONT:ASS'Y	U017	20
B2241257	COVER:FRONT:COLLECTION BOTTLE	U003	30
B2241263	COVER:INNER BACK:MIDDLE:EU	U003	31
B2291687	HEATER:OPTION:120V:9W	U005	53
B2371372	DECAL - MAIN SWITCH ON-STAND BY	U003	32
B2371595	DECAL - CAUTION ORIGINAL		
B2372521	DECAL - PAPER SET DIRECTION	U008	109

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
	NO.1		
B2381066	RUBBER FOOT COVER	U001	61
B2381072	POSITIONING PLATE:GUIDE PLATE:FUSING:FRONT LOWER:PEEN	U001	62
B2381088	COVER - CONNECTOR	U001	63
B2381089	COVER - POSITIONING PIN	U001	64
B2381143	GUIDE:CONNECTOR:HEATER:IMAGING UNIT	U001	65
B2381362	DECAL - MISFEED REMOVAL B1	U003	33
B2381368	DECAL - CLEANING	U003	34
B2381372	DECAL - MAIN SWITCH(ON-OFF)	U003	35
B2381504	KEYTOP - START	U004_S001	16
B2381506	KEYTOP - TRY PRINT	U004_S001	17
B2381509	KEYTOP - INTERRUPT	U004_S001	18
B2381511	KEYTOP - COUNTER	U004_S001	19
B2381519	LENS - FRONT	U004_S001	20
B2381527	OPERATION PANEL BRACKET	U004_S001	21
B2381534	LCD SPACER A	U004_S001	22
B2381535	LCD SPACER B	U004_S001	23
B2381539	SHEET:POWER SOURCE:DISPLAY:NA	U004_S001	24
B2381540	SHEET:DATA:DISPLAY:NA	U004_S001	25
B2381547	SPACER - KEYTOP	U004_S001	26
B2381548	OPERATION PANEL BRACKET - RIGHT	U004_S001	27
B2381549	KEYTOP - POWER SOURCE	U004_S001	28
B2381550	KEYTOP - LOGIN	U004_S001	29
B2381552	KEYTOP - KANTAN	U004_S001	30
B2381583	KEYTOP - CLEAR MODES	U004_S001	31
B2381792	TIMING BELT - 157ST1.5-4.0	U005	54
B2381806	IDLER PULLEY	U005	55
B2381807	PULLEY	U005_S003	56
B2381845	SEAL:EXPOSURE GLASS	U005	57
B2382523	DECAL - PAPER SET DIRECTION NO.2	U008	110
B2382524	DECAL - PAPER SIZE		
B2382526	DECAL - GRIP	U008	111
B2382527	DECAL - GRIP	U008	112

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
B2382541	TRAY COVER - RIGHT	U008	113
B2382543	COVER - TRAY LEFT	U008	114
B2382544	TRAY COVER - MIDDLE	U008	115
B2382615	CASE - REMOVE PAPER DUST	U008	116
B2382622	COVER - REMOVE PAPER DUST	U008	117
B2382652	REGISTRATION ROLLER - DRIVE	U008	118
B2382655	GEAR - 16Z	U008	119
B2382656	GEAR - 30Z	U008	120
B2382657	GEAR - 18Z	U008	121
B2382661	REGISTRATION ROLLER - DRIVEN	U008	122
B2382675	REGISTRATION ROLLER BUSHING	U008	123
B2382676	TENSION SPRING	U008	124
B2383364	DECAL:COLORED DISPLAY:BK:INNER COVER	U003	36
B2383365	DECAL:COLORED DISPLAY:Y:INNER COVER	U003	37
B2383366	DECAL:COLORED DISPLAY:C:INNER COVER	U003	38
B2383367	DECAL:COLORED DISPLAY:M:INNER COVER	U003	39
B2384365	LENS HOLDER	U010	35
B2384366	LENS COVER	U010	36
B2384436	SPRING PLATE - EXIT ROLLER OUTER	U011	19
B2384733	ENTRANCE SENSOR BRACKET	U012	127
B2384739	COVER - ENTRANCE SENSOR	U012	128
B2385821	BRACKET - MAIN SWITCH HANDLE	U013	43
B2385824	SLIDE SWITCH COVER	U013	44
B2385825	POWER SOURCE SWITCH LINK	U013	45
B2385827	MAIN SWITCH BRACKET	U013	46
B2385828	MAIN SWITCH SHEET	U013	47
B2385867	HOOK:SOLENOID:SENSOR:TM	U013_S002	48
B2385875	DC SOLENOID DC24V	U013_S002	49
B2385885	CONTROL BOARD PANEL GRIP	U014	6
B2385887	INTERFACE PANEL	U014	7
B2385891	DRAWER BRACKET	U013	50

http://www.manuals4you.com

Exclusive Parts

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
B5457506	SCREW:BUSHING	U010	37
B6455010	SD Card		
B6456705	PCMCIA Card Adapter		
B6456820	USB Reader/Writer		
B6522379	DECAL:CAUTION:ORIGINAL:5-LANG		
B6795100	Plug - IEEE1284 Type C		
B7002649	TIMING BELT:40S2M144	U008	125
BA146036	SHAFT:GEAR:SWIVEL	U002	63
BA146037	SHAFT:GEAR:WORM GEAR	U002	64
BB013016	GEAR:SLOW DOWN:NO.1	U002	65
BB013017	GEAR:SLOW DOWN:NO.2	U002	66
BC012002	EXPOSURE GLASS:SHEET THROUGH:344X20	U005	58
C4019503	20X Magnification Scope		
D0091260	UPPER COVER	U003	40
D0091466	PCB:OP-R	U004_S001	32
D0091486	INVERTOR:TFT	U004_S001	33
D0091487	CABLE:FFC:TFT:LCD	U004_S001	34
D0091498	LCD:TFT:W-VGA:MV	U004_S001	35
D0091504	SHADEING PLATE:TOUCH PANEL	U004_S001	36
D0091556	PANEL:UPPER:NA	U004_S001	37
D0091731	BRACKET A - LEFT SCALE	U005	59
D0091732	BRACKET B - LEFT SCALE	U005	60
D0091815	ORIGINAL SENSOR BRACKET - SUB SCAN	U005	61
D0091816	ORIGINAL SENSOR BRACKET	U005	62
D0092510	GUIDE PLATE - EXIT	U012	129
D0092552	GUIDE SHEET - MANUAL FEED	U012	130
D0092554	GUIDE SHEET - VERTICAL TRANSPORT	U012	131
D0092555	TRANSPORT ROLLER - DUPLEX EXIT	U012	132
D0092560	DRIVEN ROLLER	U012	133
D0092563	GUIDE PLATE - VERTICAL TRANSPORT	U012	134
D0092571	HOLDER - VERTICAL TRANSPORT	U012	135
D0092573	PULLEY - VERTICAL TRANSPORT	U012	136

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
D0092574	PULLEY - IDLER	U012	137
D0092575	SHAFT - IDLER	U012	138
D0092576	SHAFT - VERTICAL TRANSPORT	U012	139
D0092757	TRANSPORT ROLLER:DRIVE:ASS'Y	U008_S001	126
		U008_S002	126
D0092836	GUIDE PLATE	U008	127
D0092841	GUIDE PLATE - NO.2	U008	128
D0094407	FEELER - OVERFLOW	U011	20
D0094443	DISCHARGE BRUSH - EXIT	U011	21
D0094497	DECAL - RIGHT GUIDE	U012	140
D0094503	GUIDE PLATE - LEFT UPPER	U012	141
D0094504	UPPER GUIDE PLATE - GATE	U012	142
D0094511	SPACER:DIA8.0:1.5MM	U012	143
D0094512	LINK:STOPPER	U012	144
D0094513	COMPRESSION SPRING:EARTH:DUPLEX UNIT	U001	66
		U012	145
D0094522	TENSION SPRING:GATE PAWL:DUPLEX:0.08N	U012	146
D0094535	HARNESS GUIDE	U012	147
D0094540	COVER - DUPLEX UNIT	U012	148
D0094577	DUPLEX GATE	U012	149
D0094587	TENSION SPRING - RELEASE BRACKET	U012	150
D0094588	STOPPER BRACKET - SPRING	U012	151
D0094589	GUIDE - SET SHAFT	U012	152
D0094593	STEPPED SCREW - M3	U012	153
D0094594	FRONT GUIDE - DUPLEX UNIT SET	U001	67
D0094595	REAR GUIDE - DUPLEX UNIT SET	U001	68
D0094597	BRACKET - WIRE PULLEY SHAFT	U012	154
D0094598	SPRING - SET SHAFT	U012	155
D0094599	SHAFT - DUPLEX UNIT	U012	156
D0094661	REVERSE ROLLER - FEED	U012	157
D0094662	TRANSPORT ROLLER 1	U012	158
D0094663	TRANSPORT ROLLER 2	U012	159
D0094664	DRIVEN ROLLER	U010_S001	38
		U012	160
D0145974	COVER:CONNECTOR:EFI	U014	8

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
D0239590	NV-RAM	U014	9
D0239640	COLOR DEVELOPER K		
D0239660	COLOR DEVELOPER C		
D0239670	COLOR DEVELOPER M		
D0239680	COLOR DEVELOPER Y		
D0251261	COVER:INNER BACK	U003	41
D0256202	TRANSFER/SEPARATION UNIT:AT:DOM:ASS'Y	U012	161
D0256280	CASE:AT:ASS'Y	U012_S001	162
D0278322	**SHEET:EMBLEM:RIC:EXP For D027**	**U003**	**69**
D0278328	**SHEET:EMBLEM:SVN For D027**	**U003**	**70**
D0278329	**SHEET:EMBLEM:GES:NA For D027**	**U003**	**71**
D0278330	**SHEET:EMBLEM:LAN:NA For D027**	**U003**	**72**
D0281271	COVER:RIGHT:FRONT:NA	U003	42
D0281282	COVER:LEFT:UPPER:NA	U003	43
D0281292	COVER:REAR:UPPER:NA	U003	44
D0281376	COVER:SCANNER:LEFT:NA	U003	45
D0281595	COVER:SCANNER:FRONT:NA	U003	46
D0291053	CAM:GUIDE:FUSING:LEFT	U001	69
D0291054	CAM:GUIDE:FUSING	U001	70
D0291058	SEAL:BURRING	U001	71
D0291061	DECAL:LEVER:LOCK:FUSING	U001	72
D0291100	DRIVE UNIT:ENGINE:APOLLON-C2:ASS'Y	U002_S001	67
D0291136	SHAFT:DEVELOPMENT:ASS'Y	U002_S001	68
D0291137	HOLDER:MAGNETIC CLUTCH:DEVELOPMENT	U002_S001	69
D0291147	STEPPER MOTOR:REGISTRATION:ASS'Y	U002	70
D0291163	BRACKET:FUSING/PAPER EXIT UNIT:ASS'Y	U002	71
D0291191	GUIDE:FUSING DRIVE SUB-UNIT	U002	72
D0291199	DRIVE UNIT:ON-OFF:TRANSFER	U002	60
D0291213	COVER:FRONT RIGHT	U003	47
D0291236	DUCT:REAR:1	U001	73
D0291243	INNER COVER:UPPER:RIGHT	U003	48
D0291256	SHEET:MISFEED REMOVAL:AP-C2	U003	49
D0291272	COVER:RIGHT:REAR	U003	50

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
D0291278	OZONE FILTER:NO.2	U003	51
D0291299	BRACKET:COVER:REAR	U003	52
D0291323	DUCT:IH:FRONT	U001	74
D0291324	DUCT:IH:REAR	U001	75
D0291331	BRACKET:FAN:IMAGE FORMING SECTION	U001	76
D0291339	DUCT:EXIT:C2	U001	77
D0291343	SEAL:DUCT:IH:FRONT:#120	U001	78
D0291345	GUIDE PLATE:FUSING:FRONT	U001	79
D0291346	GUIDE PLATE:FUSING:REAR	U001	80
D0291347	STOPPER:FUSING UNIT:REAR	U001	81
D0291348	SEAL:DUCT:IH:REAR	U001	82
D0291350	STOPPER:FUSING UNIT:FRONT	U001	83
D0291351	LEVER:LOCK:FUSING UNIT:FRONT	U001	84
D0291354	BRACKET:FAN:IH	U001	85
D0291355	LEVER:LOCK:FUSING UNIT:REAR	U001	86
D0291421	OPERATION SUB-UNIT:AP-C2:NA:ASS'Y	U004_S001	38
D0291461	PCB:APC2:LCDC:NA:ASS'Y	U004_S001	39
D0291484	TOUCH PANEL:WVGA:FU-ACF	U004_S001	40
D0291596	COVER:FRONT RIGHT:UPPER	U003	53
D0291715	CARRIAGE:NO.1:ASS'Y	U005_S002	63
D0291719	SHEET:CARRIAGE:NO.1	U005_S002	64
D0291731	CARRIAGE:NO.2:ASS'Y	U005_S003	65
D0291736	MIRROR:NO.2:CONCAVE:ASS'Y	U005_S003	66
D0291737	MIRROR:NO.2:CONVAX:ASS'Y	U005_S003	67
D0291745	PULLEY:DRIVE WERE:FRONT	U005	68
D0291747	DRIVE WERE:CARRIAGE:DIA1.0	U005	69
D0291748	PULLEY:DRIVE WERE:REAR:ASS'Y	U005	70
D0291749	PULLEY:PROTECTION	U005	71
D0291771	LENS:HOLDER:ASS'Y	U005	72
D0291774	SEAL:GUARD:EXPOSURE GLASS:DOCUMENT FEEDER	U005	73
D0291778	SCALE:LEFT:NA:ASS'Y	U005	74
D0291782	SCALE:REAR:PRINTING	U005	75
D0291789	INNER COVER:GROUND PLATE:P	U005	76

http://www.manuals4you.com

Exclusive Parts

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
	EEN		
D0291830	GASKET:13X17X35:R	U005	77
D0291831	GASKET:13X17X10:R	U005	78
D0291832	GASKET:9X3X10	U005	79
D0291840	XENON LAMP:DIA10:ASS'Y	U005	80
D0291842	STABILIZER	U005	81
D0291851	IMAGE FORMING SECTION:SERVICE PARTS:2LD:ASS'Y	U006_S001	5
D0292204	PCU:K:EXP:ASS'Y	U007_S001	3
D0292205	PCU:M:EXP:ASS'Y	U007_S002	4
D0292206	PCU:C:EXP:ASS'Y	U007_S003	5
D0292207	PCU:Y:EXP:ASS'Y	U007_S004	6
D0292251	Drum unit for Color	U007_S002	8
		U007_S003	8
		U007_S004	8
D0292252	**PCU:BK:UV:ASS'Y**	**U007_S001**	**16**
D0292555	GUIDE PLATE:REGISTRATION:LEFT	U008	129
D0292556	STAY:REGISTRATION	U008	130
D0292560	BRACKET:CLEANER:ADHESION	U008	131
D0292570	GUIDE PLATE:REGISTRATION:RIGHT:ADHESION	U008	132
D0292586	GUIDE:REGISTRATION:EXIT	U001	87
D0292611	GROUND PLATE:REAR:MANUAL FEED	U012	163
D0292612	GROUND PLATE:FRONT:MANUAL FEED	U012	164
D0292644	DECAL:SCALE:MANUAL FEED	U012	165
D0292662	MANUAL FEED TABLE	U012	166
D0292664	FEELER:PAPER SIZE SENSOR:MANUAL FEED	U012	167
D0292677	TRANSPORT BELT:DRIVEN:VERTICAL TRANSPORT	U012	168
D0292709	GUIDE PLATE:SEPARATOR:ASS'Y	U012	169
D0292710	COVER:HARNESS:MANUAL FEED TABLE	U012	170
D0292752	PAPER FEED UNIT:ASS'Y	U008_S001	133
		U008_S002	133

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
D0292850	PAPER TRAY:NO.1:ASS'Y	U008_S003	134
D0292863	SHAFT:RELEASE:PAPER TRAY	U008_S003	135
		U008_S004	135
D0292900	PAPER TRAY:NO.2:ASS'Y	U008_S004	136
D0293015	DEVELOPMENT UNIT:BK:C2:EXP:ASS'Y	U007_S001	9
D0293025	DEVELOPMENT UNIT:M:C2:EXP:ASS'Y	U007_S002	10
D0293035	DEVELOPMENT UNIT:C:C2:EXP:ASS'Y	U007_S003	11
D0293045	DEVELOPMENT UNIT:Y:C2:EXP:ASS'Y	U007_S004	12
D0293201	PUMP UNIT:BK:C2:ASS'Y	U009	30
D0293202	PUMP UNIT:Y:C2:ASS'Y	U009	31
D0293203	PUMP UNIT:C:C2:ASS'Y	U009	32
D0293204	PUMP UNIT:M:C2:ASS'Y	U009	33
D0293205	NOZZLE:C2:ASS'Y	U009_S001	34
		U009_S002	34
		U009_S003	34
		U009_S004	34
D0293405	DRIVE UNIT:TONER SUPPLY SUB-UNIT:C2:ASS'Y	U009_S005	35
D0293471	GASKET:RFID	U009	36
D0294019	FUSING UNIT:NA:ASS'Y	U010_S001	39
D0294103	FUSING COVER:GUIDE:DUPLEX	U010_S001	40
D0294108	HOUSING:THERMOSTAT:PRESSURE	U010_S001	41
D0294109	BRACKET:THERMISTOR:HOT ROLLER	U010_S001	42
D0294110	BRACKET:THERMISTOR:PRESSURE ROLLER	U010_S001	43
D0294132	FUSING ENTRANCE GUIDE PLATE:COAT	U010_S001	44
D0294137	STRIPPER PLATE:COAT	U010_S001	45
D0294160	DECAL:C2:BLUE:FUSING	U010_S001	46
D0294163	DECAL:WARNING (HIGH TEMPERATURE):FUSING:1	U010_S001	47
D0294164	DECAL:H-TEMP WARNING:FUSIN	U010_S001	48

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
	G:2		
D0294165	DECAL:WARNING (HIGH TEMPERATURE):IH	U012	171
D0294166	DECAL:WARNING (HIGH TEMPERATURE):LOWER:FUSING	U012	172
D0294169	PROOFING MATERIAL:FUSING	U010_S001	62
D0294201	BRACKET:GEAR:SLOW DOWN	U002	73
D0294202	BRACKET:STEPPER MOTOR:AUXILIARY:PEEN	U002	74
D0294204	HOLDER:GEAR	U002	75
D0294221	BRACKET:STEPPER MOTOR	U002	76
D0294222	BRACKET:GEAR:SUPPORTING PLATE	U002	77
D0294322	HOUSING:RELAY:UPPER	U010	49
D0294323	HOUSING:RELAY:LOWER	U010	50
D0294325	COIL:IH:DOM:NA:SUB-ASS'Y	U010	51
D0294329	POSITIONING PLATE:IH_UNIT	U010	52
D0294333	BRACKET:COIL:CONTACT POINT:PEEN	U010	53
D0294335	BRACKET:PRESSURE:COIL:PEEN	U010	54
D0294338	SEAL:DUCT:IH:REAR	U010	55
D0294339	BRACKET:SENSOR:ON-OFF	U010	56
D0294340	BRACKET:SENSOR:TURN	U010	57
D0294342	BRACKET:THERMOPILE	U010	58
D0294343	BRACKET:PRESSURE:COIL:PEEN	U010	54
D0294375	STEPPER MOTOR:ASS'Y	U002	78
D0294421	GUIDE PLATE:UPPER LEFT	U011	22
D0294439	STOPPER:GATE PAWL:ENTRANCE	U011	23
D0294440	GATE PAWL:ENTRANCE:ASS'Y	U011	24
D0294442	LEVER:GATE PAWL:ENTRANCE	U011	25
D0294443	TENSION SPRING:GATE PAWL:ENTRANCE	U011	26
D0294444	COVER:HARNESS	U011	27
D0294446	SHEET:EXIT:PTFE:REAR	U011	28
D0294447	SHEET:EXIT:PTFE:FRONT	U011	29
D0294450	ROLLER:DECURA:DRIVEN:ASS'Y	U011	30
D0294452	ROLLER:DECURA:DRIVE:ENTRAN	U011	31

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
	CE		
D0294453	ROLLER:DECURA:DRIVE:EXIT	U011	32
D0294454	EXIT ROLLER	U011	33
D0294456	GEAR:DECURA:16Z	U011	34
D0294457	GEAR:PULLEY:INPUT:27Z	U011	35
D0294458	GEAR:PULLEY:DECURA:Z16/16T	U011	36
D0294459	GEAR:PULLEY:IDLER:Z20/T20	U011	37
D0294461	TIMING PULLEY:20T:DIA6	U011	38
D0294462	TIMING BELT:S2M126	U011	39
D0294463	TIMING BELT:S2M:122	U011	40
D0294464	BUSHING:DECURA:DRIVEN	U011	41
D0294465	SPRING:DECURA	U011	42
D0294466	TRANSPORT ROLLER:DIA18	U011	43
D0294474	DC SOLENOID:SUB-ASS'Y	U011	44
D0294478	TENSION SPRING:RELEASE:DC SOLENOID	U011	45
D0294482	GATE PAWL:UPPER:ASS'Y	U012	173
D0294484	GRIP:GATE PAWL:UPPER	U012	174
D0294485	LEVER:GATE PAWL:UPPER	U012	175
D0294486	TENSION SPRING:GATE PAWL:1.5N	U012	176
D0294488	TENSION SPRING:GUIDE PLATE:RIGHT	U012	177
D0294489	GUIDE:GUIDE PLATE:OPEN AND CLOSE	U012	178
D0294491	GUIDE PLATE:OPEN AND CLOSE	U012	179
D0294497	COMPRESSION SPRING:DRIVEN ROLLER:GATE	U012	180
D0294499	DRIVEN ROLLER:DIA18:PAPER EXIT UNIT:VERTICAL TRANSPORT	U012	181
D0294521	BRACKET:HARNESS	U012	182
D0294533	INNER COVER:DUPLEX:REAR	U012	183
D0294534	INNER COVER:DUPLEX	U012	184
D0294554	BRACKET:GUIDE PLATE:TRANSFER UNIT	U012	185
D0294555	SHEET:TRANSPORT SUB-UNIT:FEED PAPER AGAIN	U012	186
D0294590	HOOK:STOPPER:DUPLEX UNIT:AS	U012	187

http://www.manuals4you.com

Exclusive Parts

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
	S'Y		
D0294663	GUIDE PLATE:TRANSFER UNIT:HOLDER	U012	188
D0295113	PCB:BICU:AP-C2:GW:ASS'Y	U013	51
D0295120	PCB:IOB:AP-C2/P2	U013	52
D0295138	PCB:SIO:AP-C2	U005	82
D0295160	PCB:RLB:AP-C2	U010	59
D0295165	PCB:FFB:AP-C2/P2	U013	53
D0295170	INVERTOR:IH:AP2:DOM/NA	U013	54
D0295176	PCB:RFID:RW:AP-C2/P2	U009	37
D0295344	GROUND WIRE:RFID	U013	55
D0295790	HDD:WD:160G	U014	10
D0295800	RACK:INNER BACK:ASS'Y	U013	56
D0295805	RACK:INNER BACK:AUXILIARY:MIDDLE	U013	57
D0295806	BRACKET:IOB	U013	58
D0295811	RACK:APPLICATION:FRONT:RIGHT	U013	59
D0295819	RACK:APPLICATION:FRONT:ASS'Y	U013	60
D0295820	RACK:INNER BACK:AUXILIARY:LEFT:ASS'Y	U014	11
D0295824	COVER:SD-CARD	U014	12
D0295835	BRACKET:PCB:FFB	U013	61
D0295861	GASKET:65TFV5-0.5:L90	U013	62
D0295863	GASKET:65TSV5-2:L23	U013	63
D0295876	DENSITY SENSOR:ASS'Y	U013_S002	64
D0295882	BRACKET:HDD	U014	13
D0295887	GASKET:65TSV5-1:L150	U014	14
D0295888	GASKET:65TSV5-1:L100	U014	15
D0295889	GASKET:65TSV10-5:L65	U014	16
D0295898	COVER:FAN:MM60:CONTROL BOARD	U014	17
D0296010	TRANSFER UNIT:INTERMEDIATE TRANSFER:C2:DOM:ASS'Y	U015_S001	3
D0296027	CLEANING UNIT:INTERMEDIATE TRANSFER:ASS'Y	U016	2
D0296090	TRANSFER BELT:N:ASS'Y	U015_S001	4
D0296285	TERMINAL:TRANSFER ROLLER	U012_S001	189
D0296286	CASE:TRANSFER ROLLER	U012_S001	190
D0296293	DRUM STAY:REAR	U012	191
D0296305	LEVER:RELEASE	U012	192
D0296307	**COMPRESSION SPRING:GUIDE PLATE:EXIT:3.5N**	**U012_S001**	**204**
D0296309	SPRING:TRANSFER	U012	193
D0296316	STOPPER:HOLDER:SEPARATION:UPPER	U012_S001	194
D0296317	GROUND WIRE:POWER PACK	U012_S001	195
D0296318	GUIDE:POSITIONING:FRONT	U001	88
D0296319	GUIDE:POSITIONING:REAR	U001	89
D0296320	BRACKET:LEVER:MIDDLE	U012	196
D0296321	ANCHOR:SPRING	U012	197
D0296322	SHAFT:LEVER:FRONT	U012	198
D0296323	SHAFT:LEVER:REAR	U012	199
D0296335	SHEET:CASE:LOWER	U012_S001	201
D0296395	DENSITY SENSOR	U013_S002	65
D0296502	BRACKET:USED TONER SENSOR:C2	U017	21
D0296509	COLLECTION BOTTLE:EXP:ASS'Y	U017	22
D0298322	SHEET:EMBLEM:AP-C2D:RIC:EXP	U003	54
D0298328	SHEET:EMBLEM:AP-C2D:SVN	U003	55
D0298329	SHEET:EMBLEM:AP-C2D:GES:NA	U003	56
D0298330	SHEET:EMBLEM:AP-C2D:LAN:NA	U003	57
D0298332	SHEET:EMBLEM:AP-C2D:RIC:GSA	U003	58
D0298333	SHEET:EMBLEM:AP-C2D:SVN:GSA	U003	59
D0298334	SHEET:EMBLEM:AP-C2D:LAN:GSA	U003	60
D4425722	PCB for D027	U014	18
D4435722	PCB for D029	U014	19
G0201332	HINGE - FRONT COVER	U003	61
G0219350	Loopback Connector - Parallel		
G0381299	RIVET - 5		
G0524696	RIGHT FUSING LOCK LEVER	U010	60
G0524697	LEFT FUSING LOCK LEVER	U010	61
G0602652	BUSHING - M4	U012	111
G0602932	PICK-UP ARM - MANUAL FEED	U012	202
G0604435	BUSHING - M4	U012	111
G0652767	LEVER - FEED	U008_S001	137

Number	Part Name	Group	ID
		U008_S002	137
G0652774	PRESSURE LEVER	U008_S001	138
		U008_S002	138
G0652775	LINK LEVER	U008_S001	139
		U008_S002	139
G0652776	RELEASE LEVER	U008_S001	140
		U008_S002	140
G0802900	TORQUE LIMITER	U012	203
G1331285	DECAL:COVER:LEFT:GUIDE PLAT E	U003	62
G1331295	OZONE FILTER	U003	63
G1335795	RAIL:RIGHT	U014	20
G1335796	RAIL:LEFT	U014	21
G1336537	MAGNET CATCH	U003	64
G1786072	PCB:PC4200:RAWCARD-A:1GB	U014	22
G4042810	SPRING PLATE - 2ND MIRROR	U005_S003	83
G5701133	TIMING PULLEY 73	U005	84
G5701160	SPACER BUSHING	U005	85
G5702730	SLIDER - SCANNER	U005_S002	86
G5702832	GUIDE - HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY CORD	U005_S003	87
G5702833	PULLEY HOLDER	U005_S003	88
G5702834	PULLEY - HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY CORD	U005	89
GA000036	DECAL - (HIGH TEMPERATURE) L EFT	U008_S005	141
GA003030	DECAL - SHIELDING PLATE Y	U003	65
		U007_S004	13
GA003031	DECAL - SHIELDING PLATE M	U003	66
		U007_S002	14
GA003032	DECAL - SHIELDING PLATE C	U003	67
		U007_S003	15
GA003033	DECAL - SHIELDING PLATE K	U003	68
GA003167	DECAL:CAUTION:INKJET:NA		
H0202318	RIVET - NRP345	U005	90
H0532208	BUSHING - M4	U011	46
VSSM9000	Digital Multimeter-FLUKE189/FVF		

http://www.manuals4you.com

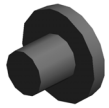
Standard Parts



03125040N
SCREW - M2.5X4



03140120N
SCREW - M4X12



03530030N
SCREW:M3X3



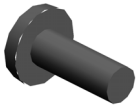
03530040N
SCREW - M3X4



03530050N
SCREW-M3X5



03530060N
BIND SCREW - M3X6



03530080N
SCREW:M3X8



03530100N
SCREW-M3X10



03530250N
SCREW:M3X25



03603006N
SCREW - M3X6



03603008N
SCREW:M3X8



03603016N
SCREW - M3X16



03604010N
SCREW:M4X10



04340100N
TAPPING SCREW - 4X10



04503010N
TAPPING SCREW - M3X10



04503012N
TAPPING SCREW:3X12



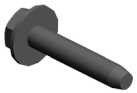
04504008N
TAPPING SCREW - M4X8



04513010N
TAPPING SCREW:3X10



04513012N
TAPPING SCREW:3X12



04513016N
TAPPING SCREW - 3X16



04513020N
TAPPING SCREW:3X20



04513030N
TAPPING SCREW:3X30



04514006N
TAPPING SCREW - 4X6



04514008N
TAPPING SCREW:4X8



04523006N
BINDING SELF-TAPPING SCREW:3X6



04533006N
TAPPING SCREW - M3X6



04533008N
BINDING SELF TAPPING SCREW:3X8



04543006Q
TAPPING SCREW - M3X6

Standard Parts



04543008Q
TAPPING SCREW:3X8



04543020Q
TAPPING SCREW::3X20



04563008N
TAPPING SCREW - M3X8



04563010N
TAPPING SCREW - M3X10



04573008N
TAPPING SCREW - M3X8



07200030E
RETAINING RING - M3



07200040E
RETAINING RING - M4



07200060E
RETAINING RING - M6



07200080E
RETAINING RING - M8



09543010N
SCREW:POLISHED ROUND/ SPRING:M3X10



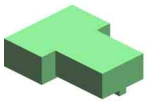
09543018N
SCREW:POLIHED ROUND/S PRING:M3X18



09544006N
SCREW:POLISHED ROUND/ SPRING:M4X6



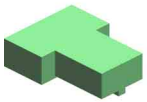
09544008N
SCREW - M4X8



11026245
RELAY CONNECTOR - 2P



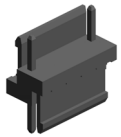
11026248
CONNECTOR - 5P



11026259
CONNECTOR - 2P



11029782
CONNECTOR:51405-1819



11033354
CONNECTOR:B2P5-VH-TW-R (LF)(SN)



11050032
CLAMP



11050487
HARNESS CLAMP



11050489
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS 1316



11050490
HARNESS CLAMP - IWS-2218



11050508
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS-0711



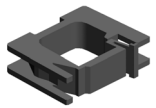
11050511
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS-0306ZC



11050516
CLAMP



11050517
HARNESS CLAMP - LWS-2111Z



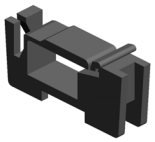
11050518
EDGE SADDLE - LES-1010



11050521
CLAMP - LES-1017

http://www.manuals4you.com

Standard Parts



11050522
EDGE SADDLE - LES0510



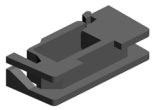
11050534
CLAMP



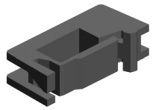
11050544
EDGE SADDLE:LES-2017



11050551
CLAMP:LES-0505



11050612
CLAMP:EDS-0704L-V0



11050613
CLAMP:EDS-1010L-V0



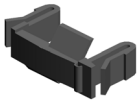
11050614
CLAMP - EDS-1710L-V0



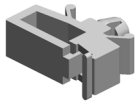
11050640
CLAMP



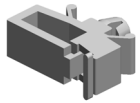
11050641
CLAMP



11050643
CLAMP - RFC-14V0



11050713
CLAMP:LWSM-0306H GRAY



11050714
CLAMP:LWSM-0511H GRAY



11500373
POWER SUPPLY CODE:125V 15A NA



11500415
POWER SUPPLY CODE:125V 15A NA



12042704
SWITCH - RS1A-AB11



12042709
SWITCH - V-5F930DN



14077036
EEPROM:AT24C128B-PU



16071859
FERRITE CORE:E04SR241336A



16072053
FERRITE CORE:E04FG210810

PM Part List

Number	Part Name	Num	Group	ID
AE010068	HOT ROLLER:DIA40:ADHESION	1	U010_S001	24
AE020171	PRESSURE ROLLER:DIA40	1	U010_S001	25
AE030072	BALL BEARING:DIA12XDIA21X5	2	U010_S001	26
AE030074	BALL BEARING:DIA17XDIA26X5	2	U010_S001	27
B2231348	FILTER:IMAGE FORMING MD	2	U003	25
D0239640	COLOR DEVELOPER K	1		
D0256202	TRANSFER/SEPARATION UNIT:AT:DOM:ASS'Y	1	U012	161
D0292251	Drum unit for Color	3	U007_S002	8
			U007_S003	8
			U007_S004	8
D0293015	DEVELOPMENT UNIT:BK:C2:EXP:ASS'Y	1	U007_S001	9
D0296027	CLEANING UNIT:INTERMEDIATE TRANSFER:ASS'Y	1	U016	2
D0296509	COLLECTION BOTTLE:EXP:ASS'Y	1	U017	22

Design Change List

Number	Title	Set	Old Part		New Part		Index No.		Q'ty	Interchg		Reason	Cut-in S/N
			P/N	Name	P/N	Name	Group	ID		Indiv.	Set		
200906	0906 Modification	-	D0296325	COMPRESSION SPRING:GUIDE PLATE:EXIT:3.5N	D0296307	COMPRESSION SPRING:GUIDE PLATE:EXIT:3.5N	U012_S001	204	2	X/O			D02917:
			D0292250	Drum unit for BK	D0292252	PCU:BK:UV:ASS'Y	U007_S001	16	1	O/O			
					D0278322	SHEET:EMBLEM:RIC:EXP For D027	U003	69	1				
					D0278328	SHEET:EMBLEM:SVN For D027	U003	70	1				
					D0278329	SHEET:EMBLEM:GES:NA For D027	U003	71	1				
					D0278330	SHEET:EMBLEM:LAN:NA For D027	U003	72	1				
200905	0905 Modification	-			D0294169	PROOFING MATERIAL:FUSING	U010_S001	62	1				D02917:
					D0296090	TRANSFER BELT:N:ASS'Y	U015_S001	4	1				
					D0295370	CABLE:HDD:SATA:POWER:140							
					D0295371	CABLE:HDD:SATA:RED:170							
090219	0902 Modification	-			D0292586	GUIDE:REGISTRATION:EXIT	U001	87	1				D02917:
					D0294132	FUSING ENTRANCE GUIDE PLATE:COAT	U010_S001	44	1				
					D0294103	FUSING COVER:GUIDE:DUPLEX	U010_S001	40	1				
			D0294561	HARNESS:SECO	D0294562	HARNESS:SECO				X/X			

Design Change List

Number	Title	Set	Old Part		New Part		Index No.		Q'ty	Interchg		Reason	Cut-in S/N
			P/N	Name	P/N	Name	Group	ID		Indiv.	Set		
		-		ND:TRANSFER UNIT		ND:TRANSFER UNIT							
			D0294018	FUSING UNIT:NA:ASS'Y	D0294019	FUSING UNIT:NA:ASS'Y	U010_S001	39	1	X/O			
					AB033000	JOINT:DEVELOPMENT							
081128	0811 Modification	-	D0291336	DUCT:EXIT	D0291339	DUCT:EXIT:C2	U001	77	1	X/O			D02917:
			09544006N	SCREW:POLISHED ROUND/SPRING:M4X6	AA143592	SCREW- M4X6	U010	16	2	X/O			
			D0296330	SHEET:CASE:LOWER	D0296335	SHEET:CASE:LOWER	U012_S001	201	1	X/O			
			D0291411	OPERATION SUB-UNIT:AP-C2:NA:ASS'Y	D0291421	OPERATION SUB-UNIT:AP-C2:NA:ASS'Y	U004_S001	38	1	X/O			
			D0291494	TOUCH PANEL:W-VGA:FU	D0291484	TOUCH PANEL:WVGA:FU-ACF	U004_S001	40	1	X/O			
					B2231494	PCB OP-L	U004_S001	8	1				
					D0091466	PCB:OP-R	U004_S001	32	1				
			D4425720	PCB:AP-C2C:EXP:SERVICE:ASS'Y	D4425722	PCB for D027	U014	18	1	X/O			
			D4435721	PCB:AP-C2D:EXP:SERVICE:ASS'Y	D4435722	PCB for D029	U014	19	1	X/O			